

# The Online Library of Liberty

A Project Of Liberty Fund, Inc.

---

Geoffrey Chaucer, *The Complete Works of Geoffrey Chaucer, vol. 4 (The Canterbury Tales)* [1899]

---



## The Online Library Of Liberty

This E-Book (PDF format) is published by Liberty Fund, Inc., a private, non-profit, educational foundation established in 1960 to encourage study of the ideal of a society of free and responsible individuals. 2010 is the 50th anniversary year of the founding of Liberty Fund.

It is part of the Online Library of Liberty web site <http://oll.libertyfund.org>, which was established in 2004 in order to further the educational goals of Liberty Fund, Inc. To find out more about the author or title, to use the site's powerful search engine, to see other titles in other formats (HTML, facsimile PDF), or to make use of the hundreds of essays, educational aids, and study guides, please visit the OLL web site. This title is also part of the Portable Library of Liberty DVD which contains over 1,000 books, audio material, and quotes about liberty and power, and is available free of charge upon request.

The cuneiform inscription that appears in the logo and serves as a design element in all Liberty Fund books and web sites is the earliest-known written appearance of the word “freedom” (amagi), or “liberty.” It is taken from a clay document written about 2300 B.C. in the Sumerian city-state of Lagash, in present day Iraq.

To find out more about Liberty Fund, Inc., or the Online Library of Liberty Project, please contact the Director at [oll@libertyfund.org](mailto:oll@libertyfund.org).

LIBERTY FUND, INC.  
8335 Allison Pointe Trail, Suite 300  
Indianapolis, Indiana 46250-1684



## Edition Used:

*The Complete Works of Geoffrey Chaucer, edited from numerous manuscripts by the Rev. Walter W. Skeat* (2nd ed.) (Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1899). 7 vols. Vol. 4.

Author: [Geoffrey Chaucer](#)

Editor: [Walter W. Skeat](#)

## About This Title:

The late 19th century Skeat edition with copious scholarly notes and a good introduction to the text. The *Tales* are in their original Middle English.

## About Liberty Fund:

Liberty Fund, Inc. is a private, educational foundation established to encourage the study of the ideal of a society of free and responsible individuals.

## Copyright Information:

The text is in the public domain.

## Fair Use Statement:

This material is put online to further the educational goals of Liberty Fund, Inc. Unless otherwise stated in the Copyright Information section above, this material may be used freely for educational and academic purposes. It may not be used in any way for profit.

CONTENTS	
	PAGE
INTRODUCTION.—§ 1. The Present Text. § 2. The MSS.—I. In the British Museum. II. In Oxford. III. In Cambridge. IV. In other Public Libraries. V. In private hands. § 3. The Printed Editions. § 4. Plan of the present Edition. § 5. Table of symbols denoting MSS. § 6. Table showing various ways of numbering the lines. § 7. The four types of MSS.	vii
THE CANTERBURY TALES . . . . .	1
GROUP A. THE PROLOGUE . . . . .	2
THE KNIGHTS TALE . . . . .	26
THE MILLER'S PROLOGUE . . . . .	89
THE MILLER'S TALE . . . . .	92
THE REEVE'S PROLOGUE . . . . .	112
THE REEVE'S TALE . . . . .	114
THE COOK'S PROLOGUE . . . . .	126
THE COOK'S TALE . . . . .	128
GROUP B. INTRODUCTION TO THE MAN OF LAW'S PROLOGUE	130
MAN OF LAW'S PROLOGUE . . . . .	133
THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAW . . . . .	134
THE SHIPMAN'S PROLOGUE . . . . .	165
THE SHIPMAN'S TALE . . . . .	167
THE PRIOR'S PROLOGUE . . . . .	180
THE PRIOR'S TALE . . . . .	181
PROLOGUE TO SIR THOMAS . . . . .	189
SIR THOMAS . . . . .	190
PROLOGUE TO MELIBEUS . . . . .	197
THE TALE OF MELIBEUS . . . . .	199
THE MONK'S PROLOGUE . . . . .	242
THE MONK'S TALE —Lucifer; Adam; Sampson; Hercules; Nabagodonosor; Balthazar; Cesobta; De Petro Rege Ispanie; De Petro Rege De Cipro; De Barnabo de Lombardia; De Hugolino Comite de Pise; Nero; De Oloferno; De Rege Antiocho; De Alexandro; De Iulio Cesare; Ceresus . . . . .	244

## Table Of Contents

[Introduction](#)

[Errata.](#)

[Additions to 'the Minor Poems' In Vol. I.](#)

[XXIV.: Womanly Noblesse.](#)

[XXV.: Complaint to My Mortal Foe.](#)

[XXVI.: Complaint to My Lode-sterre.](#)

[Notes to the Preceding Poems.](#)

[The Canterbury Tales. Group A.](#)

[The Prologue.](#)

[The Knightes Tale.](#)

[The Miller's Prologue.](#)

[The Milleres Tale.](#)

[The Reeve's Prologue.](#)

[The Reves Tale.](#)

[The Cook's Prologue.](#)

[The Cokes Tale.](#)

[Group B.](#)

[Introduction to the Man of Law's Prologue. \(t. 4421-4446.\)](#)

[The Tale of the Man of Lawe.](#)

[The Shipman's Prologue.](#)

[The Shipmannes Tale.](#)

[The Prioress's Prologue. \(t. 13365-13382.\)](#)

[The Prioresses Tale.](#)

[Prologue to Sir Thopas. \(t. 13621-13641.\)](#)

[Sir Thopas.](#)

[Prologue to Melibeus. \(t. 13847-13875.\)](#)

[The Tale of Melibeus.](#)

[The Monk's Prologue. \(t. 13895-13924.\)](#)

[The Monkes Tale.](#)

[The Prologue of the Nonne Prestes Tale. \(t. 14773-14798\).](#)

[The Nonne Preestes Tale.](#)

[Epilogue to the Nonne Preestes Tale.](#)

[Group C.](#)

[The Phisiciens Tale. \(t. 11935-11957.\)](#)

[Words of the Host. \(t. 12221-12239.\)](#)

[The Prologue of the Pardoners Tale. \(t. 12263-12288\).](#)

[The Pardoners Tale. \( Numbered In Continuation of the Preceding. \)](#)

[Group D.](#)

[The Wife of Bath's Prologue. \(t. 5583-5602; For T. 5582, See P. 164.\)](#)

[The Tale of the Wyf of Bathe.](#)

[The Friar's Prologue. \(t. 6847-6868\).](#)

[The Freres Tale.](#)

[The Somnour's Prologue. \(t. 7247-7270.\)](#)

[The Somnours Tale.](#)

[Group E.](#)

[The Clerk's Prologue. \(t. 7877-7898.\)](#)

[The Clerkes Tale.](#)

[The Merchant's Prologue. \(t. 9089-9120\).](#)

[The Marchantes Tale.](#)

[Epilogue to the Marchantes Tale.](#)

[Group F.](#)

[The Squieres Tale. \(t. 10315-10334\).](#)

[The Franklin's Prologue. \(t. 11021-11040\).](#)

[The Frankeleyns Tale.](#)

[Group G.](#)

[The Seconde Nonnes Tale.](#)

[The Canon's Yeoman's Prologue. \(t. 16022-16043.\)](#)

[The Chanouns Yemannes Tale.](#)

[Group H.](#)

[The Manciple's Prologue. \(t. 16950-16968\).](#)

[The Maunciples Tale.](#)

[Group I.](#)

[The Parson's Prologue. \(t. 17312-17330\).](#)

[The Persones Tale.](#)

[Appendix to Group A.](#)

[The Tale of Gamelyn.](#)

*Oxford University Press, Amen House, London E.C.4*

glasgow new york toronto melbourne wellington bombay calcutta madras karachi  
lahore dacca cape town salisbury nairobi ibadan accra kuala lumpur hong kong

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## INTRODUCTION

### § 1.

#### The Present Text.

The text of the 'Canterbury Tales,' as printed in the present volume, is an entirely new one, owing nothing to the numerous printed editions which have preceded it. The only exceptions to this statement are to be found in the case of such portions as have been formerly edited, for the Clarendon Press, by Dr. Morris and myself. The reasons for the necessity of a formation of an absolutely new text will appear on a perusal of the text itself, as compared with any of its predecessors.

On the other hand, it owes everything to the labours of Dr. Furnivall for the Chaucer Society, but for which no satisfactory results could have been obtained, except at the cost of more time and toil than I could well devote to the subject. In other words, my work is entirely founded upon the splendid 'Six-text' Edition published by that Society, supplemented by the very valuable reprint of the celebrated 'Harleian' manuscript in the same series. These Seven Texts are all exact reproductions of seven important MSS., and are, in two respects, more important to the student than the MSS. themselves; that is to say, they can be studied simultaneously instead of separately, and they can be consulted and re-consulted at any moment, being always accessible. The importance of such opportunities is obvious.

### § 2.

#### The Manuscripts.

The following list contains all the MSS. of the existence of which I am aware. As to their types, see § 7.

### I.

#### MSS. In The British Museum.

1. Harl. 7334; denoted here by Hl. By Tyrwhitt called 'C.' A MS. of the B-type (see below). Printed in full for the Chaucer Society, 1885. Collated throughout. A MS. of great importance, but difficult to understand or describe. For the greater clearness, I shall roughly describe the MSS. as being of the A-type, the B-type, the C-type, and the D-type (really a second C-type). Of the A-type, the best example is the Ellesmere MS; of the B-type, the best example is the Harleian MS. 7334; of the C-type, the Corpus and Lansdowne MSS.; the D-type is that exhibited by Caxton and Thynne in the early printed

editions. They may be called the ‘Ellesmere,’ ‘Harleian,’ ‘Corpus,’ and ‘Caxton’ types respectively. These types differ as to the arrangement of the Tales, and even MSS. of a similar type differ slightly, in this respect, among themselves. They also frequently differ as to certain characteristic readings, although many of the variations of reading are peculiar to one or two MSS. only. MS. Hl. contains the best copy of the Tale of Gamelyn, for which see p. 645; this Tale is not found in MSS. of the A-type. Moreover, Group G here precedes Group C and a large part of Group B, whereas in the Ellesmere MS. it follows them. In the Monk’s Tale, the lines numbered B 3565-3652 (containing the Tales called the ‘modern instances’) immediately follow B 3564 (as in this edition), whereas in the Ellesmere MS. these lines come at the end of the Tale. The ‘various readings’ of this MS. are often peculiar, and it is difficult to appraise them. I take them to be of two kinds: (1) readings which are better than those of the Six-text, and should certainly be preferred, such as *halfe* in A 8, *cloysterlees* in A 179, *a* (not *a ful*) in A 196, and the like; and (2) readings due to a terrible blundering on the part of the scribe, such as *fleyng* for *flikeringe* in A 1962, *greene* for *kene* in A 1966, and the like. It is, in fact, a most dangerous MS. to trust to, unless constantly corrected by others, and is not at all fitted to be taken as the *basis* of a text. For further remarks, see the description of Wright’s printed edition at p. xvi. As regards age, this MS. is one of the oldest; and it is beautifully written. Its chief defect is the loss of eight leaves, so that ll. 617-1223 in Group F are missing. It also misses several lines in various places; as A 2013-8, 2958, 3721-2, 4355, 4358, 4375-6, 4415-22; B 417, 1186-90, 1355, 1376-9, 1995, 3213-20, 4136-7, 4479-80; C 299, 300, 305-6, 478-9; D 575-584, 605-612, 619-626, 717-720; E 2356-7; F 1455-6, 1493-8; G 155, 210-216; besides some lines in Melibee and the Persones Tale. Moreover, it has nine spurious lines, D 2004 *b, c*, 2012 *b, c*, 2037 *b, c*, 2048 *b, c*, F 592. These imperfections furnish an additional reason for not founding a text upon this MS.

2. Harl 7335; by Tyrwhitt called ‘A.’ Of the B-type. Very imperfect, especially at the end. A few lines are printed in the Six-text edition, to fill up gaps in various MSS., viz. E 1646-7, F 1-8, 1423-4, 1433-4, G 158, 213-4, 326-337, 432-3, 484. Collated so far.

3. Harl. 7333; by Tyrwhitt called ‘E.’ Of the D-type. One of Shirley’s MSS. Some lines are printed in the Six-text edition, viz. B 4233-8, E 1213-44, F 1147-8, 1567-8, G 156-9, 213-4, 326-337, 432. It also contains some of the Minor Poems; see the description of MS. ‘Harl.’ in the Introduction to those poems in vol. i.<sup>1</sup>

4. Harl. 1758, denoted by Harl. at p. 645; by Tyrwhitt called ‘F.’ In Urry’s list, i. Of the D-type, but containing Gamelyn. Many lines are printed in the Six-text, including the whole of ‘Gamelyn.’ It is freely used to fill up gaps, as B 1-9, 2096-2108, 3049-78, 4112, 4114, 4581-4636, &c.

5. Harl. 1239; in Tyrwhitt, ‘I.’ In Urry’s list, ii. Imperfect both at beginning and end.

6. Royal 18 C II; denoted by Rl.; in Tyrwhitt, ‘B.’ In Urry, vii. Of the D-type, but containing Gamelyn. Used to fill up gaps in the Six-text; e. g. in B 1163-1190 (Shipman’s Prologue, called in this MS. the Squire’s Prologue),

- 2109-73, 3961-80, E 65, 73, 81, 143, G 1337-40, I 472-511 The whole of 'Gamelyn' is also printed from this MS. in the Six-text.
7. Royal 17 D xv; in Tyrwhitt, 'D.' In Urry, viii. Of the D-type, but containing Gamelyn. Used to fill up gaps in the Six-text; e. g. in B 2328-61, 3961-80, 4112, 4114, 4233-8, 4637-51, D 609-612, 619-626, 717-720, E 1213-44, F 1423-4, 1433-4, H 47-52; and in the Tale of Gamelyn.
8. Sloane 1685; denoted by Sl. In Tyrwhitt, 'G.' In Urry, iii. Of the D-type, but containing Gamelyn. In two handwritings, one later than the other. Imperfect; has no Sir Thopas, Melibee, Manciple, or Parson. Very frequently quoted in the Six-text, to fill up rather large gaps in the Cambridge MS.; e. g. A 754-964, 3829-90, 4365-4422, &c. Gamelyn is printed from this MS. in the Six-text, the gaps in it being filled up from MS. 7 (above).
9. Sloane 1686; in Tyrwhitt, 'H.' In Urry, iv. Of the C-type; containing Gamelyn. A late MS., on paper. Imperfect; no Canon's Yeoman or Parson.
10. Lansdowne 851; denoted by Ln. In Tyrwhitt, 'W.,' because at that time in the possession of P. C. Webb, Esq. Used by Mr. Wright to fill up the large gap in Hl., viz. F 617-1223, and frequently consulted by him and others. Printed in full as the sixth MS. of the Six-text. Of the C-type; containing Gamelyn. Not a good MS., being certainly the worst of the six; but worth printing owing to the frequent use that has been made of it by editors.
11. Additional 5140; in Tyrwhitt, 'Ask. 2,' as being one of two MSS. lent to him by Dr. Askew. It has in it the arms of H. Deane, Archbp. of Canterbury, 1501-3. Of the A-type. Quoted in the Six-text to fill up gaps; e. g. B 3961-80, 4233-8, 4637-52, D 2158-2294, E 1213-44, 1646-7, 2419-40, F 1-8, 673-708, G 103, I 887-944, 1044-92.
12. Additional 25718. A mere fragment. A short passage from it, C 409-427, is quoted in the Six-text, to fill up a gap in Ln.
13. Egerton 2726, called the 'Haistwell MS. '; in Tyrwhitt denoted by 'HA,' and formerly belonging to E. Haistwell, Esq. Of the A-type, but imperfect. The Six-text quotes F 679, 680; also F 673-708 in the Preface.

## II.

### MSS. In Oxford.

14. Bodley 686; no. 2527 in Bernard's list; in Tyrwhitt, 'B  $\alpha$ .' A neat MS., with illuminations. Of the A-type; imperfect. The latter part of the Cook's Tale is on an inserted leaf (leaf 55), and concludes the Tale in a manner that is not Chaucer's. After the Canterbury Tales occur several poems by Lydgate.
15. Bodley 414; not noticed by Tyrwhitt. Given to the library by B. Heath in 1766. A late MS. of the D-type, and imperfect. No Cook, Gamelyn, Squire, or Merchant.
16. Laud 739: no. 1234 in Bernard's list; in Tyrwhitt, 'B  $\beta$ .' A poor and late MS. of the D-type, but containing Gamelyn; imperfect at the end; ends with Sir Thopas, down to B 2056.
17. Laud 600; no. 1476 in Bernard's list; in Tyrwhitt, 'B  $\gamma$ .' Imperfect; several leaves 'restored.' Apparently, of the B-type; but Group D and the



Clerk's Tale follow Gamelyn. Some extracts from it are given in the Six-text, viz. B 2328-61, D 717-20 (no other Oxford MS. has these scarce lines), F 673-708.

18. Arch. Selden B 14; no. 3360 in Bernard's list; in Tyrwhitt, 'B δ.' Perhaps the best and earliest of the Bodleian MSS., but not very good. Sometimes here quoted as Seld. Apparently of the A-type, having no copy of Gamelyn; but it practically represents a transition-state between the A and B types, and has one correction of prime importance, as it is the *only* MS. which links together all the Tales in Group B, making the Shipman follow the Man of Law. Frequent extracts from it occur in the Six-text; e. g. A 1-72, B 1163-1190, &c. In particular, a large portion of the Parson's Tale, I 290-1086, is printed from this MS. in the same.

19. Barlow 20; no. 6420 in Bernard's list; in Tyrwhitt, 'B ζ.' A clearly written MS. of the D-type, including Gamelyn; imperfect after Sir Thopas, but contains a portion of the Manciple's Tale. It contains the somewhat rare lines F 679, 680, which are quoted from it in the Six-text.

20. Hatton, Donat. 1 (not the same MS. as Hatton 1); no. 4138 in Bernard's list; in Tyrwhitt, 'B ε' The Tales are in great disorder, the Man of Law being thrust in between the Reeve and the Cook, as in no other MS. It contains Gamelyn. Lines F 679, 680 are quoted from it in the Six-text; and a few lines are again quoted from it at the end of the Parson's Tale.

21. Rawlinson Poet. 149. Apparently of the D-type, but it is very imperfect, having lost several leaves in various places. A late MS.

22. Rawlinson Poet. 141. Not a bad MS., but several Tales are omitted, and the Shipman follows the Clerk. Groups C and G do not appear at all. The Latin side-notes are numerous.

23. Rawlinson Poet. 223; the same as that called Rawl. Misc. 1133 in the Six-text 'Trial-table.' No copy of Gamelyn. The Tales are strangely misplaced. Slightly imperfect here and there.

24. Corpus Christi College (Oxford), no. 198; denoted by Cp. The best of the Oxford MSS., printed in full as the fourth MS. in the Six-text edition. Of the C-type; collated throughout. It contains a copy of Gamelyn, which is duly printed. It is rather imperfect from the loss of leaves in various places; the gaps being usually supplied from the Selden MS. (no. 18 above).

25. Christ Church (Oxford), no. 152. Contains Gamelyn. The Tales are extraordinarily arranged, but the MS. is nearly perfect, except at the end. A large part of the Parson's Tale, after I 550, being lost from the Hengwrt MS., the gap is supplied, in the Six-text, from this MS. and Addit. 5140. The Second Nun follows the Shipman. Of the A-type.

26. New College (Oxford), no. 314; called 'NC' in Tyrwhitt. Of the D-type; imperfect at the beginning. No copy of Gamelyn.

27. Trinity College (Oxford), no. 49; containing 302 leaves; formerly in the possession of John Leche, temp. Edw. IV. It contains Gamelyn. The Tales are misplaced; the Pardoner and Man of Law being thrust into the middle of Group B, after the Prioress.

### III.

#### MSS. At Cambridge.

28. University Library, Gg. 4. 27, not noticed by Tyrwhitt; here denoted by Cm. Also denoted, in vol. iii., by C.; and in vol. i., by Gg. A highly valuable and important MS. of the A-type, printed as the third text in the Six-text edition. The best copy in any public library. See the description of 'Gg.' in vol. i.; and the full description in the Library Catalogue.

29. University Library, Dd. 4. 24; in Tyrwhitt, 'C 1.' Quoted as Dd. A good MS. of the A-type, much relied upon by Tyrwhitt, who made good use of it. Has lost several leaves. The whole of the Clerk's Tale was printed from this MS. by Mr. Aldis Wright. The passage in B 4637-52 occurs only in this MS. and a few others, viz. Royal 17 D xv, Addit. 5140, and the Chr. Ch. MS. It also contains the rare lines D 575-84, 609-12, 619-26, 717-20, all printed from this MS. in the Six-text. Lines E 1213-44 are also quoted, to fill a gap in Cm.

30. University Library, Ii. 3. 26; in Tyrwhitt, 'C 2.' Of the D-type, including Gamelyn; but the Franklin's Tale is inserted after the Merchant. Contains many corrupt readings.

31. University Library, Mm. 2. 5. The arrangement of the Tales is very unusual, but resembles that in the Petworth MS., than which it is a little more irregular. A complete MS. of the D-type, including Gamelyn.

32. Trinity College (Cambridge), R. 3. 15; in Tyrwhitt, 'Tt.' In quarto, on paper. Some leaves are missing, so that the Canon's Yeoman, Prioress, and Sir Thopas are lost. Of the D-type, without Gamelyn. N.B. This MS. also contains the three poems printed as Chaucer's (though not his) in the edition of 1687, and numbered 66, 67, and 68, in my Account of 'Speght's edition' in vol. i. It also contains the best MS. of Pierce the Ploughman's Crede, edited by me from this MS. in 1867.

33. Trinity College (Cambridge), R. 3. 3; in Tyrwhitt, 'T.' A folio MS., on vellum; of the D-type, without Gamelyn; but several Tales are misplaced.

### IV.

#### In Other Public Libraries.

34. Sion College, London. A mere fragment, containing only the Clerk's Tale and Group D.

35. Lichfield Cathedral Library; quoted as Lich. or Li. Of the D-type, omitting Gamelyn. The Tale of Melibee is missing. As the Hengwrt MS. has no Canon's Yeoman's Tale, lines G 554-1481 are printed from this MS. in the Six-text.

36. Lincoln Cathedral Library; begins with A 381. Resembles no. 42.

37. Glasgow; in the Hunterian Museum. Begins with A 353; dated 1476.

38. MS. at Paris, mentioned by Dr. Furnivall. Of the B-type.

39. MS. at Naples, mentioned by Dr. Furnivall<sup>1</sup>.

## V.

### MSS. In Private Hands.

These include some of the very best.

40. The 'Ellesmere' MS., in the possession of the Earl of Ellesmere; denoted by E. It formerly belonged to the Duke of Bridgewater, and afterwards to the Marquis of Stafford. The finest and best of all the MSS. now extant. Of the A-type; printed as the first of the MSS. in the Six-text, and taken as the basis of the present edition. It contains the curious coloured drawings of 23 of the Canterbury Pilgrims which have been reproduced for the Chaucer Society. At the end of the MS. is a valuable copy of Chaucer's Balade of 'Truth'; see vol. i. At the beginning of the MS., in a later hand, are written two poems printed in Todd's Illustrations of Gower, &c., pp. 295-309, which Todd absurdly attributed to Chaucer! They are of slight value or interest. It may suffice to say that, at the beginning of the former poem, we find *revyved* rimed with *meved*, and many of the lines in it are too long; e. g.—'I supposed yt to have been some noxiall fantasy.' In the latter poem, a compliment to the family of Vere, by rimes with *auncestrye*, and *quarter* with *hereafter*; and the lines are of similar over-length, e. g.—'Of whom prophesyes of antiquite makyth mencion.'

41. The 'Hengwrt' MS., no. 154, belonging to Mr. Wm. W. E. Wynne, of Peniarth; denoted by Hn. A valuable MS.; it is really of the A-type, though the Tales are strangely misplaced, and the Canon's Yeoman's Tale is missing. The readings frequently agree so closely with those of E. (no. 40) that it is, to some extent, almost a duplicate of it. Printed as the second MS. in the Six-text. It also contains Chaucer's Boethius (imperfect).

42. The 'Petworth' MS., belonging to Lord Leconfield; denoted by Pt. A folio MS., on vellum, of high value. Formerly in the possession of the Earl of Egremont (Todd's Illustrations, p. 118). Of the D-type, including Gamelyn; but the Shipman and Prioress wrongly precede the Man of Law. Printed as the fifth MS. in the Six-text.

43. The 'Holkham' MS., noted by Todd (Illustrations, p. 127) as then belonging to Mr. Coke, of Norfolk, and now belonging to the Earl of Leicester. The Tales are out of order; perhaps the leaves are misarranged. Imperfect in various places; has no Parson's Tale.

44. The 'Helmingham' MS., at Helmingham Hall, Suffolk, belonging to Lord Tollemache. On paper and vellum; about 1460 a.d. For a specimen, see the Shipman's Prologue, printed in the Six-text, in the Preface, p. ix\*. Either of the C-type or the D-type.

45-48. Four MSS. in the collection of the late Sir Thos. Phillipps, at Cheltenham, viz. nos. 6570, 8136, 8137, 8299. Two of these are mentioned in Todd's Illustrations, p. 127, as being 'now [in 1810] in the collection of John P. Kemble, Esq., and in that belonging to the late Duke of Roxburghe; the

latter is remarkably beautiful, and is believed to have been once the property of Sir Henry Spelman.' No. 8299 contains the Clerk's Tale only.

49-52. Four MSS. belonging to the Earl of Ashburnham; numbered 124-127 in the Appendix. Of these, no. 124 wants the end of the Man of Law's Tale and the beginning of the Squire's, and therefore belongs to either the C-type or D-type. Nos. 125 and 126 are imperfect. No. 127 seems to be complete.

53. A MS. belonging to the Duke of Devonshire, at Chatsworth; and formerly to Sir N. L'Estrange. (Of the A-type.)

54. A MS. belonging to Sir Henry Ingilby, of Ripley Castle, Yorkshire. (Of the A-type.)

55. A MS. belonging to the Duke of Northumberland, at Alnwick; and formerly to Mrs. Thynne. (Of the A-type.)

56. A MS. now (in 1891) in the possession of Lady Cardigan.

57-59. Tyrwhitt uses the symbol 'Ask. 1' to denote a MS. lent to him by the late Dr. Askew. He also uses the symbols 'Ch.' and 'N.' to denote 'two MSS. described in the Preface to Urry's edition, the one as belonging to Chas. Cholmondeley, Esq. of Vale Royal, in Cheshire, and the other to Mr. Norton, of Southwick, in Hampshire.' Of these, 'Ch.' is now Lord Delamere's MS., described by Dr. Furnivall in Notes and Queries, 4 Ser. ix. 353. The others I cannot trace.

### § 3.

## The Printed Editions.

In the first five editions, the Canterbury Tales were published separately.

1. Caxton; about 1477-8, from a poor MS. Copies are in the British Museum, Merton College, and in the Pepysian Library (no. 2053).
2. Caxton; about 1483, from a better MS. A perfect copy exists in St. John's College Library, Oxford. Caxton bravely issued this new edition because he had found that his former one was faulty.
3. Pynson; about 1493. Copied from Caxton's 2nd edition.
4. Wynkyn de Worde; in 1498. In the British Museum.
5. Pynson; in 1526. Copied from Caxton's 2nd edition.

After this the Canterbury Tales were invariably issued with the rest of Chaucer's Works, until after 1721. Some account of these editions is given in the Preface to the Minor Poems, in vol. i.; which see. They are: Thynne's three editions, in 1532, 1542, and 1550 (the last is undated); Stowe's edition, 1561; Speght's editions, in 1598, 1602, and 1687; Urry's edition, in 1721.

Two modernised editions of the Canterbury Tales were published in London in 1737 or 1740, and in 1741.

Next came: 'Chaucer's Canterbury Tales, to which is added, an Essay on his Language and Versification; an introductory discourse; notes, and a glossary. By

Thomas Tyrwhitt, London, 1775-8, 8vo, 5 vols.' A work of high literary value, to which I am greatly indebted for many necessary notes. Reprinted in 1798 in 4to, 2 vols., by the University of Oxford; and again, at London, in 1822, in post 8vo, 5 vols.; (by Pickering) in 1830, 8vo, 5 vols.; and (by Moxon) in 1845, in 1 vol. imp. 8vo. The last of these adds poor texts of the rest of Chaucer's Works, from old black-letter editions, with which Tyrwhitt had nothing to do. In Tyrwhitt's text, the number of grammatical errors is very large, and he frequently introduces words into the text without authority. For some account of the later editions of Chaucer's Works, see the Introduction to the Legend of Good Women, in vol. iii. I may note, by the way, that the editions by Wright, Bell, and Morris are all founded on MS. Harl. 7334, a very unsafe MS. in some respects; see p. viii (above).

It is necessary to add here a few words of warning. Wright's edition, though it has many merits, turns out, in practice, to be dangerously untrustworthy. He frequently inserts words, borrowed from Tyrwhitt's edition (which he heartily condemns as being full of errors in grammar), without the least indication that they are *not in the MS.* This becomes the more serious when we find, upon examination, that Tyrwhitt had likewise no authority for some of such insertions, but simply introduced them, by guess, to fill up a line in a way that pleased him. For example, A 628 runs thus, in all the seven MSS:—

'Of his visage children were aferd.' It is quite correct; for 'viság-e' is trisyllabic. Tyrwhitt did not know this, and counted the syllables as *two* only, neglecting the final *e*. The line seemed then too short; so he inserted *sore* before *aferd*, thus ruining the scansion. Wright follows suit, and inserts *sore*, though it is not in his MS.; giving no notice at all of what he has done. Bell follows suit, and the word is even preserved in Morris; but the latter prints the word in italics, to shew that it is not in the MS. Nor is it in the Six-text.

I shall not adduce more instances, but shall content myself with saying that, until the publications of the Chaucer Society appeared, no reader had the means of knowing what the best MS. texts were really like. All who have been accustomed to former (complete) editions have necessarily imbibed hundreds of false impressions, and have necessarily accepted numberless theories as to the scansion of lines which they will, in course of due time, be prepared to abandon. In the course of my work, it has been made clear to me that Chaucer's text has been manipulated and sophisticated, frequently in most cunning and plausible ways, to a far greater extent than I could have believed to be possible. This is not a pleasant subject, and I only mention it for the use of scholars. Such variations fortunately seldom affect the sense; but they vitiate the scansion, the grammar, and the etymology in many cases. Of course it will be understood that I am saying no more than I can fully substantiate.

It is absolutely appalling to read such a statement as the following in Bell's edition, vol. i. p. 60. 'All deviations, either from Mr. Wright's edition, or from the original MS., are pointed out in the footnotes for the ultimate satisfaction of the reader.' For the instances in which this is really done are very rare indeed, in spite of the large number of such deviations.

Of Tyrwhitt's text, it is sufficient to remark that it was hardly possible, at that date, for a better text to have been produced. The rules of Middle English grammar had not been formulated, so that we are not surprised to find that he constantly makes the past tense of a weak verb monosyllabic, when it should be dissyllabic, and treats the past participle as dissyllabic, when it should be monosyllabic which makes wild work with the scansion. It is also to be regretted that he based his text upon the faulty black-letter editions, though he took a great deal of pains in collating them with various MSS.

On the other hand, his literary notes are full of learning and research; and the number of admirable illustrations by which he has efficiently elucidated the text is very great. His reputation as one of the foremost of our literary critics is thoroughly established, and needs no comment.

Mr. Wright's notes are likewise excellent, and resulted from a wide reading. I have also found some most useful hints in the notes to Bell's edition. Of all such sources of information I have been only too glad to avail myself, as is more fully shewn in the succeeding volume.

#### § 4.

### Plan Of The Present Edition.

The text of the present edition of the Canterbury Tales is founded upon that of the Ellesmere MS. (E.) It has been collated throughout with that of the other six MSS. published by the Chaucer Society. Of these seven MSS., the Harleian MS. 7334 (Hl.) was printed separately. The other six were printed in the valuable 'Six-text' edition, to which I constantly have occasion to refer, in parallel columns. The six MSS. are: E. (Ellesmere), Hn. (Hengwrt), Cm. (Cambridge, Gg, 4. 27), Cp. (Corpus Coll., Oxford), Pt. (Petworth), and Ln. (Lansdowne). MSS. E. Hn. Cm. represent the earliest type (A) of the text; Hl., a transitional type (B); Cp. and Ln., a still later type (C); and Pt., the latest of all (D), but hardly differing from C.

In using these terms, 'earliest,' &c., I do not refer to the age of the MSS., but to the type of text which they exhibit.

In the list of MSS. given above, Hl. is no. 1; E., Hn., Cm., are nos. 40, 41, and 28; and Cp., Pt., Ln., are nos. 24, 42, and 10 respectively.

Of all the MSS., E. is the best in nearly every respect. It not only gives good lines and good sense, but is also (usually) grammatically accurate and thoroughly well spelt. The publication of it has been a very great boon to all Chaucer students, for which Dr. Furnivall will be ever gratefully remembered. We must not omit, at the same time, to recognise the liberality and generosity of the owner of the MS., who so freely permitted such full use of it to be made; the same remark applies, equally, to the owners of the Hengwrt and the Petworth MSS. The names of the Earl of Ellesmere, Mr. Wm. W. E. Wynne of Peniarth, and Lord Leconfield have deservedly become as 'familiar as household words' to many a student of Chaucer.

This splendid MS. has also the great merit of being complete, requiring no supplement from any other source, except in the few cases where a line or two has been missed. For example, it does not contain A 252 *b-c* (found in Hn. only); nor A 2681-2 (also not in Hn. or Cm.); nor B 1163-1190 (also not in Hn or Cm.); nor B 1995 (very rare indeed).

It is slightly imperfect in B 2510, 2514, 2525, 2526, 2623-4, 2746, 2967. It drops B 3147-8, C 103-4, C 297-8 (not in Hn. Cm. Pt.), E 1358-61, G 564-5; and has a few defects in the Parson's Tale in I 190, 273, &c. In the Tale of Melibeus, the French original shews that *all* the MSS. have lost B 2252-3, 2623-4, which have to be supplied by translation.

None of the seven MSS. have B 4637-4652; these lines are genuine, but were probably meant to be cancelled. They only occur, to my knowledge, in four MSS., nos. 7, 11, 25, and 29; though found also in the old black-letter editions.

On the other hand, E. preserves lines rarely found elsewhere. Such are A 3155-6, 3721-2, F 1455-6, 1493-9; twelve genuine lines, none of which are in Tyrwhitt, and only the first two are in Wright. Observe also the stanza in the footnote to p. 424; with which compare B 3083, on p. 241.

The text of the Ellesmere MS. has only been corrected in cases where careful collation suggests a desirable improvement. Every instance of this character is invariably recorded in the footnotes. Thus, in A 8, the grammar and scansion require *half-e*, not *half*; though, curiously enough, this correct form appears in Hl. only, among all the seven MSS. In very difficult cases, other MSS. (besides the seven) have been collated, but I have seldom gained much by it. The chief additional MSS. thus used are Dd. = Cambridge, Dd. 4. 24 (no. 29 above); Slo. or Sl. = Sloane 1685 (no. 8); Roy. or Rl. = Royal 18 C 2 (no. 6); Harl. = Harleian 1758 (see p. 645); Li. or Lich. = Lichfield MS. (no. 35), for the Canon's Yeoman's Tale; and others that are sufficiently indicated.

I have paid especial attention to the suffixes required by Middle-English grammar, to the scansion, and to the pronunciation; and I suppose that this is the first complete edition in which the spelling has been tested by phonetic considerations. With a view to making the spelling a little clearer and more consistent, I have ventured to adopt certain methods which I here explain.

In certain words of variable spelling in E., such as *whan* or *whanne*, *than* or *thanne*, I have adopted that form which the scansion requires; but the MS. is usually right.

E. usually has *hise* for *his* with a plural sb., as in l. 1; I use *his* always, except in prose. E. has *hir*, *here*, for her, their; I use *hir* only, except at the end of a line.

E. uses the endings *-ight* or *-yght*, *-inde* or *-ynde*; I use *-ight*, *-inde* only; and, in general, I use *i* to represent short *i*, and *y* to represent long *i*, as in *king*, *wyf*. Such is the usual habit of the scribe, but he often changes *i* into *y* before *m* and *n*, to make his writing clearer; such a precaution is needless in modern printing. Thus, in l. 42, I

replace the scribe's *bigynne* by *biginne*; and in l. 78, I replace his *pilgrymage* by *pilgrimage*. This makes the text easier to read.

For a like reason, where equivalent spellings occur, I select the simpler; writing *couth* (as in Pt.) for *kowthe*, *sote* for *soote*, *sege* for *seege*, and so on. In words such as *our* or *oure*, *your* or *youre*, *hir* or *hire*, *neuer* or *neuere*, I usually give the simpler forms, without the final *-e*, when the *-e* is obviously silent.

For consonantal *u*, as in *neuer*, I write *v*, as in *never*. This is usual in all editions. But I could not bring myself to use *j* for *i* consonant; the anachronism is too great. *Never* for *neuer* is common in the fifteenth century, but *j* does not occur even in the first folio of Shakespeare. I therefore usually keep the capital *i* of the MSS. and of the Elizabethan printers, as in *Ioye* (= *joye*) where initial, and the small *i*, as in *enioinen* = *enjoinen*) elsewhere. Those who dislike such conservatism may be comforted by the reflection that the sound rarely occurs.

The word *eye* has to be altered to *ye* at the end of a line, to preserve the rimes. The scribes usually write *eye* in the middle of a line, but when they come to it at the end of one, they are fairly puzzled. In l. 10, the scribe of Hn. writes *Iye*, and that of Ln. writes *yhe*; and the variations on this theme are most curious. The spelling *ye* (= *ye*) is, however, common; as in A 1096 (Cm., Pt.). I print it 'yē' to distinguish it from *ye*, the pl. pronoun.

These minute variations are, I trust, legitimate, and I have not recorded them. They cause trouble to the editor, but afford ease to the reader, which seems a sufficient justification for adopting them. But the scrupulous critic need not fear that the MS. has been departed from in any case, where it could make any phonetic difference, without due notice. Thus, in l. 9, where I have changed *foweles* into *fowles* as being a more usual form, the fact that *foweles* is the Ellesmere spelling is duly recorded in the footnotes. And so in other cases.

The footnotes do not record various readings where E. is correct as it stands; they have purposely been made as concise as possible. It would have been easy to multiply them fourfold without giving much information of value; this is not unfrequently done, but the gain is slight. With so good a MS. as the basis of the text, it did not seem desirable.

The following methods for shortening the footnotes have been adopted.

1. Sometimes only the readings of *some* of the MSS. are given. Thus at l. 9 (p. 1), I omit the readings of Cp. and of Cm. As a fact, neither of these MSS. contain the line; but it was not worth while to take up space by saying so. At l. 10 (p. 1), I again omit the readings of Cp. and of Cm., for the same reason; also of Ln., which is a poor MS., though here it agrees with Hl. (having *yhe*); also of Pt., which has *eyghe*, a spelling not here to be thought of. At l. 12, I just note that E. has *pilgrimage* (by mistake); of course this means that it should have had *pilgrimages* in the plural, as in other MSS., and as required by the rime.



2. At l. 23 (p 2), the remark ‘*rest was*’ implies that all the rest of the seven MSS. specially collated have ‘*was*.’ The word ‘*rest*’ is a convenient abbreviation.
3. When, as at l 53, I give *nacions* as a rejected reading of E. in the footnote, it will be understood that *naciouns* is a better spelling, justified by other MSS., and by other lines in E. itself. E. g., *naciouns* occurs in Hl. and Pt., and Cm. has *naciounnys*.
4. I often use ‘*om.*’ for ‘*omit,*’ or ‘*omits,*’ as in the footnote to l. 188 (p. 6).
5. At l 335 (p. 11), I give the footnote:—‘*ever]* Hl. *al*’ This means that MS Hl. has *al* instead of the word *ever* of the other MSS. It seemed worth noting; but *ever* is probably right.
6. At l. 520 (p. 16), the note is:—‘*All but* Hl. *this was.*’ That is, Hl. has *was*, as in the text; the rest have *this was*, where the addition of *this* sadly clogs the line.

With these hints, the footnotes present no difficulty.

As a rule, I have refrained from all emendation; but, in B 1189, I have ventured to suggest *physices*1, for reasons explained in the Notes. Those who prefer the reading *Phislyas* can adopt it.

For further details regarding particular passages, I beg leave to refer the reader to the Notes in vol. v.

## § 5.

### Table Of Symbols Denoting MSS.

Cm.—Cambridge Univ. Lib. Gg. 4. 27 (Ellesmere type). No. 28 in list.

Cp.—Corpus Chr. Coll., Oxford, no. 198. No. 24.

Dd.—Cambridge Univ. Lib. Dd. 4. 24 (Ellesmere type). No. 29.

E.—Ellesmere MS. (basis of the text). No. 40.

Harl.—Harl. 1758; Brit. Mus.; see p. 645. No. 4.

Hl.—Harl. 7334; British Museum. No. 1.

Hn.—Hengwrt MS. no. 154. No. 41.

Li. *or* Lich.—Lichfield MS.; see pp. 533-553. No. 35.

Ln.—Lansdowne 851; Brit. Mus. (Corpus type). No. 10.

Pt.—Petworth MS. No. 42.

Rl. *or* Roy.—Royal 18 C. II; Brit. Mus.; see p. 645. No. 6.

Seld.—Arch. Selden, B. 14; Bodleian Library. No. 18.

Sl. *or* Slo.—Sloane 1685: Brit. Mus.; see p. 645. No. 8.

§ 6.

Table Shewing The Various Ways Of Numbering The Lines.

Six-text (as here)	Tyrwhitt.	Wright.
A—1-4422	1-4420 <sup>1</sup>	1-4420 <sup>1</sup>
B—1-1162	4421-5582	4421-5582
B—1163-2156	12903-13894 <sup>2</sup>	14384-15374 <sup>3</sup>
B—2157-3078 <sup>4</sup>	<i>Prose; not counted</i> <sup>5</sup> .	<i>Prose; not counted.</i>
B—3079-3564	13895-14380	15375-15860
B—3565-3652	14685-14772	15861-15948
B—3653-3956	14381-14684	15949-16252
B—3957-4652	14773-15468	16253-16932 <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Tyrwhitt counts 252 *b* and 252 *c* as 253 and 254; but omits 3155, 3156; hence, in 3157-3720, the numbering is alike in the Six-text and T. He then omits 3721, 3722, making a difference of *two* lines. Wright follows Tyrwhitt's numbering in Group A, and in B 1-1162

<sup>2</sup>T. counts B 1982, 1983 as *one* line; *b* and 252 so also B *c* as 253 2002, and 254; 2003, and B 2012, 3155, 2013, and 3156; B 2076, hence, in 2077, 3157-3720, making a difference of *four* lines; but, on the Six-text and T. other hand, he expands B 1993 3721, 3722, into *three* lines; hence, on the whole, a difference of *two* lines in Tyrwhitt's numbering in Group A, and in B 1-1162

<sup>3</sup>Wright counts the lines as I do, but his numbering is in one place incorrect; after the line which he calls 15260, he counts the next thirteen lines as ten. Wright follows Tyrwhitt's numbering in Group A, and in B 1-1162

<sup>4</sup>As in the Six-text, I call each clause of Melibeus between the sloping marks a *line*, and so number it. So also in the Parson's Tale

<sup>5</sup>T. cuts up the Tale into paragraphs. So also in the Parson's Tale (Group I). I have *numbered* these, for convenience; see head-lines, pp 199-240.

Six-text (as here)	Tyrwhitt.	Wright.
<i>Spurious</i> ; see p. 289, note.	11929-11934	13410-13415
C—1-968	11935-12902	13416-14383
D (2294 lines);		
E (2440); F (1624)	5583-11928 <sup>2</sup>	5583-11928
G—1-1481	15469-16949	11929-13409
H—(362); I 1-74	16950-17385	16933-17368

<sup>2</sup>T. counts B 1982, <sup>1</sup>Tyrwhitt 1983 as counts 252 *one* line; *b* and 252 so also B *c* as 253 2002, and 254; 2003, and but omits B 2012, 3155, 2013, and 3156; B 2076, hence, in 2077, 3157-3720, making a difference of *four* lines; but, on the other hand, he expands B 1993 3721, 3722, into *three* lines; hence, on the whole, a difference of *two* lines. Wright follows Tyrwhitt's numbering in Group A, and in B 1-1162

<sup>3</sup>Wright counts the lines as I do, but his numbering is in one place incorrect; after the line which he calls 15260, he counts the next thirteen lines as ten. <sup>4</sup>As in the Six-text, I call each clause of Melibeus between the sloping marks a *line*, and so number it. So also in the Parson's Tale

<sup>5</sup>T. cuts up the Tale into paragraphs. So also in the Parson's Tale (Group I). I have *numbered* these, for convenience; see head-lines, pp 199-240.

<sup>1</sup>S. line sh W be th Ep to Ne Pr Ta p. is re to fo

Hence, to obtain the order of the lines in Tyrwhitt, see A-B 1162; D, E, F; p. 289, footnote; C; B 1163-2156, 3079-3564, 3653-3956, 3565-3652, 3957-4652; G, H, I.

Or (by pages), see pp. 1-164, 320-508, 289 (footnote), 290-319, 165-256 (which includes Melibeus), 259-268, 256-258, 269-289, 509-end.

To facilitate reference, the numbering of the lines in Tyrwhitt's text is marked at the top of every page, preceded by the letter 'T.'; lines which Tyrwhitt omits are marked '[T. *om.*,' as on p. 90; and his paragraphs (all numbered in this edition) are carefully preserved in Melibeus and the Parson's Tale, which are in prose. In the Prologue, after l. 250, his numbering is given within marks of parenthesis.

The lines in every piece are also numbered *separately*, within marks of parenthesis, as (10), (20), on p. 26. This numbering (borrowed from Dr. Murray) agrees with the references given in the New English Dictionary. It also gives, in most cases, either exactly or approximately, the references to Dr. Morris's edition, who adopts a similar method, with a few variations of detail. The lines in Bell's edition are not numbered at all.

To obtain the order in Wright's edition, see pp. 1-164, 320-554, 289 (footnote), 290-319, 165-289, 555-end. The variations are fewer.

Some may find it more convenient to observe the names of the Tales.

Tyrwhitt's order of the Tales is as follows<sup>1</sup> :—Prologue, Knight, Miller, Reeve, Cook—Man of Lawe—Wife, Friar, Somnour—Clerk, Merchant—Squire, Franklin—Doctor (Physician), Pardoner—Shipman, Prioress, Sir Thopas, Melibeus, Monk<sup>2</sup>, Nun's Priest—Second Nun, Canon's Yeoman—Manciple—Parson.

## § 7

### The Four Leading Types Of The MSS.

The four leading types of MSS. usually exhibit a variation in the order of the Tales, as well as many minor differences. I only note here the former (omitting Gamelyn, which is absent from MSS. of the A-type, and from some of the D-type).

A.—1. Prologue, Knight, Miller, Reeve, Cook.

2. Man of Lawe.

3. Wife of Bath, Friar, Sompnour.

4. Clerk, Merchant.

5. Squire, Franklin.

6. Doctor, Pardoner.

7. Shipman, Prioress, Sir Thopas, Melibeus, Monk, Nun's Priest.

8. Second Nun, Canon's Yeoman.

9. Manciple, (*slightly linked to*) Parson.

B.—Places 8 before 6. Order: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 8, 6, 7, 9.

C.—Not only places 8 before 6 (as B), but splits 5 into 5 *a* (Squire) and 5 *b* (Franklin), and places 5 *a* before 3. Order 1, 2, 5 *a*, 3, 4, 5 *b*, 8, 6, 7, 9.

D.—As C, but further splits 4 into 4 *a* (Clerk), and 4 *b* (Merchant), and places 4 *b* after 5 *a*. Order: 1, 2, 5 *a*, 4 *b*, 3, 4 *a*, 5 *b*, 8, 6, 7, 9. (D. is really a mere variety of C., with an external difference.)

Observe the position of the Franklin. Thus: A. Squire, Franklin, Doctor. B. Squire, Franklin, Second Nun. C. Merchant, Franklin, Second Nun. D. Clerk, Franklin, Second Nun.

For further remarks on this subject, see vol. v.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## ERRATA.

P 14. A 467. Perhaps the full stop at the end of the line should be a colon.

P. 15. Footnote to A 503 *For* 'Hl. *alone*' *read* 'Tyrwhitt.'

P 85. A 3016. *For* eye *read* ye

P. 133. B 115. Insert marks of quotation at the beginning and end of the line

P. 133. B 120, 121. Insert marks of quotation at the beginning of l. 120 and at the end of l. 121.

P. 134. In the headline; *for* T. 4454 *read* T. 4554.

P. 146. B 540, 541, 547. *For* cristen *read* Cristen

P. 146. B 544 *For* cristianitee *read* Cristianitee. So also at p. 525; G 535.

P. 194. B 2043. *Dele*; *after* spicerye

P 202 B 2222. *For* yevynge *read* yevinge

P 205. B 2253 *For* owe *read* ow

P 207. B 2303. *For* se *read* see

P. 219. footnotes. *For* 2251 *and* 2252 *read* 2551 *and* 2552

P. 232, ll 9, 10. *Dele* the quotation-mark *after* certeyne, *and* *insert* it *after* another.

P. 271. B 4011. *For* stope *a better reading is* stape

P. 285. B 4510. *For* charitee *perhaps* *read* Charitee

P. 285. B 4541. *For* chide *read* chyde

P. 299. C 291. *Either* *read* advocas, *or* *note* that the t in advocas *is* silent.

P. 318. C 955. *For* Thay *read* They

P. 338. In the headline; *for* 6225 *read* 6235.

P. 339. In the headline; *for* 6226 *read* 6236.

P. 344. D 846 *For* But if *read* But-if



P. 345. D 859. *For All read Al*

P. 354. Footnotes; last line. *For 1205 read 1204*

P. 355. D 1219, 1227. *For Chese and chese read Chees and chees.*

P. 363. D 1436. *For But if read But-if*

P. 387. D 2242. *Perhaps insert a comma after himself*

P. 419. E 994. *For gouernance read governance*

P. 428. E 1304, 1306. Insert quotation-mark at the end of l. 1304, instead of the end of l. 1306.

P. 438 E 1635. *For Saue read Save*

P. 444 E 1866. *Insert Auctor opposite this line.*

P. 449. E 2058. *For scorpion read scorioun; as the last syllable is accented.*

P. 459. E 2418. *For bless read blesse*

P. 461. F 20. After all, the right reading probably is that given by E Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl., but with the form *pietous* for *pitous*, as in Troilus, iii. 1444, and v. 451. *Read—And piētous and Iust, alwey y-liche.*

P. 468. F 266. *For Cambynskan read Cambinskan.* So also at p. 480, first line.

P. 474. F 462. *For sle read slee*

P. 505, footnotes. *For 1527 read 1526*

P. 527. G 558, footnote. *The real reading of E is—*

*And vnderne the he wered a surplys*

P. 543. G 1107. *For shall read shal*

P. 626. Footnotes; last line. *For E Seld. Ln. beauteis; read E. Seld. Ln. beautees;*

P. 634. I 955. *For Daniel, read David.* [N. B. MSS. E. Cm. Danyel; *the rest*, Daud. Probably Chaucer wrote ‘Daniel’ at first, and afterwards corrected it (by the original) to ‘David.’ Nevertheless, ‘Daniel’ is a good reading.]

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## ADDITIONS TO 'THE MINOR POEMS' IN VOL. I.

[Further researches have brought to light some more of Chaucer's Minor Poems. I first met with the excellent Balade on 'Womanly Noblesse' in MS. Phillipps 9030 (now MS. Addit. 34360) on June 1, 1894; and on the following day I noticed in MS. Harl. 7578 (partly described in vol. i. p. 58) two Complaints that may perhaps be attributed to our author. As, from the nature of the case, they could not be included in Vol. i, they are inserted here.]

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## XXIV.

### WOMANLY NOBLESSE.

#### Balade That Chaucier Made.

So hath my herte caught in rémembraunce  
Your beauté hool, and stedfast governaunce,  
Your vertues allè, and your hy noblesse,  
That you to serve is set al my plesaunce;  
So wel me lykth your womanly contenaunce, 5  
Your fresshe fetures and your comlinesse,  
That, whyl I live, my herte to his maistresse,  
You hath ful chose, in trew perséveraunce,  
Never to chaunge, for no maner distresse.  
And sith I [you] shal do this observaunce<sup>10</sup>  
Al my lyf, withouten displesaunce,  
You for to serve with al my besinesse,  
[Taketh me, lady, in your obeisaunce,]  
And have me somewhat in your souvenaunce.  
My woful herte suffreth greet duresse;<sup>15</sup>  
And [loke] how humbl[el]y, with al simplesse,  
My wil I cónforme to your ordenaunce,  
As you best list, my peynes to redresse.  
Considring eek how I hange in balaunce  
In your servysè; swich, lo! is my chaunce,<sup>20</sup>  
Abyding grace, whan that your gentilnesse  
Of my gret wo list doon allegeaunce,  
And with your pitè me som wyse avaunce,  
In ful rebating of my hevinesse;  
And thinkth, by reson, wommanly noblesse<sup>25</sup>  
Shuld nat desyre for to doon outrance  
Ther-as she findeth noon unbuxumnesse.

#### Lenvoye.

Auctour of norture, lady of plesaunce,  
Soveraine of beauté, flour of wommanhede,  
Take ye non hede unto myn ignoraunce,<sup>30</sup>  
But this receyveth of your goodlihede,  
Thinking that I have caught in rémembraunce  
Your beauté hool, your stedfast governaunce.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

XXV.

COMPLAINT TO MY MORTAL FOE.

Al hoolly youres, withouten otheres part!  
Wherefore? y-wis, that I ne can ne may  
My service chaungen; thus of al suche art  
The lerninge I desyre for ever and ay.  
And evermore, whyl that I live may,<sup>5</sup>  
In trouthe I wol your servant stille abyde,  
Although my wo encrese day by day,  
Til that to me be come the dethes tyde.  
Seint Valentyne! to you I rénovele  
My woful lyf, as I can, compleyninge;<sup>10</sup>  
But, as me thinketh, to you a quarele  
Right greet I have, whan I, rememberinge  
BBitwene, how kinde, ayeins the yeres springe,  
Upon your day, doth ech foul chese his make;  
And you list not in swich comfórt me bringe,<sup>15</sup>  
That to her grace my lady shulde me take.  
Wherfor unto you, Cupide, I beseche,  
Furth with Venús, noble lusty goddessse,  
Sith ye may best my sorowe lesse and eche;  
And I, your man, oppressed with distresse,<sup>20</sup>  
Can not crye ‘help!’ but to your gentilnesse:  
So voucheth sauf, sith I, your man, wol dye,  
My ladies herte in pitè folde and presse,  
That of my peyne I finde remedye.  
To your conning, my hertes right princesse,<sup>25</sup>  
My mortal fo, whiche I best love and serve,  
I recommaunde my boistous lewednesse.  
And, for I can not altherbest deserve  
Your grace, I preye, as he that wol nat swerve,  
That I may fare the better for my trouthe;<sup>30</sup>  
Sith I am youres, til deth my herte kerve,  
On me, your man, now mercy have and routhe.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## XXVI.

### COMPLAINT TO MY LODE-STERRE.

Of gretter cause may no wight him compleyne  
Than I; for love hath set me in swich caas  
That lasse Ioye and more encrees of peyne  
Ne hath no man; wherfore I crye ‘allas!’  
A thousand tyme, whan I have tyme and space.<sup>5</sup>  
For she, that is my verray sorowes grounde,  
Wol with her grace no wyse my sorowes sounde.  
And that, shulde be my sorowes hertes leche,  
Is me ageins, and maketh me swich werre,  
That shortly, [in] al maner thought and speche,<sup>10</sup>  
Whether it be that I be nigh or ferre,  
I misse the grace of you, my lode-sterre,  
Which causeth me on you thus for to crye;  
And al is it for lakke of remedye.  
My soverain Ioye thus is my mortal fo;<sup>15</sup>  
She that shulde causen al my lustinesse  
List in no wyse of my sorowes saye ‘ho!’  
But let me thus darraine, in hevinesse,  
With woful thoughtes and my grete distresse,  
The which she might right wele, [at] every tyde,<sup>20</sup>  
If that her liste, out of my herte gyde.  
But it is so, that her list, in no wyse,  
Have pitè on my woful besinesse;  
And I ne can do no maner servyse  
That may me torne out of my hevinesse;<sup>25</sup>  
So woldè god, that she now wolde impresse  
Right in her herte my trouthe and eek good wille;  
And let me not, for lakke of mercy, spille.  
Now wele I woot why thus I smerte sore;  
For couthe I wele, as othere folkes, feyne,<sup>30</sup>  
Than neded me to live in peyne no more,  
But, whan I were from you, unteye my reyne,  
And, for the tyme, drawe in another cheyne.  
But woldè god that alle swich were y-knowe,  
And duely punisshed of hye and lowe.<sup>35</sup>  
Swich lyf defye I, bothe in thoughte and worde,  
For yet me were wel lever for to sterve  
Than in my herte for to make an horde  
Of any falshood; for, til deth to-kerve  
My herte and body, shal I never swerve<sup>40</sup>  
From you, that best may be my fynal cure,

But, at your liste, abyde myn aventure;  
And preye to you, noble seint Valentyne,  
My ladies herte that ye wolde embrace,  
And make her pitè to me more enclyne<sup>45</sup>  
That I may stonden in her noble grace  
In hasty tyme, whyl I have lyves space:  
For yit wiste I never noon, of my lyve,  
So litel hony in so fayre hyve.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## NOTES TO THE PRECEDING POEMS.

### XXIV.

—I take the title from l. 25; cf. Troil. i. 287.

The metre exhibits the nine-line stanza, as in *Anelida*, 211-9; but the same rimes recur in all three stanzas. The six-line Envoy, with the rime-formula *a b a b a a*, is unique in Chaucer. There are nineteen lines ending in *-aunce*, twelve in *-esse*, and two in *-ede*.

1. Note how ll. 1 and 2 are re-echoed in ll. 32, 33. For a similar effect, see *Anelida*, 211, 350.

8. *ful chose*, fully chosen; parallel to *ful drive* in C. T., F 1230.

14. *souvenance*, remembrance; not found elsewhere in Chaucer.

16. *humblely* is trisyllabic; see Leg. 156, Troil. ii. 1719, v. 1354.

20. *lo* emphasises *swich*; cf. *lo, this*, T. v. 54; *lo, which*, T. iv. 1231.

22. *allegeaunce*, alleviation; the verb *allegge* is in the Glossary.

26. *outrance*, extreme violence, great hurt; see Godefroy.

27. *unbuxumnesse*, unsubmitiveness; cf. *buxumnesse*, Truth, 15.

### XXV.

—I take the title from l. 26; cf. Compl. to his Lady, 41, 64.

1. Cf. Amorous Complaint, 87; Troil. v. 1318, i. 960.

3. 'Love hath me taught no more of his art,' &c.; Compl. to his Lady, 42-3.

9. Cf. Compl. of Mars, 13, 14; p. xxx above, l. 43; Parl. Foules, 386-9; Amorous Complaint, 85-6.

19. *eche*, augment; 'hir sorwes *eche*,' T. i. 705.

27. 'And to your trouthe ay I me recomaunde;' T. v. 1414. 'I am a *boistous* man;' C. T., H 211.

## XXVI.

—I take the title from l. 12; see T. v. 232, 638, 1392.

7. *sounde*, heal, cure; as in *Anelida*, 242.

8. Perhaps read *hertes sorwes leche*; see T. ii. 1066.

10. Cf. ‘as *in* his speche;’ T. ii. 1069.

26. *impresse*; cf. T. ii. 1371.

28. *spille*; cf. Compl. to his Lady, 121.

32. *reyne*, bridle. For this image, cf. *Anelida*, 184.

39. MS. *deth the kerue*. As *e* and *o* are constantly confused, the prefix *to* (written apart) may have looked like *te*, and would easily be altered to *the*. Cf. *forkerveth* in the Manc. Tale, H 340.

47. Here *spac-e* rimes with *embrac-e*, but in l. 5 it rimes with *allas*. This variation is no worse than the riming of *embrace* with *compas* in Proverbs, 8 (vol. i. p. 407). Cf. *plac-e* in C. T., B 1910, with its variant *plas*, B 1971.

N. B. The Complaints numbered XXV and XXVI are obviously by the same author; compare XXV. 26 with XXVI. 15; XXV. 9 with XXVI. 43; and XXV. 29-31 with XXVI. 39, 40. They were probably written nearly at the same time.



[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## THE CANTERBURY TALES. GROUP A.

### THE PROLOGUE.

Here biginneth the Book of the Tales of Caunterbury.

WHAN that Aprille with his shoures sote  
The droghte of Marche hath perced to the rote,  
And bathed every veyne in swich licour,  
Of which vertu engendred is the flour;  
Whan Zephirus eek with his swete breeth<sup>5</sup>  
Inspired hath in every holt and heeth  
The tendre croppes, and the yonge sonne  
Hath in the Ram his halfe cours y-ronne,  
And smale fowles maken melodye,  
That slepen al the night with open ye,<sup>10</sup>  
(So priketh hem nature in hir corages):  
Than longen folk to goon on pilgrimages  
(And palmers for to seken straunge strondes)  
To ferne halwes, couthe in sondry londes;  
And specially, from every shires ende<sup>15</sup>  
Of Engelond, to Caunterbury they wende,  
The holy blisful martir for to seke,  
That hem hath holpen, whan that they were seke.  
Bifel that, in that seson on a day,  
In Southwerk at the Tabard as I lay<sup>20</sup>  
Redy to wenden on my pilgrimage  
To Caunterbury with ful devout corage,  
At night was come in-to that hostelrye  
Wel nyne and twenty in a companye,  
Of sondry folk, by aventure y-falle<sup>25</sup>  
In felawshipe, and pilgrims were they alle,  
That toward Caunterbury wolden ryde;  
The chambres and the stables weren wyde,  
And wel we weren esed atte beste.  
And shortly, whan the sonne was to reste,<sup>30</sup>  
So hadde I spoken with hem everichon,  
That I was of hir felawshipe anon,  
And made forward erly for to ryse,  
To take our wey, ther as I yow devyse.  
But natheles, whyl I have tyme and space,<sup>35</sup>  
Er that I ferther in this tale pace,  
Me thinketh it acordaunt to resoun,  
To telle yow al the condicioun

Of ech of hem, so as it semed me,  
And whiche they weren, and of what degree;40  
And eek in what array that they were inne:  
And at a knight than wol I first biginne.  
A Knight ther was, and that a worthy man,  
That fro the tyme that he first bigan  
To ryden out, he loved chivalrye,45  
Trouthe and honour, fredom and curteisye.  
Ful worthy was he in his lordes werre,  
And therto hadde he riden (no man ferre)  
As wel in Cristendom as hethenesse,  
And ever honoured for his worthinesse.50  
At Alisaundre he was, whan it was wonne;  
Ful ofte tyme he hadde the bord bigonne  
Aboven alle naciouns in Pruce.  
In Lettow hadde he reysed and in Ruce,  
No Cristen man so ofte of his degree.55  
In Gernade at the sege eek hadde he be  
Of Algezir, and riden in Belmarye.  
At Lyeyes was he, and at Satalye,  
Whan they were wonne; and in the Grete See  
At many a noble aryve hadde he be.60  
At mortal batailles hadde he been fiftene,  
And foughten for our feith at Tramissene  
In listes thryes, and ay slayn his foo.  
This ilke worthy knight had been also  
Somtyme with the lord of Palatye,65  
Ageyn another hethen in Turkye:  
And evermore he hadde a sovereyn prys.  
And though that he were worthy, he was wys,  
And of his port as meke as is a mayde.  
He never yet no vileinye ne sayde70  
In al his lyf, un-to no maner wight.  
He was a verray parfit gentil knight.  
But for to tellen yow of his array,  
His hors were gode, but he was nat gay.  
Of fustian he wered a gipoun75  
Al bismotered with his habergeoun;  
For he was late y-come from his viage,  
And wente for to doon his pilgrimage.  
With him ther was his sone, a yong Squyer,  
A lovyere, and a lusty bacheler,80  
With lokkes crulle, as they were leyd in presse.  
Of twenty yeer of age he was, I gesse.  
Of his stature he was of evene lengthe,  
And wonderly deliver, and greet of strengthe.  
And he had been somtyme in chivachye,85  
In Flaundes, in Artoys, and Picardye,

Knight

Squyer.

And born him wel , as of so litel space,  
In hope to stonden in his lady grace.  
Embrouded was he, as it were a mede  
Al ful of fresshe floures, whyte and rede.90  
Singing he was, or floytinge, al the day;  
He was as fresh as is the month of May.  
Short was his goune, with sleeves longe and wyde.  
Wel coude he sitte on hors, and faire ryde.  
He coude songes make and wel endyte,95  
Iuste and eek daunce, and wel purtreye and wryte.  
So hote he lovede, that by nightertale  
He sleep namore than dooth a nightingale.  
Curteys he was, lowly, and servisable,  
And carf biforn his fader at the table.100  
A Yeman hadde he, and servaunts namo  
At that tyme, for him liste ryde so;  
And he was clad in cote and hood of grene;  
A sheef of pecok-arwes brighte and kene  
Under his belt he bar ful thriftily;105  
(Wel coude he dresse his takel yemanly:  
His arwes drouped noght with fetheres lowe),  
And in his hand he bar a mighty bowe.  
A not-heed hadde he, with a broun visage.  
Of wode-craft wel coude he al the usage.110  
Upon his arm he bar a gay bracer,  
And by his syde a swerd and a bokeler,  
And on that other syde a gay daggere,  
Harneised wel, and sharp as point of spere;  
A Cristofre on his brest of silver shene.115  
An horn he bar, the bawdrik was of grene;  
A forster was he, soothly, as I gesse.  
Ther was also a Nonne, a Prioresse,  
That of hir smyling was ful simple and coy;  
Hir gretteste ooth was but by sēynt Loy;120  
And she was cleped madame Eglentyne.  
Ful wel she song the service divyne,  
Entuned in hir nose ful semely;  
And Frensh she spak ful faire and fetisly,  
After the scole of Stratford atte Bowe,125  
For Frensh of Paris was to hir unknowe.  
At mete wel y-taught was she with-alle;  
She leet no morsel from hir lippes falle,  
Ne wette hir fingres in hir sauce depe.  
Wel coude she carie a morsel, and wel kepe,130  
That no drope ne fille up-on hir brest.  
In curteisye was set ful muche hir lest.  
Hir over lippe wyped she so clene,  
That in hir coppe was no ferthing sene

Yeman.

Prioresse.

Of grece, whan she dronken hadde hir draughte.135  
 Ful semely after hir mete she raughte,  
 And sikerly she was of greet disport,  
 And ful plesaunt, and amiable of port,  
 And peyned hir to countrefete chere  
 Of court, and been estatlich of manere,140  
 And to ben holden digne of reverence.  
 But, for to speken of hir conscience,  
 She was so charitable and so pitous,  
 She wolde wepe, if that she sawe a mous  
 Caught in a trappe, if it were deed or bledde.145  
 Of smale houndes had she, that she fedde  
 With rosted flesh, or milk and wastel-breed.  
 But sore weep she if oon of hem were deed,  
 Or if men smoot it with a yerde smerte:  
 And al was conscience and tendre herte.150  
 Ful semely hir wimpel pinched was;  
 Hir nose tretys; hir eyen greye as glas;  
 Hir mouth ful smal, and ther-to softe and reed;  
 But sikerly she hadde a fair forheed;  
 It was almost a spanne brood, I trowe;155  
 For, hardily, she was nat undergrowe.  
 Ful fetis was hir cloke, as I was war.  
 Of smal coral aboute hir arm she bar  
 A peire of bedes, gauded al with grene;  
 And ther-on heng a broche of gold ful shene,160  
 On which ther was first write a crowned A,  
 And after, *Amor vincit omnia*.  
 Another Nonne with hir hadde she,  
 That was hir chapeleyne, and Preestes three.  
 A Monk ther was, a fair for the maistrye,  
 An out-rydere, that lovede venerye;166  
 A manly man, to been an abbot able.  
 Ful many a deyntee hors hadde he in stable:  
 And, whan he rood, men mighte his brydel here  
 Ginglen in a whistling wind as clere,170  
 And eek as loude as dooth the chapel-belle,  
 Ther as this lord was keper of the celle.  
 The reule of seint Maure or of seint Beneit,  
 By-cause that it was old and som-del streit,  
 This ilke monk leet olde thinges pace,175  
 And held after the newe world the space.  
 He yaf nat of that text a pulled hen,  
 That seith, that hunters been nat holy men;  
 Ne that a monk, whan he is cloisterlees,  
 Is lykned til a fish that is waterlees;180  
 This is to seyn, a monk out of his cloistre.  
 But thilke text held he nat worth an oistre;

Nonne.
3 Preestes.
Monk.

And I seyde, his opinioun was good.  
What sholde he studie, and make him-selven wood,  
Upon a book in cloistre alwey to poure,185  
Or swinken with his handes, and laboure,  
As Austin bit? How shal the world be served?  
Lat Austin have his swink to him reserved.  
Therefore he was a pricasour aright;  
Grehoundes he hadde, as swifte as fowel in flight;190  
Of priking and of hunting for the hare  
Was al his lust, for no cost wolde he spare.  
I seigh his sleves purfiled at the hond  
With grys, and that the fyneste of a lond;  
And, for to festne his hood under his chin,195  
He hadde of gold y-wroght a curious pin:  
A love-knotte in the gretter ende ther was.  
His heed was balled, that shoon as any glas,  
And eek his face, as he had been anoint.  
He was a lord ful fat and in good point;200  
His eyen stepe, and rollinge in his heed,  
That stemed as a forneys of a leed;  
His botes souple, his hors in greet estat.  
Now certainly he was a fair prelat;  
He was nat pale as a for-pyned goost.205  
A fat swan loved he best of any roost.  
His palfrey was as broun as is a berye.  
A Frere ther was, a wantown and a merye,  
A limitour, a ful solempne man.  
In alle the ordres foure is noon that can210  
So muche of daliaunce and fair langage.  
He hadde maad ful many a mariage  
Of yonge wommen, at his owne cost.  
Un-to his ordre he was a noble post.  
Ful wel biloved and famulier was he215  
With frankeleyns over-al in his contree,  
And eek with worthy wommen of the toun:  
For he had power of confessioun,  
As seyde him-self, more than a curat,  
For of his ordre he was licentiat.220  
Ful swetely herde he confessioun,  
And plesaunt was his absolucioun;  
He was an esy man to yeve penaunce  
Ther as he wiste to han a good pitaunce;  
For unto a povre ordre for to yive225  
Is signe that a man is wel y-shrive.  
For if he yaf, he dorste make avaunt,  
He wiste that a man was repentaunt.  
For many a man so hard is of his herte,  
He may nat wepe al-thogh him sore smerte.230

Frere.

Therefore, in stede of weping and preyeres,  
Men moot yeve silver to the povre freres.  
His tipet was ay farsed ful of knyves  
And pinnes, for to yeven faire wyves.  
And certainly he hadde a mery note;235  
Wel coude he singe and pleyen on a rote.  
Of yeddinges he bar utterly the prys.  
His nekke whyt was as the flour-de-lys;  
Ther-to he strong was as a champioun.  
He knew the tavernes wel in every toun,240  
And everich hostiler and tappestere  
Bet than a lazar or a beggestere;  
For un-to swich a worthy man as he  
Acorded nat, as by his facultee,  
To have with seke lazars aqueyntaunce.245  
It is nat honest, it may nat avaunce  
For to delen with no swich poraille,  
But al with riche and sellers of vitaille.  
And over-al, ther as profit sholde aryse,  
Curteys he was, and lowly of servyse.250  
Ther nas no man no-wher so vertuous.  
He was the beste beggere in his hous;  
[And yaf a certeyn ferme for the graunt;252 b  
Noon of his bretheren cam ther in his haunt;]252 c  
For thogh a widwe hadde nought a sho,  
So plesaunt was his "*In principio*,"  
Yet wolde he have a ferthing, er he wente.255  
His purchas was wel bettre than his rente.  
And rage he coude, as it were right a whelpe.  
In love-dayes ther coude he muchel helpe.(260)  
For there he was nat lyk a cloisterer,  
With a thredbar cope, as is a povre scoler,260  
But he was lyk a maister or a pope.  
Of double worsted was his semi-cope,  
That rounded as a belle out of the presse.  
Somwhat he lipped, for his wantownesse,  
To make his English swete up-on his tonge;265  
And in his harping, whan that he had songe,  
His eyen twinkled in his heed aright,  
As doon the sterres in the frosty night.(270)  
This worthy limitour was cleped Huberd.  
A Marchant was ther with a forked berd,  
In mottelee, and hye on horse he sat,271  
Up-on his heed a Flaundrish bever hat;  
His botes clasped faire and fetisly.  
His resons he spak ful solempnely,  
Souninge alway thencrees of his winning.275  
He wolde the see were kept for any thing

Marchant.

Bitwixe Middelburgh and Orewelle.  
Wel coude he in eschaunge sheeldes selle.(280)  
This worthy man ful wel his wit bisette;  
Ther wiste no wight that he was in dette,280  
So estatly was he of his governaunce,  
With his bargaynes, and with his chevisaunce.  
For sothe he was a worthy man with-alle,  
But sooth to seyn, I noot how men him calle.  
A Clerk ther was of Oxenford also,  
That un-to logik hadde longe y-go.286  
As lene was his hors as is a rake,  
And he nas nat right fat, I undertake;(290)  
But loked holwe, and ther-to soberly.  
Ful thredbar was his overest courtepy;290  
For he had geten him yet no benefyce,  
Ne was so worldly for to have offyce.  
For him was lever have at his beddes heed  
Twenty bokes, clad in blak or reed,  
Of Aristotle and his philosophye,295  
Than robes riche, or fithete, or gay sautrye.  
But al be that he was a philosophre,  
Yet hadde he but litel gold in cofre;(300)  
But al that he mighte of his freendes hente,  
On bokes and on lerninge he it spente,300  
And bisily gan for the soules preye  
Of hem that yaf him wher-with to scoleye.  
Of studie took he most cure and most hede  
Noght o word spak he more than was nede,  
And that was seyde in forme and reverence,305  
And short and quik, and ful of hy sentence.  
Souninge in moral vertu was his speche,  
And gladly wolde he lerne, and gladly teche.(310)  
A Sergeant of the Lawe, war and wys,  
That often hadde been at the parvys,310  
Ther was also, ful riche of excellence.  
Discreet he was, and of greet reverence:  
He semed swich, his wordes weren so wyse.  
Iustyce he was ful often in assyse,  
By patente, and by pleyn commissioun;315  
For his science, and for his heigh renoun  
Of fees and robes hadde he many oon.  
So greet a purchasour was no-wher noon.(320)  
Al was fee simple to him in effect,  
His purchasing mighte nat been infect.320  
No-wher so bisy a man as he ther nas,  
And yet he semed bisier than he was.  
In termes hadde he caas and domes alle,  
That from the tyme of king William were falle.

Clerk.

Man of Lawe.

Therto he coude endyte, and make a thing,325  
 Ther coude no wight pinche at his wryting;  
 And every statut coude he pleyn by rote.  
 He rood but hoomly in a medlee cote(330)  
 Girt with a ceint of silk, with barres smale;  
 Of his array telle I no lenger tale.330  
 A Frankeleyn was in his companye;  
 Whyt was his berd, as is the dayesy. Frankeleyn.  
 Of his complexioun he was sangwyn.  
 Wel loved he by the morwe a sop in wyn.  
 To liven in delyt was ever his wone,335  
 For he was Epicurus owne sone,  
 That heeld opinioun, that pleyn delyt  
 Was verrailly felicitee parfyt.(340)  
 An housholdere, and that a greet, was he;  
 Seint Iulian he was in his contree.340  
 His breed, his ale, was alwey after oon;  
 A bettre envyned man was no-wher noon.  
 With-oute bake mete was never his hous,  
 Of fish and flesh, and that so plentevous,  
 It snewed in his hous of mete and drinke,345  
 Of alle deyntees that men coude thinke.  
 After the sondry sesons of the yeer,  
 So chaunged he his mete and his soper.(350)  
 Ful many a fat partrich hadde he in mewe,  
 And many a breem and many a luce in stewe.  
 Wo was his cook, but-if his sauce were  
 Poynaunt and sharp, and redy al his gere.  
 His table dormant in his halle alway  
 Stood redy covered al the longe day.  
 At sessiouns ther was he lord and sire;355  
 Ful ofte tyme he was knight of the shire.  
 An anal and a gipser al of silk  
 Heng at his girdel, whyt as morne milk.(360)  
 A shirreve hadde he been, and a countour;  
 Was no-wher such a worthy vavasour.360  
 An Haberdassher and a Carpenter,  
 A Webbe, a Dyere, and a Tapicer,  
 Were with us eek, clothed in o liveree,  
 Of a solempne and greet fraternitee.  
 Ful fresh and newe hir gere apyked was;365  
 Hir knyves were y-chaped noght with bras,  
 But al with silver, wrought ful clene and weel,  
 Hir girdles and hir pouches every-deel.(370)  
 Wel semed ech of hem a fair burgeys,  
 To sitten in a yeldhalle on a deys.370  
 Everich, for the wisdom that he can,  
 Was shaply for to been an alderman.

Frankeleyn.

Haberdassher.

Carpenter.

Webbe.

Dyere.

Tapicer.



For catel hadde they y-nogh and rente,  
And eek hir wyves wolde it wel assente;  
And elles certein were they to blame.375  
It is ful fair to been y-clept "*ma dame*,"  
And goon to vigilyës al bifore,  
And have a mantel royalliche y-bore.(380)  
A Cook they hadde with hem for the nones,  
To boille the chiknes with the mary-bones,380  
And poudre-marchant tart, and galingale.  
Wel coude he knowe a draughte of London ale.  
He coude roste, and sethe, and broille, and frye,  
Maken mortreux, and wel bake a pye.  
But greet harm was it, as it thoughte me,385  
That on his shine a mormal hadde he;  
For blankmanger, that made he with the beste.(389)  
A Shipman was ther, woning fer by weste:  
For aught I woot, he was of Dertemouthe.  
He rood up-on a rouncy, as he couthe,390  
In a gowne of falding to the knee.  
A daggere hanging on a laas hadde he  
Aboute his nekke under his arm adoun.  
The hote somer had maad his hewe al broun;  
And, certainly, he was a good felawe.395  
Ful many a draughte of wyn had he y-drawe  
From Burdeux-ward, whyl that the chapman sleep.  
Of nyce conscience took he no keep.(400)  
If that he faught, and hadde the hyer hond,  
By water he sente hem hoom to every lond.400  
But of his craft to rekene wel his tydes,  
His stremes and his daungers him bisydes,  
His herberwe and his mone, his lodemenage,  
Ther nas noon swich from Hulle to Cartage.  
Hardy he was, and wys to undertake;405  
With many a tempest hadde his berd been shake.  
He knew wel alle the havenes, as they were,  
From Gootlond to the cape of Finistere,(410)  
And every cryke in Britayne and in Spayne;  
His barge y-cleped was the Maudelayne.410  
With us ther was a Doctour of Phisyk,  
In al this world ne was ther noon him lyk  
To speke of phisik and of surgerye;  
For he was grounded in astronomye.  
He kepte his pacient a ful greet del415  
In houres, by his magik naturel.  
Wel coude he fortunen the ascendent  
Of his images for his pacient.(420)  
He knew the cause of everich maladye,  
Were it of hoot or cold, or moiste, or drye,420

Cook.

Shipman.

Doctour.

And where engendred, and of what humour;  
He was a verrey parfit practisour.  
The cause y-knowe, and of his harm the rote,  
Anon he yaf the seke man his bote.  
Ful redy hadde he his apothecaries,425  
To sende him drogges and his letuaries,  
For ech of hem made other for to winne;  
Hir frendschipe nas nat newe to biginne.(430)  
Wel knew he the olde Esculapius,  
And Deiscorides, and eek Rufus,430  
Old Ypocras, Haly, and Galien;  
Serapion, Razis, and Avicen;  
Averrois, Damascien, and Constantyn;  
Bernard, and Gatesden, and Gilbertyn.  
Of his diete mesurable was he,435  
For it was of no superfluitee,  
But of greet norissing and digestible.  
His studie was but litel on the Bible.(440)  
In sangwin and in pers he clad was al,  
Lyned with taffata and with sendal;440  
And yet he was but esy of dispence;  
He kepte that he wan in pestilence.  
For gold in phisik is a cordial,  
Therefore he lovede gold in special.  
A good Wyf was ther of bisyde Bathe,  
But she was som-del deaf, and that was scathe.446  
Of clooth-making she hadde swiche an haunt,  
She passed hem of Ypres and of Gaunt.(450)  
In al the parisshe wyf ne was ther noon  
That to the offring bifore hir sholde goon;450  
And if ther dide, certeyn, so wrooth was she,  
That she was out of alle charitee.  
Hir coverchiefs ful fyne were of ground;  
I dorste swere they weyeden ten pound  
That on a Sondag were upon hir heed.455  
Hir hosen weren of fyn scarlet reed,  
Ful streite y-teyd, and shoos ful moiste and newe.  
Bold was hir face, and fair, and reed of hewe.(460)  
She was a worthy womman al hir lyve,  
Housbondes at chirche-dore she hadde fyve,460  
Withouten other companye in youthe;  
But therof nedeth nat to speke as nouthe.  
And thryes hadde she been at Ierusalem;  
She hadde passed many a straunge stroom;  
At Rome she hadde been, and at Boloigne,465  
In Galice at seint Iame, and at Coloigne.  
She coude muche of wandring by the weye.  
Gat-tothed was she, soothly for to seye.(470)

Wyf of Bathe.

Up-on an amblere esily she sat,  
Y-wimpled wel, and on hir heed an hat<sup>470</sup>  
As brood as is a bokeler or a targe;  
A foot-mantel aboute hir hipes large,  
And on hir feet a paire of spores sharpe.  
In felawschip wel coude she laughe and carpe.  
Of remedies of love she knew per-chaunce,<sup>475</sup>  
For she coude of that art the olde daunce.  
A good man was ther of religioun,  
And was a povre Persoun of a toun;<sup>(480)</sup>  
But riche he was of holy thought and werk.  
He was also a lerned man, a clerk,<sup>480</sup>  
That Cristes gospel trewely wolde preche;  
His parisshe devoutly wolde he teche.  
Benigne he was, and wonder diligent,  
And in adversitee ful pacient;  
And swich he was y-preved ofte sythes.<sup>485</sup>  
Ful looth were him to cursen for his tythes,  
But rather wolde he yeven, out of doute,  
Un-to his povre parisshe aboute<sup>(490)</sup>  
Of his offring, and eek of his substaunce.  
He coude in litel thing han suffisaunce.<sup>490</sup>  
Wyd was his parisshe, and houses fer a-sonder,  
But he ne lafte nat, for reyn ne thonder,  
In siknes nor in meschief, to visyte  
The ferreste in his parisshe, muche and lyte,  
Up-on his feet, and in his hand a staf.<sup>495</sup>  
This noble ensample to his sheep he yaf,  
That first he wroghte, and afterward he taughte;  
Out of the gospel he tho wordes caughte;<sup>(500)</sup>  
And this figure he added eek ther-to,  
That if gold ruste, what shal iren do?<sup>500</sup>  
For if a preest be foul, on whom we truste,  
No wonder is a lewed man to ruste;  
And shame it is, if a preest take keep,  
A shiten shepherde and a clene sheep.  
Wel oghte a preest ensample for to yive,<sup>505</sup>  
By his clenness, how that his sheep shold live.  
He sette nat his benefice to hyre,  
And leet his sheep encombred in the myre,<sup>(510)</sup>  
And ran to London, un-to sēynt Poules,  
To seken him a chaunterie for soules,<sup>510</sup>  
Or with a bretherhed to been withholde;  
But dwelte at hoom, and kepte wel his folde,  
So that the wolf ne made it nat miscarie;  
He was a shepherde and no mercenarie.  
And though he holy were, and vertuous,<sup>515</sup>  
He was to sinful man nat despitous,

Persoun.

Ne of his speche daungerous ne digne,  
But in his teching discreet and benigne.(520)  
To drawn folk to heven by fairnesse  
By good ensample, was his businesse:520  
But it were any persone obstinat,  
What-so he were, of heigh or lowe estat,  
Him wolde he snibben sharply for the nones.  
A bettre preest, I trowe that nowher noon is.  
He wayted after no pompe and reverence,525  
Ne maked him a spyced conscience,  
But Cristes lore, and his apostles twelve,  
He taughte, and first he folwed it him-selve.(530)  
With him ther was a Plowman, was his brother,  
That hadde y-lad of dong ful many a fother,530  
A trewe swinker and a good was he,  
Livinge in pees and parfit charitee.  
God loved he best with al his hole herte  
At alle tymes, thogh him gamed or smerte,  
And thanne his neighebour right as him-selve.535  
He wolde thresshe, and ther-to dyke and delve,  
For Cristes sake, for every povre wight,  
Withouten hyre, if it lay in his might.(540)  
His tythes payed he ful faire and wel,  
Bothe of his propre swink and his catel.540  
In a tabard he rood upon a mere.  
Ther was also a Reve and a Millere,  
A Somnour and a Pardoner also,  
A Maunciple, and my-self; ther were namo.  
The Miller was a stout carl, for the nones,  
Ful big he was of braun, and eek of bones;546  
That proved wel, for over-al ther he cam,  
At wrastling he wolde have alwey the ram.(550)  
He was short-sholdred, brood, a thikke knarre,  
Ther nas no dore that he nolde heve of harre,550  
Or breke it, at a renning, with his heed.  
His berd as any sowe or fox was reed,  
And ther-to brood, as though it were a spade.  
Up-on the cop right of his nose he hade  
A werte, and ther-on stood a tuft of heres,555  
Reed as the bristles of a sowes eres;  
His nose-thirles blake were and wyde.  
A swerd and bokeler bar he by his syde;(560)  
His mouth as greet was as a greet forneys.  
He was a Ianglere and a goliardeys,560  
And that was most of sinne and harlotryes.  
Wel coude he stelen corn, and tollen thryes;  
And yet he hadde a thombe of gold, pardee.  
A whyt cote and a blew hood wered he.

Plowman.

Miller.

A baggepype wel coude he blowe and sowne,565  
And ther-with-al he broghte us out of towne.  
A gentil Maunciple was ther of a temple,  
Of which achatours mighte take exemple(570)  
For to be wyse in bying of vitaille.  
For whether that he payde, or took by taille,570  
Algate he wayted so in his achat,  
That he was ay biforn and in good stat.  
Now is nat that of God a ful fair grace,  
That swich a lewed mannes wit shal pace  
The wisdom of an heep of lerned men?575  
Of maistres hadde he mo than thryes ten,  
That were of lawe expert and curious;  
Of which ther were a doseyn in that hous,(580)  
Worthy to been stiwardes of rente and lond  
Of any lord that is in Engelond,580  
To make him live by his propre good,  
In honour dettelees, but he were wood,  
Or live as scarsly as him list desire;  
And able for to helpen al a shire  
In any cas that mighte falle or happe;585  
And yit this maunciple sette hir aller cappe.  
The Reve was a splendre colerik man,  
His berd was shave as ny as ever he can.(590)  
His heer was by his eres round y-shorn.  
His top was dokked lyk a preest biforn.590  
Ful longe were his legges, and ful lene,  
Y-lyk a staf, ther was no calf y-sene.  
Wel coude he kepe a gerner and a binne;  
Ther was noon auditour coude on him winne.  
Wel wiste he, by the droghte, and by the reyn,595  
The yelding of his seed, and of his greyn.  
His lordes sheep, his neet, his dayerye,  
His swyn, his hors, his stoor, and his pultrye,(600)  
Was hoolly in this reves governing,  
And by his covenaut yaf the rekening,600  
Sin that his lord was twenty yeer of age;  
Ther coude no man bringe him in arrerage.  
Ther nas baillif, ne herde, ne other hyne,  
That he ne knew his sleighte and his covyne;  
They were adrad of him, as of the deeth.605  
His woning was ful fair up-on an heeth,  
With grene trees shadwed was his place.  
He coude bettre than his lord purchase.(610)  
Ful riche he was astored prively,  
His lord wel coude he plesen subtilly,610  
To yeve and lene him of his owne good,  
And have a thank, and yet a cote and hood.

Maunciple.

Reve.

In youthe he lerned hadde a good mister;  
He was a wel good wrighte, a carpenter.  
This reve sat up-on a ful good stot,615  
That was al pomely grey, and highte Scot.  
A long surcote of pers up-on he hade,  
And by his syde he bar a rusty blade.(620)  
Of Northfolk was this reve, of which I telle,  
Bisyde a toun men clepen Baldeswelle.620  
Tukked he was, as is a frere, aboute,  
And ever he rood the hindreste of our route.  
A Somnour was ther with us in that place,  
That hadde a fyr-reed cherubinnes face,  
For sawcefleem he was, with eyen narwe.625  
As hoot he was, and lecherous, as a sparwe;  
With scalled[Here endeth the prolog of this book; and here biginneth the first  
tale, which is the Knightes Tale.](#)

Somnour.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## THE KNIGHTES TALE.

*Iamque domos patrias, Scithice post aspera gentis Prelia, laurigero, &c.*

[Statius, *Theb.* xii. 519.]

WHYLOM, as olde stories tellen us,  
Ther was a duk that highte Theseus;860  
Of Athenes he was lord and governour,  
And in his tyme swich a conquerour,  
That gretter was ther noon under the sonne.  
Ful many a riche contree hadde he wonne;  
What with his wisdom and his chivalrye,865  
He conquered al the regne of Femenye,  
That whylom was y-cleped Scithia;  
And weddede the quene Ipolita,(10)  
And broghte hir hoom with him in his contree  
With muchel glorie and greet solempnitee,870  
And eek hir yonge suster Emelye.  
And thus with victorie and with melodye  
Lete I this noble duk to Athenes ryde,  
And al his hoost, in armes, him bisyde.  
And certes, if it nere to long to here,875  
I wolde han told yow fully the manere,  
How wonnen was the regne of Femenye  
By Theseus, and by his chivalrye;(20)  
And of the grete bataille for the nones  
Bitwixen Athenës and Amazones;880  
And how asseged was Ipolita,  
The faire hardy quene of Scithia;  
And of the feste that was at hir weddinge,  
And of the tempest at hir hoom-cominge;  
But al that thing I moot as now forbere.885  
I have, God woot, a large feeld to ere,  
And wayke been the oxen in my plough.  
The remenant of the tale is long y-nough.(30)  
I wol nat letten eek noon of this route;  
Lat every felawe telle his tale aboute,890  
And lat see now who shal the soper winne;  
And ther I lefte, I wol ageyn biginne.  
This duk, of whom I make menciouun,  
When he was come almost unto the toun,  
In al his wele and in his moste pryde,895  
He was war, as he caste his eye asyde,  
Wher that ther kneled in the hye weye  
A companye of ladies, tweye and tweye,(40)

Ech after other, clad in clothes blake;  
But swich a cry and swich a wo they make,900  
That in this world nis creature livinge,  
That herde swich another weymentinge;  
And of this cry they nolde never stenten,  
Til they the reynes of his brydel henten.  
'What folk ben ye, that at myn hoom-cominge905  
Perturben so my feste with cryinge?'  
Quod Theseus, 'have ye so greet envye  
Of myn honour, that thus compleyne and crye?(50)  
Or who hath yow misboden, or offended?  
And telleth me if it may been amended;910  
And why that ye ben clothed thus in blak?'  
The eldest lady of hem alle spak,  
When she hadde swowned with a deedly chere,  
That it was routhe for to seen and here,  
And seyde: 'Lord, to whom Fortune hath yiven915  
Victorie, and as a conquerour to liven,  
Noght greveth us your glorie and your honour;  
But we biseken mercy and socour.(60)  
Have mercy on our wo and our distresse.  
Som drope of pitee, thurgh thy gentillesse,920  
Up-on us wrecched wommen lat thou falle.  
For certes, lord, ther nis noon of us alle,  
That she nath been a duchesse or a quene;  
Now be we caitifs, as it is wel sene:  
Thanked be Fortune, and hir false wheel,925  
That noon estat assureth to be weel.  
And certes, lord, to abyden your presence,  
Here in the temple of the goddessse Clemence(70)  
We han ben waytinge al this fourtenight;  
Now help us, lord, sith it is in thy might.930  
I wrecche, which that wepe and waille thus,  
Was whylom wyf to king Capaneus,  
That starf at Thebes, cursed be that day!  
And alle we, that been in this array,  
And maken al this lamentacioun,935  
We losten alle our housbondes at that toun,  
Whyl that the sege ther-aboutte lay.  
And yet now the olde Creon, weylaway!(80)  
That lord is now of Thebes the citee,  
Fulfil of ire and of iniquitee,940  
He, for despyt, and for his tirannye,  
To do the dede bodyes vileinye,  
Of alle our lordes, whiche that ben slawe,  
Hath alle the bodyes on an heep y-drawe,  
And wol nat suffren hem, by noon assent,945  
Neither to been y-buried nor y-brent,



But maketh houndes ete hem in despyt.’  
And with that word, with-uten more respyt,(90)  
They fillen gruf, and cryden pitously,  
‘Have on us wrecched wommen som mercy,950  
And lat our sorwe sinken in thyn herte.’  
This gentil duk doun from his courser sterte  
With herte pitous, whan he herde hem speke.  
Him thoughte that his herte wolde breke,  
Whan he saugh hem so pitous and so mat,955  
That whylom weren of so greet estat.  
And in his armes he hem alle up hente,  
And hem conforteth in ful good entente;(100)  
And swoor his ooth, as he was trewe knight,  
He wolde doon so ferforthly his might960  
Up-on the tyraunt Creon hem to wreke,  
That al the peple of Grece sholde speke  
How Creon was of Theseus y-served,  
As he that hadde his deeth ful wel deserved.  
And right anoon, with-uten more abood,965  
His baner he desplayeth, and forth rood  
To Thebes-ward, and al his host bisyde;  
No neer Athenës wolde he go ne ryde,(110)  
Ne take his ese fully half a day,  
But onward on his wey that night he lay;970  
And sente anoon Ipolita the quene,  
And Emelye hir yonge suster shene,  
Un-to the toun of Athenës to dwelle;  
And forth he rit; ther nis namore to telle.  
The rede statue of Mars, with spere and targe,975  
So shyneth in his whyte baner large,  
That alle the feeldes gliteren up and doun;  
And by his baner born is his penoun(120)  
Of gold ful riche, in which ther was y-bete  
The Minotaur, which that he slough in Crete.980  
Thus rit this duk, thus rit this conquerour,  
And in his host of chivalrye the flour,  
Til that he cam to Thebes, and alighte  
Faire in a feeld, ther as he thoghte fighte.  
But shortly for to speken of this thing,985  
With Creon, which that was of Thebes king,  
He faught, and slough him manly as a knight  
In pleyn bataille, and putte the folk to flight;(130)  
And by assaut he wan the citee after,  
And rente adoun bothe wal, and sparre, and rafter;990  
And to the ladyes he restored agayn  
The bones of hir housbondes that were slayn,  
To doon obsequies, as was tho the gyse.  
But it were al to long for to devyse

The grete clamour and the waymentinge<sup>995</sup>  
That the ladyes made at the brenninge  
Of the bodyes, and the grete honour  
That Theseus, the noble conquerour,(140)  
Doth to the ladyes, whan they from him wente;  
But shortly for to telle is myn entente.1000  
Whan that this worthy duk, this Theseus,  
Hath Creon slayn, and wonne Thebes thus,  
Stille in that feeld he took al night his reste,  
And dide with al the contree as him leste.  
To ransake in the tas of bodyes dede,1005  
Hem for to strepe of harneys and of wede,  
The pilours diden bisnesse and cure,  
After the bataille and disconfiture.(150)  
And so bifel, that in the tas they founde,  
Thurgh-girt with many a grevous bloody wounde,1010  
Two yonge knightes ligging by and by,  
Bothe in oon armes, wroght ful richely,  
Of whiche two, Arcita hight that oon,  
And that other knight hight Palamon.  
Nat fully quike, ne fully dede they were,1015  
But by hir cote-armures, and by hir gere,  
The heraudes knewe hem best in special,  
As they that weren of the blood royal(160)  
Of Thebes, and of sustren two y-born.  
Out of the tas the pilours han hem torn,1020  
And han hem caried softe un-to the tente  
Of Theseus, and he ful sone hem sente  
To Athenës, to dwellen in prisoun  
Perpetuelly, he nolde no raunsoun.  
And whan this worthy duk hath thus y-don,1025  
He took his host, and hoom he rood anon  
With laurer crowned as a conquerour;  
And there he liveth, in Ioye and in honour,(170)  
Terme of his lyf; what nedeth wordes mo?  
And in a tour, in angwish and in wo,1030  
Dwellen this Palamoun and eek Arcite,  
For evermore, ther may no gold hem quyte.  
This passeth yeer by yeer, and day by day,  
Til it fil ones, in a morwe of May,  
That Emelye, that fairer was to sene1035  
Than is the lylie upon his stalke grene,  
And fressher than the May with floures newe—  
For with the rose colour stroof hir hewe,(180)  
I noot which was the fairer of hem two—  
Er it were day, as was hir wone to do,1040  
She was arisen, and al redy dight;  
For May wol have no slogardye a-night.

The sesoun priketh every gentil herte,  
And maketh him out of his sleep to sterte,  
And seith, 'Arys, and do thyn observaunce.' 1045  
This maked Emelye have remembraunce  
To doon honour to May, and for to ryse.  
Y-clothed was she fresh, for to devyse;(190)  
Hir yelow heer was broyded in a tresse,  
Bihinde hir bak, a yerde long, I gesse. 1050  
And in the gardin, at the sonne up-riste,  
She walketh up and down, and as hir liste  
She gadereth floures, party whyte and rede,  
To make a sotil gerland for hir hede,  
And as an aungel hevenly she song. 1055  
The grete tour, that was so thikke and strong,  
Which of the castel was the chief dongeoun,  
(Ther-as the knightes weren in prisoun,(200)  
Of whiche I tolde yow, and tellen shal)  
Was evene Ioynant to the gardin-wal, 1060  
Ther as this Emelye hadde hir pleyinge.  
Bright was the sonne, and cleer that morweninge,  
And Palamon, this woful prisoner,  
As was his wone, by leve of his gayler,  
Was risen, and romed in a chambre on heigh, 1065  
In which he al the noble citee seigh,  
And eek the gardin, ful of braunches grene,  
Ther-as this fresshe Emelye the shene(210)  
Was in hir walk, and romed up and down.  
This sorweful prisoner, this Palamoun, 1070  
Goth in the chambre, roming to and fro,  
And to him-self compleyning of his wo;  
That he was born, ful ofte he seyde, 'alas!'  
And so bifel, by aventure or cas,  
That thurgh a window, thikke of many a barre 1075  
Of yren greet, and square as any sparre,  
He caste his eye upon Emelya,  
And ther-with-al he bleynte, and cryde 'a!' (220)  
As though he stongen were un-to the herte.  
And with that cry Arcite anon up-sterde, 1080  
And seyde, 'Cosin myn, what eyleth thee,  
That art so pale and deedly on to see?  
Why crydestow? who hath thee doon offence?  
For Goddes love, tak al in pacience  
Our prisoun, for it may non other be; 1085  
Fortune hath yeven us this adversitee.  
Som wikke aspect or disposicioun  
Of Saturne, by sum constellacioun,(230)  
Hath yeven us this, al-though we hadde it sworn;  
So stood the heven whan that we were born; 1090

We moste endure it: this is the short and pleyn.’  
This Palamon answerde, and seyde ageyn,  
‘Cosyn, for sothe, of this opinioun  
Thou hast a veyn imaginacioun.  
This prison caused me nat for to crye.1095  
But I was hurt right now thurgh-out myn yē  
In-to myn herte, that wol my bane be.  
The fairnesse of that lady that I see(240)  
Yond in the gardin romen to and fro,  
Is cause of al my crying and my wo.1100  
I noot wher she be womman or goddesse;  
But Venus is it, soothly, as I gesse.’  
And ther-with-al on kneës down he fil,  
And seyde: ‘Venus, if it be thy wil  
Yow in this gardin thus to transfigure1105  
Bifore me, sorweful wrecche creature,  
Out of this prisoun help that we may scapen.  
And if so be my destinee be shapen(250)  
By eterne word to dyen in prisoun,  
Of our linage have som compassioun,1110  
That is so lowe y-broght by tirannye.’  
And with that word Arcite gan espye  
Wher-as this lady romed to and fro.  
And with that sighte hir beautee hurte him so,  
That, if that Palamon was wounded sore,1115  
Arcite is hurt as mucche as he, or more.  
And with a sigh he seyde pitously:  
‘The fresshe beautee sleeth me sodeynly(260)  
Of hir that rometh in the yonder place;  
And, but I have hir mercy and hir grace,1120  
That I may seen hir atte leeste weye,  
I nam but deed; ther nis namore to seye.’  
This Palamon, whan he tho wordes herde,  
Dispitously he loked, and answerde:  
‘Whether seistow this in ernest or in pley?’1125  
‘Nay,’ quod Arcite, ‘in ernest, by my fey!  
God help me so, me list ful yvele pleye.’  
This Palamon gan knitte his browes tweye:(270)  
‘It nere,’ quod he, ‘to thee no greet honour  
For to be fals, ne for to be traytour1130  
To me, that am thy cosin and thy brother  
Y-sworn ful depe, and ech of us til other,  
That never, for to dyen in the peyne,  
Til that the deeth departe shal us tweyne,  
Neither of us in love to hindren other,1135  
Ne in non other cas, my leve brother;  
But that thou sholdest trewely forthren me  
In every cas, and I shal forthren thee.(280)

This was thyn ooth, and myn also, certeyn;  
I wot right wel, thou darst it nat withseyn. 1140  
Thus artow of my counseil, out of doute.  
And now thou woldest falsly been aboute  
To love my lady, whom I love and serve,  
And ever shal, til that myn herte sterve.  
Now certes, fals Arcite, thou shalt nat so. 1145  
I loved hir first, and tolde thee my wo  
As to my counseil, and my brother sworn  
To forthre me, as I have told biforn. (290)  
For which thou art y-bounden as a knight  
To helpen me, if it lay in thy might, 1150  
Or elles artow fals, I dar wel seyn.’  
This Arcitë ful proudly spak ageyn,  
‘Thou shalt,’ quod he, ‘be rather fals than I;  
But thou art fals, I telle thee utterly;  
For *par amour* I loved hir first er thow. 1155  
What wiltow seyn? thou wistest nat yet now  
Whether she be a womman or goddesse!  
Thyn is affeccioun of holinesse, (300)  
And myn is love, as to a creature;  
For which I tolde thee myn aventure 1160  
As to my cosin, and my brother sworn.  
I pose, that thou lovedest hir biforn;  
Wostow nat wel the olde clerkes sawe,  
That ‘who shal yeve a lover any lawe?’  
Love is a gretter lawe, by my pan, 1165  
Than may be yeve to any erthly man.  
And therefore positif lawe and swich decree  
Is broke al-day for love, in ech degree. (310)  
A man moot nedes love, maugree his heed.  
He may nat fleen it, thogh he sholde be deed, 1170  
Al be she mayde, or widwe, or elles wyf.  
And eek it is nat lykly, al thy lyf,  
To stonden in hir grace; namore shal I;  
For wel thou woost thy-selven, verraily,  
That thou and I be dampned to prisoun 1175  
Perpetuelly; us gayneth no raunsoun.  
We stryve as dide the houndes for the boon,  
They foughte al day, and yet hir part was noon; (320)  
Ther cam a kyte, whyl that they were wrothe,  
And bar away the boon bitwixe hem bothe. 1180  
And therefore, at the kinges court, my brother,  
Ech man for him-self, ther is non other.  
Love if thee list; for I love and ay shal;  
And soothly, leve brother, this is al.  
Here in this prisoun mote we endure, 1185  
And everich of us take his aventure.’

Greet was the stryf and long bitwixe hem tweye,  
If that I hadde leyser for to seye;(330)  
But to theeffect. It happed on a day,  
(To telle it yow as shortly as I may)1190  
A worthy duk that highte Perotheus,  
That felawe was un-to duk Theseus  
Sin thilke day that they were children lyte,  
Was come to Athenes, his felawe to visyte,  
And for to pleye, as he was wont to do,1195  
For in this world he loved no man so:  
And he loved him as tendrely ageyn.  
So wel they loved , as olde bokes seyn,(340)  
That whan that oon was deed, sothly to telle,  
His felawe wente and soghte him down in helle;1200  
But of that story list me nat to wryte.  
Duk Perotheus loved wel Arcite,  
And hadde him knowe at Thebes yeer by yere;  
And fynally, at requeste and preyere  
Of Perotheus, with-oute any raunsoun,1205  
Duk Theseus him leet out of prisoun,  
Freely to goon, wher that him liste over-al,  
In swich a gyse, as I you tellen shal.(350)  
This was the forward, pleyedly for tendyte,  
Bitwixen Theseus and him Arcite:1210  
That if so were, that Arcite were y-founde  
Ever in his lyf, by day or night or stounde  
In any contree of this Theseus,  
And he were caught, it was acorded thus,  
That with a swerd he sholde lese his heed;1215  
Ther nas non other remedye ne reed,  
But taketh his leve, and homward he him spedde;  
Let him be war, his nekke lyth to wedde!(360)  
How greet a sorwe suffreth now Arcite!  
The death he feleth thurgh his herte smyte;1220  
He wepeth, wayleth, cryeth pitously;  
To sleen him-self he wayteth prively.  
He seyde, ‘Allas that day that I was born!  
Now is my prison worse than biforn;  
Now is me shape eternally to dwelle1225  
Noght in purgatorie, but in helle.  
Allas! that ever knew I Perotheus!  
For elles hadde I dwelled with Theseus(370)  
Y-fetered in his prisoun ever-mo.  
Than hadde I been in blisse, and nat in wo.1230  
Only the sighte of hir, whom that I serve,  
Though that I never hir grace may deserve,  
Wolde han suffised right y-nough for me.  
O dere cosin Palamon,’ quod he,

‘Thyn is the victorie of this aventure,1235  
Ful blisfully in prison maistow dure;  
In prison? certes nay, but in paradys!  
Wel hath fortune y-turned thee the dys,(380)  
That hast the sighte of hir, and I thabsence.  
For possible is, sin thou hast hir presence,1240  
And art a knight, a worthy and an able,  
That by som cas, sin fortune is chaungeable,  
Thou mayst to thy desyr som-tyme atteyne.  
But I, that am exyled, and bareyne  
Of alle grace, and in so greet despeir,1245  
That ther nis erthe, water, fyr, ne eir,  
Ne creature, that of hem maked is,  
That may me helpe or doon confort in this.(390)  
Wel oughte I sterve in wanhope and distresse;  
Farwel my lyf, my lust, and my gladnesse!1250  
Allas, why pleynen folk so in commune  
Of purveyaunce of God, or of fortune,  
That yeveth hem ful ofte in many a gyse  
Wel bettre than they can hem-self devyse?  
Som man desyreth for to han richesse,1255  
That cause is of his mordre or greet siknesse.  
And som man wolde out of his prison fayn,  
That in his hous is of his meynee slayn.(400)  
Infinite harmes been in this matere;  
We witen nat what thing we preyen here.1260  
We faren as he that dronke is as a mous;  
A dronke man wot wel he hath an hous,  
But he noot which the righte wey is thider;  
And to a dronke man the wey is slider.  
And certes, in this world so faren we;1265  
We seken faste after felicitee,  
But we goon wrong ful often, trewely.  
Thus may we seyen alle, and namely I,(410)  
That wende and hadde a greet opinioun,  
That, if I mighte escapen from prisoun,1270  
Than hadde I been in Ioye and perfit hele,  
Ther now I am exyled fro my wele.  
Sin that I may nat seen yow, Emelye,  
I nam but deed; ther nis no remedye.’  
Up-on that other syde Palamon,1275  
Whan that he wiste Arcite was agon,  
Swich sorwe he maketh, that the grete tour  
Resouneth of his youling and clamour.(420)  
The pure fettres on his shines grete  
Weren of his bittre salte teres wete.1280  
‘Allas!’ quod he, ‘Arcita, cosin myn,  
Of al our stryf, God woot, the fruyt is thyn.

Thow walkest now in Thebes at thy large,  
And of my wo thou yevest litel charge.  
Thou mayst, sin thou hast wisdom and manhede, 1285  
Assemblen alle the folk of our kinrede,  
And make a werre so sharp on this citee,  
That by som aventure, or som tretee, (430)  
Thou mayst have hir to lady and to wyf,  
For whom that I mot nedes lese my lyf. 1290  
For, as by wey of possibilitee,  
Sith thou art at thy large, of prison free,  
And art a lord, greet is thyn avauntage,  
More than is myn, that sterve here in a cage.  
For I mot wepe and wayle, whyl I live, 1295  
With al the wo that prison may me yive,  
And eek with peyne that love me yiveth also,  
That doubleth al my torment and my wo.' (440)  
Ther-with the fyr of Ielousye up-sterte  
With-inne his brest, and hente him by the herte 1300  
So woodly, that he lyk was to biholde  
The box-tree, or the asshen dede and colde.  
Tho seyde he; 'O cruel goddes, that governe  
This world with binding of your word eterne,  
And wryten in the table of athamaunt 1305  
Your parlement, and your eterne graunt,  
What is mankinde more un-to yow holde  
Than is the sheep, that rouketh in the folde? (450)  
For slayn is man right as another beste,  
And dwelleth eek in prison and areste, 1310  
And hath siknesse, and greet adversitee,  
And ofte tymes giltelees, pardee!  
What governaunce is in this prescience,  
That giltelees tormenteth innocence?  
And yet encreseth this al my penaunce, 1315  
That man is bounden to his observaunce,  
For Goddes sake, to letten of his wille,  
Ther as a beest may al his lust fulfille. (460)  
And whan a beest is deed, he hath no peyne;  
But man after his deeth moot wepe and pleyne, 1320  
Though in this world he have care and wo:  
With-uten doute it may stonden so.  
The answeere of this I lete to divynis,  
But wel I woot, that in this world gret pyne is.  
Allas! I see a serpent or a theef, 1325  
That many a trewe man hath doon mescheef,  
Goon at his large, and wher him list may turne.  
But I mot been in prison thurgh Saturne, (470)  
And eek thurgh Iuno, Ialous and eek wood,  
That hath destroyed wel ny al the blood 1330



Of Thebes, with his waste walles wyde.  
And Venus sleeth me on that other syde  
For Ielousye , and fere of him Arcite.’  
Now wol I stinte of Palamon a lyte,  
And lete him in his prison stille dwelle,1335  
And of Arcita forth I wol yow telle.  
The somer passeth, and the nightes longe  
Encresen double wyse the peynes stronge(480)  
Bothe of the lovere and the prisoner.  
I noot which hath the wofullere mester.1340  
For shortly for to seyn, this Palamoun  
Perpetuelly is dampned to prisoun,  
In cheynes and in fettres to ben deed;  
And Arcite is exyled upon his heed  
For ever-mo as out of that contree,1345  
Ne never-mo he shal his lady see.  
Yow loveres axe I now this questioun,  
Who hath the worse, Arcite or Palamoun?(490)  
That oon may seen his lady day by day,  
But in prison he moot dwelle alway.1350  
That other wher him list may ryde or go,  
But seen his lady shal he never-mo.  
Now demeth as yow liste, ye that can,  
For I wol telle forth as I bigan.

Explicit prima Pars. Sequitur pars secunda.

Whan that Arcite to Thebes comen was,1355  
Ful ofte a day he swelte and seyde ‘allas,’  
For seen his lady shal he never-mo.  
And shortly to concluden al his wo,(500)  
So muche sorwe had never creature  
That is, or shal, whyl that the world may dure.1360  
His sleep, his mete, his drink is him biraft,  
That lene he wex , and drye as is a shaft.  
His eyen holwe, and grisly to biholde;  
His hewe falwe, and pale as asshen colde,  
And solitarie he was, and ever allone,1365  
And wailling al the night, making his mone.  
And if he herde song or instrument,  
Then wolde he wepe, he mighte nat be stent;(510)  
So feble eek were his spirits , and so lowe,  
And chaunged so, that no man coude knowe1370  
His speche nor his vois, though men it herde.  
And in his gere, for al the world he ferde  
Nat oonly lyk the loveres maladye  
Of Hereos, but rather lyk manye  
Engendred of humour malencolyk,1375

Biforen, in his celle fantastyk.  
And shortly, turned was al up-so-doun  
Bothe habit and eek disposicioun(520)  
Of him, this woful lovere daun Arcite.  
What sholde I al-day of his wo endyte?1380  
Whan he endured hadde a yeer or two  
This cruel torment, and this peyne and wo,  
At Thebes, in his contree, as I seyde,  
Up-on a night, in sleep as he him leyde,  
Him thoughte how that the winged god Mercurie1385  
Biforn him stood, and bad him to be murye.  
His slepy yerde in hond he bar uprighte;  
An hat he werede up-on his heres brighte.(530)  
Arrayed was this god (as he took keep)  
As he was whan that Argus took his sleep;1390  
And seyde him thus: 'To Athenes shaltou wende;  
Ther is thee shapen of thy wo an ende.'  
And with that word Arcite wook and sterte.  
'Now trewely, how sore that me smerte,'  
Quod he, 'to Athenes right now wol I fare;1395  
Ne for the drede of deeth shal I nat spare  
To see my lady, that I love and serve;  
In hir presence I recche nat to sterve.'(540)  
And with that word he caughte a greet mirour,  
And saugh that chaunged was al his colour,1400  
And saugh his visage al in another kinde.  
And right anoon it ran him in his minde,  
That, sith his face was so disfigured  
Of maladye, the which he hadde endured,  
He mighte wel, if that he bar him lowe,1405  
Live in Athenes ever-more unknowe,  
And seen his lady wel ny day by day.  
And right anon he chaunged his array,(550)  
And cladde him as a povre laborer,  
And al allone, save oonly a squyer,1410  
That knew his privetee and al his cas,  
Which was disgysed povrely, as he was,  
To Athenes is he goon the nexte way.  
And to the court he wente up-on a day,  
And at the gate he profreth his servyse,1415  
To drugge and drawe, what so men wol devyse.  
And shortly of this matere for to seyn,  
He fil in office with a chamberleyn,(560)  
The which that dwelling was with Emelye.  
For he was wys, and coude soon aspye1420  
Of every servaunt, which that serveth here.  
Wel coude he hewen wode, and water bere,  
For he was yong and mighty for the nones,

And ther-to he was strong and big of bones  
To doon that any wight can him devyse.1425  
A yeer or two he was in this servyse,  
Page of the chambre of Emelye the brighte;  
And 'Philostrate' he seide that he highte.(570)  
But half so wel biloved a man as he  
Ne was ther never in court, of his degree;1430  
He was so gentil of condicioun,  
That thurghout al the court was his renoun.  
They seyden, that it were a charitee  
That Theseus wolde enhauncen his degree,  
And putten him in worshipful servyse,1435  
Ther as he mighte his vertu excercyse.  
And thus, with-inne a whyle, his name is spronge  
Bothe of his dedes, and his goode tonge,(580)  
That Theseus hath taken him so neer  
That of his chambre he made him a squyer,1440  
And yaf him gold to mayntene his degree;  
And eek men broghte him out of his contree  
From yeer to yeer, ful prively, his rente;  
But honestly and slyly he it spente,  
That no man wondred how that he it hadde.1445  
And three yeer in this wyse his lyf he ladde,  
And bar him so in pees and eek in werre,  
Ther nas no man that Theseus hath derre.(590)  
And in this blisse lete I now Arcite,  
And speke I wol of Palamon a lyte.1450  
In derknesse and horrible and strong prisoun  
This seven yeer hath seten Palamoun,  
Forpyned, what for wo and for distresse;  
Who feleth double soor and hevinesse  
But Palamon? that love destreyneth so,1455  
That wood out of his wit he gooth for wo;  
And eek therto he is a prisoner  
Perpetuelly, noght oonly for a yeer.(600)  
Who coude ryme in English proprely  
His martirdom? for sothe, it am nat I;1460  
Therefore I passe as lightly as I may.  
It fel that in the seventhe yeer, in May,  
The thridde night, (as olde bokes seyn,  
That al this storie tellen more pleyn,)  
Were it by aventure or destinee,1465  
(As, whan a thing is shapen, it shal be,)  
That, sone after the midnight, Palamoun,  
By helping of a freend, brak his prisoun,(610)  
And fleeth the citee, faste as he may go;  
For he had yive his gayler drinke so1470  
Of a clarree, maad of a certeyn wyn,

With nercotikes and opie of Thebes fyn,  
That al that night, thogh that men wolde him shake,  
The gayler sleep, he mighte nat awake;  
And thus he fleeth as faste as ever he may.1475  
The night was short, and faste by the day,  
That nedes-cost he moste him-selven hyde,  
And til a grove, faste ther besyde,(620)  
With dredful foot than stalketh Palamoun.  
For shortly, this was his opinioun,1480  
That in that grove he wolde him hyde al day,  
And in the night than wolde he take his way  
To Thebes-ward, his freendes for to preye  
On Theseus to helpe him to werreye;  
And shortly, outhere he wolde lese his lyf,1485  
Or winnen Emelye un-to his wyf;  
This is theeffect and his entente pleyn.  
Now wol I torne un-to Arcite ageyn,(630)  
That litel wiste how ny that was his care,  
Til that fortune had broght him in the snare.1490  
The bisy larke, messenger of day,  
Saluëth in hir song the morwe gray;  
And fyry Phebus ryseth up so brighte,  
That al the orient laugheth of the lighte,  
And with his stremes dryeth in the greves1495  
The silver dropes, hanging on the leves.  
And Arcite, that is in the court royal  
With Theseus, his squyer principal,(640)  
Is risen, and loketh on the myrie day.  
And, for to doon his observaunce to May,1500  
Remembering on the poynt of his desyr,  
He on a courser, sterting as the fyr,  
Is riden in-to the feeldes, him to pleye,  
Out of the court, were it a myle or tweye;  
And to the grove, of which that I yow tolde,1505  
By aventure, his wey he gan to holde,  
To maken him a gerland of the greves,  
Were it of wodebinde or hawethorn-leves,(650)  
And loude he song ageyn the sonne shene:  
'May, with alle thy floures and thy grene,1510  
Wel-come be thou, faire fresshe May,  
I hope that I som grene gete may.'  
And from his courser, with a lusty herte,  
In-to the grove ful hastily he sterte,  
And in a path he rometh up and down,1515  
Ther-as, by aventure, this Palamoun  
Was in a bush, that no man mighte him see,  
For sore afered of his deeth was he.(660)  
No-thing ne knew he that it was Arcite:

God wot he wolde have trowed it ful lyte.1520  
But sooth is seyde, gon sithen many yeres,  
That 'feeld hath eyen, and the wode hath eres.'  
It is ful fair a man to bere him evene,  
For al-day meteth men at unset stevene.  
Ful litel woot Arcite of his felawe,1525  
That was so ny to herknen al his sawe,  
For in the bush he sitteth now ful stille.  
Whan that Arcite had romed al his fille,(670)  
And songen al the roundel lustily,  
In-to a studie he fil sodeynly,1530  
As doon thise loveres in hir queynte geres,  
Now in the croppe, now down in the breres,  
Now up, now down, as boket in a welle.  
Right as the Friday, soothly for to telle,  
Now it shyneth, now it reyneth faste,1535  
Right so can gery Venus overcaste  
The hertes of hir folk; right as hir day  
Is gerful, right so chaungeth she array.(680)  
Selde is the Friday al the wyke y-lyke.  
Whan that Arcite had songe, he gan to syke,1540  
And sette him down with-outen any more:  
'Alas!' quod he, 'that day that I was bore!  
How longe, Iuno, thurgh thy crueltee,  
Woltow werreyen Thebes the citee?  
Allas! y-broght is to confusioun1545  
The blood royal of Cadme and Amphioun;  
Of Cadmus, which that was the firste man  
That Thebes bulte, or first the toun bigan,(690)  
And of the citee first was crouned king,  
Of his linage am I, and his of-spring1550  
By verray ligne, as of the stok royal:  
And now I am so caitif and so thral,  
That he, that is my mortal enemy,  
I serve him as his squyer povrely.  
And yet doth Iuno me wel more shame,1555  
For I dar noght biknowe myn owne name;  
But ther-as I was wont to highte Arcite,  
Now highte I Philostrate, noght worth a myte.(700)  
Allas! thou felle Mars, allas! Iuno,  
Thus hath your ire our kinrede al fordo,1560  
Save only me, and wrecched Palamoun,  
That Theseus martyreth in prisoun.  
And over al this, to sleen me utterly,  
Love hath his fyry dart so brenningly  
Y-stiked thurgh my trewe careful herte,1565  
That shapen was my deeth erst than my sherte.  
Ye sleen me with your eyen, Emelye;

Ye been the cause wherfor that I dye.(710)  
Of al the remenant of myn other care  
Ne sette I nat the mountaunce of a tare,1570  
So that I coude don aught to your plesaunce!  
And with that word he fil down in a traunce  
A longe tyme; and after he up-sterter.  
This Palamoun, that thoughte that thurgh his herte  
He felte a cold swerd sodeynliche glyde,1575  
For ire he quook, no lenger wolde he byde.  
And whan that he had herd Arcites tale,  
As he were wood, with face deed and pale,(720)  
He sterter him up out of the buskes thikke,  
And seyde: ‘Arcite, false traitour wikke,1580  
Now artow hent, that lovest my lady so,  
For whom that I have al this peyne and wo,  
And art my blood, and to my counseil sworn,  
As I ful ofte have told thee heer-biforn,  
And hast by-iaped here duk Theseus,1585  
And falsly chaunged hast thy name thus;  
I wol be deed, or elles thou shalt dye.  
Thou shalt nat love my lady Emelye,(730)  
But I wol love hir only, and namo;  
For I am Palamoun, thy mortal fo.1590  
And though that I no wepne have in this place,  
But out of prison am astart by grace,  
I drede noght that outhere thou shalt dye,  
Or thou ne shalt nat loven Emelye.  
Chees which thou wilt, for thou shalt nat astarte.’1595  
This Arcite, with ful despitous herte,  
Whan he him knew, and hadde his tale herd,  
As fiers as leoun, pulled out a swerd,(740)  
And seyde thus: ‘by God that sit above,  
Nere it that thou art sik, and wood for love,1600  
And eek that thou no wepne hast in this place,  
Thou sholdest never out of this grove pace,  
That thou ne sholdest dyen of myn hond.  
For I defye the seurtee and the bond  
Which that thou seyst that I have maad to thee.1605  
What, verray fool, think wel that love is free,  
And I wol love hir, maugre al thy might!  
But, for as mucche thou art a worthy knight,(750)  
And wilnest to darreyne hir by batayle,  
Have heer my trouthe, to-morwe I wol nat fayle,1610  
With-ouen witing of any other wight,  
That here I wol be founden as a knight,  
And bringen harneys right y-nough for thee;  
And chees the beste, and leve the worste for me.  
And mete and drinke this night wol I bringe1615

Y-nough for thee, and clothes for thy beddinge.  
And, if so be that thou my lady winne,  
And slee me in this wode ther I am inne,(760)  
Thou mayst wel have thy lady, as for me.’  
This Palamon answerde: ‘I graunte it thee.’ 1620  
And thus they been departed til a-morwe,  
When ech of hem had leyd his feith to borwe.  
O Cupide, out of alle charitee!  
O regne, that wolt no felawe have with thee!  
Ful sooth is seyde, that love ne lordshipe 1625  
Wol noght, his thankes, have no felaweshipe;  
Wel finden that Arcite and Palamoun.  
Arcite is riden anon un-to the toun,(770)  
And on the morwe, er it were dayes light,  
Ful prively two harneys hath he dight, 1630  
Bothe suffisaunt and mete to darreyne  
The bataille in the feeld bitwix hem tweyne.  
And on his hors, allone as he was born,  
He carieth al this harneys him biforn;  
And in the grove, at tyme and place y-set, 1635  
This Arcite and this Palamon ben met.  
Tho chaungen gan the colour in hir face;  
Right as the hunter in the regne of Trace,(780)  
That stondest at the gappe with a spere,  
Whan hunted is the leoun or the bere, 1640  
And hereth him come russhing in the greves,  
And breketh bothe bowes and the leves,  
And thinketh, ‘heer cometh my mortel enemy,  
With-oute faile, he moot be deed, or I;  
For outhur I mot sleen him at the gappe, 1645  
Or he mot sleen me, if that me mishappe:’  
So ferden they, in chaunging of hir hewe,  
As fer as everich of hem other knewe.(790)  
Ther nas no good day, ne no saluing;  
But streight, with-uten word or rehersing, 1650  
Everich of hem halp for to armen other,  
As freendly as he were his owne brother;  
And after that, with sharpe speres stronge  
They foynen ech at other wonder longe.  
Thou mightest wene that this Palamoun 1655  
In his fighting were a wood leoun,  
And as a cruel tygre was Arcite:  
As wilde bores gonne they to smyte,(800)  
That frothen whyte as foom for ire wood.  
Up to the ancle foghte they in hir blood. 1660  
And in this wyse I lete hem fighting dwelle;  
And forth I wol of Theseus yow telle.  
The destinee, ministre general,

That executeth in the world over-al  
The purveyaunce, that God hath seyn biforn,1665  
So strong it is, that, though the world had sworn  
The contrarie of a thing, by ye or nay,  
Yet somtyme it shal fallen on a day(810)  
That falleth nat eft with-inne a thousand yere.  
For certainly, our appetytes here,1670  
Be it of werre, or pees, or hate, or love,  
Al is this reuled by the sighte above.  
This mene I now by mighty Theseus,  
That for to honten is so desirous,  
And namely at the grete hert in May,1675  
That in his bed ther daweth him no day,  
That he nis clad, and redy for to ryde  
With hunte and horn, and houndes him bisyde.(820)  
For in his hunting hath he swich delyt,  
That it is al his Ioye and appetyt1680  
To been him-self the grete hertes bane;  
For after Mars he serveth now Diane.  
Cler was the day, as I have told er this,  
And Theseus, with alle Ioye and blis,  
With his Ipolita, the fayre quene,1685  
And Emelye, clothed al in grene,  
On hunting be they riden royally.  
And to the grove, that stood ful faste by,(830)  
In which ther was an hert, as men him tolde,  
Duk Theseus the streighte wey hath holde.1690  
And to the launde he rydeth him ful right,  
For thider was the hert wont have his flight,  
And over a brook, and so forth on his weye.  
This duk wol han a cours at him, or tweye,  
With houndes, swiche as that him list comaunde.1695  
And whan this duk was come un-to the launde,  
Under the sonne he loketh, and anon  
He was war of Arcite and Palamon,(840)  
That foughten breme, as it were bores two;  
The brighte swerdes wenten to and fro1700  
So hidously, that with the leeste strook  
It seemed as it wolde felle an ook;  
But what they were, no-thing he ne woot.  
This duk his courser with his spores smoot,  
And at a stert he was bitwix hem two,1705  
And pulled out a swerd and cryed, 'ho!  
Namore, up peyne of lesing of your heed.  
By mighty Mars, he shal anon be deed,(850)  
That smyteth any strook, that I may seen!  
But telleth me what mister men ye been,1710  
That been so hardy for to fighten here



With-ouen Iuge or other officere,  
As it were in a listes royally?  
This Palamon answerde hastily,  
And seyde: 'sire, what nedeth wordes mo?1715  
We have the deeth deserved bothe two.  
Two woful wrecches been we, two caytyves,  
That been encumbred of our owne lyves;(860)  
And as thou art a rightful lord and Iuge,  
Ne yeve us neither mercy ne refuge,1720  
But slee me first, for seynte charitee;  
But slee my felawe eek as wel as me.  
Or slee him first; for, though thou knowe it lyte,  
This is thy mortal fo, this is Arcite,  
That fro thy lond is banished on his heed,1725  
For which he hath deserved to be deed.  
For this is he that cam un-to thy gate,  
And seyde, that he highte Philostrate.(870)  
Thus hath he Iaped thee ful many a yeer,  
And thou has made him thy chief squyer;1730  
And this is he that loveth Emelye.  
For sith the day is come that I shal dye,  
I make pleynly my confessioun,  
That I am thilke woful Palamoun,  
That hath thy prison broken wikkedly.1735  
I am thy mortal fo, and it am I  
That loveth so hote Emelye the brighte,  
That I wol dye present in hir sighte.(880)  
Therefore I axe deeth and my Iuwyse;  
But slee my felawe in the same wyse,1740  
For bothe han we deserved to be slayn.'  
This worthy duk answerde anon agayn,  
And seyde, 'This is a short conclusioun:  
Youre owne mouth, by your confessioun,  
Hath dampned you, and I wol it recorde,1745  
It nedeth nought to pyne yow with the corde.  
Ye shul be deed, by mighty Mars the rede!  
The quene anon, for verray wommanhede,(890)  
Gan for to wepe, and so dide Emelye,  
And alle the ladies in the companye.1750  
Gret pitee was it, as it thoughte hem alle,  
That ever swich a chaunce sholde falle;  
For gentil men they were, of greet estat,  
And no-thing but for love was this debat;  
And sawe hir bloody woundes wyde and sore;1755  
And alle cryden, bothe lasse and more,  
'Have mercy, lord, up-on us wommen alle!'  
And on hir bare knees adoun they falle,(900)  
And wolde have kist his feet ther-as he stood,

Til at the laste aslaked was his mood;1760  
For pitee renneth sone in gentil herte.  
And though he first for ire quook and sterte,  
He hath considered shortly, in a clause,  
The trespas of hem bothe, and eek the cause:  
And al-though that his ire hir gilt accused,1765  
Yet in his reson he hem bothe excused;  
As thus: he thoghte wel, that every man  
Wol helpe him-self in love, if that he can,(910)  
And eek delivere him-self out of prisoun;  
And eek his herte had compassioun1770  
Of wommen, for they wepen ever in oon;  
And in his gentil herte he thoghte anoon,  
And softe un-to himself he seyde: ‘fy  
Up-on a lord that wol have no mercy,  
But been a leoun, bothe in word and dede,1775  
To hem that been in repentaunce and drede  
As wel as to a proud despitous man  
That wol maynteyne that he first bigan!(920)  
That lord hath litel of discrecioun,  
That in swich cas can no divisioun,1780  
But weyeth pryde and humblesse after oon.’  
And shortly, whan his ire is thus agoon,  
He gan to loken up with eyen lighte,  
And spak thise same wordes al on highte:—  
‘The god of love, a! *benedicite*,1785  
How mighty and how greet a lord is he!  
Ayeins his might ther gayneth none obstacles,  
He may be cleped a god for his miracles;(930)  
For he can maken at his owne gyse  
Of everich herte, as that him list devyse.1790  
Lo heer, this Arcite and this Palamoun,  
That quitly weren out of my prisoun,  
And mighte han lived in Thebes royally,  
And witen I am hir mortal enemy,  
And that hir deeth lyth in my might also,1795  
And yet hath love, maugree hir eyen two,  
Y-brought hem hider bothe for to dye!  
Now loketh, is nat that an heigh folye?(940)  
Who may been a fool, but-if he love?  
Bihold, for Goddes sake that sit above,1800  
Se how they blede! be they noght wel arrayed?  
Thus hath hir lord, the god of love, y-paid  
Hir wages and hir fees for hir servyse!  
And yet they wenen for to been ful wyse  
That serven love, for aught that may bifalle!1805  
But this is yet the beste game of alle,  
That she, for whom they han this Iolitee,

Can hem ther-for as muche thank as me;(950)  
She woot namore of al this hote fare,  
By God, than woot a cokkow or an hare!1810  
But al mot been assayed, hoot and cold;  
A man mot been a fool, or yong or old;  
I woot it by my-self ful yore agoon:  
For in my tyme a servant was I oon.  
And therefore, sin I knowe of loves peyne,1815  
And woot how sore it can a man distreyne,  
As he that hath ben caught ofte in his las,  
I yow foryeve al hoolly this trespas,(960)  
At requeste of the quene that kneleth here,  
And eek of Emelye, my suster dere.1820  
And ye shul bothe anon un-to me swere,  
That never-mo ye shul my contree dere,  
Ne make werre up-on me night ne day,  
But been my freendes in al that ye may;  
I yow foryeve this trespas every del.'1825  
And they him swore his axing fayre and wel,1825  
And him of lordshipe and of mercy preyde,  
And he hem graunteth grace, and thus he seyde:(970)  
'To speke of royal linage and richesse,  
Though that she were a quene or a princesse,1830  
Ech of yow bothe is worthy, doutelees,  
To wedden whan tyme is, but nathelees  
I speke as for my suster Emelye,  
For whom ye have this stryf and Ielousye;  
Ye woot your-self, she may not wedden two1835  
At ones, though ye fighten ever-mo:  
That oon of yow, al be him looth or leef,  
He moot go pypen in an ivy-leef;(980)  
This is to seyn, she may nat now han bothe,  
Al be ye never so Ielous, ne so wrothe.1840  
And for-thy I yow putte in this degree,  
That ech of yow shal have his destinee  
As him is shape; and herkneth in what wyse;  
Lo, heer your ende of that I shal devyse.  
My wil is this, for plat conclusioun,1845  
With-uten any replicacioun,  
If that yow lyketh, tak it for the beste,  
That everich of yow shal gon wher him leste(990)  
Frely, with-uten raunson or daunger;  
And this day fifty wykes, fer ne ner,1850  
Everich of yow shal bringe an hundred knightes,  
Armed for listes up at alle rightes,  
Al redy to darreyne hir by bataille.  
And this bihote I yow, with-uten faille,  
Up-on my trouthe, and as I am a knight,1855

That whether of yow bothe that hath might,  
This is to seyn, that whether he or thou  
May with his hundred, as I spak of now,(1000)  
Sleen his contrarie, or out of listes dryve,  
Him shal I yeve Emelya to wyve,1860  
To whom that fortune yeveth so fair a grace.  
The listes shal I maken in this place,  
And God so wisly on my soule rewe,  
As I shal even Iuge been and trewe.  
Ye shul non other ende with me maken,1865  
That oon of yow ne shal be deed or taken.  
And if yow thinketh this is wel y-sayd,  
Seyeth your avys, and holdeth yow apayd.(1010)  
This is your ende and your conclusioun.  
Who loketh lightly now but Palamoun?1870  
Who springeth up for Ioye but Arcite?  
Who couthe telle, or who couthe it endyte,  
The Ioye that is makid in the place  
Whan Theseus hath doon so fair a grace?  
But down on knees wente every maner wight,1875  
And thanked him with al her herte and might,  
And namely the Thebans ofte sythe.  
And thus with good hope and with herte blythe(1020)  
They take hir leve, and hom-ward gonne they ryde  
To Thebes, with his olde walles wyde.1880

Explicit secunda pars. Sequitur pars tercia.

I trowe men wolde deme it necligence,  
If I foryete to tellen the dispence  
Of Theseus, that goth so bisily  
To maken up the listes royally;  
That swich a noble theatre as it was,1885  
I dar wel seyn that in this world ther nas.  
The circuit a myle was aboute,  
Walled of stoon, and diked al with-oute.(1030)  
Round was the shap, in maner of compas,  
Ful of degrees, the heighte of sixty pas,1890  
That, whan a man was set on o degree,  
He letted nat his felawe for to see.  
Est-ward ther stood a gate of marbel whyt,  
West-ward, right swich another in the opposit.  
And shortly to concluden, swich a place1895  
Was noon in erthe, as in so litel space;  
For in the lond ther nas no crafty man,  
That geometrie or ars-metrik can,(1040)  
Ne purtreyour, ne kerver of images,  
That Theseus ne yaf him mete and wages1900

The theatre for to maken and devyse.  
And for to doon his ryte and sacrificyse,  
He est-ward hath, up-on the gate above,  
In worship of Venus, goddessse of love,  
Don make an auter and an oratorie;1905  
And west-ward, in the minde and in memorie  
Of Mars, he maked hath right swich another,  
That coste largely of gold a fother.(1050)  
And north-ward, in a touret on the wal,  
Of alabastre whyt and reed coral1910  
An oratorie riche for to see,  
In worship of Dyane of chastitee,  
Hath Theseus don wroght in noble wyse.  
But yet hadde I foryeten to devyse  
The noble kerving, and the portreitures,1915  
The shap, the countenaunce, and the figures,  
That weren in thise oratories three.  
First in the temple of Venus maystow see(1060)  
Wroght on the wal, ful pitous to biholde,  
The broken slespes, and the sykes colde;1920  
The sacred teres, and the waymenting;  
The fyry strokes of the desiring,  
That loves servaunts in this lyf endure;  
The othes, that hir covenants assuren;  
Plesaunce and hope, desyr, fool-hardinesse,1925  
Beautee and youthe, bauderie, richesse,  
Charmes and force, lesinges, flaterye,  
Dispense, bisynesse, and Ielousye,(1070)  
That wered of yelwe goldes a gerland,  
And a cokkow sitting on hir hand;1930  
Festes, instruments, caroles, daunces,  
Lust and array, and alle the circumstaunces  
Of love, whiche that I rekne and rekne shal,  
By ordre weren peynted on the wal,  
And mo than I can make of mencioun.1935  
For soothly, al the mount of Citheroun,  
Ther Venus hath hir principal dwelling,  
Was shewed on the wal in portreying,(1080)  
With al the gardin, and the lustinesse.  
Nat was foryeten the porter Ydelnesse,1940  
Ne Narcisus the faire of yore agon,  
Ne yet the folye of king Salamon,  
Ne yet the grete strengthe of Hercules—  
Thenchauntements of Medea and Circes—  
Ne of Turnus, with the hardy fiers corage,1945  
The riche Cresus, caytif in servage.  
Thus may ye seen that wisdom ne richesse,  
Beautee ne sleighte, strengthe, ne hardinesse,(1090)

Ne may with Venus holde champartye;  
For as hir list the world than may she gye.1950  
Lo, alle thise folk so caught were in hir las,  
Til they for wo ful ofte seyde ‘allas!’  
Suffyceth heer ensamples oon or two,  
And though I coude rekne a thousand mo.  
The statue of Venus, glorious for to see,1955  
Was naked fleting in the large see,  
And fro the navele doun all covered was  
With wawes grene, and brighte as any glas.(1100)  
A citole in hir right hand hadde she,  
And on hir heed, ful semely for to see,1960  
A rose gerland, fresh and wel smellinge;  
Above hir heed hir dowves flikeringe.  
Biforn hir stood hir sone Cupido,  
Up-on his shuldres winges hadde he two;  
And blind he was, as it is ofte sene;1965  
A bowe he bar and arwes brighte and kene.  
Why sholde I noght as wel eek telle yow al  
The portreiture, that was up-on the wal(1110)  
With-inne the temple of mighty Mars the rede?  
Al peynted was the wal, in lengthe and brede,1970  
Lyk to the estres of the grisly place,  
That highte the grete temple of Mars in Trace,  
In thilke colde frosty regioun,  
Ther-as Mars hath his sovereyn mansioun.  
First on the wal was peynted a foreste,1975  
In which ther dwelleth neither man ne beste,  
With knotty knarry bareyn treës olde  
Of stubbes sharpe and hidous to biholde;(1120)  
In which ther ran a rumbel and a swough,  
As though a storm sholde bresten every bough:1980  
And downward from an hille, under a bente,  
Ther stood the temple of Mars armipotente,  
Wroght al of burned steel, of which thentree  
Was long and streit, and gastly for to see.  
And ther-out cam a rage and such a vese,1985  
That it made al the gates for to rese.  
The northren light in at the dores shoon,  
For windowe on the wal ne was ther noon,(1130)  
Thurgh which men mighten any light discerne.  
The dores were alle of adamant eterne,1990  
Y-clenched overthwart and endelong  
With iren tough; and, for to make it strong,  
Every piler, the temple to sustene,  
Was tonne-greet, of iren bright and shene.  
Ther saugh I first the derke imagining1995  
Of felonye, and al the compassing;

The cruel ire, reed as any glede;  
The pykepurs, and eek the pale drede;(1140)  
The smyler with the knyf under the cloke;  
The shepne brenning with the blake smoke;2000  
The treson of the mordring in the bedde;  
The open werre, with woundes al bi-bledde;  
Contek, with bloody knyf and sharp manace;  
Al ful of chirking was that sory place.  
The sleere of him-self yet saugh I ther,2005  
His herte-blood hath bathed al his heer;  
The nayl y-driven in the shode a-night;  
The colde deeth, with mouth gaping up-right.(1150)  
Amiddes of the temple sat meschaunce,  
With disconfort and sory contenaunce.2010  
Yet saugh I woodnesse laughing in his rage;  
Armed compleint, out -hees, and fiers outrage.  
The careyne in the bush, with throte y-corve:  
A thousand slayn, and nat of qualm y-storve;  
The tiraunt, with the prey by force y-raft;2015  
The toun destroyed, ther was no-thing laft.  
Yet saugh I brent the shippes hoppesteres;  
The hunte strangled with the wilde beres:(1160)  
The sowe freten the child right in the cradel;  
The cook y-scalded, for al his longe ladel.2020  
Noght was foryeten by the infortune of Marte;  
The carter over-riden with his carte,  
Under the wheel ful lowe he lay adoun.  
Ther were also, of Martes divisioun,  
The barbour, and the bocher, and the smith2025  
That forgeth sharpe swerdes on his stith.  
And al above, depeynted in a tour,  
Saw I conquest sittinge in greet honour,(1170)  
With the sharpe swerde over his heed  
Hanginge by a sotil twynes threed.2030  
Depeynted was the slaughtre of Iulius,  
Of grete Nero, and of Antonius;  
Al be that thilke tyme they were unborn,  
Yet was hir deeth depeynted ther-biforn,  
By manasinge of Mars, right by figure;2035  
So was it shewed in that portreiture  
As is depeynted in the sterres above,  
Who shal be slayn or elles deed for love.(1180)  
Suffyceth oon ensample in stories olde,  
I may not rekne hem alle, thogh I wolde.2040  
The statue of Mars up-on a carte stood,  
Armed, and loked grim as he were wood;  
And over his heed ther shynen two figures  
Of sterres, that been cleped in scriptures,

That oon Puella, that other Rubeus.2045  
This god of armes was arrayed thus:—  
A wolf ther stood biforn him at his feet  
With eyen rede, and of a man he eet;(1190)  
With sotil pencil was depeynt this storie,  
In redoutinge of Mars and of his glorie.2050  
Now to the temple of Diane the chaste  
As shortly as I can I wol me haste,  
To telle yow al the descripcioun.  
Depeynted been the walles up and down  
Of hunting and of shamfast chastitee.2055  
Ther saugh I how woful Calistopee,  
Whan that Diane agreved was with here,  
Was turned from a womman til a bere,(1200)  
And after was she maad the lode-sterre;  
Thus was it peynt, I can say yow no ferre;2060  
Hir sone is eek a sterre, as men may see.  
Ther saugh I Dane, y-turned til a tree,  
I mene nat the goddesse Diane,  
But Penneus doughter, which that highte Dane.  
Ther saugh I Attheon an hert y-maked,2065  
For vengeaunce that he saugh Diane al naked;  
I saugh how that his houndes have him caught,  
And freten him, for that they knewe him naught.(1210)  
Yet peynted was a litel forther-moor,  
How Atthalante hunted the wilde boor,2070  
And Meleagre , and many another mo,  
For which Diane wroghte him care and wo.  
Ther saugh I many another wonder storie,  
The whiche me list nat drawn to memorie.  
This goddesse on an hert ful hye seet,2075  
With smale houndes al aboute hir feet;  
And undernethe hir feet she hadde a mone,  
Wexing it was, and sholde wanie sone.(1220)  
In gaude grene hir statue clothed was,  
With bowe in honde, and arwes in a cas.2080  
Hir eyen caste she ful lowe adoun,  
Ther Pluto hath his derke regioun.  
A womman travailinge was hir biforn,  
But, for hir child so longe was unborn,  
Ful pitously Lucyna gan she calle,2085  
And seyde, ‘help, for thou mayst best of alle.’  
Wel couthe he peynten lyfly that it wroghte,  
With many a florin he the hewes boghte.(1230)  
Now been thise listes maad, and Theseus,  
That at his grete cost arrayed thus2090  
The temples and the theatre every del,  
Whan it was doon, him lyked wonder wel.



But stinte I wol of Theseus a lyte,  
And speke of Palamon and of Arcite.  
The day approacheth of hir retourninge,2095  
That everich sholde an hundred knightes bringe,  
The bataille to darreyne, as I yow tolde;  
And til Athenes, hir covenant for to holde,(1240)  
Hath everich of hem broght an hundred knightes  
Wel armed for the werre at alle rightes.2100  
And sikerly, ther trowed many a man  
That never, sithen that the world bigan,  
As for to speke of knighthod of hir hond,  
As fer as God hath maked see or lond,  
Nas, of so fewe, so noble a companye.2105  
For every wight that lovede chivalrye,  
And wolde, his thanks, han a passant name,  
Hath preyed that he mighte ben of that game;(1250)  
And wel was him, that ther-to chosen was.  
For if ther fille to-morwe swich a cas,2110  
Ye knowen wel, that every lusty knight,  
That loveth paramours, and hath his might,  
Were it in Engelond, or elles-where,  
They wolde, hir thanks, wilnen to be there.  
To fighte for a lady, *benedicite!*2115  
It were a lusty sighte for to see.  
And right so ferden they with Palamon.  
With him ther wenten knightes many oon;(1260)  
Som wol ben armed in an habergeoun,  
In a brest-plat and in a light gipoun;2120  
And somme woln have a peyre plates large;  
And somme woln have a Pruce sheld, or a targe;  
Somme woln ben armed on hir legges weel,  
And have an ax, and somme a mace of steel.  
Ther nis no newe gyse, that it nas old.2125  
Armed were they, as I have you told,  
Everich after his opinioun.  
Ther maistow seen coming with Palamoun(1270)  
Ligurge him-self, the grete king of Trace;  
Blak was his berd, and manly was his face.2130  
The cercles of his eyen in his heed,  
They gloweden bitwixe yelow and reed;  
And lyk a griffon loked he aboute,  
With kempe heres on his browes stoute;  
His limes grete, his braunes harde and stronge,2135  
His shuldres brode, his armes rounde and longe.  
And as the gyse was in his contree,  
Ful hye up-on a char of gold stood he,(1280)  
With foure whyte boles in the trays.  
In-stede of cote-armure over his harnays,2140

With nayles yelwe and brighte as any gold,  
He hadde a beres skin, col-blak, for-old.  
His long heer was kembd bihinde his bak,  
As any ravenes fether it shoon for-blak:  
A wrethe of gold arm-greet, of huge wighte,2145  
Upon his heed, set ful of stones brighte,  
Of fyne rubies and of dyamaunts.  
Aboute his char ther wenten whyte alaunts,(1290)  
Twenty and mo, as grete as any steer,  
To hunten at the leoun or the deer,2150  
And folwed him, with mosel faste y-bounde,  
Colers of gold, and torets fyled rounde.  
An hundred lordes hadde he in his route  
Armed ful wel, with hertes sterne and stoute.  
With Arcita, in stories as men finde,2155  
The grete Emetreus, the king of Inde,  
Up-on a stede bay, trapped in steel,  
Covered in cloth of gold diapred weel,(1300)  
Cam ryding lyk the god of armes, Mars.  
His cote-armure was of cloth of Tars,2160  
Couched with perles whyte and rounde and grete.  
His sadel was of brend gold newe y-bete;  
A mantelet upon his shuldre hanginge  
Bret-ful of rubies rede, as fyr sparklinge.  
His crisper heer lyk ringes was y-ronne,2165  
And that was yelow, and glitered as the sonne.  
His nose was heigh, his eyen bright citryn,  
His lippes rounde, his colour was sangwyn,(1310)  
A fewe fraknes in his face y-spreynd,  
Betwixen yelow and somdel blak y-meynd,2170  
And as a leoun he his loking caste.  
Of fyve and twenty yeer his age I caste.  
His berd was wel bigonne for to springe;  
His voys was as a trompe thunderinge.  
Up-on his heed he wered of laurer grene2175  
A gerland fresh and lusty for to sene.  
Up-on his hand he bar, for his deduyt,  
An egle tame, as eny lilie whyt.(1320)  
An hundred lordes hadde he with him there,  
Al armed, sauf hir heddes, in al hir gere,2180  
Ful richely in alle maner thinges.  
For trusteth wel, that dukes, erles, kinges,  
Were gadered in this noble companye,  
For love and for encrees of chivalrye.  
Aboute this king ther ran on every part2185  
Ful many a tame leoun and lepart.  
And in this wyse these lordes, alle and some,  
Ben on the Sondag to the citee come(1330)

Aboute pryme, and in the toun alight.  
This Theseus, this duk, this worthy knight,2190  
Whan he had broght hem in-to his citee,  
And inned hem, everich in his degree,  
He festeth hem, and dooth so greet labour  
To esen hem, and doon hem al honour,  
That yet men weneth that no mannes wit2195  
Of noon estat ne coude amenden it.  
The minstralcy, the service at the feste,  
The grete yiftes to the moste and leste,(1340)  
The riche array of Theseus paleys,  
Ne who sat first ne last up-on the deys,2200  
What ladies fairest been or best daunsinge,  
Or which of hem can dauncen best and singe,  
Ne who most felingly speketh of love:  
What haukes sitten on the perche above,  
What houndes liggen on the floor adoun:2205  
Of al this make I now no mencioun;  
But al theeffect, that thinketh me the beste;  
Now comth the poynt, and herkneth if yow leste.(1350)  
The Sondag night, er day bigan to springe,  
When Palamon the larke herde singe,2210  
Although it nere nat day by houres two,  
Yet song the larke, and Palamon also.  
With holy herte, and with an heigh corage  
He roos, to wenden on his pilgrimage  
Un-to the blisful Citherea benigne,2215  
I mene Venus, honorable and digne.  
And in hir houre he walketh forth a pas  
Un-to the listes, ther hir temple was,(1360)  
And doun he kneleth, and with humble chere  
And herte soor, he seyde as ye shul here.2220  
'Faireste of faire, o lady myn, Venus,  
Doughter to Iove and spouse of Vulcanus,  
Thou glader of the mount of Citheroun,  
For thilke love thou haddest to Adoun,  
Have pitee of my bittre teres smerte,2225  
And tak myn humble preyer at thyn herte.  
Allas! I ne have no langage to telle  
Theeffectes ne the torments of myn helle;(1370)  
Myn herte may myne harmes nat biwreye;  
I am so confus, that I can noght seye.2230  
But mercy, lady bright, that knowest weel  
My thought, and seest what harmes that I feel,  
Considerere al this, and rewe up-on my sore,  
As wisly as I shal for evermore,  
Emforth my might, thy trewe servant be,2235  
And holden werre alwey with chastitee;

That make I myn avow, so ye me helpe.  
I kepe noght of armes for to yelpe,(1380)  
Ne I ne axe nat to-morwe to have victorie,  
Ne renoun in this cas, ne veyne glorie2240  
Of pris of armes blowen up and down,  
But I wolde have fully possessioun  
Of Emelye, and dye in thy servyse;  
Find thou the maner how, and in what wyse.  
I recche nat, but it may bettre be,2245  
To have victorie of hem, or they of me,  
So that I have my lady in myne armes.  
For though so be that Mars is god of armes,(1390)  
Your vertu is so greet in hevne above,  
That, if yow list, I shal wel have my love.2250  
Thy temple wol I worshipe evermo,  
And on thyn auter, wher I ryde or go,  
I wol don sacrifice, and fyres bete.  
And if ye wol nat so, my lady swete,  
Than preye I thee, to-morwe with a spere2255  
That Arcita me thurgh the herte bere.  
Thanne rekke I noght, whan I have lost my lyf,  
Though that Arcita winne hir to his wyf.(1400)  
This is theeffect and ende of my preyere,  
Yif me my love, thou blisful lady dere.'2260  
Whan thorisoun was doon of Palamon,  
His sacrifice he dide, and that anon  
Ful pitously, with alle circumstaunces,  
Al telle I noght as now his observaunces.  
But atte laste the statue of Venus shook,2265  
And made a signe, wher-by that he took  
That his preyere accepted was that day.  
For thogh the signe shewed a delay,(1410)  
Yet wiste he wel that graunted was his bone;  
And with glad herte he wente him hoom ful sone.2270  
The thridde houre inequal that Palamon  
Bigan to Venus temple for to goon,  
Up roos the sonne, and up roos Emelye,  
And to the temple of Diane gan hye.  
Hir maydens, that she thider with hir ladde,2275  
Ful redily with hem the fyr they hadde,  
Thencens, the clothes, and the remenant al  
That to the sacrificyce longen shal;(1420)  
The hornes fulle of meth, as was the gyse;  
Ther lakked noght to doon hir sacrificyse.2280  
Smoking the temple, ful of clothes faire,  
This Emelye, with herte debonaire,  
Hir body wessh with water of a welle;  
But how she dide hir ryte I dar nat telle,

But it be any thing in general;2285  
And yet it were a game to heren al;  
To him that meneth wel, it were no charge:  
But it is good a man ben at his large.(1430)  
Hir brighte heer was kempt , untressed al;  
A coroune of a grene ook cerial2290  
Up-on hir heed was set ful fair and mete.  
Two fyres on the auter gan she bete,  
And dide hir thinges, as men may biholde  
In Stace of Thebes, and thise bokes olde.  
Whan kindled was the fyr, with pitous chere2295  
Un-to Diane she spak, as ye may here.  
'O chaste goddesse of the wodes grene,  
To whom bothe hevene and erthe and see is sene,(1440)  
Quene of the regne of Pluto derk and lowe,  
Goddesse of maydens, that myn herte hast knowe2300  
Ful many a yeer, and woost what I desire,  
As keep me fro thy vengeaunce and thyn ire,  
That Attheon abouthte cruelly.  
Chaste goddesse, wel wostow that I  
Desire to been a mayden al my lyf,2305  
Ne never wol I be no love ne wyf.  
I am, thou woost, yet of thy companye,  
A mayde, and love hunting and venerye,(1450)  
And for to walken in the wodes wilde,  
And noght to been a wyf, and be with childe.2310  
Noght wol I knowe companye of man.  
Now help me, lady, sith ye may and can,  
For tho thre formes that thou hast in thee.  
And Palamon, that hath swich love to me,  
And eek Arcite, that loveth me so sore,2315  
This grace I preye thee with-oute more,  
As sende love and pees bitwixe hem two;  
And fro me turne away hir hertes so,(1460)  
That al hir hote love, and hir desyr,  
And al hir bisy torment, and hir fyr2320  
Be queynt, or turned in another place;  
And if so be thou wolt not do me grace,  
Or if my destinee be shapen so,  
That I shal nedes have oon of hem two,  
As sende me him that most desireth me.2325  
Bihold, goddesse of clene chastitee,  
The bittre teres that on my chekes falle.  
Sin thou are mayde, and keper of us alle,(1470)  
My maydenhede thou kepe and wel conserve,  
And whyl I live a mayde, I wol thee serve.'2330  
The fyres brenne up-on the auter clere,  
Whyl Emelye was thus in hir preyere;

But sodeinly she saugh a sighte queynte,  
For right anon oon of the fyres queynte,  
And quiked agayn, and after that anon<sup>2335</sup>  
That other fyr was queynt, and al agon;  
And as it queynte, it made a whistelinge,  
As doon this wete brondes in hir brenninge,<sup>(1480)</sup>  
And at the brondes ende out-ran anoon  
As it were bloody dropes many oon;<sup>2340</sup>  
For which so sore agast was Emelye,  
That she was wel ny mad, and gan to crye,  
For she ne wiste what it signified;  
But only for the fere thus hath she cryed,  
And weep, that it was pitee for to here.<sup>2345</sup>  
And ther-with-al Diane gan appere,  
With bowe in hond, right as an hunteresse,  
And seyde: ‘Doghter, stint thyn hevinesse.<sup>(1490)</sup>  
Among the goddes hye it is affermed,  
And by eterne word write and confermed,<sup>2350</sup>  
Thou shalt ben wedded un-to oon of tho  
That han for thee so muchel care and wo;  
But un-to which of hem I may nat telle.  
Farwel, for I ne may no lenger dwelle.  
The fyres which that on myn auter brenne<sup>2355</sup>  
Shul thee declaren, er that thou go henne,  
Thyn aventure of love, as in this cas.’  
And with that word, the arwes in the cas<sup>(1500)</sup>  
Of the goddesse clateren faste and ringe,  
And forth she wente, and made a vanisshinge;<sup>2360</sup>  
For which this Emelye astoned was,  
And seyde, ‘What amounteth this, allas!  
I putte me in thy proteccioun,  
Diane, and in thy disposicioun.’  
And hoom she gooth anon the nexte weye.<sup>2365</sup>  
This is theeffect, ther is namore to seye.  
The nexte houre of Mars folwinge this,  
Arcite un-to the temple walked is<sup>(1510)</sup>  
Of fierse Mars, to doon his sacrificyse,  
With alle the rytes of his payen wyse.<sup>2370</sup>  
With pitous herte and heigh devocioun,  
Right thus to Mars he seyde his orisoun:  
‘O stronge god, that in the regnes colde  
Of Trace honoured art, and lord y-holde,  
And hast in every regne and every lond<sup>2375</sup>  
Of armes al the brydel in thyn hond,  
And hem fortunest as thee list devyse,  
Accept of me my pitous sacrificyse.<sup>(1520)</sup>  
If so be that my youthe may deserve,  
And that my might be worthy for to serve<sup>2380</sup>

Thy godhede, that I may been oon of thyne,  
Than preyte I thee to rewe up-on my pyne.  
For thilke peyne, and thilke hote fyr,  
In which thou whylom brendest for desyr,  
Whan that thou usedest the grete beautee<sup>2385</sup>  
Of fayre yonge fresshe Venus free,  
And haddest hir in armes at thy wille,  
Al-though thee ones on a tyme misfille<sup>(1530)</sup>  
Whan Vulcanus had caught thee in his las,  
And fond thee liggig by his wyf, allas!<sup>2390</sup>  
For thilke sorwe that was in thyn herte,  
Have routhe as wel up-on my peynes smerte.  
I am yong and unkonning, as thou wost,  
And, as I trowe, with love offended most,  
That ever was any lyves creature;<sup>2395</sup>  
For she, that dooth me al this wo endure,  
Ne reccheth never wher I sinke or flete.  
And wel I woot, er she me mercy hete,<sup>(1540)</sup>  
I moot with strengthe winne hir in the place;  
And wel I woot, withouten help or grace<sup>2400</sup>  
Of thee, ne may my strengthe noght availle.  
Than help me, lord, to-morwe in my bataille,  
For thilke fyr that whylom brente thee,  
As wel as thilke fyr now brenneth me;  
And do that I to-morwe have victorie.<sup>2405</sup>  
Myn be the travaille, and thyn be the glorie!  
Thy sovereign temple wol I most honouren  
Of any place, and alwey most labouren<sup>(1550)</sup>  
In thy plesaunce and in thy craftes stronge,  
And in thy temple I wol my baner honge,<sup>2410</sup>  
And alle the armes of my companye;  
And evere-mo, un-to that day I dye,  
Eterne fyr I wol biforn thee finde.  
And eek to this avow I wol me binde:  
My berd, myn heer that hongeth long adoun,<sup>2415</sup>  
That never yet ne felte offensioun  
Of rasour nor of shere, I wol thee yive,  
And ben thy trewe servant whyl I live.<sup>(1560)</sup>  
Now lord, have routhe up-on my sorwes sore,  
Yif me victorie, I aske thee namore.’<sup>2420</sup>  
The preyere stinte of Arcita the stronge,  
The ringes on the temple-dore that honge,  
And eek the dores, clatereden ful faste,  
Of which Arcita som-what him agaste.  
The fyres brende up-on the auter brighte,<sup>2425</sup>  
That it gan al the temple for to lighte;  
And swete smel the ground anon up-yaf,  
And Arcita anon his hand up-haf,<sup>(1570)</sup>

And more encens in-to the fyr he caste,  
With othere rytes mo; and atte laste<sup>2430</sup>  
The statue of Mars bigan his hauberk ringe.  
And with that soun he herde a murmuringe  
Ful lowe and dim, that sayde thus, 'Victorie:.'  
For which he yaf to Mars honour and glorie.  
And thus with Ioye, and hope wel to fare,<sup>2435</sup>  
Arcite anon un-to his inne is fare,  
As fayn as fowel is of the brighte sonne.  
And right anon swich stryf ther is bigonne<sup>(1580)</sup>  
For thilke graunting, in the hevene above,  
Bitwixe Venus, the goddessse of love,<sup>2440</sup>  
And Mars, the sterne god armipotente,  
That Iupiter was bisy it to stente;  
Til that the pale Saturnus the colde,  
That knew so manye of adventures olde,  
Fond in his olde experience an art,<sup>2445</sup>  
That he ful sone hath plesed every part.  
As sooth is sayd, elde hath greet advantage;  
In elde is bothe wisdom and usage;<sup>(1590)</sup>  
Men may the olde at-renne, and noght at-rede.  
Saturne anon, to stinten stryf and drede,<sup>2450</sup>  
Al be it that it is agayn his kynde,  
Of al this stryf he gan remedie fynde.  
'My dere doghter Venus,' quod Saturne,  
'My cours, that hath so wyde for to turne,  
Hath more power than wot any man.<sup>2455</sup>  
Myn is the drenching in the see so wan;  
Myn is the prison in the derke cote;  
Myn is the strangling and hanging by the throte;<sup>(1600)</sup>  
The murmure, and the cherles rebelling,  
The groyning, and the pryvee empoysoning:<sup>2460</sup>  
I do vengeance and pleyn correccioun  
Whyl I dwelle in the signe of the leoun.  
Myn is the ruine of the hye halles,  
The falling of the toures and of the walles  
Up-on the mynour or the carpenter.<sup>2465</sup>  
I slow Sampson in shaking the piler;  
And myne be the maladyes colde,  
The derke tresons , and the castes olde;<sup>(1610)</sup>  
My loking is the fader of pestilence.  
Now weep namore, I shal doon diligence<sup>2470</sup>  
That Palamon, that is thyn owne knight,  
Shal have his lady, as thou hast him hight.  
Though Mars shal helpe his knight, yet nathelees  
Bitwixe yow ther moot be som tyme pees,  
Al be ye noght of o complexioun,<sup>2475</sup>  
That causeth al day swich divisioun.



I am thin ayel, redy at thy wille;  
Weep thou namore, I wol thy lust fulfille.'(1620)  
Now wol I stinten of the goddes above,  
Of Mars, and of Venus, goddesse of love,2480  
And telle yow, as pleyntly as I can,  
The grete effect, for which that I bigan.

Explicit tercia pars. Sequitur pars quarta.

Greet was the feste in Athenes that day,  
And eek the lusty seson of that May  
Made every wight to been in swich plesaunce,2485  
That al that Monday Iusten they and daunce,  
And spenden it in Venus heigh servyse.  
But by the cause that they sholde ryse(1630)  
Erly, for to seen the grete fight,  
Unto hir reste wente they at night.2490  
And on the morwe, whan that day gan springe,  
Of hors and harneys, noyse and clateringe  
Ther was in hostelryes al aboute;  
And to the paleys rood ther many a route  
Of lordes, up-on stedes and palfreys.2495  
Ther maystow seen devysing of herneys  
So uncouth and so riche, and wroght so weel  
Of goldsmithrie, of browding, and of steel;(1640)  
The sheeldes brighte, testers, and trappures;  
Gold-hewen helmes, hauberks, cote-armures;2500  
Lordes in paraments on hir courseres,  
Knightes of retenue, and eek squyeres  
Nailinge the speres, and helmes bokelinge,  
Gigginge of sheeldes, with layneres lacinge;  
Ther as need is, they weren no-thing ydel;2505  
The fomy stedes on the golden brydel  
Gnawinge, and faste the armurers also  
With fyle and hamer prikinge to and fro;(1650)  
Yemen on fote, and communes many oon  
With shorte staves, thikke as they may goon;2510  
Pypes, trompes, nakers, clariounes,  
That in the bataille blowne bloody sounes;  
The paleys ful of peples up and down,  
Heer three, ther ten, holding hir questioun,  
Divyninge of this Thebane knightes two.2515  
Somme seyden thus, somme seyde it shal be so;  
Somme helden with him with the blake berd,  
Somme with the balled, somme with the thikke-herd;(1660)  
Somme sayde, he loked grim and he wolde fighte;  
He hath a sparth of twenty pound of wighte.2520  
Thus was the halle ful of divyninge,

Longe after that the sonne gan to springe.  
The grete Theseus, that of his sleep awaked  
With minstrelcy and noyse that was maked,  
Held yet the chambre of his paleys riche,2525  
Til that the Thebane knightes, bothe y-liche  
Honoured, were into the paleys fet.  
Duk Theseus was at a window set,(1670)  
Arrayed right as he were a god in trone.  
The peple preesseth thider-ward ful sone2530  
Him for to seen, and doon heigh reverence,  
And eek to herkne his hest and his sentence.  
An heraud on a scaffold made an ho,  
Til al the noyse of the peple was y-do;  
And whan he saugh the peple of noyse al stille,2535  
Tho showed he the mighty dukes wille.  
'The lord hath of his heigh discrecioun  
Considered, that it were destruccioun(1680)  
To gentil blood, to fighten in the gyse  
Of mortal bataille now in this empryse;2540  
Wherfore, to shapen that they shul not dye,  
He wol his firste purpos modifye.  
No man therfor, up peyne of los of lyf,  
No maner shot, ne pollax, ne short knyf  
Into the listes sende, or thider bringe;2545  
Ne short swerd for to stoke, with poynt bytinge,  
No man ne drawe, ne bere it by his syde.  
Ne no man shal un-to his felawe ryde(1690)  
But o cours, with a sharp y-grounde spere;  
Foyne, if him list, on fote, him-self to were.2550  
And he that is at meschief, shal be take,  
And noght slayn, but be brought un-to the stake  
That shal ben ordeyned on either syde;  
But thider he shal by force, and ther abyde.  
And if so falle, the chieftayn be take2555  
On either syde, or elles slee his make,  
No lenger shal the turneyinge laste.  
God spede yow; goth forth, and ley on faste.(1700)  
With long swerd and with maces fight your fille.  
Goth now your wey; this is the lordes wille.'2560  
The voys of peple touchede the hevene,  
So loude cryden they with mery stevene:  
'God save swich a lord, that is so good,  
He wilneth no destruccioun of blood!'  
Up goon the trompes and the melodye.2565  
And to the listes rit the companye  
By ordinaunce, thurgh-out the citee large,  
Hanged with cloth of gold, and nat with sarge.(1710)  
Ful lyk a lord this noble duk gan ryde,

Thise two Thebanes up-on either syde;2570  
And after rood the quene, and Emelye,  
And after that another companye  
Of oon and other, after hir degree.  
And thus they passen thurgh-out the citee,  
And to the listes come they by tyme.2575  
It nas not of the day yet fully pryme,  
Whan set was Theseus ful riche and hye,  
Ipolita the quene and Emelye,(1720)  
And other ladies in degrees aboute.  
Un-to the seetes preesseth al the route.2580  
And west-ward, thurgh the gates under Marte,  
Arcite, and eek the hundred of his parte,  
With baner reed is entred right anon;  
And in that selve moment Palamon  
Is under Venus, est-ward in the place,2585  
With baner whyt, and hardy chere and face.  
In al the world, to seken up and down,  
So even with-outen variacioun,(1730)  
Ther nere swiche companyes tweye.  
For ther nas noon so wys that coude seye,2590  
That any hadde of other avauntage  
Of worthinesse, ne of estaat, ne age,  
So even were they chosen, for to gesse.  
And in two renges faire they hem dresse.  
Whan that hir names rad were everichoon,2595  
That in hir nombre gyle were ther noon,  
Tho were the gates shet, and cryed was loude:  
'Do now your devoir, yonge knightes proude!'(1740)  
The heraudes lefte hir priking up and down;  
Now ringen trompes loude and clarioun;2600  
Ther is namore to seyn, but west and est  
In goon the speres ful sadly in arest;  
In goth the sharpe spore in-to the syde.  
Ther seen men who can Iuste, and who can ryde;  
Ther shiveren shaftes up-on sheeldes thikke;2605  
He feleth thurgh the herte-spoon the prikke.  
Up springen speres twenty foot on highte;  
Out goon the swerdes as the silver brighte.(1750)  
The helmes they to-hewen and to-shrede;  
Out brest the blood, with sterne stremes rede.2610  
With mighty maces the bones they to-breste.  
He thurgh the thikkeste of the throng gan threste.  
Ther stomblen stedes stronge, and doun goth al.  
He rolleth under foot as dooth a bal.  
He foyneth on his feet with his tronchoun,2615  
And he him hurtleth with his hors adoun.  
He thurgh the body is hurt, and sithen y-take,

Maugree his heed, and broght un-to the stake,(1760)  
As forward was, right ther he moste abyde;  
Another lad is on that other syde.2620  
And som tyme dooth hem Theseus to reste,  
Hem to refresshe , and drinken if hem leste.  
Ful ofte a-day han thise Thebanes two  
Togidre y-met, and wroght his felawe wo;  
Unhorsed hath ech other of hem tweye.2625  
Ther nas no tygre in the vale of Galgopheye,  
Whan that hir whelp is stole, whan it is lyte,  
So cruel on the hunte, as is Arcite(1770)  
For Ielous herte upon this Palamoun:  
Ne in Belmarye ther nis so fel leoun,2630  
That hunted is, or for his hunger wood,  
Ne of his praye desireth so the blood,  
As Palamon to sleen his fo Arcite.  
The Ielous strokes on hir helmes byte;  
Out renneth blood on bothe hir sydes rede.2635  
Som tyme an ende ther is of every dede;  
For er the sonne un-to the reste wente,  
The stronge king Emetreus gan hente(1780)  
This Palamon, as he faught with Arcite,  
And made his swerd depe in his flesh to byte;2640  
And by the force of twenty is he take  
Unyolden, and y-drawe unto the stake.  
And in the rescous of this Palamoun  
The stronge king Ligurge is born adoun;  
And king Emetreus, for al his strengthe,2645  
Is born out of his sadel a swerdes lengthe,  
So hitte him Palamon er he were take;  
But al for noght, he was broght to the stake.(1790)  
His hardy herte mighte him helpe naught;  
He moste abyde, whan that he was caught2650  
By force, and eek by composicioun.  
Who sorweth now but woful Palamoun,  
That moot namore goon agayn to fighte?  
And whan that Theseus had seyn this sighte,  
Un-to the folk that foghten thus echoon2655  
He cryde, 'Ho! namore, for it is doon!  
I wol be trewe Iuge, and no partye.  
Arcite of Thebes shal have Emelye,(1800)  
That by his fortune hath hir faire y-wonne.'  
Anon ther is a noyse of peple bigonne2660  
For Ioye of this, so loude and heigh with-alle,  
It semed that the listes sholde falle.  
What can now faire Venus doon above?  
What seith she now? what dooth this quene of love?  
But wepeth so, for wanting of hir wille,2665

Til that hir teres in the listes fille;  
She seyde: 'I am ashamed, doutelees.'  
Saturnus seyde: 'Doghter, hold thy pees.(1810)  
Mars hath his wille, his knight hath al his bone,  
And, by myn heed, thou shalt ben esed sone.'2670  
The trompes, with the loude minstralcy,  
The heraudes, that ful loude yolle and crye,  
Been in hir wele for Ioye of daun Arcite.  
But herkneth me, and stinteth now a lyte,  
Which a miracle ther bifel anon.2675  
This fierse Arcite hath of his helm y-don,  
And on a courser, for to shewe his face,  
He priketh endelong the large place,(1820)  
Loking upward up-on this Emelye;  
And she agayn him caste a freendlich ye,2680  
(For wommen, as to speken in comune,  
They folwen al the favour of fortune),  
And she was al his chere, as in his herte.  
Out of the ground a furie infernal sterte,  
From Pluto sent, at requeste of Saturne,2685  
For which his hors for fere gan to turne,  
And leep asyde, and foundred as he leep;  
And, er that Arcite may taken keep,(1830)  
He pighte him on the pomel of his heed,  
That in the place he lay as he were deed,2690  
His brest to-brosten with his sadel-bowe.  
As blak he lay as any cole or crowe,  
So was the blood y-ronnen in his face.  
Anon he was y-born out of the place  
With herte soor, to Theseus paleys.2695  
Tho was he corven out of his harneys,  
And in a bed y-brought ful faire and blyve,  
For he was yet in memorie and alyve,(1840)  
And alway crying after Emelye.  
Duk Theseus, with al his companye,2700  
Is comen hoom to Athenes his citee,  
With alle blisse and greet solempnitee.  
Al be it that this aventure was falle,  
He nolde noght disconforten hem alle.  
Men seyde eek, that Arcite shal nat dye;2705  
He shal ben heled of his maladye.  
And of another thing they were as fayn,  
That of hem alle was ther noon y-slayn,(1850)  
Al were they sore y-hurt, and namely oon,  
That with a spere was thirled his brest-boon.2710  
To othere woundes, and to broken armes,  
Some hadden slaves, and some hadden charmes;  
Fermacies of herbes, and eek save

They dronken, for they wolde hir limes have.  
For which this noble duk, as he wel can,2715  
Conforteth and honoureth every man,  
And made revel al the longe night,  
Un-to the straunge lordes, as was right.(1860)  
Ne ther was holden no disconfitinge,  
But as a Iustes or a tourneyinge;2720  
For soothly ther was no disconfiture,  
For falling nis nat but an aventure;  
Ne to be lad with fors un-to the stake  
Unyolden, and with twenty knightes take,  
O persone allone, with-outen mo,2725  
And haried forth by arme , foot, and to,  
And eek his stede driven forth with staves,  
With footmen, bothe yemen and eek knaves,(1870)  
It nas aretted him no vileinye,  
Ther may no man clepen it cowardye.2730  
For which anon duk Theseus leet crye,  
To stinten alle rancour and envye,  
The gree as wel of o syde as of other,  
And either syde y-lyk, as otheres brother;  
And yaf hem yiftes after hir degree,2735  
And fully heeld a feste dayes three;  
And conveyed the kinges worthily  
Out of his toun a Iournee largely.(1880)  
And hoom wente every man the righte way.  
Ther was namore, but ‘far wel, have good day!’2740  
Of this bataille I wol namore endyte,  
But speke of Palamon and of Arcite.  
Swellleth the brest of Arcite, and the sore  
Encreesseth at his herte more and more.  
The clothered blood, for any lechecraft,2745  
Corrupteth , and is in his bouk y-laft,  
That neither veyne-blood, ne ventusinge,  
Ne drinke of herbes may ben his helpinge.(1890)  
The vertu expulsif, or animal,  
Fro thilke vertu cleped natural2750  
Ne may the venim voyden, ne expelle.  
The pypes of his longes gonne to swelle,  
And every lacerte in his brest adoun  
Is shent with venim and corrupcioun.  
Him gayneth neither, for to gete his lyf,2755  
Vomyt upward, ne dounward laxatif;  
Al is to-brosten thilke regioun,  
Nature hath now no dominacioun.(1900)  
And certainly, ther nature wol nat wirche,  
Far-wel, phisyk! go ber the man to chirche!2760  
This al and som, that Arcita mot dye,

For which he sendeth after Emelye,  
And Palamon, that was his cosin dere;  
Than seyde he thus, as ye shul after here.  
'Naught may the woful spirit in myn herte2765  
Declare o poynt of alle my sorwes smerte  
To yow, my lady, that I love most;  
But I biquethe the service of my gost(1910)  
To yow aboven every creature,  
Sin that my lyf may no lenger dure.2770  
Allas, the wo! allas, the peynes stronge,  
That I for yow have suffred, and so longe!  
Allas, the deeth! allas, myn Emelye!  
Allas, departing of our companye!  
Allas, myn hertes quene! allas, my wyf!2775  
Myn hertes lady, endere of my lyf!  
What is this world? what asketh men to have?  
Now with his love, now in his colde grave(1920)  
Allone, with-outen any companye.  
Far-wel, my swete fo! myn Emelye!2780  
And softe tak me in your armes tweye,  
For love of God, and herkneth what I seye.  
I have heer with my cosin Palamon  
Had stryf and rancour, many a day a-gon,  
For love of yow, and for my Ielousye.2785  
And Iupiter so wis my soule gye,  
To speken of a servant proprely,  
With alle circumstaunces trewely,(1930)  
That is to seyn, trouthe, honour, and knighthede,  
Wisdom, humblesse, estaat, and heigh kinrede,2790  
Freedom, and al that longeth to that art,  
So Iupiter have of my soule part,  
As in this world right now ne knowe I non  
So worthy to ben loved as Palamon,  
That serveth yow, and wol don al his lyf.2795  
And if that ever ye shul been a wyf,  
Foryet nat Palamon, the gentil man.'  
And with that word his speche faille gan,(1940)  
For from his feet up to his brest was come  
The cold of deeth, that hadde him overcome.2800  
And yet more-over, in his armes two  
The vital strengthe is lost, and al ago.  
Only the intellect, with-outen more,  
That dwelled in his herte syk and sore,  
Gan failen, when the herte felte deeth,2805  
Dusked his eyen two, and failed breath.  
But on his lady yet caste he his ye;  
His laste word was, 'mercy, Emelye!'(1950)  
His spirit chaunged hous, and wente ther,

As I cam never, I can nat tellen wher.2810  
Therfor I stinte, I nam no divinistre;  
Of soules finde I nat in this registre,  
Ne me ne list thilke opiniouns to telle  
Of hem, though that they wryten wher they dwelle.  
Arcite is cold, ther Mars his soule gye;2815  
Now wol I speken forth of Emelye.  
Shrighte Emelye, and howleth Palamon,  
And Theseus his suster took anon(1960)  
Swowninge, and bar hir fro the corps away.  
What helpeth it to tarien forth the day,2820  
To tellen how she weep, bothe eve and morwe?  
For in swich cas wommen have swich sorwe,  
Whan that hir housbonds been from hem ago,  
That for the more part they sorwen so,  
Or elles fallen in swich maladye,2825  
That at the laste certainly they dye.  
Infinite been the sorwes and the teres  
Of olde folk, and folk of tendre yeres,(1970)  
In al the toun, for deeth of this Theban;  
For him ther wepeth bothe child and man;2830  
So greet a weping was ther noon, certayn,  
Whan Ector was y-brought, al fresh y-slayn,  
To Troye; allas! the pitee that was ther,  
Cracching of chekes, rending eek of heer.  
'Why woldestow be deed,' thise wommen crye,2835  
'And haddest gold y-nough, and Emelye?'  
No man mighte gladen Theseus,  
Savinge his olde fader Egeus,(1980)  
That knew this worldes transmutacioun,  
As he had seyn it chaungen up and doun,2840  
Ioye after wo, and wo after gladnesse:  
And shewed hem ensamples and lyknesse.  
'Right as ther deyed never man,' quod he,  
'That he ne livede in erthe in som degree,  
Right so ther livede never man,' he seyde,2845  
'In al this world, that som tyme he ne deyde.  
This world nis but a thurghfare ful of wo,  
And we ben pilgrimes, passinge to and fro;(1990)  
Deeth is an ende of every worldly sore.'  
And over al this yet seyde he muchel more2850  
To this effect, ful wysly to enhorte  
The peple, that they sholde hem reconforte.  
Duk Theseus, with al his bisy cure,  
Caste now wher that the sepulture  
Of good Arcite may best y-maked be,2855  
And eek most honorable in his degree.  
And at the laste he took conclusioun,



That ther as first Arcite and Palamoun(2000)  
Hadden for love the bataille hem bitwene,  
That in that selve grove, swote and grene,2860  
Ther as he hadde his amorous desires,  
His compleynt, and for love his hote fires,  
He wolde make a fyr, in which thoffice  
Funeral he mighte al accomplice;  
And leet comaunde anon to hakke and hewe2865  
The okes olde, and leye hem on a rewe  
In colpons wel arrayed for to brenne;  
His officers with swifte feet they renne(2010)  
And ryde anon at his comaundement.  
And after this, Theseus hath y-sent2870  
After a bere, and it al over-spradde  
With cloth of gold, the richest that he hadde.  
And of the same suyte he cladde Arcite;  
Upon his hondes hadde he gloves whyte;  
Eek on his heed a croune of laurer grene,2875  
And in his hond a swerd ful bright and kene.  
He leyde him bare the visage on the bere,  
Therwith he weep that pitee was to here.(2020)  
And for the peple sholde seen him alle,  
Whan it was day, he broghte him to the halle,2880  
That roreth of the crying and the soun.  
Tho cam this woful Theban Palamoun,  
With flotery berd, and ruggy asshy heres,  
In clothes blake, y-dropped al with teres;  
And, passing othere of weping, Emelye,2885  
The rewfulleste of al the companye.  
In as muche as the service sholde be  
The more noble and riche in his degree,(2030)  
Duk Theseus leet forth three stedes bringe,  
That trapped were in steel al gliteringe,2890  
And covered with the armes of daun Arcite.  
Up-on thise stedes, that weren grete and whyte,  
Ther seten folk, of which oon bar his sheeld,  
Another his spere up in his hondes heeld;  
The thridde bar with him his bowe Turkeys,2895  
Of brend gold was the cas, and eek the harneys;  
And riden forth a pas with sorweful chere  
Toward the grove, as ye shul after here.(2040)  
The nobleste of the Grekes that ther were  
Upon hir shuldres carieden the bere,2900  
With slakke pas, and eyen rede and wete,  
Thurgh-out the citee, by the maister-strete,  
That sprad was al with blak, and wonder hye  
Right of the same is al the strete y-wrye.  
Up-on the right hond wente old Egeus,2905

And on that other syde duk Theseus,  
With vessels in hir hand of gold ful fyn,  
Al ful of hony, milk, and blood, and wyn;(2050)  
Eek Palamon, with ful greet companye;  
And after that cam woful Emelye,2910  
With fyr in honde, as was that tyme the gyse,  
To do thoffice of funeral servyse.  
Heigh labour, and ful greet apparailinge  
Was at the service and the fyr-makinge,  
That with his grene top the heven raughte,2915  
And twenty fadme of brede the armes straughte;  
This is to seyn, the bowes were so brode.  
Of stree first ther was leyd ful many a lode.(2060)  
But how the fyr was maked up on highte,  
And eek the names how the trees highte,2920  
As ook, firre, birch, asp, alder, holm, popler,  
Wilow, elm, plane, ash, box, chasteyn, lind, laurer,  
Mapul, thorn, beech, hasel, ew, whippeltree,  
How they weren feld , shal nat be told for me;  
Ne how the goddes ronnen up and down,2925  
Disherited of hir habitacioun,  
In which they woneden in reste and pees,  
Nymphes , Faunes, and Amadrides;(2070)  
Ne how the bestes and the briddes alle  
Fledden for fere, whan the wode was falle;2930  
Ne how the ground agast was of the light,  
That was nat wont to seen the sonne bright;  
Ne how the fyr was couched first with stree,  
And than with drye stokkes cloven a three,  
And than with grene wode and spycerye,2935  
And than with cloth of gold and with perrye,  
And gerlandes hanging with ful many a flour,  
The mirre, thencens, with al so greet odour;(2080)  
Ne how Arcite lay among al this,  
Ne what richesse aboute his body is;2940  
Ne how that Emelye, as was the gyse,  
Putte in the fyr of funeral servyse;  
Ne how she swowned whan men made the fyr,  
Ne what she spak, ne what was hir desyr;  
Ne what Ieweles men in the fyr tho caste,2945  
Whan that the fyr was greet and brente faste;  
Ne how som caste hir sheeld, and som hir spere,  
And of hir vestiments, whiche that they were,(2090)  
And cuppes ful of wyn, and milk, and blood,  
Into the fyr, that brente as it were wood;2950  
Ne how the Grekes with an huge route  
Thryes riden al the fyr aboute  
Up-on the left hand, with a loud shoutinge,

And thryes with hir speres clateringe;  
And thryës how the ladies gonne crye;2955  
Ne how that lad was hom-ward Emelye;  
Ne how Arcite is brent to asshen colde;  
Ne how that liche-wake was y-holde(2100)  
Al thilke night, ne how the Grekes pleye  
The wake-pleyes, ne kepe I nat to seye;2960  
Who wrastleth best naked, with oille enoynt,  
Ne who that bar him best, in no disioynt.  
I wol nat tellen eek how that they goon  
Hoom til Athenes, whan the pley is doon;  
But shortly to the poynt than wol I wende,2965  
And maken of my longe tale an ende.  
By processe and by lengthe of certeyn yeres  
Al stinted is the moorning and the teres(2110)  
Of Grekes, by oon general assent.  
Than semed me ther was a parlement2970  
At Athenes, up-on certeyn poynts and cas;  
Among the whiche poynts y-spoken was  
To have with certeyn contrees alliaunce,  
And have fully of Thebans obeisaunce.  
For which this noble Theseus anon2975  
Leet senden after gentil Palamon,  
Unwist of him what was the cause and why;  
But in his blake clothes sorwefully(2120)  
He cam at his comaundement in hye.  
Tho sente Theseus for Emelye.2980  
Whan they were set, and hust was al the place,  
And Theseus abiden hadde a space  
Er any word cam from his wyse brest,  
His eyen sette he ther as was his lest,  
And with a sad visage he syked stille,2985  
And after that right thus he seyde his wille.  
'The firste moevere of the cause above,  
Whan he first made the faire cheyne of love,(2130)  
Greet was theeffect, and heigh was his entente;  
Wel wiste he why, and what ther-of he mente;2990  
For with that faire cheyne of love he bond  
The fyr, the eyr, the water, and the lond  
In certeyn boundes, that they may nat flee;  
That same prince and that moevere,' quod he,  
'Hath stablissed , in this wrecched world adoun,2995  
Certeyne dayes and duracioun  
To al that is engendred in this place,  
Over the whiche day they may nat pace,(2140)  
Al mowe they yet tho dayes wel abregge;  
Ther needeth non auctoritee allegge,3000  
For it is preved by experience,

But that me list declaren my sentence.  
Than may men by this ordre wel discerne,  
That thilke moevere stable is and eterne.  
Wel may men knowe, but it be a fool,3005  
That every part deryveth from his hool.  
For nature hath nat take his beginning  
Of no partye ne cantel of a thing,(2150)  
But of a thing that parfit is and stable,  
Descending so, til it be corrupable.3010  
And therefore, of his wyse purveyaunce,  
He hath so wel biset his ordinaunce,  
That speses of thinges and progressiouns  
Shullen enduren by successiouns,  
And nat eterne be, with-oute lye:3015  
This maistow understonde and seen at eye.  
'Lo the ook, that hath so long a norisshinge  
From tyme that it first biginneth springe,(2160)  
And hath so long a lyf, as we may see,  
Yet at the laste wasted is the tree.3020  
'Considereth eek, how that the harde stoon  
Under our feet, on which we trede and goon,  
Yit wasteth it, as it lyth by the weye.  
The brode river somtyme wexeth dreye.  
The grete tounes see we wane and wende.3025  
Than may ye see that al this thing hath ende.  
'Of man and womman seen we wel also,  
That nedeth, in oon of these termes two,(2170)  
This is to seyn, in youthe or elles age,  
He moot ben deed, the king as shal a page;3030  
Som in his bed, som in the depe see,  
Som in the large feeld, as men may se;  
Ther helpeth noght, al goth that ilke weye.  
Thanne may I seyn that al this thing moot deye.  
What maketh this but Iupiter the king?3035  
The which is prince and cause of alle thing,  
Converting al un-to his propre welle,  
From which it is deryved, sooth to telle.(2180)  
And here-agayns no creature on lyve  
Of no degree availleth for to stryve.3040  
'Thanne is it wisdom, as it thinketh me,  
To maken vertu of necessitee,  
And take it wel, that we may nat eschue,  
And namely that to us alle is due.  
And who-so gruccheth ought, he dooth folye,3045  
And rebel is to him that al may gye.  
And certainly a man hath most honour  
To dyen in his excellence and flour,(2190)  
Whan he is siker of his gode name;

Than hath he doon his freend, ne him, no shame.3050  
And gladder oghte his freend ben of his deeth,  
Whan with honour up-yolden is his breath,  
Than whan his name apalled is for age;  
For al forgeten is his vasselage.  
Than is it best, as for a worthy fame,3055  
To dyen whan that he is best of name.  
The contrarie of al this is wilfulnesse.  
Why grucchen we? why have we hevinesse,(2200)  
That good Arcite, of chivalrye flour  
Departed is, with duetee and honour,3060  
Out of this foule prison of this lyf?  
Why grucchen heer his cosin and his wyf  
Of his wel-fare that loved hem so weel?  
Can he hem thank? nay, God wot, never a deel,  
That bothe his soule and eek hem-self offende,3065  
And yet they mowe hir lustes nat amende.  
'What may I conclude of this longe serie,  
But, after wo, I rede us to be merie,(2210)  
And thanken Iupiter of al his grace?  
And, er that we departen from this place,3070  
I rede that we make, of sorwes two,  
O parfyt Ioye, lasting ever-mo;  
And loketh now, wher most sorwe is her-inne,  
Ther wol we first amenden and biginne.  
'Suster,' quod he, 'this is my fulle assent,3075  
With al thavys heer of my parlement,  
That gentil Palamon, your owne knight,  
That serveth yow with wille, herte, and might,(2220)  
And ever hath doon, sin that ye first him knewe,  
That ye shul, of your grace, up-on him rewe,3080  
And taken him for housbonde and for lord:  
Leen me your hond, for this is our acord.  
Lat see now of your wommanly pitee.  
He is a kinges brother sone, pardee;  
And, though he were a povre bacheler,3085  
Sin he hath served yow so many a yeer,  
And had for yow so greet adversitee,  
It moste been considered, leveth me;(2230)  
For gentil mercy oghte to passen right.'  
Than seyde he thus to Palamon ful right;3090  
'I trowe ther nedeth litel sermoning  
To make yow assente to this thing.  
Com neer, and tak your lady by the hond.'  
Bitwixen hem was maad anon the bond,  
That highte matrimoine or mariage,3095  
By al the counseil and the baronage.  
And thus with alle blisse and melodye

Hath Palamon y-wedded Emelye.(2240)  
And God, that al this wyde world hath wrought,  
Sende him his love, that hath it dere a-boght.3100  
For now is Palamon in alle wele,  
Living in blisse, in richesse, and in hele;  
And Emelye him loveth so tendrely,  
And he hir serveth al-so gentilly,  
That never was ther no word hem bitwene3105  
Of Ielousye, or any other tene.  
Thus endeth Palamon and Emelye;  
And God save al this faire companye!—Amen.(2250)

Here is ended the Knightes Tale.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## THE MILLER'S PROLOGUE.

Here folwen the wordes bitwene the Host and the Millere.

WHAN that the Knight had thus his tale y-told,  
In al the route nas ther yong ne old<sup>3110</sup>  
That he ne seyde it was a noble storie,  
And worthy for to drawen to memorie;  
And namely the gentils everichoon.  
Our Hoste lough and swear, 'so moot I goon,  
This gooth aright; unboked is the male;<sup>3115</sup>  
Lat see now who shal telle another tale:  
For trewely, the game is wel bigonne.  
Now telleth ye, sir Monk, if that ye conne,<sup>(10)</sup>  
Sumwhat, to quyte with the Knightes tale.'  
The Miller, that for-dronken was al pale,<sup>3120</sup>  
So that unnethe up-on his hors he sat,  
He nolde avalen neither hood ne hat,  
Ne abyde no man for his curteisye,  
But in Pilates vois he gan to crye,  
And swear by armes and by blood and bones,<sup>3125</sup>  
'I can a noble tale for the nones,  
With which I wol now quyte the Knightes tale.'  
Our Hoste saugh that he was dronke of ale,<sup>(20)</sup>  
And seyde: 'abyd, Robin, my leve brother,  
Som bettre man shal telle us first another:<sup>3130</sup>  
Abyd, and lat us werken thriftily.'  
'By goddes soul,' quod he, 'that wol nat I;  
For I wol speke, or elles go my wey.'  
Our Hoste answerde: 'tel on, a devel wey!  
Thou art a fool, thy wit is overcome.'<sup>3135</sup>  
'Now herkneþ,' quod the Miller, 'alle and some!  
But first I make a protestacioun  
That I am dronke, I knowe it by my soun;<sup>(30)</sup>  
And therefore, if that I misspeke or seye,  
Wyte it the ale of Southwerk, I yow preye;<sup>3140</sup>  
For I wol telle a legende and a lyf  
Bothe of a Carpenter, and of his wyf,  
How that a clerk hath set the wrightes cappe.'  
The Reve answerde and seyde, 'stint thy clappe,  
Lat be thy lewed dronken harlotrye.<sup>3145</sup>  
It is a sinne and eek a greet folye  
To apeiren any man, or him diffame,  
And eek to bringen wyves in swich fame.<sup>(40)</sup>  
Thou mayst y-nogh of othere thinges seyn.'  
This dronken Miller spak ful sone ageyn,<sup>3150</sup>

And seyde, 'leve brother Osewold,  
Who hath no wyf, he is no cokewold.  
But I sey nat therfore that thou art oon;  
Ther been ful gode wyves many oon,3154  
And ever a thousand gode ayeyns oon badde,  
That knowestow wel thy-self, but-if thou madde.  
Why artow angry with my tale now?  
I have a wyf, pardee, as well as thou,(50)  
Yet nolde I, for the oxen in my plogh,  
Taken up-on me more than y-nogh,3160  
As demen of my-self that I were oon;  
I wol beleve wel that I am noon.  
An housbond shal nat been inquisitif  
Of goddes privetee, nor of his wyf.  
So he may finde goddes foyson there,3165  
Of the remenant nedeth nat enquere.'  
What sholde I more seyn, but this Millere  
He nolde his wordes for no man forbere,(60)  
But tolde his cherles tale in his manere;  
Me thinketh that I shal reherce it here.3170  
And ther-fore every gentil wight I preye,  
For goddes love, demeth nat that I seye  
Of evel entente, but that I moot reherce  
Hir tales alle, be they bettre or werse,  
Or elles falsen som of my matere.3175  
And therefore, who-so list it nat y-here,  
Turne over the leef, and chese another tale;  
For he shal finde y-nowe, grete and smale,(70)  
Of storial thing that toucheth gentillesse,  
And eek moralitee and holinesse;3180  
Blameth nat me if that ye chese amis.  
The Miller is a cherl, ye knowe wel this;  
So was the Reve, and othere many mo,  
And harlotrye they tolden bothe two.  
Avyseth yow and putte me out of blame;3185  
And eek men shal nat make earnest of game.

[T. om.]

[T. om.]

Here endeth the prologe.



[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## THE MILLERES TALE.

Here biginneth the Millere his tale.

WHYLOM ther was dwellinge at Oxenford  
A riche gnof, that gestes heeld to bord,  
And of his craft he was a Carpenter.  
With him ther was dwellinge a povre scoler,3190  
Had lerned art, but al his fantasye  
Was turned for to lerne astrologye,  
And coude a certeyn of conclusiouns  
To demen by interrogaciouns,  
If that men axed him in certein houres,3195  
Whan that men sholde have droghte or elles shoures,(10)  
Or if men axed him what sholde bifalle  
Of every thing, I may nat rekene hem alle.  
This clerk was cleped hende Nicholas;  
Of derne love he coude and of solas;3200  
And ther-to he was sleigh and ful privee,  
And lyk a mayden meke for to see.  
A chambre hadde he in that hostelrye  
Allone, with-outen any companye,  
Ful fetisly y-dight with herbes swote;3205  
And he him-self as swete as is the rote(20)  
Of licorys, or any cetewale.  
His Almageste and bokes grete and smale,  
His astrelabie, longinge for his art,  
His augrim-stones layen faire a-part3210  
On shelves couched at his beddes heed:  
His presse y-covered with a falding reed.  
And al above ther lay a gay sautrye,  
On which he made a nightes melodye  
So swetely, that al the chambre rong;3215  
And *Angelus ad virginem* he song;(30)  
And after that he song the kinges note;  
Ful often blessed was his mery throte.  
And thus this swete clerk his tyme spente  
After his freendes finding and his rente.3220  
This Carpenter had wedded newe a wyf  
Which that he lovede more than his lyf;  
Of eighttene yeer she was of age.  
Ialous he was, and heeld hir narwe in cage,  
For she was wilde and yong, and he was old3225  
And demed him-self ben lyk a cokewold.(40)  
He knew nat Catoun, for his wit was rude,  
That bad man sholde wedde his similitude.

Men sholde wedden after hir estaat,  
For youthe and elde is often at debaat.3230  
But sith that he was fallen in the snare,  
He moste endure, as other folk, his care.  
Fair was this yonge wyf, and ther-with-al  
As any wesele hir body gent and smal.  
A ceynt she werede barred al of silk,3235  
A barmclooth eek as whyt as morne milk(50)  
Up-on hir lendes, ful of many a gore.  
Whyt was hir smok, and brouded al bifore  
And eek bihinde, on hir coler aboute,  
Of col-blak silk, with-inne and eek with-oute.3240  
The tapes of hir whyte voluper  
Were of the same suyte of hir coler;  
Hir filet brood of silk, and set ful hye:  
And sikerly she hadde a likerous yë.  
Ful smale y-pulled were hir browes two,3245  
And tho were bent, and blake as any sloo.(60)  
She was ful more blisful on to see  
Than is the newe pere-ionette tree;  
And softer than the wolle is of a wether.  
And by hir girdel heeng a purs of lether3250  
Tasseld with silk, and perled with latoun.  
In al this world, to seken up and down,  
There nis no man so wys, that coude thenche  
So gay a popelote, or swich a wenche.  
Ful brighter was the shyning of hir hewe3255  
Than in the tour the noble y-forged newe.(70)  
But of hir song, it was as loude and yerne  
As any swalwe sittinge on a berne.  
Ther-to she coude skippe and make game,  
As any kide or calf folwinge his dame.3260  
Hir mouth was swete as bragot or the meeth,  
Or hord of apples leyd in hey or heeth.  
Winsinge she was, as is a Ioly colt,  
Long as a mast, and upright as a bolt.  
A brooch she baar up-on hir lowe coler,3265  
As brood as is the bos of a bocler.(80)  
Hir shoes were laced on hir legges hye;  
She was a prymerole, a pigges-nye  
For any lord to leggen in his bedde,  
Or yet for any good yeman to wedde.3270  
Now sire, and eft sire, so bifel the cas,  
That on a day this hende Nicholas  
Fil with this yonge wyf to rage and pleye,  
Whyl that hir housbond was at Oseneye,  
As clerkes ben ful subtile and ful queynte;3275  
And prively he caughte hir by the queynte,(90)

And seyde, 'y-wis, but if ich have my wille,  
For derne love of thee, lemman, I spille.'  
And heeld hir harde by the haunche-bones,  
And seyde, 'lemman, love me al at-ones,3280  
Or I wol dyen, also god me save!'  
And she sprong as a colt doth in the trave,  
And with hir heed she wryed faste away,  
And seyde, 'I wol nat kisse thee, by my fey,  
Why, lat be,' quod she, 'lat be, Nicholas,3285  
Or I wol crye out "harrow" and "allas."(100)  
Do wey your handes for your curteisye!'  
This Nicholas gan mercy for to crye,  
And spak so faire, and profred hir so faste,  
That she hir love him graunted atte laste,3290  
And swoor hir ooth, by seint Thomas of Kent,  
That she wol been at his comandement,  
Whan that she may hir leyser wel espie.  
'Myn housbond is so ful of Ialousye,  
That but ye wayte wel and been privee,3295  
I woot right wel I nam but deed,' quod she.(110)  
'Ye moste been ful derne, as in this cas.'  
'Nay ther-of care thee noght,' quod Nicholas,  
'A clerk had litherly biset his whyle,  
But-if he coude a Carpenter bigyle.'3300  
And thus they been acorded and y-sworn  
To wayte a tyme, as I have told biforn.  
Whan Nicholas had doon thus everydeel,  
And thakked hir aboute the lendes weel,  
He kist hir swete, and taketh his sautrye,3305  
And pleyeth faste, and maketh melodye.(120)  
Than fil it thus, that to the parish-chirche,  
Cristes owne werkes for to wirche,  
This gode wyf wente on an haliday;  
Hir forheed shoon as bright as any day,3310  
So was it wasshen whan she leet hir werk.  
Now was ther of that chirche a parish-clerk,  
The which that was y-cleped Absolon.  
Crul was his heer, and as the gold it shoon,  
And strouted as a fanne large and brode;3315  
Ful streight and even lay his Ioly shode.(130)  
His rode was reed, his eyen greye as goos;  
With Powles window corven on his shoos,  
In hoses rede he wente fetisly.  
Y-clad he was ful smal and proprely,3320  
Al in a kirtel of a light wachet;  
Ful faire and thikke been the poyntes set.  
And ther-up-on he hadde a gay surplys  
As whyt as is the blosme up-on the rys.

A mery child he was, so god me save,3325  
Wel coude he laten blood and clippe and shave,(140)  
And make a chartre of lond or acquitaunce.  
In twenty manere coude he trippe and daunce  
After the scole of Oxenforde tho,  
And with his legges casten to and fro,3330  
And pleyen songes on a small rubible;  
Ther-to he song som-tyme a loud quinible;  
And as wel coude he pleye on his giterne.  
In al the toun nas brewhous ne taverne  
That he ne visited with his solas,3335  
Ther any gaylard tappestere was.(150)  
But sooth to seyn, he was somdel squaymous  
Of farting, and of speche daungerous.  
This Absolon, that Iolif was and gay,  
Gooth with a sencer on the haliday,3340  
Sensinge the wyves of the parish faste;  
And many a lovely look on hem he caste,  
And namely on this carpenteres wyf.  
To loke on hir him thoughte a mery lyf,  
She was so propre and swete and likerous.3345  
I dar wel seyn, if she had been a mous,(160)  
And he a cat, he wolde hir hente anon.  
This parish-clerk, this Ioly Absolon,  
Hath in his herte swich a love-longinge,  
That of no wyf ne took he noon offringe;3350  
For curteisye, he seyde, he wolde noon.  
The mone, whan it was night, ful brighte shoon,  
And Absolon his giterne hath y-take,  
For paramours, he thoghte for to wake.  
And forth he gooth, Iolif and amorous,3355  
Til he cam to the carpenteres hous(170)  
A litel after cokkes hadde y-crowe;  
And dressed him up by a shot-windowe  
That was up-on the carpenteres wal.  
He singeth in his vois gentil and smal,3360  
'Now, dere lady, if thy wille be,  
I preye yow that ye wol rewe on me,'  
Ful wel acordaunt to his giterninge.  
This carpenter awook, and herde him singe,  
And spak un-to his wyf, and seyde anon,3365  
'What! Alison! herestow nat Absolon(180)  
That chaunteth thus under our boures wal?'  
And she answerde hir housbond ther-with-al,  
'Yis, god wot, Iohn, I here it every-del.'  
This passeth forth; what wol ye bet than wel?3370  
Fro day to day this Ioly Absolon  
So woweth hir, that him is wo bigon.

He waketh al the night and al the day;  
He kempte hise lokkes brode, and made him gay;  
He woweth hir by menes and brocage,3375  
And swoor he wolde been hir owne page;(190)  
He singeth, brokkinge as a nightingale;  
He sente hir piment, meeth, and spyced ale,  
And wafres, pyping hote out of the glede;  
And for she was of toune, he profred mede.3380  
For som folk wol ben wonnen for richesse,  
And som for strokes, and som for gentillesse.  
Somtyme, to shewe his lightnesse and maistrye,  
He pleyeth Herodes on a scaffold hye.  
But what availleth him as in this cas?3385  
She loveth so this hende Nicholas,(200)  
That Absolon may blowe the bukkes horn;  
He ne hadde for his labour but a scorn;  
And thus she maketh Absolon hir ape,  
And al his earnest turneth til a lape.3390  
Ful sooth is this proverbe, it is no lye,  
Men seyn right thus, 'alwey the nye slye  
Maketh the ferre leve to be looth.'  
For though that Absolon be wood or wrooth,  
By-cause that he fer was from hir sighte,3395  
This nye Nicholas stood in his lighte.(210)  
Now bere thee wel, thou hende Nicholas!  
For Absolon may waille and singe 'allas.'  
And so bifel it on a Saterdag,  
This carpenter was goon til Osenay;3400  
And hende Nicholas and Alisoun  
Acorded been to this conclusioun,  
That Nicholas shal shapen him a wyle  
This sely Ialous housbond to bigyle;  
And if so be the game wente aright,3405  
She sholde slepen in his arm al night,(220)  
For this was his desyr and hir also.  
And right anon, with-outen wordes mo,  
This Nicholas no lenger wolde tarie,  
But doth ful softe un-to his chambre carie3410  
Bothe mete and drinke for a day or tweye,  
And to hir housbonde bad hir for to seye,  
If that he axed after Nicholas,  
She sholde seye she niste where he was,  
Of al that day she saugh him nat with ye;3415  
She trowed that he was in maladye,(230)  
For, for no cry, hir mayde coude him calle;  
He nolde answeere, for no-thing that mighte falle.  
This passeth forth al thilke Saterdag,  
That Nicholas stille in his chambre lay,3420

And eet and sleep, or dide what him leste,  
Til Sunday, that the sonne gooth to reste.  
This sely carpenter hath greet merveyle  
Of Nicholas, or what thing mighte him eyle,  
And seyde, 'I am adrad, by seint Thomas,3425  
It stondeth nat aright with Nicholas.(240)  
God shilde that he deyde sodeynly!  
This world is now ful tikel, sikerly;  
I saugh to-day a cors y-born to chirche  
That now, on Monday last, I saugh him wirche.3430  
Go up,' quod he un-to his knave anoon,  
'Clepe at his dore, or knocke with a stoon,  
Loke how it is, and tel me boldely.'  
This knave gooth him up ful sturdily,  
And at the chambre-dore, whyl that he stood,3435  
He cryde and knocked as that he were wood:—(250)  
'What! how! what do ye, maister Nicholay?  
How may ye slepen al the longe day?'  
But al for noght, he herde nat a word;  
An hole he fond, ful lowe up-on a bord,3440  
Ther as the cat was wont in for to crepe;  
And at that hole he looked in ful depe,  
And at the laste he hadde of him a sighte.  
This Nicholas sat gaping ever up-righte,  
As he had kyked on the newe mone.3445  
Adoun he gooth, and tolde his maister sone(260)  
In what array he saugh this ilke man.  
This carpenter to blessen him bigan,  
And seyde, 'help us, seinte Frideswyde!  
A man woot litel what him shal bityde.3450  
This man is falle, with his astromye,  
In som woodnesse or in som agonye;  
I thoghte ay wel how that it sholde be!  
Men sholde nat knowe of goddes privetee.  
Ye, blessed be alwey a lewed man,3455  
That noght but oonly his bileve can!(270)  
So ferde another clerk with astromye;  
He walked in the feeldes for to pry  
Up-on the sterres, what ther sholde bifalle,  
Til he was in a marle-pit y-falle;3460  
He saugh nat that. But yet, by seint Thomas,  
Me reweth sore of hende Nicholas.  
He shal be rated of his studying,  
If that I may, by Iesus, hevene king!  
Get me a staf, that I may underspore,3465  
Whyl that thou, Robin, hevest up the dore.(280)  
He shal out of his studying, as I gesse'—  
And to the chambre-dore he gan him dresse.

His knave was a strong carl for the nones,  
 And by the haspe he haf it up atones;3470  
 In-to the floor the dore fil anon.  
 This Nicholas sat ay as stille as stoon,  
 And ever gaped upward in-to the eir.  
 This carpenter wende he were in despeir,  
 And hente him by the sholdres mightily,3475  
 And shook him harde, and cryde spitously,(290)  
 ‘What! Nicholay! what, how! what! loke adoun!  
 Awake, and thenk on Cristes passioun;  
 I crouche thee from elves and fro wightes!’  
 Ther-with the night-spel seyde he anon-rightes3480  
 On foure halves of the hous aboute,  
 And on the threshfold of the dore with-oute:—  
 ‘Iesu Crist, and seynt Benedight,  
 Blesse this hous from every wikked wight,  
 For nightes verye, the white *pater-noster*!3485  
 Where wentestow, seynt Petres soster?’(300)  
 And atte laste this hende Nicholas  
 Gan for to syke sore, and seyde, ‘allas!  
 Shal al the world be lost eftsones now?’  
 This carpenter answerde, ‘what seystow?3490  
 What! thenk on god, as we don, men that swinke.  
 This Nicholas answerde, ‘fecche me drinke;  
 And after wol I speke in privetee  
 Of certeyn thing that toucheth me and thee;  
 I wol telle it non other man, certeyn.’3495  
 This carpenter goth doun, and comth ageyn,(310)  
 And broghte of mighty ale a large quart;  
 And whan that ech of hem had dronke his part,  
 This Nicholas his dore faste shette,  
 And doun the carpenter by him he sette.3500  
 He seyde, ‘Iohn, myn hoste lief and dere,  
 Thou shalt up-on thy trouthe swere me here,  
 That to no wight thou shalt this conseil wreye;  
 For it is Cristes conseil that I seye,  
 And if thou telle it man, thou are forlore;3505  
 For this vengauce thou shalt han therfore,(320)  
 That if thou wreye me, thou shalt be wood!’  
 ‘Nay, Crist forbede it, for his holy blood!’  
 Quod tho this sely man, ‘I nam no labbe,  
 Ne, though I seye, I nam nat lief to gabbe.3510  
 Sey what thou wolt, I shal it never telle  
 To child ne wyf, by him that harwed helle!’  
 ‘Now John,’ quod Nicholas, ‘I wol nat lye;  
 I have y-founde in myn astrologye,  
 As I have loked in the mone bright,3515  
 That now, a Monday next, at quarter-night,(330)

Shal falle a reyn and that so wilde and wood,  
That half so greet was never Noës flood.  
This world,’ he seyde, ‘in lasse than in an hour  
Shal al be dreynnt, so hidous is the shour;3520  
Thus shal mankynde drenche and lese hir lyf.’  
This carpenter answerde, ‘allas, my wyf!  
And shal she drenche? allas! myn Alisoun!’  
For sorwe of this he fil almost adoun,  
And seyde, ‘is ther no remedie in this cas?’3525  
‘Why, yis, for gode,’ quod hende Nicholas,(340)  
‘If thou wolt werken after lore and reed;  
Thou mayst nat werken after thyn owene heed.  
For thus seith Salomon, that was ful trewe,  
“Werk al by conseil, and thou shalt nat rewe.”3530  
And if thou werken wolt by good conseil,  
I undertake, with-outen mast and seyl,  
Yet shal I saven hir and thee and me  
Hastow nat herd how saved was Noe,  
Whan that our lord had warned him biforn3535  
That al the world with water sholde be lorn?’(350)  
‘Yis,’ quod this carpenter, ‘ful yore ago.’  
‘Hastow nat herd,’ quod Nicholas, ‘also  
The sorwe of Noë with his felawshipe,  
Er that he mighte gete his wyf to shipe?3540  
Him had be lever, I dar wel undertake,  
At thilke tyme, than alle hise wetheres blake,  
That she hadde had a ship hir-self allone.  
And ther-fore, wostou what is best to done?  
This asketh haste, and of an hastif thing3545  
Men may nat preche or maken tarying.(360)  
Anon go gete us faste in-to this in  
A kneding-trogh, or elles a kimelin,  
For ech of us, but loke that they be large,  
In whiche we mowe swimme as in a barge,3550  
And han ther-inne vitaille suffisant  
But for a day; fy on the remenant!  
The water shal aslake and goon away  
Aboute pryme up-on the nexte day.  
But Robin may nat wite of this, thy knave,3555  
Ne eek thy mayde Gille I may nat save;(370)  
Axe nat why, for though thou aske me,  
I wol nat tellen goddes privetee.  
Suffiseth thee, but if thy wittes madde,  
To han as greet a grace as Noë hadde.3560  
Thy wyf shal I wel saven, out of doute,  
Go now thy wey, and speed thee heer-aboute.  
But whan thou hast, for hir and thee and me,  
Y-geten us thise kneding-tubbes three,



Than shaltow hange hem in the roof ful hye,3565  
That no man of our purveyaunce spye.(380)  
And whan thou thus hast doon as I have seyde,  
And hast our vitaille faire in hem y-leyde,  
And eek an ax, to smyte the corde atwo  
When that the water comth, that we may go,3570  
And broke an hole an heigh, up-on the gable,  
Unto the gardin-ward, over the stable,  
That we may frely passen forth our way  
Whan that the grete shour is goon away—  
Than shaltow swimme as myrie, I undertake,3575  
As doth the whyte doke after hir drake.(390)  
Than wol I clepe, “how! Alison! how! John!  
Be myrie, for the flood wol passe anon.”  
And thou wolt seyn, “hayl, maister Nicholay!  
Good morwe, I se thee wel, for it is day.”3580  
And than shul we be lordes al our lyf  
Of al the world, as Noë and his wyf.  
But of o thyng I warne thee ful right,  
Be wel avysed, on that like night  
That we ben entred in-to shippes bord,3585  
That noon of us ne speke nat a word,(400)  
Ne clepe, ne crye, but been in his preyere;  
For it is goddes owne heste dere.  
Thy wyf and thou mote hange fer a-twinne,  
For that bitwixe yow shal be no sinne3590  
No more in looking than ther shal in dede;  
This ordinance is seyde, go, god thee spede!  
Tomorwe at night, whan men ben alle aslepe,  
In-to our kneding-tubbes wol we crepe,  
And sitten ther, abyding goddes grace.3595  
Go now thy wey, I have no lenger space(410)  
To make of this no lenger sermoning.  
Men seyn thus, “send the wyse, and sey no-thing;”  
Thou art so wys, it nedeth thee nat teche;  
Go, save our lyf, and that I thee biseche.’3600  
This sely carpenter goth forth his wey.  
Ful ofte he seith ‘allas’ and ‘weylawey,’  
And to his wyf he tolde his privetee;  
And she was war, and knew it bet than he,  
What al this queynte cast was for to seye.3605  
But nathelees she ferde as she wolde deye,(420)  
And seyde, ‘allas! go forth thy wey anon,  
Help us to scape, or we ben lost echon;  
I am thy trewe verray wedded wyf;  
Go, dere spouse, and help to save our lyf.’3610  
Lo! which a greet thyng is affeccion!  
Men may dye of imaginacioun,

So depe may impressioun be take.  
This sely carpenter biginneth quake;  
Him thinketh verrailly that he may see<sup>3615</sup>  
Noës flood come walwing as the see<sup>(430)</sup>  
To drenchen Alisoun, his hony dere.  
He wepeth, weyleth, maketh sory chere,  
He syketh with ful many a sory swogh.  
He gooth and geteth him a kneding-trogh,<sup>3620</sup>  
And after that a tubbe and a kimelin,  
And prively he sente hem to his in,  
And heng hem in the roof in privetee.  
His owne hand he made laddres three,  
To climben by the ronges and the stalkes<sup>3625</sup>  
Un-to the tubbes hanginge in the balkes,<sup>(440)</sup>  
And hem vitailed , bothe trogh and tubbe,  
With breed and chese, and good ale in a Iubbe,  
Suffysinge right y-nogh as for a day.  
But er that he had maad al this array,<sup>3630</sup>  
He sente his knave, and eek his wenche also,  
Up-on his nede to London for to go.  
And on the Monday, whan it drow to night,  
He shette his dore with-oute candel-light,  
And dressed al thing as it sholde be.<sup>3635</sup>  
And shortly, up they clomben alle three;<sup>(450)</sup>  
They sitten stille wel a furlong-way.  
'Now, *Pater-noster*, clom!' seyde Nicholay,  
And 'clom,' quod John, and 'clom,' seyde Alisoun.  
This carpenter seyde his devocioun,<sup>3640</sup>  
And stille he sit, and biddeth his preyere,  
Awaytinge on the reyn, if he it here.  
The dede sleep, for wery businesse,  
Fil on this carpenter right, as I gesse,  
Aboute corfew-tyme, or litel more;<sup>3645</sup>  
For travail of his goost he groneth sore,<sup>(460)</sup>  
And eft he routeth, for his heed mislay.  
Doun of the laddre stalketh Nicholay,  
And Alisoun, ful softe adoun she spedde;  
With-outen wordes mo, they goon to bedde<sup>3650</sup>  
Ther-as the carpenter is wont to lye.  
Ther was the revel and the melodye;  
And thus lyth Alison and Nicholas,  
In businesse of mirthe and of solas,  
Til that the belle of laudes gan to ringe,<sup>3655</sup>  
And freres in the chauncel gonne singe.<sup>(470)</sup>  
This parish-clerk, this amorous Absolon,  
That is for love alwey so wo bigon,  
Up-on the Monday was at Oseneye  
With companye , him to disporte and pleye,<sup>3660</sup>

And axed up-on cas a cloisterer  
Ful prively after Iohn the carpenter;  
And he drough him a-part out of the chirche,  
And seyde, 'I noot, I saugh him here nat wirche  
Sin Saterdag; I trow that he be went<sup>3665</sup>  
For timber, ther our abbot hath him sent;(480)  
For he is wont for timber for to go,  
And dwellen at the grange a day or two;  
Or elles he is at his hous, certeyn;  
Wher that he be, I can nat sothly seyn.'<sup>3670</sup>  
This Absolon ful Ioly was and light,  
And thoghte, 'now is tyme wake al night;  
For sikirly I saugh him nat stiringe  
Aboute his dore sin day bigan to springe.  
So moot I thryve, I shall, at cokkes crowe,<sup>3675</sup>  
Ful prively knocken at his windowe(490)  
That stant ful lowe up-on his boures wal.  
To Alison now wol I tellen al  
My love-longing, for yet I shal nat misse  
That at the leste wey I shal hir kisse.<sup>3680</sup>  
Som maner confort shal I have, parfay,  
My mouth hath icched al this longe day;  
That is a signe of kissing atte leste.  
Al night me mette eek, I was at a feste.  
Therfor I wol gon slepe an heure or tweye,<sup>3685</sup>  
And al the night than wol I wake and pleye.'<sup>(500)</sup>  
Whan that the firste cok hath crowe, anon  
Up rist this Ioly lover Absolon,  
And him arrayeth gay, at point-devys.  
But first he cheweth greyn and lycorys,<sup>3690</sup>  
To smellen swete, er he had kembd his heer.  
Under his tonge a trewe love he beer,  
For ther-by wende he to ben gracious.  
He rometh to the carpenteres hous,  
And stille he stant under the shot-windowe;<sup>3695</sup>  
Un-to his brest it raughte, it was so lowe;(510)  
And softe he cogheth with a semi-soun—  
'What do ye, hony-comb, swete Alisoun?  
My faire brid, my swete cinamome,  
Awaketh, lemman myn, and speketh to me!<sup>3700</sup>  
Wel litel thenken ye up-on my wo,  
That for your love I swete ther I go.  
No wonder is thogh that I swelte and swete;  
I moorne as doth a lamb after the tete.  
Y-wis, lemman, I have swich love-longinge,<sup>3705</sup>  
That lyk a turtel trewe is my moorninge;(520)  
I may nat ete na more than a mayde.'  
'Go fro the window, Iakke fool,' she sayde,

‘As help me god, it wol nat be “com ba me,”  
 I love another, and elles I were to blame,3710  
 Wel bet than thee, by Iesu, Absolon!  
 Go forth thy wey, or I wol caste a ston,  
 And lat me slepe, a twenty devel wey!’  
 ‘Allas,’ quod Absolon, ‘and weylawey!  
 That trewe love was ever so yvel biset!3715  
 Than kisse me, sin it may be no bet,(530)  
 For Iesus love and for the love of me.’  
 ‘Wiltow than go thy wey ther-with?’ quod she.  
 ‘Ye, certes, lemman,’ quod this Absolon.  
 ‘Thanne make thee redy,’ quod she, ‘I come anon;’3720  
 And un-to Nicholas she seyde stille,  
 ‘Now hust, and thou shalt laughen al thy fille.’ [T. om.]  
 This Absolon doun sette him on his knees,  
 And seyde, ‘I am a lord at alle degrees; [T. om.]  
 For after this I hope ther cometh more!3725  
 Lemman, thy grace, and swete brid, thyn ore!’(540)  
 The window she undoth, and that in haste,  
 ‘Have do,’ quod she, ‘com of, and speed thee faste,  
 Lest that our neighebores thee espye.’  
 This Absolon gan wype his mouth ful drye;3730  
 Derk was the night as pich, or as the cole,  
 And at the window out she putte hir hole,  
 And Absolon, him fil no bet ne wers,  
 But with his mouth he kiste hir naked ers  
 Ful savourly, er he was war of this.3735  
 Abak he sterte, and thoghte it was amis,(550)  
 For wel he wiste a womman hath no berd;  
 He felte a thing al rough and long y-herd,  
 And seyde, ‘fy! allas! what have I do?’  
 ‘Tehee!’ quod she, and clapte the window to;3740  
 And Absolon goth forth a sory pas.  
 ‘A berd, a berd!’ quod hende Nicholas,  
 ‘By goddes *corpus*, this goth faire and weel!’  
 This sely Absolon herde every deel,  
 And on his lippe he gan for anger byte;3745  
 And to him-self he seyde, ‘I shal thee quyte!’(560)  
 Who rubbeth now, who froteth now his lippes  
 With dust, with sond, with straw, with clooth, with chippes,  
 But Absolon, that seith ful ofte, ‘allas!  
 My soule bitake I un-to Sathanas,3750  
 But me wer lever than al this toun,’ quod he,  
 ‘Of this despyt awroken for to be!  
 Allas!’ quod he, ‘allas! I ne hadde y-bleynt!’  
 His hote love was cold and al y-queynt;  
 For fro that tyme that he had kiste hir ers,3755  
 Of paramours he sette nat a kers,(570)

For he was heled of his maladye;  
Ful ofte paramours he gan deffye,  
And weep as dooth a child that is y-bete.  
A softe paas he wente over the strete<sup>3760</sup>  
Un-til a smith men cleped daun Gerveys,  
That in his forge smithed plough-harneys;  
He sharpeth shaar and culter bisily.  
This Absolon knokketh al esily,  
And seyde, ‘undo, Gerveys, and that anon.’<sup>3765</sup>  
‘What, who artow?’ ‘It am I, Absolon.’<sup>(580)</sup>  
‘What, Absolon! for Cristes swete tree,  
Why ryse ye so rathe, ey, *benedicite!*  
What eyleth yow? som gay gerl, god it woot,  
Hath broght yow thus up-on the viritoot;<sup>3770</sup>  
By sēynt Note, ye woot wel what I mene.’  
This Absolon ne roghte nat a bene  
Of al his pley, no word agayn he yaf;  
He hadde more tow on his distaf  
Than Gerveys knew, and seyde, ‘freend so dere,<sup>3775</sup>  
That hote culter in the chimenee here,<sup>(590)</sup>  
As lene it me, I have ther-with to done,  
And I wol bringe it thee agayn ful sone.’  
Gerveys answerde, ‘certes, were it gold,  
Or in a poke nobles alle untold,<sup>3780</sup>  
Thou sholdest have, as I am trewe smith;  
Ey, Cristes foo! what wol ye do ther-with?’  
‘Ther-of,’ quod Absolon, ‘be as be may;  
I shal wel telle it thee to-morwe day’ —  
And caughte the culter by the colde stele.<sup>3785</sup>  
Ful softe out at the dore he gan to stele,<sup>(600)</sup>  
And wente un-to the carpenteres wal.  
He cogheth first, and knokketh ther-with-al  
Upon the windowe, right as he dide er.  
This Alison answerde, ‘Who is ther<sup>3790</sup>  
That knokketh so? I warante it a theef.’  
‘Why, nay,’ quod he, ‘god woot, my swete leef,  
I am thyn Absolon, my dereling!  
Of gold,’ quod he, ‘I have thee broght a ring;  
My moder yaf it me, so god me save,<sup>3795</sup>  
Ful fyn it is, and ther-to wel y-grave;<sup>(610)</sup>  
This wol I yeve thee, if thou me kisse!’  
This Nicholas was risen for to pisse,  
And thoghte he wolde amenden al the Iape,  
He sholde kisse his ers er that he scape.<sup>3800</sup>  
And up the windowe dide he hastily,  
And out his ers he putteth prively  
Over the buttok, to the haunche-bon;  
And ther-with spak this clerk, this Absolon,

‘Spek, swete brid, I noot nat wher thou art.’3805  
This Nicholas anon leet flee a fart,(620)  
As greet as it had been a thonder-dent,  
That with the strook he was almost y-blent;  
And he was redy with his iren hoot,  
And Nicholas amidde the ers he smoot.3810  
Of gooth the skin an hande-brede aboute,  
The hote culter brende so his toute,  
And for the smert he wende for to dye.  
As he were wood, for wo he gan to crye—  
‘Help! water! water! help, for goddes herte!’3815  
This carpenter out of his slomber sterte,(630)  
And herde oon cryen ‘water’ as he were wood,  
And thoughte, ‘Allas! now comth Nowelis flood!’  
He sit him up with-outhe wordes mo,  
And with his ax he smoot the corde a-two,3820  
And doun goth al; he fond neither to selle,  
Ne breed ne ale, til he cam to the selle  
Up-on the floor; and ther aswowne he lay.  
Up sterte hir Alison, and Nicholay,  
And cryden ‘out’ and ‘harrow’ in the strete.3825  
The neighebores, bothe smale and grete,(640)  
In ronnen, for to gauren on this man,  
That yet aswowne he lay, bothe pale and wan;  
For with the fal he brosten hadde his arm;  
But stonde he moste un-to his owne harm.3830  
For whan he spak, he was anon bore doun  
With hende Nicholas and Alisoun.  
They tolden every man that he was wood,  
He was agast so of ‘Nowelis flood’  
Thurgh fantasye, that of his vanitee3835  
He hadde y-boght him kneding-tubbes three,(650)  
And hadde hem hanged in the roof above;  
And that he preyed hem, for goddes love,  
To sitten in the roof, *par companye*.  
The folk gan laughen at his fantasye;3840  
In-to the roof they kyken and they gape,  
And turned al his harm un-to a lape.  
For what so that this carpenter answerde,  
It was for noght, no man his reson herde;  
With othes grete he was so sworn adoun,3845  
That he was holden wood in al the toun;(660)  
For every clerk anon-right heeld with other.  
They seyde, ‘the man is wood, my leve brother;’  
And every wight gan laughen of this stryf.  
Thus swyved was the carpenteres wyf,3850  
For al his keping and his Ialouslye;  
And Absolon hath kist hir nether yë;

And Nicholas is scalded in the tute.(667)  
This tale is doon, and god save al the route!3854

Here endeth the Millere his tale.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## THE REEVE'S PROLOGUE.

The prologe of the Reves tale.

WHAN folk had laughen at this nyce cas<sup>3855</sup>  
Of Absolon and hende Nicholas,  
Diverse folk diversely they seyde;  
But, for the more part, they loughe and pleyde,  
Ne at this tale I saugh no man him greve,  
But it were only Osewold the Reve,<sup>3860</sup>  
By-cause he was of carpenteres craft.  
A litel ire is in his herte y-laft,  
He gan to grucche and blamed it a lyte.  
'So theek,' quod he, 'ful wel coude I yow quyte<sup>(10)</sup>  
With blering of a proud milleres yë,<sup>3865</sup>  
If that me liste speke of ribaudye.  
But ik am old, me list not pley for age;  
Gras-tyme is doon, my fodder is now forage,  
This whyte top wryteth myne olde yeres,  
Myn herte is al-so mowled as myne heres,<sup>3870</sup>  
But-if I fare as dooth an open-ers;  
That ilke fruit is ever leng the wers,  
Til it be roten in mullok or in stree.  
We olde men, I drede, so fare we;<sup>(20)</sup>  
Til we be roten, can we nat be rype;<sup>3875</sup>  
We hoppen ay, whyl that the world wol pype.  
For in oure wil ther stiketh ever a nayl,  
To have an hoor heed and a grene tayl,  
As hath a leek; for thogh our might be goon,  
Our wil desireth folie ever in oon.<sup>3880</sup>  
For whan we may nat doon, than wol we speke;  
Yet in our asshen olde is fyr y-reke.  
Foure gledes han we, whiche I shal devyse,  
Avaunting, lying, anger, coveityse;<sup>(30)</sup>  
Thise foure sparkles longen un-to elde.<sup>3885</sup>  
Our olde lemes mowe wel been unwelde,  
But wil ne shal nat failen, that is sooth.  
And yet ik have alwey a coltes tooth,  
As many a yeer as it is passed henne  
Sin that my tappe of lyf bigan to renne.<sup>3890</sup>  
For sikerly, whan I was bore, anon  
Deeth drogh the tappe of lyf and leet it gon;  
And ever sith hath so the tappe y-ronne,  
Til that almost al empty is the tonne.<sup>(40)</sup>  
The stream of lyf now droppeth on the chimbe;<sup>3895</sup>  
The sely tonge may wel ringe and chimbe



Of wrecchednesse that passed is ful yore;  
With olde folk, save dotage, is namore.’  
Whan that our host hadde herd this sermoning,  
He gan to speke as lordly as a king;3900  
He seide, ‘what amounteth al this wit?  
What shul we speke alday of holy writ?  
The devel made a reve for to preche,  
And of a souter a shipman or a leche.(50)  
Sey forth thy tale, and tarie nat the tyme,3905  
Lo, Depeford! and it is half-way pryme.  
Lo, Grenewich, ther many a shrewe is inne;  
It were al tyme thy tale to biginne.’  
‘Now, sires,’ quod this Osewold the Reve,  
‘I pray yow alle that ye nat yow greve,3910  
Thogh I answeere and somdel sette his howve;  
For leweful is with force force of-showve.  
This dronke millere hath y-told us heer,  
How that bigyled was a carpentee,(60)  
Peraventure in scorn, for I am oon.3915  
And, by your leve, I shal him quyte anoon;  
Right in his cherles termes wol I speke.  
I pray to god his nekke mote breke;  
He can wel in myn yē seen a stalke,  
But in his owne he can nat seen a balke.3920

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## THE REVES TALE.

Here biginneth the Reves tale.

At Trumpington, nat fer fro Cantebrigge,  
Ther goth a brook and over that a brigge,  
Up-on the whiche brook ther stant a melle;  
And this is verray soth that I yow telle.  
A Miller was ther dwelling many a day;3925  
As eny pecok he was proud and gay.  
Pypen he coude and fische, and nettes bete,  
And turne coppes, and wel wrastle and shete;  
And by his belt he baar a long panade,  
And of a swerd ful trenchant was the blade.3930  
A Ioly popper baar he in his pouche;(11)  
Ther was no man for peril dorste him touche.  
A Sheffield thwitel baar he in his hose;  
Round was his face, and camuse was his nose.  
As piled as an ape was his skulle.3935  
He was a market-beter atte fulle.  
Ther dorste no wight hand up-on him legge,  
That he ne swoor he sholde anon abegge.  
A theef he was for sothe of corn and mele,  
And that a sly, and usaunt for to stele.3940  
His name was hoten dëynous Simkin.(21)  
A wyf he hadde, y-comen of noble kin;  
The person of the toun hir fader was.  
With hir he yaf ful many a panne of bras,  
For that Simkin sholde in his blood allye.3945  
She was y-fostred in a nonnerye;  
For Simkin wolde no wyf, as he sayde,  
But she were wel y-norissed and a mayde,  
To saven his estaat of yomanrye.  
And she was proud, and pert as is a pye.3950  
A ful fair sighte was it on hem two;(31)  
On haly-dayes biforn hir wolde he go  
With his tipet bounden about his heed,  
And she cam after in a gyte of reed;  
And Simkin hadde hosen of the same.3955  
Ther dorste no wight clepen hir but ‘dame.’  
Was noon so hardy that wente by the weye  
That with hir dorste rage or ones pleye,  
But-if he wolde be slayn of Simkin  
With panade, or with knyf, or boydekin.3960  
For Ialous folk ben perilous evermo,(41)  
Algate they wolde hir wyves wenden so.

And eek, for she was somdel smoterlich,  
She was as digne as water in a dich;  
And ful of hoker and of bisemare.3965  
Hir thoughte that a lady sholde hir spare,  
What for hir kinrede and hir nortelrye  
That she had lerned in the nonnerye.  
A doghter hadde they bitwixe hem two  
Of twenty yeer, with-outen any mo,3970  
Savinge a child that was of half-yeer age;(51)  
In cradel it lay and was a propre page.  
This wenche thikke and wel y-growen was,  
With camuse nose and yën greye as glas;  
With buttokes brode and brestes rounde and hye,3975  
But right fair was hir heer, I wol nat lye.  
The person of the toun, for she was feir,  
In purpos was to maken hir his heir  
Bothe of his catel and his messuage,  
And straunge he made it of hir mariage.3980  
His purpos was for to bistowe hir hye(61)  
In-to som worthy blood of auncetrye;  
For holy chirches good moot been despended  
On holy chirches blood, that is descended.  
Therefore he wolde his holy blood honoure,3985  
Though that he holy chirche sholde devoure.  
Gret soken hath this miller, out of doute,  
With whete and malt of al the land aboute;  
And nameliche ther was a greet collegge,  
Men clepen the Soler-halle at Cantebregge,3990  
Ther was hir whete and eek hir malt y-grounde.(71)  
And on a day it happed, in a stounde,  
Sik lay the maunciple on a maladye;  
Men wenden wisly that he sholde dye.  
For which this miller stal bothe mele and corn3995  
An hundred tyme more than biforn;  
For ther-biforn he stal but curteisly,  
But now he was a thief outrageously,  
For which the wardeyn chidde and made fare.  
But ther-of sette the miller nat a tare;4000  
He craketh boost, and swoor it was nat so.(81)  
Than were ther yonge povre clerkes two,  
That dwelten in this halle, of which I seye.  
Testif they were, and lusty for to pleye,  
And, only for hir mirthe and revelrye,4005  
Up-on the wardeyn bisily they crye,  
To yeve hem leve but a litel stounde  
To goon to mille and seen hir corn y-grounde;  
And hardily, they dorste leye hir nekke,  
The miller shold nat stele hem half a pekke4010

Of corn by sleighte, ne by force hem reve;(91)  
And at the laste the wardeyn yaf hem leve.  
Iohn hight that oon, and Aleyn hight that other;  
Of o toun were they born, that highte Strother,  
Fer in the north, I can nat telle where.4015  
This Aleyn maketh redy al his gere,  
And on an hors the sak he caste anon.  
Forth goth Aleyn the clerk, and also Iohn,  
With good swerd and with bokeler by hir syde.  
Iohn knew the wey, hem nedede no gyde,4020  
And at the mille the sak adoun he layth.(101)  
Aleyn spak first, ‘al hayl, Symond, y-fayth;  
How fares thy faire doghter and thy wyf?’  
‘Aleyn! welcome,’ quod Simkin, ‘by my lyf,  
And Iohn also, how now, what do ye heer?’4025  
‘Symond,’ quod Iohn, ‘by god, nede has na peer;  
Him boes serve him-selve that has na swayn,  
Or elles he is a fool, as clerkes sayn.  
Our manciple, I hope he wil be deed,  
Swa werkes ay the wanges in his heed.4030  
And forthy is I come, and eek Alayn,(111)  
To grinde our corn and carie it ham agayn;  
I pray yow spede us hethen that ye may.’  
‘It shal be doon,’ quod Simkin, ‘by my fay;  
What wol ye doon whyl that it is in hande?’4035  
‘By god, right by the hoper wil I stande,’  
Quod Iohn, ‘and se how that the corn gas in;  
Yet saugh I never, by my fader kin,  
How that the hoper waggas til and fra.’  
Aleyn answerde, ‘Iohn, and wiltow swa,4040  
Than wil I be bynethe, by my croun,(121)  
And se how that the mele falles down  
In-to the trough; that sal be my disport.  
For Iohn, in faith, I may been of your sort;  
I is as ille a miller as are ye.’4045  
This miller smyled of hir nycetee,  
And thoghte, ‘al this nis doon but for a wyle;  
They wene that no man may hem bigyle;  
But, by my thrift, yet shal I blere hir ye  
For al the sleighte in hir philosophye.4050  
The more queynte crekes that they make,(131)  
The more wol I stele whan I take.  
In stede of flour, yet wol I yeve hem bren.  
“The gretteste clerkes been nocht the wysest men,”  
As whylom to the wolf thus spak the mare;4055  
Of al hir art I counte nocht a tare.’  
Out at the dore he gooth ful prively,  
Whan that he saugh his tyme, softly;

He loketh up and doun til he hath founde  
The clerkes hors, ther as it stood y-bounde<sup>4060</sup>  
Bihinde the mille, under a levesel;(141)  
And to the hors he gooth him faire and wel;  
He strepeth of the brydel right anon.  
And whan the hors was loos, he ginneth gon  
Toward the fen, ther wilde mares renne,<sup>4065</sup>  
Forth with wehee, thurgh thikke and thurgh thenne.  
This miller gooth agayn, no word he seyde,  
But dooth his note, and with the clerkes pleyde,  
Til that hir corn was faire and wel y-grounde.  
And whan the mele is sakked and y-bounde,<sup>4070</sup>  
This Iohn goth out and fynt his hors away,(151)  
And gan to crye 'harrow' and 'weylaway!  
Our hors is lorn! Alayn, for goddes banes,  
Step on thy feet, com out, man, al at anes!  
Allas, our wardeyn has his palfrey lorn.'<sup>4075</sup>  
This Aleyn al forgat, bothe mele and corn,  
Al was out of his mynde his housbondrye.  
'What? whilk way is he geen?' he gan to crye.  
The wyf cam leping inward with a ren,  
She seyde, 'allas! your hors goth to the fen<sup>4080</sup>  
With wilde mares, as faste as he may go.(161)  
Unthank come on his hand that bond him so,  
And he that bettre sholde han knit the reyne.'  
'Allas,' quod Iohn, 'Aleyn, for Cristes peyne,  
Lay down thy swerd, and I wil myn alswa;<sup>4085</sup>  
I is ful wight, god waat, as is a raa;  
By goddes herte he sal nat scape us bathe.  
Why nadstow pit the capul in the lathe?  
Il-hayl, by god, Aleyn, thou is a fonne!  
This sely clerkes han ful faste y-ronne<sup>4090</sup>  
To-ward the fen, bothe Aleyn and eek Iohn.(171)  
And whan the miller saugh that they were gon,  
He half a busshel of hir flour hath take,  
And bad his wyf go knede it in a cake.  
He seyde, 'I trowe the clerkes were aferd;<sup>4095</sup>  
Yet can a miller make a clerkes berd  
For al his art; now lat hem goon hir weye.  
Lo wher they goon, ye, lat the children pleye;  
They gete him nat so lightly, by my croun!'  
Thise sely clerkes rennen up and doun<sup>4100</sup>  
With 'keep, keep, stand, stand, Iossa, warderere,(181)  
Ga whistle thou, and I shal kepe him here!'  
But shortly, til that it was verray night,  
They coude nat, though they do al hir might,  
Hir capul cacche, he ran alwey so faste,<sup>4105</sup>  
Til in a dich they caughte him atte laste.

Wery and weet, as beste is in the reyn,  
Comth sely Iohn, and with him comth Aleyn.  
'Allas,' quod Iohn, 'the day that I was born!  
Now are we drive til hething and til scorn.4110  
Our corn is stole , men wil us foles calle,(191)  
Bathe the wardeyn and our felawes alle,  
And namely the miller; weylaway!'  
Thus pleyneth Iohn as he goth by the way  
Toward the mille, and Bayard in his hond.4115  
The miller sitting by the fyr he fond,  
For it was night, and forther mighte they noght;  
But, for the love of god, they him bisoght  
Of herberwe and of ese, as for hir peny.  
The miller seyde agayn, 'if ther be eny,4120  
Swich as it is, yet shal ye have your part.(201)  
Myn hous is streit, but ye han lerned art;  
Ye conne by argumentes make a place  
A myle brood of twenty foot of space.  
Lat see now if this place may suffyse,4125  
Or make it roum with speche, as is youre gyse.'  
'Now, Symond,' seyde Iohn, 'by seint Cutberd,  
Ay is thou mery, and this is faire answerd.  
I have herd seyde, man sal taa of twa thinges  
Slyk as he fyndes, or taa slyk as he bringes.4130  
But specially, I pray thee, hoste dere,(211)  
Get us som mete and drinke, and make us chere,  
And we wil payen trewely atte fulle.  
With empty hand men may na haukes tulle;  
Lo here our silver, redy for to spende.'4135  
This miller in-to toun his doghter sende  
For ale and breed, and rosted hem a goos,  
And bond hir hors, it sholde nat gon loos;  
And in his owne chambre hem made a bed  
With shetes and with chalons faire y-spred,4140  
Noght from his owne bed ten foot or twelve.(221)  
His doghter hadde a bed, al by hir-selve,  
Right in the same chambre, by and by;  
It mighte be no bet, and cause why,  
Ther was no roumer herberwe in the place.4145  
They soupen and they speke, hem to solace,  
And drinken ever strong ale atte beste.  
Aboute midnight wente they to reste.  
Wel hath this miller vernissed his heed;  
Ful pale he was for-dronken, and nat reed.4150  
He yexeth , and he speketh thurgh the nose(231)  
As he were on the quakke, or on the pose.  
To bedde he gooth, and with him goth his wyf.  
As any Iay she light was and Iolyf,

So was hir Ioly whistle wel y-wet.4155  
The cradel at hir beddes feet is set,  
To rokken, and to yeve the child to souke.  
And whan that dronken al was in the crouke,  
To bedde went the doghter right anon;  
To bedde gooth Aleyn and also Iohn;4160  
Ther nas na more, hem nedede no dwale.(241)  
This miller hath so wisly bibbed ale,  
That as an hors he snorteth in his sleep,  
Ne of his tayl bihinde he took no keep.  
His wyf bar him a burdon, a ful strong,4165  
Men mighte hir routing here two furlong;  
The wenche routeth eek *par companye*.  
Aleyn the clerk, that herd this melodye,  
He poked Iohn, and seyde, ‘slepestow?  
Herdestow ever slyk a sang er now?4170  
Lo, whilk a compline is y-mel hem alle!(251)  
A wilde fyr up-on thair bodyes falle!  
Wha herkned ever slyk a ferly thing?  
Ye, they sal have the flour of il ending.  
This lange night ther tydes me na reste;4175  
But yet, na fors; al sal be for the beste.  
For Iohn,’ seyde he, ‘als ever moot I thryve,  
If that I may, yon wenche wil I swyve.  
Som esement has lawe y-shapen us;  
For Iohn, ther is a lawe that says thus,4180  
That gif a man in a point be y-greved,(261)  
That in another he sal be releved.  
Our corn is stoln, shortly, it is na nay,  
And we han had an il fit al this day.  
And sin I sal have neen amendement,4185  
Agayn my los I wil have esement.  
By goddes saule, it sal neen other be!’  
This Iohn answerde, ‘Alayn, avyse thee,  
The miller is a perilous man,’ he seyde,  
‘And gif that he out of his sleep abreyde,4190  
He mighte doon us bathe a vileinye.’(271)  
Aleyn answerde, ‘I count him nat a flye;’  
And up he rist, and by the wenche he crepte.  
This wenche lay upright, and faste slepte,  
Til he so ny was, er she mighte espye,4195  
That it had been to late for to crye,  
And shortly for to seyn, they were at on;  
Now pley, Aleyn! for I wol speke of Iohn.  
This Iohn lyth stille a furlong-wey or two,  
And to him-self he maketh routhe and wo:4200  
‘Allas!’ quod he, ‘this is a wikked Iape;(281)  
Now may I seyn that I is but an ape.

Yet has my felawe som-what for his harm;  
He has the milleris doghter in his arm.  
He auntred him, and has his nedes sped,4205  
And I lye as a draf-sek in my bed;  
And when this Iape is tald another day,  
I sal been halde a daf, a cokenay!  
I wil aryse, and aunte it, by my fayth!  
“Unhardy is unsely,” thus men sayth.’4210  
And up he roos and softly he wente(291)  
Un-to the cradel, and in his hand it hente,  
And baar it softe un-to his beddes feet.  
Sone after this the wyf hir routing leet,  
And gan awake, and wente hir out to pisse,4215  
And cam agayn, and gan hir cradel misse,  
And groped heer and ther, but she fond noon.  
‘Allas!’ quod she, ‘I hadde almost misgoon;  
I hadde almost gon to the clerkes bed.  
Ey, *benedicite!* thanne hadde I foule y-sped:’4220  
And forth she gooth til she the cradel fond.(301)  
She gropeth alwey forther with hir hond,  
And fond the bed, and thoghte noght but good,  
By-cause that the cradel by it stood,  
And niste wher she was, for it was derk;4225  
But faire and wel she creep in to the clerk,  
And lyth ful stille, and wolde han caught a sleep.  
With-inne a whyl this Iohn the clerk up leep,  
And on this gode wyf he leyth on sore.  
So mery a fit ne hadde she nat ful yore;4230  
He priketh harde and depe as he were mad.(311)  
This Ioly lyf han thise two clerkes lad  
Til that the thridde cok bigan to singe.  
Aleyn wex wery in the daweninge,  
For he had swonken al the longe night;4235  
And seyde, ‘far wel, Malin, swete wight!  
The day is come, I may no lenger byde;  
But evermo, wher so I go or ryde,  
I is thyn awen clerk, swa have I seel!’  
‘Now dere lemman,’ quod she, ‘go, far weel!4240  
But er thou go, o thing I wol thee telle,(321)  
Whan that thou wendest homward by the melle,  
Right at the entree of the dore bihinde,  
Thou shalt a cake of half a busshel finde  
That was y-made of thyn owne mele,4245  
Which that I heelp my fader for to stele.  
And, gode lemman, god thee save and kepe!’  
And with that word almost she gan to wepe.  
Aleyn up-rist, and thoughte, ‘er that it dawe,  
I wol go crepen in by my felawe;4250



And fond the cradel with his hand anon,(331)  
 ‘By god,’ thoghte he, ‘al wrang I have misgon;  
 Myn heed is toty of my swink to-night,  
 That maketh me that I go nat aright.  
 I woot wel by the cradel, I have misgo,4255  
 Heer lyth the miller and his wyf also.’  
 And forth he goth, a twenty devel way,  
 Un-to the bed ther-as the miller lay.  
 He wende have copen by his felawe Iohn;  
 And by the miller in he creep anon,4260  
 And caughte hym by the nekke, and softe he spak:(341)  
 He seyde, ‘thou, Iohn, thou swynes-heed, awak  
 For Cristes saule, and heer a noble game.  
 For by that lord that called is seint Iame,  
 As I have thryes, in this shorte night,4265  
 Swyved the milleres doghter bolt-upright,  
 Whyl thow hast as a coward been agast.’  
 ‘Ye, false harlot,’ quod the miller, ‘hast?  
 A! false traitour! false clerk!’ quod he,  
 ‘Thou shalt be deed, by goddes dignitee!4270  
 Who dorste be so bold to disparage(351)  
 My doghter, that is come of swich linage?’  
 And by the throte-bolle he caughte Alayn.  
 And he hente hym despitously agayn,  
 And on the nose he smoot him with his fest.4275  
 Doun ran the bloody streem up-on his brest;  
 And in the floor, with nose and mouth to-broke,  
 They walwe as doon two pigges in a poke.  
 And up they goon, and doun agayn anon,  
 Til that the miller sporned at a stoon,4280  
 And doun he fil bakward up-on his wyf,(361)  
 That wiste no-thing of this nyce stryf;  
 For she was falle aslepe a lyte wight  
 With Iohn the clerk, that waked hadde al night.  
 And with the fal, out of hir sleep she breyde—4285  
 ‘Help, holy croys of Bromeholm,’ she seyde,  
*In manus tuas!* lord, to thee I calle!  
 Awak, Symond! the feend is on us falle,  
 Myn herte is broken, help, I nam but deed;  
 There lyth oon up my wombe and up myn heed;4290  
 Help, Simkin, for the false clerkes fighte.’(371)  
 This Iohn sterte up as faste as ever he mighte,  
 And graspeth by the walles to and fro,  
 To finde a staf; and she sterte up also,  
 And knew the estres bet than dide this Iohn.4295  
 And by the wal a staf she fond anon,  
 And saugh a litel shimmering of a light,  
 For at an hole in shoon the mone bright;

And by that light she saugh hem bothe two,  
But sikerly she niste who was who,4300  
But as she saugh a whyt thing in hir yë.(381)  
And whan she gan the whyte thing espye,  
She wende the clerk hadde wered a volupeer.  
And with the staf she drough ay neer and neer,  
And wende han hit this Aleyn at the fulle,4305  
And smoot the miller on the pyled skulle,  
That doun he gooth and cryde, ‘harrow! I dye!’  
Thise clerkes bete him weel and lete him lye;  
And greythen hem, and toke hir hors anon,  
And eek hir mele, and on hir wey they gon.4310  
And at the mille yet they toke hir cake(391)  
Of half a busshel flour, ful wel y-bake.  
Thus is the proude miller wel y-bete,  
And hath y-lost the grinding of the whete,  
And payed for the soper every-deel4315  
Of Aleyn and of Iohn, that bette him weel.  
His wyf is swyved, and his doghter als;  
Lo, swich it is a miller to be fals!  
And therefore this proverbe is seyde ful sooth.  
‘Him thar nat wene wel that yvel dooth;4320  
A gylour shal him-self bigyled be.’(401)  
And God, that sitteth heighe in magestee,  
Save al this companye grete and smale!  
Thus have I quit the miller in my tale.

Here is ended the Reves tale.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## THE COOK'S PROLOGUE.

The prologe of the Cokes Tale.

THE Cook of London, whyl the Reve spak,4325  
For loye, him thoughte, he clawed him on the bak,  
'Ha! ha!' quod he, 'for Cristes passioun,  
This miller hadde a sharp conclusioun  
Upon his argument of herbergage!  
Wel seyde Salomon in his langage,4330  
"Ne bringe nat every man in-to thyn hous;"  
For herberwing by nighte is perilous.  
Wel oghte a man avysed for to be  
Whom that he broghte in-to his privetee.(10)  
I pray to god, so yeve me sorwe and care,4335  
If ever, sith I highte Hogge of Ware,  
Herde I a miller bettre y-set a-werk.  
He hadde a Iape of malice in the derk.  
But god forbede that we stinten here;  
And therefore, if ye vouche-sauf to here4340  
A tale of me, that am a povre man,  
I wol yow telle as wel as ever I can  
A litel Iape that fil in our citee.'  
Our host answerde, and seide, 'I graunte it thee;(20)  
Now telle on, Roger, loke that it be good;4345  
For many a pastee hastow laten blood,  
And many a Iakke of Dover hastow sold  
That hath been twyes hoot and twyes cold.  
Of many a pilgrim hastow Cristes curs,  
For of thy persly yet they fare the wors,4350  
That they han eten with thy stubbel-goos;  
For in thy shoppe is many a flye loos.  
Now telle on, gentil Roger, by thy name.  
But yet I pray thee, be nat wrooth for game,(30)  
A man may seye ful sooth in game and pley.'4355  
'Thou seist ful sooth,' quod Roger, 'by my fey,  
But "sooth pley, quaad pley," as the Fleming seith;  
And ther-fore, Herry Bailly, by thy feith,  
Be thou nat wrooth, er we departen heer,  
Though that my tale be of an hostileer.4360  
But nathelees I wol nat telle it yit,  
But er we parte, y-wis, thou shalt be quit.'  
And ther-with-al he lough and made chere,  
And seyde his tale, as ye shul after here.(40)

Thus endeth the Prologe of the Cokes tale.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## THE COKES TALE.

Heer bigynneth the Cokes tale.

A PRENTIS whylom dwelled in our citee,4365  
And of a craft of vitailers was he;  
Gaillard he was as goldfinch in the shawe,  
Broun as a berie, a propre short felawe,  
With lokkes blake, y-kempt ful fetisly.  
Dauncen he coude so wel and Iolily,4370  
That he was cleped Perkin Revelour.  
He was as ful of love and paramour  
As is the hyve ful of hony swete;  
Wel was the wenche with him mighte mete.(10)  
At every brydale wolde he singe and hoppe,4375  
He loved bet the taverne than the shoppe.  
For whan ther any ryding was in Chepe,  
Out of the shoppe thider wolde he lepe.  
Til that he hadde al the sighte y-seyn,  
And daunced wel, he wolde nat come ageyn.4380  
And gadered him a meinee of his sort  
To hoppe and singe, and maken swich disport.  
And ther they setten steven for to mete  
To pleyen at the dys in swich a strete.(20)  
For in the toune nas ther no prentys,4385  
That fairer coude caste a paire of dys  
Than Perkin coude, and ther-to he was free  
Of his dispense, in place of privetee.  
That fond his maister wel in his chaffare;  
For often tyme he fond his box ful bare.4390  
For sikerly a prentis revelour,  
That haunteth dys, riot, or paramour,  
His maister shal it in his shoppe abyen,  
Al have he no part of the minstralcy;(30)  
For theft and riot, they ben convertible,4395  
Al conne he pleye on giterne or ribible.  
Revel and trouthe, as in a low degree,  
They been ful wrothe al day, as men may see.  
This Ioly prentis with his maister bood,  
Til he were ny out of his prentishood,4400  
Al were he snibbed bothe erly and late,  
And somtyme lad with revel to Newgate;  
But atte laste his maister him bithoghte,  
Up-on a day, whan he his paper soghte,(40)  
Of a proverbe that seith this same word,4405  
'Wel bet is roten appel out of hord

Than that it rotie al the remenaunt.'  
So fareth it by a riotous servaunt;  
It is wel lasse harm to lete him pace,  
Than he shende alle the servants in the place.4410  
Therefore his maister yaf him acquitance,  
And bad him go with sorwe and with meschance;  
And thus this loly prentis hadde his leve.  
Now lat him riote al the night or leve.(50)  
And for ther is no theef with-oute a louke,4415  
That helpeth him to wasten and to souke  
Of that he brybe can or borwe may,  
Anon he sente his bed and his array  
Un-to a compeer of his owne sort,  
That lovede dys and revel and disport,4420  
And hadde a wyf that heeld for countenance  
A shoppe, and swyved for hir sustenance.4422  
\* \* \* \* \*

Of this Cokes tale maked Chaucer na more.

[*For* The Tale of Gamelin, *see the* Appendix.]

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## GROUP B.

### INTRODUCTION TO THE MAN OF LAW'S PROLOGUE. (T. 4421-4446.)

The wordes of the Hoost to the companye.

OUR Hoste sey wel that the brighte sonne  
The ark of his artificial day had ronne  
The fourthe part, and half an houre, and more;  
And though he were not depe expert in lore,  
He wiste it was the eightetethe day<sup>5</sup>  
Of April, that is messenger to May;  
And sey wel that the shadwe of every tree  
Was as in lengthe the same quantitee  
That was the body erect that caused it.  
And therfor by the shadwe he took his wit<sup>10</sup>  
That Phebus, which that shoon so clere and brighte,  
Degrees was fyve and fourty clombe on highte;  
And for that day, as in that latitude,  
It was ten of the klokke, he gan conclude,  
And sodeynly he plighte his hors aboute.<sup>15</sup>  
'Lordinges,' quod he, 'I warne yow, al this route,  
The fourthe party of this day is goon;  
Now, for the love of god and of seint Iohn,  
Leseth no tyme, as ferforth as ye may;  
Lordinges, the tyme wasteth night and day,<sup>20</sup>  
And steleth from us, what prively slepinge,  
And what thurgh necligence in our wakinge,  
As dooth the stream, that turneth never agayn,  
Descending fro the montaigne in-to playn.  
Wel can Senek, and many a philosophre<sup>25</sup>  
Biwailen tyme, more than gold in cofre.  
'For los of catel may recovered be,  
But los of tyme shendeth us,' quod he.  
It wol nat come agayn, with-outen drede,  
Na more than wol Malkins maydenhede,<sup>30</sup>  
Whan she hath lost it in hir wantownesse;  
Lat us nat moulen thus in ydelnesse.  
Sir man of lawe,' quod he, 'so have ye blis,  
Tel us a tale anon, as forward is;  
Ye been submitted thurgh your free assent<sup>35</sup>  
To stonde in this cas at my Iugement.  
Acquiteth yow, and holdeth your biheste,

Than have ye doon your devoir atte leste.’  
‘Hoste,’ quod he, ‘*depardieux* ich assente,  
To breke forward is not myn entente.40  
Biheste is dette, and I wol holde fayn  
Al my biheste; I can no better seyn.  
For swich lawe as man yeveth another wight,  
He sholde him-selven usen it by right;  
Thus wol our text; but natheles certeyn45  
I can right now no thrifty tale seyn,  
But Chaucer, though he can but lewedly  
On metres and on ryming craftily,  
Hath seyde hem in swich English as he can  
Of olde tyme, as knoweth many a man.50  
And if he have not seyde hem, leve brother,  
In o book, he hath seyde hem in another.  
For he hath told of loveres up and doun  
Mo than Ovyde made of mencion  
In his Epistelles, that been ful olde.55  
What sholde I tellen hem, sin they ben tolde?  
In youthe he made of Ceys and Alcion,  
And sithen hath he spoke of everichon,  
These noble wyves and these loveres eke.  
Who-so that wol his large volume seke60  
Clepeth the Seintes Legende of Cupyde,  
Ther may he seen the large woundes wyde  
Of Lucesse, and of Babilan Tisbee;  
The swerd of Dido for the false Enee;  
The tree of Phillis for hir Demophon;65  
The pleinte of Dianire and Hermion,  
Of Adriane and of Isiphilee;  
The bareyne yle standing in the see;  
The dreynte Leander for his Erro;  
The teres of Eleyne, and eek the wo70  
Of Brixseyde, and of thee, Ladomæa;  
The crueltee of thee, queen Medæa,  
Thy litel children hanging by the hals  
For thy Iason, that was of love so fals!  
O Ypermistra, Penelopee, Alceste,75  
Your wyfhod he comendeth with the beste!  
But certainly no word ne wryteth he  
Of thilke wikke ensample of Canacee,  
That lovede hir owne brother sinfully;  
Of swiche cursed stories I sey ‘fy’;80  
Or elles of Tyro Apollonius,  
How that the cursed king Antiochus  
Birafted his doghter of hir maydenhede,  
That is so horrible a tale for to rede,  
Whan he hir threw up-on the pavement.85

And therfor he, of ful avysement,  
Nolde never wryte in none of his sermons  
Of swiche unkinde abhominaciouns,  
Ne I wol noon reherse, if that I may.  
But of my tale how shal I doon this day?90  
Me were looth be lykned, doutelees,  
To Muses that men clepe Pierides—  
*Metamorphoseos* wot what I mene:—  
But nathelees, I recche noght a bene  
Though I come after him with hawe-bake;95  
I speke in prose, and lat him rymes make.’  
And with that word he, with a sobre chere,  
Bigan his tale, as ye shal after here.

The Prologe of the Mannes Tale of Lawe.

O hateful harm! condicion of povertel  
With thurst, with cold, with hunger so confounded!100  
To asken help thee shameth in thyn herte;  
If thou noon aske, with nede artow so wounded,  
That verray nede unwrappeth al thy wounde hid!  
Maugree thyn heed, thou most for indigence  
Or stele, or begge, or borwe thy despence!105  
Thou blamest Crist, and seyst ful bitterly,  
He misdeparteth richesse temporal;  
Thy neighebour thou wytest sinfully,(10)  
And seyst thou hast to lyte, and he hath al.  
‘Parfay,’ seistow, ‘somytyme he rekne shal,110  
Whan that his tayl shal brennen in the glede,  
For he noght helpeth needfulle in hir nede.’  
Herkne what is the sentence of the wyse:—  
‘Bet is to dyen than have indigence;’  
Thy selve neighebour wol thee despyse;115  
If thou be povre, farwel thy reverence!  
Yet of the wyse man tak this sentence:—  
‘Alle the dayes of povre men ben wikke;’(20)  
Be war therfor, er thou come in that prikke!  
If thou be povre, thy brother hateth thee,120  
And alle thy freendes fleen fro thee, alas!  
O riche marchaunts, ful of wele ben ye,  
O noble, o prudent folk, as in this cas!  
Your bagges been nat filled with *ambes as*,  
But with *sis cink*, than renneth for your chance;125  
At Cristemasse merie may ye daunce!  
Ye seken lond and see for your winningges,  
As wyse folk ye knowen al thestaat(30)  
Of regnes; ye ben fadres of tydinges  
And tales, bothe of pees and of debat.130



I were right now of tales desolat,  
Nere that a marchaunt, goon is many a yere,  
Me taughte a tale, which that ye shal here.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE.

Here beginneth the Man of Lawe his Tale.

IN Surrie whylom dwelte a companye  
Of chapmen riche, and therto sadde and trewe,135  
That wyde-wher senten her spycerye,  
Clothes of gold, and satins riche of hewe;  
Her chaffar was so thrifty and so newe,(40)  
That every wight hath deyntee to chaffare  
With hem, and eek to sellen hem hir ware.140  
Now fel it, that the maistres of that sort  
Han shapen hem to Rome for to wende;  
Were it for chapmanhode or for disport,  
Non other message wolde they thider sende,  
But comen hem-self to Rome, this is the ende;145  
And in swich place, as thoughte hem advantage  
For her entente, they take her herbergage.  
Soiourned han thise marchants in that toun(50)  
A certain tyme, as fel to hir plesance.  
And so bifel, that the excellent renoun150  
Of the temperoures doghter, dame Custance,  
Reported was, with every circumstance,  
Un-to thise Surrien marchants in swich wyse,  
Fro day to day, as I shal yow devyse.  
This was the commune vois of every man—155  
'Our Emperour of Rome, god him see,  
A doghter hath that, sin the world bigan,  
To rekne as wel hir goodnesse as beautee,(60)  
Nas never swich another as is she;  
I prey to god in honour hir sustene,160  
And wolde she were of al Europe the quene.  
In hir is heigh beautee, with-oute pryde,  
Yowthe, with-oute grenehede or folye;  
To alle hir werkes vertu is hir gyde,  
Humblesse hath slayn in hir al tirannye.165  
She is mirour of alle curteisye;  
Hir herte is verrey chambre of holinesse,  
Hir hand, ministre of fredom for almesse.'(70)  
And al this vois was soth, as god is trewe,  
But now to purpos lat us turne agayn;170  
Thise marchants han doon fraught hir shippes newe,  
And, whan they han this blisful mayden seyn,  
Hoom to Surrye been they went ful fayn,  
And doon her nedes as they han don yore,  
And liven in wele; I can sey yow no more.175

Now fel it, that thise marchants stode in grace  
Of him, that was the sowdan of Surrye;  
For whan they came from any strange place,(80)  
He wolde, of his benigne curteisye,  
Make hem good chere, and bisily espye180  
Tydings of sondry regnes, for to lere  
The wondres that they mighte seen or here.  
Amonges othere thinges, specially  
Thise marchants han him told of dame Custance,  
So gret noblesse in earnest, ceriously,185  
That this sowdan hath caught so gret plesance  
To han hir figure in his remembrance,  
That al his lust and al his bisy cure(90)  
Was for to love hir whyl his lyf may dure.  
Paraventure in thilke large book190  
Which that men clepe the heven, y-writen was  
With sterres, whan that he his birthe took,  
That he for love shulde han his deeth, allas!  
For in the sterres, clerer than is glas,  
Is writen, god wot, who-so coude it rede,195  
The deeth of every man, withouten drede.  
In sterres, many a winter ther-biforn,  
Was writen the deeth of Ector, Achilles,(100)  
Of Pompey, Iulius, er they were born;  
The stryf of Thebes; and of Ercules,200  
Of Sampson, Turnus, and of Socrates  
The deeth; but mennes wittes been so dulle,  
That no wight can wel rede it atte fulle.  
This sowdan for his privee conseil sente,  
And, shortly of this mater for to pace,205  
He hath to hem declared his entente,  
And seyde hem certain, ‘but he mighte have grace  
To han Custance with-inne a litel space,(110)  
He nas but deed;’ and charged hem, in hye,  
To shapen for his lyf som remedye.210  
Diverse men diverse thinges seyden;  
They argumenten , casten up and down;  
Many a subtil resoun forth they leyden,  
They speken of magik and abusioun;  
But finally, as in conclusion,215  
They can not seen in that non avantage,  
Ne in non other wey, save mariage.  
Than sawe they ther-in swich difficultee(120)  
By wey of resoun, for to speke al playn,  
By-cause that ther was swich diversitee220  
Bitwene hir bothe lawes, that they sayn,  
They trowe ‘that no cristen prince wolde fayn  
Wedden his child under oure lawes swete

That us were taught by Mahoun our prophete.’  
And he answerde, ‘rather than I lese<sup>225</sup>  
Custance, I wol be cristned doutelees;  
I mot ben hires, I may non other chese.  
I prey yow holde your arguments in pees;(130)  
Saveth my lyf, and beeth noght recchelees  
To geten hir that hath my lyf in cure;<sup>230</sup>  
For in this wo I may not longe endure.’  
What nedeth gretter dilatacioun?  
I seye, by tretis and embassadrye,  
And by the popes mediacioun,  
And al the chirche, and al the chivalrye,<sup>235</sup>  
That, in destruccioun of Maumetrye,  
And in encrees of Cristes lawe dere,  
They ben acorded, so as ye shal here;(140)  
How that the sowdan and his baronage  
And alle his liges shulde y-cristned be,<sup>240</sup>  
And he shal han Custance in mariage,  
And certein gold, I noot what quantitee,  
And her-to founden suffisant seurtee;  
This same acord was sworn on eyther syde;  
Now, faire Custance, almighty god thee gyde!<sup>245</sup>  
Now wolde som men waiten, as I gesse,  
That I shulde tellen al the purveyance  
That themperour, of his grete noblesse,(150)  
Hath shapen for his doghter dame Custance.  
Wel may men knowe that so gret ordinance<sup>250</sup>  
May no man tellen in a litel clause  
As was arrayed for so heigh a cause.  
Bisshopes ben shapen with hir for to wende,  
Lordes, ladyes, knightes of renoun,  
And other folk y-nowe, this is the ende;<sup>255</sup>  
And notified is thurgh-out the toun  
That every wight, with gret devocioun,  
Shulde preyen Crist that he this mariage(160)  
Receyve in gree, and spede this viage.  
The day is comen of hir departinge,<sup>260</sup>  
I sey, the woful day fatal is come,  
That ther may be no lenger taryinge,  
But forthward they hem dresen, alle and some;  
Custance, that was with sorwe al overcome,  
Ful pale arist, and dresseth hir to wende;<sup>265</sup>  
For wel she seeth ther is non other ende.  
Allas! what wonder is it though she wepte,  
That shal be sent to strange nacioun(170)  
Fro freendes, that so tendrely hir kepte,  
And to be bounden under subieccioun<sup>270</sup>  
Of oon, she knoweth not his condicioun.

Housbondes been alle gode, and han ben yore,  
That knowen wyves, I dar say yow no more.  
'Fader,' she sayde, 'thy wrecched child Custance,  
Thy yonge doghter, fostred up so softe,275  
And ye, my moder, my soverayn plesance  
Over alle thing, out-taken Crist on-lofte,  
Custance, your child, hir recomandeth ofte(180)  
Un-to your grace, for I shal to Surryë,  
Ne shal I never seen yow more with yë.280  
Allas! un-to the Barbre nacioun  
I moste anon, sin that it is your wille;  
But Crist, that starf for our redempcioun,  
So yeve me grace, his hestes to fulfillle;  
I, wrecche womman, no fors though I spille.285  
Wommen are born to thraldom and penance,  
And to ben under mannes governance.'  
I trowe, at Troye, whan Pirrus brak the wal(190)  
Or Ylion brende, at Thebes the citee,  
Nat Rome, for the harm thurgh Hanibal290  
That Romayns hath venquissed tymes thre,  
Nas herd swich tendre weping for pitee  
As in the chambre was for hir departinge;  
Bot forth she moot, wher-so she wepe or singe.  
O firste moevyng cruel firmament,295  
With thy diurnal sweigh that crowdest ay  
And hurlest al from Est til Occident,  
That naturelly wolde holde another way,(200)  
Thy crowding set the heven in swich array  
At the beginning of this fiers viage,300  
That cruel Mars hath slayn this mariage.  
Infortunat ascendent tortuous,  
Of which the lord is helples falle, allas!  
Out of his angle in-to the derkest hous.  
O Mars, O Atazir, as in this cas!305  
O feble mone, unhappy been thy pas!  
Thou knittest thee ther thou art nat receyved,  
Ther thou were weel, fro thennes artow weyved.(210)  
Imprudent emperour of Rome, allas!  
Was ther no philosophre in al thy toun?310  
Is no tyme bet than other in swich cas?  
Of viage is ther noon eleccioun,  
Namely to folk of heigh condicioun,  
Nat whan a rote is of a birthe y-knowe?  
Allas! we ben to lewed or to slowe.315  
To shippe is brought this woful faire mayde  
Solempnely, with every circumstance.  
'Now Iesu Crist be with yow alle,' she sayde;(220)  
Ther nis namore but 'farewel! faire Custance!'

She peyneth hir to make good countenance,320  
And forth I lete hir sayle in this manere,  
And turne I wol agayn to my matere.  
The moder of the sowdan, welle of vyces,  
Espyëd hath hir sones pleyn entente,  
How he wol lete his olde sacrifices,325  
And right anon she for hir conseil sente;  
And they ben come, to knowe what she mente.  
And when assembled was this folk in-fere,(230)  
She sette hir down, and sayde as ye shal here.  
'Lordes,' quod she, 'ye knowen everichon,330  
How that my sone in point is for to lete  
The holy lawes of our Alkaron,  
Yeven by goddes message Makomete.  
But oon avow to grete god I hete,  
The lyf shal rather out of my body sterte335  
Than Makometes lawe out of myn herte!  
What shulde us tyden of this newe lawe  
But thraldom to our bodies and penance?(240)  
And afterward in helle to be drawe  
For we reneyed Mahoun our creance?340  
But, lordes, wol ye maken assurance,  
As I shal seyn, assenting to my lore,  
And I shall make us sauf for evermore?'  
They sworn and assenten, every man,  
To live with hir and dye, and by hir stonde;345  
And everich, in the beste wyse he can,  
To strengthen hir shal alle his freendes fonde;  
And she hath this empryse y-take on honde,(250)  
Which ye shal heren that I shal devyse,  
And to hem alle she spak right in this wyse.350  
'We shul first feyne us cristendom to take,  
Cold water shal not greve us but a lyte;  
And I shal swich a feste and revel make,  
That, as I trowe, I shal the sowdan quyte.  
For though his wyf be cristned never so whyte,355  
She shal have nede to wasshe away the rede,  
Thogh she a font-ful water with hir lede.'  
O sowdanesse, rote of iniquitee,(260)  
Virago, thou Semyram the secoude,  
O serpent under femininitee,360  
Lyk to the serpent depe in helle y-boude,  
O feyned womman, al that may confounde  
Vertu and innocence, thurgh thy malyce,  
Is bred in thee, as nest of every vyce!  
O Satan, envious sin thilke day365  
That thou were chased from our heritage,  
Wel knowestow to wommen the olde way!

Thou madest Eva bringe us in servage.(270)  
Thou wolt fordoon this cristen mariage.  
Thyn instrument so, weylawey the whyle!370  
Makestow of wommen, whan thou wolt begyle.  
This sowdanesse, whom I thus blame and warie,  
Leet prively hir conseil goon hir way.  
What sholde I in this tale lenger tarie?  
She rydeth to the sowdan on a day,375  
And seyde him, that she wolde reneye hir lay,  
And cristendom of preestes handes fonge,  
Repenting hir she hethen was so longe,(280)  
Biseching him to doon hir that honour,  
That she moste han the cristen men to feste;380  
'To plesen hem I wol do my labour.'  
The sowdan seith, 'I wol don at your heste,'  
And kneling thanketh hir of that requeste.  
So glad he was, he niste what to seye;  
She kiste hir sone, and hoom she gooth hir weye.385

Explicit prima pars. Sequitur pars secunda.

Arryved ben this cristen folk to londe,  
In Surrie, with a greet solempne route,  
And hastily this sowdan sente his sonde,(290)  
First to his moder, and al the regne aboute,  
And seyde, his wyf was comen, out of doute,390  
And preyde hir for to ryde agayn the quene,  
The honour of his regne to sustene.  
Gret was the prees, and riche was tharray  
Of Surriens and Romayns met y-fere;  
The moder of the sowdan, riche and gay,395  
Receyveth hir with al-so glad a chere  
As any moder mighte hir doghter dere,  
And to the nexte citee ther bisyde(300)  
A softe pas solempnely they ryde.  
Noght trowe I the triumpe of Iulius,400  
Of which that Lucan maketh swich a bost,  
Was royaller, ne more curious  
Than was thassemblee of this blisful host.  
But this scorpioun, this wikked gost,  
The sowdanesse, for al hir flateringe,405  
Caste under this ful mortally to stinge.  
The sowdan comth him-self sone after this  
So royally, that wonder is to telle,(310)  
And welcometh hir with alle Ioye and blis.  
And thus in merthe and Ioye I lete hem dwelle.410  
The fruyt of this matere is that I telle.  
Whan tyme cam, men thoughte it for the beste

That revel stinte, and men goon to hir reste.  
The tyme cam, this olde sowdanesse  
Ordeyned hath this feste of which I tolde,415  
And to the feste cristen folk hem dresse  
In general, ye! bothe yonge and olde.  
Here may men feste and royaltee biholde,(320)  
And deyntees mo than I can yow devyse,  
But al to dere they boughte it er they ryse.420  
O sodeyn wo! that ever art successour  
To worldly blisse, spreynd with bitternesse;  
Thende of the Ioye of our worldly labour;  
Wo occupieth the fyn of our gladnesse.  
Herke this conseil for thy sikernesse,425  
Up-on thy glade day have in thy minde  
The unwar wo or harm that comth bihinde.  
For shortly for to tellen at o word,(330)  
The sowdan and the cristen everichone  
Ben al to-hewe and stiked at the bord,430  
But it were only dame Custance allone.  
This olde sowdanesse, cursed crone,  
Hath with hir frendes doon this cursed dede,  
For she hir-self wolde al the contree lede.  
Ne ther was Surrien noon that was converted435  
That of the conseil of the sowdan woot,  
That he nas al to-hewe er he astarted.  
And Custance han they take anon, foot-hoot,(340)  
And in a shippe al sterelees, god woot,  
They han hir set, and bidde hir lerne sayle440  
Out of Surrye agaynward to Itayle.  
A certein tresor that she thider ladde,  
And, sooth to sayn, vitaille gret plentee  
They han hir yeven, and clothes eek she hadde,  
And forth she sayleth in the salte see.445  
O my Custance, ful of benignitee,  
O emperoures yonge doghter dere,  
He that is lord of fortune be thy stere!(350)  
She blesseth hir, and with ful pitous voys  
Un-to the croys of Crist thus seyde she,450  
'O clere, o welful auter, holy croys,  
Reed of the lambes blood full of pitee,  
That wesh the world fro the olde iniquitee,  
Me fro the feend, and fro his clawes kepe,  
That day that I shal drenchen in the depe.455  
Victorious tree, proteccioun of trewe,  
That only worthy were for to bere  
The king of heven with his woundes newe,(360)  
The whyte lamb, that hurt was with the spere,  
Flemer of feendes out of him and here460



On which thy limes feithfully extenden,  
Me keep, and yif me might my lyf tamenden.  
Yeres and dayes fleet this creature  
Thurghout the see of Grece un-to the strayte  
Of Marrok, as it was hir aventure;465  
On many a sory meel now may she bayte;  
After her deeth ful often may she wayte,  
Er that the wilde wawes wole hir dryve(370)  
Un-to the place, ther she shal arryve.  
Men mighten asken why she was not slayn?470  
Eek at the feste who mighte hir body save?  
And I answer to that demaunde agayn,  
Who saved Daniel in the horrible cave,  
Ther every wight save he, maister and knave,  
Was with the leoun frete er he asterte?475  
No wight but god, that he bar in his herte.  
God liste to shewe his wonderful miracle  
In hir, for we sholde seen his mighty werkes;(380)  
Crist, which that is to every harm triacle,  
By certain menes ofte, as knowen clerkes,480  
Doth thing for certain ende that ful derk is  
To mannes wit, that for our ignorance  
Ne conne not knowe his prudent purveyance.  
Now, sith she was not at the feste y-slawe,  
Who kepte hir fro the drenching in the see?485  
Who kepte Ionas in the fisshes mawe  
Til he was spouted up at Ninivee?  
Wel may men knowe it was no wight but he(390)  
That kepte peple Ebraik fro hir drenchinge,  
With drye feet thurgh-out the see passinge.490  
Who bad the foure spirits of tempest,  
That power han tanoyen land and see,  
'Bothe north and south, and also west and est,  
Anoyeth neither see, ne land, ne tree?'  
Sothly, the comaundour of that was he,495  
That fro the tempest ay this womman kepte  
As wel whan [that] she wook as whan she slepte.  
Wher mighte this womman mete and drinke have?(400)  
Three yeer and more how lasteth hir vitaille?  
Who fedde the Egipcien Marie in the cave,500  
Or in desert? no wight but Crist, sans faille.  
Fyve thousand folk it was as gret mervaille  
With loves fyve and fisshes two to fede.  
God sente his foison at hir grete nede.  
She dryveth forth in-to our ocean505  
Thurgh-out our wilde see, til, atte laste,  
Under an hold that nempnen I ne can,  
Fer in Northumberlond the wawe hir caste,(410)

And in the sond hir ship stiked so faste,  
That thennes wolde it noght of al a tyde,510  
The wille of Crist was that she shulde abyde.  
The constable of the castel doun is fare  
To seen this wrak, and al the ship he soghte,  
And fond this wery womman ful of care;  
He fond also the tresor that she broghte.515  
In hir langage mercy she bisoghte  
The lyf out of hir body for to twinne,  
Hir to delivere of wo that she was inne.(420)  
A maner Latin corrupt was hir speche,  
But algates ther by was she understonde;520  
The constable, whan him list no lenger seche,  
This woful womman broghte he to the londe;  
She kneleth doun, and thanketh goddes sonde.  
But what she was, she wolde no man seye,  
For foul ne fair, though that she shulde deye.525  
She seyde, she was so mased in the see  
That she forgat hir minde, by hir trouthe;  
The constable hath of hir so greet pitee,(430)  
And eek his wyf, that they wepen for routhe,  
She was so diligent, with-ouen slouthe,530  
To serve and plesen everich in that place,  
That alle hir loven that loken on hir face.  
This constable and dame Hermengild his wyf  
Were payens, and that contree every-where;  
But Hermengild lovede hir right as hir lyf,535  
And Custance hath so longe soiourned there,  
In orisons, with many a bitter tere,  
Til Iesu hath converted thurgh his grace(440)  
Dame Hermengild, constablesse of that place.  
In al that lond no cristen durste route,540  
Alle cristen folk ben fled fro that contree  
Thurgh payens, that conquereden al aboute  
The plages of the North, by land and see;  
To Walis fled the cristianitee  
Of olde Britons, dwellinge in this yle;545  
Ther was hir refut for the mene whyle.  
But yet nere cristen Britons so exyled  
That ther nere somme that in hir privetee(450)  
Honoured Crist, and hethen folk bigyled;  
And ny the castel swiche ther dwelten three.550  
That oon of hem was blind, and mighte nat see  
But it were with thilke yēn of his minde,  
With whiche men seen, after that they ben blinde.  
Bright was the sonne as in that someres day,  
For which the constable and his wyf also555  
And Custance han y-take the righte way

Toward the see, a furlong wey or two,  
To pleyen and to romen to and fro;(460)  
And in hir walk this blinde man they mette  
Croked and old, with yën faste y-shette.560  
'In name of Crist,' cryde this blinde Britoun,  
'Dame Hermengild, yif me my sighte agayn.'  
This lady wex affrayed of the soun,  
Lest that hir housbond, shortly for to sayn,  
Wolde hir for Iesu Cristes love han slayn,565  
Til Custance made hir bold, and bad hir werche  
The wil of Crist, as doghter of his chirche.  
The constable wex abashed of that sight,(470)  
And seyde, 'what amounteth al this fare?'  
Custance answerde, 'sire, it is Cristes might,570  
That helpeth folk out of the feendes snare.'  
And so ferforth she gan our lay declare,  
That she the constable, er that it were eve,  
Converted, and on Crist made him bileve.  
This constable was no-thing lord of this place575  
Of which I speke, ther he Custance fond,  
But kepte it strongly, many wintres space,  
Under Alla, king of al Northumberlond,(480)  
That was ful wys, and worthy of his hond  
Agayn the Scottes, as men may wel here,580  
But turne I wol agayn to my matere.  
Sathan, that ever us waiteth to bigyle,  
Saugh of Custance al hir perfeccioun,  
And caste anon how he mighte quyte hir whyle,  
And made a yong knight, that dwelte in that toun,585  
Love hir so hote, of foul affeccioun,  
That verrailly him thoughte he shulde spille  
But he of hir mighte ones have his wille.(490)  
He woweth hir, but it availleth noght,  
She wolde do no sinne, by no weye;590  
And, for despyt, he compassed in his thought  
To maken hir on shamful deth to deye.  
He wayteth whan the constable was aweye,  
And prively, up-on a night, he crepte  
In Hermengildes chambre whyl she slepte.595  
Wery, for-waked in her orisouns,  
Slepeth Custance, and Hermengild also.  
This knight, thurgh Sathanas temptaciouns,(500)  
Al softely is to the bed y-go,  
And kitte the throte of Hermengild a-two,600  
And leyde the bloody knyf by dame Custance,  
And wente his wey, ther god yeve him meschance!  
Sone after comth this constable hoom agayn,  
And eek Alla, that king was of that lond,

And saugh his wyf despitously y-slayn,605  
For which ful ofte he weep and wrong his hond,  
And in the bed the bloody knyf he fond  
By dame Custance; allas! what mighte she seye?(510)  
For verray wo hir wit was al aweye.  
To king Alla was told al this meschance,610  
And eek the tyme, and where, and in what wyse  
That in a ship was founden dame Custance,  
As heer-biforn that ye han herd devyse.  
The kinges herte of pitee gan agryse,  
Whan he saugh so benigne a creature615  
Falle in disese and in misaventure.  
For as the lomb toward his deeth is broght,  
So stant this innocent bifore the king;(520)  
This false knight that hath this tresoun wrought  
Berth hir on hond that she hath doon this thing.620  
But nathelees, ther was greet moorning  
Among the peple, and seyn, 'they can not gesse  
That she hath doon so greet a wikkednesse.  
For they han seyn hir ever so vertuous,  
And loving Hermengild right as her lyf.'625  
Of this bar witesse everich in that hous  
Save he that Hermengild slow with his knyf.  
This gentil king hath caught a gret motyf(530)  
Of this witesse, and thoghte he wolde enquere  
Depper in this, a trouthe for to lere.630  
Allas! Custance! thou hast no champioun,  
Ne fighte canstow nought, so weylawey!  
But he, that starf for our redempcioun  
And bond Sathan (and yit lyth ther he lay)  
So be thy stronge champioun this day!635  
For, but-if Crist open miracle kythe,  
Withouten gilt thou shalt be slayn as swythe.  
She sette her doun on knees, and thus she sayde,(540)  
'Immortal god, that savedest Susanne  
Fro false blame, and thou, merciful mayde,640  
Mary I mene, doghter to Seint Anne,  
Bifore whos child aungeles singe Osanne,  
If I be giltlees of this felonye,  
My socour be, for elles I shal dye!'  
Have ye nat seyn som tyme a pale face,645  
Among a prees, of him that hath be lad  
Toward his deeth, wher-as him gat no grace,  
And swich a colour in his face hath had,(550)  
Men mighte knowe his face, that was bistad,  
Amonges alle the faces in that route:650  
So stant Custance, and loketh hir aboute.  
O quenes, livinge in prosperitee,

Duchesses, and ye ladies everichone,  
Haveth som routhe on hir adversitee;  
An emperoures doghter stant allone;655  
She hath no wight to whom to make hir mone.  
O blood royal, that stondest in this drede,  
Fer ben thy freendes at thy grete nede!(560)  
This Alla king hath swich compassioun,  
As gentil herte is fulfild of pitee,660  
That from his yën ran the water doun.  
'Now hastily do fecche a book,' quod he,  
'And if this knight wol sweren how that she  
This womman slow, yet wole we us avyse  
Whom that we wole that shal ben our Iustyse.'665  
A Briton book, writen with Evangyles,  
Was fet, and on this book he swoor anoon  
She gilty was, and in the mene whyles(570)  
A hand him smoot upon the nekke-boon,  
That doun he fil atones as a stoon,670  
And bothe his yën broste out of his face  
In sight of every body in that place.  
A vois was herd in general audience,  
And seyde, 'thou hast desclaundred giltelees  
The doghter of holy chirche in hey presence;675  
Thus hastou doon, and yet holde I my pees.'  
Of this mervaille agast was al the prees;  
As mased folk they stoden everichone,(580)  
For drede of wreche, save Custance allone.  
Greet was the drede and eek the repentance680  
Of hem that hadden wrong suspeccioun  
Upon this sely innocent Custance;  
And, for this miracle, in conclusioun,  
And by Custances mediacioun,  
The king, and many another in that place,685  
Converted was, thanked be Cristes grace!  
This false knight was slayn for his untrouthe  
By Iugement of Alla hastily;(590)  
And yet Custance hadde of his deeth gret routhe.  
And after this Iesus, of his mercy,690  
Made Alla wedden ful solempnely  
This holy mayden, that is so bright and shene,  
And thus hath Crist y-maad Custance a quene.  
But who was woful, if I shal nat lye,  
Of this wedding but Donegild, and na mo,695  
The kinges moder, ful of tirannye?  
Hir thoughte hir cursed herte brast a-two;  
She wolde noht hir sone had do so;(600)  
Hir thoughte a despit, that he sholde take  
So strange a creature un-to his make.700

Me list nat of the chaf nor of the stree  
Maken so long a tale, as of the corn.  
What sholde I tellen of the royaltee  
At mariage, or which cours gooth biforn,  
Who bloweth in a trompe or in an horn?705  
The fruit of every tale is for to seye;  
They ete, and drinke, and daunce, and singe, and pleye.  
They goon to bedde, as it was skile and right;(610)  
For, thogh that wyves been ful holy thinges,  
They moste take in pacience at night710  
Swich maner necessities as been plesinges  
To folk that han y-wedded hem with ringes,  
And leye a lyte hir holinesse asyde  
As for the tyme; it may no bet bityde.  
On hir he gat a knave-child anoon,715  
And to a bishop and his constable eke  
He took his wyf to kepe, whan he is goon  
To Scotland-ward, his fo-men for to seke;(620)  
Now faire Custance, that is so humble and meke,  
So longe is goon with childe, til that stille720  
She halt hir chambre, abyding Cristes wille.  
The tyme is come, a knave-child she ber;  
Mauricius at the font-stoon they him calle;  
This Constable dooth forth come a messenger,  
And wroot un-to his king, that cleped was Alle,725  
How that this blisful tyding is bifalle,  
And othere tydings speedful for to seye;  
He takth the lettre, and forth he gooth his weye.(630)  
This messenger, to doon his advantage,  
Un-to the kinges moder rydeth swythe,730  
And salueth hir ful faire in his langage,  
'Madame,' quod he, 'ye may be glad and blythe,  
And thanke god an hundred thousand sythe;  
My lady quene hath child, with-uten doute,  
To Ioye and blisse of al this regne aboute.735  
Lo, heer the lettres seled of this thing,  
That I mot bere with al the haste I may;  
If ye wol aught un-to your sone the king,(640)  
I am your servant, bothe night and day.'  
Donegild answerde, 'as now at this tyme, nay;740  
But heer al night I wol thou take thy reste,  
Tomorwe wol I seye thee what me leste.'  
This messenger drank sadly ale and wyn,  
And stolen were his lettres prively  
Out of his box, whyl he sleep as a swyn;745  
And countrefeted was ful subtilly  
Another lettre, wroght ful sinfully,  
Un-to the king direct of this matere(650)

Fro his constable, as ye shul after here.  
The lettre spak, 'the queen delivered was<sup>750</sup>  
Of so horrible a feendly creature,  
That in the castel noon so hardy was  
That any whyle dorste ther endure.  
The moder was an elf, by aventure  
Y-come, by charmes or by sorcerye,<sup>755</sup>  
And every wight hateth hir companye.'  
Wo was this king whan he this lettre had seyn,  
But to no wighte he tolde his sorwes sore,<sup>(660)</sup>  
But of his owene honde he wroot ageyn,  
'Welcome the sonde of Crist for evermore<sup>760</sup>  
To me, that am now lerned in his lore;  
Lord, welcome be thy lust and thy plesaunce,  
My lust I putte al in thyn ordinaunce!  
Kepeth this child, al be it foul or fair,  
And eek my wyf, un-to myn hoom-cominge;<sup>765</sup>  
Crist, whan him list, may sende me an heir  
More agreable than this to my lykinge.'  
This lettre he seleth, prively wepinge,<sup>(670)</sup>  
Which to the messenger was take sone,  
And forth he gooth; ther is na more to done.<sup>770</sup>  
O messenger, fulfilled of dronkenesse,  
Strong is thy breath, thy limes faltren ay,  
And thou biwreyest alle secreenesse.  
Thy mind is lorn, thou Ianglest as a lay,  
Thy face is turned in a newe array!<sup>775</sup>  
Ther dronkenesse regneth in any route,  
Ther is no conseil hid, with-outen doute.  
O Donegild, I ne have noon English digne<sup>(680)</sup>  
Un-to thy malice and thy tirannye!  
And therfor to the feend I thee resigne,<sup>780</sup>  
Let him endyten of thy traitorye!  
Fy, mannish, fy! o nay, by god, I lye,  
Fy, *feendly* spirit, for I dar wel telle,  
Though thou heer walke, thy spirit is in helle!  
This messenger comth fro the king agayn,<sup>785</sup>  
And at the kinges modres court he lighte,  
And she was of this messenger ful fayn,  
And plesed him in al that ever she mighte.<sup>(690)</sup>  
He drank, and wel his girdel underpighte.  
He slepeth, and he snoreth in his gyse<sup>790</sup>  
Al night, un-til the sonne gan aryse.  
Eft were his lettres stolen everichon  
And countrefeted lettres in this wyse;  
'The king comandeth his constable anon,  
Up peyne of hanging, and on heigh Iuÿse,<sup>795</sup>  
That he ne sholde suffren in no wyse

Custance in-with his regne for tabyde  
Thre dayes and a quarter of a tyde;(700)  
But in the same ship as he hir fond,  
Hir and hir yonge sone, and al hir gere,800  
He sholde putte, and croude hir fro the lond,  
And charge hir that she never eft come there.’  
O my Custance, wel may thy goost have fere  
And sleping in thy dreem been in penance,  
When Donegild caste al this ordinance!805  
This messenger on morwe, whan he wook,  
Un-to the castel halt the nexte wey,  
And to the constable he the lettre took;(710)  
And whan that he this pitous lettre sey,  
Ful ofte he seyde ‘allas!’ and ‘weylawey!’810  
‘Lord Crist,’ quod he, ‘how may this world endure?  
So ful of sinne is many a creature!  
O mighty god, if that it be thy wille,  
Sith thou art rightful Iuge, how may it be  
That thou wolt suffren innocents to spille,815  
And wikked folk regne in prosperitee?  
O good Custance, allas! so wo is me  
That I mot be thy tormentour, or deye(720)  
On shames deeth; ther is noon other weye!’  
Wepen bothe yonge and olde in al that place,820  
Whan that the king this cursed lettre sente,  
And Custance, with a deedly pale face,  
The ferthe day toward hir ship she wente.  
But natheles she taketh in good entente  
The wille of Crist, and, kneling on the stronde,825  
She seyde, ‘lord! ay wel-com be thy sonde!  
He that me kepte fro the false blame  
Why! I was on the londe amonges yow,(730)  
He can me kepe from harme and eek fro shame  
In salte see, al-thogh I se nat how.830  
As strong as ever he was, he is yet now.  
In him triste I, and in his moder dere,  
That is to me my seyl and eek my stere.’  
Hir litel child lay weping in hir arm,  
And kneling, pitously to him she seyde,835  
‘Pees, litel sone, I wol do thee non harm.’  
With that hir kerchef of hir heed she breyde,  
And over his litel yën she it leyde;(740)  
And in hir arm she lulleth it ful faste,  
And in-to heven hir yën up she caste.840  
‘Moder,’ quod she, ‘and mayde bright, Marye,  
Sooth is that thurgh wommannes eggement  
Mankind was lorn and damned ay to dye,  
For which thy child was on a croys y-rent;



Thy blisful yën sawe al his torment;845  
Than is ther no comparisoun bitwene  
Thy wo and any wo man may sustene.  
Thou sawe thy child y-slayn bifor thyn yën,(750)  
And yet now liveth my litel child, parfay!  
Now, lady bright, to whom alle woful cryën,850  
Thou glorie of wommanhede, thou faire may,  
Thou haven of refut, brighte sterre of day,  
Rewe on my child, that of thy gentillesse  
Rewest on every rewful in distresse!  
O litel child, allas! what is thy gilt,855  
That never wroughtest sinne as yet, pardee,  
Why wil thyn harde fader han thee spilt?  
O mercy, dere Constable!' quod she;(760)  
'As lat my litel child dwelle heer with thee;  
And if thou darst not saven him, for blame,860  
So kis him ones in his fadres name!  
Ther-with she loketh bakward to the londe,  
And seyde, 'far-wel, housbond routelees!  
And up she rist, and walketh doun the stonde  
Toward the ship; hir folweth al the prees,865  
And ever she preyeth hir child to holde his pees;  
And taketh hir leve, and with an holy entente  
She blesseth hir; and in-to ship she wente.(770)  
Vitailed was the ship, it is no drede,  
Habundantly for hir, ful longe space,870  
And other necessaries that sholde nede  
She hadde y-nogh, heried be goddes grace!  
For wind and weder almighty god purchace,  
And bringe hir hoom! I can no better seye;  
But in the see she dryveth forth hir weye.875

Explicit secunda pars. Sequitur pars tercia.

Alla the king comth hoom, sone after this,  
Unto his castel of the which I tolde,  
And axeth wher his wyf and his child is.(780)  
The constable gan aboute his herte colde,  
And pleyedly al the maner he him tolde880  
As ye han herd, I can telle it no better,  
And sheweth the king his seel and [eek] his lettre,  
And seyde, 'lord, as ye comaunded me  
Up peyne of deeth, so have I doon, certein.'  
This messenger tormented was til he885  
Moste biknowe and tellen, plat and pleyn,  
Fro night to night, in what place he had leyn.  
And thus, by wit and subtil enqueringe,(790)  
Ymagined was by whom this harm gan springe.

The hand was knowe that the lettre wroot,890  
And al the venim of this cursed dede,  
But in what wyse, certainly I noot.  
Theeffect is this, that Alla, out of drede,  
His moder slow, that men may plainly rede,  
For that she traitour was to hir ligeaunce.895  
Thus endeth olde Donegild with meschaunce.  
The sorwe that this Alla, night and day,  
Maketh for his wyf and for his child also,(800)  
Ther is no tonge that it telle may.  
But now wol I un-to Custance go,900  
That fleteth in the see, in peyne and wo,  
Fyve yeer and more, as lyked Cristes sonde,  
Er that hir ship approched un-to londe.  
Under an hethen castel, atte laste,  
Of which the name in my text noght I finde,905  
Custance and eek hir child the see up-caste.  
Almighty god, that saveth al mankinde,  
Have on Custance and on hir child som minde,(810)  
That fallen is in hethen land eft-sone,  
In point to spille, as I shal telle yow sone.910  
Doun from the castel comth ther many a wight  
To gauren on this ship and on Custance.  
But shortly, from the castel, on a night,  
The lordes styward—god yeve him meschaunce!—  
A theef, that had reneyed our creaunce,915  
Com in-to ship allone, and seyde he sholde  
Hir lemman be, wher-so she wolde or nolde.  
Wo was this wrecched womman tho bigon,(820)  
Hir child cryde, and she cryde pitously;  
But blisful Marie heelp hir right anon;920  
For with hir strugling wel and mightily  
The theef fil over bord al sodeinly,  
And in the see he dreynte for vengeance;  
And thus hath Crist unwemmed kept Custance.  
O foule lust of luxurie! lo, thyn ende!  
Nat only that thou feyntest mannes  
minde, Auctor.925  
But verrailly thou wolt his body shende;  
Thende of thy werk or of thy lustes blinde(830)  
Is compleyning, how many-oon may men finde  
That noght for werk som-tyme, but for thentente930  
To doon this sinne, ben outhur sleyn or shente!  
How may this wayke womman han this strengthe  
Hir to defende agayn this renegat?  
O Golias, unmesurable of lengthe,  
How mighte David make thee so mat,935  
So yong and of armure so desolat?

How dorste he loke up-on thy dredful face?  
Wel may men seen, it nas but goddes grace!(840)  
Who yaf Iudith corage or hardinesse  
To sleen him, Olofernus, in his tente,940  
And to deliveren out of wrecchednesse  
The peple of god? I seye, for this entente,  
That, right as god spirit of vigour sente  
To hem, and saved hem out of meschance,  
So sente he might and vigour to Custance.945  
Forth goth hir ship thurgh-out the narwe mouth  
Of Iubaltar and Septe, dryving ay,  
Som-tyme West, som-tyme North and South,(850)  
And som-tyme Est, ful many a wery day,  
Til Cristes moder (blessed be she ay!)950  
Hath shapen, thurgh hir endeles goodnesse,  
To make an ende of al hir hevinesse.  
Now lat us stinte of Custance but a throwe,  
And speke we of the Romain Emperour,  
That out of Surrie hath by lettres knowe955  
The slaughtre of cristen folk, and dishonour  
Don to his doghter by a fals traitour,  
I mene the cursed wikked sowdanesse,(860)  
That at the feste leet sleen both more and lesse.  
For which this emperour hath sent anoon960  
His senatour, with royal ordinance,  
And othere lordes, got wot, many oon,  
On Surriens to taken heigh vengeance.  
They brennen, sleen, and bringe hem to meschance  
Ful many a day; but shortly, this is thende,965  
Homward to Rome they shapen hem to wende.  
This senatour repaireth with victorie  
To Rome-ward, sayling ful royally,(870)  
And mette the ship dryving, as seith the storie,  
In which Custance sit ful pitously.970  
No-thing ne knew he what she was, ne why  
She was in swich array; ne she nil seye  
Of hir estaat, although she sholde deye.  
He bringeth hir to Rome, and to his wyf  
He yaf hir, and hir yonge sone also;975  
And with the senatour she ladde her lyf.  
Thus can our lady bringen out of wo  
Woful Custance, and many another mo.(880)  
And longe tyme dwelled she in that place,  
In holy werkes ever, as was hir grace.980  
The senatoures wyf hir aunte was,  
But for al that she knew hir never the more;  
I wol no lenger tarien in this cas,  
But to king Alla, which I spak of yore,

That for his wyf wepeth and syketh sore,985  
I wol retourne, and lete I wol Custance  
Under the senatoures governance.  
King Alla, which that hadde his moder slayn,(890)  
Upon a day fil in swich repentance,  
That, if I shortly tellen shal and plain,990  
To Rome he comth, to receyven his penance;  
And putte him in the popes ordinance  
In heigh and low, and Iesu Crist bisoghte  
Foryeve his wikked werkes that he wroghte.  
The fame anon thurgh Rome toun is born,995  
How Alla king shal come in pilgrimage,  
By herbergeours that wenten him biforn;  
For which the senatour, as was usage,(900)  
Rood him ageyn , and many of his linage,  
As wel to shewen his heighe magnificence1000  
As to don any king a reverence.  
Greet chere dooth this noble senatour  
To king Alla, and he to him also;  
Everich of hem doth other greet honour;  
And so bifel that, in a day or two,1005  
This senatour is to king Alla go  
To feste, and shortly, if I shal nat lye,  
Custances sone wente in his companye.(910)  
Som men wolde seyn, at requeste of Custance,  
This senatour hath lad this child to feste;1010  
I may nat tellen every circumstance,  
Be as be may, ther was he at the leste.  
But soth is this, that, at his modres heste,  
Biforn Alla, during the metes space,  
The child stood, loking in the kinges face.1015  
This Alla king hath of this child greet wonder,  
And to the senatour he seyde anon,  
'Whos is that faire child that stondest yonder?'(920)  
'I noot,' quod he, 'by god, and by seint Iohn!  
A moder he hath, but fader hath he non1020  
That I of woot'—but shortly, in a stounde,  
He tolde Alla how that this child was founde.  
'But god wot,' quod this senatour also,  
'So vertuous a livere in my lyf,  
Ne saugh I never as she, ne herde of mo1025  
Of worldly wommen, mayden, nor of wyf;  
I dar wel seyn hir hadde lever a knyf  
Thurgh-out her breste, than been a womman wikke;(930)  
Ther is no man coude bringe hir to that prikke.'  
Now was this child as lyk un-to Custance1030  
As possible is a creature to be.  
This Alla hath the face in remembrance

Of dame Custance, and ther-on mused he  
If that the childes moder were aught she  
That was his wyf, and prively he sighte,1035  
And spedde him fro the table that he mighte.  
'Parfay,' thoughte he, 'fantome is in myn heed!  
I oghte deme, of skilful Iugement,(940)  
That in the salte see my wyf is deed.'  
And afterward he made his argument—1040  
'What woot I, if that Crist have hider y-sent  
My wyf by see, as wel as he hir sente  
To my contree fro thennes that she wente?'  
And, after noon, hoom with the senatour  
Goth Alla, for to seen this wonder chaunce.1045  
This senatour dooth Alla greet honour,  
And hastily he sente after Custaunce.  
But trusteth weel, hir liste nat to daunce(950)  
Whan that she wiste wherefor was that sonde.  
Unnethe up-on hir feet she mighte stonde.1050  
When Alla saugh his wyf, faire he hir grette,  
And weep, that it was routhe for to see.  
For at the firste look he on hir sette  
He knew wel verrailly that it was she.  
And she for sorwe as domb stant as a tree;1055  
So was hir herte shet in hir distresse  
Whan she remembred his unkindenesse.  
Twyës she swowned in his owne sighte;(960)  
He weep, and him excuseth pitously:—  
'Now god,' quod he, 'and alle his halwes brighte1060  
So wisly on my soule as have mercy,  
That of your harm as giltelees am I  
As is Maurice my sone so lyk your face;  
Elles the feend me fecche out of this place!'  
Long was the sobbing and the bitter peyne1065  
Er that hir woful hertes mighte cesse;  
Greet was the pitee for to here hem pleyne,  
Thurgh whiche pleintes gan hir wo encesse.(970)  
I prey yow al my labour to relesse;  
I may nat telle hir wo un-til tomorwe,1070  
I am so wery for to speke of sorwe.  
But fynally, when that the sooth is wist  
That Alla giltelees was of hir wo,  
I trowe an hundred tymes been they kist,  
And swich a blisse is ther bitwix hem two1075  
That, save the Ioye that lasteth evermo,  
Ther is non lyk, that any creature  
Hath seyn or shal, whyl that the world may dure.(980)  
Tho preyde she hir housbond mekely,  
In relief of hir longe pitous pyne,1080

That he wold preye hir fader specially  
That, of his magestee, he wolde enclyne  
To vouche-sauf som day with him to dyne;  
She preyde him eek, he sholde by no weye  
Un-to hir fader no word of hir seye.1085  
Som men wold seyn, how that the child Maurice  
Doth this message un-to this emperour;  
But, as I gesse, Alla was nat so nyce(990)  
To him, that was of so sovereyn honour  
As he that is of cristen folk the flour,1090  
Sente any child, but it is bet to deme  
He wente him-self, and so it may wel seme.  
This emperour hath graunted gentilly  
To come to diner, as he him bisoghte;  
And wel rede I, he loked bisily1095  
Up-on this child, and on his doghter thoghte.  
Alla goth to his in, and, as him oghte,  
Arrayed for this feste in every wyse(1000)  
As ferforth as his conning may suffyse.  
The morwe cam, and Alla gan him dresse,1100  
And eek his wyf, this emperour to mete;  
And forth they ryde in Ioye and in gladnesse.  
And whan she saugh hir fader in the strete,  
She lighte down, and falleth him to fete.  
'Fader,' quod she, 'your yonge child Custance1105  
Is now ful clene out of your remembrance.  
I am your doghter Custance,' quod she,  
'That whylom ye han sent un-to Surrye.(1010)  
It am I, fader, that in the salte see  
Was put allone and dampned for to dye.1110  
Now, gode fader, mercy I yow crye,  
Send me namore un-to non hethenesse,  
But thonketh my lord heer of his kindenesse.'  
Who can the pitous Ioye tellen al  
Bitwix hem three, sin they ben thus y-mette?1115  
But of my tale make an ende I shal;  
The day goth faste, I wol no lenger lette.  
This glade folk to diner they hem sette;(1020)  
In Ioye and blisse at mete I lete hem dwelle  
A thousand fold wel more than I can telle.1120  
This child Maurice was sithen emperour  
Maad by the pope, and lived cristenly.  
To Cristes chirche he dide greet honour;  
But I lete al his storie passen by,  
Of Custance is my tale specially.1125  
In olde Romain gestes may men finde  
Maurices lyf; I bere it noght in minde.  
This king Alla, whan he his tyme sey,(1030)

With his Custance, his holy wyf so swete,  
To Engelond been they come the righte wey, 1130  
Wher-as they live in Ioye and in quiete.  
But litel whyl it lasteth, I yow hete,  
Ioye of this world, for tyme wol nat abyde;  
Fro day to night it changeth as the tyde.  
Who lived ever in swich delyt o day 1135  
That him ne moeved outhur conscience,  
Or ire, or talent, or som kin affray,  
Envye, or pryde, or passion, or offence? (1040)  
I ne seye but for this ende this sentence,  
That litel whyl in Ioye or in plesance 1140  
Lasteth the blisse of Alla with Custance.  
For deeth, that taketh of heigh and low his rente,  
When passed was a yeer, even as I gesse,  
Out of this world this king Alla he hente,  
For whom Custance hath ful gret hevynesse. 1145  
Now lat us preyen god his soule blesse!  
And dame Custance, fynally to seye,  
Towards the toun of Rome gooth hir weye. (1050)  
To Rome is come this holy creature,  
And fyndeth ther hir frendes hole and sounde: 1150  
Now is she scaped al hir aventure;  
And whan that she hir fader hath y-founde,  
Doun on hir knees falleth she to grounde;  
Weping for tendrenesse in herte blythe,  
She herieth god an hundred thousand sythe. 1155  
In vertu and in holy almes-dede  
They liven alle, and never a-sonder wende;  
Til deeth departed hem, this lyf they lede. (1060)  
And fareth now weel, my tale is at an ende.  
Now Iesu Crist, that of his might may sende 1160  
Ioye after wo, governe us in his grace,  
And kepe us alle that ben in this place! Amen.

Here endeth the Tale of the Man of Lawe; and next folweth the Shipmannes  
Prolog.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## THE SHIPMAN'S PROLOGUE.

Here biginneth the Shipmannes Prolog.

\*\*In Tyrwhitt's text, ll. 12903-12924.

OUR hoste up-on his stiropes stood anon,  
And seyde, 'good men, herkneth everich on;  
This was a thrifty tale for the nones!1165  
Sir parish prest,' quod he, 'for goddes bones,  
Tel us a tale, as was thy forward yore.  
I see wel that ye lerned men in lore  
Can moche good, by goddes dignitee!  
The Persone him answerde, '*benedicte!*1170  
What eyleth the man, so sinfully to swere?'  
Our hoste answerde, 'O Iankin, be ye there?(10)  
I smelle a loller in the wind,' quod he.  
'How! good men,' quod our hoste, 'herkneth me;  
Abydeth, for goddes digne passioun,1175  
For we shal han a predicacioun;  
This loller heer wil prechen us som-what.'  
'Nay, by my fader soule! that shal be nat,'  
Seyde the Shipman; 'heer he shal nat preche,  
He shal no gospel glosen heer ne teche.1180  
We leve alle in the grete god,' quod he,  
'He wolde sowen som difficultee,(20)  
Or springen cokkel in our clene corn;  
And therfor, hoste, I warne thee biforn,  
My Ioly body shal a tale telle,1185  
And I shal clinken yow so mery a belle,  
That I shal waken al this companye;  
But it shal nat ben of philosophye,  
Ne *physices*, ne termes queinte of lawe;(27)  
Ther is but litel Latin in my mawe.'1190

Here endeth the Shipman his Prolog.



[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## THE SHIPMANNES TALE.

Here biginneth the Shipmannes Tale.

A Marchant whylom dwelled at Seint Denys,  
That riche was, for which men helde him wys;  
A wyf he hadde of excellent beautee,  
And compaignable and revelous was she,  
Which is a thing that causeth more dispence<sup>1195</sup>  
Than worth is al the chere and reverence  
That men hem doon at festes and at daunces;  
Swiche salutaciouns and contenaunces  
Passen as dooth a shadwe up-on the wal.  
But wo is him that payen moot for al;<sup>1200</sup>  
The sely housbond, algate he mot paye;(11)  
He moot us clothe, and he moot us arraye,  
Al for his owene worship richely,  
In which array we daunce lolily.  
And if that he noght may, par-aventure,<sup>1205</sup>  
Or elles, list no swich dispence endure,  
But thinketh it is wasted and y-lost,  
Than moot another payen for our cost,  
Or lene us gold, and that is perilous.  
This noble Marchant heeld a worthy hous,<sup>1210</sup>  
For which he hadde alday so greet repair(21)  
For his largesse, and for his wyf was fair,  
That wonder is; but herkneth to my tale.  
Amonges alle his gestes, grete and smale,  
Ther was a monk, a fair man and a bold,<sup>1215</sup>  
I trowe of thritty winter he was old,  
That ever in oon was drawing to that place.  
This yonge monk, that was so fair of face,  
Aqueinted was so with the gode man,  
Sith that hir firste knoweliche bigan,<sup>1220</sup>  
That in his hous as famulier was he(31)  
As it possible is any freend to be.  
And for as muchel as this gode man  
And eek this monk, of which that I bigan,  
Were bothe two y-born in o village,<sup>1225</sup>  
The monk him claimeth as for cosinage;  
And he again, he seith nat ones nay,  
But was as glad ther-of as fowel of day;  
For to his herte it was a greet plesaunce.  
Thus been they knit with eterne alliaunce,<sup>1230</sup>  
And ech of hem gan other for tassure(41)  
Of bretherhede, whyl that hir lyf may dure.

Free was daun Iohn, and namely of dispence,  
As in that hous; and ful of diligence  
To doon plesaunce, and also greet costage.1235  
He noght forgat to yeve the leeste page  
In al that hous; but, after hir degree,  
He yaf the lord, and sitthe al his meynee,  
When that he cam, som maner honest thing;  
For which they were as glad of his coming1240  
As fowel is fayn, whan that the sonne up-ryseth.(51)  
Na more of this as now, for it suffyseth.  
But so bifel, this marchant on a day  
Shoop him to make redy his array  
Toward the toun of Brugges for to fare,1245  
To byen ther a porcioun of ware;  
For which he hath to Paris sent anon  
A messenger, and preyed hath daun Iohn  
That he sholde come to Seint Denys to pleye  
With him and with his wyf a day or tweye,1250  
Er he to Brugges wente, in alle wyse.(61)  
This noble monk, of which I yow devyse,  
Hath of his abbot, as him list, licence,  
By-cause he was a man of heigh prudence,  
And eek an officer, out for to ryde,1255  
To seen hir graunges and hir bernes wyde;  
And un-to Seint Denys he comth anon.  
Who was so welcome as my lord daun Iohn,  
Our dere cosin, ful of curteisye?  
With him broghte he a Iubbe of Malvesye,1260  
And eek another, ful of fyn Vernage,(71)  
And volatyl, as ay was his usage.  
And thus I lete hem ete and drinke and pleye,  
This marchant and this monk, a day or tweye.  
The thridde day, this marchant up aryseth,1265  
And on his nedes sadly him avyseth,  
And up in-to his countour-hous goth he  
To rekene with him-self, as wel may be,  
Of thilke yeer, how that it with him stood,  
And how that he despended hadde his good;1270  
And if that he encessed were or noon.(81)  
His bokes and his bagges many oon  
He leith biforn him on his counting-bord;  
Ful riche was his tresor and his hord,  
For which ful faste his countour-dore he shette;1275  
And eek he nolde that no man sholde him lette  
Of his accountes, for the mene tyme;  
And thus he sit til it was passed pryme.  
Daun Iohn was risen in the morwe also,  
And in the gardin walketh to and fro,1280

And hath his thinges seyde ful curteisly.(91)  
This gode wyf cam walking prively  
In-to the gardin, ther he walketh softe,  
And him saleweth, as she hath don ofte.  
A mayde child cam in hir companye,1285  
Which as hir list she may governe and gye,  
For yet under the yerde was the mayde.  
'O dere cosin myn, daun Iohn,' she sayde,  
'What eyleth yow so rathe for to ryse?'  
'Nece,' quod he, 'it oghte y-nough suffyse1290  
Fyve houres for to slepe up-on a night,(101)  
But it were for an old appalled wight,  
As been thise wedded men, that lye and dare  
As in a forme sit a wery hare,  
Were al for-straught with houndes grete and smale.1295  
But dere nece, why be ye so pale?  
I trowe certes that our gode man  
Hath yow laboured sith the night bigan,  
That yow were nede to resten hastily?'  
And with that word he lough ful merily,1300  
And of his owene thought he wex al reed.(111)  
This faire wyf gan for to shake hir heed,  
And seyde thus, 'ye, god wot al,' quod she;  
'Nay, cosin myn, it stant nat so with me.  
For, by that god that yaf me soule and lyf,1305  
In al the reme of France is ther no wyf  
That lasse lust hath to that sory pley.  
For I may singe "allas" and "weylawey,  
That I was born," but to no wight,' quod she,  
'Dar I nat telle how that it stant with me.1310  
Wherfore I thinke out of this land to wende,(121)  
Or elles of my-self to make an ende,  
So ful am I of drede and eek of care.'  
This monk bigan up-on this wyf to stare,  
And seyde, 'allas, my nece, god forbede1315  
That ye, for any sorwe or any drede,  
Fordo your-self; but telleth me your grief;  
Paraventure I may, in your meschief,  
Conseille or helpe, and therfore telleth me  
Al your anoy, for it shal been secree;1320  
For on my porthors here I make an ooth,(131)  
That never in my lyf, for lief ne looth,  
Ne shal I of no conseil yow biwreye.'  
'The same agayn to yow,' quod she, 'I seye;  
By god and by this porthors, I yow swere,1325  
Though men me wolde al in-to peces tere,  
Ne shal I never, for to goon to helle,  
Biwreye a word of thing that ye me telle,

Nat for no cosinage ne alliance,  
But verrailly, for love and affiance.' 1330  
Thus been they sworn, and heer-upon they kiste,(141)  
And ech of hem tolde other what hem liste.  
'Cosin,' quod she, 'if that I hadde a space,  
As I have noon, and namely in this place,  
Than wolde I telle a legende of my lyf,1335  
What I have suffred sith I was a wyf  
With myn housbonde, al be ne your cosyn.'  
'Nay,' quod this monk, 'by god and seint Martyn,  
He is na more cosin un-to me  
Than is this leef that hangeth on the tree!1340  
I clepe him so, by Seint Denys of Fraunce,(151)  
To have the more cause of aqueintaunce  
Of yow, which I have loved specially  
Aboven alle wommen sikerly;  
This swere I yow on my professioun.1345  
Telleth your grief, lest that he come adoun,  
And hasteth yow, and gooth your wey anon.'  
'My dere love,' quod she, 'o my daun Iohn,  
Ful lief were me this conseil for to hyde,  
But out it moot, I may namore abyde.1350  
Myn housbond is to me the worste man(161)  
That ever was, sith that the world bigan.  
But sith I am a wyf, it sit nat me  
To tellen no wight of our privetee,  
Neither a bedde, ne in non other place;1355  
God shilde I sholde it tellen, for his grace!  
A wyf ne shal nat seyn of hir housbonde  
But al honour, as I can understonde;  
Save un-to yow thus mucche I tellen shal;  
As help me god, he is noght worth at all1360  
In no degree the value of a flye.(171)  
But yet me greveth most his nigardye;  
And wel ye woot that wommen naturelly  
Desyren thinges sixe, as wel as I.  
They wolde that hir housbondes sholde be1365  
Hardy, and wyse, and riche, and ther-to free,  
And buxom to his wyf, and fresh a-bedde.  
But, by that ilke lord that for us bledde,  
For his honour, my-self for to arraye,  
A Sonday next, I moste nedes paye1370  
An hundred frankes, or elles am I lorn.(181)  
Yet were me lever that I were unborn  
Than me were doon a sclaudre or vileinye;  
And if myn housbond eek it mighte espye,  
I nere but lost, and therefore I yow preye1375  
Lene me this somme, or elles moot I deye.

Daun Iohn, I seye, lene me thise hundred frankes;  
Pardee, I wol nat faille yow my thanks,  
If that yow list to doon that I yow praye.  
For at a certein day I wol yow paye,1380  
And doon to yow what plesance and servyce(191)  
That I may doon, right as yow list devyse.  
And but I do, god take on me vengeance  
As foul as ever had Geniloun of France!’  
This gentil monk answerde in this manere;1385  
‘Now, trewely, myn owene lady dere,  
I have,’ quod he, ‘on yow so greet a routhe,  
That I yow swere and plighte yow my trouthe,  
That whan your housbond is to Flaundres fare,  
I wol delivere yow out of this care;1390  
For I wol bringe yow an hundred frankes.’(201)  
And with that word he caughte hir by the flankes,  
And hir embraceth harde, and kiste hir ofte.  
‘Goth now your wey,’ quod he, ‘al stille and softe,  
And lat us dyne as sone as that ye may;1395  
For by my chilindre it is pryme of day.  
Goth now, and beeth as trewe as I shal be.’  
‘Now, elles god forbede, sire,’ quod she,  
And forth she gooth, as Iolif as a pye,  
And bad the cokes that they sholde hem hye,1400  
So that men mighte dyne, and that anon.(211)  
Up to hir housbonde is this wyf y-gon,  
And knokketh at his countour boldely.  
‘*Qui la?*’ quod he. ‘Peter! it am I,’  
Quod she, ‘what, sire, how longe wol ye faste?1405  
How longe tyme wol ye rekene and caste  
Your sommes, and your bokes, and your thinges?  
The devel have part of alle swiche rekeninges!  
Ye have y-nough, pardee, of goddes sonde;  
Come down to-day, and lat your bagges stonde.1410  
Ne be ye nat ashamed that daun Iohn(221)  
Shal fasting al this day elenge goon?  
What ! lat us here a messe, and go we dyne.’  
‘Wyf,’ quod this man, ‘litel canstow devyne  
The curious businesse that we have.1415  
For of us chapmen, al-so god me save,  
And by that lord that cleped is Seint Yve,  
Scarsly amonges twelve ten shul thryve,  
Continuelly, lastinge un-to our age.  
We may wel make chere and good visage,1420  
And dryve forth the world as it may be,(231)  
And kepen our estaat in privetee,  
Til we be deed, or elles that we pleye  
A pilgrimage, or goon out of the weye.

And therfor have I greet necessitee<sup>1425</sup>  
Up-on this queinte world tavyse me;  
For evermore we mote stonde in drede  
Of hap and fortune in our chapmanhede.  
To Flaundres wol I go to-morwe at day,  
And come agayn, as sone as ever I may.<sup>1430</sup>  
For which, my dere wyf, I thee biseke,<sup>(241)</sup>  
As be to every wight buxom and meke,  
And for to kepe our good be curious,  
And honestly governe wel our hous.  
Thou hast y-nough, in every maner wyse,<sup>1435</sup>  
That to a thrifty houshold may suffyse.  
Thee lakketh noon array ne no vitaille,  
Of silver in thy purs shaltow nat faille.’  
And with that word his countour-dore he shette,  
And doun he gooth, no lenger wolde he lette,<sup>1440</sup>  
But hastily a messe was ther seyde,<sup>(251)</sup>  
And spedily the tables were y-leyd,  
And to the diner faste they hem spedde;  
And richely this monk the chapman fedde.  
At-after diner daun Iohn sobrelly<sup>1445</sup>  
This chapman took a-part, and prively  
He seyde him thus, ‘cosyn, it standeth so,  
That wel I see to Brugges wol ye go.  
God and seint Austin spede yow and gyde!  
I prey yow, cosin, wysly that ye ryde;<sup>1450</sup>  
Governeth yow also of your diete<sup>(261)</sup>  
Atemprely, and namely in this hete.  
Bitwix us two nedeth no strange fare;  
Fare-wel, cosyn; god shilde yow fro care.  
If any thing ther be by day or night,<sup>1455</sup>  
If it lye in my power and my might,  
That ye me wol comande in any wyse,  
It shal be doon, right as ye wol devyse.  
O thing, er that ye goon, if it may be,  
I wolde prey yow; for to lene me<sup>1460</sup>  
An hundred frankes, for a wyke or tweye,<sup>(271)</sup>  
For certein beestes that I moste beye,  
To store with a place that is oures.  
God help me so, I wolde it were youre!  
I shal nat faille surely of my day,<sup>1465</sup>  
Nat for a thousand frankes, a myle-way.  
But lat this thing be secree, I yow preye,  
For yet to-night these beestes moot I beye;  
And fare-now wel, myn owene cosin dere,  
Graunt mercy of your cost and of your chere.’<sup>1470</sup>  
This noble marchant gentilly anon<sup>(281)</sup>  
Answerde, and seyde, ‘o cosin myn, daun Iohn,

Now sikerly this is a smal requeste;  
My gold is youres, whan that it yow leste.  
And nat only my gold, but my chaffare;1475  
Take what yow list, god shilde that ye spare.  
But o thing is, ye knowe it wel y-nogh,  
Of chapmen, that hir moneye is hir plogh.  
We may creauce whyl we have a name,  
But goldlees for to be, it is no game.1480  
Paye it agayn whan it lyth in your ese;(291)  
After my might ful fayn wolde I yow plese.  
These hundred frankes he fette forth anon,  
And prively he took hem to daun Iohn.  
No wight in al this world wiste of this lone,1485  
Savinge this marchant and daun Iohn allone.  
They drinke, and speke, and rome a whyle and pleye,  
Til that daun Iohn rydeth to his abbeye.  
The morwe cam, and forth this marchant rydeth  
To Flaundres-ward; his prentis wel him gydeth,1490  
Til he cam in-to Brugges merily.(301)  
Now gooth this marchant faste and bisily  
Aboute his nede, and byeth and creaunceth.  
He neither pleyeth at the dees ne daunceth;  
But as a marchant, shortly for to telle,1495  
He let his lyf, and there I lete him dwelle.  
The Sondag next this Marchant was agon,  
To Seint Denys y-comen is daun Iohn,  
With crowne and berd all fresh and newe y-shave.  
In al the hous ther nas so litel a knave,1500  
Ne no wight elles, that he nas ful fayn,(311)  
For that my lord daun Iohn was come agayn.  
And shortly to the point right for to gon,  
This faire wyf accorded with daun Iohn,  
That for these hundred frankes he sholde al night1505  
Have hir in his armes bolt-upright;  
And this acord parfourned was in dede.  
In mirthe al night a bisy lyf they lede  
Til it was day, that daun Iohn wente his way,  
And bad the meynee 'fare-wel, have good day!'1510  
For noon of hem, ne no wight in the toun,(321)  
Hath of daun Iohn right no suspecioun.  
And forth he rydeth hoom to his abbeye,  
Or where him list; namore of him I seye.  
This marchant, whan that ended was the faire,1515  
To Seint Denys he gan for to repaire,  
And with his wyf he maketh feste and chere,  
And telleth hir that chaffare is so dere,  
That nedes moste he make a chevisaunce.  
For he was bounde in a reconissaunce1520

To paye twenty thousand sheeld anon.(331)  
For which this marchant is to Paris gon,  
To borwe of certein frendes that he hadde  
A certein frankes; and somme with him he ladde.  
And whan that he was come in-to the toun,1525  
For greet chertee and greet affeccioun,  
Un-to daun Iohn he gooth him first, to pleye;  
Nat for to axe or borwe of him moneye,  
But for to wite and seen of his welfare,  
And for to tellen him of his chaffare,1530  
As freendes doon whan they ben met y-fere.(341)  
Daun Iohn him maketh feste and mery chere;  
And he him tolde agayn ful specially,  
How he hadde wel y-boght and graciously,  
Thanked be god, al hool his marchandyse.1535  
Save that he moste, in alle maner wyse,  
Maken a chevisaunce , as for his beste,  
And thanne he sholde been in Ioye and reste.  
Daun Iohn answerde, ‘certes, I am fayn  
That ye in hele ar comen hoom agayn.1540  
And if that I were riche, as have I blisse,(351)  
Of twenty thousand sheeld shold ye nat misse,  
For ye so kindly this other day  
Lente me gold; and as I can and may,  
I thanke yow, by god and by seint Iame!1545  
But nathelees I took un-to our dame,  
Your wyf at hoom, the same gold ageyn  
Upon your bench; she woot it wel, certeyn,  
By certein tokenes that I can hir telle.  
Now, by your leve, I may no lenger dwelle,1550  
Our abbot wol out of this toun anon;(361)  
And in his companye moot I gon.  
Grete wel our dame, myn owene nece swete,  
And fare-wel, dere cosin, til we mete!’  
This Marchant, which that was ful war and wys,1555  
Creaunced hath, and payd eek in Parys,  
To certeyn Lumbardes, redy in hir hond,  
The somme of gold, and gat of hem his bond;  
And hoom he gooth, mery as a papeiay.  
For wel he knew he stood in swich array,1560  
That nedes moste he winne in that viage(371)  
A thousand frankes above al his costage.  
His wyf ful redy mette him atte gate,  
As she was wont of old usage algate,  
And al that night in mirthe they bisette;1565  
For he was riche and cleerly out of dette.  
Whan it was day, this marchant gan embrace  
His wyf al newe, and kiste hir on hir face,



And up he gooth and maketh it ful tough.  
'Namore,' quod she, 'by god, ye have y-nough!' 1570  
And wantounly agayn with him she pleyde;(381)  
Til, atte laste, that this Marchant seyde,  
'By god,' quod he, 'I am a litel wrooth  
With yow, my wyf, al-though it be me looth.  
And woot ye why? by god, as that I gesse, 1575  
That ye han maad a maner straungenesse  
Bitwixen me and my cosyn daun Iohn.  
Ye sholde han warned me, er I had gon,  
That he yow hadde an hundred frankes payed  
By redy tokene; and heeld him yvel apayed, 1580  
For that I to him spak of chevisaunce,(391)  
Me semed so, as by his contenance.  
But nathelees, by god our hevene king,  
I thoghte nat to axe of him no-thing.  
I prey thee, wyf, ne do namore so; 1585  
Tel me alwey, er that I fro thee go,  
If any dettour hath in myn absence  
Y-payed thee; lest, thurgh thy negligence,  
I mighte him axe a thing that he hath payed.'  
This wyf was nat afered nor affrayed, 1590  
But boldely she seyde, and that anon:(401)  
'Marie, I defye the false monk, daun Iohn!  
I kepe nat of hise tokenes never a deel;  
He took me certein gold, that woot I weel!  
What! yvel thedom on his monkes snoute! 1595  
For, god it woot, I wende, withouten doute,  
That he had yeve it me bycause of yow,  
To doon ther-with myn honour and my prow,  
For cosinage, and eek for bele chere  
That he hath had ful ofte tymes here. 1600  
But sith I see I stonde in this disioint,(411)  
I wol answer yow shortly, to the point.  
Ye han mo slakker dettours than am I!  
For I wol paye yow wel and redily  
Fro day to day; and, if so be I faille, 1605  
I am your wyf; score it up-on my taille,  
And I shal paye, as sone as ever I may.  
For, by my trouthe, I have on myn array,  
And nat on wast, bistowed every deel.  
And for I have bistowed it so weel 1610  
For your honour, for goddes sake, I seye,(421)  
As be nat wrooth, but lat us laughe and pleye.  
Ye shal my Ioly body have to wedde;  
By god, I wol nat paye yow but a-bedde.  
Forgive it me, myn owene spouse dere; 1615  
Turne hiderward and maketh bettre chere.'

This marchant saugh ther was no remedye,  
And, for to chyde, it nere but greet folye,  
Sith that the thing may nat amended be.  
'Now, wyf,' he seyde, 'and I foryeve it thee;1620  
But, by thy lyf, ne be namore so large;(431)  
Keep bet our good, this yeve I thee in charge.'  
Thus endeth now my tale, and god us sende  
Taling y-nough un-to our lyves ende. Amen.

Here endeth the Shipmannes Tale.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## THE PRIORESS'S PROLOGUE. (T. 13365-13382.)

Bihold the mery wordes of the Host to the Shipman and to the lady Prioresse.

'WEL seyde, by *corpus dominus*,' quod our hoste,1625  
'Now longe moot thou sayle by the coste,  
Sir gentil maister, gentil marineer!  
God yeve this monk a thousand last quad yeer!  
A ha! felawes! beth ware of swiche a Iape!  
The monk putte in the mannes hood an ape,1630  
And in his wyves eek, by seint Austin!  
Draweth no monkes more un-to your in.  
But now passe over, and lat us seke aboute,  
Who shal now telle first, of al this route,(10)  
Another tale;' and with that word he sayde,1635  
As curteisly as it had been a mayde,  
'My lady Prioresse, by your leve,  
So that I wiste I sholde yow nat greve,  
I wolde demen that ye tellen sholde  
A tale next, if so were that ye wolde.1640  
Now wol ye vouche-sauf, my lady dere?'  
'Gladly,' quod she, and seyde as ye shal here.(18)

*Explicit.*

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## THE PRIORESSES TALE.

The Prologe of the Prioresses Tale.

### *Domine, Dominus Noster.*

O LORD our lord, thy name how merveillous  
Is in this large worlde y-sprad—quod she:—  
For noght only thy laude precious<sup>1645</sup>  
Parfourned is by men of dignitee,  
But by the mouth of children thy bountee  
Parfourned is, for on the brest soukinge  
Som tyme shewen they thyn heryinge.  
Wherfor in laude, as I best can or may,<sup>1650</sup>  
Of thee, and of the whyte lily flour  
Which that thee bar, and is a mayde alway,<sup>(10)</sup>  
To telle a storie I wol do my labour;  
Not that I may encresen hir honour;  
For she hir-self is honour, and the rote<sup>1655</sup>  
Of bountee, next hir sone, and soules bote.—  
O moder mayde! o mayde moder free!  
O bush unbrent, brenninge in Moyses sighte,  
That ravisedest down fro the deitee,  
Thurgh thyn humblesse, the goost that in thalighte,<sup>1660</sup>  
Of whos vertu, whan he thyn herte lighte,  
Conceived was the fadres sapience,<sup>(20)</sup>  
Help me to telle it in thy reverence!  
Lady! thy bountee, thy magnificence,  
Thy vertu, and thy grete humilitee<sup>1665</sup>  
Ther may no tonge expresse in no science;  
For som-tyme, lady, er men praye to thee,  
Thou goost biforn of thy benignitee,  
And getest us the light, thurgh thy preyere,  
To gyden us un-to thy sone so dere.<sup>1670</sup>  
My conning is so wayk, o blisful quene,  
For to declare thy grete worthinesse,<sup>(30)</sup>  
That I ne may the weichte nat sustene,  
But as a child of twelf monthe old, or lesse,  
That can unnethes any word expresse,<sup>1675</sup>  
Right so fare I, and therfor I yow preye,  
Gydeh my song that I shal of yow seye.

*Explicit.*

Here biginneth the Prioresses Tale.

Ther was in Asie, in a greet citee,  
Amonges cristen folk, a Iewerye,  
Sustened by a lord of that contree 1680  
For foule usure and lucre of vilanye,  
Hateful to Crist and to his companye;(40)  
And thurgh the strete men mighte ryde or wende,  
For it was free, and open at either ende.  
A litel scole of cristen folk ther stood 1685  
Doun at the ferther ende, in which ther were  
Children an heep, y-comen of cristen blood,  
That lerned in that scole yeer by yere  
Swich maner doctrine as men used there,  
This is to seyn, to singen and to rede, 1690  
As smale children doon in hir childhede.  
Among these children was a widwes sone,(50)  
A litel clergeon, seven yeer of age,  
That day by day to scole was his wone,  
And eek also, wher-as he saugh thimage 1695  
Of Cristes moder, hadde he in usage,  
As him was taught, to knele adoun and seye  
His *Ave Marie*, as he goth by the weye.  
Thus hath this widwe hir litel sone y-taught  
Our blisful lady, Cristes moder dere, 1700  
To worshipe ay, and he forgat it naught,  
For sely child wol alday sone lere;(60)  
But ay, whan I remembre on this matere,  
Seint Nicholas stant ever in my presence,  
For he so yong to Crist did reverence. 1705  
This litel child, his litel book lerninge,  
As he sat in the scole at his prymer,  
He *Alma redemptoris* herde singe,  
As children lerned hir antiphoner;  
And, as he dorste, he drough him ner and ner, 1710  
And herkned ay the wordes and the note,  
Til he the firste vers coude al by rote.(70)  
Noght wiste he what this Latin was to seye,  
For he so yong and tendre was of age;  
But on a day his felaw gan he preye 1715  
Texpounden him this song in his langage,  
Or telle him why this song was in usage;  
This preyde he him to construe and declare  
Ful ofte tyme upon his knowes bare.  
His felaw, which that elder was than he, 1720  
Answerde him thus: ‘this song, I have herd seye,  
Was maked of our blisful lady free,(80)  
Hir to salve, and eek hir for to preye  
To been our help and socour whan we deye.  
I can no more expoude in this matere; 1725

I lerne song, I can but smal grammere.’  
‘And is this song maked in reverence  
Of Cristes moder?’ seyde this innocent;  
‘Now certes, I wol do my diligence  
To conne it al, er Cristemasse is went;1730  
Though that I for my prymer shal be shent,  
And shal be beten thryes in an houre,(90)  
I wol it conne, our lady for to honoure.’  
His felaw taughte him homward prively,  
Fro day to day, til he coude it by rote,1735  
And than he song it wel and boldely  
Fro word to word, acording with the note;  
Twyës a day it passed thurgh his throte,  
To scoleward and homward whan he wente;  
On Cristes moder set was his entente.1740  
As I have seyde, thurgh-out the Iewerye  
This litel child, as he cam to and fro,(100)  
Ful merily than wolde he singe, and crye  
*O Alma redemptoris* ever-mo.  
The swetnes hath his herte perced so1745  
Of Cristes moder, that, to hir to preye,  
He can nat stinte of singing by the weye.  
Our firste fo, the serpent Sathanas,  
That hath in Iewes herte his waspes nest,  
Up swal, and seide, ‘o Hebraik peple, allas!1750  
Is this to yow a thing that is honest,  
That swich a boy shal walken as him lest(110)  
In your despyt, and singe of swich sentence,  
Which is agayn your lawes reverence?’  
Fro thennes forth the Iewes han conspyred1755  
This innocent out of this world to chace;  
An homicyde ther-to han they hyred,  
That in an aley hadde a privee place;  
And as the child gan for-by for to pace,  
This cursed Iew him hente and heeld him faste,1760  
And kitte his throte, and in a pit him caste.  
I seye that in a wardrobe they him threwe(120)  
Wher-as these Iewes purgen hir entraille.  
O cursed folk of Herodes al newe,  
What may your yvel entente yow availle?1765  
Mordre wol out, certein, it wol nat faille,  
And namely ther thonour of god shal sprede,  
The blood out cryeth on your cursed dede.  
‘O martir, souted to virginitee,  
Now maystou singen, folwing ever in oon1770  
The whyte lamb celestial,’ quod she,  
‘Of which the grete evangelist, seint Iohn,(130)  
In Pathmos wroot, which seith that they that goon

Biform this lamb, and singe a song al newe,  
That never, fleshly, wommen they ne knewe.' 1775  
This povre widwe awaiteth al that night  
After hir litel child, but he cam noght;  
For which, as sone as it was dayes light,  
With face pale of drede and bisy thought,  
She hath at scole and elles-wher him soght, 1780  
Til finally she gan so fer espye  
That he last seyn was in the Iewerye. (140)  
With modres pitee in hir brest enclosed,  
She gooth, as she were half out of hir minde,  
To every place wher she hath supposed 1785  
By lyklihedde hir litel child to finde;  
And ever on Cristes moder meke and kinde  
She cryde, and atte laste thus she wroghte,  
Among the cursed Iewes she him soghte.  
She frayneth and she preyeth pitously 1790  
To every Iew that dwelte in thilke place,  
To telle hir, if hir child wente oght for-by. (150)  
They seyde, 'nay'; but Iesu, of his grace,  
Yaf in hir thought, inwith a litel space,  
That in that place after hir sone she cryde, 1795  
Wher he was casten in a pit bisyde.  
O grete god, that parfournest thy laude  
By mouth of innocents, lo heer thy might!  
This gemme of chastitee, this emeraude,  
And eek of martirdom the ruby bright, 1800  
Ther he with throte y-corven lay upright,  
He '*Alma redemptoris*' gan to singe (160)  
So loude, that al the place gan to ringe.  
The Cristen folk, that thurgh the strete wente,  
In coomen, for to wondre up-on this thing, 1805  
And hastily they for the provost sente;  
He cam anon with-outen tarying,  
And herieth Crist that is of heven king,  
And eek his moder, honour of mankinde,  
And after that, the Iewes leet he binde. 1810  
This child with pitous lamentacioun  
Up-taken was, singing his song alway; (170)  
And with honour of greet processiou  
They carien him un-to the nexte abbay.  
His moder swowning by the bere lay; 1815  
Unnethe might the peple that was there  
This newe Rachel bringe fro his bere.  
With torment and with shamful deth echon  
This provost dooth thise Iewes for to sterve  
That of this mordre wiste, and that anon; 1820  
He nolde no swich cursednesse observe.

Yvel shal have, that yvel wol deserve.(180)  
Therfor with wilde hors he dide hem drawe,  
And after that he heng hem by the lawe.  
Up-on his bere ay lyth this innocent1825  
Biforn the chief auter, whyl masse laste,  
And after that, the abbot with his covent  
Han sped hem for to burien him ful faste;  
And whan they holy water on him caste,  
Yet spak this child, whan spreynd was holy water,1830  
And song—‘*O Alma redemptoris mater!*’  
This abbot, which that was an holy man(190)  
As monkes been, or elles oghten be,  
This yonge child to coniure he bigan,  
And seyde, ‘o dere child, I halse thee,1835  
In vertu of the holy Trinitee,  
Tel me what is thy cause for to singe,  
Sith that thy throte is cut, to my seminge?’  
‘My throte is cut un-to my nekke-boon,’  
Seyde this child, ‘and, as by wey of kinde,1840  
I sholde have deyed, ye, longe tyme agoon,  
But Iesu Crist, as ye in bokes finde,(200)  
Wil that his glorie laste and be in minde,  
And, for the worship of his moder dere,  
Yet may I singe “*O Alma*” loude and clere.1845  
This welle of mercy, Cristes moder swete,  
I lovede alwey, as after my conninge;  
And whan that I my lyf sholde forlete,  
To me she cam, and bad me for to singe  
This antem verrailly in my deyinge,1850  
As ye han herd, and, whan that I had songe,  
Me thoughte, she leyde a greyn up-on my tonge.(210)  
Wherfor I singe, and singe I moot certeyn  
In honour of that blisful mayden free,  
Til fro my tonge of-taken is the greyn,1855  
And afterward thus seyde she to me,  
“My litel child, now wol I fecche thee  
Whan that the greyn is fro thy tonge y-take;  
Be nat agast, I wol thee nat forsake.” ’  
This holy monk, this abbot, him mene I,1860  
His tonge out-caughte, and took a-wey the greyn,  
And he yaf up the goost ful softely.(220)  
And whan this abbot had this wonder seyn,  
His salte teres trikled doun as reyn,  
And gruf he fil al plat up-on the grounde,1865  
And stille he lay as he had been y-bounde.  
The covent eek lay on the pavement  
Weping, and herien Cristes moder dere,  
And after that they ryse, and forth ben went,



And toke away this martir fro his bere,1870  
And in a tombe of marbul-stones clere  
Enclosen they his litel body swete;(230)  
Ther he is now, god leve us for to mete.  
O yonge Hugh of Lincoln, slayn also  
With cursed Iewes, as it is notable,1875  
For it nis but a litel whyle ago;  
Preye eek for us, we sinful folk unstable,  
That, of his mercy, god so merciabile  
On us his grete mercy multiplye,(237)  
For reverence of his moder Marye. Amen.1880

Here is ended the Prioresses Tale.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

PROLOGUE TO SIR THOPAS.  
(T. 13621-13641.)

Bihold the murye wordes of the Host to Chaucer.

WHAN seyde was al this miracle, every man  
As sobre was, that wonder was to se,  
Til that our hoste Iapen tho bigan,  
And than at erst he loked up-on me,  
And seyde thus, 'what man artow?' quod he;1885  
'Thou lokest as thou woldest finde an hare,  
For ever up-on the ground I see thee stare.  
Approche neer, and loke up merily.  
Now war yow, sirs, and lat this man have place;  
He in the waast is shape as wel as I;1890  
This were a popet in an arm tenbrace(11)  
For any womman, smal and fair of face.  
He semeth elvish by his contenance,  
For un-to no wight dooth he daliaunce.  
Sey now somewhat, sin other folk han sayd;1895  
Tel us a tale of mirthe, and that anoon;'—  
'Hoste,' quod I, 'ne beth nat yvel apayd,  
For other tale certes can I noon,  
But of a ryme I lerned longe agoon.'  
'Ye, that is good,' quod he; 'now shul we here1900  
Som deyntee thing, me thinketh by his chere.'(21)

*Explicit.*

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## SIR THOPAS.

Here biginneth Chaucers Tale of Thopas.

LISTETH, lordes, in good entent,  
And I wol telle verrayment  
Of mirthe and of solas;  
Al of a knyght was fair and gent<sup>1905</sup>  
In bataille and in tourneyment,  
His name was sir Thopas.  
Y-born he was in fer contree,  
In Flaundres, al biyonde the see,  
At Popering, in the place;<sup>1910</sup>  
His fader was a man ful free,<sup>(10)</sup>  
And lord he was of that contree,  
As it was goddes grace.  
Sir Thopas wex a doghty swayn,  
Whyt was his face as payndemayn,<sup>1915</sup>  
His lippes rede as rose;  
His rode is lyk scarlet in grayn,  
And I yow telle in good certayn,  
He hadde a semely nose.  
His heer, his berd was lyk saffroun,<sup>1920</sup>  
That to his girdel raughte adoun;<sup>(20)</sup>  
His shoon of Cordewane.  
Of Brugges were his hosen broun,  
His robe was of ciclatoun,  
That coste many a Iane.<sup>1925</sup>  
He coude hunte at wilde deer,  
And ryde an hauking for riveer,  
With grey goshawk on honde;  
Ther-to he was a good archeer,  
Of wrastling was ther noon his peer,<sup>1930</sup>  
Ther any ram shal stonde.<sup>(30)</sup>  
Ful many a mayde, bright in bour,  
They moorne for him, paramour,  
Whan hem were bet to slepe;  
But he was chast and no lechour,<sup>1935</sup>  
And sweet as is the bremble-flour  
That bereth the rede hepe.  
And so bifel up-on a day,  
For sothe, as I yow telle may,  
Sir Thopas wolde out ryde;<sup>1940</sup>  
He worth upon his stede gray,<sup>(40)</sup>  
And in his honde a launcegay,  
A long swerd by his syde.

He priketh thurgh a fair forest,  
Ther-inne is many a wilde best,1945  
Ye, bothe bukke and hare;  
And, as he priketh north and est,  
I telle it yow, him hadde almost  
Bitid a sory care.  
Ther springen herbes grete and smale,1950  
The lycorys and cetewale,(50)  
And many a clowe-gilofre;  
And notemuge to putte in ale,  
Whether it be moyste or stale,  
Or for to leye in cofre.1955  
The briddes singe, it is no nay,  
The sparhawk and the papeiay,  
That loye it was to here;  
The thrustelcok made eek his lay,  
The wodedowve upon the spray1960  
She sang ful loude and clere.(60)  
Sir Thopas fil in love-longinge  
Al whan he herde the thrustel singe,  
And priked as he were wood:  
His faire stede in his prikinge1965  
So swatte that men mighte him wringe,  
His sydes were al blood.  
Sir Thopas eek so wery was  
For prikinge on the softe gras,  
So fiers was his corage,1970  
That down he leyde him in that plas(70)  
To make his stede som solas,  
And yaf him good forage.  
'O seinte Marie, *benedicite!*  
What eyleth this love at me1975  
To binde me so sore?  
Me dremed al this night, pardee,  
An elf-queen shal my lemman be,  
And slepe under my gore.  
An elf-queen wol I love, y-wis,1980  
For in this world no womman is(80)  
Worthy to be my make  
In toune;  
Alle othere wommen I forsake,  
And to an elf-queen I me take1985  
By dale and eek by doune!'  
In-to his sadel he clamb anoon,  
And priketh over style and stoon  
An elf-queen for tespye,  
Til he so longe had riden and goon1990  
That he fond, in a privee woon,(90)

[T. 13722

[T. 13722

[T. 13723

The contree of Fairye  
So wilde; [T. 13731  
For in that contree was ther noon  
That to him dorste ryde or goon,1995 [T. 13734  
Neither wyf ne childe.  
Til that ther cam a greet geaunt,  
His name was sir Olifaunt,  
A perilous man of dede;  
He seyde, ‘child, by Termagaunt,2000  
But-if thou prike out of myn haunt,(100)  
Anon I slee thy stede  
With mace. [T. 13743  
Heer is the queen of Fayerye,  
With harpe and pype and [T. 13743  
simphonye2005  
Dwelling in this place.’  
The child seyde, ‘al-so mote I thee,  
Tomorwe wol I mete thee  
Whan I have myn armoure;  
And yet I hope, *par ma fay*,2010  
That thou shalt with this launcegay(110)  
Abyen it ful soure;  
Thy mawe [T. 13752  
Shal I percen, if I may,  
Er it be fully pryme of day,2015 [T. 13752  
For heer thou shalt be slawe.’  
Sir Thopas drow abak ful faste;  
This geaunt at him stones caste  
Out of a fel staf-slinge;  
But faire escapeth child Thopas,2020  
And al it was thurgh goddes gras,(120)  
And thurgh his fair beringe.  
Yet listeth, lordes, to my tale  
Merier than the nightingale,  
For now I wol yow rounne2025  
How sir Thopas with sydes smale,  
Priking over hil and dale,  
Is come agayn to tounne.  
His merie men comanded he  
To make him bothe game and glee,2030  
For nedes moste he fighte(130)  
With a geaunt with hevedes three,  
For paramour and Iolitee  
Of oon that shoon ful brighte.  
‘Do come,’ he seyde, ‘my minstrales,2035  
And gestours, for to tellen tales  
Anon in myn arminge;  
Of romances that been royales,

Of popes and of cardinales,  
And eek of love-lykinge.'2040  
They fette him first the swete wyn,(140)  
And mede eek in a maselyn,  
And royal spicerye;  
Of gingebreed that was ful fyn,  
And lycorys, and eek comyn,2045  
With sugre that is so trye.  
He dide next his whyte lere  
Of clooth of lake fyn and clere  
A breech and eek a sherte;  
And next his sherte an aketoun,2050  
And over that an habergeoun(150)  
For percinge of his herte;  
And over that a fyn hauberk,  
Was al y-wroght of lewes werk,  
Ful strong it was of plate;2055  
And over that his cote-armour  
As whyt as is a lily-flour,  
In which he wol debate.  
His sheeld was al of gold so reed,  
And ther-in was a bores heed,2060  
A charbocle bisyde;(160)  
And there he swoor, on ale and breed,  
How that 'the geaunt shal be deed,  
Bityde what bityde!'  
His lambeux were of quirboilly,2065  
His swerdes shethe of yvory,  
His helm of laton bright;  
His sadel was of rewel-boon,  
His brydel as the sonne shoon,  
Or as the mone light.2070  
His spere was of fyn ciprees,(170)  
That bodeth werre, and no-thing pees,  
The heed ful sharpe y-grounde;  
His stede was al dappel-gray,  
It gooth an ambel in the way2075  
Ful softly and rounde  
In londe.  
Lo, lordes myne, heer is a fit!  
If ye wol any more of it,  
To telle it wol I fonde.2080

[T. 13815]

[T. 13815]

[*The Second Fit.*]

Now hold your mouth, *par charitee*,(180)  
Bothe knight and lady free,  
And herkneth to my spelle;

Of bataille and of chivalry,  
And of ladyes love-drury2085  
Anon I wol yow telle.  
Men speke of romances of prys,  
Of Horn child and of Ypotys,  
Of Bevis and sir Gy,  
Of sir Libeux and Pleyn-damour;2090  
But sir Thopas, he bereth the flour(190)  
Of royal chivalry.  
His gode stede al he bistrood,  
And forth upon his wey he glood  
As sparkle out of the bronde;2095  
Up-on his crest he bar a tour,  
And ther-in stiked a lily-flour,  
God shilde his cors fro shonde!  
And for he was a knight auntrous,  
He nolde slepen in non hous,2100  
But liggen in his hode;(200)  
His brighte helm was his wonger,  
And by him baiteth his dextrer  
Of herbes fyne and gode.  
Him-self drank water of the wel,2105  
As did the knight sir Percivel,  
So worthy under wede,  
Til on a day—(207)

Here the Host stinteth Chaucer of his Tale of Thopas.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

PROLOGUE TO MELIBEUS.  
(T. 13847-13875.)

‘NO more of this, for goddes dignitee,’  
Quod oure hoste, ‘for thou makest me<sup>2110</sup>  
So wery of thy verray lewednesse  
That, also wisly god my soule blesse,  
Myn eres aken of thy drasty speche;  
Now swiche a rym the devel I biteche!  
This may wel be rym dogerel,’ quod he.<sup>2115</sup>  
‘Why so?’ quod I, ‘why wiltow lette me  
More of my tale than another man,  
Sin that it is the beste rym I can?’<sup>(10)</sup>  
‘By god,’ quod he, ‘for pleyedly, at a word,  
Thy drasty ryming is nat worth a tord;<sup>2120</sup>  
Thou doost nought elles but despendest tyme,  
Sir, at o word, thou shalt no lenger ryme.  
Lat see wher thou canst tellen aught in geste,  
Or telle in prose somewhat at the leste  
In which ther be som mirthe or som doctryne.’<sup>2125</sup>  
‘Gladly,’ quod I, ‘by goddes swete pyne,  
I wol yow telle a litel thing in prose,  
That oghte lyken yow, as I suppose,<sup>(20)</sup>  
Or elles, certes, ye been to daungerous.  
It is a moral tale vertuous,<sup>2130</sup>  
Al be it told som-tyme in sondry wyse  
Of sondry folk, as I shal yow devyse.  
As thus; ye woot that every evangelist,  
That telleth us the peyne of Iesu Crist,  
Ne saith nat al thing as his felaw dooth,<sup>2135</sup>  
But natheles, hir sentence is al sooth,  
And alle acorden as in hir sentence,  
Al be ther in hir telling difference.<sup>(30)</sup>  
For somme of hem seyn more, and somme lesse,  
Whan they his pitous passioun expresse;<sup>2140</sup>  
I mene of Marke, Mathew, Luk and Iohn;  
But doutelees hir sentence is al oon.  
Therfor, lordinges alle, I yow biseche,  
If that ye thinke I varie as in my speche,  
As thus, thogh that I telle som-what more<sup>2145</sup>  
Of proverbes, than ye han herd bifore,  
Comprehended in this litel tretis here,  
To enforce with the theeffect of my matere,<sup>(40)</sup>  
And thogh I nat the same wordes seye  
As ye han herd, yet to yow alle I preye,<sup>2150</sup>



Blameth me nat; for, as in my sentence,  
Ye shul not fynden moche difference  
Fro the sentence of this tretis lyte  
After the which this mery tale I wryte.  
And therfor herkneþ what that I shal seye, 2155  
And lat me tellen al my tale, I preyen.' (48)

*Explicit.*

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## THE TALE OF MELIBEUS.

Here biginneth Chaucers Tale of Melibee.

§ 1. A yong man called Melibeus, mighty and riche, bigat up-on his wyf that called was Prudence, a doghter which that called was Sophie./

§ 2. Upon a day bifel, that he for his desport is went in-to the feeldes him to pleye. / His wyf and eek his doghter hath he left inwith his hous, of which the dores weren fast y-shette. / Thre of his olde foos han it espyed, and setten laddres to the walles of his hous, and by the windowes been entred, / and betten his wyf,2160 and wounded his doghter with fyve mortal woundes in fyve sondry places; / this is to seyn, in hir feet, in hir handes, in hir eres, in hir nose, and in hir mouth; and leften hir for deed, and wenten away. /

§ 3. Whan Melibeus retourned was in-to his hous, and saugh al this meschief, he, lyk a mad man, rendinge his clothes, gan to wepe and crye. /

§ 4. Prudence his wyf, as ferforth as she dorste, bisoghte him of his weping for to stinte;/ but nat for-thy he gan to crye and wepen ever lenger the more. /2165

§ 5. This noble wyf Prudence remembered hir upon the sentence of Ovide, in his book that cleped is The Remedie of Love, wher-as he seith;/ ‘he is a fool that destourbeth the moder to wepen in the deeth of hir child, til she have wept hir fille, as for a certein tyme;/ and thanne shal man doon his diligence with amiable wordes hir to reconforte, and preyen hir of hir weping for to stinte.’/ For which resoun this noble wyf Prudence suffred hir housbond for to wepe and crye as for a certein space; / and whan she saugh hir tyme, she seyde him in this wyse. ‘Allas, my lord,’ quod she, ‘why make ye your-self for to be lyk a fool?/ For2170 sothe, it aperteneth nat to a wys man, to maken swiche a sorwe./ Your doghter, with the grace of god, shal warisshe and escape. / And al were it so that she right now were deed, ye ne oghte nat as for hir deeth your-self to destroye. / Senek seith: “the wise man shal nat take to greet discomfort for the deeth of his children, / but certes he sholde suffren it in pacience, as wel as he2175 abyde the deeth of his owene propre persone.”’ /

§ 6. This Melibeus answerde anon and seyde, ‘What man,’ quod he, ‘sholde of his weping stinte, that hath so greet a cause for to wepe? / Iesu Crist, our lord, him-self wepte for the deeth of Lazarus his freend.’/ Prudence answerde, ‘Certes, wel I woot, attempree weping is no-thing defended to him that sorweful is, amonges folk in sorwe, but it is rather graunted him to wepe. / The Apostle Paul un-to the Romayns wryteth, “man shal reioyse with hem that maken Ioye, and wepen with swich folk as wepen.”’/ But thogh attempree weping be y-graunted, outrageous weping2180 certes is defended. / Measure

of weping sholde be considered, after the lore that techeth us Senek./ “Whan that thy freend is deed,” quod he, “lat nat thyne eyen to moyste been of teres, ne to mucche drye; although the teres come to thyne eyen, lat hem nat falle.” / And whan thou hast for-goon thy freend, do diligence to gete another freend; and this is more wysdom than for to wepe for thy freend which that thou hast lorn; for ther-inne is no bote./ And therefore, if ye governe yow by sapience, put away sorwe out of your herte./ Remembre yow that Iesus Syrak seith: “a man that is Ioyous and glad in herte, it him conserveth florissing in<sup>2185</sup> his age; but soothly sorweful herte maketh his bones drye.” / He seith eek thus: “that sorwe in herte sleeth ful many a man.”/ Salomon seith: “that, right as motthes in the shepes flees anoyeth to the clothes, and the smale wormes to the tree, right so anoyeth sorwe to the herte.” / Wherfore us oghte, as wel in the deeth of our children as in the losse of our goodes temporels, have pacience. /

§ 7. Remembre yow up-on the pacient Iob, whan he hadde lost his children and his temporel substance, and in his body endured and receyved ful many a grevous tribulacioun; yet seyde he thus: / “our lord hath yeven it me, our lord hath biraft it me; right as our lord hath wold, right so it is doon; blessed be the name of our lord.” ’ / To this foreseide thinges answerde<sup>2190</sup> Melibeus un-to his wyf Prudence: ‘Alle thy wordes,’ quod he, ‘been sothe, and ther-to profitable; but trewely myn herte is troubled with this sorwe so grevously, that I noot what to done.’ / ‘Lat calle,’ quod Prudence, ‘thy trewe freendes alle, and thy linage whiche that been wyse; telleth your cas, and herkneth what they seye in conseiling, and yow governe after hir sentence./ Salomon seith: “werk alle thy thinges by conseil, and thou shalt never repente.” ’ /

§ 8. Thanne, by the conseil of his wyf Prudence, this Melibeus leet callen a greet congregacioun of folk; / as surgiens, phisiciens, olde folk and yonge, and somme of hise olde enemys reconciled as by hir semblaunt to his love and in-to his grace; / and therwith-al<sup>2195</sup> ther comen somme of hise neighebores that diden him reverence more for drede than for love, as it happeth ofte. / Ther comen also ful many subtile flatereres, and wyse advocats lerned in the lawe. /

§ 9. And whan this folk togidre assembled weren, this Melibeus in sorweful wyse shewed hem his cas; / and by the manere of his speche it semed that in herte he bar a cruel ire, redy to doon vengeaunce up-on hise foos, and sodeynly desired that the werre sholde biginne; / but natheles yet axed he hir conseil upon this matere. / A surgien, by licence and assent of swiche as<sup>2200</sup> weren wyse, up roos and un-to Melibeus seyde as ye may here. /

§ 10. ‘Sir,’ quod he, ‘as to us surgiens aperteneth, that we do to every wight the beste that we can, wher-as we been with-holde, and to our patients that we do no damage; / wherfore it happeth, many tyme and ofte, that whan twey men han everich wounded other, oon same surgien heleth hem bothe; / wherfore un-to our art it is nat pertinent to norice werre, ne parties to supporte./ But certes, as to the warissinge of your doghter, al-be-it so that

she perilously be wounded, we shullen do so ententif businessse fro day to night, that with the grace of god she shal be hool and 2205 sound as sone as is possible.’/ Almost right in the same wyse the phisiciens answerden, save that they seyden a fewe wordes more:/ ‘That, right as maladyes been cured by hir contraries, right so shul men warisshe werre by vengeaunce.’/ His neighebores, ful of envye, his feyned freendes that semeden reconsiled, and his flatereres, / maden semblant of weping, and empeireden and agreggeden muchel of this matere, in preising greetly Melibee of might, of power, of richesse, and of freendes, despysinge the power of his adversaries, / and seiden outrely that he anon sholde wreken2210 him on his foos and biginne werre./

§ 11. Up roos thanne an advocat that was wys, by leve and by conseil of othere that were wyse, and seyde: / ‘Lordinges, the nede for which we been assembled in this place is a ful hevye thing and an heigh matere, / by-cause of the wrong and of the wikkednesse that hath be doon, and eek by resoun of the grete damages that in tyme cominge been possible to fallen for this same cause; / and eek by resoun of the grete richesse and power of the parties bothe;/ for the whiche resouns it were a ful greet peril to erren in this2215 matere. / Wherefore, Melibeus, this is our sentence: we conseilte yow aboven alle thing, that right anon thou do thy diligence in kepinge of thy propre persone, in swich a wyse that thou ne wante noon espye ne wacche, thy body for to save. / And after that we conseilte, that in thyn hous thou sette suffisant garnisoun, so that they may as wel thy body as thyn hous defende. / But certes, for to moeve werre, or sodeynly for to doon vengeaunce, we may nat demen in so litel tyme that it were profitable. / Wherefore we axen leyser and espace to have deliberacioun in this cas to deme./ For the commune proverbe seith thus: “he that sone demeth,2220 sone shal repente.”/ And eek men seyn that thilke Iuge is wys, that sone understondeth a matere and Iuggeth by leyser. / For al-be-it so that alle taryng be anyoful, algates it is nat to repreve in yevynge of Iugement, ne in vengeaunce-taking, whan it is suffisant and resonable. / And that shewed our lord Iesu Crist by ensample; for whan that the womman that was taken in avoutrie was broght in his presence, to knowen what sholde be doon with hir persone, al-be-it so that he wiste wel him-self what that he wolde answer, yet ne wolde he nat answer sodeynly, but he wolde have deliberacioun, and in the ground he wroot twyes. / And by thise causes we axen deliberacioun, and we shal thanne, by the grace of god, conseilte thee thing that shal be profitable.’/

§ 12. Up stirten thanne the yonge folk at-ones, and the moste partie of that companye han scorned the olde wyse men, and bigonnen to make noyse, and seyden: that, / right so as whyl that2225 iren is hoot, men sholden smyte, right so, men sholde wreken hir wronges whyle that they been fresshe and newe; and with loud voys they cryden, ‘werre! werre!’/

Up roos tho oon of thise olde wyse, and with his hand made contenaunce that men sholde holden hem stille and yeven him audience./ ‘Lordinges,’ quod he, ‘ther is ful many a man that cryeth “werre! werre!” that woot ful litel what

werre amounteth./ Werre at his beginning hath so greet an entree and so large, that every wight may entre whan him lyketh, and lightly finde werre. / But, certes, what ende that shal ther-of bifalle, it is nat light to knowe./ For soothly, whan that werre is<sup>2230</sup> ones bigonne, ther is ful many a child unborn of his moder, that shal sterve yong by-cause of that ilke werre, or elles live in sorwe and dye in wrecchednesse./ And ther-fore, er that any werre biginne, men moste have greet conseil and greet deliberacioun.’/ And whan this olde man wende to enforcen his tale by resons, wel ny alle at-ones bigonne they to ryse for to breken his tale, and beden him ful ofte his wordes for to abregge./ For soothly, he that precheth to hem that listen nat heren his wordes, his sermon hem anoyeth./ For Iesus Syrak seith: that “musik in wepinge is anoyous thing;” this is to seyn: as muche availleth to speken bifore folk to whiche his speche anoyeth, as dooth to singe biforn him that wepeth. / And whan this wyse man saugh that him<sup>2235</sup> wanted audience, al shamefast he sette him doun agayn. / For Salomon seith: “ther-as thou ne mayst have noon audience, enforce thee nat to speke.”/ ‘I see wel,’ quod this wyse man, ‘that the commune proverbe is sooth; that “good conseil wanteth whan it is most nede.” ’ /

§ 13. Yet hadde this Melibeus in his conseil many folk, that prively in his ere conseilled him certeyn thing, and conseilled him the contrarie in general audience./

Whan Melibeus hadde herd that the gretteste partie of his conseil weren accorded that he sholde maken werre, anon he<sup>2240</sup> consented to hir conseilling, and fully affermed hir sentence./ Thanne dame Prudence, whan that she saugh how that hir housbonde shoop him for to wreken him on his foos, and to biginne werre, she in ful humble wyse, when she saugh hir tyme, seide him these wordes: / ‘My lord,’ quod she, ‘I yow biseche as hertely as I dar and can, ne haste yow nat to faste, and for alle guerdons as yeveth me audience. / For Piers Alfonse seith: “who-so that dooth to that other good or harm, haste thee nat to quytten it; for in this wyse thy freend wol abyde, and thyn enemy shal the lenger live in drede.”/ The proverbe seith: “he hasteth wel that wysely can abyde;” and in wikked haste is no profit.’/

§ 14. This Melibee answerde un-to his wyf Prudence: ‘I purpose nat,’ quod he, ‘to werke by thy conseil, for many causes and resouns. For certes every wight wolde holde me thanne a<sup>2245</sup> fool; / this is to seyn, if I, for thy conseilling, wolde chaungen thinges that been ordeyned and affermed by so manye wyse./ Secoundly I seye, that alle wommen been wikke and noon good of hem alle. For “of a thousand men,” seith Salomon, “I fond a good man: but certes, of alle wommen, good womman fond I never.” / And also certes, if I governed me by thy conseil, it sholde seme that I hadde yeve to thee over me the maistrie; and god forbede that it so were. / For Iesus Syrak seith; “that if the wyf have maistrie, she is contrarious to hir housbonde.”/ And Salomon seith: “never in thy lyf, to thy wyf, ne to thy child, ne to thy freend, ne yeve no power over thy-self. For bettre it were that thy children aske of thy persone thinges that hem nedeth,<sup>2250</sup> than thou see thy-self in the handes of

thy children.” / And also, if I wolde werke by thy conseilling, certes my conseilling moste som tyme be secrete, til it were tyme that it moste be knowe; and this ne may nocht be. / [For it is writen, that “the langlerie of wommen can hyden thinges that they witen nocht.” / Furthermore, the philosophre seith, “in wikked conseil wommen venquisshe men;” and for thise resouns I ne owe nat usen thy conseil.’] /

§ 15. Whanne dame Prudence, ful debonairly and with greet pacience, hadde herd al that hir housbonde lyked for to seye, thanne axed she of him licence for to speke, and seyde in this wyse./ ‘My lord,’ quod she, ‘as to your firste resoun, certes it may lightly been answered. For I seye, that it is no folie to chaunge conseil whan the thing is chaunged; or elles whan the thing semeth otherweyes than it was biforn./ And more-over I2255 seye, that though ye han sworn and bihight to perfourne your emprise, and natheles ye weyve to perfourne thilke same emprise by Iuste cause, men sholde nat seyn therefore that ye were a lyer ne forsworn./ For the book seith, that “the wyse man maketh no lesing whan he turneth his corage to the bettre.”/ And al-be-it so that your emprise be establised and ordeyned by greet multitude of folk, yet thar ye nat accomplice thilke same ordinaunce but yow lyke. / For the trouthe of thinges and the profit been rather founden in fewe folk that been wyse and ful of resoun, than by greet multitude of folk, ther every man cryeth and clatereth what that him lyketh. Soothly swich multitude is nat honeste./ As to the seconde resoun, where-as ye seyn that “alle wommen been wikke,” save your grace, certes ye despysen alle wommen in this wyse; and “he that alle despyseth alle displeseth,” as seith the book. / And Senek seith that “who-so wole have sapience, shal2260 no man dispreise; but he shal gladly techen the science that he can, with-outen presumpcioun or pryde. / And swiche thinges as he nought ne can, he shal nat been ashamed to lerne hem and enquire of lasse folk than him-self.”/ And sir, that ther hath been many a good womman, may lightly be preved./ For certes, sir, our lord Iesu Crist wolde never have descended to be born of a womman, if alle wommen hadden ben wikke./ And after that, for the grete bountee that is in wommen, our lord Iesu Crist, whan he was risen fro deeth to lyve, appeered rather to a womman than to his apostles./ And though that Salomon seith, that “he2265 ne fond never womman good,” it folweth nat therfore that alle wommen ben wikke. / For though that he ne fond no good womman, certes, ful many another man hath founden many a womman ful good and trewe. / Or elles per-aventure the entente of Salomon was this; that, as in sovereyn bountee, he fond no womman;/ this is to seyn, that ther is no wight that hath sovereyn bountee save god allone; as he him-self recordeth in his Evaungelie./ For ther nis no creature so good that him ne2270 wanteth somewhat of the perfeccioun of god, that is his maker./ Your thridde resoun is this: ye seyn that “if ye governe yow by my conseil, it sholde seme that ye hadde yeve me the maistrie and the lordshipe over your persone.” / Sir, save your grace, it is nat so. For if it were so, that no man sholde be conseilled but only of hem that hadden lordshipe and maistrie of his persone, men wolden nat be conseilled so ofte./ For soothly, thilke man that asketh conseil of a purpos, yet hath he free chois, wheither he wole werke by that conseil or noon. / And as to your fourthe

resoun, ther ye seyn that “the Ianglerie of wommen hath hid thinges that they woot noght,” as who seith, that “a womman can nat hyde that she woot;”/ sir, these wordes been understonde of 2275 wommen that been Iangleresses and wikked;/ of whiche wommen, men seyn that “three thinges dryven a man out of his hous; that is to seyn, smoke, dropping of reyn, and wikked wyves;” / and of swiche wommen seith Salomon, that “it were bettre dwelle in desert, than with a womman that is riotous.”/ And sir, by your leve, that am nat I;/ for ye han ful ofte assayed my grete silence and my gret pacience; and eek how wel that I can hyde and hele thinges that men oghte secreely to hyde./ And soothly, as to your fifthe resoun, wher-as ye seyn, that “in wikked conseil wommen venquisshe men;” god woot, thilke resoun stant here 2280 in no stede. / For understond now, ye asken conseil to do wikkednesse;/ and if ye wole werken wikkednesse, and your wyf restreyneth thilke wikked purpos, and overcometh yow by resoun and by good conseil;/ certes, your wyf oghte rather to be preised than y-blamed./ Thus sholde ye understonde the philosophre that seith, “in wikked conseil wommen venquissen hir housbondes.”/ And ther-as ye blamen alle wommen and hir resouns, I shal shewe yow by manye ensamples that many a womman hath ben ful good, and yet been; and hir conseils ful 2285 hoolsome and profitable./ Eek som men han seyde, that “the conseillinge of wommen is outhere to dere, or elles to litel of prys.”/ But al-be-it so, that ful many a womman is badde, and hir conseil vile and noght worth, yet han men founde ful many a good womman, and ful discrete and wise in conseillinge./ Lo, Iacob, by good conseil of his moder Rebekka, wan the benisoun of Ysaak his fader, and the lordshipe over alle his bretheren./ Iudith, by hir good conseil, delivered the citee of Bethulie, in which she dwelled, out of the handes of Olofernus, that hadde it biseged and wolde have al destroyed it./ Abigail delivered Nabal hir housbonde fro David the king, that wolde have slayn him, and apayed the ire of the king by hir wit and by hir good conseillinge./ Hester by hir good conseil enhaunced greetly the 2290 peple of god in the regne of Assuerus the king. / And the same bountee in good conseillinge of many a good womman may men telle./ And moreover, whan our lord hadde creat Adam our forme-fader, he seyde in this wyse:/ “it is nat good to been a man allone; make we to him an help semblable to himself.”/ Here may ye se that, if that wommen were nat goode, and hir conseils goode and profitable,/ our lord god of hevne wolde 2295 never han wrought hem, ne called hem help of man, but rather confusioun of man./ And ther seyde ones a clerk in two vers: “what is bettre than gold? Iaspre. What is bettre than Iaspre? Wisdom. / And what is bettre than wisdom? Womman. And what is bettre than a good womman? No-thing.” / And sir, by manye of othre resons may ye seen, that manye wommen been goode, and hir conseils goode and profitable./ And therefore sir, if ye wol triste to my conseil, I shal restore yow your doghter hool and sound./ And eek I wol do to yow so muche, that ye 2300 shul have honour in this cause.’/

§ 16. Whan Melibee hadde herd the wordes of his wyf Prudence, he seyde thus:/ ‘I se wel that the word of Salomon is sooth; he seith, that “wordes that been spoken discreetly by ordinaunce, been honycombes; for they even swetnesse to the soule, and hoolsomnesse to the body.”/ And wyf, by-cause

of thy swete wordes, and eek for I have assayed and preved thy grete sapience and thy grete trouthe, I wol governe me by thy conseil in alle thing.’/

§ 17. ‘Now sir,’ quod dame Prudence, ‘and sin ye vouche-sauf to been governed by my conseil, I wol enforme yow how ye<sup>2305</sup> shul governe your-self in chesinge of your conseilours./ Ye shul first, in alle your werkes, mekely biseken to the heighe god that he wol be your conseilour;/ and shapeth yow to swich entente, that he yeve yow conseil and confort, as taughte Thobie his sone./ “At alle tymes thou shalt blesse god, and praye him to dresse thy weyes”; and looke that alle thy conseils been in him for evermore./ Seint Iame eek seith: “if any of yow have nede of sapience, axe it of god.”/ And afterward thanne shul ye taken conseil in your-self, and examine wel your thoghtes, of swich thing as yow<sup>2310</sup> thinketh that is best for your profit. / And thanne shul ye dryve fro your herte three things that been contrariouse to good conseil, / that is to seyn, ire, covetise, and hastifnesse./

§ 18. First, he that axeth conseil of him-self, certes he moste been with-outen ire, for manye causes./ The firste is this: he that hath greet ire and wratthe in him-self, he weneth alwey that he may do thing that he may nat do./ And secoundely, he that is irous<sup>2315</sup> and wroth, he ne may nat wel deme; / and he that may nat wel deme, may nat wel conseilie./ The thridde is this; that “he that is irous and wrooth,” as seith Senek, “ne may nat speke but he blame thinges;” / and with his viciouse wordes he stireth other folk to angre and to ire./ And eek sir, ye moste dryve covetise out of your herte./ For the apostle seith, that “covetise is rote<sup>2320</sup> of alle harmes.”/ And trust wel that a covetous man ne can nocht deme ne thinke, but only to fulfille the ende of his covetise;/ and certes, that ne may never been accompliced; for ever the more habundaunce that he hath of richesse, the more he desyreth./ And sir, ye moste also dryve out of your herte hastifnesse; for certes, / ye ne may nat deme for the beste a sodeyn thought that falleth in youre herte, but ye moste avyse yow on it ful ofte./ For as ye herde biforn, the commune proverbe is this, that “he that<sup>2325</sup> sone demeth, sone repenteth.”/

§ 19. Sir, ye ne be nat alwey in lyke disposicioun; / for certes, som thing that somtyme semeth to yow that it is good for to do, another tyme it semeth to yow the contrarie./

§ 20. Whan ye han taken conseil in your-self, and han demed by good deliberacion swich thing as you semeth best, / thanne rede I yow, that ye kepe it secree./ Biwrey nat your conseil to no persone, but-if so be that ye wenen sikerly that, thurgh your biwreying, your condicioun shal be to yow the more profitable./ For Iesus<sup>2330</sup> Syrak seith: “neither to thy foo ne to thy freend discovere nat thy secree ne thy folie;/ for they wol yeve yow audience and loking and supportacioun in thy presence, and scorne thee in thyn absence.” / Another clerk seith, that “scarsly shaltou finden any persone that may kepe conseil secreely.” / The book seith: “whyl that thou kepest thy conseil in thyn herte, thou kepest it in thy prisoun:/ and whan thou biwreyest thy conseil to



any wight, he holdeth thee in his snare.”/ And therefore yow is bettre to hyde<sup>2335</sup> your conseil in your herte, than praye him, to whom ye han biwreyed your conseil, that he wole kepen it cloos and stille. / For Seneca seith: “if so be that thou ne mayst nat thyn owene conseil hyde, how darstou prayen any other wight thy conseil secreely to kepe?” / But nathelees, if thou wene sikerly that the biwreying of thy conseil to a persone wol make thy condicioun to stonden in the bettre plyt, thanne shaltou tellen him thy conseil in this wyse./ First, thou shalt make no semblant whether thee were lever pees or werre, or this or that, ne shewe him nat thy wille and thyn entente; / for trust wel, that comunly thise conseillours been flatereres, / namely the conseillours of grete lordes; / for they enforcen<sup>2340</sup> hem alwey rather to speken plesante wordes, enclyninge to the lordes lust, than wordes that been trewe or profitable./ And therefore men seyn, that “the riche man hath seld good conseil but-if he have it of him-self.” / And after that, thou shalt considere thy freendes and thyne enemys./ And as touchinge thy freendes, thou shalt considere whiche of hem been most feithful and most wyse, and eldest and most approved in conseilling. / And<sup>2345</sup> of hem shalt thou aske thy conseil, as the caas requireth./

§ 21. I seye that first ye shul clepe to your conseil your freendes that been trewe./ For Salomon seith: that “right as the herte of a man delyteth in savour that is sote, right so the conseil of trewe freendes yeveth swetenesse to the soule.”/ He seith also: “ther may no-thing be lykned to the trewe freend.”/ For certes, gold ne silver beth nat so muche worth as the gode wil of a trewe freend./<sup>2350</sup> And eek he seith, that “a trewe freend is a strong deffense; who-so that it findeth, certes he findeth a greet tresour.”/ Thanne shul ye eek considere, if that your trewe freendes been discrete and wyse. For the book seith: “axe alwey thy conseil of hem that been wyse.”/ And by this same resoun shul ye clepen to your conseil, of your freendes that been of age, swiche as han seyn and been expert in manye thinges, and been approved in conseillinges./ For the book seith, that “in olde men is the sapience and in longe tyme the prudence.”/ And Tullius seith: that “grete thinges ne been nat ay accompliced by strengthe, ne by delivernesse of body, but by good conseil, by auctoritee of persones, and by science; the whiche three thinges ne been nat feble by age, but<sup>2355</sup> certes they enforcen and encreesen day by day.” / And thanne shul ye kepe this for a general reule. First shul ye clepen to your conseil a fewe of your freendes that been especiale;/ for Salomon seith: “manye freendes have thou; but among a thousand chese thee oon to be thy conseillour.”/ For al-be-it so that thou first ne telle thy conseil but to a fewe, thou mayst afterward telle it to mo folk, if it be nede./ But loke alwey that thy conseillours have thilke three condiciouns that I have seyde bifore; that is to seyn, that they be trewe, wyse, and of old experience./ And werke nat alwey in every nede by oon counseillour allone; for somtyme bihoveth it<sup>2360</sup> to been conseilled by manye./ For Salomon seith: “salvacoun of thinges is wher-as ther been manye conseillours.”/

§ 22. Now sith that I have told yow of which folk ye sholde been counseilled, now wol I teche yow which conseil ye oghte to eschewe. / First ye shul

eschewe the conseilling of foles; for Salomon seith: “taak no conseil of a fool, for he ne can noght conseil but after his owene lust and his affeccioun.”/ The book seith: that “the propretee of a fool is this; he troweth lightly harm of every wight, and lightly troweth alle bountee in him-self.”/ Thou shalt eek eschewe the conseilling of alle flatereres, swiche as enforcen hem rather to preise your persone<sup>2365</sup> by flaterye than for to telle yow the sothfastnesse of thinges. /

§ 23. ‘Wherfore Tullius seith: “amonges alle the pestilences that been in freendshipe, the gretteste is flaterye.” And therefore is it more nede that thou eschewe and drede flatereres than any other peple./ The book seith: “thou shalt rather drede and flee fro the swete wordes of flateringe preiseres, than fro the egre wordes of thy freend that seith thee thy sothes.”/ Salomon seith, that “the wordes of a flaterere is a snare to cacche with innocents.” / He seith also, that “he that speketh to his freend wordes of swetnesse and of plesaunce, setteth a net biforn his feet to cacche him.”/ And therefore seith Tullius: “encline nat thyne eres to flatereres, ne taketh no conseil of wordes of flaterye.” / And<sup>2370</sup> Caton seith: “avyse thee wel, and eschewe the wordes of swetnesse and of plesaunce.”/ And eek thou shalt eschewe the conseilling of thyne olde enemys that been reconciled./ The book seith: that “no wight retourneth sauflly in-to the grace of his olde enemy.”/ And Isope seith: “ne trust nat to hem to whiche thou hast had som-tyme werre or enmitee, ne telle hem nat thy conseil.” / And Seneca telleth the cause why. “It may nat be,” seith he, “that, where greet fyr hath longe tyme endured, that ther ne dwelleth som vapour of warmnesse.”/ And therefore seith<sup>2375</sup> Salomon: “in thyn olde foo trust never.”/ For sikerly, though thyn enemy be reconciled and maketh thee chere of humilitee, and louteth to thee with his heed, ne trust him never. / For certes, he maketh thilke feyned humilitee more for his profit than for any love of thy persone; by-cause that he demeth to have victorie over thy persone by swich feyned contenance, the which victorie he mighte nat have by stryf or werre. / And Peter Alfonse seith: “make no felawshipe with thyne olde enemys; for if thou do hem bountee, they wol perverten it in-to wikkednesse.”/ And eek thou most eschewe the conseilling of hem that been thy servants, and beren thee greet reverence; for peraventure they seyn it more for drede than for love. / And<sup>2380</sup> therefore seith a philosophre in this wyse: “ther is no wight parfitly trewe to him that he to sore dredeth.”/ And Tullius seith: “ther nis no might so greet of any emperour, that longe may endure, but-if he have more love of the peple than drede.” / Thou shalt also eschewe the conseilling of folk that been dronkelewe; for they ne can no conseil hyde. / For Salomon seith: “ther is no privetee ther-as regneth dronkenesse.”/ Ye shul also han in suspect the conseilling of swich folk as conseilte yow a thing prively, and conseilte yow the contrarie openly./ For<sup>2385</sup> Cassidorie seith: that “it is a maner sleighte to hindre, whan he sheweth to doon a thing openly and werketh prively the contrarie.”/ Thou shalt also have in suspect the conseilling of wikked folk. For the book seith: “the conseilling of wikked folk is alwey ful of fraude.”/ And David seith: “blisful is that man that hath nat folwed the conseilling of shrewes.” / Thou shalt also eschewe the conseilling of yong folk; for hir conseil is nat rype./

§ 24. Now sir, sith I have shewed yow of which folk ye shul<sup>2390</sup> take your conseil, and of which folk ye shul folwe the conseil,/ now wol I teche yow how ye shal examine your conseil, after the doctrine of Tullius./ In the examinenge thanne of your conseillour, ye shul considere manye thinges./ Alderfirst thou shalt considere, that in thilke thing that thou purposest, and upon what thing thou wolt have conseil, that verray trouthe be seyde and conserved; this is to seyn, telle trewely thy tale./ For he that seith fals may nat wel be counselled, in that cas of which he lyeth./ And after this, thou shalt considere the thinges that acorden to that thou purposest for to do by thy conseillours, if resoun<sup>2395</sup> accorde therto;/ and eek, if thy might may atteine ther-to; and if the more part and the bettre part of thy conseillours acorde ther-to, or no. / Thanne shaltou considere what thing shal folwe of that conseil; as hate, pees, werre, grace, profit, or damage; and manye othere thinges. / And in alle these thinges thou shalt chese the beste, and weyve alle othere thinges. / Thanne shaltou considere of what rote is engendred the matere of thy conseil, and what fruit it may conceyve and engendre. / Thou shalt eek considere alle these causes, fro whennes they<sup>2400</sup> been sprongen./ And whan ye han examined your conseil as I have seyde, and which partie is the bettre and more profitable, and hast approved it by manye wyse folk and olde;/ thanne shaltou considere, if thou mayst parfourne it and maken of it a good ende./ For certes, resoun wol nat that any man sholde biginne a thing, but-if he mighte parfourne it as him oghte./ Ne no wight sholde take up-on hym so hevy a charge that he mighte nat bere it./ For the proverbe seith: “he that to muche<sup>2405</sup> embraceth, distreyneth litel.”/ And Catoun seith: “assay to do swich thing as thou hast power to doon, lest that the charge oppresse thee so sore, that thee bihoveth to weyve thing that thou hast bigonne.” / And if so be that thou be in doute, whether thou mayst parfourne a thing or noon, chese rather to suffre than biginne./ And Piers Alphonse seith: “if thou hast might to doon a thing of which thou most repente thee, it is bettre ‘nay’ than ‘ye’;”/ this is to seyn, that thee is bettre holde thy tonge stille, than for to speke./ Thanne may ye understonde by strengere resons, that if thou hast power to parfourne a werk of which thou shalt repente, thanne is it bettre that thou suffre than biginne. / Wel seyn they, that defenden every wight to assaye<sup>2410</sup> any thing of which he is in doute, whether he may parfourne it or no./ And after, whan ye han examined your conseil as I have seyde bifore, and knowen wel that ye may parfourne youre emprise, conferme it thanne sadly til it be at an ende. /

§ 25. Now is it resoun and tyme that I shewe yow, whanne, and wherfore, that ye may chaunge your conseil with-outen your repreve./ Soothly, a man may chaungen his purpos and his conseil if the cause cesseth, or whan a newe caas bitydeth. / For the lawe seith: that “upon thinges that newly bityden bihoveth newe conseil.”/ And Senek seith: “if thy conseil is comen to<sup>2415</sup> the eres of thyn enemy, chaunge thy conseil.” / Thou mayst also chaunge thy conseil if so be that thou finde that, by errour or by other cause, harm or damage may bityde. / Also, if thy conseil be dishonest, or elles cometh of dishoneste cause, chaunge thy conseil./ For the lawes seyn: that “alle bihestes that been

dishoneste been of no value.’/ And eek, if it so be that it be impossible, or may nat goodly be parfourned or kept. /2420

§ 26. And take this for a general reule, that every conseil that is affermed so strongly that it may nat be chaunged, for no condicioun that may bityde, I seye that thilke conseil is wikked.’/

§ 27. This Melibeus, whanne he hadde herd the doctrine of his wyf dame Prudence, answerde in this wyse. / ‘Dame,’ quod he, ‘as yet in-to this tyme ye han wel and covenably taught me as in general, how I shal governe me in the chesinge and in the withholdinge of my conseilours./ But now wolde I fayn that ye wolde condescende in especial,/ and telle me how lyketh yow, or what semeth yow, by our conseilours that we han chosen in<sup>2425</sup> our present nede.’/

§ 28. ‘My lord,’ quod she, ‘I biseke yow in al humblesse, that ye wol nat wilfully replye agayn my resouns, ne distempre your herte thogh I speke thing that yow displese./ For god wot that, as in myn entente, I speke it for your beste, for your honour and for your profite eke./ And soothly, I hope that your benigntee wol taken it in pacience. / Trusteth me wel,’ quod she, ‘that your conseil as in this caas ne sholde nat, as to speke properly, be called a conseilour, but a mocion or a moevyng of folye;/<sup>2430</sup> in which conseil ye han erred in many a sondry wyse./

§ 29. First and forward, ye han erred in thassemblinge of your conseilours./ For ye sholde first have cleped a fewe folk to your conseil, and after ye mighte han shewed it to mo folk, if it hadde been nede./ But certes, ye han sodeynly cleped to your conseil a greet multitude of peple, ful chargeant and ful anoyous for to here./ Also ye han erred, for there-as ye sholden only have cleped to your conseil your trewe freendes olde and wyse,/ ye han y-cleped straunge folk, and yong folk, false flatereres, and enemys reconsiled, and folk that doon yow reverence withouten<sup>2435</sup> love./ And eek also ye have erred, for ye han broght with yow to your conseil ire, covetise, and hastifnesse;/ the whiche three thinges been contrariouse to every conseil honeste and profitable;/ the whiche three thinges ye han nat anientissed or destroyed hem, neither in your-self ne in your conseilours, as yow oghte. / Ye han erred also, for ye han shewed to your conseilours your talent, and your affeccioun to make werre anon and for to do vengeance;/ they han espyed by your wordes to what thing ye<sup>2440</sup> been enclyned./ And therefore han they rather conseilled yow to your talent than to your profit./ Ye han erred also, for it semeth that yow suffyseth to han been conseilled by thise conseilours only, and with litel avys; / wher-as, in so greet and so heigh a nede, it hadde been necessarie mo conseilours, and more deliberacioun to parfourne your emprise./ Ye han erred also, for ye han nat examined your conseil in the forseide manere, ne in due manere as the caas requireth./ Ye han erred also, for ye han maked no divisoun bitwixe your conseilours; this is to seyn, bitwixen your trewe freendes and your feyned conseilours; /<sup>2445</sup> ne ye han nat knowe the wil of your trewe freendes olde and wyse;/ but ye han cast alle hir wordes in an

hohepot, and enclyned your herte to the more part and to the gretter nombre; and ther been ye condescended. / And sith ye wot wel that men shal alwey finde a gretter nombre of foles than of wyse men,/ and therefore the conseil that been at congregaciouns and multitudes of folk, ther-as men take more reward to the nombre than to the sapience of persones,/ ye see wel that in swiche conseilinges foles han the maistrie.’ / Melibeus answerde agayn, and seyde:2450 ‘I graunte wel that I have erred;/ but ther-as thou hast told me heer-biforn, that he nis nat to blame that chaungeth hise conseilours in certain caas, and for certeine Iuste causes,/ I am al redy to chaunge my conseilours, right as thow wolt devyse./ The proverbe seith: that “for to do sinne is mannish, but certes for to persevere longe in sinne is werk of the devel.” ’ /

§ 30. To this sentence answerde anon dame Prudence, and seyde: / ‘Examineth,’ quod she, ‘your conseil, and lat us see2455 the whiche of hem han spoken most resonably, and taught yow best conseil. / And for-as-muche as that the examinacioun is necessarie, lat us biginne at the surgiens and at the phisiciens, that first speken in this matere. / I sey yow, that the surgiens and phisiciens han seyd yow in your conseil discreetly, as hem oughte;/ and in hir speche seyden ful wysly, that to the office of hem aperteneth to doon to every wight honour and profit, and no wight for to anoye; / and, after hir craft, to doon greet diligence un-to the cure of hem whiche that they han in hir governaunce. /2460 And sir, right as they han answered wysly and discreetly,/ right so rede I that they been heighly and sovereynly guerdoned for hir noble speche; / and eek for they sholde do the more ententif businesse in the curacioun of your doghter dere./ For al-be-it so that they been your freendes, therefore shal ye nat suffren that they serve yow for noght;/ but ye oghte the rather guerdone hem and shewe hem your largesse. / And as touchinge the proposicioun2465 which that the phisiciens entreteden in this caas, this is to seyn, / that, in maladyes, that oon contrarie is warissed by another contrarie, / I wolde fayn knowe how ye understonde thilke text, and what is your sentence.’ / ‘Certes,’ quod Melibeus, ‘I understonde it in this wyse:/ that, right as they han doon me a2470 contrarie, right so sholde I doon hem another./ For right as they han venged hem on me and doon me wrong, right so shal I venge me upon hem and doon hem wrong;/ and thanne have I cured oon contrarie by another.’ /

§ 31. ‘Lo, lo!’ quod dame Prudence, ‘how lightly is every man enclyned to his owene desyr and to his owene plesaunce! / Certes,’ quod she, ‘the wordes of the phisiciens ne sholde nat han been understonden in this wyse./ For certes, wikkednesse is nat contrarie to wikkednesse, ne vengeaunce to vengeaunce, ne2475 wrong to wrong; but they been semblable./ And therefore, o vengeaunce is nat warissed by another vengeaunce, ne o wrong by another wrong;/ but everich of hem encreesceth and aggreggeth other./ But certes, the wordes of the phisiciens sholde been understonden in this wyse:/ for good and wikkednesse been two contraries, and pees and werre, vengeaunce and suffraunce, discord and accord, and manye othere thinges./ But certes, wikkednesse shal be warissed by goodnesse, discord by2480 accord, werre

by pees, and so forth of othere thinges./ And heer-to accordeth Seint Paul the apostle in manye places./ He seith: “ne yeldeth nat harm for harm, ne wikked speche for wikked speche;/ but do wel to him that dooth thee harm, and blesse him that seith to thee harm.”/ And in manye othere places he amonesteth pees and accord./ But now wol I speke to yow of the conseil which that was yeven to yow by the men of<sup>2485</sup> lawe and the wyse folk,/ that seyden alle by oon accord as ye han herd bifore;/ that, over alle thynges, ye sholde doon your diligence to kepen your persone and to warnestore your hous. / And seyden also, that in this caas ye oghten for to werken ful avysely and with greet deliberacioun./ And sir, as to the firste point, that toucheth to the keping of your persone;/ ye shul understonde that he that hath werre shal evermore mekely and<sup>2490</sup> devoutly preyen biforn alle thinges, / that Iesus Crist of his grete mercy wol han him in his proteccioun, and been his sovereyn helping at his nede. / For certes, in this world ther is no wight that may be conseilled ne kept suffisantly withouten the keping of our lord Iesu Crist. / To this sentence accordeth the prophete David, that seith:/ “if god ne kepe the citee, in ydel waketh he that it kepeth.”/ Now sir, thanne shul ye committe the keping of your persone to your trewe freendes that been approved and y-knowe; / and of hem shul ye axen help your persone for to kepe.<sup>2495</sup> For Catoun seith: “if thou hast nede of help, axe it of thy freendes;/ for ther nis noon so good a phisicien as thy trewe freend.”/ And after this, thanne shul ye kepe yow fro alle straunge folk, and fro lyeres, and have alwey in suspect hir companye./ For Piers Alfonse seith: “ne tak no companye by the weye of a straunge man, but-if so be that thou have knowe him of a lenger tyme. / And if so be that he falle in-to thy companye paraventure withouten thyn assent, / enquere thanne, as subtilly as<sup>2500</sup> thou mayst, of his conversacioun and of his lyf bifore, and feyne thy wey; seye that thou goost thider as thou wolt nat go;/ and if he bereth a spere, hold thee on the right syde, and if he bere a swerd, hold thee on the lift syde.” / And after this, thanne shul ye kepe yow wysely from alle swich manere peple as I have seyde bifore, and hem and hir conseil eschewe./ And after this, thanne shul ye kepe yow in swich manere,/ that for any presumpcioun of your strengthe, that ye ne dispyse nat ne acounte nat the might of your adversarie so litel, that ye lete the keping of your persone for your presumpcioun;/ for every wys man dredeth<sup>2505</sup> his enemy./ And Salomon seith: “weleful is he that of alle hath drede;/ for certes, he that thurgh the hardinesse of his herte and thurgh the hardinesse of him-self hath to greet presumpcioun, him shal yvel bityde.”/ Thanne shul ye evermore countrewayte embusshements and alle espiaille./ For Senek seith: that “the wyse man that dredeth harmes escheweth harmes; / ne he ne falleth in-to perils, that perils escheweth.”/<sup>2510</sup> And al-be-it so that it seme that thou art in siker place, yet shaltow alwey do thy diligence in kepinge of thy persone;/ this is to seyn, ne be nat negligent to kepe thy persone, nat only fro thy gretteste enemys but fro thy leeste enemy. / Senek seith: “a man that is wel avysed, he dredeth his leste enemy.” / Ovide seith: that “the litel wesele wol slee the grete bole and the wilde<sup>2515</sup> hert.”/ And the book seith: “a litel thorn may prikke a greet king ful sore; and an hound wol holde the wilde boor.” / But nathelees, I sey nat thou shalt be so coward that thou doute ther wher-as is no drede./ The book seith: that “somme folk

han greet lust to deceyve, but yet they dreden hem to be deceyved.”/ Yet shaltou drede to been empoisoned, and kepe yow from the companye of scorneres./ For the book seith: “with scorneres<sup>2520</sup> make no companye, but flee hir wordes as venim.”/

§ 32. Now as to the seconde point, wher-as your wyse conseilours conseilled yow to warnestore your hous with gret diligence,/ I wolde fayn knowe, how that ye understonde thilke wordes, and what is your sentence.’/

§ 33. Melibeus answerde and seyde, ‘Certes I understande it in this wise; that I shal warnestore myn hous with toures, swiche as han castelles and othere manere edifices, and armure and artelleries, / by whiche thinges I may my persone and myn hous so kepen and defenden, that myne enemys shul been in drede myn hous for to approche.’/

§ 34. To this sentence answerde anon Prudence; ‘warnestoring,’ quod she, ‘of heighe toures and of grete edifices apperteneth<sup>2525</sup> som-tyme to pryde; / and eek men make heighe toures and grete edifices with grete costages and with greet travaille; and whan that they been accompliced, yet be they nat worth a stree, but-if they be defended by trewe freendes that been olde and wyse. / And understond wel, that the gretteste and strongeste garnison that a riche man may have, as wel to kepen his persone as hise goodes, is/ that he be biloved amonges his subgets and with hise neighebores./ For thus seith Tullius: that “ther is a maner garnison that no man may venquise ne disconfite, and that is,/<sup>2530</sup> a lord to be biloved of hise citezeins and of his peple.”/

§ 35. Now sir, as to the thridde point; wher-as your olde and wise conseilours seyden, that yow ne oghte nat sodeynly ne hastily proceden in this nede,/ but that yow oghte purveyen and apparillen yow in this caas with greet diligence and greet deliberacioun;/ trewely, I trowe that they seyden right wysly and right sooth./ For Tullius seith, “in every nede, er thou biginne it, apparille thee with greet diligence.”/ Thanne seye I, that in vengeance-taking, in werre, in bataille, and in warnestoring,/ er<sup>2535</sup> thow biginne, I rede that thou apparille thee ther-to, and do it with greet deliberacioun./ For Tullius seith: that “long apparilling biforn the bataille maketh short victorie.” / And Cassidorus seith: “the garnison is stronger whan it is longe tyme avysed.”/

§ 36. But now lat us speken of the conseil that was accorded by your neighebores, swiche as doon yow reverence withouten love,/ your olde enemys reconsiled, your flatereres/ that conseilled<sup>2540</sup> yow certeyne thinges prively, and openly conseilleden yow the contrarie;/ the yonge folk also, that conseilleden yow to venge yow and make werre anon./ And certes, sir, as I have seyde biforn, ye han greetly erred to han cleped swich maner folk to your conseil;/ which conseilours been y-nogh reprieved by the resouns afore-seyd./ But natheles, lat us now descende to the special. Ye shuln first procede after the doctrine of Tullius./<sup>2545</sup> Certes, the trouthe of this matere or of this conseil nedeth nat diligently enquire;/ for it is wel wist whiche they been that

han doon to yow this trespas and vileinye,/ and how manye trespassours, and in what manere they han to yow doon al this wrong and al this vileinye./ And after this, thanne shul ye examine the seconde condicioun, which that the same Tullius addeth in this matere./ For Tullius put a thing, which that he clepeth “consentinge,” this is to seyn;/ who been they and how manye, and<sup>2550</sup> whiche been they, that consenteden to thy conseil, in thy wilfulnesse to doon hastif vengeance. / And lat us considere also who been they, and how manye been they, and whiche been they, that consenteden to your adversaries./ And certes, as to the firste poynt, it is wel knowen whiche folk been they that consenteden to your hastif wilfulnesse;/ for trewely, alle tho that conseilleden yow to maken sodeyn werre ne been nat your freendes./ Lat us now considere whiche been they, that ye holde so greetly your freendes as to your persone./ For al-be-it so that ye be mighty<sup>2555</sup> and riche, certes ye ne been nat but allone./ For certes, ye ne han no child but a doghter;/ ne ye ne han bretheren ne cosins germayns, ne noon other neigh kinrede./ wherfore that your enemys, for drede, sholde stinte to plede with yow or to destroye your persone./ Ye knowen also, that your riches moten been<sup>2560</sup> dispended in diverse parties;/ and whan that every wight hath his part, they ne wollen taken but litel reward to venge thy death./ But thyne enemys been three, and they han manie children, bretheren, cosins, and other ny kinrede;/ and, though so were that thou haddest slayn of hem two or three, yet dwellen ther y-nowe to wreken hir death and to slee thy persone./ And though so be that your kinrede be more siker and stedefast than the kin of your adversarie,/ yet natheles your kinrede nis but a fer<sup>2565</sup> kinrede; they been but litel sib to yow, / and the kin of your enemys been ny sib to hem. And certes, as in that, hir condicioun is bet than youre./ Thanne lat us considere also if the conseilling of hem that conseilleden yow to taken sodeyn vengeance, whether it accorde to resoun?/ And certes, ye knowe wel “nay.”/ For as by right and resoun, ther may no man taken vengeance on no wight, but the Iuge that hath the Iurisdiccoun of it,/ whan it is graunted him to take thilke vengeance, hastily or attemprely,<sup>2570</sup> as the lawe requireth./ And yet moreover, of thilke word that Tullius clepeth “consentinge,”/ thou shalt considere if thy might and thy power may consenten and suffyse to thy wilfulnesse and to thy conseilours./ And certes, thou mayst wel seyn that “nay.”/ For sikerly, as for to speke proprely, we may do no-thing but only swich thing as we may doon rightfully./ And certes, rightfully<sup>2575</sup> ne mowe ye take no vengeance as of your propre auctoritee./ Thanne mowe ye seen, that your power ne consenteth nat ne accordeth nat with your wilfulnesse./ Lat us now examine the thridde point that Tullius clepeth “consequent.”/ Thou shalt understonde that the vengeance that thou purposest for to take is the consequent./ And ther-of folweth another vengeance, peril, and werre; and othere damages with-oute nombre, of whiche we be nat war as at this tyme./ And as touching the<sup>2580</sup> fourthe point, that Tullius clepeth “engendringe,”/ thou shalt considere, that this wrong which that is doon to thee is engendred of the hate of thyne enemys;/ and of the vengeance-takinge upon that wolde engendre another vengeance, and muchel sorwe and wastinge of riches, as I seyde./



§ 37. Now sir, as to the point that Tullius clepeth “causes,” which that is the laste point, / thou shalt understonde that the wrong that thou hast receyved hath certeine causes, / whiche that clerkes clepen *Oriens* and *Efficiens*, and *Causa longinqua* and *Causa propinqua*; this is to seyn, the fer cause and the ny cause./<sup>2585</sup> The fer cause is almighty god, that is cause of alle thinges./ The neer cause is thy three enemys./ The cause accidental was hate./ The cause material been the fyve woundes of thy doghter./ The cause formal is the manere of hir werkinge, that broghten laddres and cloumben in at thy windowes./ The cause final was<sup>2590</sup> for to slee thy doghter; it letted nat in as much as in hem was./ But for to speken of the fer cause, as to what ende they shul come, or what shal finally bityde of hem in this caas, ne can I nat deme but by coniectinge and by supposinge./ For we shul suppose that they shul come to a wikked ende,/ by-cause that the Book of Decrees seith: “selden or with greet peyne been causes y-brought to good ende whanne they been baddely bigonne.” /

§ 38. Now sir, if men wolde axe me, why that god suffred men to do yow this vileinye, certes, I can nat wel answeere as for no sothfastnesse./ For tha postle seith, that “the sciences and<sup>2595</sup> the Iuggementz of our lord god almighty been ful depe;/ ther may no man comprehende ne serchen hem suffisantly.”/ Nathelees, by certeyne presumpcions and coniectinges, I holde and bileve/ that god, which that is ful of Iustice and of rightwisnesse, hath suffred this bityde by Iuste cause resonable./

§ 39. Thy name is Melibee, this is to seyn, “a man that drinketh hony.”/ Thou hast y-dronke so muchel hony of swete<sup>2600</sup> temporel riches and delices and honours of this world, / that thou art dronken; and hast forgotten Iesu Crist thy creatour;/ thou ne hast nat doon to him swich honour and reverence as thee oughte./ Ne thou ne hast nat wel y-taken kepe to the wordes of Ovide, that seith:/ “under the hony of the godes of the body is hid the venim that sleeth the soule.”/ And Salomon seith, “if<sup>2605</sup> thou hast founden hony, ete of it that suffyseth;/ for if thou ete of it out of mesure, thou shalt spewe,” and be neddy and povre./ And peraventure Crist hath thee in despit, and hath turned away fro thee his face and hise eres of misericorde; / and also he hath suffred that thou hast been punisshed in the manere that thow <sup>2610</sup> hast y-trespased./ Thou hast doon sinne agayn our lord Crist;/ for certes, the three enemys of mankinde, that is to seyn, the flessh, the feend, and the world, / thou hast suffred hem entre in-to thyn herte wilfully by the windowes of thy body, / and hast nat defended thy-self suffisantly agayns hir assautes and hir temptaciouns, so that they han wounded thy soule in fyve places;/ this is to seyn, the deedly sinnes that been entred in-to thyn herte by thy fyve wittes./ And in the same manere our lord Crist hath wold and suffred, that thy three enemys been entred<sup>2615</sup> in-to thyn hous by the windowes,/ and han y-wounded thy doghter in the fore-seyde manere.’/

§ 40. ‘Certes,’ quod Melibee, ‘I see wel that ye enforce yow muchel by wordes to overcome me in swich manere, that I shal nat venge me of myne enemys;/ shewinge me the perils and the yveles that mighten falle of this

vengeance./ But who-so wolde considere in alle vengeance the perils and yveles that mighte sewe of vengeance-takinge,/ a man wolde never take vengeance,<sup>2620</sup> and that were harm;/ for by the vengeance-takinge been the wikked men dissevered fro the gode men./ And they that han wil to do wikkednesse restreyne hir wikked purpos, whan they seen the punissinge and chastysinge of the trespassours.’ [And to this answerde dame Prudence: ‘Certes,’ seyde she, ‘I graunte wel that of vengeance cometh muchel yvel and muchel good; / but vengeance-taking aperteneth nat unto everichoon, but only unto Iuges and unto hem that han Iuridiccioun upon the trespassours.] / And yet seye I more, that right as a singular<sup>2625</sup> persone sinneth in takinge vengeance of another man,/ right so sinneth the Iuge if he do no vengeance of hem that it han deserved. / For Senek seith thus: “that maister,” he seith, “is good that proveth shrewes.”/ And as Cassidore seith: “A man dredeth to do outrages, whan he woot and knoweth that it displeth to the Iuges and sovereyns.”/ And another seith: “the Iuge that dredeth to do right, maketh men shrewes.” / And Seint Paule the apostle seith in his epistle, whan he wryteth un-to the<sup>2630</sup> Romayns: that “the Iuges beren nat the spere with-outen cause;”/ but they beren it to punisse the shrewes and misdoeres, and for to defende the gode men. / If ye wol thanne take vengeance of your enemys, ye shul retourne or have your recours to the Iuge that hath the Iuridiccion up-on hem;/ and he shal punisse hem as the lawe axeth and requyreth.’/

§ 41. ‘A!’ quod Melibee, ‘this vengeance lyketh me no-thing./ I bithenke me now and take hede, how fortune hath norissed me fro my childhede, and hath holpen me to passe many a strong pas./ Now wol I assayen hir, trowinge, with goddes help, that she<sup>2635</sup> shal helpe me my shame for to venge.’/

§ 42. ‘Certes,’ quod Prudence, ‘if ye wol werke by my conseil, ye shul nat assaye fortune by no wey;/ ne ye shul nat lene or bowe unto hir, after the word of Senek:/ for “thinges that been folily doon, and that been in hope of fortune, shullen never come to good ende.”/ And as the same Senek seith: “the more cleer and the more shyning that fortune is, the more brotil and the sonner broken she is.”/ Trusteth nat in hir, for she nis nat<sup>2640</sup> stidefast ne stable;/ for whan thou trowest to be most seur or siker of hir help, she wol faille thee and deceyve thee. / And wheras ye seyn that fortune hath norissed yow fro your childhede,/ I seye, that in so muchel shul ye the lasse truste in hir and in hir wit./ For Senek seith: “what man that is norissed by fortune, she maketh him a greet fool.”/ Now thanne, sin ye desyre and<sup>2645</sup> axe vengeance, and the vengeance that is doon after the lawe and bifore the Iuge ne lyketh yow nat, / and the vengeance that is doon in hope of fortune is perilous and uncertein, / thanne have ye noon other remedie but for to have your recours unto the sovereyn Iuge that vengeth alle vileinyes and wronges;/ and he shal venge yow after that him-self witnesseth, wher-as he seith:/ “leveth the vengeance to me, and I shal do it.” ’<sup>2650</sup>

§ 43. Melibee answerde, ‘if I ne venge me nat of the vileinye that men han doon to me, / I sompne or warne hem that han doon to me that vileinye and

alle othere, to do me another vileinye./ For it is writen: “if thou take no vengeance of an old vileinye, thou sompnest thyne adversaries to do thee a newe vileinye.”/ And also, for my suffrance, men wolden do to me so muchel vileinye, that I mighte neither bere it ne sustene;/ and so sholde I been put and holden over lowe./ For men seyn: “in muchel<sup>2655</sup> suffringe shul manye thinges falle un-to thee whiche thou shalt nat mowe suffre.” ’/

§ 44. ‘Certes,’ quod Prudence, ‘I graunte yow that over muchel suffraunce nis nat good;/ but yet ne folweth it nat ther-of, that every persone to whom men doon vileinye take of it vengeance;/ for that aperteneth and longeth al only to the Iuges, for they shul venge the vileinyes and iniuries./ And ther-fore tho two auctoritees that ye han seyde above, been only understonden<sup>2660</sup> in the Iuges;/ for whan they suffren over muchel the wronges and the vileinyes to be doon withouten punisshinge, / they sompne nat a man al only for to do newe wronges, but they comanden it./ Also a wys man seith: that “the Iuge that correcteth nat the sinnere comandeth and biddeth him do sinne.”/ And the Iuges and sovereyns mighten in hir land so muchel suffre of the shrewes and misdoeres, / that they sholden by swich suffrance, by proces of tyme, wexen of swich power and might, that they sholden putte<sup>2665</sup> out the Iuges and the sovereyns from hir places, / and atte laste maken hem lesen hir lordshipes./

§ 45. But lat us now putte, that ye have leve to venge yow./ I seye ye been nat of might and power as now to venge yow./ For if ye wole maken comparisoun un-to the might of your adversaries, ye shul finde in manye thinges, that I have shewed yow er this, that hir condicioun is bettre than youres./ And therefore<sup>2670</sup> seye I, that it is good as now that ye suffre and be pacient./

§ 46. Forther-more, ye knowen wel that, after the comune sawe, “it is a woodnesse a man to stryve with a strenger or a more mighty man than he is him-self;/ and for to stryve with a man of evene strengthe, that is to seyn, with as strong a man as he, it is peril;/ and for to stryve with a weyker man, it is folie.”/ And therefore sholde a man flee stryvinge as muchel as he mighte./ For Salomon seith: “it is a greet worship to a man to kepen<sup>2675</sup> him fro noyse and stryf.”/ And if it so bifalle or happe that a man of gretter might and strengthe than thou art do thee grevaunce, / studie and bisie thee rather to stille the same grevaunce, than for to venge thee./ For Senek seith: that “he putteth him in greet peril that stryveth with a gretter man than he is him-self.”/ And Catoun seith: “if a man of hyer estaat or degree, or more mighty than thou, do thee anoy or grevaunce, suffre him;/ for he that ones hath greved thee may another tyme releve thee and<sup>2680</sup> helpe.” / Yet sette I caas, ye have bothe might and licence for to venge yow./ I seye, that ther be ful manye thinges that shul restreyne yow of vengeance-takinge, / and make yow for to enclyne to suffre, and for to han pacience in the thinges that han been doon to yow./ First and foreward, if ye wole considere the defautes that been in your owene persone, / for whiche defautes god hath suffred yow have this tribulacioun, as I have seyde yow heer-biforn./ For the poete seith, that “we oghte patiently taken<sup>2685</sup> the tribulacions that comen to us, whan we thinken

and consideren that we han deserved to have hem.” / And Seint Gregorie seith: that “whan a man considereth wel the nombre of hise defautes and of his sinnes,/ the peynes and the tribulaciouns that he suffreth semen the lesse un-to hym;/ and in-as-muche as him thinketh hise sinnes more hevy and grevous, / in-so-muche semeth his peyne the lighter and the esier un-to him.”/ Also ye owen<sup>2690</sup> to encline and bowe your herte to take the pacience of our lord Iesu Crist, as seith seint Peter in hise epistles:/ “Iesu Crist,” he seith, “hath suffred for us, and yeven ensample to every man to folwe and sewe him;/ for he dide never sinne, ne never cam ther a vileinous word out of his mouth: / whan men cursed him, he cursed hem noght; and whan men betten him, he manaced hem noght.”/ Also the grete pacience, which the seintes that been in paradys han had in tribulaciouns that they han y-suffred, with-outen hir desert or gilt,/ oghte muchel stiren yow to pacience./<sup>2695</sup> Forthermore, ye sholde enforce yow to have pacience, / consideringe that the tribulaciouns of this world but litel whyle endure, and sone passed been and goon. / And the Ioye that a man seketh to have by pacience in tribulaciouns is perdurable, after that the apostle seith in his epistle:/ “the Ioye of god,” he seith, “is perdurable,” that is to seyn, everlastinge./ Also troweth and<sup>2700</sup> bileveth stedefastly, that he nis nat wel y-norissed ne wel y-taught, that can nat have pacience or wol nat receyve pacience./ For Salomon seith: that “the doctrine and the wit of a man is knowen by pacience.”/ And in another place he seith: that “he that is pacient governeth him by greet prudence.”/ And the same Salomon seith: “the angry and wrathful man maketh noyses, and the pacient man atempreth hem and stilleth.”/ He seith also: “it is more worth to be pacient than for to be right strong;/ and he that<sup>2705</sup> may have the lordshipe of his owene herte is more to preyse, than he that by his force or strengthe taketh grete citees.”/ And therefore seith seint Iame in his epistle: that “pacience is a greet vertu of perfeccioun.” ’/

§ 47. ‘Certes,’ quod Melibee, ‘I graunte yow, dame Prudence, that pacience is a greet vertu of perfeccioun;/ but every man may nat have the perfeccioun that ye seken;/ ne I nam nat of<sup>2710</sup> the nombre of right parfite men, / for myn herte may never been in pees un-to the tyme it be venged./ And al-be-it so that it was greet peril to myne enemys, to do me a vileinye in takinge vengeance up-on me, / yet token they noon hede of the peril, but fulfilleden hir wikked wil and hir corage./ And therefore, me thinketh men oghten nat repreve me, though I putte me in a litel peril for to venge me, / and though I do a greet excesse, that is to seyn,<sup>2715</sup> that I venge oon outrage by another.’/

§ 48. ‘A!’ quod dame Prudence, ‘ye seyn your wil and as yow lyketh; / but in no caas of the world a man sholde nat doon outrage ne excesse for to vengen him./ For Cassidore seith: that “as yvel doth he that vengeth him by outrage, as he that doth the outrage.”/ And therefore ye shul venge yow after the ordre of right, that is to seyn by the lawe, and noght by excesse ne by outrage./ And also, if ye wol venge yow of the outrage of your<sup>2720</sup> adversaries in other maner than right comandeth, ye sinnen;/ and therefore seith Senek: that “a man shal never vengen shrewednesse by shrewednesse.”/ And if ye seye, that right axeth a man to defenden violence by violence, and fighting by fighting./

certes ye seye sooth, whan the defense is doon anon with-outen intervalle or with-outen taryng or delay, / for to defenden him and nat for to vengen him. / And it bihoveth that a man putte swich<sup>2725</sup> attemperance in his defence, / that men have no cause ne matere to repreven him that defendeth him of excesse and outrage; for elles were it agayn resoun. / Pardee, ye knowen wel, that ye maken no defence as now for to defende yow, but for to venge yow; / and so seweth it that ye han no wil to do your dede attemprely. / And therefore, me thinketh that pacience is good. For Salomon seith: that “he that is nat pacient shal have greet harm.” ’/

§ 49. ‘Certes,’ quod Melibee, ‘I graunte yow, that whan a man is inpacient and wroth, of that that toucheth him noght and that aperteneth nat un-to him, though it harme him, it is no wonder./ For the lawe seith: that “he is coupable that entremetteth<sup>2730</sup> or medleth with swich thyng as aperteneth nat un-to him.”/ And Salomon seith: that “he that entremetteth him of the noyse or stryf of another man, is lyk to him that taketh an hound by the eres.”/ For right as he that taketh a straunge hound by the eres is outhewhyle biten with the hound, / right in the same wyse is it resoun that he have harm, that by his inpacience medleth him of the noyse of another man, wher-as it aperteneth nat un-to him./ But ye knowen wel that this dede, that is to seyn, my grief and my disese, toucheth me right ny./ And therefore, though<sup>2735</sup> I be wroth and inpacient, it is no merveille./ And savinge your grace, I can nat seen that it mighte greetly harme me though I toke vengeance; / for I am richer and more mighty than myne enemys been./ And wel knowen ye, that by moneye and by haveinge grete possessions been all the thinges of this world governed./ And Salomon seith: that “alle thinges obeyen to moneye.” ’/2740

§ 50. Whan Prudence hadde herd hir housbonde avanten him of his richesse and of his moneye, dispreisinge the power of hise adversaries, she spak, and seyde in this wyse:/ ‘certes, dere sir, I graunte yow that ye been rich and mighty, / and that the richesces been goode to hem that han wel y-geten hem and wel conne usen hem./ For right as the body of a man may nat liven with-oute the soule, namore may it live with-outen temporel goodes. / And by richesces may a man gete him grete freendes. /2745 And therefore seith Pamphilles: “if a net-herdes doghter,” seith he, “be riche, she may chesen of a thousand men which she wol take to hir housbonde; / for, of a thousand men, oon wol nat forsaken hir ne refusen hir.”/ And this Pamphilles seith also: “if thou be right happy, that is to seyn, if thou be right riche, thou shalt find a greet nombre of felawes and freendes./ And if thy fortune change that thou wexe povre, farewell freendshipe and felaweshipe;/ for thou shalt be allone with-outen any companye, but-if it be the companye of povre folk.” / And yet seith this<sup>2750</sup> Pamphilles moreover: that “they that been thralle and bonde of linage shullen been maad worthy and noble by the richesces.”/ And right so as by richesces ther comen manye goodes, right so by poverté come ther manye harmes and yveles./ For greet poverté constreyneth a man to do manye yveles./ And therefore clepeth Cassidore poverté “the moder of ruine,” / that is to seyn,<sup>2755</sup> the moder of overthrowinge or fallinge down./ And therefore seith Piers Alfonc: “oon of the gretteste adversitees of this world is / whan a free

man, by kinde or by burthe, is constreyned by poverté to eten the almesse of his enemy.”/ And the same seith Innocent in oon of hise bokes; he seith: that “sorweful and mishappy is the condicioun of a povre begger;/ for if he axe nat his mete, he dyeth for hunger;/ and if he axe, he dyeth<sup>2760</sup> for shame; and algates necessitee constreyneth him to axe.”/ And therfore seith Salomon: that “bet it is to dye than for to have swich poverté.”/ And as the same Salomon seith: “bette it is to dye of bitter deeth than for to liven in swich wyse.”/ By this resons that I have seid un-to yow, and by manye othere resons that I coude seye, / I graunte yow that riches been goode to hem that geten hem wel, and to hem that wel usen tho riches./ And therfore wol I shewe yow how ye shul have yow, and how ye shul bere yow in gaderinge of riches, and in<sup>2765</sup> what manere ye shul usen hem./

§ 51. First, ye shul geten hem with-outen greet desyr, by good leysur sokingly, and nat over hastily. / For a man that is to desyringe to gete riches abaundoneth him first to thefté and to alle other yveles./ And therfore seith Salomon: “he that hasteth him to bisily to wexe riche shal be noon innocent.”/ He seith also: that “the riches that hastily cometh to a man, sone and lightly gooth and passeth fro a man;/ but that riches that<sup>2770</sup> cometh litel and litel wexeth alwey and multiplyeth.”/ And sir, ye shul geten riches by your wit and by your travaille un-to your profit;/ and that withouten wrong or harm-doinge to any other persone./ For the lawe seith: that “ther maketh no man himselven riche, if he do harm to another wight;”/ this is to seyn, that nature defendeth and forbedeth by right, that no man make him-self riche un-to the harm of another persone./ And Tullius seith: that “no sorwe ne no drede of deeth, ne no-thing<sup>2775</sup> that may falle un-to a man / is so muchel agayns nature, as a man to encressen his owene profit to the harm of another man./ And though the grete men and the mighty men geten riches more lightly than thou, / yet shaltou nat been ydel ne slow to do thy profit; for thou shalt in alle wyse flee ydelnesse.”/ For Salomon seith: that “ydelnesse techeth a man to do manye yveles.”/ And the same Salomon seith: that “he that travailleth and bisieth him to tilien his land, shal eten breed;/ but he that is<sup>2780</sup> ydel and casteth him to no businesse ne occupacioun, shal falle in-to poverté, and dye for hunger.”/ And he that is ydel and slow can never finde covenable tyme for to doon his profit / For ther is a versifiour seith: that “the ydel man excuseth hym in winter, by cause of the grete cold; and in somer, by enchesoun of the hete.”/ For these causes seith Caton: “waketh and enclyneth nat yow over muchel for to slepe; for over muchel reste norisseth and causeth manye vices.”/ And therfore seith seint Ierome: “doth somme gode dedes, that the devel which is our enemy ne finde yow nat unoccupied.” / For the devel ne taketh<sup>2785</sup> nat lightly un-to his werkinge swiche as he findeth occupied in gode werkes.”/

§ 52. Thanne thus, in getinge riches, ye mosten flee ydelnesse./ And afterward, ye shul use the riches, whiche ye have geten by your wit and by your travaille, / in swich a manere, that men holde nat yow to scars, ne to sparinge, ne to fool-large, that is to seyn, over-large a spender./ For right as men blamen an avaricious man by-cause of his scarsetee and chincherye, / in

the<sup>2790</sup> same wyse is he to blame that spendeth over largely./ And therefore seith Caton: “use,” he seith, “thy riches that thou hast gotten / in swich a manere, that men have no matere ne cause to calle thee neither wrecche ne chinche;/ for it is a greet shame to a man to have a povere herte and a riche purs.”/ He seith also: “the goodes that thou hast y-geten, use hem by mesure,” that is to seyn, spende hem mesurably;/ for they that<sup>2795</sup> folily wasten and despenden the goodes that they han,/ whan they han namore propre of hir owene, they shapen hem to take the goodes of another man./ I seye thanne, that ye shul fleen avarice;/ usinge your riches in swich manere, that men seye nat that your riches been y-buried, / but that ye have hem in <sup>2800</sup> your might and in your weeldinge./ For a wys man repreveth the avaricious man, and seith thus, in two vers:/ “wherto and why burieth a man hise goodes by his grete avarice, and knoweth wel that nedes moste he dye;/ for deeth is the ende of every man as in this present lyf.”/ And for what cause or enchesoun Ioyneþ he him or knitteth he him so faste un-to hise goodes,/ that alle his wittes mowen nat disseveren him or departen him<sup>2805</sup> from hise goodes;/ and knoweth wel, or oghte knowe, that whan he is deed, he shal nothing bere with him out of this world./ And therfore seith seint Augustin: that “the avaricious man is likned un-to helle;/ that the more it swelweth, the more desyr it hath to swelwe and devoure.”/ And as wel as ye wolde eschewe to be called an avaricious man or chinche,/ as wel sholde ye kepe yow and governe yow in swich a wyse that men<sup>2810</sup> calle yow nat fool-large./ Therfore seith Tullius: “the goodes,” he seith, “of thyn hous ne sholde nat been hid, ne kept so cloos but that they mighte been opened by pitee and debonairetee;”/ that is to seyn, to yeven part to hem that han greet nede;/ “ne thy goodes shullen nat been so opene, to been every mannes goodes.”/ Afterward, in getinge of your riches and in usinge hem, ye shul alwey have three thinges in your herte;/ that is to<sup>2815</sup> seyn, our lord god, conscience, and good name./ First, ye shul have god in your herte;/ and for no riches ye shullen do nothing, which may in any manere displese god, that is your creatour and maker./ For after the word of Salomon: “it is bettre to have a litel good with the love of god, / than to have muchel good and tresour, and lese the love of his lord god.”/ And the prophete seith: that “bettre it is to been a good man and have<sup>2820</sup> litel good and tresour,/ than to been holden a shrewe and have grete riches.”/ And yet seye I ferthermore, that ye sholde alwey doon your businesse to gete yow riches,/ so that ye gete hem with good conscience./ And thapostle seith: that “ther nis thing in this world, of which we sholden have so greet Ioye as whan our conscience bereth us good wnesse.”/ And the wyse man seith: “the substance of a man is ful good, whan sinne is<sup>2825</sup> nat in mannes conscience.”/ Afterward, in getinge of your riches, and in usinge of hem,/ yow moste have greet businesse and greet diligence, that your goode name be alwey kept and conserved./ For Salomon seith: that “bettre it is and more it availleth a man to have a good name, than for to have grete riches.”/ And therefore he seith in another place: “do greet diligence,” seith Salomon, “in keping of thy freend and of thy gode name;/ for it shal lenger abide with thee than any tresour, be it never so precious.”/ And certes he sholde nat be called a gentil man,<sup>2830</sup> that after god and good conscience, alle thinges left, ne dooth his diligence and businesse to kepen his good name./ And Cassidore

seith: that “it is signe of a gentil herte, whan a man loveth and desyareth to han a good name.”/ And therefore seith seint Augustin: that “ther been two thinges that arn necessarie and nedefulle,/ and that is good conscience and good loos;/ that is to seyn, good conscience to thyn owene persone inward, and good loos for thy neighebore outward.”/ And he that trusteth him so<sup>2835</sup> muchel in his gode conscience,/ that he displeth and setteth at noght his gode name or loos, and rekketh noght though he kepe nat his gode name, nis but a cruel cherl. /

§ 53. Sire, now have I shewed yow how ye shul do in getinge riches, and how ye shullen usen hem;/ and I se wel, that for the trust that ye han in youre riches, ye wole moeve werre and bataille./ I conseil yow, that ye biginne no werre in trust of your riches; for they ne suffysen noght werres to mayntene.<sup>2840</sup> And therefore seith a philosophre: “that man that desyareth and wole algates han werre, shal never have suffisaunce;/ for the richer that he is, the gretter despenses moste he make, if he wole have worship and victorie.”/ And Salomon seith: that “the gretter riches that a man hath, the mo despendours he hath.”/ And dere sire, al-be-it so that for your riches ye mowe have muchel folk,/ yet bihoveth it nat, ne it is nat good, to biginne werre, where-as ye mowe in other manere have pees, un-to your worship and profit./ For the victories of batailles that been in<sup>2845</sup> this world, Iyen nat in greet nombre or multitude of the peple ne in the vertu of man;/ but it lyth in the wil and in the hand of our lord god almighty./ And therefore Iudas Machabeus, which was goddes knight, / whan he sholde fighte agayn his adversarie that hadde a greet nombre, and a gretter multitude of folk and strenger than was this peple of Machabee, / yet he reconforted his litel companye, and seyde right in this wyse:/ “als lightly,” quod<sup>2850</sup> he, “may our lord god almighty yeve victorie to a fewe folk as to many folk;/ for the victorie of bataile cometh nat by the grete nombre of peple, / but it cometh from our lord god of hevene.” / And dere sir, for as muchel as there is no man certein, if he be worthy that god yeve him victorie, [namore than he is certein whether he be worthy of the love of god] or naught, after that Salomon seith, / therefore every man sholde greetly drede werres to<sup>2855</sup> biginne./ And by-cause that in batailles fallen manye perils, / and happeth outhere-while, that as sone is the grete man sleyn as the litel man;/ and, as it is written in the seconde book of Kinges, “the dedes of batailles been aventureuse and nothing certeyne;”/ for as lightly is oon hurt with a spere as another./ And for ther is gret peril in werre, therefore sholde a man flee and eschewe<sup>2860</sup> werre, in as muchel as a man may goodly./ For Salomon seith: “he that loveth peril shal falle in peril.” ’/

§ 54. After that Dame Prudence hadde spoken in this manere, Melibee answerde and seyde, / ‘I see wel, dame Prudence, that by your faire wordes and by your resons that ye han shewed me, that the werre lyketh yow no-thing;/ but I have nat yet herd your conseil, how I shal do in this nede.’/

§ 55. ‘Certes,’ quod she, ‘I conseil yow that ye accorde<sup>2865</sup> with youre adversaries, and that ye haue pees with hem./ For seint Iame seith in hise



epistles: that “by concord and pees the smale richesses wexen grete, / and by debaat and discord the grete richesses fallen doun.”/ And ye knowen wel that oon of the gretteste and most sovereyn thing, that is in this world, is unitee and pees./ And therefore seyde oure lord Iesu Crist to hise apostles in this wyse:/ “wel happy and blessed been they that<sup>2870</sup> loven and purchacen pees; for they been called children of god.” ’/ ‘A!’ quod Melibee, ‘now se I wel that ye loven nat myn honour ne my worshipe. / Ye knowen wel that myne adversaries han bigonnen this debaat and brige by hir outrage;/ and ye see wel that they ne requeren ne preyen me nat of pees, ne they asken nat to be reconciled./ Wol ye thanne that I go and meke me and obeye me to hem, and crye hem mercy?/ For sothe, that were<sup>2875</sup> nat my worship./ For right as men seyn, that “over-greet homlinesse engendreth dispreysinge,” so fareth it by to greet humylitee or mekenesse.’/

§ 56. Thanne bigan dame Prudence to maken semblant of wratthe, and seyde,/ ‘certes, sir, sauf your grace, I love your honour and your profit as I do myn owene, and ever have doon;/ ne ye ne noon other syen never the contrarie./ And yit, if I hadde seyde that ye sholde han purchaced the pees and the reconsiliacioun, I ne hadde nat muchel mistaken me, ne seyde amis./<sup>2880</sup> For the wyse man seith: “the dissensioun biginneth by another man, and the reconsiling bi-ginneth by thy-self.”/ And the prophete seith: “flee shrewednesse and do goodnesse;/ seke pees and folwe it, as muchel as in thee is.”/ Yet seye I nat that ye shul rather pursue to your adversaries for pees than they shuln to yow;/ for I knowe wel that ye been so hard-herted, that ye wol do no-thing for me./ And Salomon seith: “he that hath overhard<sup>2885</sup> an herte, atte laste he shal mishappe and mistyde.” ’/

§ 57. Whanne Melibee hadde herd dame Prudence maken semblant of wratthe, he seyde in this wyse, / ‘dame, I prey yow that ye be nat displeed of thinges that I seye;/ for ye knowe wel that I am angry and wrooth, and that is no wonder;/ and they that been wrothe witen nat wel what they doon, ne what they seyn./<sup>2890</sup> Therefore the prophete seith: that “troubled eyen han no cleer sighte.”/ But seyeth and conseileth me as yow lyketh; for I am redy to do right as ye wol desyre;/ and if ye repreve me of my folye, I am the more holden to love yow and to preyse yow. / For Salomon seith: that “he that repreveth him that doth folye, / he shal finde gretter grace than he that deceyveth him by swete wordes.” ’/<sup>2895</sup>

§ 58. Thanne seide dame Prudence, ‘I make no semblant of wratthe ne anger but for your grete profit./ For Salomon seith: “he is more worth, that repreveth or chydeth a fool for his folye, shewing him semblant of wratthe, / than he that supporteth him and preyseth him in his misdoinge, and laugheth at his folye.” / And this same Salomon seith afterward: that “by the sorweful visage of a man,” that is to seyn, by the sory and hevy countenance of a man, / “the fool correcteth and amendeth him-self.” ’/<sup>2900</sup>

§ 59. Thanne seyde Melibee, ‘I shal nat conne answeere to so manye faire resouns as ye putten to me and shewen./ Seyeth shortly your wil and your conseil, and I am al ready to fulfille and parfournen it.’/

§ 60. Thanne dame Prudence discovered al hir wil to him, and seyde, / ‘I conseilte yow,’ quod she, ‘aboven alle thinges, that ye make pees bitwene god and yow;/ and beth reconsiled un-to him<sup>2905</sup> and to his grace./ For as I have seyde yow heer-biforn, god hath suffred yow to have this tribulacioun and disese for your sinnes./ And if ye do as I sey yow, god wol sende your adversaries un-to yow, / and maken hem fallen at your feet, redy to do your wil and your comandements./ For Salomon seith: “whan the condicioun of man is plesaunt and likinge to god, / he chaungeth the hertes of the mannes adversaries, and constreyneth hem to biseken him<sup>2910</sup> of pees and of grace.”/ And I prey yow, lat me speke with your adversaries in privee place;/ for they shul nat knowe that it be of your wil or your assent./ And thanne, whan I knowe hir wil and hir entente, I may conseilte yow the more seurly.’ /

§ 61. ‘Dame,’ quod Melibee, ‘dooth your wil and your lykinge, /<sup>2915</sup> for I putte me hoolly in your disposicioun and ordinaunce.’/

§ 62. Thanne Dame Prudence, whan she saugh the gode wil of her housbonde, delibered and took avys in hir-self, / thinkinge how she mighte bringe this nede un-to a good conclusioun and to a good ende./ And whan she saugh hir tyme, she sente for these adversaries to come un-to hir in-to a privee place, / and shewed wysly un-to hem the grete goodes that comen of pees, / and the<sup>2920</sup> grete harmes and perils that been in werre;/ and seyde to hem in a goodly manere, how that hem oughte have greet repentaunce of the iniurie and wrong that they hadden doon to Melibee hir lord, and to hir, and to hir doghter. /

§ 63. And whan they herden the goodliche wordes of dame Prudence, / they weren so surprised and ravished, and hadden so greet Ioye of hir, that wonder was to telle. / ‘A! lady!’ quod they, ‘ye han shewed un-to us “the blessinge of swetnesse,” after the<sup>2925</sup> sawe of David the prophete;/ for the reconsilinge which we been nat worthy to have in no manere, / but we oghte requeren it with greet contricioun and humilitee, / ye of your grete goodnesse have presented unto us./ Now see we wel that the science and the conninge of Salomon is ful trewe;/ for he seith: that “swete wordes multiplyen and encresen freendes, and maken shrewes to<sup>2930</sup> be debonaire and meke.”/

§ 64. ‘Certes,’ quod they, ‘we putten our dede and al our matere and cause al hoolly in your goode wil;/ and been redy to obeye to the speche and comandement of my lord Melibee./ And therefore, dere and benigne lady, we preyen yow and biseke yow as mekely as we conne and mowen, / that it lyke un-to your grete goodnesse to fulfillen in dede your goodliche wordes;/ for we consideren and knowlichen that we han offended and greved my lord Melibee out of mesure;/ so ferforth, that we be nat of power<sup>2935</sup> to maken hise amendes./ And therefore we oblige and binden us and our freendes to

doon al his wil and hise comandements./ But peraventure he hath swich hevinesse and swich wratthe to us-ward, by-cause of our offence,/ that he wole enioyne us swich a peyne as we mowe nat bere ne sustene./ And therefore, noble lady, we biseke to your wommanly pitee, / to taken swich avyusement<sup>2940</sup> in this nede, that we, ne our freendes, be nat desherited ne destroyed thurgh our folye.’/

§ 65. ‘Certes,’ quod Prudence, ‘it is an hard thing and right perilous, / that a man putte him al outrely in the arbitracioun and Iuggement, and in the might and power of hise enemys./ For Salomon seith: “leveth me, and yeveth credence to that I shal seyn; I seye,” quod he, “ye peple, folk, and governours of holy chirche,/ to thy sone, to thy wyf, to thy freend, ne to thy brother/<sup>2945</sup> ne yeve thou never might ne maistrie of thy body, whyl thou livest.”/ Now sithen he defendeth, that man shal nat yeven to his brother ne to his freend the might of his body, / by a strengere resoun he defendeth and forbedeth a man to yeven him-self to his enemy./ And natheles I conseilte you, that ye mistruste nat my lord./ For I woot wel and knowe verraily, that he is debonaire and meke, large, curteys, / and nothing desyrous ne covetous of<sup>2950</sup> good ne richesse./ For ther nis no-thing in this world that he desyreth, save only worship and honour./ Forther-more I knowe wel, and am right seur, that he shal no-thing doon in this nede with-uten my conseil./ And I shal so werken in this cause, that, by grace of our lord god, ye shul been reconciled un-to us.’/

§ 66. Thanne seyden they with o vois, ‘worshipful lady, we putten us and our goodes al fully in your wil and disposicioun;/<sup>2955</sup> and been redy to comen, what day that it lyke un-to your noblesse to limite us or assigne us, / for to maken our obligacioun and bond as strong as it lyketh un-to your goodnesse;/ that we mowe fulfille the wille of yow and of my lord Melibee.’/

§ 67. Whan dame Prudence hadde herd the answeres of thise men, she bad hem goon agayn prively;/ and she retourned to hir lord Melibee, and tolde him how she fond hise adversaries<sup>2960</sup> ful repentant,/ knowleching ful lowely hir sinnes and trespas, and how they were redy to suffren al peyne,/ requiringe and preyinge him of mercy and pitee./

§ 68. Thanne seyde Melibee, ‘he is wel worthy to have pardoun and foryifnesse of his sinne, that excuseth nat his sinne,/ but knowlecheth it and repenteth him, axinge indulgence./ For Senek seith: “ther is the remissioun and foryifnesse, whereas<sup>2965</sup> confessioun is;” / for confession is neighebore to innocence./ And he seith in another place: “he that hath shame for his sinne and knowlecheth it, is worthy remissioun.” And therefore I assente and conferme me to have pees;/ but it is good that we do it nat with-uten the assent and wil of our freendes.’ /

§ 69. Thanne was Prudence right glad and loyeful, and seyde,<sup>2970</sup> ‘Certes, sir,’ quod she, ‘ye han wel and goodly answered./ For right as by the conseil, assent, and help of your freendes, ye han been stired to venge yow and maken

werre,/ right so with-uten hir conseil shul ye nat accorden yow, ne have pees with your adversaries./ For the lawe seith: “ther nis no-thing so good by wey of kinde, as a thing to been unbounde by him that it was y-bounde.” ’/

§ 70. And thanne dame Prudence, with-uten delay or taryinge, sente anon hir messages for hir kin, and for hir olde freendes whiche that were trewe and wyse, / and tolde hem by ordre, in the presence of Melibee, al this matere as it is aboven expressed and<sup>2975</sup> declared;/ and preyden hem that they wolde yeven hir avys and conseil, what best were to doon in this nede. / And whan Melibees freendes hadde taken hir avys and deliberacioun of the forseide matere, / and hadden examined it by greet businesse and greet diligence, / they yave ful conseil for to have pees and reste;/ and that Melibee sholde receyve with good herte hise adversaries<sup>2980</sup> to foryifnesse and mercy./

§ 71. And whan dame Prudence hadde herd the assent of hir lord Melibee, and the conseil of hise freendes, / accorde with hir wille and hir entencioun, / she was wonderly glad in hir herte, and seyde:/ ‘ther is an old proverbe,’ quod she, ‘seith: that “the goodnesse that thou mayst do this day, do it;/ and abyde nat ne delaye it nat til to-morwe.”’/ And therefore I conseilte that ye<sup>2985</sup> sende your messages, swiche as been discrete and wyse,/ un-to your adversaries; tellinge hem, on your bihalve,/ that if they wole trete of pees and of accord, / that they shape hem, with-uten delay or tarying, to comen un-to us.’/ Which thing parfourned was in dede./ And whanne these trespassours and repentine<sup>2990</sup> folk of hir folies, that is to seyn, the adversaries of Melibee,/ hadden herd what these messagers seyden un-to hem,/ they weren right glad and Ioyeful, and answereden ful mekely and benignely,/ yeldinge graces and thankinges to hir lord Melibee and to al his companye;/ and shopen hem, with-uten delay, to go with the messagers, and obeye to the comandement of hir lord Melibee./<sup>2995</sup>

§ 72. And right anon they token hir wey to the court of Melibee,/ and token with hem somme of hir trewe freendes, to maken feith for hem and for to been hir borwes./ And whan they were comen to the presence of Melibee, he seyde hem these wordes:/ ‘it standeth thus,’ quod Melibee, ‘and sooth it is, that ye,/ causeless, and with-uten skile and resoun,/<sup>3000</sup> han doon grete iniuries and wronges to me and to my wyf Prudence, and to my doghter also./ For ye han entred in-to myn hous by violence, / and have doon swich outrage, that alle men knowen wel that ye have deserved the deeth; / and therefore wol I knowe and wite of yow, / whether ye wol putte the punissement and the chastysinge and the vengeance of this outrage in the wil of me and of my wyf Prudence; or ye wol nat?’ /<sup>3005</sup>

§ 73. Thanne the wyseste of hem three answerde for hem alle, and seyde:/ ‘sire,’ quod he, ‘we knowen wel, that we been unworthy to comen un-to the court of so greet a lord and so worthy as ye been./ For we han so greetly mistaken us, and han offended and agilt in swich a wyse agayn your heigh lordshipe,/ that trewely we han deserved the deeth. / But yet, for the grete goodnesse and debonairetee that all the world witnesseth of your persone, /

we submitten us to the excellence and benigneitee of your<sup>3010</sup> gracious lordshipe, / and been redy to obeie to alle your comandements;/ bisekinge yow, that of your merciabe pitee ye wol considere our grete repentaunce and lowe submissioun, / and graunten us foryevenesse of our outrageous trespas and offence./ For wel we knowe, that your liberal grace and mercy strecchen hem ferther in-to goodnesse, than doon our outrageouse giltes and<sup>3015</sup> trespas in-to wikkednesse;/ al-be-it that cursedly and dampnably we han agilt agayn your heigh lordshipe.’ /

§ 74. Thanne Melibee took hem up fro the ground ful benignely, / and receyved hir obligaciouns and hir bondes by hir othes up-on hir plegges and borwes, / and assigned hem a certeyn day to retourne un-to his court, / for to accepte and receyve the sentence and Iugement that Melibee wolde comande to be doon<sup>3020</sup> on hem by the causes afore-seyd;/ whiche thinges ordeyned, every man retourned to his hous./

§ 75. And whan that dame Prudence saugh hir tyme, she freyned and axed hir lord Melibee, / what vengeance he thoughte to taken of hise adversaries?/

§ 76. To which Melibee answerde and seyde, ‘certes,’ quod he, ‘I thinke and purpose me fully / to desherite hem of al that ever<sup>3025</sup> they han, and for to putte hem in exil for ever.’/

§ 77. ‘Certes,’ quod dame Prudence, ‘this were a cruel sentence, and muchel agayn resoun. / For ye been riche y-nough, and han no nede of other mennes good;/ and ye mighte lightly in this wyse gete yow a covetous name, / which is a vicious thing, and oghte been eschewed of every good man./ For after the<sup>3030</sup> sawe of the word of the apostle: “coveitise is rote of alle harmes.”/ And therefore, it were bettre for yow to lese so muchel good of your owene, than for to taken of hir good in this manere./ For bettre it is to lesen good with worshipe, than it is to winne good with vileinye and shame. / And every man oghte to doon his diligence and his businesse to geten him a good name./ And yet shal he nat only bisie him in kepinge of his good name, / but he shal also enforchen him alwey to do som-thing by which he may<sup>3035</sup> renouvelle his good name;/ for it is writen, that “the olde good loos or good name of a man is sone goon and passed, whan it is nat newed ne renovelled.” / And as touchinge that ye seyn, ye wole exile your adversaries,/ that thinketh me muchel agayn resoun and out of mesure, / considered the power that they han yeve yow up-on hem-self./ And it is writen, that “he is worthy to lesen his privilege that misuseth the might and the power that is yeven him.”/ And I sette cas ye mighte enioyne hem that payne by<sup>3040</sup> right and by lawe,/ which I trowe ye mowe nat do,/ I seye, ye mighte nat putten it to execucioun per-aventure,/ and thanne were it lykly to retourne to the werre as it was biforn./ And therefore, if ye wole that men do yow obeisance, ye moste demen more curteisly;/ this is to seyn, ye moste yeven more esy<sup>3045</sup> sentences and Iugements./ For it is writen, that “he that most curteisly comandeth, to him men most obeyen.”/ And therefore, I prey yow that in this necessitee and in this nede, ye caste yow to overcome your herte./ For Senek seith: that “he that overcometh his herte,

overcometh twyes.”/ And Tullius seith: “ther is nothing so comendable in a greet lord / as whan he is debonaire and<sup>3050</sup> meke, and appeseth him lightly.” / And I prey yow that ye wole forbere now to do vengeance,/ in swich a manere, that your goode name may be kept and conserved;/ and that men mowe have cause and matere to preyse yow of pitee and of mercy;/ and that ye have no cause to repente yow of thing that ye doon./ For<sup>3055</sup> Senek seith: “he overcometh in an yvel manere, that repenteth him of his victorie.”/ Wherefore I pray yow, lat mercy been in your minde and in your herte, / to theeffect and entente that god almighty have mercy on yow in his laste Iugement./ For seint Iame seith in his epistle: “Iugement withouten mercy shal be doon to him, that hath no mercy of another wight.” ’/

§ 78. Whanne Melibee hadde herd the grete skiles and resouns of dame Prudence, and hir wise informaciouns and techinges,<sup>3060</sup> his herte gan encline to the wil of his wyf, consideringe hir trewe entente;/ and conformed him anon, and assented fully to werken after hir conseil;/ and thonked god, of whom procedeth al vertu and alle goodnesse, that him sente a wyf of so greet discrecioun./ And whan the day cam that hise adversaries sholde apperen in his presence, / he spak unto hem ful goodly, and seyde in this wyse:/ ‘al-be-it so that of your pryde and presumpcioun<sup>3065</sup> and folie, and of your negligence and unconninge,/ ye have misborn yow and trespassed un-to me;/ yet, for as much as I see and biholde your grete humilitee,/ and that ye been sory and repentant of your giltes,/ it constreyneth me to<sup>3070</sup> doon yow grace and mercy./ Therefore I receyve yow to my grace,/ and foryeve yow outrely alle the offences, iniuries, and wronges, that ye have doon agayn me and myne;/ to this effect and to this ende, that god of his endeless mercy / wole at the tyme of our dynginge foryeven us our giltes that we han trespassed to him in this wrecched world./ For douteless, if we be sory and repentant of the sinnes and giltes whiche we han trespassed<sup>3075</sup> in the sighte of our lord god, / he is so free and so merciabile,/ that he wole foryeven us our giltes, / and bringen us to his blisse<sup>3078</sup> that never hath ende. Amen.’ /

Here is ended Chaucers Tale of Melibee and of Dame Prudence.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## THE MONK'S PROLOGUE. (T. 13895-13924.)

The mery wordes of the Host to the Monk.

WHAN ended was my tale of Melibee,  
And of Prudence and hir benignitee,3080  
Our hoste seyde, 'as I am faithful man,  
And by the precious *corpus Madrian*,  
I hadde lever than a barel ale  
That goode lief my wyf hadde herd this tale!  
For she nis no-thing of swich pacience3085  
As was this Melibeus wyf Prudence.  
By goddes bones! whan I bete my knaves,  
She bringth me forth the grete clobbed staves,(10)  
And cryeth, "slee the dogges everichoon,  
And brek hem, bothe bak and every boon."3090  
And if that any neighebor of myne  
Wol nat in chirche to my wyf enclyne,  
Or be so hardy to hir to trespase,  
Whan she comth hoom, she rampeth in my face,  
And cryeth, "false coward, wreak thy wyf,3095  
By *corpus* bones! I wol have thy knyf,  
And thou shalt have my distaf and go spinne!"  
Fro day to night right thus she wol biginne;—(20)  
"Allas!" she seith, "that ever I was shape  
To wedde a milksop or a coward ape,3100  
That wol be overlad with every wight!  
Thou darst nat stonden by thy wyves right!"  
This is my lyf, but-if that I wol fighte;  
And out at dore anon I moot me dighte,  
Or elles I am but lost, but-if that I3105  
Be lyk a wilde leoun fool-hardy.  
I woot wel she wol do me slee som day  
Som neighebor, and thanne go my wey.(30)  
For I am perilous with knyf in honde,  
Al be it that I dar nat hir withstonde,3110  
For she is big in armes, by my feith,  
That shal he finde, that hir misdooth or seith.  
But lat us passe away fro this matere.  
My lord the Monk,' quod he, 'be mery of chere;  
For ye shul telle a tale trewely.3115  
Lo! Rouchestre stant heer faste by!  
Ryd forth, myn owene lord, brek nat our game,  
But, by my trouthe, I knowe nat your name,(40)

Wher shal I calle yow my lord dan Iohn,  
Or dan Thomas, or elles dan Albon?3120  
Of what hous be ye, by your fader kin?  
I vow to god, thou hast a ful fair skin,  
It is a gentil pasture ther thou goost;  
Thou art nat lyk a penaunt or a goost.  
Upon my feith, thou art som officer,3125  
Som worthy sexteyn, or som celerer,  
For by my fader soule, as to my doom,  
Thou art a maister whan thou art at hoom;(50)  
No povre cloisterer , ne no novys,  
But a governour, wyly and wys.3130  
And therwithal of brawnes and of bones  
A wel-faring persone for the nones.  
I pray to god, yeve him confusioun  
That first thee broghte un-to religioun;  
Thou woldest han been a trede-foul aright.3135  
Haddestow as greet a leve, as thou hast might  
To parfourne al thy lust in engendrure,  
Thou haddest bigeten many a creature.(60)  
Alas! why werestow so wyd a cope?  
God yeve me sorwe! but, and I were a pope,3140  
Not only thou, but every mighty man,  
Thogh he were shorn ful hye upon his pan,  
Sholde have a wyf; for al the world is lorn!  
Religioun hath take up al the corn  
Of treding, and we borel men ben shrimpes!3145  
Of feble trees ther comen wrecched impes.  
This maketh that our heires been so sclendre  
And feble, that they may nat wel engendre.(70)  
This maketh that our wyves wol assaye  
Religious folk, for ye may bettre paye3150  
Of Venus payements than mowe we;  
God woot, no lussheburghes payen ye!  
But be nat wrooth, my lord, for that I pleye;  
Ful ofte in game a sooth I have herd seye.’  
This worthy monk took al in pacience,3155  
And seyde, ‘I wol doon al my diligence,  
As fer as souneth in-to honestee,  
To telle yow a tale, or two, or three.(80)  
And if yow list to herkne hiderward,  
I wol yow seyn the lyf of saint Edward;3160  
Or elles first Tragedies wol I telle  
Of whiche I have an hundred in my celle.  
Tragedie is to seyn a certeyn storie,  
As olde bokes maken us memorie,  
Of him that stood in greet prosperitee3165  
And is y-fallen out of heigh degree



Into miserie, and endeth wrecchedly.  
And they ben versifyed comunly(90)  
Of six feet, which men clepe *exametron*.  
In prose eek been endyted many oon,3170  
And eek in metre, in many a sondry wyse.  
Lo! this declaring oughte y-nough suffise.  
Now herkneth, if yow lyketh for to here;  
But first I yow biseke in this matere,  
Though I by ordre telle nat thise thinges,3175  
Be it of popes, emperours, or kinges,  
After hir ages, as men writen finde,  
But telle hem som bifore and som bihinde,(100)  
As it now comth un-to my remembraunce;  
Have me excused of myn ignoraunce.'3180

*Explicit.*

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## THE MONKES TALE.

Here biginneth the Monkes Tale, de Casibus Virorum Illustrium.

I WOL biwayle in maner of Tragedie  
The harm of hem that stode in heigh degree,  
And fillen so that ther nas no remedie  
To bringe hem out of hir adversitee;  
For certein, whan that fortune list to flee,3185  
Ther may no man the cours of hir withholde;  
Lat no man truste on blind prosperitee;  
Be war by thise ensamples trewe and olde.

### Lucifer.

At Lucifer, though he an angel were,  
And nat a man, at him I wol biginne;3190  
For, thogh fortune may non angel dere,(11)  
From heigh degree yet fel he for his sinne  
Doun in-to helle, wher he yet is inne.  
O Lucifer! brightest of angels alle.  
Now artow Sathanas, that maist nat twinne3195  
Out of miserie, in which that thou art falle.

### Adam.

Lo Adam, in the feld of Damassene,  
With goddes owene finger wroght was he,  
And nat bigeten of mannes sperme unclene,  
And welte al Paradys, saving o tree.3200  
Had never worldly man so heigh degree(21)  
As Adam, til he for misgovernaunce  
Was drive out of his hye prosperitee  
To labour, and to helle, and to meschaunce.

### Sampson.

Lo Sampson, which that was annunciat3205  
By thangel, longe er his nativitee,  
And was to god almighty consecrat,  
And stood in noblesse, whyl he mighte see.  
Was never swich another as was he,  
To speke of strengthe, and therwith hardinesse;3210  
But to his wyves tolde he his secree,(31)  
Through which he slow him-self, for wrecchednesse.

Sampson, this noble almighty champioun,  
Withouten wepen save his hondes tweye,  
He slow and al to-rente the leoun,3215  
Toward his wedding walking by the weye.  
His false wyf coude him so plese and preye  
Til she his conseil knew, and she untrew  
Un-to his foos his conseil gan biwreye,  
And him forsook, and took another newe.3220  
Three hundred foxes took Sampson for ire,(41)  
And alle hir tayles he togider bond,  
And sette the foxes tayles alle on fire,  
For he on every tayl had knit a brond;  
And they brende alle the cornes in that lond,3225  
And alle hir oliveres and vynes eek.  
A thousand men he slow eek with his hond,  
And had no wepen but an asses cheek.  
Whan they were slayn, so thursted him that he  
Was wel ny lorn, for which he gan to preye3230  
That god wolde on his peyne han som pitee,(51)  
And sende him drinke, or elles moste he deye;  
And of this asses cheke, that was dreye,  
Out of a wang-tooth sprang anon a welle,  
Of which he drank y-nogh, shortly to seye,3235  
Thus heelp him god, as *Iudicum* can telle.  
By verray force, at Gazan, on a night,  
Maugree Philistiens of that citee,  
The gates of the toun he hath up-plaint,  
And on his bak y-caried hem hath he3240  
Hye on an hille, that men mighte hem see.(61)  
O noble almighty Sampson, leef and dere,  
Had thou nat told to wommen thy secree,  
In al this worlde ne hadde been thy pere!  
This Sampson never sicer drank ne wyn,3245  
Ne on his heed cam rasour noon ne shere,  
By precept of the messenger divyn,  
For alle his strengthes in his heres were;  
And fully twenty winter, yeer by yere,  
He hadde of Israel the governaunce.3250  
But sone shal he wepen many a tere,(71)  
For wommen shal him bringen to meschaunce!  
Un-to his lemman Dalida he tolde  
That in his heres al his strengthe lay,  
And falsly to his fo-men she him solde.3255  
And sleping in hir barme up-on a day  
She made to clippe or shere his heer away,  
And made his fo-men al his craft espyen;  
And whan that they him fonde in this array,  
They bounde him faste, and putten out his yen.3260

But er his heer were clipped or y-shave,(81)  
Ther was no bond with which men might him binde;  
But now is he in prisoun in a cave,  
Wher-as they made him at the querne grinde.  
O noble Sampson, strongest of mankinde,3265  
O whylom Iuge in glorie and in richesse,  
Now maystow wepen with thyn yen blinde,  
Sith thou fro wele art falle in wrecchednesse.  
Thende of this caytif was as I shal seye;  
His fo-men made a feste upon a day,3270  
And made him as hir fool bifore hem pleye,(91)  
And this was in a temple of greet array.  
But atte laste he made a foul affray;  
For he two pilers shook, and made hem falle,  
And doun fil temple and al, and ther it lay,3275  
And slow him-self, and eek his fo-men alle.  
This is to seyn, the princes everichoon,  
And eek three thousand bodies wer ther slayn  
With falling of the grete temple of stoon.  
Of Sampson now wol I na-more seyn.3280  
Beth war by this ensample old and playn(101)  
That no men telle hir conseil til hir wyves  
Of swich thing as they wolde han secree fayn,  
If that it touche hir limmes or hir lyves.

## Hercules.

Of Hercules the sovereyn conquerour3285  
Singen his workes laude and heigh renoun;  
For in his tyme of strengthe he was the flour.  
He slow, and rafte the skin of the leoun;  
He of Centauros leyde the boost adoun;  
He Arpies slow, the cruel briddes felle;3290  
He golden apples rafte of the dragoun;(111)  
He drow out Cerberus, the hound of helle:  
He slow the cruel tyrant Busirus,  
And made his hors to frete him, flesh and boon;  
He slow the firy serpent venomous;3295  
Of Achelois two hornes, he brak oon;  
And he slow Cacus in a cave of stoon;  
He slow the geaunt Antheus the stronge;  
He slow the grisly boor, and that anoon,  
And bar the heven on his nekke longe.3300  
Was never wight, sith that the world bigan,(121)  
That slow so many monstres as dide he.  
Thurgh-out this wyde world his name ran,  
What for his strengthe, and for his heigh bountee,  
And every reame wente he for to see.3305

He was so strong that no man mighte him lette;  
At bothe the worldes endes, seith Trophee,  
In stede of boundes, he a piler sette.  
A lemman hadde this noble champioun,  
That highte Dianira, fresh as May;3310  
And, as thise clerkes maken menciou,(131)  
She hath him sent a sherte fresh and gay.  
Allas! this sherte, allas and weylaway!  
Envenimed was so subtilly with-alle,  
That, er that he had wered it half a day,3315  
It made his flesh al from his bones falle.  
But nathelees somme clerkes hir excusen  
By oon that highte Nessus, that it maked;  
Be as be may, I wol hir noght accusen;  
But on his bak this sherte he wered al naked,3320  
Til that his flesh was for the venim blaked.(141)  
And whan he sey noon other remedye,  
In hote coles he hath him-selven raked,  
For with no venim deyned him to dye.  
Thus starf this worthy mighty Hercules;3325  
Lo, who may truste on fortune any throwe?  
For him that folweth al this world of prees,  
Er he be war, is ofte y-leyd ful lowe.  
Ful wys is he that can him-selven knowe.  
Beth war, for whan that fortune list to glose,3330  
Than wayteth she hir man to overthrowe(151)  
By swich a wey as he wolde leest suppose.

### Nabugodonosor (Nebuchadnezzar).

The mighty trone, the precious tresor,  
The glorious ceptre and royal magestee  
That hadde the king Nabugodonosor,3335  
With tonge unnethe may discryved be.  
He twyes wan Ierusalem the citee;  
The vessel of the temple he with him ladde.  
At Babiloyne was his sovereyn see,  
In which his glorie and his delyt he hadde.3340  
The fairest children of the blood royal(161)  
Of Israel he leet do gelde anoon,  
And maked ech of hem to been his thral.  
Amonges othere Daniel was oon,  
That was the wysest child of everichoon;3345  
For he the dremes of the king expounded,  
Wher-as in Chaldey clerk ne was ther noon  
That wiste to what fyn his dremes souned.  
This proude king leet make a statue of golde,  
Sixty cubytes long, and seven in brede,3350

To which image bothe yonge and olde(171)  
Comaunded he to loute, and have in drede;  
Or in a fourneys ful of flambes rede  
He shal be brent, that wolde noght obeye.  
But never wolde assente to that dede3355  
Daniel, ne his yonge felawes tweye.  
This king of kinges proud was and elaat,  
He wende that god, that sit in magestee,  
Ne mighte him nat bireve of his estaat:  
But sodeynly he loste his dignitee,3360  
And lyk a beste him semed for to be,(181)  
And eet hay as an oxe, and lay ther-oute;  
In reyn with wilde bestes walked he,  
Til certein tyme was y-come aboute.  
And lyk an egles fetheres wexe his heres,3365  
His nayles lyk a briddes clawes were;  
Til god relessed him a certein yeres,  
And yaf him wit; and than with many a tere  
He thanked god, and ever his lyf in fere  
Was he to doon amis, or more trespace,3370  
And, til that tyme he leyd was on his bere,(191)  
He knew that god was ful of might and grace.

### Balthasar (Belshazzar).

His sone, which that highte Balthasar,  
That heeld the regne after his fader day,  
He by his fader coude nought be war,3375  
For proud he was of herte and of array;  
And eek an ydolastre was he ay.  
His hye estaat assured him in pryde.  
But fortune caste him doun, and ther he lay,  
And sodeynly his regne gan divyde.3380  
A feste he made un-to his lordes alle(201)  
Up-on a tyme, and bad hem blythe be,  
And than his officeres gan he calle—  
'Goth, bringeth forth the vessels,' [tho] quod he,  
'Which that my fader, in his prosperitee,3385  
Out of the temple of Ierusalem birafte,  
And to our hye goddes thanke we  
Of honour, that our eldres with us lafte.'  
His wyf, his lordes, and his concubynes  
Ay dronken, whyl hir appetytes laste,3390  
Out of these noble vessels sundry wynes;(211)  
And on a wal this king his yën caste,  
And sey an hond armlees, that wroot ful faste,  
For fere of which he quook and syked sore.  
This hond, that Balthasar so sore agaste,3395

Wroot *Mane, techel, phares*, and na-more.  
In al that lond magicien was noon  
That coude expoune what this lettre mente;  
But Daniel expounded it anoon,  
And seyde, 'king, god to thy fader lente<sup>3400</sup>  
Glorie and honour, regne, tresour, rente:(221)  
And he was proud, and no-thing god ne dradde,  
And therfor god gret wreche up-on him sente,  
And him birafte the regne that he hadde.  
He was out cast of mannes companye,<sup>3405</sup>  
With asses was his habitacioun,  
And eet hey as a beste in weet and drye,  
Til that he knew, by grace and by resoun,  
That god of heven hath dominacioun  
Over every regne and every creature;<sup>3410</sup>  
And thanne had god of him compassioun,(231)  
And him restored his regne and his figure.  
Eek thou, that art his sone, art proud also,  
And knowest alle these things verraily,  
And art rebel to god, and art his fo.<sup>3415</sup>  
Thou drank eek of his vessels boldely;  
Thy wyf eek and thy wenches sinfully  
Dronke of the same vessels sondry wynes,  
And heriest false goddes cursedly;  
Therfor to thee y-shapen ful gret pyne is.<sup>3420</sup>  
This hand was sent from god, that on the walle(241)  
Wroot *mane, techel, phares*, truste me;  
Thy regne is doon, thou weyest nocht at alle;  
Divyded is thy regne, and it shal be  
To Medes and to Perses yeven , ' quod he.<sup>3425</sup>  
And thilke same night this king was slawe,  
And Darius occupyeth his degree,  
Thogh he therto had neither right ne lawe.  
Lordinges, ensample heer-by may ye take  
How that in lordshipe is no sikernesse;<sup>3430</sup>  
For whan fortune wol a man forsake,(251)  
She bereth away his regne and his richesse,  
And eek his freendes, bothe more and lesse;  
For what man that hath freendes thurgh fortune,  
Mishap wol make hem enemys, I gesse:<sup>3435</sup>  
This proverbe is ful sooth and ful commune.

### Cenobia (Zenobia).

Cenobia, of Palimerie quene,  
As writen Persiens of hir noblesse,  
So worthy was in armes and so kene,  
That no wight passed hir in hardinesse,<sup>3440</sup>

Ne in linage, ne in other gentillesse.(261)  
Of kinges blode of Perse is she descended;  
I seye nat that she hadde most fairnesse,  
But of hir shape she mighte nat been amended.  
From hir childhede I finde that she fledde<sup>3445</sup>  
Office of wommen, and to wode she wente;  
And many a wilde hertes blood she shedde  
With arwes brode that she to hem sente.  
She was so swift that she anon hem hente,  
And whan that she was elder, she wolde kille<sup>3450</sup>  
Leouns, lepardes, and beres al to-rente,(271)  
And in hir armes welde hem at hir wille.  
She dorste wilde beestes dennes seke,  
And rennen in the montaignes al the night,  
And slepen under a bush, and she coude eke<sup>3455</sup>  
Wrastlen by verray force and verray might  
With any yong man, were he never so wight;  
Ther mighte no-thing in hir armes stonde.  
She kepte hir maydenhod from every wight,  
To no man deigned hir for to be bonde.<sup>3460</sup>  
But atte laste hir frendes han hir married(281)  
To Odenake, a prince of that contree,  
Al were it so that she hem longe taried;  
And ye shul understonde how that he  
Hadde swiche fantasyes as hadde she.<sup>3465</sup>  
But nathelees, whan they were knit in-fere,  
They lived in Ioye and in felicitee;  
For ech of hem hadde other leef and dere.  
Save o thing, that she never wolde assente  
By no wey, that he sholde by hir lye<sup>3470</sup>  
But ones, for it was hir pleyn entente(291)  
To have a child, the world to multiplie;  
And al-so sone as that she mighte espie  
That she was nat with childe with that dede,  
Than wolde she suffre him doon his fantasye<sup>3475</sup>  
Eft-sone, and nat but ones, out of drede.  
And if she were with childe at thilke cast,  
Na-more sholde he pleyen thilke game  
Til fully fourty dayes weren past;  
Than wolde she ones suffre him do the same.<sup>3480</sup>  
Al were this Odenake wilde or tame,(301)  
He gat na-more of hir, for thus she seyde,  
'It was to wyves lecherye and shame  
In other cas, if that men with hem pleyde.'  
Two sones by this Odenake hadde she,<sup>3485</sup>  
The whiche she kepte in vertu and lettrure;  
But now un-to our tale turne we.  
I seye, so worshipful a creature,



And wys therwith, and large with mesure,  
So penible in the werre, and curteis eke,3490  
Ne more labour mighte in werre endure,(311)  
Was noon, thogh al this world men sholde seke.  
Hir riche array ne mighte nat be told  
As wel in vessel as in hir clothing;  
She was al clad in perree and in gold,3495  
And eek she lafte noght, for noon hunting,  
To have of sondry tonges ful knowing,  
Whan that she leyser hadde, and for to entende  
To lerne bokes was al hir lyking,  
How she in vertu mighte hir lyf dispende.3500  
And, shortly of this storie for to trete,(321)  
So doughty was hir housbonde and eek she,  
That they conquered many regnes grete  
In the orient, with many a fair citee,  
Apertenaunt un-to the magestee3505  
Of Rome, and with strong hond helde hem ful faste;  
Ne never mighte hir fo-men doon hem flee,  
Ay whyl that Odenakes dayes laste.  
Hir batailes, who-so list hem for to rede,  
Agayn Sapor the king and othere mo,3510  
And how that al this proces fil in dede,(331)  
Why she conquered and what title had therto,  
And after of hir meschief and hir wo,  
How that she was biseged and y-take,  
Let him un-to my maister Petrark go,3515  
That writ y-nough of this, I undertake.  
When Odenake was deed, she mightily  
The regnes heeld, and with hir propre honde  
Agayn hir foos she faught so cruelly,  
That ther nas king ne prince in al that londe3520  
That he nas glad, if that he grace fonde,(341)  
That she ne wolde up-on his lond werreye;  
With hir they made alliaunce by bonde  
To been in pees, and lete hir ryde and pleye.  
The emperour of Rome, Claudius,3525  
Ne him bifore, the Romayn Galien,  
Ne dorste never been so corageous,  
Ne noon Ermyn, ne noon Egipcien,  
Ne Surrien, ne noon Arabien,  
Within the feld that dorste with hir fighte3530  
Lest that she wolde hem with hir hondes slen,(351)  
Or with hir meynne putten hem to flighte.  
In kinges habit wente hir sones two,  
As heires of hir fadres regnes alle,  
And Hermanno, and Thymalao3535  
Her names were, as Persiens hem calle.

But ay fortune hath in hir hony galle;  
This mighty quene may no whyl endure.  
Fortune out of hir regne made hir falle  
To wrecchednesse and to misaventure.3540  
Aurelian, whan that the governaunce(361)  
Of Rome cam in-to his hondes tweye,  
He shoop up-on this queen to do vengeaunce,  
And with his legiouns he took his weye  
Toward Cenobie, and, shortly for to seye,3545  
He made hir flee, and atte laste hir hente,  
And fettred hir, and eek hir children tweye,  
And wan the lond, and hoom to Rome he wente.  
Amonges othere thinges that he wan,  
Hir char, that was with gold wrought and perree,3550  
This grete Romayn, this Aurelian,(371)  
Hath with him lad, for that men sholde it see.  
Biforen his triumphe walketh she  
With gilte cheynes on hir nekke hanging;  
Corouned was she, as after hir degree,3555  
And ful of perree charged hir clothing.  
Allas, fortune! she that whylom was  
Dredful to kinges and to emperoures,  
Now gaureth al the peple on hir, allas!  
And she that helmed was in starke stoures,3560  
And wan by force tounes stronge and toures,(381)  
Shal on hir heed now were a vitremyte;  
And she that bar the ceptre ful of floures  
Shal bere a distaf, hir cost for to quyte.

[T. 14380.]

(*Nerofollows in T.*; see p 259.)

### De Petro Rege Ispannie.

O noble, o worthy Petro, glorie of Spayne,  
Whom fortune heeld so hy in  
magestee,3566  
Wel oughten men thy pitous deeth complayne!  
Out of thy lond thy brother made thee flee;  
And after, at a sege, by subtiltee,  
Thou were bitrayed , and lad un-to his tente,3570  
Wher-as he with his owene hond slow thee,(391)  
Succeeding in thy regne and in thy rente.  
The feeld of snow, with thegle of blak ther-inne,  
Caught with the lymrod, coloured as the  
glede,  
He brew this cursednes and al this sinne.3575  
The 'wikked nest' was werker of this nede;  
Noght Charles Oliver, that ay took hede

[T. 14685.]

[T. 14693.]

Of trouthe and honour, but of Armorike  
Genilon Oliver, corrupt for mede,  
Broghte this worthy king in swich a brike.3580

### De Petro Rege De Cipro.

O worthy Petro, king of Cypre, also,(401)  
That Alisaundre wan by heigh maistrye,  
Ful many a hethen wroghtestow ful wo,  
Of which thyn owene liges hadde envye,  
And, for no thing but for thy chivalrye,3585  
They in thy bedde han slayn thee by the morwe.  
Thus can fortune hir wheel governe and gye,  
And out of Ioye bringe men to sorwe.

[T. 14708.

### De Barnabo De Lumbardia.

Of Melan grete Barnabo Viscounte,  
God of delyt, and scourge of Lumbardye,3590  
Why sholde I nat thyn infortune acounte,(411)  
Sith in estaat thou clombe were so hye?  
Thy brother sone, that was thy double allye,  
For he thy nevew was, and sone-in-lawe,  
With-inne his prisoun made thee to dye;3595  
But why, ne how, noot I that thou were slawe.

### De Hugelino, Comite De Pize.

Of the erl Hugelyn of Pyse the langour  
Ther may no tonge telle for pitee;  
But litel out of Pyse stant a tour,  
In whiche tour in prisoun put was he,3600  
And with him been his litel children three.(421)  
The eldeste scarsly fyf yeer was of age.  
Allas, fortune! it was greet crueltee  
Swiche briddes for to putte in swiche a cage!  
Dampned was he to deye in that prisoun,3605  
For Roger, which that bisshop was of Pyse,  
Hadde on him maad a fals suggestioun,  
Thurgh which the peple gan upon him ryse,  
And putten him to prisoun in swich wyse  
As ye han herd, and mete and drink he hadde3610  
So smal, that wel unnethe it may suffyse,(431)  
And therwith-al it was ful povre and badde.  
And on a day bifil that, in that hour,  
Whan that his mete wont was to be broght,  
The gayler shette the dores of the tour.3615

He herde it wel,—but he spak right noght,  
And in his herte anon ther fil a thoght,  
That they for hunger wolde doon him dyen.  
'Allas!' quod he, 'allas! that I was wrought!  
Therwith the teres fillen from his yën.3620  
His yonge sone, that three yeer was of age,(441)  
Un-to him seyde, 'fader , why do ye wepe?  
Whan wol the gayler bringen our potage,  
Is ther no morsel breed that ye do kepe?  
I am so hungry that I may nat slepe.3625  
Now wolde god that I mighte slepen ever!  
Than sholde nat hunger in my wombe crepe;  
Ther is no thing, save breed, that me were lever.'  
Thus day by day this child bigan to crye,  
Til in his fadres barme adoun it lay,3630  
And seyde, 'far-wel, fader, I moot dye,'(451)  
And kiste his fader, and deyde the same day.  
And whan the woful fader deed it sey,  
For wo his armes two he gan to byte,  
And seyde, 'allas, fortune! and weylaway!3635  
Thy false wheel my wo al may I wyte!'  
His children wende that it for hunger was  
That he his armes gnaw, and nat for wo,  
And seyde, 'fader, do nat so, allas!  
But rather eet the flesh upon us two;3640  
Our flesh thou yaf us, tak our flesh us fro(461)  
And eet y-nough.' right thus they to him seyde,  
And after that, with-in a day or two,  
They leyde hem in his lappe adoun, and deyde.  
Him-self, despeired, eek for hunger starf;3645  
Thus ended is this mighty Erl of Pyse;  
From heigh estaat fortune away him carf.  
Of this Tragedie it oghte y-nough suffyse.  
Who-so wol here it in a lenger wyse,  
Redeth the grete poete of Itaille,3650  
That highte Dant, for he can al devyse(471)  
Fro point to point, nat o word wol he faille.

(For T. 14773, see p. 269; for T. 14380, see p. 256.)

[T. 14772.]

## Nero.

Al-though that Nero were as vicious  
As any feend that lyth ful lowe adoun,  
Yet he, as telleth us Swetonius,3655  
This wyde world hadde in subieccioun,  
Both Est and West, South and Septemtrioun;  
Of rubies, saphires, and of perles whyte

[T. 14381.]

Were alle his clothes brouded up and doun;  
For he in gemmes greetly gan delyte.3660  
More delicat, more pompous of array,(481)  
More proud was never emperour than he;  
That ilke cloth, that he had wered o day,  
After that tyme he nolde it never see.  
Nettes of gold-thred hadde he gret plentee3665  
To fische in Tybre, whan him liste pleye.  
His lustes were al lawe in his decree,  
For fortune as his freend him wolde obeye.  
He Rome brende for his delicacye;  
The senatours he slow up-on a day.3670  
To here how men wolde wepe and crye;(491)  
And slow his brother, and by his sister lay.  
His moder made he in pitous array;  
For he hir wombe slitte, to biholde  
Wher he conceyved was; so weilaway!3675  
That he so litel of his moder tolde!  
No tere out of his yën for that sighte  
Ne cam, but seyde, ‘a fair womman was she.’  
Gret wonder is, how that he coude or mighte  
Be domesman of hir dede beautee.3680  
The wyn to bringen him comaunded he,(501)  
And drank anon; non other wo he made.  
Whan might is loyned un-to crueltee,  
Allas! to depe wol the venim wade!  
In youthe a maister hadde this emperour,3685  
To teche him letterure and curteisye,  
For of moralitee he was the flour,  
As in his tyme, but-if bokes lye;  
And whyl this maister hadde of him maistrye,  
He maked him so conning and so souple3690  
That longe tyme it was er tirannye(511)  
Or any vyce dorste on him uncouple.  
This Seneca, of which that I devyse,  
By-cause Nero hadde of him swich drede,  
For he fro vyces wolde him ay chastyse3695  
Discreetly as by worde and nat by dede;—  
‘Sir,’ wolde he seyn, ‘an emperour moot nede  
Be vertuous, and hate tirannye’—  
For which he in a bath made him to blede  
On bothe his armes, til he moste dye.3700  
This Nero hadde eek of acostumaunce(521)  
In youthe ageyn his maister for to ryse,  
Which afterward him thoughte a greet grevaunce;  
Therfor he made him deyen in this wyse.  
But natheles this Seneca the wyse3705  
Chees in a bath to deye in this manere

Rather than han another tormentyse;  
And thus hath Nero slayn his maister dere.  
Now fil it so that fortune list no lenger  
The hye pryde of Nero to cheryce;3710  
For though that he were strong, yet was she strengere;(531)  
She thoughte thus, 'by god, I am to nyce  
To sette a man that is fulfild of vyce  
In heigh degree, and emperour him calle.  
By god, out of his sete I wol him tryce;3715  
When he leest weneth, sonest shal he falle.'  
The peple roos up-on him on a night  
For his defaute, and whan he it espyed,  
Out of his dores anon he hath him dight  
Alone, and, ther he wende han ben allyed,3720  
He knocked faste, and ay, the more he cryed,(541)  
The faster shette they the dores alle;  
Tho wiste he wel he hadde him-self misgyed,  
And wente his wey, no lenger dorste he calle.  
The peple cryde and rombled up and down,3725  
That with his eres herde he how they seyde,  
'Wher is this false tyraunt, this Neroun?'  
For fere almost out of his wit he breyde,  
And to his goddes pitously he preyde  
For socour, but it mighte nat bityde.3730  
For drede of this, him thoughte that he deyde,(551)  
And ran in-to a gardin, him to hyde.  
And in this gardin fond he cherles tweye  
That seten by a fyr ful greet and reed,  
And to thise cherles two he gan to preye3735  
To sleen him, and to girden of his heed,  
That to his body, whan that he were deed,  
Were no despyt y-doon, for his defame.  
Him-self he slow, he coude no better reed,  
Of which fortune lough, and hadde a game.3740

### De Oloferno (Holofernes).

Was never capitayn under a king(561)  
That regnes mo putte in subieccioun,  
Ne strengere was in feeld of alle thing,  
As in his tyme, ne gretter of renoun,  
Ne more pompous in heigh presumpcioun3745  
Than Oloferne, which fortune ay kiste  
So likerously, and ladde him up and doun  
Til that his heed was of, er that he wiste.  
Nat only that this world hadde him in awe  
For lesinge of richesse or libertee,3750  
But he made every man reneye his lawe.(571)

‘Nabugodonosor was god,’ seyde he,  
‘Noon other god sholde adoured be.’  
Ageyns his heste no wight dar trespace  
Save in Bethulia, a strong citee,<sup>3755</sup>  
Wher Eliachim a prest was of that place.  
But tak kepe of the deeth of Olofern;  
Amidde his host he dronke lay a night,  
With-inne his tente, large as is a bern,  
And yit, for al his pompe and al his might,<sup>3760</sup>  
Iudith, a womman, as he lay upright,<sup>(581)</sup>  
Sleping, his heed of smoot, and from his tente  
Ful prively she stal from every wight,  
And with his heed unto hir toun she wente.

### De Rege Anthiocho Illustri.

What nedeth it of King Anthiochus<sup>3765</sup>  
To telle his hye royal magestee,  
His hye pryde, his werkes venimous?  
For swich another was ther noon as he.  
Rede which that he was in Machabee,  
And rede the proude wordes that he seyde,<sup>3770</sup>  
And why he fil fro heigh prosperitee,<sup>(591)</sup>  
And in an hil how wrechedly he deyde.  
Fortune him hadde enhaunced so in pryde  
That verrailly he wende he mighte attayne  
Unto the sterres, upon every syde,<sup>3775</sup>  
And in balance weyen ech montayne,  
And alle the flodes of the see restrayne.  
And goddes peple hadde he most in hate,  
Hem wolde he sleen in torment and in payne,  
Wening that god ne mighte his pryde abate.<sup>3780</sup>  
And for that Nichanor and Thimothee<sup>(601)</sup>  
Of Iewes weren venquissed mightily,  
Unto the Iewes swich an hate hadde he  
That he bad greithe his char ful hastily,  
And swoor, and seyde, ful despitously,<sup>3785</sup>  
Unto Ierusalem he wolde eft-sone,  
To wreken his ire on it ful cruelly;  
But of his purpos he was let ful sone.  
God for his manace him so sore smoot  
With invisible wounde, ay incurable,<sup>3790</sup>  
That in his guttes carf it so and boot<sup>(611)</sup>  
That his peynes weren importable.  
And certainly, the wreche was resonable,  
For many a mannes guttes dide he peyne;  
But from his purpos cursed and dampnable<sup>3795</sup>  
For al his smert he wolde him nat restreyne;

But bad anon apparailen his host,  
And sodeynly, er he of it was war,  
God daunted al his pryde and al his bost.  
For he so sore fil out of his char,3800  
That it his limes and his skin to-tar,(621)  
So that he neither mighte go ne ryde,  
But in a chayer men aboute him bar,  
Al for-brused, bothe bak and syde.  
The wreche of god him smoot so cruelly3805  
That thurgh his body wikked wormes crepte;  
And ther-with-al he stank so horribly,  
That noon of al his meynee that him kepte,  
Whether so he wook or elles slepte,  
Ne mighte nocht for stink of him endure.3810  
In this meschief he wayled and eek wepte,(631)  
And knew god lord of every creature.  
To al his host and to him-self also  
Ful wlatson was the stink of his careyne;  
No man ne mighte him bere to ne fro.3815  
And in this stink and this horrible peyne  
He starf ful wrecchedly in a monteyne.  
Thus hath this robbour and this homicyde,  
That many a man made to wepe and pleyne,  
Swich guerdon as bilongeth unto pryde.3820

## De Alexandro.

The storie of Alisaundre is so comune,(641)  
That every wight that hath discrecioun  
Hath herd somewhat or al of his fortune.  
This wyde world, as in conclusioun,  
He wan by strengthe, or for his hye renoun3825  
They weren glad for pees un-to him sende.  
The pryde of man and beste he leyde adoun,  
Wher-so he cam, un-to the worldes ende.  
Comparisoun might never yit be maked  
Bitwixe him and another conquerour;3830  
For al this world for drede of him hath quaked,(651)  
He was of knighthode and of fredom flour;  
Fortune him made the heir of hir honour;  
Save wyn and wommen, no-thing mighte aswage  
His hye entente in armes and labour;3835  
So was he ful of leonyn corage.  
What preys were it to him, though I yow tolde  
Of Darius, and an hundred thousand mo,  
Of kinges, princes, erles, dukes bolde,  
Whiche he conquered, and broghte hem in-to wo?3840  
I seye, as fer as man may ryde or go,(661)



The world was his, what sholde I more devyse?  
For though I write or tolde you evermo  
Of his knighthode, it mighte nat suffyse.  
Twelf yeer he regned, as seith Machabee;3845  
Philippe sone of Macedoyne he was,  
That first was king in Grece the contree.  
O worthy gentil Alisaundre, allas!  
That ever sholde fallen swich a cas!  
Empoisoned of thyn owene folk thou were;3850  
Thy *sys* fortune hath turned into *as*,(671)  
And yit for thee ne weep she never a tere!  
Who shal me yeven teres to compleyne  
The deeth of gentillesse and of fraunchyse,  
That al the world welded in his demeyne,3855  
And yit him thoughte it mighte nat suffyse?  
So ful was his corage of heigh empryse.  
Allas! who shal me helpe to endyte  
False fortune, and poison to despyse,  
The whiche two of al this wo I wyte?3860

### De Iulio Cesare.

By wisdom, manhede, and by greet labour(681)  
Fro humble bed to royal magestee,  
Up roos he, Iulius the conquerour,  
That wan al thoccident by lond and see,  
By strengthe of hond, or elles by tretee,3865  
And un-to Rome made hem tributarie;  
And sitthe of Rome the emperour was he,  
Til that fortune wex his adversarie.  
O mighty Cesar, that in Thessalye  
Ageyn Pompeius , fader thyn in lawe,3870  
That of thorient hadde al the chivalrye(691)  
As fer as that the day biginneth dawe,  
Thou thurgh thy knighthode hast hem take and slawe,  
Save fewe folk that with Pompeius fledde,  
Thurgh which thou putttest al thorient in awe.3875  
Thanke fortune, that so wel thee spedde!  
But now a litel whyl I wol biwaille  
This Pompeius, this noble governour  
Of Rome, which that fleigh at this bataille;  
I seye, oon of his men, a fals traitour,3880  
His heed of smoot, to winnen him favour(701)  
Of Iulius, and him the heed he broghte.  
Allas, Pompey, of thorient conquerour,  
That fortune unto swich a fyn thee broghte!  
To Rome ageyn repaireth Iulius3885  
With his triumpe, laureat ful hye,

But on a tyme Brutus Cassius,  
That ever hadde of his hye estaat envye,  
Ful prively hath maad conspiracye  
Ageins this Iulius, in subtil wyse,3890  
And cast the place, in whiche he sholde dye(711)  
With boydekins, as I shal yow devyse.  
This Iulius to the Capitolie wente  
Upon a day, as he was wont to goon,  
And in the Capitolie anon him hente3895  
This false Brutus, and his othere foon,  
And stikede him with boydekins anoon  
With many a wounde, and thus they lete him lye;  
But never gronte he at no strook but oon,  
Or elles at two, but-if his storie lye.3900  
So manly was this Iulius at herte(721)  
And so wel lovede estaatly honestee,  
That, though his deedly woundes sore smerte,  
His mantel over his hippes casteth he,  
For no man sholde seen his privitee.3905  
And, as he lay on deyng in a traunce,  
And wiste verrailly that deed was he,  
Of honestee yit hadde he remembraunce.  
Lucan, to thee this storie I recomende,  
And to Sweton, and to Valerie also,3910  
That of this storie wryten word and ende,(731)  
How that to thise grete conqueroures two  
Fortune was first freend, and sithen fo.  
No man ne truste up-on hir favour longe,  
But have hir in awayt for ever-mo.3915  
Witnesse on alle thise conqueroures stronge.

## Cresus.

This riche Cresus, whylom king of Lyde,  
Of whiche Cresus Cyrus sore him dradde,  
Yit was he caught amidde al his pryde,  
And to be brent men to the fyr him ladde.3920  
But swich a reyn down fro the welkne shadde(741)  
That slow the fyr, and made him to escape;  
But to be war no grace yet he hadde,  
Til fortune on the galwes made him gape.  
Whan he escaped was, he can nat stente3925  
For to biginne a newe werre agayn.  
He wende wel, for that fortune him sente  
Swich hap, that he escaped thurgh the rayn,  
That of his foos he mighte nat be slayn;  
And eek a sweven up-on a night he mette,3930  
Of which he was so proud and eek so fayn,(751)

That in vengeaunce he al his herte sette.  
Up-on a tree he was, as that him thoughte,  
Ther Iuppiter him wesh, bothe bak and syde,  
And Phebus eek a fair towaille him broughte<sup>3935</sup>  
To drye him with, and ther-for wex his pryde;  
And to his doghter, that stood him bisyde,  
Which that he knew in heigh science habounde,  
He bad hir telle him what it signifyde,  
And she his dreem bigan right thus expounde.<sup>3940</sup>  
'The tree,' quod she, 'the galwes is to mene,(<sup>761</sup>)  
And Iuppiter bitokneth snow and reyn,  
And Phebus, with his towaille so clene,  
Tho ben the sonne stremes for to seyn;  
Thou shalt anhangd be, fader, certeyn;<sup>3945</sup>  
Reyn shal thee wasshe, and sonne shal thee drye;'  
Thus warned she him ful plat and ful pleyn,  
His doghter, which that called was Phanye.  
Anhangd was Cresus, the proude king,  
His royal trone mighte him nat availle.—<sup>3950</sup>  
Tragedie is noon other maner thing,(<sup>771</sup>)  
Ne can in singing crye ne biwaille,  
But for that fortune alwey wol assaille  
With unwar strook the regnes that ben proude;  
For when men trusteth hir, than wol she faille,<sup>3955</sup>  
And covere hir brighte face with a cloude.

[See p. 256.]

*Explicit Tragedia.*

Here stinteth the Knight the Monk of his Tale.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## THE PROLOGUE OF THE NONNE PRESTES TALE. (T. 14773-14798).

The prologue of the Nonne Preestes Tale.

‘HO!’ quod the knight, ‘good sir, na-more of this,  
That ye han seyde is right y-nough, y-wis,  
And mochel more; for litel hevynesse  
Is right y-nough to mochel folk, I gesse.3960  
I seye for me, it is a greet disese  
Wher-as men han ben in greet welthe and ese,  
To heren of hir sodeyn fal, allas!  
And the contrarie is Ioie and greet solas,  
As whan a man hath been in povre estaat,3965  
And clymbeth up, and wexeth fortunat,(10)  
And ther abydeþ in prosperitee,  
Swich thing is gladsom, as it thinketh me,  
And of swich thing were goodly for to telle.’  
‘Ye,’ quod our hoste, ‘by seint Poules belle,3970  
Ye seye right sooth; this monk, he clappeth loude,  
He spak how “fortune covered with a cloude”  
I noot never what, and als of a “Tragedie”  
Right now ye herde, and parde! no remedie  
It is for to biwaille, ne compleyne3975  
That that is doon, and als it is a peyne,(20)  
As ye han seyde, to here of hevynesse.  
Sir monk, na-more of this, so god yow blesse!  
Your tale anoyeth al this companye;  
Swich talking is nat worth a boterflye;3980  
For ther-in is ther no desport ne game.  
Wherfor, sir Monk, or dan Piers by your name,  
I preye yow hertely, telle us somewhat elles,  
For sikerly, nere clinking of your belles,  
That on your brydel hange on every syde,3985  
By heven king, that for us alle dyde,(30)  
I sholde er this han fallen down for slepe,  
Although the slough had never been so depe;  
Than had your tale al be told in vayn.  
For certainly, as that thise clerkes seyn,3990  
“Wher-as a man may have noon audience,  
Noght helpeth it to tellen his sentence.”  
And wel I woot the substance is in me,  
If any thing shal wel reported be.  
Sir, sey somewhat of hunting, I yow preye.’3995  
‘Nay,’ quod this monk, ‘I have no lust to pleye;(40)

Now let another telle, as I have told.  
Than spak our host, with rude speche and bold,  
And seyde un-to the Nonnes Preest anon,  
'Com neer, thou preest, com hider, thou sir Iohn,4000  
Tel us swich thing as may our hertes glade,  
Be blythe, though thou ryde up-on a Iade.  
What though thyn hors be bothe foule and lene,  
If he wol serve thee, rekke nat a bene;  
Look that thyn herte be mery evermo.'4005  
'Yis, sir,' quod he, 'yis, host, so mote I go,(50)  
But I be mery, y-wis, I wol be blamed:'—  
And right anon his tale he hath attamed,  
And thus he seyde un-to us everichon,  
This swete preest, this goodly man, sir Iohn.4010

*Explicit.*

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## THE NONNE PREESTES TALE.

Here biginneth the Nonne Preestes Tale of the Cok and Hen, Chauntecleer and Pertelote.

APOVRE widwe, somdel stope in age,  
Was whylom dwelling in a narwe cotage,  
Bisyde a grove , standing in a dale.  
This widwe, of which I telle yow my tale,  
Sin thilke day that she was last a wyf,4015  
In pacience ladde a ful simple lyf,  
For litel was hir catel and hir rente;  
By housbondrye, of such as God hir sente,  
She fond hir-self, and eek hir doghtren two.  
Three large sowes hadde she, and namo,4020  
Three kyn, and eek a sheep that highte Malle.(11)  
Ful sooty was hir bour, and eek hir halle,  
In which she eet ful many a sclendre meel.  
Of poynaunt sauce hir neded never a deel.  
No deyntee morsel passed thurgh hir throte;4025  
Hir dyete was accordant to hir cote.  
Repleccioun ne made hir never syk;  
Attempree dyete was al hir phisyk,  
And exercyse, and hertes suffisaunce.  
The goute lette hir no-thing for to daunce,4030  
Napoplexye shente nat hir heed;(21)  
No wyn ne drank she, neither whyt ne reed;  
Hir bord was served most with whyt and blak,  
Milk and broun breed, in which she fond no lak,  
Seynd bacoun, and somtyme an ey or tweye,4035  
For she was as it were a maner deye.  
A yerd she hadde, enclosed al aboute  
With stikkes, and a drye dich with-oute,  
In which she hadde a cok, hight Chauntecleer,  
In al the land of crowing nas his peer.4040  
His vois was merier than the mery orgon(31)  
On messe-dayes that in the chirche gon;  
Wel sikerer was his crowing in his logge,  
Than is a klokke, or an abbey orlogge.  
By nature knew he ech ascencioun4045  
Of equinoxial in thilke toun;  
For whan degrees fiftene were ascended,  
Thanne crew he, that it mighte nat ben amended.  
His comb was redder than the fyn coral,  
And batailed, as it were a castel-wal.4050  
His bile was blak, and as the leet it shoon;(41)

Lyk asur were his legges, and his toon;  
His nayles whytter than the lilie flour,  
And lyk the burned gold was his colour.  
This gentil cok hadde in his governaunce<sup>4055</sup>  
Sevene hennes, for to doon al his plesaunce,  
Whiche were his sustres and his paramours,  
And wonder lyk to him, as of colours.  
Of whiche the faireste hewed on hir throte  
Was cleped faire damoysele Pertelote.<sup>4060</sup>  
Curteys she was, discreet, and debonaire,<sup>(51)</sup>  
And compaignable, and bar hir-self so faire,  
Sin thilke day that she was seven night old,  
That trewely she hath the herte in hold  
Of Chauntecleer loken in every lith;<sup>4065</sup>  
He loved hir so, that wel was him therwith.  
But such a Ioye was it to here hem singe,  
Whan that the brighte sonne gan to springe,  
In swete accord, ‘my lief is faren in londe.’  
For thilke tyme, as I have understonde,<sup>4070</sup>  
Bestes and briddes coude speke and singe.<sup>(61)</sup>  
And so bifel, that in a daweninge,  
As Chauntecleer among his wyves alle  
Sat on his perche, that was in the halle,  
And next him sat this faire Pertelote,<sup>4075</sup>  
This Chauntecleer gan gronen in his throte,  
As man that in his dreem is drecched sore.  
And whan that Pertelote thus herde him rore,  
She was agast, and seyde, ‘O herte dere,  
What eyleth yow, to grone in this manere?<sup>4080</sup>  
Ye been a verray sleper, fy for shame!’<sup>(71)</sup>  
And he answerde and seyde thus, ‘madame,  
I pray yow, that ye take it nat a-grief:  
By god, me mette I was in swich meschief  
Right now, that yet myn herte is sore afright.<sup>4085</sup>  
Now god,’ quod he, ‘my swevene recche aright,  
And keep my body out of foul prisoun!  
Me mette, how that I romed up and down  
Withinne our yerde, wher-as I saugh a beste,  
Was lyk an hound, and wolde han maad areste<sup>4090</sup>  
Upon my body, and wolde han had me deed.<sup>(81)</sup>  
His colour was bitwixe yelwe and reed;  
And tipped was his tail, and bothe his eres,  
With blak, unlyk the remenant of his heres;  
His snowte smal, with glowinge eyen tweye.<sup>4095</sup>  
Yet of his look for fere almost I deye;  
This caused me my groning, doutelees.’  
‘Avoy!’ quod she, ‘fy on yow, hertelees!  
Allas!’ quod she, ‘for, by that god above,

Now han ye lost myn herte and al my love;4100  
I can nat love a coward, by my feith.(91)  
For certes, what so any womman seith,  
We alle desyren, if it mighte be,  
To han housbondes hardy, wyse, and free,  
And secree, and no nigard, ne no fool,4105  
Ne him that is agast of every tool,  
Ne noon avauntour, by that god above!  
How dorste ye seyn for shame unto your love,  
That any thing mighte make yow aferd?  
Have ye no mannes herte, and han a berd?4110  
Allas! and conne ye been agast of swevenis?(101)  
No-thing, god wot, but vanitee, in sweven is  
Swevenes engendren of replecciouns,  
And ofte of fume, and of complecciouns,  
Whan humours been to habundant in a wight.4115  
Certes this dreem, which ye han met to-night,  
Cometh of the grete superfluitee  
Of youre rede *colera*, pardee,  
Which causeth folk to dreden in here dremes  
Of arwes, and of fyr with rede lemes,4120  
Of grete bestes, that they wol hem byte,(111)  
Of contek, and of whelpes grete and lyte;  
Right as the humour of malencolye  
Causeth ful many a man, in sleep, to crye,  
For fere of blake beres, or boles blake,4125  
Or elles, blake develes wole hem take.  
Of othere humours coude I telle also,  
That werken many a man in sleep ful wo;  
But I wol passe as lightly as I can.  
Lo Catoun, which that was so wys a man,4130  
Seyde he nat thus, ne do no fors of dremes?(121)  
Now, sire,' quod she, 'whan we flee fro the bemes,  
For Goddes love, as tak som laxatyf;  
Up peril of my soule, and of my lyf,  
I counseille yow the beste, I wol nat lye,4135  
That bothe of colere and of malencolye  
Ye purge yow; and for ye shul nat tarie,  
Though in this toun is noon apotecarie,  
I shal my-self to herbes techen yow,  
That shul ben for your hele, and for your prow;4140  
And in our yerd tho herbes shal I finde,(131)  
The whiche han of hir propretee, by kinde,  
To purgen yow binethe, and eek above.  
Forget not this, for goddes owene love!  
Ye been ful colerik of compleccioun.4145  
Ware the sonne in his ascencioun  
Ne fynde yow nat repleet of humours hote;



And if it do, I dar wel leye a grote,  
That ye shul have a fevere terciane,  
Or an agu, that may be youre bane.4150  
A day or two ye shul have digestyves(141)  
Of wormes, er ye take your laxatyves,  
Of lauriol, centaure, and fumetere,  
Or elles of ellebor, that groweth there,  
Of catapuce, or of gaytres beryis,4155  
Of erbe yve, growing in our yerd, that mery is;  
Pekke hem up right as they growe, and ete hem in.  
Be mery, housbond, for your fader kin!  
Dredeth no dreem; I can say yow na-more.’  
‘Madame,’ quod he, ‘*graunt mercy* of your lore.4160  
But nathelees, as touching daun Catoun,(151)  
That hath of wisdom such a greet renoun,  
Though that he bad no dremes for to drede,  
By god, men may in olde bokes rede  
Of many a man, more of auctoritee4165  
Than ever Catoun was, so mote I thee,  
Than al the revers seyn of his sentence,  
And han wel founden by experience,  
That dremes ben significaciouns,  
As wel of Ioye as tribulaciouns4170  
That folk enduren in this lyf present.(161)  
Ther nedeth make of this noon argument;  
The verray preve sheweth it in dede.  
Oon of the gretteste auctours that men rede  
Seith thus, that whylom two felawes wente4175  
On pilgrimage, in a ful good entente;  
And happed so, thay come into a toun,  
Wher-as ther was swich congregacioun  
Of peple, and eek so streit of herbergage,  
That they ne founde as mucche as o cotage,4180  
In which they bothe mighte y-logged be.(171)  
Wherfor thay mosten, of necessitee,  
As for that night, departen compaignye;  
And ech of hem goth to his hostelrye,  
And took his logging as it wolde falle.4185  
That oon of hem was logged in a stalle,  
Fer in a yerd, with oxen of the plough;  
That other man was logged wel y-nough,  
As was his aventure, or his fortune,  
That us governeth alle as in commune.4190  
And so bifel, that, longe er it were day,(181)  
This man mette in his bed, ther-as he lay,  
How that his felawe gan up-on him calle,  
And seyde, ‘allas! for in an oxes stalle  
This night I shal be mordred ther I lye.4195

Now help me, dere brother, er I dye;  
In alle haste com to me,' he sayde.  
This man out of his sleep for fere abrayde;  
But whan that he was wakned of his sleep,  
He turned him, and took of this no keep;4200  
Him thoughte his dreem nas but a vanitee.(191)  
Thus twyes in his sleping dremed he.  
And atte thridde tyme yet his felawe  
Cam, as him thoughte, and seide, 'I am now slawe;  
Bihold my bloody woundes, depe and wyde!4205  
Arys up erly in the morwe-tyde,  
And at the west gate of the toun,' quod he,  
'A carte ful of donge ther shaltow see,  
In which my body is hid ful prively;  
Do thilke carte aresten boldely.4210  
My gold caused my mordre, sooth to sayn;'(201)  
And tolde him every poynt how he was slayn,  
With a ful pitous face, pale of hewe.  
And truste wel, his dreem he fond ful trewe;  
For on the morwe, as sone as it was day,4215  
To his felawes in he took the way;  
And whan that he cam to this oxes stalle,  
After his felawe he bigan to calle.  
The hostiler answered him anon,  
And seyde, 'sire, your felawe is agon,4220  
As sone as day he wente out of the toun.'(211)  
This man gan fallen in suspeciouun,  
Remembring on his dremes that he mette,  
And forth he goth, no lenger wolde he lette,  
Unto the west gate of the toun, and fond4225  
A dong-carte, as it were to donge lond,  
That was arrayed in the same wyse  
As ye han herd the dede man devyse;  
And with an hardy herte he gan to crye  
Vengeaunce and Iustice of this felonye:—4230  
'My felawe mordred is this same night,(221)  
And in this carte he lyth gapinge upright.  
I crye out on the ministres,' quod he,  
'That sholden kepe and reulen this citee;  
Harrow! allas! her lyth my felawe slayn!'4235  
What sholde I more un-to this tale sayn?  
The peple out-sterte, and caste the cart to grounde,  
And in the middel of the dong they founde  
The dede man, that mordred was al newe.  
O blisful god, that art so Iust and trewe!4240  
Lo, how that thou biwreyest mordre alway!(231)  
Mordre wol out, that see we day by day.  
Mordre is so wlatom and abhominable

To god, that is so Iust and resonable,  
That he ne wol nat suffre it heled be;4245  
Though it abyde a yeer, or two, or three,  
Mordre wol out, this my conclusioun.  
And right anon, ministres of that toun  
Han hent the carter, and so sore him pyned,  
And eek the hostiler so sore engyned,4250  
That thay biknewe hir wikkednesse anon,(241)  
And were an-hanged by the nekke-boon.  
Here may men seen that dremes been to drede.  
And certes, in the same book I rede,  
Right in the nexte chapitre after this,4255  
(I gabbe nat, so have I Ioye or blis,)  
Two men that wolde han passed over see,  
For certeyn cause, in-to a fer contree,  
If that the wind ne hadde been contrarie,  
That made hem in a citee for to tarie,4260  
That stood ful mery upon an haven-syde.(251)  
But on a day, agayn the even-tyde,  
The wind gan chaunge, and blew right as hem leste.  
Iolif and glad they wente un-to hir reste,  
And casten hem ful erly for to saille;4265  
But to that oo man fil a greet mervaille.  
That oon of hem, in sleping as he lay,  
Him mette a wonder dreem, agayn the day;  
Him thoughte a man stood by his beddes syde,  
And him comaunded, that he sholde abyde,4270  
And seyde him thus, 'if thou to-morwe wende,(261)  
Thou shalt be dreynt; my tale is at an ende.'  
He wook, and tolde his felawe what he mette.  
And preyde him his viage for to lette;  
As for that day, he preyde him to abyde.4275  
His felawe, that lay by his beddes syde,  
Gan for to laughe, and scorned him ful faste.  
'No dreem,' quod he, 'may so myn herte agaste,  
That I wol lette for to do my thinges.  
I sette not a straw by thy dreminges,4280  
For swevenes been but vanitees and Iapes.(271)  
Men dreme al-day of owles or of apes,  
And eke of many a mase therwithal;  
Men dreme of thing that nevere was ne shal.  
But sith I see that thou wolt heer abyde,4285  
And thus for-sleuthen wilfully thy tyde,  
God wot it reweth me; and have good day.'  
And thus he took his leve, and wente his way.  
But er that he hadde halfe his cours y-seyled,  
Noot I nat why, ne what mischaunce it eyled,4290  
But casuelly the shippes botme rente,(281)

And ship and man under the water wente  
In sighte of othere shippes it byside,  
That with hem seyled at the same tyde.  
And therfor, faire Pertelote so dere,4295  
By swiche ensamples olde maistow lere,  
That no man sholde been to recchelees  
Of dremes, for I sey thee, doutelees,  
That many a dreem ful sore is for to drede.  
Lo, in the lyf of seint Kenelm, I rede,4300  
That was Kenulphus sone, the noble king(291)  
Of Mercenrike, how Kenelm mette a thing;  
A lyte er he was mordred, on a day,  
His mordre in his avisioun he say.  
His norice him expounded every del4305  
His sweven, and bad him for to kepe him wel  
For traisoun; but he nas but seven yeer old,  
And therefore litel tale hath he told  
Of any dreem, so holy was his herte.  
By god, I hadde lever than my sherte4310  
That ye had rad his legende, as have I.(301)  
Dame Pertelote, I sey yow trewely,  
Macrobeus, that writ the avisioun  
In Affrike of the worthy Cipioun,  
Affermeth dremes, and seith that they been4315  
Warning of thinges that men after seen.  
And forther-more, I pray yow loketh wel  
In the olde testament, of Daniel,  
If he held dremes any vanitee.  
Reed eek of Ioseph, and ther shul ye see4320  
Wher dremes ben somtyme (I sey nat alle)(311)  
Warning of thinges that shul after falle.  
Loke of Egipt the king, daun Pharao,  
His bakere and his boteler also,  
Wher they ne felte noon effect in dremes.4325  
Who-so wol seken actes of sondry remes,  
May rede of dremes many a wonder thing.  
Lo Cresus, which that was of Lyde king,  
Mette he nat that he sat upon a tree,  
Which signified he sholde anhangd be?4330  
Lo heer Andromacha , Ectores wyf,(321)  
That day that Ector sholde lese his lyf,  
She dremed on the same night biforn,  
How that the lyf of Ector sholde be lorn,  
If thilke day he wente in-to bataille;4335  
She warned him, but it mighte nat availle;  
He wente for to fighte nathelees,  
But he was slayn anoon of Achilles.  
But thilke tale is al to long to telle,

And eek it is ny day, I may nat dwelle.4340  
Shortly I seye, as for conclusioun,(331)  
That I shal han of this avisioun  
Adversitee; and I seye forther-more,  
That I ne telle of laxatyves no store,  
For they ben venimous, I woot it wel;4345  
I hem defye , I love hem never a del.  
Now let us speke of mirthe, and stinte al this;  
Madame Pertelote, so have I blis,  
Of o thing god hath sent me large grace;  
For whan I see the beautee of your face,4350  
Ye ben so scarlet-reed about your yën,(341)  
It maketh al my drede for to dyen;  
For, also siker as *In principio*,  
*Mulier est hominis confusio*;  
Madame, the sentence of this Latin is—4355  
Womman is mannes Ioye and al his blis.  
For whan I fele a-night your softe syde,  
Al-be-it that I may nat on you ryde,  
For that our perche is maad so narwe, alas!  
I am so ful of Ioye and of solas4360  
That I defye bothe sweven and dreem.’(351)  
And with that word he fley doun fro the beam,  
For it was day, and eek his hennes alle;  
And with a chuk he gan hem for to calle,  
For he had founde a corn, lay in the yerd.4365  
Royal he was, he was namore aferd;  
He fethered Pertelote twenty tyme,  
And trad as ofte, er that it was pryme.  
He loketh as it were a grim leoun;  
And on his toos he rometh up and doun,4370  
Him deynd not to sette his foot to grounde.(361)  
He chukketh, whan he hath a corn y-founde,  
And to him rennen thanne his wyves alle.  
Thus royal, as a prince is in his halle,  
Leve I this Chauntecleer in his pasture;4375  
And after wol I telle his aventure.  
Whan that the month in which the world bigan,  
That highte March, whan god first maked man,  
Was complet, and [y]-passed were also,  
Sin March bigan, thritty dayes and two,4380  
Bifel that Chauntecleer, in al his pryde,(371)  
His seven wyves walking by his syde,  
Caste up his eyen to the brighte sonne,  
That in the signe of Taurus hadde y-ronne  
Twenty degrees and oon, and somewhat more;4385  
And knew by kynde, and by noon other lore,  
That it was pryme, and crew with blisful stevene.

‘The sonne,’ he sayde, ‘is clomben up on hevene  
Fourty degrees and oon, and more, y-wis.  
Madame Pertelote, my worldes blis,4390  
Herkneth thise blisful briddes how they singe,(381)  
And see the fresshe floures how they springe;  
Ful is myn herte of revel and solas.’  
But sodeinly him fil a sorweful cas;  
For ever the latter ende of Ioye is wo.4395  
God woot that worldly Ioye is sone ago;  
And if a rethor coude faire endyte,  
He in a cronique saufly mighte it wryte,  
As for a sovereyn notabilitee.  
Now every wys man, lat him herkne me;4400  
This storie is al-so trewe, I undertake,(391)  
As is the book of Launcelot de Lake,  
That wommen holde in ful gret reverence.  
Now wol I torne agayn to my sentence.  
A col-fox, ful of sly iniquitee,4405  
That in the grove hadde woned yeres three,  
By heigh imaginacioun forn-cast,  
The same night thurgh-out the hegges brast  
Into the yerd, ther Chauntecleer the faire  
Was wont, and eek his wyves, to repaire;4410  
And in a bed of wortes stille he lay,(401)  
Til it was passed undern of the day,  
Wayting his tyme on Chauntecleer to falle,  
As gladly doon thise homicydes alle,  
That in awayt liggen to mordre men.4415  
O false mordrer, lurking in thy den!  
O newe Scariot, newe Genilon!  
False dissimilour, O Greek Sinon,  
That broghtest Troye al outrely to sorwe!  
O Chauntecleer, acursed be that morwe,4420  
That thou into that yerd flough fro the bemes!(411)  
Thou were ful wel y-warned by thy dremes,  
That thilke day was perilous to thee.  
But what that god forwoot mot nedes be,  
After the opinioun of certeyn clerkis.4425  
Witnesse on him, that any perfit clerk is,  
That in scole is gret altercacioun  
In this matere, and greet disputisoun,  
And hath ben of an hundred thousand men.  
But I ne can not bulte it to the bren,4430  
As can the holy doctour Augustyn,(421)  
Or Boece, or the bishop Bradwardyn,  
Whether that goddes worthy forwiting  
Streyneth me nedely for to doon a thing,  
(Nedely clepe I simple necessitee);4435

Or elles, if free choys be graunted me  
To do that same thing, or do it noght,  
Though god forwoot it, er that it was wrought;  
Or if his witing streyneth nevere a del  
But by necessitee condicionel.4440  
I wol not han to do of swich matere;(431)  
My tale is of a cok, as ye may here,  
That took his counseil of his wyf, with sorwe,  
To walken in the yerd upon that morwe  
That he had met the dreem, that I yow tolde.4445  
Wommennes counseils been ful ofte colde;  
Wommannes counseil broghte us first to wo,  
And made Adam fro paradys to go,  
Ther-as he was ful mery, and wel at ese.  
But for I noot, to whom it mighte displese,4450  
If I counseil of wommen wolde blame,(441)  
Passe over, for I seyde it in my game.  
Rede auctours, wher they trete of swich matere,  
And what thay seyn of wommen ye may here.  
Thisse been the cokkes wordes, and nat myne;4455  
I can noon harm of no womman divyne.  
Faire in the sond, to bathe hir merily,  
Lyth Pertelote, and alle hir sustres by,  
Agayn the sonne; and Chauntecleer so free  
Song merier than the mermayde in the see;4460  
For Physiologus seith sikerly,(451)  
How that they singen wel and merily.  
And so bifel that, as he caste his yē,  
Among the wortes, on a boterflye,  
He was war of this fox that lay ful lowe.4465  
No-thing ne liste him thanne for to crowe,  
But cryde anon, ‘cok, cok,’ and up he sterte,  
As man that was affrayed in his herte.  
For naturelly a beest desyreth flee  
Fro his contrarie, if he may it see,4470  
Though he never erst had seyn it with his yē.(461)  
This Chauntecleer, whan he gan him espye,  
He wolde han fled, but that the fox anon  
Seyde, ‘Gentil sire, allas! wher wol ye gon?  
Be ye affrayed of me that am your freend?4475  
Now certes, I were worse than a feend,  
If I to yow wolde harm or vileinye.  
I am nat come your counseil for tespye;  
But trewely, the cause of my cominge  
Was only for to herkne how that ye singe.4480  
For trewely ye have as mery a stevene(471)  
As eny aungel hath, that is in hevene;  
Therwith ye han in musik more felinge

Than hadde Boece, or any that can singe.  
My lord your fader (god his soule blesse!)4485  
And eek your moder, of hir gentillesse,  
Han in myn hous y-been, to my gret ese;  
And certes, sire, ful fayn wolde I yow plese.  
But for men speke of singing, I wol saye,  
So mote I brouke wel myn eyen tweye,4490  
Save yow, I herde never man so singe,(481)  
As dide your fader in the morweninge;  
Certes, it was of herte, al that he song.  
And for to make his voys the more strong,  
He wolde so peyne him, that with bothe his yën4495  
He moste winke, so loude he wolde cryen,  
And stonden on his tiptoon ther-with-al,  
And strecche forth his nekke long and smal.  
And eek he was of swich discrecioun,  
That ther nas no man in no regioun4500  
That him in song or wisdom mighte passe.(491)  
I have wel rad in daun Burnel the Asse,  
Among his vers, how that ther was a cok,  
For that a preestes sone yaf him a knob  
Upon his leg, whyl he was yong and nyce,4505  
He made him for to lese his benefyce.  
But certeyn, ther nis no comparisoun  
Bitwix the wisdom and discrecioun  
Of youre fader, and of his subtiltee.  
Now singeth, sire, for seinte charitee,4510  
Let see, conne ye your fader countrefete?’(501)  
This Chauntecleer his winges gan to bete,  
As man that coude his tresoun nat espye,  
So was he ravished with his flaterye.  
Allas! ye lordes, many a fals flatour4515  
Is in your courtes, and many a losengeour,  
That plesen yow wel more, by my feith,  
Than he that soothfastnesse unto yow seith.  
Redeth Ecclesiaste of flaterye;  
Beth war, ye lordes, of hir trecherye.4520  
This Chauntecleer stood hye up-on his toos,(511)  
Strecching his nekke, and heeld his eyen cloos,  
And gan to crowe loude for the nones;  
And daun Russel the fox sterte up at ones,  
And by the gargat hente Chauntecleer,4525  
And on his bak toward the wode him beer,  
For yet ne was ther no man that him sewed.  
O destinee, that mayst nat been eschewed!  
Allas, that Chauntecleer fleigh fro the bemes!  
Allas, his wyf ne roghte nat of dremes!4530  
And on a Friday fil al this meschaunce.(521)



O Venus, that art goddesse of plesaunce,  
Sin that thy servant was this Chauntecleer,  
And in thy service dide al his poweer,  
More for delyt, than world to multiplye,4535  
Why woldestow suffre him on thy day to dye?  
O Gaufred, dere mayster soverayn,  
That, whan thy worthy king Richard was slayn  
With shot, compleynedest his deth so sore,  
Why ne hadde I now thy sentence and thy lore,4540  
The Friday for to chide, as diden ye?(531)  
(For on a Friday soothly slayn was he.)  
Than wolde I shewe yow how that I coude pleyne  
For Chauntecleres drede, and for his peyne.  
Certes, swich cry ne lamentacioun4545  
Was never of ladies maad, whan Ilioun  
Was wonne, and Pirrus with his streite swerd,  
Whan he hadde hent king Priam by the berd,  
And slayn him (as saith us *Eneydos*),  
As maden alle the hennes in the clos,4550  
Whan they had seyn of Chauntecleer the sighte.(541)  
But sovereynly dame Pertelote shrighite,  
Ful louder than dide Hasdrubales wyf,  
Whan that hir housbond hadde lost his lyf,  
And that the Romayns hadde brend Cartage;4555  
She was so ful of torment and of rage,  
That wilfully into the fyr she sterte,  
And brende hir-selven with a stedfast herte.  
O woful hennes, right so cryden ye,  
As, whan that Nero brende the citee4560  
Of Rome, cryden senatoures wyves,(551)  
For that hir housbondes losten alle hir lyves;  
Withouten gilt this Nero hath hem slayn.  
Now wol I torne to my tale agayn:—  
This sely widwe, and eek hir doghtres two,4565  
Herden thise hennes crye and maken wo,  
And out at dores sterten they anoon,  
And syen the fox toward the grove goon,  
And bar upon his bak the cok away;  
And cryden, ‘Out! harrow! and weylaway!4570  
Ha, ha, the fox!’ and after him they ran,(561)  
And eek with staves many another man;  
Ran Colle our dogge, and Talbot, and Gerland,  
And Malkin, with a distaf in hir hand;  
Ran cow and calf, and eek the verray hogges4575  
So were they fered for berking of the dogges  
And shouting of the men and wimmen eke,  
They ronne so, hem thoughte hir herte breke.  
They yelleden as feendes doon in helle;

The dokes cryden as men wolde hem quelle;4580  
 The gees for fere flowen over the trees;(571)  
 Out of the hyve cam the swarm of bees;  
 So hidous was the noyse, a! *benedicite!*  
 Certes, he Iakke Straw, and his meynee,  
 Ne made never shoutes half so shrille,4585  
 Whan that they wolden any Fleming kille,  
 As thilke day was maad upon the fox.  
 Of bras thay broghten bemes, and of box,  
 Of horn, of boon, in whiche they blewe and pouped,  
 And therwithal thay shryked and they houped;4590  
 It semed as that heven sholde falle.(581)  
 Now, gode men, I pray yow herkneth alle!  
 Lo, how fortune turneth sodeinly  
 The hope and pryde eek of hir enemy!  
 This cok, that lay upon the foxes bak,4595  
 In al his drede, un-to the fox he spak,  
 And seyde, ‘sire, if that I were as ye,  
 Yet sholde I seyn (as wis god helpe me),  
 Turneth agayn, ye proude cherles alle!  
 A verray pestilence up-on yow falle!4600  
 Now am I come un-to this wodes syde,(591)  
 Maugree your heed, the cok shal heer abyde;  
 I wol him ete in feith, and that anon.’—  
 The fox answerde, ‘in feith, it shal be don,’—  
 And as he spak that word, al sodeinly4605  
 This cok brak from his mouth deliverly,  
 And heighe up-on a tree he fleigh anon.  
 And whan the fox saugh that he was y-gon,  
 ‘Allas!’ quod he, ‘O Chauntecleer, allas!  
 I have to yow,’ quod he, ‘y-doon trespas,4610  
 In-as-muche as I maked yow aferd,(601)  
 Whan I yow hente, and broghte out of the yerd;  
 But, sire, I dide it in no wikke entente;  
 Com doun, and I shal telle yow what I mente.  
 I shal seye sooth to yow, god help me so.’4615  
 ‘Nay than,’ quod he, ‘I shrewe us bothe two,  
 And first I shrewe my-self, bothe blood and bones,  
 If thou bigyle me ofter than ones.  
 Thou shalt na-more, thurgh thy flaterye,  
 Do me to singe and winke with myn yē.4620  
 For he that winketh, whan he sholde see,(611)  
 Al wilfully, god lat him never thee!’  
 ‘Nay,’ quod the fox, ‘but god yeve him meschaunce,  
 That is so undiscreet of governaunce,  
 That Iangleth whan he sholde holde his pees.’4625  
 Lo, swich it is for to be recchelees,  
 And necligent, and truste on flaterye.

But ye that holden this tale a folye,  
As of a fox, or of a cok and hen,  
Taketh the moralitee, good men.4630  
For seint Paul seith, that al that writen is,(621)  
To our doctryne it is y-write, y-wis.  
Taketh the fruyt, and lat the chaf be stille.  
Now, gode god, if that it be thy wille,  
As seith my lord, so make us alle good men;4635  
And bringe us to his heighe blisse. Amen.

Here is ended the Nonne Preestes Tale.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## EPILOGUE TO THE NONNE PREESTES TALE.

‘SIR Nonnes Preest,’ our hoste seyde anoon,  
‘Y-blessed be thy breche, and every stoon!  
This was a mery tale of Chauntecleer.  
But, by my trouthe, if thou were seculer,4640  
Thou woldest been a trede-foul a-right.  
For, if thou have corage as thou hast might,  
Thee were nede of hennes, as I wene,  
Ya, mo than seven tymes seventene.  
See, whiche braunes hath this gentil Preest,4645  
So greet a nekke, and swich a large breest!(10)  
He loketh as a sperhawk with his yen;  
Him nedeth nat his colour for to dyen  
With brasil, ne with greyn of Portingale.  
Now sire, faire falle yow for youre tale!’4650  
And after that he, with ful mery chere,  
Seide to another, as ye shullen here.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## GROUP C.

### THE PHISICIENS TALE. (T. 11935-11957.)

\*?\* *For a spurious Prologue, see p. 289.*

Here folweth the Phisiciens Tale.

THER was, as telleth Titus Livius,  
A knight that called was Virginius,  
Fulfil of honour and of worthinesse,  
And strong of freendes and of greet richesse.  
This knight a doghter hadde by his wyf,<sup>5</sup>  
No children hadde he mo in al his lyf.  
Fair was this mayde in excellent beautee  
Aboven every wight that man may see;  
For nature hath with sovereyn diligence  
Y-formed hir in so greet excellence,<sup>10</sup>  
As though she wolde seyn, 'lo! I, Nature,  
Thus can I forme and peynte a creature,  
Whan that me list; who can me countrefete?  
Pigmalion noght, though he ay forge and bete,  
Or grave, or peynte; for I dar wel seyn,<sup>15</sup>  
Apelles, Zanzis, sholde werche in veyn,  
Outher to grave or peynte or forge or bete,  
If they presumed me to countrefete.  
For he that is the former principal  
Hath maked me his vicaire general,<sup>20</sup>  
To forme and peynten erthely creaturis  
Right as me list, and ech thing in my cure is  
Under the mone, that may wane and waxe,  
And for my werk right no-thing wol I axe;  
My lord and I ben ful of oon accord;<sup>25</sup>  
I made hir to the worship of my lord.  
So do I alle myne othere creatures,  
What colour that they han, or what figures.'—  
Thus semeth me that Nature wolde seye.  
This mayde of age twelf yeer was and tweye,<sup>30</sup>  
In which that Nature hadde swich delyt.  
For right as she can peynte a lilie whyt  
And reed a rose, right with swich peynture  
She peynted hath this noble creature  
Er she were born, up-on hir limes free,<sup>35</sup>  
Wher-as by right swiche colours sholde be;

And Phebus dyed hath hir tresses grete  
Lyk to the stremes of his burned hete.  
And if that excellent was hir beautee,  
A thousand-fold more vertuouus was she.40  
In hir ne lakked no condicioun,  
That is to preyse, as by discrecioun.  
As wel in goost as body chast was she;  
For which she floured in virginitee  
With alle humilitee and abstinence,45  
With alle attemperaunce and pacience,  
With mesure eek of bering and array.  
Discreet she was in answering alway;  
Though she were wys as Pallas, dar I seyn,  
Hir facound eek ful wommanly and pleyn,50  
No countrefeted termes hadde she  
To seme wys; but after hir degree  
She spak, and alle hir wordes more and lesse  
Souninge in vertu and in gentillesse.  
Shamfast she was in maydens shamfastnesse,55  
Constant in herte, and ever in bisnesse  
To dryve hir out of ydel slogardye.  
Bacus hadde of hir mouth right no maistrye;  
For wyn and youthe doon Venus encrece,  
As men in fyr wol casten oile or grece.60  
And of hir owene vertu, unconstreyned,  
She hath ful ofte tyme syk hir feyned,  
For that she wolde fleen the companye  
Wher lykly was to treten of folye,  
As is at festes, revels, and at daunces,65  
That been occasions of daliaunces.  
Swich thinges maken children for to be  
To sone rype and bold, as men may see,  
Which is ful perilous, and hath ben yore.  
For al to sone may she lerne lore70  
Of boldnesse, whan she woxen is a wyf.  
And ye maistresses in your olde lyf,  
That lordes doghtres han in governaunce,  
Ne taketh of my wordes no displesaunce;  
Thenketh that ye ben set in governinges75  
Of lordes doghtres, only for two thinges;  
Outher for ye han kept your honestee,  
Or elles ye han falle in freletee,  
And knowen wel y-nough the olde daunce,  
And han forsaken fully swich meschaunce80  
For evermo; therfore, for Cristes sake,  
To teche hem vertu loke that ye ne slake.  
A thief of venisoun, that hath forlaft  
His likerousnesse, and al his olde craft,

Can kepe a forest best of any man.85  
Now kepeth hem wel, for if ye wol, ye can;  
Loke wel that ye un-to no vice assente,  
Lest ye be dampned for your wikke entente;  
For who-so doth, a traitour is certeyn.  
And taketh kepe of that that I shal seyn;90  
Of alle tresons sovereyn pestilence  
Is whan a wight bitrayseth innocence.  
Ye fadres and ye modres eek also,  
Though ye han children, be it oon or two,  
Your is the charge of al hir surveyaunce,95  
Whyl that they been under your governaunce.  
Beth war that by ensample of your livinge,  
Or by your necligence in chastisinge,  
That they ne perisse; for I dar wel seye,  
If that they doon, ye shul it dere abeye.100  
Under a shepherde softe and necligent  
The wolf hath many a sheep and lamb to-rent.  
Suffyseth oon ensample now as here,  
For I mot turne agayn to my matere.  
This mayde, of which I wol this tale expresse,105  
So kepte hir-self, hir neded no maistresse;  
For in hir living maydens mighten rede,  
As in a book, every good word or dede,  
That longeth to a mayden vertuuous;  
She was so prudent and so bountevous.110  
For which the fame out-sprong on every syde  
Bothe of hir beautee and hir bountee wyde;  
That thurgh that land they preysed hir echone,  
That loved vertu, save envye allone,  
That sory is of other mennes wele,115  
And glad is of his sorwe and his unhele;  
(The doctour maketh this descripcioun).  
This mayde up-on a day wente in the toun  
Toward a temple, with hir moder dere,  
As is of yonge maydens the manere.120  
Now was ther thanne a Iustice in that toun,  
That governour was of that regioun.  
And so bifel, this Iuge his eyen caste  
Up-on this mayde, avysinge him ful faste,  
As she cam forby ther this Iuge stood.125  
Anon his herte chaunged and his mood,  
So was he caught with beautee of this mayde;  
And to him-self ful prively he sayde,  
'This mayde shal be myn, for any man.'  
Anon the feend in-to his herte ran,130  
And taughte him sodeynly, that he by slighte  
The mayden to his purpos winne mighte.

For certes, by no force, ne by no mede,  
Him thoughte, he was nat able for to spede;  
For she was strong of freendes, and eek she<sup>135</sup>  
Confermed was in swich soverayn bountee,  
That wel he wiste he mighte hir never winne  
As for to make hir with hir body sinne.  
For which, by greet deliberacioun,  
He sente after a cherl, was in the toun,<sup>140</sup>  
Which that he knew for subtil and for bold.  
This Iuge un-to this cherl his tale hath told  
In secree wyse, and made him to ensure,  
He sholde telle it to no creature,  
And if he dide, he sholde lese his heed.<sup>145</sup>  
Whan that assented was this cursed reed,  
Glad was this Iuge and maked him greet chere,  
And yaf hym yiftes preciouise and dere.  
Whan shapen was al hir conspiracye  
Fro point to point, how that his lecherye<sup>150</sup>  
Parfourned sholde been ful subtilly,  
As ye shul here it after openly,  
Hoom gooth the cherl, that highte Claudius.  
This false Iuge that highte Apius,  
So was his name, (for this is no fable,<sup>155</sup>  
But knowen for historial thing notable,  
The sentence of it sooth is, out of doute),  
This false Iuge gooth now faste aboute  
To hasten his delyt al that he may.  
And so bifel sone after, on a day,<sup>160</sup>  
This false Iuge, as telleth us the storie,  
As he was wont, sat in his consistorie,  
And yaf his domes up-on sondry cas.  
This false cherl cam forth a ful greet pas,  
And seyde, 'lord, if that it be your wille,<sup>165</sup>  
As dooth me right up-on this pitous bille,  
In which I pleyne up-on Virginus.  
And if that he wol seyn it is nat thus,  
I wol it preve, and finde good witesse,  
That sooth is that my bille wol expresse.'<sup>170</sup>  
The Iuge answerde, 'of this, in his absence,  
I may nat yeve diffinitif sentence.  
Lat do him calle, and I wol gladly here;  
Thou shalt have al right, and no wrong here.'  
Virginus cam, to wite the Iuges wille,<sup>175</sup>  
And right anon was rad this cursed bille;  
The sentence of it was as ye shul here.  
'To yow, my lord, sire Apius so dere,  
Sheweth your povre servant Claudius,  
How that a knight, called Virginus,<sup>180</sup>



Agayns the lawe, agayn al equitee,  
Holdeth, expres agayn the wil of me,  
My servant, which that is my thral by right,  
Which fro myn hous was stole up-on a night,  
Why! that she was ful yong; this wol I preve<sup>185</sup>  
By witnesse, lord, so that it nat yow greve.  
She nis his doghter nat, what so he seye;  
Wherfore to yow, my lord the Iuge, I preye,  
Yeld me my thral, if that it be your wille.’  
Lo! this was al the sentence of his bille.<sup>190</sup>  
Virginus gan up-on the cherl biholde,  
But hastily, er he his tale tolde,  
And wolde have preved it, as sholde a knight,  
And eek by witnessing of many a wight,  
That it was fals that seyde his adversarie,<sup>195</sup>  
This cursed Iuge wolde no-thing tarie,  
Ne here a word more of Virginus,  
But yaf his Iugement, and seyde thus:—  
‘I deme anon this cherl his servant have;  
Thou shalt no lenger in thyn hous hir save.<sup>200</sup>  
Go bring hir forth, and put hir in our warde,  
The cherl shal have his thral, this I awarde.’  
And whan this worthy knight Virginus,  
Thurgh sentence of this Iustice Apius,  
Moste by force his dere doghter yiven<sup>205</sup>  
Un-to the Iuge, in lecherye to liven,  
He gooth him hoom, and sette him in his halle,  
And leet anon his dere doghter calle,  
And, with a face deed as assen colde,  
Upon hir humble face he gan biholde,<sup>210</sup>  
With fadres pitee stiking thurgh his herte,  
Al wolde he from his purpose nat converte.  
‘Doghter,’ quod he, ‘Virginia, by thy name,  
Ther been two weyes, outhere deeth or shame,  
That thou most suffre; allas! that I was bore!<sup>215</sup>  
For never thou deservedest wherfore  
To dyen with a swerd or with a knyf.  
O dere doghter, ender of my lyf,  
Which I have fostred up with swich plesaunce,  
That thou were never out of my remembraunce!<sup>220</sup>  
O doghter, which that art my laste wo,  
And in my lyf my laste Ioye also,  
O gemme of chastitee, in pacience  
Take thou thy deeth, for this is my sentence.  
For love and nat for hate, thou most be deed;<sup>225</sup>  
My pitous hand mot smyten of thyn heed.  
Allas! that ever Apius thee say!  
Thus hath he falsly Iuged thee to-day’—

And tolde hir al the cas, as ye bifore  
Han herd; nat nedeth for to telle it more.230  
'O mercy, dere fader,' quod this mayde,  
And with that word she both hir armes layde  
About his nekke, as she was wont to do:  
The teres broste out of hir eyen two,  
And seyde, 'gode fader, shal I dye?235  
Is ther no grace? is ther no remedye?'  
'No, certes, dere doghter myn,' quod he.  
'Thanne yif me leyser, fader myn,' quod she,  
'My deeth for to compleyne a litel space;  
For pardee, Iepte yaf his doghter grace240  
For to compleyne, er he hir slow, allas!  
And god it woot, no-thing was hir trespas,  
But for she ran hir fader first to see,  
To welcome him with greet solempnitee.'  
And with that word she fil aswowne anon,245  
And after, whan hir swowning is agon,  
She ryseth up, and to hir fader sayde,  
'Blessed be god, that I shal dye a mayde.  
Yif me my deeth, er that I have a shame;  
Doth with your child your wil, a goddes name!'250  
And with that word she preyed him ful ofte,  
That with his swerd he wolde smyte softe,  
And with that word aswowne doun she fil.  
Hir fader, with ful sorweful herte and wil,  
Hir heed of smoot, and by the top it hente,255  
And to the Iuge he gan it to presente,  
As he sat yet in doom in consistorie.  
And whan the Iuge it saugh, as seith the storie,  
He bad to take him and anhange him faste.  
But right anon a thousand peple in thraste,260  
To save the knight, for routhe and for pitee,  
For knowen was the false iniquitee.  
The peple anon hath suspect of this thing,  
By manere of the cherles chalanging,  
That it was by the assent of Apius;265  
They wisten wel that he was lecherous.  
For which un-to this Apius they gon,  
And caste him in a prison right anon,  
Wher-as he slow him-self; and Claudius,  
That servant was un-to this Apius,270  
Was demed for to hange upon a tree;  
But that Virginius, of his pitee,  
So preyde for him that he was exyled;  
And elles, certes, he had been bigyled.  
The remenant were anhanged, more and lesse,275  
That were consentant of this cursednesse.—

Heer men may seen how sinne hath his meryte!  
Beth war, for no man woot whom god wol smyte  
In no degree, ne in which maner wyse  
The worm of conscience may agryse<sup>280</sup>  
Of wikked lyf, though it so privee be,  
That no man woot ther-of but god and he.  
For be he lewed man, or elles lered,  
He noot how sone that he shal been afered.  
Therefore I rede yow this conseil take,<sup>285</sup>  
Forsaketh sinne, er sinne yow forsake.

Here endeth the Phisiciens tale.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## WORDS OF THE HOST. (T. 12221-12239.)

The wordes of the Host to the Phisicien and the Pardoner.

OUR Hoste gan to swere as he were wood,  
‘Harrow!’ quod he, ‘by nayles and by blood!  
This was a fals cherl and a fals Iustyse!  
As shamful deeth as herte may devyse<sup>290</sup>  
Come to thise Iuges and hir advocats!  
Algate this sely mayde is slayn, allas!  
Allas! to dere boghte she beautee!  
Wherfore I seye al day, as men may see,  
That yiftes of fortune or of nature<sup>295</sup>  
Ben cause of deeth to many a creature.(10)  
Hir beautee was hir deeth, I dar wel sayn;  
Allas! so pitously as she was slayn!  
Of bothe yiftes that I speke of now  
Men han ful ofte more harm than prow.<sup>300</sup>  
But trewely, myn owene mayster dere,  
This is a pitous tale for to here.  
But natheles, passe over, is no fors;  
I prey to god, so save thy gentil cors,  
And eek thyne urinals and thy Iordanes,<sup>305</sup>  
Thyn Ypocras, and eek thy Galianes,(20)  
And every boist ful of thy letuarie;  
God blesse hem, and our lady seinte Marie!  
So mot I theen, thou art a propre man,  
And lyk a prelat, by saint Ronyan!<sup>310</sup>  
Seyde I nat wel? I can nat speke in terme;  
But wel I woot, thou doost my herte to erme,  
That I almost have caught a cardiacle.  
By corpus bones! but I have triacle,  
Or elles a draught of moyste and corny ale,<sup>315</sup>  
Or but I here anon a mery tale,(30)  
Myn herte is lost for pitee of this mayde.  
Thou bel amy, thou Pardoner,’ he seyde,  
‘Tel us som mirthe or Iapes right anon.’  
‘It shall be doon,’ quod he, ‘by saint Ronyon!<sup>320</sup>  
But first,’ quod he, ‘heer at this ale-stake  
I wol both drinke, and eten of a cake.’  
But right anon thise gentils gonne to crye,  
‘Nay! lat him telle us of no ribaudye;  
Tel us som moral thing, that we may lere<sup>325</sup>  
Som wit, and thanne wol we gladly here.’(40)

‘I graunte, y-wis,’ quod he, ‘but I mot thinke  
Up-on som honest thing, whyl that I drinke.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## THE PROLOGUE OF THE PARDONERS TALE. (T. 12263-12288).

Here folweth the Prologe of the Pardoners Tale.

*Radix malorum est Cupiditas: Ad Thimotheum, sexto.*

LORDINGS,' quod he, 'in chirches whan I preche,  
I peyne me to han an hauteyn speche,330  
And ringe it out as round as gooth a belle,  
For I can al by rote that I telle.  
My theme is alwey oon, and ever was—  
"Radix malorum est Cupiditas."  
First I pronounce whennes that I come,335  
And than my bulles shewe I, alle and somme.  
Our lige lordes seel on my patente,  
That shewe I first, my body to warente,(10)  
That no man be so bold, ne preest ne clerk,  
Me to destourbe of Cristes holy werk;340  
And after that than telle I forth my tales,  
Bulles of popes and of cardinales,  
Of patriarkes, and bishoppes I shewe;  
And in Latyn I speke a wordes fewe,  
To saffron with my predicacioun,345  
And for to stire men to devocioun.  
Than shewe I forth my longe cristal stones,  
Y-crammed ful of cloutes and of bones;(20)  
Reliks been they, as wenen they echoon  
Than have I in latoun a sholder-boon350  
Which that was of an holy Iewes shepe.  
"Good men," seye I, "tak of my wordes kepe;  
If that this boon be wasshe in any welle,  
If cow, or calf, or sheep, or oxe swelle  
That any worm hath ete, or worm y-stonge,355  
Tak water of that welle, and wash his tonge,  
And it is hool anon; and forthermore,  
Of pokkes and of scabbe, and every sore(30)  
Shal every sheep be hool, that of this welle  
Drinketh a draughte; tak kepe eek what I telle.360  
If that the good-man, that the bestes oweth,  
Wol every wike, er that the cok him croweth,  
Fastinge, drinken of this welle a draughte,  
As thilke holy Iewe our eldres taughte,  
His bestes and his stoor shal multiplie.365  
And, sirs, also it heleth Ialousye;

For, though a man be falle in Ialous rage,  
Let maken with this water his potage,(40)  
And never shal he more his wyf mistriste,  
Though he the sooth of hir defaute wiste;370  
Al had she taken preestes two or three.  
Heer is a miteyn eek, that ye may see.  
He that his hond wol putte in this miteyn,  
He shal have multiplying of his greyn,  
Whan he hath sowen, be it whete or otes,375  
So that he offre pens, or elles grotes.  
Good men and wommen, o thing warne I yow,  
If any wight be in this chirche now,(50)  
That hath doon sinne horrible, that he  
Dar nat, for shame, of it y-shriven be,380  
Or any womman, be she yong or old,  
That hath y-maad hir housbond cokewold,  
Swich folk shul have no power ne no grace  
To offren to my reliks in this place.  
And who-so findeth him out of swich blame,385  
He wol com up and offre in goddes name,  
And I assoille him by the auctoritee  
Which that by bulle y-graunted was to me.”(60)  
By this gaude have I wonne, yeer by yeer,  
An hundred mark sith I was Pardoner.390  
I stonde lyk a clerk in my pulpet,  
And whan the lewed peple is down y-set,  
I preche, so as ye han herd bifore,  
And telle an hundred false Iapes more.  
Than payne I me to strecche forth the nekke,395  
And est and west upon the peple I bekke,  
As doth a dowve sitting on a berne.  
Myn hondes and my tonge goon so yerne,(70)  
That it is Ioye to see my bisnesse.  
Of avaryce and of swich cursednesse400  
Is al my preching, for to make hem free  
To yeve her pens, and namely un-to me.  
For my entente is nat but for to winne,  
And no-thing for correccioun of sinne.  
I rekke never, whan that they ben beried,405  
Though that her soules goon a-blakeberied!  
For certes, many a predicacioun  
Comth ofte tyme of yvel entencioun;(80)  
Som for plesaunce of folk and flaterye,  
To been avaunced by ipocrisye,410  
And som for veyne glorie, and som for hate.  
For, whan I dar non other weyes debate,  
Than wol I stinge him with my tonge smerte  
In preching, so that he shal nat asterte

To been defamed falsly, if that he<sup>415</sup>  
Hath trespassed to my brethren or to me.  
For, though I telle noght his propre name,  
Men shal wel knowe that it is the same<sup>(90)</sup>  
By signes and by othere circumstances.  
Thus quyte I folk that doon us displesances;<sup>420</sup>  
Thus spitte I out my venim under hewe  
Of holynesse, to seme holy and trewe.  
But shortly myn entente I wol devyse;  
I preche of no-thing but for coveityse.  
Therfor my theme is yet, and ever was—<sup>425</sup>  
*“Radix malorum est cupiditas.”*  
Thus can I preche agayn that same vyce  
Which that I use, and that is avaryce.<sup>(100)</sup>  
But, though my-self be guilty in that sinne,  
Yet can I maken other folk to twinne<sup>430</sup>  
From avaryce, and sore to repente.  
But that is nat my principal entente.  
I preche no-thing but for coveityse;  
Of this matere it oughte y-nogh suffyse.  
Than telle I hem ensamples many oon<sup>435</sup>  
Of olde stories, longe tyme agoon:  
For lewed peple loven tales olde;  
Swich thinges can they wel reporte and holde.<sup>(110)</sup>  
What? trowe ye, the whyles I may preche,  
And winne gold and silver for I teche,<sup>440</sup>  
That I wol live in povert wilfully?  
Nay, nay, I thoghte it never trewely!  
For I wol preche and begge in sondry londes;  
I wol not do no labour with myn hondes,  
Ne make baskettes, and live therby,<sup>445</sup>  
Because I wol nat beggen ydelly.  
I wol non of the apostles counterfete;  
I wol have money, wolle, chese, and whete,<sup>(120)</sup>  
Al were it yeven of the povrest page,  
Or of the povrest widwe in a village,<sup>450</sup>  
Al sholde hir children sterve for famyne.  
Nay! I wol drinke licour of the vyne,  
And have a Ioly wenche in every toun.  
But herkneth, lordings, in conclusioun;  
Your lyking is that I shal telle a tale.<sup>455</sup>  
Now, have I dronke a draughte of corny ale,  
By god, I hope I shal yow telle a thing  
That shal, by resoun, been at your lyking.<sup>(130)</sup>  
For, though myself be a ful vicious man,  
A moral tale yet I yow telle can,<sup>460</sup>  
Which I am wont to preche, for to winne.  
Now holde your pees, my tale I wol beginne.



[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

THE PARDONERS TALE.  
*(Numbered In Continuation Of The Preceding.)*

Here biginneth the Pardoners Tale.

IN Flaundes whylom was a companye  
Of yonge folk, that haunteden folye,  
As ryot, hasard, stewes, and tavernes,465  
Wher-as, with harpes, lutes, and giternes,  
They daunce and pleye at dees bothe day and night,  
And ete also and drinken over hir might,(140)  
Thurgh which they doon the devel sacrifice  
With-in that develes temple, in cursed wyse,470  
By superfluitee abhominable;  
Hir othes been so grete and so dampnable,  
That it is grisly for to here hem swere;  
Our blissed lordes body they to-tere;  
Hem thoughte Iewes rente him nocht y-nough;475  
And ech of hem at otheres sinne lough.  
And right anon than comen tombesteres  
Fetys and smale, and yonge fruyteteres,(150)  
Singers with harpes, baudes, wafereres,  
Whiche been the verray develes officeres480  
To kindle and blowe the fyr of lecherye,  
That is annexed un-to glotonye;  
The holy writ take I to my witesse,  
That luxurie is in wyn and dronkenesse.  
Lo, how that dronken Loth, unkindely,485  
Lay by his doghtres two, unwitingly;  
So dronke he was, he niste what he wroghte.  
Herodes, (who-so wel the stories soghte),(160)  
Whan he of wyn was replet at his feste,  
Right at his owene table he yaf his heste490  
To sleen the Baptist Iohn ful giltelees.  
Senek seith eek a good word doutelees;  
He seith, he can no difference finde  
Bitwix a man that is out of his minde  
And a man which that is dronkelewe,495  
But that woodnesse, y-fallen in a shrewe,  
Persevereth lenger than doth dronkenesse.  
O glotonye, ful of cursednesse,(170)  
O cause first of our confusioun,  
O original of our dampnacioun,500  
Til Crist had boght us with his blood agayn!  
Lo, how dere, shortly for to sayn,

Aboght was thilke cursed vileinye;  
Corrupt was al this world for glotonye!  
Adam our fader, and his wyf also,505  
Fro Paradys to labour and to wo  
Were driven for that vyce, it is no drede;  
For whyl that Adam fasted, as I rede,(180)  
He was in Paradys; and whan that he  
Eet of the fruyt defended on the tree,510  
Anon he was out-cast to wo and peyne.  
O glotonye, on thee wel oghte us pleyne!  
O, wiste a man how many maladyes  
Folwen of excesse and of glotonyes,  
He wolde been the more mesurable515  
Of his diete, sittinge at his table.  
Allas! the shorte throte, the tendre mouth,  
Maketh that, Est and West, and North and South,(190)  
In erthe, in eir, in water men to-swinke  
To gete a glotoun deyntee mete and drinke!520  
Of this matere, o Paul, wel canstow trete,  
'Mete un-to wombe, and wombe eek un-to mete,  
Shal god destroyen bothe,' as Paulus seith.  
Allas! a foul thing is it, by my feith,  
To seye this word, and fouler is the dede,525  
Whan man so drinketh of the whyte and rede,  
That of his throte he maketh his privee,  
Thurgh thilke cursed superfluitee.(200)  
The apostel weping seith ful pitously,  
'Ther walken many of whiche yow told have I,530  
I seye it now weping with pitous voys,  
That they been enemys of Cristes croys,  
Of whiche the ende is deeth, wombe is her god.'  
O wombe! O bely! O stinking cod,  
Fulfilde of donge and of corrupcioun!535  
At either ende of thee foul is the soun.  
How greet labour and cost is thee to finde!  
Thise cokes, how they stampe, and streyne, and grinde,(210)  
And turnen substaunce in-to accident,  
To fulfille al thy likerous talent!540  
Out of the harde bones knokke they  
The mary, for they caste noght a-wey  
That may go thurgh the golet softe and swote;  
Of spicerye, of leef, and bark, and rote  
Shal been his sauce y-maked by delyt,545  
To make him yet a newer appetyt  
But certes, he that haunteth swich delyces  
Is deed, whyl that he liveth in tho vyces.(220)  
A lecherous thing is wyn, and dronkenesse  
Is ful of stryving and of wrecchednesse.550

O dronke man, disfigured is thy face,  
Sour is thy breath, foul artow to embrace,  
And thurgh thy dronke nose semeth the soun  
As though thou seydest ay ‘Sampsoun, Sampsoun’;  
And yet, god wot, Sampsoun drank never no wyn.555  
Thou fallest, as it were a stiked swyn;  
Thy tonge is lost, and al thyn honest cure;  
For dronkenesse is verray sepulture(230)  
Of mannes wit and his discrecioun.  
In whom that drinke hath dominacioun,560  
He can no conseil kepe, it is no drede.  
Now kepe yow fro the whyte and fro the rede,  
And namely fro the whyte wyn of Lepe,  
That is to selle in Fish-strete or in Chepe.  
This wyn of Spayne crepeth subtilly565  
In othere wynes, growing faste by,  
Of which ther ryseth swich fumositee,  
That whan a man hath dronken draughtes three,(240)  
And weneth that he be at hoom in Chepe,  
He is in Spayne, right at the toune of Lepe,570  
Nat at the Rochel, ne at Burdeux toun;  
And thanne wol he seye, ‘Sampsoun, Sampsoun.’  
But herkneth, lordings, o word, I yow preye,  
That alle the sovereyn actes, dar I seye,  
Of victories in the olde testament,575  
Thurgh verray god, that is omnipotent,  
Were doon in abstinence and in preyere;  
Loketh the Bible, and ther ye may it lere.(250)  
Loke, Attila, the grete conquerour,  
Deyde in his sleep, with shame and dishonour,580  
Bleding ay at his nose in dronkenesse;  
A capitayn shoulde live in sobrenesse.  
And over al this, avyseth yow right wel  
What was comaunded un-to Lamuel—  
Nat Samuel, but Lamuel, seye I—585  
Redeth the Bible, and finde it expresly  
Of wyn-yeving to hem that han Iustyse.  
Na-more of this, for it may wel suffyse.(260)  
And now that I have spoke of glotonye,  
Now wol I yow defenden hasardrye.590  
Hasard is verray moder of lesinges,  
And of deceite, and cursed forsweringes,  
BlaspHEME of Crist, manslaughter, and wast also  
Of catel and of tyme; and forthermo,  
It is repreve and contrarie of honour595  
For to ben holde a commune hasardour.  
And ever the hyer he is of estaat,  
The more is he holden desolaat.(270)

If that a prince useth hasardrye,  
In alle governaunce and policye600  
He is, as by commune opinioun,  
Y-holde the lasse in reputacioun.  
Stilbon, that was a wys embassadour,  
Was sent to Corinthe, in ful greet honour,  
Fro Lacidomie, to make hir alliaunce.605  
And whan he cam, him happede, par chaunce,  
That alle the grettest that were of that lond,  
Pleyinge atte hasard he hem fond.(280)  
For which, as sone as it mighte be,  
He stal him hoom agayn to his contree,610  
And seyde, 'ther wol I nat lese my name;  
Ne I wol nat take on me so greet defame,  
Yow for to allye un-to none hasardours.  
Sendeth othere wyse embassadours;  
For, by my trouthe, me were lever dye,615  
Than I yow sholde to hasardours allye.  
For ye that been so glorious in honours  
Shul nat allyen yow with hasardours(290)  
As by my wil, ne as by my tretee.'  
This wyse philosophre thus seyde he.620  
Loke eek that, to the king Demetrius  
The king of Parthes, as the book seith us,  
Sente him a paire of dees of gold in scorn,  
For he hadde used hasard ther-biforn;  
For which he heeld his glorie or his renoun625  
At no value or reputacioun.  
Lordes may finden other maner pley  
Honeste y-nough to dryve the day away.(300)  
Now wol I speke of othes false and grete  
A word or two, as olde bokes trete.630  
Gret swering is a thing abhominable,  
And false swering is yet more reprevable.  
The heighe god forbad swering at al,  
Witnesse on Mathew; but in special  
Of swering seith the holy Ieremye,635  
'Thou shalt seye sooth thyn othes, and nat lye,  
And swere in dome, and eek in rightwisnesse;'  
But ydel swering is a cursednesse.(310)  
Bihold and see, that in the firste table  
Of heighe goddes hestes honorable,640  
How that the seconde heste of him is this—  
'Tak nat my name in ydel or amis.'  
Lo, rather he forbedeth swich swering  
Than homicyde or many a cursed thing;  
I seye that, as by ordre, thus it stondeth;645  
This knowen, that his hestes understondeth,

How that the second heste of god is that.  
And forther over, I wol thee telle al plat,(320)  
That vengeance shal nat parten from his hous,  
That of his othes is to outrageous.650  
'By goddes precious herte, and by his nayles,  
And by the blode of Crist, that it is in Hayles,  
Seven is my chaunce, and thyn is cink and treye;  
By goddes armes, if thou falsly pleye,  
This dagger shal thurgh-out thyn herte go'—655  
This fruyt cometh of the bicched bones two,  
Forswering, ire, falsnesse, homicyde.  
Now, for the love of Crist that for us dyde,(330)  
Leveth your othes, bothe grete and smale;  
But, sirs, now wol I telle forth my tale.660  
THISE ryotoures three, of whiche I telle,  
Longe erst er pryve rong of any belle,  
Were set hem in a taverner for to drinke;  
And as they satte, they herde a belle clinke  
Biform a cors, was caried to his grave;665  
That oon of hem gan callen to his knave,  
'Go bet,' quod he, 'and axe redily,  
What cors is this that passeth heer forby;(340)  
And look that thou reporte his name wel.'  
'Sir,' quod this boy, 'it nedeth never-a-del.670  
It was me told, er ye cam heer, two houres;  
He was, pardee, an old felawe of youres;  
And sodeynly he was y-slayn to-night,  
For-dronke, as he sat on his bench upright;  
Ther cam a privee theef, men clepeth Deeth,675  
That in this contree al the peple sleeth,  
And with his spere he smoot his herte a-two,  
And wente his wey with-outen wordes mo.(350)  
He hath a thousand slayn this pestilence:  
And, maister, er ye come in his presence,680  
Me thinketh that it were necessarie  
For to be war of swich an adversarie:  
Beth redy for to mete him evermore.  
Thus taughte me my dame, I sey na-more.'  
'By seinte Marie,' seyde this taverner,685  
'The child seith sooth, for he hath slayn this yeer,  
Henne over a myle, with-in a greet village,  
Both man and womman, child and hyne, and page.(360)  
I trowe his habitacioun be there;  
To been avysed greet wisdom it were,690  
Er that he dide a man a dishonour.'  
'Ye, goddes armes,' quod this ryotour,  
'Is it swich peril with him for to mete?  
I shal him seke by wey and eek by strete,

I make avow to goddes digne bones!695  
Herkneth, felawes, we three been al ones;  
Lat ech of us holde up his hond til other,(370)  
And ech of us bicomen otheres brother,  
And we wol sleen this false traytour Deeth;  
He shal be slayn, which that so many sleeth,700  
By goddes dignitee, er it be night.  
Togidres han thise three her trouthes plight,  
To live and dyen ech of hem for other,  
As though he were his owene y-boren brother.  
And up they sterte al dronken, in this rage,705  
And forth they goon towards that village,  
Of which the taverner had spoke biforn,  
And many a grisly ooth than han they sworn,(380)  
And Cristes blessed body they to-rente—  
‘Deeth shal be deed, if that they may him hente.’710  
Whan they han goon nat fully half a myle,  
Right as they wolde han troden over a style,  
An old man and a povre with hem mette.  
This olde man ful mekely hem grette,  
And seyde thus, ‘now, lordes, god yow see!’715  
The proudest of thise ryotoures three  
Answerde agayn, ‘what? carl, with sory grace,  
Why artow al forwrapped save thy face?(390)  
Why livestow so longe in so greet age?’  
This olde man gan loke in his visage,720  
And seyde thus, ‘for I ne can nat finde  
A man, though that I walked in-to Inde,  
Neither in citee nor in no village,  
That wolde change his youthe for myn age;  
And therfore moot I han myn age stille,725  
As longe time as it is goddes wille.  
Ne deeth, allas! ne wol nat han my lyf;  
Thus walke I, lyk a resteles caityf,(400)  
And on the ground, which is my modres gate,  
I knokke with my staf, bothe erly and late,730  
And seye, “leve moder, leet me in!  
Lo, how I vanish, flesh, and blood, and skin!  
Allas! whan shul my bones been at reste?  
Moder, with yow wolde I change my cheste,  
That in my chambre longe tyme hath be,735  
Ye! for an heyre clout to wrappe me!”  
But yet to me she wol nat do that grace,  
For which ful pale and welked is my face.(410)  
But, sirs, to yow it is no curteisye  
To speken to an old man vileinye,740  
But he trespasse in worde, or elles in dede.  
In holy writ ye may your-self wel rede,

“Agayns an old man, hoor upon his heed,  
Ye sholde aryse;” wherfor I yeve yow reed,  
Ne dooth un-to an old man noon harm now, 745  
Na-more than ye wolde men dide to yow  
In age, if that ye so longe abyde;  
And god be with yow, wher ye go or ryde. (420)  
I moot go thider as I have to go.’  
‘Nay, olde cherl, by god, thou shalt nat so,’ 750  
Seyde this other hasardour anon;  
‘Thou partest nat so lightly, by seint Iohn!  
Thou spak right now of thilke traitour Deeth,  
That in this contree alle our frendes sleeth.  
Have heer my trouthe, as thou art his aspye, 755  
Tel wher he is, or thou shalt it abyde,  
By god, and by the holy sacrament!  
For soothly thou art oon of his assent, (430)  
To sleen us yonge folk, thou false theef!’  
‘Now, sirs,’ quod he, ‘if that yow be so leef 760  
To finde Deeth, turne up this croked wey,  
For in that grove I lafte him, by my fey,  
Under a tree, and ther he wol abyde;  
Nat for your boost he wol him no-thing hyde.  
See ye that ook? right ther ye shul him finde. 765  
God save yow, that boghte agayn mankinde,  
And yow amende!’—thus seyde this olde man.  
And everich of these ryotoures ran, (440)  
Til he cam to that tree, and ther they founde  
Of florins fyne of golde y-coyned rounde 770  
Wel ny an eighte busshels, as hem thoughte.  
No lenger thanne after Deeth they soughte,  
But ech of hem so glad was of that sighte,  
For that the florins been so faire and brighte,  
That down they sette hem by this precious hord. 775  
The worste of hem he spake the firste word.  
‘Brethren,’ quod he, ‘tak kepe what I seye;  
My wit is greet, though that I bourde and pleye. (450)  
This tresor hath fortune un-to us yiven,  
In mirthe and Iolitee our lyf to liven, 780  
And lightly as it comth, so wol we spende.  
Ey! goddes precious dignitee! who wende  
To-day, that we sholde han so fair a grace?  
But mighte this gold be caried fro this place  
Hoom to myn hous, or elles un-to youres— 785  
For wel ye woot that al this gold is oures—  
Than were we in heigh felicitee.  
But trewely, by daye it may nat be; (460)  
Men wolde seyn that we were theves stronge,  
And for our owene tresor doon us honge. 790

This tresor moste y-carried be by nighte  
As wysly and as slyly as it mighte.  
Wherfore I rede that cut among us alle  
Be drawe, and lat se wher the cut wol falle;  
And he that hath the cut with herte blythe<sup>795</sup>  
Shal renne to the toune, and that ful swythe,  
And bringe us breed and wyn ful prively.  
And two of us shul kepen subtilly<sup>(470)</sup>  
This tresor wel; and, if he wol nat tarie,  
Whan it is night, we wol this tresor carie<sup>800</sup>  
By oon assent, wher-as us thinketh best.  
That oon of hem the cut broughte in his fest,  
And bad hem drawe, and loke wher it wol falle;  
And it fil on the yongeste of hem alle;  
And forth toward the toun he wente anon.<sup>805</sup>  
And al-so sone as that he was gon,  
That oon of hem spak thus un-to that other,  
'Thou knowest wel thou art my sworne brother,<sup>(480)</sup>  
Thy profit wol I telle thee anon.  
Thou woost wel that our felawe is agon;<sup>810</sup>  
And heer is gold, and that ful greet plentee,  
That shal departed been among us three.  
But natheles, if I can shape it so  
That it departed were among us two,  
Hadde I nat doon a freendes torn to thee?'<sup>815</sup>  
That other answerde, 'I noot how that may be;  
He woot how that the gold is with us tweye,  
What shal we doon, what shal we to him seye?'<sup>(490)</sup>  
'Shal it be conseil?' seyde the firste shrewe,  
'And I shal tellen thee, in wordes fewe,<sup>820</sup>  
What we shal doon, and bringe it wel aboute.'  
'I graunte,' quod that other, 'out of doute,  
That, by my trouthe, I wol thee nat biwreye.'  
'Now,' quod the firste, 'thou woost wel we be tweye,  
And two of us shul strenger be than oon.<sup>825</sup>  
Look whan that he is set, and right anoon  
Arys, as though thou woldest with him pleye;  
And I shal ryve him thurgh the sydes tweye<sup>(500)</sup>  
Whyl that thou strogelest with him as in game,  
And with thy dagger look thou do the same;<sup>830</sup>  
And than shal al this gold departed be,  
My dere freend, bitwixen me and thee;  
Than may we bothe our lustes al fulfille,  
And pleye at dees right at our owene wille.'  
And thus acorded been thise shrewes tweye<sup>835</sup>  
To sleen the thridde, as ye han herd me seye.  
This youngest, which that wente un-to the toun,  
Ful ofte in herte he rolleth up and doun<sup>(510)</sup>



The beautee of these florins newe and brighte.  
'O lord!' quod he, 'if so were that I mighte<sup>840</sup>  
Have al this tresor to my-self allone,  
Ther is no man that liveth under the trone  
Of god, that sholde live so mery as I!  
And atte laste the feend, our enemy,  
Putte in his thought that he shold poyson beye,<sup>845</sup>  
With which he mighte sleen his felawes tweye;  
For-why the feend fond him in swich lyvinge,  
That he had leve him to sorwe bringe,<sup>(520)</sup>  
For this was outrely his fulle entente  
To sleen hem bothe, and never to repente.<sup>850</sup>  
And forth he gooth, no lenger wolde he tarie,  
Into the toun, un-to a pothecarie,  
And preyed him, that he him wolde selle  
Som poyson, that he mighte his rattes quelle;  
And eek ther was a polcat in his hawe,<sup>855</sup>  
That, as he seyde, his capouns hadde y-slawe,  
And fayn he wolde wreke him, if he mighte,  
On vermin, that destroyed him by nighte.<sup>(530)</sup>  
The pothecarie answerde, 'and thou shalt have  
A thing that, al-so god my soule save,<sup>860</sup>  
In al this world ther nis no creature,  
That ete or dronke hath of this confiture  
Noght but the mountance of a corn of whete,  
That he ne shal his lyf anon forlete;  
Ye, sterve he shal, and that in lasse whyle<sup>865</sup>  
Than thou wolt goon a paas nat but a myle;  
This poyson is so strong and violent.'  
This cursed man hath in his hond y-hent<sup>(540)</sup>  
This poyson in a box, and sith he ran  
In-to the nexte strete, un-to a man,<sup>870</sup>  
And borwed [of] him large botels three;  
And in the two his poyson poured he;  
The thridde he kepte clene for his drinke.  
For al the night he shoop him for to swinke  
In caryinge of the gold out of that place.<sup>875</sup>  
And whan this ryotour, with sory grace,  
Had filled with wyn his grete botels three,  
To his felawes agayn repaireth he.<sup>(550)</sup>  
What nedeth it to sermone of it more?  
For right as they had cast his deeth bifore,<sup>880</sup>  
Right so they han him slayn, and that anon.  
And whan that this was doon, thus spak that oon,  
'Now lat us sitte and drinke, and make us merie,  
And afterward we wol his body berie.'  
And with that word it happed him, par cas,<sup>885</sup>  
To take the botel ther the poyson was,

And drank, and yaf his felawe drinke also,  
For which anon they storven bothe two.(560)  
But, certes, I suppose that Avicen  
Wroot never in no canon, ne in no fen,890  
Mo wonder signes of empoisoning  
Than hadde these wrecches two, er hir ending.  
Thus ended been these homicydes two,  
And eek the false empoysoner also.  
O cursed sinne, ful of cursednesse!895  
O traytours homicyde, o wikkednesse!  
O glotonye, luxurie, and hasardrye!  
Thou blasphemour of Crist with vileinye(570)  
And othes grete, of usage and of pryde!  
Allas! mankinde, how may it bityde,900  
That to thy creatour which that thee wroghte,  
And with his precious herte-blood thee boghte,  
Thou art so fals and so unkinde, allas!  
Now, goode men, god forgeve yow your trespas,  
And ware yow fro the sinne of avaryce.905  
Myn holy pardoun may yow alle waryce,  
So that ye offre nobles or sterlinges,  
Or elles silver broches, spones, ringes.(580)  
Boweth your heed under this holy bulle!  
Cometh up, ye wyves, offreth of your wolle!910  
Your name I entre heer in my rolle anon;  
In-to the blisse of hevene shul ye gon;  
I yow assoile, by myn heigh power,  
Yow that wol offre, as clene and eek as cleer  
As ye were born; and, lo, sirs, thus I preche.915  
And Iesu Crist, that is our soules leche,  
So graunte yow his pardon to receyve;  
For that is best; I wol yow nat deceyve.(590)  
But sirs, o word forgat I in my tale,  
I have reliques and pardon in my male,920  
As faire as any man in Engelond,  
Whiche were me yeven by the popes hond.  
If any of yow wol, of devocioun,  
Offren, and han myn absolucioun,  
Cometh forth anon, and kneleth heer adoun,925  
And mekely receyveth my pardoun:  
Or elles, taketh pardon as ye wende,  
Al newe and fresh, at every tounes ende,(600)  
So that ye offren alwey newe and newe  
Nobles and pens, which that be gode and trewe.930  
It is an honour to everich that is heer,  
That ye mowe have a suffisant pardoneer  
Tassoille yow, in contree as ye ryde,  
For adventures which that may bityde.

Peraventure ther may falle oon or two<sup>935</sup>  
Doun of his hors, and breke his nekke atwo.  
Look which a seuretee is it to yow alle  
That I am in your felaweship y-falle,(610)  
That may assoille yow, bothe more and lasse,  
Whan that the soule shal fro the body passe.<sup>940</sup>  
I rede that our hoste heer shal biginne,  
For he is most envoluped in sinne.  
Com forth, sir hoste, and offre first anon,  
And thou shalt kisse the reliks everichon,  
Ye, for a grote! unbokel anon thy purs.<sup>945</sup>  
'Nay, nay,' quod he, 'than have I Cristes curs!  
Lat be,' quod he, 'it shal nat be, so theech!  
Thou woldest make me kisse thyn old breech,(620)  
And swere it were a relik of a seint,  
Thogh it were with thy fundement depeint!<sup>950</sup>  
But by the croys which that seint Eleyne fond,  
I wolde I hadde thy coillons in myn hond  
In stede of relikes or of seintuarie;  
Lat cutte hem of, I wol thee helpe hem carie;  
Thay shul be shryned in an hogges tord.<sup>955</sup>  
This pardoner answerde nat a word;  
So wrooth he was, no word ne wolde he seye.  
'Now,' quod our host, 'I wol no lenger pleye(630)  
With thee, ne with noon other angry man.'  
But right anon the worthy knight bigan,<sup>960</sup>  
Whan that he saugh that al the peple lough,  
'Na-more of this, for it is right y-nough;  
Sir pardoner, be glad and mery of chere;  
And ye, sir host, that been to me so dere,  
I prey yow that ye kisse the pardoner.<sup>965</sup>  
And pardoner, I prey thee, drawe thee neer,  
And, as we diden, lat us laughe and pleye.'<sup>(639)</sup>  
Anon they kiste, and riden forth hir weye.

[T. 12902.

Here is ended the Pardoners Tale.

(*For* T. 12903, *see* p. 165).

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## GROUP D.

### THE WIFE OF BATH'S PROLOGUE. (T. 5583-5602; *For* T. 5582, *See* P. 164.)

The Prologe of the Wyves Tale of Bathe.

'EXPERIENCE, though noon auctoritee  
Were in this world, were right y-nough to me  
To speke of wo that is in mariage;  
For, lordinges, sith I twelf yeer was of age,  
Thonked be god that is eterne on lyve,<sup>5</sup>  
Housbondes at chirche-dore I have had fyve;  
For I so ofte have y-wedded be;  
And alle were worthy men in hir degree.  
But me was told certeyn, nat longe agon is,  
That sith that Crist ne wente never but onis<sup>10</sup>  
To wedding in the Cane of Galilee,  
That by the same ensample taughte he me  
That I ne sholde wedded be but ones.  
Herke eek, lo! which a sharp word for the nones  
Besyde a welle Iesus, god and man,<sup>15</sup>  
Spak in repreve of the Samaritan:  
"Thou hast y-had fyve housbondes," quod he,  
"And thilke man, the which that hath now thee,  
Is noght thyn housbond;" thus seyde he certeyn;  
What that he mente ther-by, I can nat seyn;<sup>20</sup>  
But that I axe, why that the fifthe man  
Was noon housbond to the Samaritan?  
How manye mighte she have in mariage?  
Yet herde I never tellen in myn age  
Upon this nombre diffinicioun;<sup>25</sup>  
Men may devyne and glosen up and down.  
But wel I woot expres, with-oute lye,  
God bad us for to wexe and multiplie;  
That gentil text can I wel understonde.  
Eek wel I woot he seyde, myn housbonde<sup>30</sup>  
Sholde lete fader and moder, and take me;  
But of no nombre mencionioun made he,  
Of bigamy or of octogamy;  
Why sholde men speke of it vileinye?  
Lo, here the wyse king, dan Salomon;<sup>35</sup>  
I trowe he hadde wyves mo than oon;  
As, wolde god, it lefeul were to me  
To be refreshed half so ofte as he!

Which yifte of god hadde he for alle his wyvis!  
No man hath swich, that in this world alyve is.40  
God woot, this noble king, as to my wit,  
The firste night had many a mery fit  
With ech of hem, so wel was him on lyve!  
Blessed be god that I have wedded fyve!  
Welcome the sixte, whan that ever he shal.45  
For sothe, I wol nat kepe me chast in al;  
Whan myn housbond is fro the world y-gon,  
Som Cristen man shal wedde me anon;  
For thanne thapostle seith, that I am free  
To wedde, a goddes half, wher it lyketh me.50  
He seith that to be wedded is no sinne;  
Bet is to be wedded than to brinne.  
What rekketh me, thogh folk seye vileinye  
Of shrewed Lameth and his bigamye?  
I woot wel Abraham was an holy man,55  
And Iacob eek, as ferforth as I can;  
And ech of hem hadde wyves mo than two;  
And many another holy man also.  
Whan saugh ye ever, in any maner age,  
That hye god defended mariage60  
By expres word? I pray you, telleth me;  
Or wher comanded he virginitee?  
I woot as wel as ye, it is no drede,  
Thapostel, whan he speketh of maydenhede;  
He seyde, that precept ther-of hadde he noon.65  
Men may conseille a womman to been oon,  
But conseilling is no comandement;  
He putte it in our owene Iugement.  
For hadde god comanded maydenhede,  
Thanne hadde he dampned wedding with the dede;70  
And certes, if ther were no seed y-sowe,  
Virginitee, wher-of than sholde it growe?  
Poul dorste nat comanden atte leste  
A thing of which his maister yaf noon heste.  
The dart is set up for virginitee;75  
Cacche who so may, who renneth best lat see.  
But this word is nat take of every wight,  
But ther as god list give it of his might.  
I woot wel, that thapostel was a mayde;  
But natheless, thogh that he wroot and sayde,80  
He wolde that every wight were swich as he,  
Al nis but conseil to virginitee;  
And for to been a wyf, he yaf me leve  
Of indulgence; so it is no repreve  
To wedde me, if that my make dye,85  
With-oute excepcioun of bigamye.

Al were it good no womman for to touche,  
He mente as in his bed or in his couche;  
For peril is bothe fyr and tow tasseble;  
Ye knowe what this ensample may resemble.90  
This is al and som, he heeld virginitee  
More parfit than wedding in freletee.  
Freeltee clepe I, but-if that he and she  
Wolde leden al hir lyf in chastitee.  
I graunte it wel, I have noon envye,95  
Thogh maydenhede preferre bigamye;  
Hem lyketh to be clene, body and goost,  
Of myn estaat I nil nat make no boost.  
For wel ye knowe, a lord in his houshold,  
He hath nat every vessel al of gold;100  
Somme been of tree, and doon hir lord servyse.  
God clepeth folk to him in sondry wyse,  
And everich hath of god a propre yifte,  
Som this, som that,—as him lyketh shifte.  
Virginitee is greet perfeccioun,105  
And continence eek with devocioun.  
But Crist, that of perfeccioun is welle,  
Bad nat every wight he sholde go selle  
All that he hadde, and give it to the pore,  
And in swich wyse folwe him and his fore.110  
He spak to hem that wolde live parfitly;  
And lordinges, by your leve, that am nat I.  
I wol bistowe the flour of al myn age  
In the actes and in fruit of mariage.  
Telle me also, to what conclusioun115  
Were membres maad of generacioun,  
And for what profit was a wight y-wrought?  
Trusteth right wel, they wer nat maad for noght.  
Glose who-so wole, and seye bothe up and down,  
That they were maked for purgacioun120  
Of urine, and our bothe thinges smale  
Were eek to knowe a femele from a male,  
And for noon other cause: sey ye no?  
The experience woot wel it is noght so;  
So that the clerkes be nat with me wrothe,125  
I sey this, that they maked been for bothe,  
This is to seye, for office, and for ese  
Of engendrure, ther we nat god displese.  
Why sholde men elles in hir bokes sette,  
That man shal yelde to his wyf hir dette?130  
Now wher-with sholde he make his payement,  
If he ne used his sely instrument?  
Than were they maad up-on a creature,  
To purge uryne, and eek for engendrure.

But I seye noght that every wight is holde,135  
That hath swich harneys as I to yow tolde,  
To goon and usen hem in engendrure;  
Than sholde men take of chastitee no cure.  
Crist was a mayde, and shapen as a man,  
And many a seint, sith that the world bigan,140  
Yet lived they ever in parfit chastitee.  
I nil envye no virginitee;  
Lat hem be breed of pured whete-seed,  
And lat us wyves hoten barly-breed;  
And yet with barly-breed, Mark telle can,145  
Our lord Iesu refreshed many a man.  
In swich estaat as god hath cleped us  
I wol persevere, I nam nat precious.  
In wyfhode I wol use myn instrument  
As frely as my maker hath it sent.150  
If I be dangerous, god yeve me sorwe!  
Myn housbond shal it have bothe eve and morwe,  
Whan that him list com forth and paye his dette.  
An housbonde I wol have, I nil nat lette,  
Which shal be bothe my dettour and my thral,155  
And have his tribulacioun with-al  
Up-on his flessch, whyl that I am his wyf.  
I have the power duringe al my lyf  
Up-on his propre body, and noght he.  
Right thus the apostel tolde it un-to me;160  
And bad our housbondes for to love us weel.  
Al this sentence me lyketh every-deel'—  
UP sterte the Pardoner, and that anon,  
'Now dame,' quod he, 'by god and by seint Iohn,  
Ye been a noble prechour in this cas!165  
I was aboute to wedde a wyf; allas!  
What sholde I bye it on my flesh so dere?  
Yet hadde I lever wedde no wyf to-yere!'  
'Abyde!' quod she, 'my tale is nat bigonne;  
Nay, thou shalt drinken of another tonne170  
Er that I go, shal savoure wors than ale.  
And whan that I have told thee forth my tale  
Of tribulacioun in mariage,  
Of which I am expert in al myn age,  
This to seyn, my-self have been the whippe;—175  
Than maystow chese whether thou wolt sippe  
Of tilke tonne that I shal abroche.  
Be war of it, er thou to ny approche;  
For I shal telle ensamples mo than ten.  
Who-so that nil be war by othere men,180  
By him shul othere men corrected be.  
The same wordes wryteth Ptholomee;

Rede in his Almageste, and take it there.’  
‘Dame, I wolde praye yow, if your wil it were,’  
Seyde this Pardoner, ‘as ye bigan,185  
Telle forth your tale, spareth for no man,  
And teche us yonge men of your praktike.’  
‘Gladly,’ quod she, ‘sith it may yow lyke.  
But yet I praye to al this companye,  
If that I speke after my fantasye,190  
As taketh not a-grief of that I seye;  
For myn entente nis but for to pleye.  
Now sires, now wol I telle forth my tale.—  
As ever mote I drinken wyn or ale,  
I shal seye sooth, tho housbondes that I hadde,195  
As three of hem were gode and two were badde.  
The three men were gode, and riche, and olde;  
Unnethe mighte they the statut holde  
In which that they were bounden un-to me.  
Ye woot wel what I mene of this, pardee!200  
As help me god, I laughe whan I thinke  
How pitously a-night I made hem swinke;  
And by my fey, I tolde of it no stoor.  
They had me yeven hir gold and hir tresoor;  
Me neded nat do lenger diligence205  
To winne hir love, or doon hem reverence.  
They loved me so wel, by god above,  
That I ne tolde no deyntee of hir love!  
A wys womman wol sette hir ever in oon  
To gete hir love, ther as she hath noon.210  
But sith I hadde hem hoolly in myn hond,  
And sith they hadde me yeven all hir lond,  
What sholde I taken hede hem for to plese,  
But it were for my profit and myn ese?  
I sette hem so a-werke, by my fey,215  
That many a night they songen “weilawey!”  
The bacoun was nat fet for hem, I trowe,  
That som men han in Essex at Dunmowe.  
I governed hem so wel, after my lawe,  
That ech of hem ful blisful was and fawe220  
To bringe me gaye thinges fro the fayre.  
They were ful glad whan I spak to hem fayre;  
For god it woot, I chidde hem spitously.  
Now herkneth, how I bar me proprely,  
Ye wyse wyves, that can understonde.225  
Thus shul ye speke and bere hem wrong on honde;  
For half so boldely can ther no man  
Swere and lyen as a womman can.  
I sey nat this by wyves that ben wyse,  
But-if it be whan they hem misavyse.230



A wys wyf, if that she can hir good,  
Shal beren him on hond the cow is wood,  
And take witesse of hir owene mayde  
Of hir assent; but herkneth how I sayde.  
'Sir olde kaynard, is this thyn array?235  
Why is my neighebores wyf so gay?  
She is honoured over-al ther she goth;  
I sitte at hoom, I have no thrifty cloth.  
What dostow at my neighebores hous?  
Is she so fair? artow so amorous?240  
What rowne ye with our mayde? *benedicite!*  
Sir olde lechour, lat thy Iapes be!  
And if I have a gossib or a freend,  
With-uten gilt, thou chydest as a feend,  
If that I walke or pleye un-to his hous!245  
Thou comest hoom as dronken as a mous,  
And prechest on thy bench, with yvel preef!  
Thou seist to me, it is a greet meschief  
To wedde a povre womman, for costage;  
And if that she be riche, of heigh parage,250  
Than seistow that it is a tormentrye  
To suffre hir pryde and hir malencolye.  
And if that she be fair, thou verray knave,  
Thou seyst that every holour wol hir have;  
She may no whyle in chastitee abyde,255  
That is assailed up-on ech a syde.  
Thou seyst, som folk desyre us for richesse,  
Somme for our shap, and somme for our fairnesse;  
And som, for she can outhere singe or daunce,  
And som, for gentilnesse and daliaunce;260  
Som, for hir handes and hir armes smale;  
Thus goth al to the devel by thy tale.  
Thou seyst, men may nat kepe a castel-wal;  
It may so longe assailed been over-al.  
And if that she be foul, thou seist that she265  
Coveiteth every man that she may se;  
For as a spaynel she wol on him lepe,  
Til that she finde som man hir to chepe;  
Ne noon so grey goos goth ther in the lake,  
As, seistow, that wol been with-oute make.270  
And seyst, it is an hard thing for to welde  
A thing that no man wol, his thankes, helde.  
Thus seistow, lorel, whan thou goost to bedde;  
And that no wys man nedeth for to wedde,  
Ne no man that entendeth un-to hevne.275  
With wilde thonder-dint and firy levne  
Mote thy welked nekke be to-broke!  
Thow seyst that dropping houses, and eek smoke,

And chyding wyves, maken men to flee  
 Out of hir owene hous ; a! *benedicite!*280  
 What eyleth swich an old man for to chyde?  
 Thow seyst, we wyves wol our vyces hyde  
 Til we be fast, and than we wol hem shewe;  
 Wel may that be a proverbe of a shrewel  
 Thou seist, that oxen, asses, hors, and houndes,285  
 They been assayed at diverse stoundes;  
 Bacins, lavours, er that men hem bye,  
 Spones and stoles, and al swich housbondrye,  
 And so been pottes, clothes, and array;  
 But folk of wyves maken noon assay290  
 Til they be wedded; olde dotard shrewel  
 And than, seistow, we wol oure vices shewe.  
 Thou seist also, that it displeth me  
 But-if that thou wolt preyse my beautee,  
 And but thou poure alwey up-on my face,295  
 And clepe me “faire dame” in every place;  
 And but thou make a feste on thilke day  
 That I was born, and make me fresh and gay,  
 And but thou do to my norice honour,  
 And to my chamberere with-inne my bour,300  
 And to my fadres folk and his allyes;—  
 Thus seistow, olde barel ful of lyes!  
 And yet of our apprentice Ianekyn,  
 For his crisp heer, shyninge as gold so fyn,  
 And for he squiereth me bothe up and down,305  
 Yet hastow caught a fals suspecioun;  
 I wol hym nocht, thogh thou were deed to-morwe.  
 But tel me this, why hydestow, with sorwe,  
 The keyes of thy cheste away fro me?  
 It is my good as wel as thyn, pardee.310  
 What wenestow make an idiot of our dame?  
 Now by that lord, that called is seint Iame,  
 Thou shalt nat bothe, thogh that thou were wood,  
 Be maister of my body and of my good;  
 That oon thou shalt forgo, maugree thyne yën;315  
 What nedeth thee of me to enquere or spyën?  
 I trowe, thou woldest loke me in thy chiste!  
 Thou sholdest seye, “wyf, go wher thee liste,  
 Tak your disport, I wol nat leve no talis;  
 I knowe yow for a trewe wyf, dame Alis.”320  
 We love no man that taketh kepe or charge  
 Wher that we goon, we wol ben at our large.  
 Of alle men y-blessed moot he be,  
 The wyse astrologien Dan Ptholome,  
 That seith this proverbe in his *Almageste*,325  
 “Of alle men his wisdom is the hyeste,

That rekketh never who hath the world in honde.”  
By this proverbe thou shalt understonde,  
Have thou y-nogh, what thar thee recche or care  
How merily that othere folkes fare?330  
For certeyn, olde dotard, by your leve,  
Ye shul have queynte right y-nough at eve.  
He is to greet a nigard that wol werne  
A man to lighte his candle at his lanterne;  
He shal have never the lasse light, pardee;335  
Have thou y-nough, thee thar nat pleyne thee.  
Thou seyst also, that if we make us gay  
With clothing and with precious array,  
That it is peril of our chastitee;  
And yet, with sorwe, thou most enforce thee,340  
And seye this wordes in the apostles name,  
“In habit, maad with chastitee and shame,  
Ye wommen shul apparaille yow,” quod he,  
“And noght in tressed heer and gay perree,  
As perles, ne with gold, ne clothes riche;”345  
After thy text, ne after thy rubriche  
I wol nat wirche as muchel as a gnat.  
Thou seydest this, that I was lyk a cat;  
For who-so wolde senge a cattes skin,  
Thanne wolde the cat wel dwellen in his in;350  
And if the cattes skin be slyk and gay,  
She wol nat dwelle in house half a day,  
But forth she wole, er any day be dawed,  
To shewe hir skin, and goon a-caterwawed;  
This is to seye, if I be gay, sir shrewe,355  
I wol renne out, my borel for to shewe.  
Sire olde fool, what eyleth thee to spyen?  
Thogh thou preye Argus, with his hundred yën,  
To be my warde-cors , as he can best,  
In feith, he shal nat kepe me but me lest;360  
Yet coude I make his berd, so moot I thee.  
Thou seydest eek, that ther ben thinges three,  
The whiche thinges troublen al this erthe,  
And that no wight ne may endure the ferthe;  
O leve sir shrewe, Iesu shorte thy lyf!365  
Yet prechestow, and seyst, an hateful wyf  
Y-rekened is for oon of these meschances.  
Been ther none othere maner resemblances  
That ye may lykne your parables to,  
But-if a sely wyf be oon of tho?370  
Thou lykenest wommanes love to helle,  
To bareyne lond, ther water may not dwelle.  
Thou lyknest it also to wilde fyr;  
The more it brenneth, the more it hath desyr

To consume every thing that brent wol be.375  
Thou seyst, that right as wormes shende a tree,  
Right so a wyf destroyeth hir housbonde;  
This knowe they that been to wyves bonde.  
Lordinges, right thus, as ye have understonde,  
Bar I stifly myne olde housbondes on honde,380  
That thus they seyden in hir dronkenesse;  
And al was fals, but that I took witesse  
On Ianekin and on my nece also.  
O lord, the peyne I dide hem and the wo,  
Ful giltelees, by goddes swete pyne!385  
For as an hors I coude byte and whyne.  
I coude pleyne, thogh I were in the gilt,  
Or elles often tyme hadde I ben spilt.  
Who-so that first to mille comth, first grint;  
I pleyned first, so was our werre y-stint.390  
They were ful glad to excusen hem ful blyve  
Of thing of which they never agilte hir lyve.  
Of wenchis wolde I beren him on honde,  
Whan that for syk unnethes mighte he stonde.  
Yet tikled it his herte, for that he395  
Wende that I hadde of him so greet chiertee.  
I swoor that al my walkinge out by nighte  
Was for tespye wenchis that he dighte;  
Under that colour hadde I many a mirthe.  
For al swich wit is yeven us in our birthe;400  
Deceite, weping, spinning god hath yive  
To wommen kindely, whyl they may live.  
And thus of o thing I avaunte me,  
Atte ende I hadde the bettre in ech degree,  
By sleighte, or force, or by som maner thing,405  
As by continuel murmur or grucching;  
Namely a-bedde hadden they meschaunce,  
Ther wolde I chyde and do hem no plesaunce;  
I wolde no lenger in the bed abyde,  
If that I felte his arm over my syde,410  
Til he had maad his raunson un-to me;  
Than wolde I suffre him do his nycetee.  
And ther-fore every man this tale I telle,  
Winne who-so may, for al is for to selle.  
With empty hand men may none haukes lure;415  
For winning wolde I al his lust endure,  
And make me a feyned appetyt;  
And yet in bacon hadde I never delyt;  
That made me that ever I wolde hem chyde.  
For thogh the pope had seten hem biside,420  
I wolde nat spare hem at hir owene bord.  
For by my trouthe, I quitte hem word for word.

As help me verray god omnipotent,  
Thogh I right now sholde make my testament,  
I ne owe hem nat a word that it nis quit.425  
I broghte it so aboute by my wit,  
That they moste yeve it up, as for the beste;  
Or elles hadde we never been in reste.  
For thogh he loked as a wood leoun,  
Yet sholde he faille of his conclusioun.430  
Thanne wolde I seye, 'gode lief, tak keep  
How mekely loketh Wilkinoure sheep;  
Com neer, my spouse, lat me ba thy cheke!  
Ye sholde been al pacient and meke,  
And han a swete spyced conscience,435  
Sith ye so preche of Iobes pacience.  
Suffreth alwey, sin ye so wel can preche;  
And but ye do, certein we shal yow teche  
That it is fair to have a wyf in pees.  
Oon of us two moste bowen, doutelees;440  
And sith a man is more resonable  
Than womman is, ye moste been suffrable.  
What eyleth yow to grucche thus and grone?  
Is it for ye wolde have my queynte allone?  
Why taak it al, lo, have it every-deel;445  
Peter! I shrewe yow but ye love it weel!  
For if I wolde selle my *bele chose*,  
I coude walke as fresh as is a rose;  
But I wol kepe it for your owene tooth.  
Ye be to blame, by god, I sey yow sooth.'450  
Swiche maner wordes hadde we on honde.  
Now wol I speken of my fourthe housbonde.  
My fourthe housbonde was a revelour,  
This is to seyn, he hadde a paramour;  
And I was yong and ful of ragerye,455  
Stiborn and strong, and Ioly as a pye.  
Wel coude I daunce to an harpe smale,  
And singe, y-wis, as any nightingale,  
Whan I had dronke a draughte of swete wyn.  
Metellius, the foule cherl, the swyn,460  
That with a staf birafte his wyf hir lyf,  
For she drank wyn, thogh I hadde been his wyf,  
He sholde nat han daunted me fro drinke;  
And, after wyn, on Venus moste I thinke:  
For al so siker as cold engendreth hayl,465  
A likerous mouth moste han a likerous tayl.  
In womman vinolent is no defence,  
This knowen lechours by experience.  
But, lord Crist! whan that it remembreth me  
Up-on my yowthe, and on my Iolitee,470

It tikleth me aboute myn herte rote.  
Unto this day it dooth myn herte bote  
That I have had my world as in my tyme.  
But age, allas! that al wol envenyme,  
Hath me biraft my beautee and my pith;475  
Lat go, fare-wel, the devel go therwith!  
The flour is goon, ther is na-more to telle,  
The bren, as I best can, now moste I selle;  
But yet to be right mery wol I fonde.  
Now wol I tellen of my fourthe housbonde.480  
I seye, I hadde in herte greet despyt  
That he of any other had delyt.  
But he was quit, by god and by seint Iocel!  
I made him of the same wode a croce;  
Nat of my body in no foul manere,485  
But certainly, I made folk swich chere,  
That in his owene grece I made him frye  
For angre, and for verray Ialousye.  
By god, in erthe I was his purgatorie,  
For which I hope his soule be in glorie.490  
For god it woot, he sat ful ofte and song  
Whan that his shoo ful bitterly him wrong.  
Ther was no wight, save god and he, that wiste,  
In many wyse, how sore I him twiste.  
He deyde whan I cam fro Ierusalem,495  
And lyth y-grave under the rode-beem,  
Al is his tombe noght so curious  
As was the sepulcre of him, Darius,  
Which that Appelles wroghte subtilly;  
It nis but wast to burie him preciously.500  
Lat him fare-wel, god yeve his soule reste,  
He is now in the grave and in his cheste.  
Now of my fifthe housbond wol I telle.  
God lete his soule never come in helle!  
And yet was he to me the moste shrewe;505  
That fele I on my ribbes al by rewe,  
And ever shal, un-to myn ending-day.  
But in our bed he was so fresh and gay,  
And ther-with-al so wel coude he me glose,  
Whan that he wolde han my *bele chose*,510  
That though he hadde me bet on every boon,  
He coude winne agayn my love anoon.  
I trowe I loved him beste, for that he  
Was of his love daungerous to me.  
We wommen han, if that I shal nat lye,515  
In this matere a queynte fantasye;  
Wayte what thing we may nat lightly have,  
Ther-after wol we crye al-day and crave.

Forbede us thing, and that desyren we;  
Prees on us faste, and thanne wol we flee.520  
With daunger oute we al our chaffare;  
Greet prees at market maketh dere ware,  
And to greet cheep is holde at litel prys;  
This knoweth every womman that is wys.  
My fifthe housbonde, god his soule blesse!525  
Which that I took for love and no richesse,  
He som-tyme was a clerk of Oxenford,  
And had left scole, and wente at hoom to bord  
With my gossib, dwellinge in oure toun,  
God have hir soule! hir name was Alisoun.530  
She knew myn herte and eek my privetee  
Bet than our parisshe-preest, so moot I thee!  
To hir biwreyed I my conseil al.  
For had myn housbonde pissed on a wal,  
Or doon a thing that sholde han cost his lyf,535  
To hir, and to another worthy wyf,  
And to my nece, which that I loved weel,  
I wolde han told his conseil every-deel.  
And so I dide ful often, god it woot,  
That made his face ful often reed and hoot540  
For verray shame, and blamed him-self for he  
Had told to me so greet a privetee.  
And so bifel that ones, in a Lente,  
(So often tymes I to my gossib wente,  
For ever yet I lovede to be gay,545  
And for to walke, in March, Averille, and May,  
Fro hous to hous, to here sondry talis),  
That Iankin clerk, and my gossib dame Alis,  
And I my-self, in-to the felde wente.  
Myn housbond was at London al that Lente;550  
I hadde the bettre leyser for to pleye,  
And for to see, and eek for to be seye  
Of lusty folk; what wiste I wher my grace  
Was shapen for to be, or in what place?  
Therefore I made my visitaciouns,555  
To vigilies and to processions,  
To preching eek and to thise pilgrimages,  
To pleyes of miracles and mariages,  
And wered upon my gaye scarlet gytes.  
These wormes, ne thise motthes, ne thise mytes,560  
Upon my peril, frete hem never a deel;  
And wostow why? for they were used weel.  
Now wol I tellen forth what happed me.  
I seye, that in the feeldes walked we,  
Til trewely we hadde swich daliance,565  
This clerk and I, that of my purveyance

I spak to him, and seyde him, how that he,  
If I were widwe, sholde wedde me.  
For certainly, I sey for no bobance,  
Yet was I never with-outen purveyance<sup>570</sup>  
Of mariage, nof othere thinges eek.  
I holde a mouses herte nat worth a leek,  
That hath but oon hole for to sterre to,  
And if that faille, thanne is al y-do.  
I bar him on honde, he hadde enchanted me;<sup>575</sup>  
My dame taughte me that soutiltee.  
And eek I seyde, I mette of him al night;  
He wolde han slayn me as I lay up-right,  
And al my bed was ful of verray blood,  
But yet I hope that he shal do me good; <sup>580</sup>  
For blood bitokeneth gold, as me was taught.  
And al was fals, I dremed of it right naught,  
But as I folwed ay my dames lore,  
As wel of this as of other thinges more.  
But now sir, lat me see, what I shal seyn?<sup>585</sup>  
A! ha! by god, I have my tale ageyn.  
Whan that my fourthe housbond was on bere,  
I weep algate, and made sory chere,  
As wyves moten, for it is usage,  
And with my coverchief covered my visage;<sup>590</sup>  
But for that I was purveyed of a make,  
I weep but smal, and that I undertake.  
To chirche was myn housbond born a-morwe  
With neighebores, that for him maden sorwe;  
And Iankin oure clerk was oon of tho.<sup>595</sup>  
As help me god, whan that I saugh him go  
After the bere, me thoughte he hadde a paire  
Of legges and of feet so clene and faire,  
That al myn herte I yaf un-to his hold.  
He was, I trowe, a twenty winter old,<sup>600</sup>  
And I was fourty, if I shal seye sooth;  
But yet I hadde alwey a coltes tooth.  
Gat-tothed I was, and that bicam me weel;  
I hadde the prente of sēynt Venus seel.  
As help me god, I was a lusty oon,<sup>605</sup>  
And faire and riche, and yong, and wel bigoon;  
And trewely, as myne housbondes tolde me,  
I had the beste *quoniam* mighte be.  
For certes, I am al Venerien  
In felinge, and myn herte is Marcien.<sup>610</sup>  
Venus me yaf my lust, my likerousnesse,  
And Mars yaf me my sturdy hardinesse.  
Myn ascendent was Taur, and Mars ther-inne.  
Allas! allas! that ever love was sinne!



I folwed ay myn inclinacioun<sup>615</sup>  
By vertu of my constellacioun;  
That made me I coude noght withdrawe  
My chambre of Venus from a good felawe.  
Yet have I Martes mark up-on my face,  
And also in another privee place.<sup>620</sup>  
For, god so wis be my savacioun,  
I ne loved never by no discrecioun,  
But ever folwede myn appetyt,  
Al were he short or long, or blak or whyt;  
I took no kepe, so that he lyked me,<sup>625</sup>  
How pore he was, ne eek of what degree.  
What sholde I seye, but, at the monthes ende,  
This Ioly clerk Iankin, that was so hende,  
Hath wedded me with greet solempnitee,  
And to him yaf I al the lond and fee<sup>630</sup>  
That ever was me yeven ther-bifore;  
But afterward repented me ful sore.  
He nolde suffre nothing of my list.  
By god, he smoot me ones on the list,  
For that I rente out of his book a leef,<sup>635</sup>  
That of the strook myn ere wex al deef.  
Stiborn I was as is a leonesse,  
And of my tonge a verray Iangleresse,  
And walke I wolde, as I had doon biforn,  
From hous to hous, al-though he had it sworn.<sup>640</sup>  
For which he often tymes wolde preche,  
And me of olde Romain gestes teche,  
How he, Simplicius Gallus, lefte his wyf,  
And hir forsook for terme of al his lyf,  
Noght but for open-headed he hir say<sup>645</sup>  
Lokinge out at his dore upon a day.  
Another Romain tolde he me by name,  
That, for his wyf was at a someres game  
With-oute his witing, he forsook hir eke.  
And than wolde he up-on his Bible seke<sup>650</sup>  
That ilke proverbe of Ecclesiaste,  
Wher he comandeth and forbedeth faste,  
Man shal nat suffre his wyf go roule aboute;  
Than wolde he seye right thus, with-outen doute,  
“Who-so that buildeth his hous al of salwes,<sup>655</sup>  
And priketh his blinde hors over the falwes,  
And suffreth his wyf to go seken halwes,  
Is worthy to been hanged on the galwes”  
But al for noght, I sette noght an hawe  
Of his proverbes nof his olde sawe,<sup>660</sup>  
Ne I wolde nat of him corrected be.  
I hate him that my vices telleth me,

And so do mo, god woot! of us than I.  
This made him with me wood al outrely;  
I nolde noght forbere him in no cas.665  
Now wol I seye yow sooth, by seint Thomas,  
Why that I rente out of his book a leef,  
For which he smoot me so that I was deaf.  
He hadde a book that gladly, night and day,  
For his desport he wolde rede alway.670  
He cleped it Valerie and Theofraste,  
At whiche book he lough alwey ful faste.  
And eek ther was som-tyme a clerk at Rome,  
A cardinal that highte Seint Ierome,  
That made a book agayn Iovinian;675  
In whiche book eek ther was Tertulan,  
Crisippus, Trotula, and Helowys,  
That was abbesse nat fer fro Parys;  
And eek the Parables of Salomon,  
Ovydes Art, and bokes many on,680  
And alle these wer bounden in o volume.  
And every night and day was his custume,  
Whan he had leyser and vacacioun  
From other worldly occupacioun,  
To reden on this book of wikked wyves.685  
He knew of hem mo legendes and lyves  
Than been of gode wyves in

Biholde the wordes bitween the Somnour and the Frere.

THE Frere lough, whan he hadde herd al this,  
'Now, dame,' quod he, 'so have I Ioye or blis,830  
This is a long preamble of a tale!  
And whan the Somnour herde the Frere gale,  
'Lo!' quod the Somnour, 'goddess armes two!  
A frere wol entremette him ever-mo.  
Lo, gode men, a flye and eek a frere835  
Wol falle in every dish and eek matere.  
What spekestow of preambulacioun?  
What! amble, or trotte, or pees, or go sit down;  
Thou lettest our disport in this manere.'  
'Ye, woltow so, sir Somnour?' quod the Frere,840  
'Now, by my feith, I shal, er that I go,  
Telle of a Somnour swich a tale or two,  
That alle the folk shal laughen in this place.'  
'Now elles, Frere, I bishrewe thy face,'  
Quod this Somnour, 'and I bishrewe me,845  
But if I telle tales two or thre  
Of freres er I come to Sidingborne,  
That I shal make thyn herte for to morne;

For wel I woot thy pacience is goon.  
Our hoste cryde 'pees! and that anon!' 850  
And seyde, 'lat the womman telle hir tale.  
Ye fare as folk that dronken been of ale.  
Do, dame, tel forth your tale, and that is best.'  
'Al redy, sir,' quod she, 'right as yow lest,  
If I have licence of this worthy Frere.' 855  
'Yis, dame,' quod he, 'tel forth, and I wol here.'

Here endeth the Wyf of Bathe hir Prologe.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## THE TALE OF THE WYF OF BATHE.

Here biginneth the Tale of the Wyf of Bathe.

IN tholde dayes of the king Arthour,  
Of which that Britons speken greet honour,  
All was this land fulfild of fayerye.  
The elf-queen, with hir Ioly companye,860  
Daunced ful ofte in many a grene mede;  
This was the olde opinion, as I rede.  
I speke of manye hundred yeres ago;  
But now can no man see none elves mo.  
For now the grete charitee and prayeres865  
Of limitours and othere holy freres,(10)  
That serchen every lond and every stream,  
As thikke as motes in the sonne-beem,  
Blessinge halles, chambres, kichenes, boures,  
Citees, burghes, castels, hye toures,870  
Thropes, bernes, shipnes, dayeryes,  
This maketh that ther been no fayeryes.  
For ther as wont to walken was an elf,  
Ther walketh now the limitour him-self  
In undermeles and in morweninges,875  
And seyth his matins and his holy thinges(20)  
As he goth in his limitacioun.  
Wommen may go saufly up and down,  
In every bush, or under every tree;  
Ther is noon other incubus but he,880  
And he ne wol doon hem but dishonour.  
And so bifel it, that this king Arthour  
Hadde in his hous a lusty bachelor,  
That on a day cam rydinge fro river;  
And happed that, allone as she was born,885  
He saugh a mayde walkinge him biforn,(30)  
Of whiche mayde anon, maugree hir heed,  
By verray force he rafte hir maydenheed;  
For which oppressioun was swich clamour  
And swich pursute un-to the king Arthour,890  
That dampned was this knight for to be deed  
By cours of lawe, and sholde han lost his heed  
Paraventure, swich was the statut tho;  
But that the quene and othere ladies mo  
So longe preyeden the king of grace,895  
Til he his lyf him graunted in the place,(40)  
And yaf him to the quene al at hir wille,  
To chese, whether she wolde him save or spille.

The quene thanketh the king with al hir might,  
And after this thus spak she to the knight,900  
Whan that she saugh hir tyme, up-on a day:  
'Thou standest yet,' quod she, 'in swich array,  
That of thy lyf yet hastow no suretee.  
I grante thee lyf, if thou canst tellen me  
What thing is it that wommen most desyren?905  
Be war, and keep thy nekke-boon from yren.(50)  
And if thou canst nat tellen it anon,  
Yet wol I yeve thee leve for to gon  
A twelf-month and a day, to seche and lere  
An answe suffisant in this matere.910  
And suretee wol I han, er that thou pace,  
Thy body for to yelden in this place.'  
Wo was this knight and sorwefully he syketh;  
But what! he may nat do al as him lyketh.  
And at the laste, he chees him for to wende,915  
And come agayn, right at the yeres ende,(60)  
With swich answe as god wolde him purveye;  
And taketh his leve, and wendeth forth his weye.  
He seketh every hous and every place,  
Wher-as he hopeth for to finde grace,920  
To lerne, what thing wommen loven most;  
But he ne coude arryven in no cost,  
Wher-as he mighte finde in this matere  
Two creatures accordinge in-fere.  
Somme seyde, wommen loven best richesse,925  
Somme seyde, honour, somme seyde, Iolynesse;(70)  
Somme, riche array, somme seyden, lust abedde,  
And ofte tyme to be widwe and wedde.  
Somme seyde, that our hertes been most esed,  
Whan that we been y-flatered and y-pled.930  
He gooth ful ny the sothe, I wol nat lye;  
A man shal winne us best with flaterye;  
And with attendance, and with businesse,  
Been we y-lymed, bothe more and lesse.  
And somme seyn, how that we loven best935  
For to be free, and do right as us lest,(80)  
And that no man repreve us of our vyce,  
But seye that we be wyse, and no-thing nyce.  
For trewely, ther is noon of us alle,  
If any wight wol clawe us on the galle,940  
That we nil kike, for he seith us sooth;  
Assay, and he shal finde it that so dooth.  
For be we never so vicious with-inne,  
We wol been holden wyse, and clene of sinne.  
And somme seyn, that greet delyt han we945  
For to ben holden stable and eek secree,(90)

And in o purpos stedefastly to dwelle,  
And nat biwreye thing that men us telle.  
But that tale is nat worth a rake-stele;  
Pardee, we wommen conne no-thing hele;950  
Witnesse on Myda; wol ye here the tale?  
Ovyde, amonges othere thinges smale,  
Seyde, Myda hadde, under his longe heres,  
Growinge up-on his heed two asses eres,  
The which vyce he hidde, as he best mighte,955  
Ful subtilly from every mannes sighte,(100)  
That, save his wyf, ther wiste of it na-mo.  
He loved hir most, and trusted hir also;  
He preyede hir, that to no creature  
She sholde tellen of his disfigure.960  
She swoor him ‘nay, for al this world to winne,  
She nolde do that vileinye or sinne,  
To make hir housbond han so ful a name;  
She nolde nat telle it for hir owene shame.’  
But nathelees, hir thoughte that she dyde,965  
That she so longe sholde a conseil hyde;(110)  
Hir thoughte it swal so sore aboute hir herte,  
That nedely som word hir moste asterte;  
And sith she dorste telle it to no man,  
Doun to a mareys faste by she ran;970  
Til she came there, hir herte was a-fyre,  
And, as a bitore bombleth in the myre,  
She leyde hir mouth un-to the water doun:  
‘Biwreye me nat, thou water, with thy soun,’  
Quod she, ‘to thee I telle it, and namo;975  
Myn housbond hath longe asses eres two!(120)  
Now is myn herte all hool, now is it oute;  
I mighte no lenger kepe it, out of doute.’  
Heer may ye se, thogh we a tyme abyde,  
Yet out it moot, we can no conseil hyde;980  
The remenant of the tale if ye wol here,  
Redeth Ovyde, and ther ye may it lere.  
This knight, of which my tale is specially,  
Whan that he saugh he mighte nat come therby,  
This is to seye, what wommen loven moost,985  
With-inne his brest ful sorweful was the goost;(130)  
But hoom he gooth, he mighte nat sojourne.  
The day was come, that hoomward moste he tourne,  
And in his wey it happed him to ryde,  
In al this care, under a forest-syde,990  
Wher-as he saugh up-on a daunce go  
Of ladies foure and twenty, and yet mo;  
Toward the whiche daunce he drow ful yerne,  
In hope that som wisdom sholde he lerne.

But certeinly, er he came fully there,995  
Vanished was this daunce, he niste where.(140)  
No creature saugh he that bar lyf,  
Save on the grene he saugh sittinge a wyf;  
A fouler wight ther may no man devyse.  
Agayn the knight this olde wyf gan ryse,1000  
And seyde, ‘sir knight, heer-forth ne lyth no wey.  
Tel me, what that ye seken, by your fey?  
Paraventure it may the bettre be;  
Thise olde folk can muchel thing,’ quod she.  
‘My leve mooder,’ quod this knight certeyn,1005  
‘I nam but deed, but-if that I can seyn(150)  
What thing it is that wommen most desyre;  
Coude ye me wisse, I wolde wel quyte your hyre.’  
‘Plichte me thy trouthe, heer in myn hand,’ quod she,  
‘The nexte thing that I requere thee,1010  
Thou shalt it do, if it lye in thy might;  
And I wol telle it yow er it be night.’  
‘Have heer my trouthe,’ quod the knight, ‘I grante.’  
‘Thanne,’ quod she, ‘I dar me wel avante,  
Thy lyf is sauf, for I wol stonde therby,1015  
Up-on my lyf, the queen wol seye as I.(160)  
Lat see which is the proudeste of hem alle,  
That wereth on a coverchief or a calle,  
That dar seye nay, of that I shal thee teche;  
Lat us go forth with-ouen lenger speche.’1020  
Tho rounded she a pistel in his ere,  
And bad him to be glad, and have no fere.  
Whan they be comen to the court, this knight  
Seyde, ‘he had holde his day, as he hadde hight,  
And redy was his answer,’ as he sayde.1025  
Ful many a noble wyf, and many a mayde,(170)  
And many a widwe, for that they ben wyse,  
The quene hir-self sittinge as a lustyse,  
Assembled been, his answer for to here;  
And afterward this knight was bode appere.1030  
To every wight comanded was silence,  
And that the knight sholde telle in audience,  
What thing that worldly wommen loven best.  
This knight ne stood nat stille as doth a best,  
But to his questioun anon answerde1035  
With manly voys, that al the court it herde:(180)  
‘My lige lady, generally,’ quod he,  
‘Wommen desyren to have sovereyntee  
As wel over hir housbond as hir love,  
And for to been in maistrie him above;1040  
This is your moste desyr, thogh ye me kille,  
Doth as yow list, I am heer at your wille.’

In al the court ne was ther wyf ne mayde,  
Ne widwe, that contraried that he sayde,  
But seyden, 'he was worthy han his lyf.' 1045  
And with that word up stirte the olde wyf, (190)  
Which that the knight saugh sittinge in the grene:  
'Mercy,' quod she, 'my sovereyn lady quene!  
Er that your court departe, do me right.  
I taughte this answeere un-to the knight; 1050  
For which he plighte me his trouthe there,  
The firste thing I wolde of him requere,  
He wolde it do, if it lay in his might.  
Bifore the court than preye I thee, sir knight,'  
Quod she, 'that thou me take un-to thy wyf; 1055  
For wel thou wost that I have kept thy lyf. (200)  
If I sey fals, sey nay, up-on thy fey!'  
This knight answerde, 'allas! and weylawey!  
I woot right wel that swich was my biheste.  
For goddes love, as chees a newe requeste; 1060  
Tak al my good, and lat my body go.'  
'Nay than,' quod she, 'I shrewe us bothe two!  
For thogh that I be foul, and old, and pore,  
I nolde for al the metal, ne for ore,  
That under erthe is grave, or lyth above, 1065  
But-if thy wyf I were, and eek thy love.' (210)  
'My love?' quod he; 'nay, my dampnacioun!  
Allas! that any of my nacioun  
Sholde ever so foule disparaged be!  
But al for noght, the ende is this, that he 1070  
Constreynd was, he nedes moste hir wedde;  
And taketh his olde wyf, and gooth to bedde.  
Now wolden som men seye, paraventure,  
That, for my necligence, I do no cure  
To tellen yow the Ioye and al tharray 1075  
That at the feste was that ilke day. (220)  
To whiche thing shortly answeere I shal;  
I seye, ther nas no Ioye ne feste at al,  
Ther nas but hevynesse and mucche sorwe;  
For prively he wedded hir on a morwe, 1080  
And al day after hidde him as an oule;  
So wo was him, his wyf looked so foule.  
Greet was the wo the knight hadde in his thoght,  
Whan he was with his wyf a-bedde y-broght;  
He walweth, and he turneth to and fro. 1085  
His olde wyf lay smylinge evermo, (230)  
And seyde, 'o dere housbond, *benedicite!*  
Fareth every knight thus with his wyf as ye?  
Is this the lawe of king Arthures hous?  
Is every knight of his so dangerous? 1090



I am your owene love and eek your wyf;  
I am she, which that saved hath your lyf;  
And certes, yet dide I yow never unright;  
Why fare ye thus with me this firste night?  
Ye faren lyk a man had lost his wit;1095  
What is my gilt? for goddes love, tel me it,(240)  
And it shal been amended, if I may.’  
‘Amended?’ quod this knight, ‘allas! nay, nay!  
It wol nat been amended never mo!  
Thou art so loothly, and so old also,1100  
And ther-to comen of so lowe a kinde,  
That litel wonder is, thogh I walwe and winde.  
So wolde god myn herte wolde breste!’  
‘Is this,’ quod she, ‘the cause of your unreste?’  
‘Ye, certainly,’ quod he, ‘no wonder is.’1105  
‘Now, sire,’ quod she, ‘I coude amende al this,(250)  
If that me liste, er it were dayes three,  
So wel ye mighte bere yow un-to me.  
But for ye speken of swich gentillesse  
As is descended out of old richesse,1110  
That therfore sholden ye be gentil men,  
Swich arrogance is nat worth an hen.  
Loke who that is most vertuous alway,  
Privee and apert, and most entendeth ay  
To do the gentil dedes that he can,1115  
And tak him for the grettest gentil man.(260)  
Crist wol, we clayme of him our gentillesse,  
Nat of our eldres for hir old richesse.  
For thogh they yeve us al hir heritage,  
For which we clayme to been of heigh parage,1120  
Yet may they nat biquethe, for no-thing,  
To noon of us hir vertuous living,  
That made hem gentil men y-called be;  
And bad us folwen hem in swich degree.  
Wel can the wyse poete of Florence,1125  
That highte Dant, speken in this sentence;(270)  
Lo in swich maner rym is Dantes tale:  
“Ful selde up ryseth by his branches smale  
Prowesse of man, for god, of his goodnesse,  
Wol that of him we clayme our gentillesse;”1130  
For of our eldres may we no-thing clayme  
But temporel thing, that man may hurte and mayme.  
Eek every wight wot this as wel as I,  
If gentillesse were planted naturelly  
Un-to a certeyn linage, doun the lyne,1135  
Privee ne apert, than wolde they never fyne(280)  
To doon of gentillesse the faire offyce;  
They mighte do no vileinye or vyce.

Tak fyr, and ber it in the derkeste hous  
Bitwix this and the mount of Caucasus, 1140  
And lat men shette the dores and go thenne;  
Yet wol the fyr as faire lye and brenne,  
As twenty thousand men mighte it biholde;  
His office naturel ay wol it holde,  
Up peril of my lyf, til that it dye. 1145  
Heer may ye see wel, how that genterye(290)  
Is nat annexed to possessioun,  
Sith folk ne doon hir operacioun  
Alwey, as dooth the fyr, lo! in his kinde.  
For, god it woot, men may wel often finde 1150  
A lordes sone do shame and vileinye;  
And he that wol han prys of his gentrye  
For he was boren of a gentil hous,  
And hadde hise elders noble and vertuouus,  
And nil him-selven do no gentil dedis, 1155  
Ne folwe his gentil auncestre that deed is,(300)  
He nis nat gentil, be he duk or erl;  
For vileyns sinful dedes make a cherl.  
For gentillesse nis but renomee  
Of thyne auncestres, for hir heigh bountee, 1160  
Which is a strange thing to thy persone.  
Thy gentillesse cometh fro god allone;  
Than comth our verray gentillesse of grace,  
It was no-thing biquethe us with our place.  
Thenketh how noble, as seith Valerius, 1165  
Was thilke Tullius Hostilius,(310)  
That out of povert roos to heigh noblesse.  
Redeth Senek, and redeth eek Boëce,  
Ther shul ye seen expres that it no drede is,  
That he is gentil that doth gentil dedis; 1170  
And therefore, leve housbond, I thus conclude,  
Al were it that myne auncestres were rude,  
Yet may the hye god, and so hope I,  
Grante me grace to liven vertuously.  
Thanne am I gentil, whan that I biginne 1175  
To liven vertuously and weyve sinne.(320)  
And ther-as ye of povert me repreve,  
The hye god, on whom that we bileve,  
In wilful povert chees to live his lyf.  
And certes every man, mayden, or wyf, 1180  
May understonde that Iesus, hevne king,  
Ne wolde nat chese a vicious living.  
Glad povert is an honest thing, certeyn;  
This wol Senek and othere clerkes seyn.  
Who-so that halt him payd of his povert, 1185  
I holde him riche, al hadde he nat a sherte.(330)

He that coveyteth is a povre wight,  
For he wolde han that is nat in his might.  
But he that noght hath, ne coveyteth have,  
Is riche, al-though ye holde him but a knave.1190  
Verray povert, it singeth proprely;  
Juvenal seith of povert merily:  
“The povre man, whan he goth by the weye,  
Bifore the theves he may singe and pleye.”  
Povert is hateful good, and, as I gesse,1195  
A ful greet bringer out of businesse;(340)  
A greet amender eek of sapience  
To him that taketh it in pacience.  
Povert is this, al-though it seme elenge:  
Possessioun, that no wight wol chalenge.1200  
Povert ful ofte, whan a man is lowe,  
Maketh his god and eek him-self to knowe.  
Povert a spectacle is, as thinketh me,  
Thurgh which he may his verray frendes see.  
And therfore, sire, sin that I noght yow greve,1205  
Of my povert na-more ye me repreve.(350)  
Now, sire, of elde ye repreve me;  
And certes, sire, thogh noon auctoritee  
Were in no book, ye gentils of honour  
Seyn that men sholde an old wight doon favour,1210  
And clepe him fader, for your gentillesse;  
And auctours shal I finden, as I gesse.  
Now ther ye seye, that I am foul and old,  
Than drede you noght to been a cokewold;  
For filthe and elde, al-so moot I thee,1215  
Been grete wardeyns up-on chastitee.(360)  
But nathelees, sin I knowe your delyt,  
I shal fulfille your worldly appetyt.  
Chese now,’ quod she, ‘oon of these thinges tweye,  
To han me foul and old til that I deye,1220  
And be to yow a trewe humble wyf,  
And never yow displese in al my lyf,  
Or elles ye wol han me yong and fair,  
And take your aventure of the repair  
That shal be to your hous, by-cause of me,1225  
Or in som other place, may wel be.(370)  
Now chese your-selven, whether that yow lyketh.’  
This knight avyseth him and sore syketh,  
But atte laste he seyde in this manere,  
‘My lady and my love, and wyf so dere,1230  
I put me in your wyse governance;  
Cheseth your-self, which may be most plesance,  
And most honour to yow and me also.  
I do no fors the whether of the two;

For as yow lyketh, it suffiseth me.' 1235  
'Thanne have I gete of yow maistrye,' quod she,(380)  
'Sin I may chese, and governe as me lest?'  
'Ye, certes, wyf,' quod he, 'I holde it best.'  
'Kis me,' quod she, 'we be no lenger wrothe;  
For, by my trouthe, I wol be to yow bothe, 1240  
This is to seyn, ye, bothe fair and good.  
I prey to god that I mot sterven wood,  
But I to yow be al-so good and trewe  
As ever was wyf, sin that the world was newe.  
And, but I be to-morn as fair to sene 1245  
As any lady, emperyce, or quene,(390)  
That is bitwixe the est and eke the west,  
Doth with my lyf and deeth right as yow lest.  
Cast up the curtin, loke how that it is.'  
And whan the knight saugh verraily al this, 1250  
That she so fair was, and so yong ther-to,  
For loye he hente hir in his armes two,  
His herte bathed in a bath of blisse;  
A thousand tyme a-rewe he gan hir kisse.  
And she obeyed him in every thing 1255  
That mighte doon him plesance or lyking.(400)  
And thus they live, un-to hir lyves ende,  
In parfit loye; and Iesu Crist us sende  
Housbondes meke, yonge, and fresshe a-bedde,  
And grace toverbyde hem that we wedde. 1260  
And eek I preye Iesu shorte hir lyves  
That wol nat be governed by hir wyves;  
And olde and angry nigardes of dispence,  
God sende hem sone verray pestilence.

Here endeth the Wyves Tale of Bathe.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## THE FRIAR'S PROLOGUE. (T. 6847-6868).

The Prologe of the Freres tale.

THIS worthy limitour, this noble Frere,1265  
He made alwey a maner loring chere  
Upon the Somnour, but for honestee  
No vileyns word as yet to him spak he.  
But atte laste he seyde un-to the Wyf,  
'Dame,' quod he, 'god yeve yow right good lyf!1270  
Ye han heer touched, al-so moot I thee,  
In scole-matere greet difficultee;  
Ye han seyde muchel thing right wel, I seye;  
But dame, here as we ryden by the weye,(10)  
Us nedeth nat to speken but of game,1275  
And lete auctoritees, on goddes name,  
To preching and to scole eek of clergie.  
But if it lyke to this companye,  
I wol yow of a somnour telle a game.  
Pardee, ye may wel knowe by the name,1280  
That of a somnour may no good be sayd;  
I praye that noon of you be yvel apayd.  
A somnour is a renner up and down  
With mandements for fornicacioun,(20)  
And is y-bet at every tounes ende.' 1285  
Our host tho spak, 'a! sire, ye sholde be hende  
And curteys, as a man of your estaat;  
In companye we wol have no debaat.  
Telleth your tale, and lat the Somnour be.'  
'Nay,' quod the Somnour, 'lat him seye to me1290  
What so him list; whan it comth to my lot,  
By god, I shal him quyten every grot.  
I shal him tellen which a greet honour(29)  
It is to be a flateringe limitour;  
And his offyce I shal him telle, y-wis.'  
Our host answerde, 'pees, na-more of  
this.' 1296  
And after this he seyde un-to the Frere,  
'Tel forth your tale, leve maister deere.'

[T. 6876

[T. 6879

Here endeth the Prologe of the Frere.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## THE FRERES TALE.

Here biginneth the Freres tale.

WHILOM ther was dwellinge in my contree  
An erchedeken, a man of heigh degree, 1300  
That boldely dide execucioun  
In punisshinge of fornicacioun,  
Of wicchecraft, and eek of bauderye,  
Of diffamacioun, and avoutrye,  
Of chirche-reves, and of testaments, 1305  
Of contractes, and of lakke of sacraments,  
And eek of many another maner cryme  
Which nedeth nat rehercen at this tyme; [T. om.]  
Of usure, and of symonye also. (11)  
But certes, lechours dide he grettest [T. om.]  
wo; 1310  
They sholde singen, if that they were hent;  
And smale tytheres weren foule y-shent.  
If any persone wolde up-on hem pleyne,  
Ther mighte asterte him no pecunial peyne.  
For smale tythes and for smal offringe, 1315  
He made the peple pitously to singe.  
For er the bisshop caughte hem with his hook,  
They weren in the erchedeknes book. (20)  
Thanne hadde he, thurgh his Iurisdiccoun,  
Power to doon on hem correccioun. 1320  
He hadde a Somnour redy to his hond,  
A slyer boy was noon in Engelond;  
For subtilly he hadde his espiaille,  
That taughte him, wher that him mighte availle.  
He coude spare of lechours oon or two, 1325  
To techen him to foure and twenty mo.  
For thogh this Somnour wood were as an hare,  
To telle his harlotrye I wol nat spare; (30)  
For we been out of his correccioun;  
They han of us no Iurisdiccoun, 1330  
Ne never shullen, terme of alle hir lyves.  
'Peter! so been the wommen of the styves,'  
Quod the Somnour, 'y-put out of my cure!'  
'Pees, with mischance and with misaventure,'  
Thus seyde our host, 'and lat him telle his tale. 1335  
Now telleth forth, thogh that the Somnour gale,  
Ne spareth nat, myn owene maister dere.'  
This false theef, this Somnour, quod the Frere, (40)  
Hadde alwey baudes redy to his hond,

As any hauk to lure in Engelond,1340  
That tolde him al the secree that they knewe;  
For hir acqueyntance was nat come of-newe.  
They weren hise approwours prively;  
He took him-self a greet profit therby;  
His maister knew nat alwey what he wan.1345  
With-ouen mandement, a lewed man  
He coude somne, on peyne of Cristes curs,  
And they were gladde for to fille his purs,(50)  
And make him grete festes atte nale.  
And right as Iudas hadde purses smale,1350  
And was a thief, right swich a thief was he;  
His maister hadde but half his duëtee.  
He was, if I shal yeven him his laude,  
A thief, and eek a Somnour, and a baude.  
He hadde eek wenchis at his retenue,1355  
That, whether that sir Robert or sir Huwe,  
Or Iakke, or Rauf, or who-so that it were,  
That lay by hem, they tolde it in his ere;(60)  
Thus was the wenche and he of oon assent.  
And he wolde fecche a feyned mandement,1360  
And somne hem to the chapitre bothe two,  
And pile the man, and lete the wenche go.  
Thanne wolde he seye, ‘frend, I shal for thy sake  
Do stryken hir out of our lettres blake;  
Thee thar na-more as in this cas travaille;1365  
I am thy freend, ther I thee may availle.’  
Certeyn he knew of bryberyes mo  
Than possible is to telle in yeres two.(70)  
For in this world nis dogge for the bowe,  
That can an hurt deer from an hool y-knowe,1370  
Bet than this Somnour knew a sly lechour,  
Or an avouter, or a paramour.  
And, for that was the fruit of al his rente,  
Therefore on it he sette al his entente.  
And so bifel, that ones on a day1375  
This Somnour, ever waiting on his pray,  
Rood for to somne a widwe, an old ribybe,  
Feynyng a cause, for he wolde brybe.(80)  
And happed that he saugh bifore him ryde  
A gay yeman, under a forest-syde.1380  
A bowe he bar, and arwes brighte and kene;  
He hadde up-on a courtepy of grene;  
An hat up-on his heed with frenges blake.  
‘Sir,’ quod this Somnour, ‘hayl! and wel a-take!’  
‘Wel-come,’ quod he, ‘and every good felawe!1385  
Wher rydestow under this grene shawe?’  
Seyde this yeman, ‘wiltow fer to day?’

This Somnour him answerde, and seyde, ‘nay;(90)  
Heer faste by,’ quod he, ‘is myn entente  
To ryden, for to reysen up a rente1390  
That longeth to my lordes duëtee.  
‘Artow thanne a bailly?’ ‘Ye!’ quod he.  
He dorste nat, for verray filthe and shame,  
Seye that he was a somnour, for the name.  
‘*Depardieux*,’ quod this yeman, ‘dere brother,1395  
Thou art a bailly, and I am another.  
I am unknowen as in this contree;  
Of thyn aqueyntance I wolde praye thee,(100)  
And eek of brotherhede, if that yow leste.  
I have gold and silver in my cheste;1400  
If that thee happe to comen in our shyre,  
Al shal be thyn, right as thou wolt desyre.’  
‘Grantmercy,’ quod this Somnour, ‘by my feith!’  
Everich in otheres hand his trouthe leith,  
For to be sworne bretheren til they deye.1405  
In daliance they ryden forth hir weye.  
This Somnour, which that was as ful of Iangles,  
As ful of venim been thise wariangles,(110)  
And ever enquering up-on every thing,  
‘Brother,’ quod he, ‘where is now your dwelling,1410  
Another day if that I sholde yow seche?’  
This yeman him answerde in softe speche,  
‘Brother,’ quod he, ‘fer in the north contree,  
Wher, as I hope, som-tyme I shal thee see.  
Er we departe, I shal thee so wel wisse,1415  
That of myn hous ne shaltow never misse.’  
‘Now, brother,’ quod this Somnour, ‘I yow preye,  
Teche me, whyl that we ryden by the weye,(120)  
Sin that ye been a baillif as am I,  
Som subtiltee, and tel me feithfully1420  
In myn offyce how I may most winne;  
And spareth nat for conscience ne sinne,  
But as my brother tel me, how do ye?’  
‘Now, by my trouthe, brother dere,’ seyde he,  
‘As I shal tellen thee a feithful tale,1425  
My wages been ful streite and ful smale.  
My lord is hard to me and daungerous,  
And myn offyce is ful laborous;(130)  
And therefore by extorcions I live.  
For sothe, I take al that men wol me yive;1430  
Algate, by sleyghte or by violence,  
Fro yeer to yeer I winne al my dispence.  
I can no bettre telle feithfully.’  
‘Now, certes,’ quod this Somnour, ‘so fare I;  
I spare nat to taken, god it woot,1435



But if it be to hevy or to hoot.  
What I may gete in conseil prively,  
No maner conscience of that have I;(140)  
Nere myn extorcioun, I mighte nat liven,  
Ne of swiche Iapes wol I nat be shriven. 1440  
Stomak ne conscience ne knowe I noon;  
I shrewe this shrifte-fadres everichoon.  
Wel be we met, by god and by seint Iame!  
But, leve brother, tel me than thy name,  
Quod this Somnour; and in this mene-whyle, 1445  
This yeman gan a litel for to smyle.  
'Brother,' quod he, 'wiltow that I thee telle?  
I am a feend, my dwelling is in helle.(150)  
And here I ryde about my purchasing,  
To wite wher men wolde yeve me any thing. 1450  
My purchas is theeffect of al my rente.  
Loke how thou rydest for the same entente,  
To winne good, thou rekkest never how;  
Right so fare I, for ryde wolde I now  
Un-to the worldes ende for a preye.' 1455  
'A,' quod this Somnour, '*benedicite*, what sey ye?  
I wende ye were a yeman trewely.  
Ye han a mannes shap as wel as I;(160)  
Han ye figure than determinat  
In helle, ther ye been in your estat?' 1460  
'Nay, certainly,' quod he, 'ther have we noon;  
But whan us lyketh, we can take us oon,  
Or elles make yow seme we ben shape  
Som-tyme lyk a man, or lyk an ape;  
Or lyk an angel can I ryde or go. 1465  
It is no wonder thing thogh it be so;  
A lousy Iogelour can deceyve thee,  
And pardee, yet can I more craft than he.'(170)  
'Why,' quod the Somnour, 'ryde ye thanne or goon  
In sondry shap, and nat alwey in oon?' 1470  
'For we,' quod he, 'wol us swich formes make  
As most able is our preyes for to take.'  
'What maketh yow to han al this labour?'  
'Ful many a cause, leve sir Somnour,'  
Seyde this feend, 'but alle thing hath tyme. 1475  
The day is short, and it is passed pryme,  
And yet ne wan I no-thing in this day.  
I wol entende to winnen, if I may,(180)  
And nat entende our wittes to declare.  
For, brother myn, thy wit is al to bare 1480  
To understonde, al-thogh I tolde hem thee.  
But, for thou axest why labouren we;  
For, som-tyme, we ben goddes instruments,

And menes to don his comandements,  
Whan that him list, up-on his creatures,1485  
In divers art and in divers figures.  
With-outen him we have no might, certayn,  
If that him list to stonden ther-agayn.(190)  
And som-tyme, at our prayere, han we leve  
Only the body and nat the soule greve;1490  
Witnesse on Iob, whom that we diden wo.  
And som-tyme han we might of bothe two,  
This is to seyn, of soule and body eke.  
And somtyme be we suffred for to seke  
Up-on a man, and doon his soule unreste,1495  
And nat his body , and al is for the beste.  
Whan he withstandeth our temptacioun,  
It is a cause of his savacioun;(200)  
Al-be-it that it was nat our entente  
He sholde be sauf, but that we wolde him hente.1500  
And som-tyme be we servant un-to man,  
As to the erchebisshop Seint Dunstan,  
And to the apostles servant eek was I.  
'Yet tel me,' quod the Somnour, 'feithfully,  
Make ye yow newe bodies thus alway1505  
Of elements?' the feend answerde, 'nay;  
Som-tyme we feyne, and som-tyme we aryse  
With dede bodies in ful sondry wyse,(210)  
And speke as renably and faire and wel  
As to the Phitonissa dide Samuel.1510  
And yet wol som men seye it was nat he;  
I do no fors of your divinitee.  
But o thing warne I thee, I wol nat lape,  
Thou wolt algates wite how we ben shape;  
Thou shalt her-afterward, my brother dere,1515  
Com ther thee nedeth nat of me to lere.  
For thou shalt by thyn owene experience  
Conne in a chayer rede of this sentence(220)  
Bet than Virgyle, whyl he was on lyve,  
Or Dant also; now lat us ryde blyve.1520  
For I wol holde companye with thee  
Til it be so, that thou forsake me.'  
'Nay,' quod this Somnour, 'that shal nat bityde;  
I am a yeman, knowen is ful wyde;  
My trouthe wol I holde as in this cas.1525  
For though thou were the devel Sathanas,  
My trouthe wol I holde to my brother,  
As I am sworn, and ech of us til other(230)  
For to be trewe brother in this cas;  
And bothe we goon abouten our purchas.1530  
Tak thou thy part, what that men wol thee yive,

And I shal myn; thus may we bothe live.  
And if that any of us have more than other,  
Lat him be trewe, and parte it with his brother.'  
'I graunte,' quod the devel, 'by my fey.' 1535  
And with that word they ryden forth hir wey.  
And right at the entring of the tounes ende,  
To which this Somnour shoop him for to wende,(240)  
They saugh a cart, that charged was with hey,  
Which that a carter droof forth in his wey. 1540  
Deep was the wey, for which the carte stood.  
The carter smoot, and cryde, as he were wood,  
'Hayt, Brok! hayt, Scot! what spare ye for the stones?  
The feend,' quod he, 'yow fecche body and bones,  
As ferforthly as ever were ye foled! 1545  
So muche wo as I have with yow tholed!  
The devel have al, bothe hors and cart and hey!'  
This Somnour seyde, 'heer shal we have a pley;' (250)  
And neer the feend he drough, as noight ne were,  
Ful prively, and rouned in his ere: 1550  
'Herkne, my brother, herkne, by thy feith;  
Herestow nat how that the carter seith?  
Hent it anon, for he hath yeve it thee,  
Bothe hey and cart, and eek hise caples three.'  
'Nay,' quod the devel, 'god wot, never a deel; 1555  
It is nat his entente, trust me weel.  
Axe him thy-self, if thou nat trowest me,  
Or elles stint a while, and thou shalt see.' (260)  
This carter thakketh his hors upon the croupe,  
And they bigonne drawn and to-stoupe; 1560  
'Heyt, now!' quod he, 'ther Iesu Crist yow blesse,  
And al his handwerk, bothe more and lesse!  
That was wel twight, myn owene lyard boy!  
I pray god save thee and seynt Loy!  
Now is my cart out of the slow, pardee!' 1565  
'Lo! brother,' quod the feend, 'what tolde I thee?  
Heer may ye see, myn owene dere brother,  
The carl spak oo thing, but he thoghte another. (270)  
Lat us go forth abouten our viage;  
Heer winne I no-thing up-on cariage.' 1570  
Whan that they comen som-what out of toune,  
This Somnour to his brother gan to rounne,  
'Brother,' quod he, 'heer woneth an old rebekke,  
That hadde almost as lief to lese hir nekke  
As for to yeve a peny of hir good. 1575  
I wol han twelf pens, though that she be wood,  
Or I wol sompne hir un-to our offyce;  
And yet, god woot, of hir knowe I no vyce. (280)  
But for thou canst nat, as in this contree,

Winne thy cost, tak heer ensample of me.' 1580  
This Somnour clappeth at the widwes gate.  
'Com out,' quod he, 'thou olde viritrate!  
I trowe thou hast som frere or preest with thee!  
'Who clappeth?' seyde this widwe, '*benedicite!*  
God save you, sire, what is your swete wille?' 1585  
'I have,' quod he, 'of somonce here a bille;  
Up peyne of cursing, loke that thou be  
To-morn bifore the erchedeknes knee(290)  
Tanswere to the court of certeyn thinges.'  
'Now, lord,' quod she, 'Crist Iesu, king of kinges, 1590  
So wisly helpe me, as I ne may.  
I have been syk, and that ful many a day.  
I may nat go so fer,' quod she, 'ne ryde,  
But I be deed, so priketh it in my syde.  
May I nat axe a libel, sir Somnour, 1595  
And answeere there, by my procutour,  
To swich thing as men wol opposen me?'  
'Yis,' quod this Somnour, 'pay anon, lat se,(300)  
Twelf pens to me, and I wol thee acquyte.  
I shall no profit han ther-by but lyte; 1600  
My maister hath the profit, and nat I.  
Com of, and lat me ryden hastily;  
Yif me twelf pens, I may no lenger tarie.'  
'Twelf pens,' quod she, 'now lady Seinte Marie  
So wisly help me out of care and sinne, 1605  
This wyde world thogh that I sholde winne,  
Ne have I nat twelf pens with-inne myn hold.  
Ye knowen wel that I am povre and old;(310)  
Kythe your almesse on me povre wrecche.'  
'Nay than,' quod he, 'the foule feend me fecche 1610  
If I thexcuse, though thou shul be spilt!'  
'Alas,' quod she, 'god woot, I have no gilt.'  
'Pay me,' quod he, 'or by the swete seinte Anne,  
As I wol bere away thy newe panne  
For dette, which that thou owest me of old, 1615  
Whan that thou madest thyn housbond cokewold,  
I payde at hoom for thy correccioun.'  
'Thou lixt,' quod she, 'by my savacioun!(320)  
Ne was I never er now, widwe ne wyf,  
Somoned un-to your court in al my lyf; 1620  
Ne never I nas but of my body trewe!  
Un-to the devel blak and rough of hewe  
Yeve I thy body and my panne also!'  
And whan the devel herde hir cursen so  
Up-on hir knees, he seyde in this manere, 1625  
'Now Mabely, myn owene moder dere,  
Is this your wil in earnest, that ye seye?'

‘The devel,’ quod she, ‘so fecche him er he deye,(330)  
And panne and al, but he wol him repente!’  
‘Nay, olde stot, that is nat myn entente,’ 1630  
Quod this Somnour, ‘for to repente me,  
For any thing that I have had of thee;  
I wolde I hadde thy smok and every clooth!’  
‘Now, brother,’ quod the devel, ‘be nat wrooth;  
Thy body and this panne ben myne by right. 1635  
Thou shalt with me to helle yet to-night,  
Where thou shalt knowen of our privetee  
More than a maister of divinitee.’ (340)  
And with that word this foule feend him hente;  
Body and soule, he with the devel wente 1640  
Wher-as that somnours han hir heritage.  
And god, that maked after his image  
Mankinde, save and gyde us alle and some;  
And leve this Somnour good man to bicomel  
Lordinges, I coude han told yow, quod this Frere, 1645  
Hadde I had leysur for this Somnour here,  
After the text of Crist [and] Poul and Iohn,  
And of our othere doctours many oon,(350)  
Swiche peynes, that your hertes mighte agryse,  
Al-be-it so, no tonge may devyse, 1650  
Thogh that I mighte a thousand winter telle,  
The peyne of thilke cursed hous of helle.  
But, for to kepe us fro that cursed place,  
Waketh, and preyeth Iesu for his grace  
So kepe us fro the temptour Sathanas. 1655  
Herketh this word, beth war as in this cas;  
The leoun sit in his await alway  
To slee the innocent, if that he may.(360)  
Disposeth ay your hertes to withstonde  
The feend, that yow wolde make thral and bonde. 1660  
He may nat tempten yow over your might;  
For Crist wol be your champion and knight.  
And prayeth that thise Somnours hem repente  
Of hir misdedes, er that the feend hem hente.

Here endeth the Freres tale.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## THE SOMNOUR'S PROLOGUE. (T. 7247-7270.)

The prologe of the Somnours Tale.

THIS Somnour in his stiropes hye stood;1665  
Up-on this Frere his herte was so wood,  
That lyk an aspen leef he quook for yre.  
'Lordinges,' quod he, 'but o thing I desyre;  
I yow biseke that, of your curteisye,  
Sin ye han herd this false Frere lye,1670  
As suffereth me I may my tale telle!  
This Frere bosteth that he knoweth helle,  
And god it woot, that it is litel wonder;  
Freres and feendes been but lyte a-sonder.(10)  
For pardee, ye han ofte tyme herd telle,1675  
How that a frere ravished was to helle  
In spirit ones by a visioun;  
And as an angel ladde him up and doun,  
To shewen him the peynes that ther were,  
In al the place saugh he nat a frere;1680  
Of other folk he saugh y-nowe in wo.  
Un-to this angel spak the frere tho:  
'Now, sir,' quod he, 'han freres swich a grace  
That noon of hem shal come to this place?'"(20)  
'Yis,' quod this angel, "many a millioun!"1685  
And un-to Sathanas he ladde him doun.  
'And now hath Sathanas,' seith he, "a tayl  
Brodder than of a carrik is the sayl.  
Hold up thy tayl, thou Sathanas!" quod he,  
'Shewe forth thyn ers, and lat the frere see1690  
Wher is the nest of freres in this place!"  
And, er that half a furlong-wey of space,  
Right so as bees out swarmen from an hyve,  
Out of the develes ers ther gonne dryve(30)  
Twenty thousand freres in a route,1695  
And thurgh-out helle swarmeden aboute;  
And comen agayn, as faste as they may gon,  
And in his ers they crepten everichon.  
He clapte his tayl agayn, and lay ful stille.  
This frere, whan he loked hadde his fille1700  
Upon the torments of this sory place,  
His spirit god restored of his grace  
Un-to his body agayn, and he awook;  
But natheles, for fere yet he quook,(40)

So was the develes ers ay in his minde,1705  
That is his heritage of verray kinde.  
God save yow alle, save this cursed Frere;  
My prologe wol I ende in this manere.'

Here endeth the Prologe of the Somnours Tale.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## THE SOMNOURS TALE.

Here biginneth the Somonour his Tale.

LORDINGES, ther is in Yorkshire, as I gesse,  
A mersshy contree called Holdernesse,1710  
In which ther wente a limitour aboute,  
To preche, and eek to begge, it is no doute.  
And so bifel, that on a day this frere  
Had preched at a chirche in his manere,  
And specially, aboven every thing,1715  
Excited he the peple in his preching,  
To trentals, and to yeve, for goddes sake,  
Wher-with men mighten holy houses make,(10)  
Ther as divyne service is honoured,  
Nat ther as it is wasted and devoured,1720  
Ne ther it nedeth nat for to be yive,  
As to possessioners, that mowen live,  
Thanked be god, in wele and habundaunce.  
'Trentals,' seyde he, 'deliveren fro penaunce  
Hir freendes soules, as wel olde as yonge,1725  
Ye, whan that they been hastily y-songe;  
Nat for to holde a preest Ioly and gay,  
He singeth nat but o masse in a day;(20)  
Delivereth out,' quod he, 'anon the soules;  
Ful hard it is with fleshhook or with oules1730  
To been y-clawed, or to brenne or bake;  
Now spede yow hastily, for Cristes sake.'  
And whan this frere had seyde al his entente,  
With *qui cum patre* forth his wey he wente.  
Whan folk in chirche had yeve him what hem leste,1735  
He wente his wey, no lenger wolde he reste,  
With scrippe and tipped staf, y-tukked hye;  
In every hous he gan to poure and pryde,(30)  
And beggeth mele, and chese, or elles corn.  
His felawe hadde a staf tipped with horn,1740  
A peyre of tables al of yvory,  
And a poyntel polished fetisly,  
And wroot the names alwey, as he stood,  
Of alle folk that yaf him any good,  
Ascaunces that he wolde for hem preye.1745  
'Yeve us a busshel whete, malt, or reye,  
A goddes kechil, or a trip of chese,  
Or elles what yow list, we may nat chese;(40)  
A goddes halfpeny or a masse-peny,  
Or yeve us of your brawn, if ye have eny;1750



A dagon of your blanket, leve dame,  
Our suster dere, lo! here I write your name;  
Bacon or beef, or swich thing as ye finde.’  
A sturdy harlot wente ay hem bihinde,  
That was hir hostes man, and bar a sak,1755  
And what men yaf hem, leyde it on his bak.  
And whan that he was out at dore anon,  
He planed away the names everichon(50)  
That he biforn had writen in his tables;  
He served hem with nyfles and with fables.1760  
‘Nay, ther thou lixt, thou Somnour,’ quod the Frere.  
‘Pees,’ quod our Host, ‘for Cristes moder dere;  
Tel forth thy tale and spare it nat at al.’  
So thryve I, quod this Somnour, so I shal.—  
So longe he wente hous by hous, til he1765  
Cam til an hous ther he was wont to be  
Refreshed more than in an hundred placis.  
Sik lay the gode man, whos that the place is;(60)  
Bedrede up-on a couche lowe he lay.  
‘*Deus hic,*’ quod he, ‘O Thomas, freend, good day,’1770  
Seyde this frere curteisly and softe.  
‘Thomas,’ quod he, ‘god yelde yow! ful ofte  
Have I up-on this bench faren ful weel.  
Here have I eten many a mery meel’;  
And fro the bench he droof away the cat,1775  
And leyde adoun his potente and his hat,  
And eek his scrippe, and sette him softe adoun.  
His felawe was go walked in-to toun,(70)  
Forth with his knave, in-to that hostelrye  
Wher-as he shoop him thilke night to lye.1780  
‘O dere maister,’ quod this syke man,  
‘How han ye fare sith that March bigan?  
I saugh yow noght this fourtenight or more.’  
‘God woot,’ quod he, ‘laboured have I ful sore;  
And specially, for thy savacioun1785  
Have I seyde many a precious orisoun,  
And for our othere frendes, god hem blesse!  
I have to-day been at your chirche at messe,(80)  
And seyde a sermon after my simple wit,  
Nat al after the text of holy writ;1790  
For it is hard to yow, as I suppose,  
And therefore wol I teche yow al the glose.  
Glosinge is a glorious thing, certeyn,  
For lettre sleeth, so as we clerkes seyn.  
Ther have I taught hem to be charitable,1795  
And spende hir good ther it is resonable,  
And ther I saugh our dame; a! wher is she?’  
‘Yond in the yerd I trowe that she be,’(90)

Seyde this man, 'and she wol come anon.'  
'Ey, maister! wel-come be ye, by seint Iohn!' 1800  
Seyde this wyf, 'how fare ye hertely?'  
The frere aryseth up ful curteisly,  
And hir embraceth in his armes narwe,  
And kiste hir swete, and chirketh as a sparwe  
With his lippes: 'dame,' quod he, 'right weel, 1805  
As he that is your servant every deel.  
Thanked be god, that yow yaf soule and lyf,  
Yet saugh I nat this day so fair a wyf(100)  
In al the chirche, god so save me!'  
'Ye, god amende defautes, sir,' quod she, 1810  
'Algates wel-come be ye, by my fey!'  
'Graunt mercy, dame, this have I founde alwey.  
But of your grete goodnesse, by your leve.  
I wolde prey yow that ye nat yow greve,  
I wol with Thomas speke a litel throwe. 1815  
Thise curats been ful necligent and slowe  
To grope tendrely a conscience.  
In shrift, in preching is my diligence,(110)  
And studie in Petres wordes, and in Poules.  
I walke, and fische Cristen mennes soules, 1820  
To yelden Iesu Crist his propre rente;  
To sprede his word is set al myn entente.'  
'Now, by your leve, o dere sir,' quod she,  
'Chydeth him weel, for seinte Trinitee.  
He is as angry as a pissemyre, 1825  
Though that he have al that he can desyre.  
Though I him wrye a-night and make him warm,  
And on hym leye my leg outhur myn arm,(120)  
He groneth lyk our boor, lyth in our sty.  
Other desport right noon of him have I; 1830  
I may nat plese him in no maner cas.'  
'O Thomas! *Ie vous dy*, Thomas! Thomas!  
This maketh the feend, this moste ben amended.  
Ire is a thing that hye god defended,  
And ther-of wol I speke a word or two.' 1835  
'Now maister,' quod the wyf, 'er that I go,  
What wol ye dyne? I wol go ther-about.'  
'Now dame,' quod he, '*Ie vous dy sanz doute*,(130)  
Have I nat of a capon but the livere,  
And of your softe breed nat but a shivere, 1840  
And after that a rosted pigges heed,  
(But that I nolde no beest for me were deed),  
Thanne hadde I with yow hoonly suffisaunce.  
I am a man of litel sustenaunce.  
My spirit hath his fostring in the Bible. 1845  
The body is ay so redy and penyble

To wake, that my stomak is destroyed.  
I prey yow, dame, ye be nat anoyed,(140)  
Though I so freendly yow my conseil shewe;  
By god, I wolde nat telle it but a fewe.' 1850  
'Now, sir,' quod she, 'but o word er I go;  
My child is deed with-inne thise wykes two,  
Sone after that ye wente out of this toun.'  
'His deeth saugh I by revelacioun,'  
Seith this frere, 'at hoom in our dortour. 1855  
I dar wel seyn that, er that half an hour  
After his deeth, I saugh him born to blisse  
In myn avisioun, so god me wisse!(150)  
So dide our sexteyn and our fermerer,  
That han been trewe freres fifty yeer; 1860  
They may now, god be thanked of his lone,  
Maken hir Iubilee and walke allone.  
And up I roos, and al our covent eke,  
With many a tere trikling on my cheke,  
Withouten noyse or clateringe of belles; 1865  
*Te deum* was our song and no-thing elles,  
Save that to Crist I seyde an orisoun,  
Thankinge him of his revelacioun.(160)  
For sir and dame, trusteth me right weel,  
Our orisons been more effectueel, 1870  
And more we seen of Cristes secree thinges  
Than burel folk, al-though they weren kinges.  
We live in povert and in abstinence,  
And burel folk in richesse and despence  
Of mete and drinke, and in hir foul delyt. 1875  
We han this worldes lust al in despyt.  
Lazar and Dives liveden diversly,  
And diverse guerdon hadden they ther-by.(170)  
Who-so wol preye, he moot faste and be clene,  
And fatte his soule and make his body lene. 1880  
We fare as seith thapostle; cloth and fode  
Suffysen us, though they be nat ful gode.  
The clenness and the fastinge of us freres  
Maketh that Crist accepteth our preyeres.  
Lo, Moyses fourty dayes and fourty night 1885  
Fasted, er that the heighe god of might  
Spak with him in the mountain of Sinay.  
With empty wombe, fastinge many a day,(180)  
Receyved he the lawe that was writen  
With goddes finger; and Elie, wel ye witen, 1890  
In mount Oreb, er he hadde any speche  
With hye god, that is our lyves leche,  
He fasted longe and was in contemplaunce.  
Aaron, that hadde the temple in governaunce,

And eek the othere preestes everichon,1895  
In-to the temple whan they sholde gon  
To preye for the peple, and do servyse,  
They nolden drinken, in no maner wyse,(190)  
No drinke, which that mighte hem dronke make,  
But there in abstinence preye and wake,1900  
Lest that they deyden; tak heed what I seye.  
But they be sobre that for the peple preye,  
War that I seye,—namore! for it suffyseth.  
Our lord Iesu, as holy writ devyseth,  
Yaf us ensample of fastinge and preyeres.1905  
Therfor we mendinants , we sely freres,  
Been wedded to poverte and continence,  
To charitee, humblesse, and abstinence,(200)  
To persecucion for rightwisnesse,  
To wepinge, misericorde, and clenness.1910  
And therfor may ye see that our preyeres—  
I speke of us, we mendinants , we freres—  
Ben to the hye god more acceptable  
Than youres, with your festes at the table.  
Fro Paradys first, if I shal nat lye,1915  
Was man out chaced for his glotonye;  
And chaast was man in Paradys, certeyn.  
But herkne now, Thomas, what I shal seyn.(210)  
I ne have no text of it, as I suppose,  
But I shall finde it in a maner glose,1920  
That specially our swete lord Iesus  
Spak this by freres, whan he seyde thus:  
“Blessed be they that povre in spirit been.”  
And so forth al the gospel may ye seen,  
Wher it be lyker our professioun,1925  
Or hirs that swimmen in possessioun.  
Fy on hir pompe and on hir glotonye!  
And for hir lewednesse I hem diffye.(220)  
Me thinketh they ben lyk Iovinian,  
Fat as a whale, and walkinge as a swan;1930  
Al vinolent as botel in the spence.  
Hir preyer is of ful gret reverence;  
Whan they for soules seye the psalm of Davit,  
Lo, “buf!” they seye, “*cor meum eructavit!*”  
Who folweth Cristes gospel and his fore,1935  
But we that humble been and chast and pore,  
Werkers of goddes word, not auditours?  
Therefore, right as an hauk up, at a sours,(230)  
Up springeth in-to their, right so prayeres  
Of charitable and chaste bisy freres1940  
Maken hir sours to goddes eres two.  
Thomas! Thomas! so mote I ryde or go,

And by that lord that clepid is seint Yve,  
Nere thou our brother, sholdestou nat thryve!  
In our chapitre praye we day and night<sup>1945</sup>  
To Crist, that he thee sende hele and might,  
Thy body for to welden hastily.  
'God woot,' quod he, 'no-thing ther-of fele I;(240)  
As help me Crist, as I, in fewe yeres,  
Han spended, up-on dyvers maner freres,<sup>1950</sup>  
Ful many a pound; yet fare I never the bet.  
Certeyn, my good have I almost biset.  
Farwel, my gold! for it is al ago!  
The frere answerde, 'O Thomas, dostow so?  
What nedeth yow diverse freres seche?<sup>1955</sup>  
What nedeth him that hath a parfit leche  
To sechen othere leches in the toun?  
Your inconstance is your confusioun.(250)  
Holde ye than me, or elles our covent,  
To praye for yow ben insufficient?<sup>1960</sup>  
Thomas, that Iape nis nat worth a myte;  
Your maladye is for we han to lyte.  
"A! yif that covent half a quarter otes!"  
"A! yif that covent four and twenty grotes!"  
"A! yif that frere a peny, and lat him go!"<sup>1965</sup>  
Nay, nay, Thomas! it may no-thing be so.  
What is a ferthing worth parted in twelve?  
Lo, ech thing that is oned in him-selve(<sup>260</sup>)  
Is more strong than whan it is to-scatered.  
Thomas, of me thou shalt nat been y-flatered;<sup>1970</sup>  
Thou woldest han our labour al for noght.  
The hye god, that al this world hath wrought,  
Seith that the werkman worthy is his hyre.  
Thomas! noght of your tresor I desyre  
As for my-self, but that al our covent<sup>1975</sup>  
To preye for yow is ay so diligent,  
And for to builden Cristes owene chirche.  
Thomas! if ye wol lernen for to wirche,(<sup>270</sup>)  
Of buildinge up of chirches may ye finde  
If it be good, in Thomas lyf of Inde.<sup>1980</sup>  
Ye lye heer, ful of anger and of yre,  
With which the devel set your herte a-fyre,  
And chyden heer this sely innocent,  
Your wyf, that is so meke and pacient.  
And therfor, Thomas, trowe me if thee leste,<sup>1985</sup>  
Ne stryve nat with thy wyf, as for thy beste;  
And ber this word away now, by thy feith,  
Touchinge this thing, lo, what the wyse seith:(<sup>280</sup>)  
"With-in thyn hous ne be thou no leoun;  
To thy subgits do noon oppressioun;<sup>1990</sup>

Ne make thyne aqueyntances nat to flee.”  
And Thomas, yet eft-sones I charge thee,  
Be war from hir that in thy bosom slepeth;  
War fro the serpent that so slyly crepeth  
Under the gras, and stingeth subtilly.1995  
Be war, my sone, and herkne paciently,  
That twenty thousand men han lost hir lyves,  
For stryving with hir lemmans and hir wyves.(290)  
Now sith ye han so holy and meke a wyf,  
What nedeth yow, Thomas, to maken stryf?2000  
Ther nis, y-wis, no serpent so cruel,  
Whan man tret on his tayl, ne half so fel,  
As womman is, whan she hath caught an ire;  
Vengeance is thanne al that they desyre.  
Ire is a sinne, oon of the grete of sevene,2005  
Abhominable un-to the god of hevene;  
And to him-self it is destruccion.  
This every lewed viker or person(300)  
Can seye, how Ire engendreth homicyde.  
Ire is, in sooth, executour of pryde.2010  
I coude of Ire seye so muche sorwe,  
My tale sholde laste til to-morwe.  
And therfor preye I god bothe day and night,  
An irous man, god sende him litel might!  
It is greet harm and, certes, gret pitee,2015  
To sette an irous man in heigh degree.  
Whilom ther was an irous potestat,  
As seith Senek, that, duringe his estaat,(310)  
Up-on a day out riden knightes two,  
And as fortune wolde that it were so,2020  
That oon of hem cam hoom, that other noght.  
Anon the knight bifore the Iuge is broght,  
That seyde thus, ‘thou hast thy felawe slayn,  
For which I deme thee to the deeth, certayn.’  
And to another knight comanded he,2025  
‘Go lede him to the deeth, I charge thee.’  
And happed, as they wente by the weye  
Toward the place ther he sholde deye,(320)  
The knight cam, which men wenden had be deed.  
Thanne thoughte they, it was the beste reed,2030  
To lede hem bothe to the Iuge agayn.  
They seiden, ‘lord, the knight ne hath nat slayn  
His felawe; here he standeth hool alyve.’  
‘Ye shul be deed,’ quod he, ‘so moot I thryve!  
That is to seyn, bothe oon, and two, and three!’2035  
And to the firste knight right thus spak he,  
‘I dampned thee, thou most algate be deed.  
And thou also most nedes lese thyn heed,(330)

For thou art cause why thy felawe deyth.’  
And to the thridde knight right thus he seyth,2040  
‘Thou hast nat doon that I comanded thee.’  
And thus he dide don sleen hem alle three.  
Irous Cambyses was eek dronkelewe,  
And ay delyted him to been a shrewe.  
And so bifel, a lord of his meynee,2045  
That lovede vertuous moralitee,  
Seyde on a day bitwix hem two right thus:  
‘A lord is lost, if he be vicious;(340)  
And dronkenesse is eek a foul record  
Of any man, and namely in a lord.2050  
Ther is ful many an eye and many an ere  
Awaiting on a lord, and he noot where.  
For goddes love, drink more attemprely;  
Wyn maketh man to lesen wrecchedly  
His minde, and eek his limes everichon.’2055  
‘The revers shaltou se,’ quod he, ‘anon;  
And preve it, by thyn owene experience,  
That wyn ne dooth to folk no swich offence.(350)  
Ther is no wyn bireveth me my might  
Of hand ne foot, ne of myn eyen sight’—2060  
And, for despyt, he drank ful muchel more  
An hondred part than he had doon bifore;  
And right anon, this irous cursed wrecche  
Leet this knightes sone bifore him fecche,  
Comandinge him he sholde bifore him stonde.2065  
And sodeynly he took his bowe in honde,  
And up the streng he pulled to his ere,  
And with an arwe he slow the child right there:(360)  
‘Now whether have I a siker hand or noon?’  
Quod he, ‘is al my might and minde agoon?2070  
Hath wyn bireved me myn eyen sight?’  
What sholde I telle thanswere of the knight?  
His sone was slayn, ther is na-more to seye.  
Beth war therfor with lordes how ye pleye.  
Singeth *Placebo*, and I shal, if I can,2075  
But if it be un-to a povre man.  
To a povre man men sholde hise vyces telle,  
But nat to a lord, thogh he sholde go to helle.(370)  
Lo irous Cirus, thilke Percien,  
How he destroyed the river of Gysen,2080  
For that an hors of his was dreynt ther-inne,  
Whan that he wente Babiloigne to winne.  
He made that the river was so smal,  
That wommen mighte wade it over al.  
Lo, what seyde he, that so wel teche can?2085  
‘Ne be no felawe to an irous man,

Ne with no wood man walke by the weye,  
Lest thee repente;” ther is na-more to seye.(380)  
Now Thomas, leve brother, lef thyn ire;  
Thou shalt me finde as lust as is a squire.2090  
Hold nat the develes knyf ay at thyn herte;  
Thyn angre dooth thee al to sore smerte;  
But shewe to me al thy confessioun.’  
‘Nay,’ quod the syke man, ‘by Seint Simoun!  
I have be shriven this day at my curat;2095  
I have him told al hoolly myn estat;  
Nedeth na-more to speke of it,’ seith he,  
‘But if me list of myn humilitee.’(390)  
‘Yif me thanne of thy gold, to make our cloistre,’  
Quod he, ‘for many a muscle and many an oistre,2100  
Whan other men han ben ful wel at eyse,  
Hath been our fode, our cloistre for to reyse.  
And yet, god woot, unnethe the fundement  
Parfourned is, ne of our pavement  
Nis nat a tyle yet with-inne our wones;2105  
By god, we owen fourty pound for stones!  
Now help, Thomas, for him that harwed helle!  
For elles moste we our bokes selle.(400)  
And if ye lakke our predicacioun,  
Than gooth the world al to destruccioun.2110  
For who-so wolde us fro this world bireve,  
So god me save, Thomas, by your leve,  
He wolde bireve out of this world the sonne.  
For who can teche and werchen as we conne?  
And that is nat of litel tyme,’ quod he;2115  
‘But sith that Elie was, or Elisee,  
Han freres been, that finde I of record,  
In charitee, y-thanked be our lord.(410)  
Now Thomas, help, for seinte charitee!’  
And doun anon he sette him on his knee.2120  
This syke man wex wel ny wood for ire;  
He wolde that the frere had been on-fire  
With his false dissimulacioun.  
‘Swich thing as is in my possessioun,’  
Quod he, ‘that may I yeven, and non other.2125  
Ye sey me thus, how that I am your brother?’  
‘Ye, certes,’ quod the frere, ‘trusteth weel;  
I took our dame our lettre with our seel.’(420)  
‘Now wel,’ quod he, ‘and som-what shal I give  
Un-to your holy covent whyl I live,2130  
And in thyn hand thou shalt it have anoon;  
On this condicioun, and other noon,  
That thou departe it so, my dere brother,  
That every frere have also mucche as other.



This shaltou swere on thy professioun,2135  
With-outen fraude or cavillacioun.’  
‘I swere it,’ quod this frere, ‘upon my feith!’  
And ther-with-al his hand in his he leith:(430)  
‘Lo, heer my feith! in me shal be no lak.’  
‘Now thanne, put thyn hand down by my bak,’2140  
Seyde this man, ‘and grope wel bihinde;  
Bynethe my buttoke ther shaltow finde  
A thing that I have hid in privetee.’  
‘A!’ thoghte this frere, ‘this shal go with me!’  
And doun his hand he launcheth to the clifte,2145  
In hope for to finde ther a yifte.  
And whan this syke man felte this frere  
Aboute his tuwel grope there and here,(440)  
Amidde his hand he leet the frere a fart.  
Ther nis no capul, drawinge in a cart,2150  
That mighte have lete a fart of swich a soun.  
‘The frere up stirte as doth a wood leoun:  
‘A! false cherl,’ quod he, ‘for goddes bones,  
This hastow for despyt doon, for the nones!  
Thou shalt abyge this fart, if that I may!’2155  
His meynee, whiche that herden this affray,  
Cam lepinge in, and chaced out the frere;  
And forth he gooth, with a ful angry chere,(450)  
And fette his felawe, ther-as lay his stoor.  
He looked as it were a wilde boor;2160  
He grinte with his teeth, so was he wrooth.  
A sturdy pas doun to the court he gooth,  
Wher-as ther woned a man of greet honour,  
To whom that he was alwey confessour;  
This worthy man was lord of that village.2165  
This frere cam, as he were in a rage,  
Wher-as this lord sat eting at his bord.  
Unnethes mighte the frere speke a word,(460)  
Til atte laste he seyde: ‘god yow see!’  
This lord gan loke, and seide, ‘*benedicite!*’2170  
What, frere Iohn, what maner world is this?  
I see wel that som thing ther is amis.  
Ye loken as the wode were ful of thevis,  
Sit doun anon, and tel me what your greef is,  
And it shal been amended, if I may.’2175  
‘I have,’ quod he, ‘had a despyt this day,  
God yelde yow! adoun in your village,  
That in this world is noon so povre a page,(470)  
That he nolde have abhominacioun  
Of that I have receyved in your toun.2180  
And yet ne greveth me no-thing so sore,  
As that this olde cherl, with lokkes hore,

Blasphemed hath our holy covent eke.’  
‘Now, maister,’ quod this lord, ‘I yow biseke.’  
‘No maister, sire,’ quod he, ‘but servitour,2185  
Thogh I have had in scole swich honour.  
God lyketh nat that “Raby” men us calle,  
Neither in market ne in your large halle.’(480)  
‘No fors,’ quod he, ‘but tel me al your grief.’  
‘Sire,’ quod this frere, ‘an odious meschief2190  
This day bitid is to myn ordre and me,  
And so *per consequens* to ech degree  
Of holy chirche, god amende it sone!’  
‘Sir,’ quod the lord, ‘ye woot what is to done.  
Distempre yow noght, ye be my confessour;2195  
Ye been the salt of the erthe and the savour.  
For goddes love your pacience ye holde;  
Tel me your grief:’ and he anon him tolde,(490)  
As ye han herd biforn, ye woot wel what.  
The lady of the hous ay stille sat,2200  
Til she had herd al what the frere sayde:  
‘Ey, goddes moder,’ quod she, ‘blisful mayde!  
Is ther oght elles? telle me feithfully.’  
‘Madame,’ quod he, ‘how thinketh yow her-by?’  
‘How that me thinketh?’ quod she; ‘so god me speede,  
I seye, a cherl hath doon a cherles dede.  
What shold I seye? god lat him never thee!  
His syke heed is ful of vanitee,(500)  
I hold him in a maner frenesye.’  
‘Madame,’ quod he, ‘by god I shal nat lye;2210  
But I on other weyes may be wreke,  
I shal diffame him over-al ther I speke,  
This false blasphemour, that charged me  
To parte that wol nat departed be,  
To every man y-liche, with meschaunce!’2215  
The lord sat stille as he were in a traunce,  
And in his herte he rolled up and down,  
‘How hadde this cherl imaginacioun(510)  
To shewe swich a probleme to the frere?  
Never erst er now herde I of swich matere;2220  
I trowe the devel putte it in his minde.  
In ars-metryke shal ther no man finde,  
Biforn this day, of swich a questioun.  
Who sholde make a demonstracioun,  
That every man sholde have y-liche his part2225  
As of the soun or savour of a fart?  
O nyce proude cherl, I shrewe his face!  
Lo, sires,’ quod the lord, with harde grace,(520)  
‘Who ever herde of swich a thing er now?  
To every man y-lyke? tel me how?2230

It is an impossible, it may nat be!  
Ey, nyce cherl, god lete him never thee!  
The rumblinge of a fart, and every soun,  
Nis but of eir reverberacioun,  
And ever it wasteth lyte and lyte awaye.2235  
Ther is no man can demen, by my fey,  
If that it were departed equally.  
What, lo, my cherl, lo, yet how shrewedly(530)  
Un-to my confessour to-day he spak!  
I holde him certeyn a demoniak!2240  
Now ete your mete, and lat the cherl go pleye,  
Lat him go honge himself a devel weye!  
Now stood the lordes squyer at the bord,  
That carf his mete, and herde, word by word,  
Of alle thinges of which I have yow sayd.2245  
'My lord,' quod he, 'be ye nat yvel apayd;  
I coude telle, for a goune-clooth,  
To yow, sir frere, so ye be nat wrooth,(540)  
How that this fart sholde even deled be  
Among your covent, if it lyked me.'2250  
'Tel,' quod the lord, 'and thou shalt have anon  
A goune-cloth, by god and by Seint Iohn!  
'My lord,' quod he, 'whan that the weder is fair,  
With-ouen wind or perturbinge of air,  
Lat bringe a cartwheel here in-to this halle,2255  
But loke that it have his spokes alle.  
Twelf spokes hath a cartwheel comunly.  
And bring me than twelf freres, woot ye why?(550)  
For thrittene is a covent, as I gesse.  
The confessour heer, for his worthinesse,2260  
Shal parfourne up the nombre of his covent.  
Than shal they knele doun, by oon assent,  
And to every spokes ende, in this manere,  
Ful sadly leye his nose shal a frere.  
Your noble confessour, ther god him save,2265  
Shal holde his nose upright, under the nave.  
Than shal this cherl, with bely stif and toght  
As any tabour, hider been y-brought;(560)  
And sette him on the wheel right of this cart,  
Upon the nave, and make him lete a fart.2270  
And ye shul seen, up peril of my lyf,  
By preve which that is demonstratif,  
That equally the soun of it wol wende,  
And eek the stink, un-to the spokes ende;  
Save that this worthy man, your confessour,2275  
By-cause he is a man of greet honour,  
Shal have the firste fruit, as reson is;  
The noble usage of freres yet is this,(570)

The worthy men of hem shul first be served;  
And certainly, he hath it weel deserved.2280  
He hath to-day taught us so muchel good  
With preching in the pulpit ther he stood,  
That I may vouche-sauf, I sey for me,  
He hadde the firste smel of fartes three,  
And so wolde al his covent hardily;2285  
He bereth him so faire and holily.  
The lord, the lady, and ech man, save the frere,  
Seyde that Iankin spak, in this matere,(580)  
As wel as Euclide or [as] Ptholomee.  
Touchinge this cherl, they seyde, subtiltee2290  
And heigh wit made him speken as he spak;  
He nis no fool, ne no demoniak.  
And Iankin hath y-wonne a newe goune.—  
My tale is doon; we been almost at toune.2294

Here endeth the Somnours Tale.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## GROUP E.

### THE CLERK'S PROLOGUE.

(T. 7877-7898.)

Here folweth the Prologe of the Clerkes Tale of Oxenford.

'SIR clerk of Oxenford,' our hoste sayde,  
'Ye ryde as coy and stille as dooth a mayde,  
Were newe spoused, sitting at the bord;  
This day ne herde I of your tonge a word.  
I trowe ye studie aboute som sophyme,<sup>5</sup>  
But Salomon seith, "every thing hath tyme."  
For goddes sake, as beth of bettre chere,  
It is no tyme for to studien here.  
Telle us som mery tale, by your fey;  
For what man that is entred in a pley,<sup>10</sup>  
He nedes moot unto the pley assente.  
But precheth nat, as freres doon in Lente,  
To make us for our olde sinnes wepe,  
Ne that thy tale make us nat to slepe.  
Telle us som mery thing of aventures;—<sup>15</sup>  
Your termes, your colours, and your figures,  
Kepe hem in stoor til so be ye endyte  
Heigh style, as whan that men to kinges wryte.  
Speketh so pleyn at this tyme, I yow preye,  
That we may understonde what ye seye.'<sup>20</sup>  
This worthy clerk benignely answerde,  
'Hoste,' quod he, 'I am under your yerde;  
Ye han of us as now the governaunce,  
And therfor wol I do yow obeisaunce,  
As fer as reson axeth, hardily.<sup>25</sup>  
I wol yow telle a tale which that I  
Lerned at Padowe of a worthy clerk,  
As preved by his wordes and his werk.  
He is now deed and nayled in his cheste,  
I prey to god so yeve his soule reste!<sup>30</sup>  
Fraunceys Petrark, the laureat poete,  
Highte this clerk, whos rethoryke sweete  
Enlumined al Itaille of poetrye,  
As Linian dide of philosophye  
Or lawe, or other art particuler;<sup>35</sup>  
But deeth, that wol nat suffre us dwellen heer  
But as it were a twinkling of an yë,  
Hem bothe hath slayn, and alle shul we dyë.

But forth to tellen of this worthy man,  
That taughte me this tale, as I bigan,40  
I seye that first with heigh style he endyteth,  
Er he the body of his tale wryteth,  
A proheme, in the which discryveth he  
Pemond, and of Saluces the contree,  
And speketh of Apennyn, the hilles hye,45  
That been the boundes of West Lumbardye,  
And of Mount Vesulus in special,  
Where as the Poo, out of a welle smal,  
Taketh his firste springing and his sours,  
That estward ay encresseth in his cours50  
To Emelward, to Ferrare, and Venyse:  
The which a long thing were to devyse.  
And trewely, as to my Iugement,  
Me thinketh it a thing impertinent,  
Save that he wol conveyen his matere:55  
But this his tale, which that ye may here.'

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## THE CLERKES TALE.

Here biginneth the Tale of the Clerk of Oxenford.

THER is, at the west syde of Itaille,  
Doun at the rote of Vesulus the colde,  
A lusty playne, habundant of vitaille,  
Wher many a tour and toun thou mayst biholde,60  
That founded were in tyme of fadres olde,  
And many another delitable sighte,  
And Saluces this noble contree highte.  
A markis whylom lord was of that londe,  
As were his worthy eldres him bifore;65  
And obeisant and redy to his honde(10)  
Were alle his liges, bothe lasse and more.  
Thus in delyt he liveth, and hath don yore,  
Biloved and drad, thurgh favour of fortune,  
Bothe of his lordes and of his commune.70  
Therwith he was, to speke as of linage,  
The gentilleste y-born of Lumbardye,  
A fair persone, and strong, and yong of age,  
And ful of honour and of curteisye;  
Discreet y-nogh his contree for to gye,75  
Save in somme thinges that he was to blame,(20)  
And Walter was this yonge lordes name.  
I blame him thus, that he considereth noght  
In tyme cominge what mighte him bityde,  
But on his lust present was al his thought,80  
As for to hauke and hunte on every syde;  
Wel ny alle othere cures leet he slyde,  
And eek he nolde, and that was worst of alle,  
Wedde no wyf, for noght that may bifalle.  
Only that point his peple bar so sore,85  
That flokmele on a day they to him wente,(30)  
And oon of hem, that wysest was of lore,  
Or elles that the lord best wolde assente  
That he sholde telle him what his peple mente,  
Or elles coude he shewe wel swich matere,90  
He to the markis seyde as ye shul here.  
'O noble markis, your humanitee  
Assureth us and yeveth us hardinesse,  
As ofte as tyme is of necessitee  
That we to yow mowe telle our hevinesse;95  
Accepteth, lord, now for your gentillesse,(40)  
That we with pitous herte un-to yow pleyne,  
And lete your eres nat my voys disdeyne.

Al have I noght to done in this matere  
More than another man hath in this place,100  
Yet for as mucche as ye, my lord so dere,  
Han alwey shewed me favour and grace,  
I dar the better aske of yow a space  
Of audience, to shewen our requeste,  
And ye, my lord, to doon right as yow leste.105  
For certes, lord, so wel us lyketh yow(50)  
And al your werk and ever han doon, that we  
Ne coude nat us self devyssen how  
We mighte liven in more felicitee,  
Save o thing, lord, if it your wille be,110  
That for to been a wedded man yow leste,  
Than were your peple in sovereyn hertes reste.  
Boweth your nekke under that blisful yok  
Of soveraynetee, noght of servyse,  
Which that men clepeth spousaille or wedlok;115  
And thenketh, lord, among your thoghtes wyse,(60)  
How that our dayes passe in sondry wyse;  
For though we slepe or wake, or rome, or ryde,  
Ay fleeth the tyme, it nil no man abyde.  
And though your grene youthe floure as yit,120  
In crepeth age alwey, as stille as stoon,  
And death manaceth every age, and smit  
In ech estaat, for ther escapeth noon:  
And al so certein as we knowe echoon  
That we shul deye, as uncerteyn we alle125  
Been of that day whan deeth shal on us falle.(70)  
Accepteth than of us the trewe entente,  
That never yet refuseden your heste,  
And we wol, lord, if that ye wol assente,  
Chese yow a wyf in short tyme, atte leste,130  
Born of the gentilleste and of the meste  
Of al this lond, so that it oghte seme  
Honour to god and yow, as we can deme.  
Deliver us out of al this bisy drede,  
And tak a wyf, for hye goddes sake;135  
For if it so bifelle, as god forbede,(80)  
That thurgh your deeth your linage sholde slake,  
And that a straunge successour sholde take  
Your heritage, o! wo were us alyve!  
Wherfor we pray you hastily to wyve.'140  
Hir meke preyere and hir pitous chere  
Made the markis herte han pitee.  
'Ye wol,' quod he, 'myn owene peple dere,  
To that I never erst thoghte streyne me.  
I me reioysed of my libertee,145  
That selde tyme is founde in mariage;(90)



Ther I was free, I moot been in servage.  
But natheles I see your trewe entente,  
And truste upon your wit, and have don ay;  
Wherfor of my free wil I wol assente<sup>150</sup>  
To wedde me, as sone as ever I may.  
But ther-as ye han profred me to-day  
To chese me a wyf, I yow relese  
That choys, and prey yow of that profre cesse.  
For god it woot, that children ofte been<sup>155</sup>  
Unlyk her worthy eldres hem bifore;(100)  
Bountee comth al of god, nat of the streen  
Of which they been engendred and y-bore;  
I truste in goddes bountee, and therfore  
My mariage and myn estaat and reste<sup>160</sup>  
I him bitake; he may don as him leste.  
Lat me alone in chesinge of my wyf,  
That charge up-on my bak I wol endure;  
But I yow preye, and charge up-on your lyf,  
That what wyf that I take, ye me assure<sup>165</sup>  
To worshipe hir, whyl that hir lyf may dure,(110)  
In word and werk, bothe here and everywhere,  
As she an emperoures doghter were.  
And forthermore, this shal ye swere, that ye  
Agayn my choys shul neither grucche ne stryve;<sup>170</sup>  
For sith I shal forgoon my libertee  
At your requeste, as ever moot I thryve,  
Ther as myn herte is set, ther wol I wyve;  
And but ye wole assente in swich manere,  
I prey yow, speketh na-more of this matere.'<sup>175</sup>  
With hertly wil they sworn, and assenten(120)  
To al this thing, ther seyde no wight nay;  
Bisekinge him of grace, er that they wenten,  
That he wolde graunten hem a certain day  
Of his spousaille, as sone as ever he may;<sup>180</sup>  
For yet alwey the peple som-what dredde  
Lest that this markis no wyf wolde wedde.  
He graunten hem a day, swich as him leste,  
On which he wolde be wedded sikerly,  
And seyde, he dide al this at hir requeste;<sup>185</sup>  
And they, with humble entente, buxomly,(130)  
Knelinge up-on her knees ful reverently  
Him thanken alle, and thus they han an ende  
Of hir entente, and hoom agayn they wende.  
And heer-up-on he to his officeres<sup>190</sup>  
Comaundeth for the feste to purveye,  
And to his privee knightes and squyeres  
Swich charge yaf, as him liste on hem leye;  
And they to his comandement obeye,

And ech of hem doth al his diligence<sup>195</sup>  
To doon un-to the feste reverence.<sup>(140)</sup>

Explicit prima pars. Incipit secunda pars.

Noght fer fro thilke paleys honorable  
Ther-as this markis shoop his mariage,  
Ther stood a throp, of site delitable,  
In which that povre folk of that village<sup>200</sup>  
Hadden hir bestes and hir herbergage,  
And of hir labour took hir sustenance  
After that the erthe yaf hem habundance.  
Amonges thise povre folk ther dwelte a man  
Which that was holden povrest of hem alle;<sup>205</sup>  
But hye god som tyme senden can<sup>(150)</sup>  
His grace in-to a litel oxes stalle:  
Ianicula men of that throp him calle.  
A doghter hadde he, fair y-nogh to sighte,  
And Grisildis this yonge mayden highte.<sup>210</sup>  
But for to speke of vertuous beautee,  
Than was she oon the faireste under sonne;  
For povreliche y-fostred up was she,  
No likerous lust was thurgh hir herte y-ronne;  
Wel offer of the welle than of the tonne<sup>215</sup>  
She drank, and for she wolde vertu plese,<sup>(160)</sup>  
She knew wel labour, but non ydel ese.  
But thogh this mayde tendre were of age,  
Yet in the brest of hir virginitee  
Ther was enclosed rype and sad corage;<sup>220</sup>  
And in greet reverence and charitee  
Hir olde povre fader fostred she;  
A fewe sheep spinning on feeld she kepte,  
She wolde noght been ydel til she slepte.  
And whan she hoomward cam, she wolde bringe<sup>225</sup>  
Wortes or othere herbes tymes ofte,<sup>(170)</sup>  
The whiche she shredde and seeth for hir livinge,  
And made hir bed ful harde and no-thing softie;  
And ay she kepte hir fadres lyf on-lofte  
With everich obeisaunce and diligence<sup>230</sup>  
That child may doon to fadres reverence.  
Up-on Grisilde, this povre creature,  
Ful ofte sythe this markis sette his yē  
As he on hunting rood paraventure;  
And whan it fil that he mighte hir espye,<sup>235</sup>  
He noght with wantoun loking of folye<sup>(180)</sup>  
His yen caste on hir, but in sad wyse  
Up-on hir chere he wolde him ofte avyse,  
Commending in his herte hir wommanhede,

And eek hir vertu, passing any wight<sup>240</sup>  
Of so yong age, as wel in chere as dede.  
For thogh the peple have no greet insight  
In vertu, he considered ful right  
Hir bountee, and disposed that he wolde  
Wedde hir only, if ever he wedde sholde.<sup>245</sup>  
The day of wedding cam, but no wight can<sup>(190)</sup>  
Telle what womman that it sholde be;  
For which merveille wondred many a man,  
And seyden, whan they were in privetee,  
'Wol nat our lord yet leve his vanitee?<sup>250</sup>  
Wol he nat wedde? allas, allas the whyle!  
Why wol he thus him-self and us bigyle?'  
But natheles this markis hath don make  
Of gemmes, set in gold and in asure,  
Broches and ringes, for Grisildis sake,<sup>255</sup>  
And of hir clothing took he the mesure<sup>(200)</sup>  
By a mayde, lyk to hir stature,  
And eek of othere ornamentes alle  
That un-to swich a wedding sholde falle.  
The tyme of undern of the same day<sup>260</sup>  
Approcheth, that this wedding sholde be;  
And al the paleys put was in array,  
Bothe halle and chambres, ech in his degree;  
Houses of office stuffed with plentee  
Ther maystow seen of deyntevous vitaille,<sup>265</sup>  
That may be founde, as fer as last Itaille.<sup>(210)</sup>  
This royal markis, richely arrayed,  
Lordes and ladyes in his companye,  
The whiche unto the feste were y-prayed,  
And of his retenue the bachelrye,<sup>270</sup>  
With many a soun of sondry melodye,  
Un-to the village, of the which I tolde,  
In this array the righte wey han holde.  
Grisilde of this, god woot, ful innocent,  
That for hir shapen was al this array,<sup>275</sup>  
To fecchen water at a welle is went,<sup>(220)</sup>  
And cometh hoom as sone as ever she may.  
For wel she hadde herd seyde, that thilke day  
The markis sholde wedde, and, if she mighte,  
She wolde fayn han seyn som of that sighte.<sup>280</sup>  
She thoughte, 'I wol with othere maydens stonde,  
That been my felawes, in our dore, and see  
The markisesse, and therfor wol I fonde  
To doon at hoom, as sone as it may be,  
The labour which that longeth un-to me;<sup>285</sup>  
And than I may at leyser hir biholde,<sup>(230)</sup>  
If she this wey un-to the castel holde.'

And as she wolde over hir threshfold goon,  
The markis cam and gan hir for to calle;  
And she sette doun hir water-pot anoon<sup>290</sup>  
Bisyde the threshfold, in an oxes stalle,  
And doun up-on hir knees she gan to falle,  
And with sad contenance kneleth stille  
Til she had herd what was the lordes wille.  
This thoughtful markis spak un-to this mayde<sup>295</sup>  
Ful sobrely, and seyde in this manere,<sup>(240)</sup>  
‘Wher is your fader, Grisildis?’ he sayde,  
And she with reverence, in humble chere,  
Answerde, ‘lord, he is al redy here.’  
And in she gooth with-outen lenger lette,<sup>300</sup>  
And to the markis she hir fader fette.  
He by the hond than took this olde man,  
And seyde thus, whan he him hadde asyde,  
‘Ianicula, I neither may ne can  
Lenger the plesance of myn herte hyde.<sup>305</sup>  
If that thou vouche-sauf, what-so bityde,<sup>(250)</sup>  
Thy doghter wol I take, er that I wende,  
As for my wyf, un-to hir lyves ende.  
Thou lovest me, I woot it wel, certeyn,  
And art my feithful lige man y-bore;<sup>310</sup>  
And al that lyketh me, I dar wel seyn  
It lyketh thee, and specially therfore  
Tel me that poynt that I have seyde bifore,  
If that thou wolt un-to that purpos drawe,  
To take me as for thy sone-in-lawe?’<sup>315</sup>  
This sodeyn cas this man astoned so,<sup>(260)</sup>  
That reed he wex, abayst, and al quaking  
He stood; unnethes seyde he wordes mo,  
But only thus: ‘lord,’ quod he, ‘my willing  
Is as ye wole, ne ayeines your lyking<sup>320</sup>  
I wol no-thing; ye be my lord so dere;  
Right as yow lust governeth this matere.’  
‘Yet wol I,’ quod this markis softly,  
‘That in thy chambre I and thou and she  
Have a collacion, and wostow why?’<sup>325</sup>  
For I wol axe if it hir wille be<sup>(270)</sup>  
To be my wyf, and reule hir after me;  
And al this shal be doon in thy presence,  
I wol noght speke out of thyn audience.’  
And in the chambre whyl they were aboute<sup>330</sup>  
Hir tretis, which as ye shal after here,  
The peple cam un-to the hous with-oute,  
And wondred hem in how honest manere  
And tentifly she kepte hir fader dere.  
But outerly Grisildis wondre mighte,<sup>335</sup>

For never erst ne saugh she swich a sighte.(280)  
No wonder is thogh that she were astoned  
To seen so greet a gest come in that place;  
She never was to swiche gestes woned,  
For which she loked with ful pale face.340  
But shortly forth this tale for to chace,  
Thise arn the wordes that the markis sayde  
To this benigne verray feithful mayde.  
'Grisilde,' he seyde, 'ye shul wel understonde  
It lyketh to your fader and to me345  
That I yow wedde, and eek it may so stonde,(290)  
As I suppose, ye wol that it so be.  
But thise demandes axe I first,' quod he,  
'That, sith it shal be doon in hastif wyse,  
Wol ye assente, or elles yow avyse?350  
I seye this, be ye redy with good herte  
To al my lust, and that I frely may,  
As me best thinketh, do yow laughe or smerte,  
And never ye to grucche it, night ne day?  
And eek whan I sey "ye," ne sey nat "nay,"355  
Neither by word ne frowning contenance;(300)  
Swer this, and here I swere our alliance.'  
Wondring upon this word, quaking for drede,  
She seyde, 'lord, undigne and unworthy  
Am I to thilke honour that ye me bede;360  
But as ye wol your-self, right so wol I.  
And heer I swere that never willingly  
In werk ne thoght I nil yow disobeye,  
For to be deed, though me were looth to deye.'  
'This is y-nogh, Grisilde myn!' quod he.365  
And forth he gooth with a ful sobre chere(310)  
Out at the dore, and after that cam she,  
And to the peple he seyde in this manere,  
'This is my wyf,' quod he, 'that standeth here.  
Honoureth hir, and loveth hir, I preye,370  
Who-so me loveth; ther is na-more to seye.'  
And for that no-thing of hir olde gere  
She sholde bringe in-to his hous, he bad  
That wommen sholde dispoilen hir right there;  
Of which thise ladyes were nat right glad375  
To handle hir clothes wher-in she was clad.(320)  
But natheles this mayde bright of hewe  
Fro foot to heed they clothed han al newe.  
Hir heres han they kembd, that lay untressed  
Ful rudely, and with hir fingres smale380  
A corone on hir heed they han y-dressed,  
And sette hir ful of nowches grete and smale;  
Of hir array what sholde I make a tale?

Unnethe the peple hir knew for hir fairnesse,  
Whan she translated was in swich richesse.385  
This markis hath hir spoused with a ring(330)  
Brought for the same cause, and than hir sette  
Up-on an hors, snow-whyte and wel ambling,  
And to his paleys, er he lenger lette,  
With Ioyful peple that hir ladde and mette,390  
Conveyed hir, and thus the day they spende  
In revel, til the sonne gan descende.  
And shortly forth this tale for to chace,  
I seye that to this newe markisesse  
God hath swich favour sent hir of his grace,395  
That it ne semed nat by lyklinesse(340)  
That she was born and fed in rudenesse,  
As in a cote or in an oxe-stalle,  
But norished in an emperoures halle.  
To every wight she woxen is so dere400  
And worshipful, that folk ther she was bore  
And from hir birthe knewe hir yeer by yeer,  
Unnethe trowed they, but dorste han swore  
That to Ianicle, of which I spak bifore,  
She doghter nas, for, as by coniecture,405  
Hem thoughte she was another creature.(350)  
For thogh that ever vertuouse was she,  
She was encressed in swich excellence  
Of thewes gode, y-set in heigh bountee,  
And so discreet and fair of eloquence,410  
So benigne and so digne of reverence,  
And coude so the peples herte embrace,  
That ech hir lovede that looked on hir face.  
Noght only of Saluces in the toun  
Publiced was the bountee of hir name,415  
But eek bisyde in many a regioun,(360)  
If oon seyde wel, another seyde the same;  
So spradde of hir heigh bountee the fame,  
That men and wommen, as wel yonge as olde,  
Gon to Saluce, upon hir to biholde.420  
Thus Walter lowly, nay but royally,  
Wedded with fortunat honestetee,  
In goddes pees liveth ful esily  
At hoom, and outward grace y-nogh had he;  
And for he saugh that under low degree425  
Was ofte vertu hid, the peple him helde(370)  
A prudent man, and that is seyn ful selde.  
Nat only this Grisildis thurgh hir wit  
Coude al the feet of wyfly hoomlinesse,  
But eek, whan that the cas requyred it,430  
The commune profit coude she redresse.

Ther nas discord, rancour, ne hevinesse  
In al that lond, that she ne coude apese,  
And wysly bringe hem alle in reste and ese.  
Though that hir housbonde absent were anoon,435  
If gentil men, or othere of hir contree(380)  
Were wrothe, she wolde bringen hem atoon;  
So wyse and rype wordes hadde she,  
And Iugements of so greet equitee,  
That she from heven sent was, as men wende,440  
Peple to save and every wrong tamende.  
Nat longe tyme after that this Grisild  
Was wedded, she a doughter hath y-bore,  
Al had hir lever have born a knave child.  
Glad was this markis and the folk therfore;445  
For though a mayde child come al bifore,(390)  
She may unto a knave child atteyne  
By lyklihed, sin she nis nat bareyne.

Explicit secunda pars. Incipit tercia pars.

Ther fil, as it bifalleth tymes mo,  
Whan that this child had souked but a throwe,450  
This markis in his herte longeth so  
To tempte his wyf, hir sadnesse for to knowe,  
That he ne mighte out of his herte throwe  
This merveillous desyr, his wyf tassaye,  
Needless, god woot, he thoughte hir for taffraye.455  
He hadde assayed hir y-nogh bifore,(400)  
And fond hir ever good; what neded it  
Hir for to tempte and alwey more and more?  
Though som men preise it for a subtil wit,  
But as for me, I seye that yvel it sit460  
Tassaye a wyf whan that it is no nede,  
And putten her in anguish and in drede.  
For which this markis wroghte in this manere;  
He cam alone a-night, ther as she lay,  
With sterne face and with ful trouble chere,465  
And seyde thus, 'Grisild,' quod he, 'that day(410)  
That I yow took out of your povre array,  
And putte yow in estaat of heigh noblesse,  
Ye have nat that forgeten, as I gesse.  
I seye, Grisild, this present dignitee,470  
In which that I have put yow, as I trowe,  
Maketh yow nat foryetful for to be  
That I yow took in povre estaat ful lowe  
For any wele ye moot your-selven knowe.  
Tak hede of every word that I yow seye,475  
Ther is no wight that hereth it but we tweye.(420)

Ye woot your-self wel, how that ye cam here  
In-to this hous, it is nat longe ago,  
And though to me that ye be lief and dere,  
Un-to my gentils ye be no-thing so;480  
They seyn, to hem it is greet shame and wo  
For to be subgets and ben in servage  
To thee, that born art of a smal village.  
And namely, sith thy doghter was y-bore,  
These wordes han they spoken doutelees;485  
But I desyre, as I have doon bifore,(430)  
To live my lyf with hem in reste and pees;  
I may nat in this caas be recchelees.  
I moot don with thy doghter for the beste,  
Nat as I wolde, but as my peple leste.490  
And yet, god wot, this is ful looth to me;  
But nathelees with-oute your witing  
I wol nat doon, but this wol I,' quod he,  
'That ye to me assente as in this thing.  
Shewe now your pacience in your werking495  
That ye me highte and swore in your village(440)  
That day that maked was our mariage.'  
Whan she had herd al this, she noght ameved  
Neither in word, or chere, or countenance;  
For, as it semed, she was nat agreved:500  
She seyde, 'lord, al lyth in your plesaunce,  
My child and I with hertly obeisaunce  
Ben youres al, and ye mowe save or spille  
Your owene thing; werketh after your wille.  
Ther may no-thing, god so my soule save,505  
Lyken to yow that may displese me;(450)  
Ne I desyre no-thing for to have,  
Ne drede for to lese, save only ye;  
This wil is in myn herte and ay shal be.  
No lengthe of tyme or deeth may this deface,510  
Ne change my corage to another place.'  
Glad was this markis of hir answering,  
But yet he feyned as he were nat so;  
Al drery was his chere and his loking  
Whan that he sholde out of the chambre go.515  
Sone after this, a furlong wey or two,(460)  
He prively hath told al his entente  
Un-to a man, and to his wyf him sente.  
A maner sergeant was this privee man,  
The which that feithful ofte he founden hadde520  
In thinges grete, and eek swich folk wel can  
Don execucioun on thinges badde.  
The lord knew wel that he him loved and dradde;  
And whan this sergeant wiste his lordes wille,



In-to the chambre he stalked him ful stille.525  
'Madame,' he seyde, 'ye mote foryeve it me,(470)  
Thogh I do thing to which I am constreyned;  
Ye ben so wys that ful wel knowe ye  
That lordes hestes mowe nat been y-feyned;  
They mowe wel been biwailed or compleyned,530  
But men mot nede un-to her lust obeye,  
And so wol I; ther is na-more to seye.  
This child I am comanded for to take'—  
And spak na-more, but out the child he hente  
Despitously, and gan a chere make535  
As though he wolde han slayn it er he wente.(480)  
Grisildis mot al suffren and consente;  
And as a lamb she sitteth meke and stille,  
And leet this cruel sergeant doon his wille.  
Suspecious was the diffame of this man,540  
Suspect his face, suspect his word also;  
Suspect the tyme in which he this bigan.  
Allas! hir doghter that she lovede so  
She wende he wolde han slawen it right tho.  
But natheles she neither weep ne syked,545  
Consenting hir to that the markis lyked.(490)  
But atte laste speken she bigan,  
And mekely she to the sergeant preyde,  
So as he was a worthy gentil man,  
That she moste kisse hir child er that it deyde;550  
And in her barm this litel child she leyde  
With ful sad face, and gan the child to kisse  
And lulled it, and after gan it blisse.  
And thus she seyde in hir benigne voys,  
'Far weel, my child; I shal thee never see;555  
But, sith I thee have marked with the croys,(500)  
Of tilke fader blessed mote thou be,  
That for us deyde up-on a croys of tree.  
Thy soule, litel child, I him bitake,  
For this night shaltow dyen for my sake.'560  
I trowe that to a norice in this cas  
It had ben hard this rewthe for to se;  
Wel mighte a mooder than han cryed 'allas!'  
But natheles so sad stedfast was she,  
That she endured all adversitee,565  
And to the sergeant mekely she sayde,(510)  
'Have heer agayn your litel yonge mayde.  
Goth now,' quod she, 'and dooth my lordes heste,  
But o thing wol I preye yow of your grace,  
That, but my lord forbad yow, atte leste570  
Burieth this litel body in som place  
That bestes ne no briddes it to-race.'

But he no word wol to that purpos seye,  
But took the child and wente upon his weye.  
This sergeant cam un-to his lord ageyn,575  
And of Grisildis wordes and hir chere(520)  
He tolde him point for point, in short and playn,  
And him presenteth with his doghter dere.  
Somwhat this lord hath rewthe in his manere;  
But nathelees his purpos heeld he stille,580  
As lordes doon, whan they wol han hir wille;  
And bad his sergeant that he prively  
Sholde this child ful softe winde and wrappe  
With alle circumstances tendrely,  
And carie it in a cofre or in a lappe;585  
But, up-on peyne his heed of for to swappe,(530)  
That no man sholde knowe of his entente,  
Ne whenne he cam, ne whider that he wente;  
But at Boloigne to his suster dere,  
That thilke tyme of Panik was countesse,590  
He sholde it take, and shewe hir this matere,  
Bisekinge hir to don hir businesse  
This child to fostre in alle gentillesse;  
And whos child that it was he bad hir hyde  
From every wight, for oght that may bityde.595  
The sergeant gooth, and hath fulfilled this thing;(540)  
But to this markis now retourne we;  
For now goth he ful faste imagining  
If by his wyves chere he mighte see,  
Or by hir word aperceyve that she600  
Were chaunged; but he never hir coude finde  
But ever in oon y-lyke sad and kinde.  
As glad, as humble, as bisy in servyse,  
And eek in love as she was wont to be,  
Was she to him in every maner wyse;605  
Ne of hir doghter noght a word spak she.(550)  
Non accident for noon adversitee  
Was seyn in hir, ne never hir doghter name  
Ne nempned she, in earnest nor in game.

Explicit tercia pars. Sequitur pars quarta.

In this estaat ther passed been foure yeer610  
Er she with childe was; but, as god wolde,  
A knave child she bar by this Walter,  
Ful gracious and fair for to biholde.  
And whan that folk it to his fader tolde,  
Nat only he, but al his contree, merie615  
Was for this child, and god they thanke and  
herie.(560)

Whan it was two yeer old, and fro the brest  
Departed of his norice, on a day  
This markis caughte yet another lest  
To tempte his wyf yet ofter, if he may.620  
O needles was she tempted in assay!  
But wedded men ne knowe no mesure,  
Whan that they finde a pacient creature.  
'Wyf,' quod this markis, 'ye han herd er this,  
My peple sikly berth our mariage,625  
And namely, sith my sone y-boren is,(570)  
Now is it worse than ever in al our age.  
The murmur sleeth myn herte and my corage;  
For to myne eres comth the voys so smerte,  
That it wel ny destroyed hath myn herte.630  
Now sey they thus, "whan Walter is agoon,  
Then shal the blood of Ianicle succede  
And been our lord, for othre have we noon;"  
Swiche wordes seith my peple, out of drede.  
Wel oughte I of swich murmur taken hede;635  
For certainly I drede swich sentence,(580)  
Though they nat pleyn speke in myn audience.  
I wolde live in pees, if that I mighte;  
Wherfor I am disposed outerly,  
As I his suster servede by nighte,640  
Right so thenke I to serve him prively;  
This warne I yow, that ye nat sodeynly  
Out of your-self for no wo sholde outraye;  
Beth pacient, and ther-of I yow preye.'  
'I have,' quod she, 'seyd thus, and ever shal,645  
I wol no thing, ne nil no thing, certayn,(590)  
But as yow list; noght greveth me at al,  
Thogh that my doghter and my sone by slayn,  
At your comandement, this is to sayn.  
I have noght had no part of children tweyne650  
But first siknesse, and after wo and peyne.  
Ye been our lord, doth with your owene thing  
Right as yow list; axeth no reed at me.  
For, as I lefte at hoom al my clothing,  
Whan I first cam to yow, right so,' quod she,655  
'Left I my wil and al my libertee,(600)  
And took your clothing; wherfor I yow preye,  
Doth your plesaunce, I wol your lust obeye.  
And certes, if I hadde prescience  
Your wil to knowe er ye your lust me tolde,660  
I wolde it doon with-uten necligence;  
But now I woot your lust and what ye wolde,  
Al your plesaunce ferme and stable I holde;  
For wiste I that my deeth wolde do yow ese,

Right gladly wolde I dyen, yow to plesse.665  
Deth may noght make no comparisoun(610)  
Un-to your love:’ and, whan this markis sey  
The constance of his wyf, he caste adoun  
His yen two, and wondreth that she may  
In pacience suffre al this array.670  
And forth he gooth with drery contenance,  
But to his herte it was ful greet plesaunce.  
This ugly sergeant, in the same wyse  
That he hir doghter caughte, right so he,  
Or worse, if men worse can devyse,675  
Hath hent hir sone, that ful was of beautee.(620)  
And ever in oon so pacient was she,  
That she no chere made of hevynesse,  
But kiste hir sone, and after gan it blesse;  
Save this; she preyed him that, if he mighte,680  
Hir litel sone he wolde in erthe grave,  
His tendre limes, delicat to sighte,  
Fro foules and fro bestes for to save.  
But she non answer of him mighte have.  
He wente his wey, as him no-thing ne roghte;685  
But to Boloigne he tendrely it broghte.(630)  
This markis wondreth ever lenger the more  
Up-on hir pacience, and if that he  
Ne hadde soothly knowen ther-bifore,  
That parfitly hir children lovede she,690  
He wolde have wend that of som subtiltee,  
And of malice or for cruel corage,  
That she had suffred this with sad visage.  
But wel he knew that next him-self, certayn,  
She loved hir children best in every wyse.695  
But now of wommen wolde I axen fayn,(640)  
If these assayes mighte nat suffyse?  
What coude a sturdy housbond more devyse  
To preve hir wyfhod and hir stedfastnesse,  
And he continuing ever in sturdinesse?700  
But ther ben folk of swich condicioun,  
That, whan they have a certein purpos take,  
They can nat stinte of hir entencioun,  
But, right as they were bounden to a stake,  
They wol nat of that firste purpos slake.705  
Right so this markis fulliche hath purposed(650)  
To tempte his wyf, as he was first disposed.  
He waiteth, if by word or contenance  
That she to him was changed of corage;  
But never coude he finde variance;710  
She was ay oon in herte and in visage;  
And ay the forther that she was in age,

The more trewe, if that it were possible,  
She was to him in love, and more penible.  
For which it semed thus, that of hem two<sup>715</sup>  
Ther nas but o wil; for, as Walter leste,<sup>(660)</sup>  
The same lust was hir plesance also,  
And, god be thanked, al fil for the beste.  
She shewed wel, for no worldly unreste  
A wyf, as of hir-self, no-thing ne sholde<sup>720</sup>  
Wille in effect, but as hir housbond wolde.  
The sclandre of Walter ofte and wyde spradde,  
That of a cruel herte he wikkedly,  
For he a povre womman wedded hadde,  
Hath mordred bothe his children prively.<sup>725</sup>  
Swich murmur was among hem comunly.<sup>(670)</sup>  
No wonder is, for to the peples ere  
Ther cam no word but that they mordred were.  
For which, wher-as his peple ther-bifore  
Had loved him wel, the sclandre of his diffame<sup>730</sup>  
Made hem that they him hatede therfore;  
To been a mordrer is an hateful name.  
But natheles, for earnest ne for game  
He of his cruel purpos nolde stente;  
To tempte his wyf was set al his entente.<sup>735</sup>  
Whan that his doghter twelf yeer was of age,<sup>(680)</sup>  
He to the court of Rome, in subtil wyse  
Enformed of his wil, sente his message,  
Comaunding hem swiche bulles to devyse  
As to his cruel purpos may suffyse,<sup>740</sup>  
How that the pope, as for his peples reste,  
Bad him to wedde another, if him leste.  
I seye, he bad they sholde countrefete  
The popes bulles, making mencion  
That he hath leve his firste wyf to lete,<sup>745</sup>  
As by the popes dispensacioun,<sup>(690)</sup>  
To stinte rancour and dissencioun  
Bitwixe his peple and him; thus seyde the bulle,  
The which they han publiced atte fulle.  
The rude peple, as it no wonder is,<sup>750</sup>  
Wenden ful wel that it had been right so;  
But whan thise tydinges cam to Grisildis,  
I deme that hir herte was ful wo.  
But she, y-lyke sad for evermo,  
Disposed was, this humble creature,<sup>755</sup>  
Thadversitee of fortune al tendure.<sup>(700)</sup>  
Abyding ever his lust and his plesauce,  
To whom that she was yeven, herte and al,  
As to hir verray worldly suffisaunce;  
But shortly if this storie I tellen shal,<sup>760</sup>

This markis writen hath in special  
A lettre in which he sheweth his entente,  
And secrely he to Boloigne it sente.  
To the erl of Panik, which that hadde tho  
Wedded his suster, preyde he specially<sup>765</sup>  
To bringen hoom agayn his children two<sup>(710)</sup>  
In honorable estaat al openly.  
But o thing he him preyede outerly,  
That he to no wight, though men wolde enquire,  
Sholde nat telle, whos children that they were,<sup>770</sup>  
But seye, the mayden sholde y-wedded be  
Un-to the markis of Saluce anon.  
And as this erl was preyed, so dide he;  
For at day set he on his wey is goon  
Toward Saluce, and lordes many oon,<sup>775</sup>  
In riche array, this mayden for to gyde;<sup>(720)</sup>  
Hir yonge brother ryding hir bisyde.  
Arrayed was toward hir mariage  
This fresshe mayde, ful of gemmes clere;  
Hir brother, which that seven yeer was of age,<sup>780</sup>  
Arrayed eek ful fresh in his manere.  
And thus in greet noblesse and with glad chere,  
Toward Saluces shaping hir Iourney,  
Fro day to day they ryden in hir wey.

Explicit quarta pars. Sequitur quinta pars.

Among al this, after his wikke usage,<sup>785</sup>  
This markis, yet his wyf to tempte more<sup>(730)</sup>  
To the uttereste preve of hir corage,  
Fully to han experience and lore  
If that she were as stedfast as bifore,  
He on a day in open audience<sup>790</sup>  
Ful boistously hath seyde hir this sentence:  
'Certes, Grisilde, I hadde y-nough plesaunce  
To han yow to my wyf for your goodnesse,  
As for your trouthe and for your obeisaunce,  
Nought for your linage ne for your richesse;<sup>795</sup>  
But now knowe I in verray soothfastnesse<sup>(740)</sup>  
That in gret lordshipe, if I wel avyse,  
Ther is gret servitude in sondry wyse.  
I may nat don as every plowman may;  
My peple me constreyneth for to take<sup>800</sup>  
Another wyf, and cryen day by day;  
And eek the pope, rancour for to slake,  
Consenteth it, that dar I undertake;  
And treweliche thus mucche I wol yow seye,  
My newe wyf is coming by the weye.<sup>805</sup>

Be strong of herte, and voyde anon hir place,(750)  
And thilke dower that ye broghten me  
Tak it agayn, I graunte it of my grace;  
Retourneth to your fadres hous,' quod he;  
'No man may alwey han prosperitee;810  
With evene herte I rede yow tendure  
The strook of fortune or of aventure.'  
And she answerde agayn in pacience,  
'My lord,' quod she, 'I woot, and wiste alway  
How that bitwixen your magnificence815  
And my poverte no wight can ne may(760)  
Maken comparison; it is no nay.  
I ne heeld me never digne in no manere  
To be your wyf, no, ne your chamberere.  
And in this hous, ther ye me lady made—820  
The heighe god take I for my witesse,  
And also wisly he my soule glade—  
I never heeld me lady ne maistresse,  
But humble servant to your worthinesse,  
And ever shal, whyl that my lyf may dure,825  
Aboven every worldly creature.(770)  
That ye so longe of your benignitee  
Han holden me in honour and nobleye,  
Wher-as I was noght worthy for to be,  
That thonke I god and yow, to whom I preye830  
Foryelde it yow; there is na-more to seye.  
Un-to my fader gladly wol I wende,  
And with him dwelle un-to my lyves ende.  
Ther I was fostred of a child ful smal,  
Til I be deed, my lyf ther wol I lede835  
A widwe clene, in body, herte, and al.(780)  
For sith I yaf to yow my maydenhede,  
And am your trewe wyf, it is no drede,  
God shilde swich a lordes wyf to take  
Another man to housbonde or to make.840  
And of your newe wyf, god of his grace  
So graunte yow wele and prosperitee:  
For I wol gladly yelden hir my place,  
In which that I was blisful wont to be,  
For sith it lyketh yow, my lord,' quod she,845  
'That whylom weren al myn hertes reste,(790)  
That I shal goon, I wol gon whan yow leste.  
But ther-as ye me profre swich dowaire  
As I first broghte, it is wel in my minde  
It were my wrecched clothes, no-thing faire,850  
The which to me were hard now for to finde.  
O gode god! how gentil and how kinde  
Ye semed by your speche and your visage

The day that maked was our mariage!  
But sooth is seyde, algate I finde it trewe—855  
For in effect it preved is on me—(800)  
Love is noght old as whan that it is newe.  
But certes, lord, for noon adversitee,  
To dyen in the cas, it shal nat be  
That ever in word or werk I shal repente860  
That I yow yaf myn herte in hool entente.  
My lord, ye woot that, in my fadres place,  
Ye dede me strepe out of my povre wede,  
And richely me cladden, of your grace.  
To yow broghte I noght elles, out of drede,865  
But feyth and nakednesse and maydenhede.(810)  
And here agayn my clothing I restore,  
And eek my wedding-ring, for evermore.  
The remenant of your Iewels redy be  
In-with your chambre, dar I saufly sayn;870  
Naked out of my fadres hous, quod she,  
'I cam, and naked moot I turne agayn.  
Al your plesaunce wol I folwen fayn;  
But yet I hope it be nat your entente  
That I smoklees out of your paleys wente.875  
Ye coude nat doon so dishoneste a thing,(820)  
That thilke wombe in which your children leye  
Sholde, biforn the peple, in my walking,  
Be seyn al bare; wherfor I yow preye,  
Lat me nat lyk a worm go by the weye.880  
Remembre yow, myn owene lord so dere,  
I was your wyf, thogh I unworthy were.  
Wherfor, in guerdon of my maydenhede,  
Which that I broghte, and noght agayn I bere,  
As voucheth sauf to yeve me, to my mede,885  
But swich a smok as I was wont to were,(830)  
That I therwith may wrye the wombe of here  
That was your wyf; and heer take I my leve  
Of yow, myn owene lord, lest I yow greve.'  
'The smok,' quod he, 'that thou hast on thy bak,890  
Lat it be stille, and ber it forth with thee.'  
But wel unnethes thilke word he spak,  
But wente his wey for rewthe and for pitee.  
Biforn the folk hir-selven strepeth she,  
And in hir smok, with heed and foot al bare,895  
Toward hir fader hous forth is she fare(840)  
The folk hir folwe wepinge in hir weye,  
And fortune ay they cursen as they goon;  
But she fro weping kepte hir yën dreye,  
Ne in this tyme word ne spak she noon.900  
Hir fader, that this tyding herde anoon,



Curseth the day and tyme that nature  
Shoop him to been a lyves creature.  
For out of doute this olde povre man  
Was ever in suspect of hir mariage;905  
For ever he demed, sith that it bigan,(850)  
That whan the lord fulfild had his corage,  
Him wolde thinke it were a disparage  
To his estaat so lowe for talighte,  
And voyden hir as sone as ever he mighte.910  
Agayns his doghter hastilich goth he,  
For he by noyse of folk knew hir cominge,  
And with hir olde cote, as it mighte be,  
He covered hir, ful sorwefully wepinge;  
But on hir body mighte he it nat bringe.915  
For rude was the cloth, and more of age(860)  
By dayes fele than at hir mariage.  
Thus with hir fader, for a certeyn space,  
Dwelleth this flour of wyfly pacience,  
That neither by hir wordes ne hir face920  
Biforn the folk, ne eek in hir absence,  
Ne shewed she that hir was doon offence;  
Ne of hir heigh estaat no remembraunce  
Ne hadde she, as by hir countenaunce.  
No wonder is, for in hir grete estaat925  
Hir goost was ever in pleyn humylitee;(870)  
No tendre mouth, non herte delicaat,  
No pompe, no semblant of royaltie,  
But ful of pacient benignitee,  
Discreet and prydeles, ay honorable,930  
And to hir housbonde ever meke and stable.  
Men speke of Iob and most for his humblesse,  
As clerkes, whan hem list, can wel endyte,  
Namely of men, but as in soothfastnesse,  
Thogh clerkes preyse wommen but a lyte,935  
Ther can no man in humblesse him acyute(880)  
As womman can, ne can ben half so trewe  
As wommen been, but it be falle of-newe.

**[*Pars Sexta.*]**

Fro Boloigne is this erl of Panik come,  
Of which the fame up-sprang to more and lesse,940  
And in the peples eres alle and some  
Was couth eek, that a newe markisesse  
He with him broghte, in swich pompe and richesse,  
That never was ther seyn with mannes ye  
So noble array in al West Lumbardye.945  
The markis, which that shoop and knew al this,(890)

Er that this erl was come, sente his message  
For thilke sely povre Grisildis;  
And she with humble herte and glad visage,  
Nat with no swollen thocht in hir corage,950  
Cam at his heste, and on hir knees hir sette,  
And reverently and wysly she him grette.  
'Grisild,' quod he, 'my wille is outerly,  
This mayden, that shal wedded been to me,  
Receyved be to-morwe as royally955  
As it possible is in myn hous to be.(900)  
And eek that every wight in his degree  
Have his estaat in sitting and servyse  
And heigh plesaunce, as I can best devyse.  
I have no wommen suffisaunt certayn960  
The chambres for tarraye in ordinaunce  
After my lust, and therfor wolde I fayn  
That thyn were al swich maner governaunce;  
Thou knowest eek of old al my plesaunce;  
Though thyn array be badde and yvel biseye,965  
Do thou thy devoir at the leeste weye.'(910)  
'Nat only, lord, that I am glad,' quod she,  
'To doon your lust, but I desyre also  
Yow for to serve and plese in my degree  
With-ouen feynting, and shal evermo.970  
Ne never, for no wele ne no wo,  
Ne shal the gost with-in myn herte stente  
To love yow best with al my trewe entente.'  
And with that word she gan the hous to dighte,  
And tables for to sette and beddes make;975  
And peyned hir to doon al that she mighte,(920)  
Preying the chambereres, for goddes sake,  
To hasten hem, and faste swepe and shake;  
And she, the moste servisable of alle,  
Hath every chambre arrayed and his halle.980  
Abouten undern gan this erl alighte,  
That with him broghte these noble children tweye,  
For which the peple ran to seen the sighte  
Of hir array, so richely biseye;  
And than at erst amonges hem they seye,985  
That Walter was no fool, thogh that him leste(930)  
To chaunge his wyf, for it was for the beste.  
For she is fairer, as they demen alle,  
Than is Grisild, and more tendre of age,  
And fairer fruit bitwene hem sholde falle,990  
And more plesant, for hir heigh linage;  
Hir brother eek so fair was of visage,  
That hem to seen the peple hath caught plesaunce,  
Commending now the markis gouernaunce.—

*Auctor.* ‘O stormy peple! unsad and ever  
untrewe!995  
Ay undiscreet and chaunging as a vane,(940)  
Delyting ever in rumbel that is newe,  
For lyk the mone ay wexe ye and wane;  
Ay ful of clapping, dere y-nogh a lane;  
Your doom is fals, your constance yvel preveth,1000  
A ful greet fool is he that on yow leveth!’  
Thus seyden sadde folk in that citee,  
Whan that the peple gazed up and doun,  
For they were glad, right for the noveltee,  
To han a newe lady of hir toun.1005  
Na-more of this make I now mencion;(950)  
But to Grisilde agayn wol I me dresse,  
And telle hir constance and hir businesse.—  
Ful bisy was Grisilde in every thing  
That to the feste was apertinent;1010  
Right noght was she abayst of hir clothing,  
Though it were rude and somdel eek to-rent.  
But with glad chere to the yate is went,  
With other folk, to grete the markisesse,  
And after that doth forth hir businesse.1015  
With so glad chere his gestes she receyveth,(960)  
And conningly, everich in his degree,  
That no defaute no man aperceyveth;  
But ay they wondren what she mighte be  
That in so povre array was for to see,1020  
And coude swich honour and reverence;  
And worthily they preisen hir prudence.  
In al this mene whyle she ne stente  
This mayde and eek hir brother to commende  
With al hir herte, in ful benigne entente,1025  
So wel, that no man coude hir prys amende.(970)  
But atte laste, whan that these lordes wende  
To sitten doun to mete, he gan to calle  
Grisilde, as she was bisy in his halle.  
‘Grisilde,’ quod he, as it were in his pley,1030  
‘How lyketh thee my wyf and hir beautee?’  
‘Right wel,’ quod she, ‘my lord; for, in good fey,  
A fairer say I never noon than she.  
I prey to god yeve hir prosperitee;  
And so hope I that he wol to yow sende1035  
Plesance y-nogh un-to your lyves ende.(980)  
O thing biseke I yow and warne also,  
That ye ne prikke with no tormentinge  
This tendre mayden, as ye han don mo;  
For she is fostred in hir norishinge1040  
More tendrely, and, to my supposinge,

She coude nat adversitee endure  
As coude a povre fostred creature.  
And whan this Walter say hir pacience,  
Hir glade chere and no malice at al,1045  
And he so ofte had doon to hir offence,(990)  
And she ay sad and constant as a wal,  
Continuing ever hir innocence overal,  
This sturdy markis gan his herte dresse  
To rewen up-on hir wyfly stedfastnesse.1050  
'This is y-nogh, Grisilde myn,' quod he,  
'Be now na-more agast ne yvel apayed;  
I have thy feith and thy benignitee,  
As wel as ever womman was, assayed,  
In greet estaat, and povreliche arrayed.1055  
Now knowe I, dere wyf, thy stedfastnesse,'—(1000)  
And hir in armes took and gan hir kesse.  
And she for wonder took of it no keep;  
She herde nat what thing he to hir seyde;  
She ferde as she had stert out of a sleep,1060  
Til she out of hir masednesse abreyde.  
'Grisilde,' quod he, 'by god that for us deyde,  
Thou art my wyf, ne noon other I have,  
Ne never hadde, as god my soule save!  
This is thy doghter which thou hast supposed1065  
To be my wyf; that other feithfully(1010)  
Shal be myn heir, as I have ay purposed;  
Thou bare him in thy body trewely.  
At Boloigne have I kept hem prively;  
Tak hem agayn, for now maystow nat seye1070  
That thou hast lorn non of thy children tweye.  
And folk that otherweyes han seyde of me,  
I warne hem wel that I have doon this dede  
For no malice ne for no crueltee,  
But for tassaye in thee thy wommanhede,1075  
And nat to sleen my children, god forbede!(1020)  
But for to kepe hem prively and stille,  
Til I thy purpos knewe and al thy wille.'  
Whan she this herde, aswowne doun she falleth  
For pitous loye, and after hir swowninge1080  
She bothe hir yonge children un-to hir calleth,  
And in hir armes, pitously wepinge,  
Embraceth hem, and tendrely kissinge  
Ful lyk a mooder, with hir salte teres  
She batheth bothe hir visage and hir heres.1085  
O, which a pitous thing it was to see(1030)  
Hir swowning, and hir humble voys to here!  
'Grauntmercy, lord, that thanke I yow,' quod she,  
'That ye han saved me my children dere!

Now rekke I never to ben deed right here; 1090  
Sith I stonde in your love and in your grace,  
No fors of deeth, ne whan my spirit pace!  
O tendre, o dere, o yonge children myne,  
Your woful mooder wende stedfastly  
That cruel houndes or som foul vermyne 1095  
Hadde eten yow; but god, of his mercy, (1040)  
And your benigne fader tendrely  
Hath doon yow kept; and in that same stounde  
Al sodeynly she swapte adoun to grounde.  
And in her swough so sadly holdeth she 1100  
Hir children two, whan she gan hem tembrace,  
That with greet sleighte and greet difficultee  
The children from hir arm they gonne arace.  
O many a teer on many a pitous face  
Doun ran of hem that stoden hir bisyde; 1105  
Unnethe abouten hir mighte they abyde. (1050)  
Walter hir gladeth, and hir sorwe slaketh;  
She ryseth up, abaysed, from hir traunce,  
And every wight hir Ioye and feste maketh,  
Til she hath caught agayn hir contenaunce. 1110  
Walter hir dooth so feithfully plesaunce,  
That it was deyntee for to seen the chere  
Bitwixe hem two, now they ben met y-fere.  
Thise ladyes, whan that they hir tyme say,  
Han taken hir, and in-to chambre goon, 1115  
And strepen hir out of hir rude array, (1060)  
And in a cloth of gold that brighte shoon,  
With a coroune of many a riche stoon  
Up-on hir heed, they in-to halle hir broghte,  
And ther she was honoured as hir oghte. 1120  
Thus hath this pitous day a blisful ende,  
For every man and womman dooth his might  
This day in murthe and revel to dispende  
Til on the welkne shoon the sterres light.  
For more solempne in every mannes sight 1125  
This feste was, and gretter of costage, (1070)  
Than was the revel of hir mariage.  
Ful many a yeer in heigh prosperitee  
Liven thise two in concord and in reste,  
And richely his doghter married he 1130  
Un-to a lord, oon of the worthieste  
Of al Itaille; and than in pees and reste  
His wyves fader in his court he kepeth,  
Til that the soule out of his body crepeth.  
His sone succedeth in his heritage 1135  
In reste and pees, after his fader day; (1080)  
And fortunat was eek in mariage,

Al putte he nat his wyf in greet assay.  
This world is nat so strong, it is no nay,  
As it hath been in olde tymes yore, 1140  
And herkneth what this auctour seith therfore.  
This storie is seyde, nat for that wyves sholde  
Folwen Grisilde as in humilitee,  
For it were importable, though they wolde;  
But for that every wight, in his degree, 1145  
Sholde be constant in adversitee (1090)  
As was Grisilde; therfor Petrark wryteth  
This storie, which with heigh style he endyteth.  
For, sith a womman was so pacient  
Un-to a mortal man, wel more us oghte 1150  
Receyven al in gree that god us sent;  
For greet skile is, he preve that he wroghte.  
But he ne tempteth no man that he boghte,  
As seith seint Iame, if ye his pistel rede;  
He preveth folk al day, it is no drede, 1155  
And suffreth us, as for our excercyse, (1100)  
With sharpe scourges of adversitee  
Ful ofte to be bete in sondry wyse;  
Nat for to knowe our wil, for certes he,  
Er we were born, knew al our freletee; 1160  
And for our beste is al his governaunce;  
Lat us than live in vertuuous suffraunce.\*  
But o word, lordinges, herkneth er I go:—  
It were ful hard to finde now a dayes  
In al a toun Grisildes three or two; 1165  
For, if that they were put to swiche assayes, (1110)  
The gold of hem hath now so badde alayes  
With bras, that thogh the coyne be fair at ye,  
It wolde rather breste a-two than plye.  
For which heer, for the wyves love of Bathe, 1170  
Whos lyf and al hir secte god mayntene  
In heigh maistrye, and elles were it scathe,  
I wol with lusty herte fresshe and grene  
Seyn yow a song to glade yow, I wene,  
And lat us stinte of earnestful matere:— 1175  
Herkneth my song, that seith in this manere. (1120)

### Lenvoy De Chaucer.

Grisilde is deed, and eek hir pacience,  
And bothe atones buried in Itaille;  
For which I crye in open audience,  
No wedded man so hardy be tassaille 1180  
His wyves pacience, in hope to finde  
Grisildes, for in certein he shall faille!

O noble wyves, ful of heigh prudence,  
Lat noon humilitee your tonge naille,  
Ne lat no clerk have cause or diligence 1185  
To wryte of yow a storie of swich mervaille (1130)  
As of Grisildis pacient and kinde;  
Lest Chichevache yow swelwe in hir entraille!  
Folweth Ekko, that holdeth no silence,  
But evere answereth at the countretaille; 1190  
Beth nat bidaffed for your innocence,  
But sharply tak on yow the governaille.  
Emprinteth wel this lesson in your minde  
For commune profit, sith it may availle.  
Ye archewyves, stondeth at defence, 1195  
Sin ye be stronge as is a greet camaille; (1140)  
Ne suffreth nat that men yow doon offence.  
And sclendre wyves, feble as in bataille,  
Beth egre as is a tygre yond in Inde;  
Ay clappeth as a mille, I yow consaille. 1200  
Ne dreed hem nat, do hem no reverence;  
For though thyn housbonde armed be in maille,  
The arwes of thy crabbed eloquence  
Shal perce his brest, and eek his aventaille;  
In Ialousye I rede eek thou him binde, 1205  
And thou shalt make him couche as dooth a quaille.  
If thou be fair, ther folk ben in presence (1151)  
Shew thou thy visage and thyn apparaille;  
If thou be foul, be free of thy dispence,  
To gete thee freendes ay do thy travaille; 1210  
Be ay of chere as light as leef on linde,  
And lat him care, and wepe, and wringe, and waille!

Here endeth the Clerk of Oxonford his Tale.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## THE MERCHANT'S PROLOGUE. (T. 9089-9120).

The Prologe of the Marchantes Tale.

‘WEPING and wayling, care, and other sorwe  
I know y-nogh, on even and a-morwe,’  
Quod the Marchaunt, ‘and so don othere mo1215  
That wedded been, I trowe that it be so.  
For, wel I woot, it fareth so with me.  
I have a wyf, the worste that may be;  
For thogh the feend to hir y-coupled were,  
She wolde him overmacche, I dar wel swere.1220  
What sholde I yow reherce in special  
Hir hye malice? she is a shrewe at al.(10)  
Ther is a long and large difference  
Bitwix Grisildis grete pacience  
And of my wyf the passing crueltee.1225  
Were I unbounden, al-so moot I thee!  
I wolde never eft comen in the snare.  
We wedded men live in sorwe and care;  
Assaye who-so wol, and he shal finde  
I seye sooth, by seint Thomas of Inde,1230  
As for the more part, I sey nat alle.  
God shilde that it sholde so bifalle!(20)  
A! good sir hoost! I have y-wedded be  
Thise monthes two, and more nat, pardee;  
And yet, I trowe, he that all his lyve1235  
Wyflees hath been, though that men wolde him ryve  
Un-to the herte, ne coude in no manere  
Tellen so muchel sorwe, as I now here  
Coude tellen of my wyves cursednesse!’  
‘Now,’ quod our hoost, ‘Marchaunt, so god yow blesse,1240  
Sin ye so muchel knowen of that art,  
Ful hertely I pray yow telle us part.’(30)  
‘Gladly,’ quod he, ‘but of myn owene sore,  
For sory herte, I telle may na-more.’



[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## THE MERCHANTS TALE.

Here biginneth the Merchantes Tale.

WHYLOM ther was dwellinge in Lumbardye<sup>1245</sup>  
A worthy knight, that born was of Pavye,  
In which he lived in greet prosperitee;  
And sixty yeer a wyfles man was he,  
And folwed ay his bodily delyt  
On wommen, ther-as was his appetyt,<sup>1250</sup>  
As doon this foles that ben seculer.  
And whan that he was passed sixty yeer,  
Were it for holinesse or for dotage,  
I can nat seye, but swich a greet corage<sup>(10)</sup>  
Hadde this knight to been a wedded man,<sup>1255</sup>  
That day and night he dooth al that he can  
Tespyn where he mighte wedded be;  
Preyinge our lord to granten him, that he  
Mighte ones knowe of thilke blisful lyf  
That is bitwixe an housbond and his wyf;<sup>1260</sup>  
And for to live under that holy bond  
With which that first god man and womman bond.  
'Non other lyf,' seyde he, 'is worth a bene;  
For wedlok is so esy and so clene,<sup>(20)</sup>  
That in this world it is a paradys.'<sup>1265</sup>  
Thus seyde this olde knight, that was so wys.  
And certainly, as sooth as god is king,  
To take a wyf, it is a glorious thing,  
And namely whan a man is old and hoor;  
Thanne is a wyf the fruit of his tresor.<sup>1270</sup>  
Than sholde he take a yong wyf and a feir,  
On which he mighte engendren him an heir,  
And lede his lyf in Ioye and in solas,  
Wher-as this bacheleres singe 'allas,'<sup>(30)</sup>  
Whan that they finden any adversitee<sup>1275</sup>  
In love, which nis but childish vanitee.  
And trewely it sit wel to be so,  
That bacheleres have often peyne and wo;  
On brotel ground they builde, and brotelnesse  
They finde, whan they wene sikernesse.<sup>1280</sup>  
They live but as a brid or as a beste,  
In libertee, and under non areste,  
Ther-as a wedded man in his estaat  
Liveth a lyf blisful and ordinaat,<sup>(40)</sup>  
Under the yok of mariage y-bounde;<sup>1285</sup>  
Wel may his herte in Ioye and blisse habounde.

For who can be so buxom as a wyf?  
Who is so trewe, and eek so ententyf  
To kepe him, syk and hool, as is his make?  
For wele or wo, she wol him nat forsake.1290  
She nis nat wery him to love and serve,  
Thogh that he lye bedrede til he sterve.  
And yet somme clerkes seyn, it nis nat so,  
Of whiche he, Theofraste, is oon of tho.(50)  
What force thogh Theofraste liste lye?1295  
'Ne take no wyf,' quod he, 'for housbondrye,  
As for to spare in houshold thy dispence;  
A trewe servant dooth more diligence,  
Thy good to kepe, than thyn owene wyf.  
For she wol clayme half part al hir lyf;1300  
And if that thou be syk, so god me save,  
Thy verray frendes or a trewe knave  
Wol kepe thee bet than she that waiteth ay  
After thy good, and hath don many a day.(60)  
And if thou take a wyf un-to thyn hold,  
Ful lightly maystow been a cokewold.'  
This sentence, and an hundred thinges  
worse,  
Wryteth this man, ther god his bones  
corse!  
But take no kepe of al swich vanitee;  
Deffye Theofraste and herke me.1310  
A wyf is goddes yifte verrailly;  
Alle other maner yiftes hardily,  
As londes, rentes, pasture, or commune,  
Or moebles, alle ben yiftes of fortune,(70)  
That passen as a shadwe upon a wal.1315  
But dredelees, if pleyedly speke I shal,  
A wyf wol laste, and in thyn hous endure,  
Wel lenger than thee list, paraventure.  
Mariage is a ful gret sacrement;  
He which that hath no wyf, I holde him shent;1320  
He liveth helples and al desolat,  
I speke of folk in seculer estaat.  
And herke why, I sey nat this for noght,  
That womman is for mannes help y-wrought.(80)  
The hye god, whan he hadde Adam maked,1325  
And saugh him al allone, bely-naked,  
God of his grete goodnesse seyde than,  
'Lat us now make an help un-to this man  
Lyk to him-self;' and thanne he made him Eve.  
Heer may ye se, and heer-by may ye preve,1330  
That wyf is mannes help and his confort,  
His paradys terrestre and his disport.

[T. om.]

[T. om.]

So buxom and so vertuou is she,  
They moste nedes live in unitee.(90)  
O flesh they been, and o flesh, as I gesse,1335  
Hath but on herte, in wele and in distresse.  
A wyf! a! Seinte Marie, *benedicite!*  
How mighte a man han any adversitee  
That hath a wyf? certes, I can nat seye.  
The blisse which that is bitwixe hem tweye1340  
Ther may no tonge telle, or herte thinke.  
If he be povre, she helpeth him to swinke;  
She kepeth his good, and wasteth never a deel;  
Al that hir housbonde lust, hir lyketh weel;(100)  
She seith not ones 'nay,' whan he seith 'ye.'1345  
'Do this,' seith he; 'al redy, sir,' seith she.  
O blisful ordre of wedlok precious,  
Thou art so mery , and eek so vertuou,  
And so commended and appreved eek,  
That every man that halt him worth a leek,1350  
Up-on his bare knees oghte al his lyf  
Thanken his god that him hath sent a wyf;  
Or elles preye to god him for to sende  
A wyf, to laste un-to his lyves ende.(110)  
For thanne his lyf is set in sikernesse;1355  
He may nat be deceyved, as I gesse,  
So that he werke after his wyves reed;  
Than may he boldly beren up his heed,  
They been so trewe and ther-with-al so wyse;  
For which, if thou wolt werken as the wyse,1360  
Do alwey so as wommen wol thee rede.  
Lo, how that Iacob, as thise clerkes rede,  
By good conseil of his moder Rebekke,  
Bond the kides skin aboute his nekke;(120)  
Thurgh which his fadres benisoun he wan.1365  
Lo, Iudith, as the storie eek telle can,  
By wys conseil she goddes peple kepte,  
And slow him, Oloferus, whyl he slepte.  
Lo Abigayl, by good conseil how she  
Saved hir housbond Nabal, whan that he1370  
Sholde han be slayn; and loke, Ester also  
By good conseil delivered out of wo  
The peple of god, and made him, Mardochee,  
Of Assuere enhaunced for to be.(130)  
Ther nis no-thing in gree superlatyf,1375  
As seith Senek, above an humble wyf.  
Suffre thy wyves tonge, as Caton bit;  
She shal comande, and thou shalt suffren it;  
And yet she wol obeye of curteisye.  
A wyf is keper of thyn housbondrye;1380

Wel may the syke man biwaille and wepe,  
Ther-as ther nis no wyf the hous to kepe.  
I warne thee, if wysly thou wolt wirche,  
Love wel thy wyf, as Crist loveth his chirche.(140)  
If thou lovest thy-self, thou lovest thy wyf;1385  
No man hateth his flesh, but in his lyf  
He fostreth it, and therefore bidde I thee,  
Cherisse thy wyf, or thou shalt never thee.  
Housbond and wyf, what so men lape or pleye,  
Of worldly folk holden the siker weye;1390  
They been so knit, ther may noon harm bityde;  
And namely, up-on the wyves syde.  
For which this Ianuarie, of whom I tolde,  
Considered hath, inwith his dayes olde,(150)  
The lusty lyf, the vertuous quiete,1395  
That is in mariage hony-swete;  
And for his freendes on a day he sente,  
To tellen hem theeffect of his entente.  
With face sad, his tale he hath hem told;  
He seyde, 'freendes, I am hoor and old,1400  
And almost, god wot, on my pittes brinke;  
Up-on my soule somewhat moste I thinke.  
I have my body folily despended;  
Blessed be god, that it shal been amended!(160)  
For I wol be, certeyn, a wedded man,1405  
And that anoon in al the haste I can,  
Un-to som mayde fair and tendre of age.  
I prey yow, shapeth for my mariage  
Al sodeynly, for I wol nat abyde;  
And I wol fonde tespyen , on my syde,1410  
To whom I may be wedded hastily.  
But for-as-muche as ye ben mo than I,  
Ye shullen rather swich a thing espyen  
Than I, and wher me best were to allyen.(170)  
But o thing warne I yow, my freendes dere,1415  
I wol non old wyf han in no manere.  
She shal nat passe twenty yeer, certayn;  
Old fish and yong flesh wolde I have ful fayn.  
Bet is,' quod he, 'a pyk than a pikerel;  
And bet than old boef is the tendre veel.1420  
I wol no womman thritty yeer of age,  
It is but bene-straw and greet forage.  
And eek these olde widwes, god it woot,  
They conne so muchel craft on Wades boot,(180)  
So muchel broken harm, whan that hem leste,1425  
That with hem sholde I never live in reste.  
For sondry scoles maken sotil clerkis;  
Womman of manye scoles half a clerk is.

But certeynly, a yong thing may men gye,  
Right as men may warm wex with handes plye.1430  
Wherfore I sey yow pleynly, in a clause,  
I wol non old wyf han right for this cause.  
For if so were , I hadde swich mischaunce,  
That I in hir ne coude han no plesaunce,(190)  
Thanne sholde I lede my lyf in avoutrye,1435  
And go streight to the devel, whan I dye.  
Ne children sholde I none up-on hir geten;  
Yet were me lever houndes had me eten,  
Than that myn heritage sholde falle  
In straunge hand, and this I tell yow alle.1440  
I dote nat, I woot the cause why  
Men sholde wedde, and forthermore wot I,  
Ther speketh many a man of mariage,  
That woot na-more of it than woot my page,(200)  
For whiche causes man sholde take a wyf.1445  
If he ne may nat liven chast his lyf,  
Take him a wyf with greet devocioun,  
By-cause of lefelful procreacioun  
Of children, to thonour of god above,  
And nat only for paramour or love;1450  
And for they sholde lecherye eschue,  
And yelde hir dettes whan that they ben due;  
Or for that ech of hem sholde helpen other  
In meschief, as a suster shal the brother;(210)  
And live in chastitee ful holily.1455  
But sires , by your leve, that am nat I.  
For god be thanked, I dar make avaunt,  
I fele my limes stark and suffisaunt  
To do al that a man bilongeth to;  
I woot my-selven best what I may do.1460  
Though I be hoor, I fare as dooth a tree  
That blosmeth er that fruyt y-woxen be;  
A blosmy tree nis neither drye ne deed.  
I fele me nowher hoor but on myn heed;(220)  
Myn herte and alle my limes been as grene1465  
As laurer thurgh the yeer is for to sene.  
And sin that ye han herd al myn entente,  
I prey yow to my wil ye wole assente.'  
Diverse men diversely him tolde  
Of mariage manye ensamples olde.1470  
Somme blamed it, somme preysed it, certeyn;  
But atte laste, shortly for to seyn,  
As al day falleth altercacioun  
Bitwixen freendes in disputisoun,(230)  
Ther fil a stryf bitwixe his bretheren two,1475  
Of whiche that oon was cleped Placebo,

Iustinus soothly called was that other.  
Placebo seyde, ‘o Ianuarie, brother,  
Ful litel nede had ye, my lord so dere,  
Conseil to axe of any that is here;1480  
But that ye been so ful of sapience,  
That yow ne lyketh, for your heighe prudence,  
To weyven fro the word of Salomon.  
This word seyde he un-to us everichon:(240)  
“Wirk alle thing by conseil,” thus seyde he,1485  
“And thanne shaltow nat repente thee.”  
But though that Salomon spak swich a word,  
Myn owene dere brother and my lord,  
So wisly god my soule bringe at reste,  
I hold your owene conseil is the beste.1490  
For brother myn, of me tak this motyf,  
I have now been a court-man al my lyf.  
And god it woot, though I unworthy be,  
I have stonden in ful greet degree(250)  
Abouten lordes of ful heigh estaat;1495  
Yet hadde I never with noon of hem debaat.  
I never hem contraried, trewely;  
I woot wel that my lord can more than I.  
What that he seith, I holde it ferme and stable;  
I seye the same, or elles thing semblable.1500  
A ful gret fool is any conseilour,  
That serveth any lord of heigh honour,  
That dar presume, or elles thenken it,  
That his conseil sholde passe his lordes wit.(260)  
Nay, lordes been no foles, by my fay;1505  
Ye han your-selven shewed heer to-day  
So heigh sentence, so holily and weel,  
That I consente and conferme every-deel  
Your wordes alle, and your opinioun.  
By god, ther nis no man in al this toun1510  
Nin al Itaille, that coude bet han sayd;  
Crist halt him of this conseil wel apayd.  
And trewely, it is an heigh corage  
Of any man, that stopen is in age,(270)  
To take a yong wyf; by my fader kin,1515  
Your herte hangeth on a Ioly pin.  
Doth now in this matere right as yow leste,  
For finally I holde it for the beste.’  
Iustinus, that ay stille sat and herde,  
Right in this wyse to Placebo answerde:1520  
‘Now brother myn, be pacient, I preye,  
Sin ye han seyde, and herkneth what I seye.  
Senek among his othere wordes wyse  
Seith, that a man oghte him right wel avyse,(280)

To whom he yeveth his lond or his catel.1525  
And sin I oghte avyse me right wel  
To whom I yeve my good away fro me,  
Wel muchel more I oghte avysed be  
To whom I yeve my body; for alwey  
I warne yow wel, it is no childes pley1530  
To take a wyf with-oute avyusement.  
Men moste enquere, this is myn assent,  
Wher she be wys, or sobre, or dronkelewe,  
Or proud, or elles other-weys a shrewe;(290)  
A chydester, or wastour of thy good,1535  
Or riche, or poore, or elles mannish wood.  
Al-be-it so that no man finden shal  
Noon in this world that trotteth hool in al,  
Ne man ne beest, swich as men coude devyse;  
But nathelees, it oghte y-nough suffise1540  
With any wyf, if so were that she hadde  
Mo gode thewes than hir vyces badde;  
And al this axeth leysur for tenquere.  
For god it woot, I have wept many a tere(300)  
Ful prively, sin I have had a wyf.1545  
Preyse who-so wole a wedded mannes lyf,  
Certein, I finde in it but cost and care,  
And observances, of alle blisses bare.  
And yet, god woot, my neighebores aboute,  
And namely of wommen many a route,1550  
Seyn that I have the moste stedefast wyf,  
And eek the mekeste oon that bereth lyf.  
But I wot best wher wringeth me my sho.  
Ye mowe, for me, right as yow lyketh do;(310)  
Avyseth yow, ye been a man of age,1555  
How that ye entren in-to mariage,  
And namely with a yong wyf and a fair.  
By him that made water, erthe, and air,  
The yongest man that is in al this route  
Is bisy y-nogh to bringen it aboute1560  
To han his wyf allone, trusteth me.  
Ye shul nat plese hir fully yeres three,  
This is to seyn, to doon hir ful plesaunce.  
A wyf axeth ful many an observaunce.(320)  
I prey yow that ye be nat yvel apayd.'1565  
'Wel,' quod this Ianuarie, 'and hastow sayd?  
Straw for thy Senek, and for thy proverbes,  
I counte nat a panier ful of herbes  
Of scole-termes; wyser men than thou,  
As thou hast herd, assenteden right now1570  
To my purpos; Placebo, what sey ye?'  
'I seye, it is a cursed man,' quod he,

‘That letteth matrimoine, sikerly.’  
And with that word they rysen sodeynly,(330)  
And been assented fully, that he sholde1575  
Be wedded whanne him list and wher he wolde.  
Heigh fantasye and curious bisnesse  
Fro day to day gan in the soule impresse  
Of Ianuarie aboute his mariage.  
Many fair shap, and many a fair visage1580  
Ther passeth thurgh his herte, night by night.  
As who-so toke a mirour polished bright,  
And sette it in a commune market-place,  
Than sholde he see many a figure pace(340)  
By his mirour; and, in the same wyse,1585  
Gan Ianuarie inwith his thoght devyse  
Of maydens, whiche that dwelten him bisyde.  
He wiste nat wher that he mighte abyde.  
For if that oon have beaute in hir face,  
Another stant so in the peples grace1590  
For hir sadnesse, and hir benignitee,  
That of the peple grettest voys hath she.  
And somme were riche, and hadden badde name.  
But nathelees, bitwixe earnest and game,(350)  
He atte laste apoynted him on oon,1595  
And leet alle othere from his herte goon,  
And chees hir of his owene auctoritee;  
For love is blind al day, and may nat see.  
And whan that he was in his bed y-brought,  
He purtreied, in his herte and in his thoght,1600  
Hir fresshe beautee and hir age tendre,  
Hir myddel smal, hir armes longe and sclendre,  
Hir wyse governaunce, hir gentillesse,  
Hir wommanly beringe and hir sadnesse.(360)  
And whan that he on hir was condescended,1605  
Him thoughte his chois mighte nat ben amended.  
For whan that he him-self concluded hadde,  
Him thoughte ech other mannes wit so badde,  
That impossible it were to replye  
Agayn his chois, this was his fantasye.1610  
His freendes sente he to at his instaunce,  
And preyed hem to doon him that plesaunce,  
That hastily they wolden to him come;  
He wolde abregge hir labour, alle and some.(370)  
Nedeth na-more for him to go ne ryde,1615  
He was apoynted ther he wolde abyde.  
Placebo cam, and eek his freendes sone,  
And alderfirst he bad hem alle a bone,  
That noon of hem none argumentes make  
Agayn the purpos which that he hath take;1620



‘Which purpos was plesant to god,’ seyde he,  
‘And verray ground of his prosperitee.’  
He seyde, ther was a mayden in the toun,  
Which that of beautee hadde greet renoun,(380)  
Al were it so she were of smal degree;1625  
Suffyseth him hir youthe and hir beautee.  
Which mayde, he seyde, he wolde han to his wyf,  
To lede in ese and holinesse his lyf.  
And thanked god, that he mighte han hire al,  
That no wight of his blisse parten shal.1630  
And preyde hem to labouren in this nede,  
And shapen that he faille nat to spede;  
For thanne, he seyde, his spirit was at ese.  
‘Thanne is,’ quod he, ‘no-thing may me displese,(390)  
Saue o thing priketh in my conscience,1635  
The which I wol reherce in your presence.  
I have,’ quod he, ‘herd seyde, ful yore ago,  
Ther may no man han parfite blisses two,  
This is to seye, in erthe and eek in hevene.  
For though he kepe him fro the sinnes sevene,1640  
And eek from every branche of thilke tree,  
Yet is ther so parfit felicitee,  
And so greet ese and lust in mariage,  
That ever I am agast, now in myn age,(400)  
That I shal lede now so mery a lyf,1645  
So delicat, with-outen wo and stryf,  
That I shal have myn hevene in erthe here.  
For sith that verray hevene is boght so dere,  
With tribulacioun and greet penaunce,  
How sholde I thanne, that live in swich plesaunce1650  
As alle wedded men don with hir wyvis,  
Come to the blisse ther Crist eterne on lyve is?  
This is my drede, and ye, my bretheren tweye,  
Assoilleth me this questioun, I preye.’(410)  
Iustinus, which that hated his folye,1655  
Answerde anon, right in his Iaperye;  
And for he wolde his longe tale abregge,  
He wolde noon auctoritee allegge,  
But seyde, ‘sire, so ther be noon obstacle  
Other than this, god of his hye miracle1660  
And of his mercy may so for yow wirche,  
That, er ye have your right of holy chirche,  
Ye may repente of wedded mannes lyf,  
In which ye seyn ther is no wo ne stryf.(420)  
And elles, god forbede but he sente1665  
A wedded man him grace to repente  
Wel ofte rather than a sengle man!  
And therefore, sire, the beste reed I can,

Dispeire yow noght, but have in your memorie,  
Paraunter she may be your purgatorie!1670  
She may be goddes mene, and goddes whippe;  
Than shal your soule up to hevene skippe  
Swifter than dooth an arwe out of the bowe!  
I hope to god, her-after shul ye knowe,(430)  
That their nis no so greet felicitee1675  
In mariage, ne never-mo shal be,  
That yow shal lette of your savacioun,  
So that ye use, as skile is and resoun,  
The lustes of your wyf attemprely,  
And that ye plese hir nat to amorously,1680  
And that ye kepe yow eek from other sinne.  
My tale is doon:—for my wit is thinne.  
Beth nat agast her-of, my brother dere.’—  
(But lat us waden out of this matere.(440)  
The Wyf of Bathe, if ye han understonde,1685  
Of mariage, which we have on honde,  
Declared hath ful wel in litel space).—  
‘Fareth now wel, god have yow in his grace.’  
And with this word this Iustin and his brother  
Han take hir leve, and ech of hem of other.1690  
For whan they sawe it moste nedes be,  
They wroghten so, by sly and wys treetee,  
That she, this mayden, which that Maius highte,  
As hastily as ever that she mighte,(450)  
Shal wedded be un-to this Ianuarie.1695  
I trowe it were to longe yow to tarie,  
If I yow tolde of every scrit and bond,  
By which that she was feffed in his lond;  
Or for to herknen of hir riche array.  
But finally y-comen is the day1700  
That to the chirche bothe be they went  
For to receyve the holy sacrement.  
Forth comth the preest, with stole aboute his nekke,  
And bad hir be lyk Sarra and Rebekke,(460)  
In wisdom and in trouthe of mariage;1705  
And seyde his orisons, as is usage,  
And crouched hem, and bad god sholde hem blesse,  
And made al siker y-nogh with holinesse.  
Thus been they wedded with solempnitee,  
And at the feste sitteth he and she1710  
With other worthy folk up-on the deys.  
Al ful of Ioye and blisse is the paleys,  
And ful of instruments and of vitaille,  
The moste deyntevous of al Itaille.(470)  
Biform hem stooode swiche instruments of soun,1715  
That Orpheus, ne of Thebes Amphioun,

Ne maden never swich a melodye.  
At every cours than cam loud minstraleye,  
That never tromped Ioab, for to here,  
Nor he, Theodomas, yet half so clere,1720  
At Thebes, whan the citee was in doute.  
Bacus the wyn hem skinketh al aboute,  
And Venus laugheth up-on every wight.  
For Januarie was bicomme hir knight,(480)  
And wolde bothe assayen his corage1725  
In libertee, and eek in mariage;  
And with hir fyrbrond in hir hand aboute  
Daunceth biforn the bryde and al the route.  
And certainly, I dar right wel seyn this,  
Ymeneus, that god of wedding is,1730  
Saugh never his lyf so mery a wedded man.  
Hold thou thy pees, thou poete Marcian,  
That wrytest us that ilke wedding murie  
Of hir, Philologye, and him, Mercurie,(490)  
And of the songes that the Muses songe.1735  
To smal is bothe thy penne, and eek thy tonge,  
For to descryven of this mariage.  
Whan tendre youthe hath wedded stouping age,  
Ther is swich mirthe that it may nat be writen;  
Assayeth it your-self, than may ye witen1740  
If that I lye or noon in this matere.  
Maius, that sit with so benigne a chere,  
Hir to biholde it semed fayerye;  
Quene Ester loked never with swich an ye(500)  
On Assuer, so meke a look hath she.1745  
I may yow nat devyse al hir beautee;  
But thus muche of hir beautee telle I may,  
That she was lyk the brighte morwe of May,  
Fulfilde of alle beautee and plesaunce.  
This Januarie is ravished in a traunce1750  
At every time he loked on hir face;  
But in his herte he gan hir to manace,  
That he that night in armes wolde hir streyne  
Harder than ever Paris dide Eleyne.(510)  
But nathelees, yet hadde he greet pitee,1755  
That thilke night offenden hir moste he;  
And thoughte, 'allas! o tendre creature!  
Now wolde god ye mighte wel endure  
Al my corage, it is so sharp and kene;  
I am agast ye shul it nat sustene.1760  
But god forbede that I dide al my might!  
Now wolde god that it were woxen night,  
And that the night wolde lasten evermo.  
I wolde that al this peple were ago.'(520)

And finally, he doth al his labour, 1765  
As he best mighte, savinge his honour,  
To haste hem fro the mete in subtil wyse.  
The tyme cam that reson was to ryse;  
And after that, men daunce and drinke faste,  
And spyces al aboute the hous they caste; 1770  
And ful of Ioye and blisse is every man;  
All but a squyer, highte Damian,  
Which carf biforn the knight ful many a day.  
He was so ravished on his lady May, (530)  
That for the verray peyne he was ny wood; 1775  
Almost he swelte and swowned ther he stood.  
So sore hath Venus hurt him with hir brond,  
As that she bar it daunsinge in hir hond.  
And to his bed he wente him hastily;  
Na-more of him as at this tyme speke I. 1780  
But ther I lete him wepe y-nough and pleyne,  
Til fresshe May wol rewen on his peyne.  
O perilous fyr, that in the bedstraw bredeth!  
O famulier foo, that his servyce  
bedeth! (540) Auctor.  
O servant traitour, false hoomly hewe, 1785  
Lyk to the naddre in bosom sly untrewe,  
God shilde us alle from your aqueyntaunce!  
O Ianuarie, dronken in plesaunce  
Of mariage, see how thy Damian,  
Thyn owene squyer and thy borne man, 1790  
Entendeth for to do thee vileinye.  
God graunte thee thyn hoomly fo tespye.  
For in this world nis worse pestilence  
Than hoomly foo al day in thy presence. (550)  
Parfourned hath the sonne his ark diurne, 1795  
No lenger may the body of him soiurne  
On thorisonte, as in that latitude.  
Night with his mantel, that is derk and rude,  
Gan oversprede the hemisperie aboute;  
For which departed is this lusty route 1800  
Fro Ianuarie, with thank on every syde.  
Hom to hir houses lustily they ryde,  
Wher-as they doon hir thinges as hem leste,  
And whan they sye hir tyme, goon to reste. (560)  
Sone after that, this hastif Ianuarie 1805  
Wolde go to bedde, he wolde no lenger tarie.  
He drinketh ipocras, clarree, and vernage  
Of spyces hote, tencren his corage;  
And many a letuarie hadde he ful fyn,  
Swiche as the cursed monk dan Constantyn 1810  
Hath writen in his book *de Coitu*;

To eten hem alle, he nas no-thing eschu.  
And to his privee freendes thus seyde he:  
'For goddes love, as sone as it may be,(570)  
Lat voyden al this hous in curteys wyse.' 1815  
And they han doon right as he wol devyse.  
Men drinken, and the travers drawe anon;  
The bryde was broght a-bedde as stille as stoon;  
And whan the bed was with the preest y-blessed,  
Out of the chambre hath every wight him dressed. 1820  
And Ianuarie hath faste in armes take  
His fresshe May, his paradys, his make.  
He lulleth hir, he kisseth hir ful ofte  
With thikke bristles of his berd unsofte,(580)  
Lyk to the skin of houndfish, sharp as brere, 1825  
For he was shave al newe in his manere.  
He rubbeth hir aboute hir tendre face,  
And seyde thus, 'allas! I moot trespass  
To yow, my spouse, and yow gretly offende,  
Er tyme come that I wil doun descende. 1830  
But nathelees, considereth this,' quod he,  
'Ther nis no werkman, what-so-ever he be,  
That may bothe werke wel and hastily;  
This wol be doon at leyser parfitly.(590)  
It is no fors how longe that we pleye; 1835  
In trewe wedlok wedded be we tweye;  
And blessed be the yok that we been inne,  
For in our actes we mowe do no sinne.  
A man may do no sinne with his wyf,  
Ne hurte him-selven with his owene knyf; 1840  
For we han leve to pleye us by the lawe.'  
Thus laboureth he til that the day gan dawe;  
And than he taketh a sop in fyn clarree,  
And upright in his bed than sitteth he,(600)  
And after that he sang ful loude and clere, 1845  
And kiste his wyf, and made wantoun chere.  
He was al coltish, ful of ragerye,  
And ful of Iargon as a flekked pye.  
The slakke skin aboute his nekke shaketh,  
Whyl that he sang; so chaunteth he and craketh. 1850  
But god wot what that May thoughte in hir herte,  
Whan she him saugh up sittinge in his sherte,  
In his night-cappe, and with his nekke lene;  
She preyseth nat his pleying worth a bene.(610)  
Than seide he thus, 'my reste wol I take; 1855  
Now day is come, I may no lenger wake.'  
And doun he leyde his heed, and sleep til pryme.  
And afterward, whan that he saugh his tyme,  
Up ryseth Ianuarie; but fresshe May

Holdeth hir chambre un-to the fourthe day,1860  
As usage is of wyves for the beste.  
For every labour som-tyme moot han reste,  
Or elles longe may he nat endure;  
This is to seyn, no lyves creature,(620)  
Be it of fish, or brid, or beest, or man.1865  
Now wol I speke of woful Damian,  
That languissheth for love, as ye shul here;  
Therefore I speke to him in this manere:  
I seye, ‘O sely Damian, allas!  
Answer to my demaunde, as in this cas,1870  
How shaltow to thy lady fresshe May  
Telle thy wo? She wole alwey seye “nay”;  
Eek if thou speke, she wol thy wo biwreye;  
God be thyn help, I can no bettre seye.’(630)  
This syke Damian in Venus fyr1875  
So brenneth, that he dyeth for desyr;  
For which he putte his lyf in aventure,  
No lenger mighte he in this wyse endure;  
But prively a penner gan he borwe,  
And in a lettre wroot he al his sorwe,1880  
In manere of a compleynt or a lay,  
Un-to his faire fresshe lady May.  
And in a purs of silk, heng on his sherte,  
He hath it put, and leyde it at his herte.(640)  
The mone that, at noon, was, thilke day1885  
That Ianuarie hath wedded fresshe May,  
In two of Taur, was in-to Cancre gliden;  
So longe hath Maius in hir chambre biden,  
As custume is un-to thise nobles alle.  
A bryde shal nat eten in the halle,1890  
Til dayes foure or three dayes atte leste  
Y-passed been; than lat hir go to feste.  
The fourthe day compleet fro noon to noon,  
Whan that the heighe masse was y-doon,(650)  
In halle sit this Ianuarie, and May1895  
As fresh as is the brighte someres day.  
And so bifel, how that this gode man  
Remembred him upon this Damian,  
And seyde, ‘Seinte Marie! how may this be,  
That Damian entendeth nat to me?1900  
Is he ay syk, or how may this bityde?’  
His squyeres, whiche that stoden ther bisyde,  
Excused him by-cause of his siknesse,  
Which letted him to doon his businesse;(660)  
Noon other cause mighte make him tarie.1905  
‘That me forthinketh,’ quod this Ianuarie,  
‘He is a gentil squyer, by my trouthe!

If that he deyde, it were harm and routhe;  
He is as wys, discreet, and as secree  
As any man I woot of his degree;1910  
And ther-to manly and eek servisable,  
And for to been a thrifty man right able  
But after mete, as sone as ever I may,  
I wol my-self visyte him and eek May,(670)  
To doon him al the confort that I can.'1915  
And for that word him blessed every man,  
That, of his bountee and his gentillesse,  
He wolde so conforten in siknesse  
His squyer, for it was a gentil dede.  
'Dame,' quod this Ianuarie, 'tak good hede,1920  
At-after mete ye, with your wommen alle,  
Whan ye han been in chambre out of this halle,  
That alle ye go see this Damian;  
Doth him disport, he is a gentil man;(680)  
And telleth him that I wol him visyte,1925  
Have I no-thing but rested me a lyte;  
And spede yow faste, for I wole abyde  
Til that ye slepe faste by my syde.'  
And with that word he gan to him to calle  
A squyer, that was marchal of his halle,1930  
And tolde him certeyn thinges, what he wolde.  
This fresshe May hath streight hir wey y-holde,  
With alle hir wommen, un-to Damian.  
Doun by his beddes syde sit she than,(690)  
Confortinge him as goodly as she may.1935  
This Damian, whan that his tyme he say,  
In secree wise his purs, and eek his bille,  
In which that he y-writen hadde his wille,  
Hath put in-to hir hand, with-outen more,  
Save that he syketh wonder depe and sore,1940  
And softly to hir right thus seyde he:  
'Mercy! and that ye nat discovere me;  
For I am deed, if that this thing be kid.'  
This purs hath she inwith hir bosom hid,(700)  
And wente hir wey; ye gete namore of me.1945  
But un-to Ianuarie y-comen is she,  
That on his beddes syde sit ful softe.  
He taketh hir, and kisseth hir ful ofte,  
And leyde him doun to slepe, and that anon.  
She feyned hir as that she moste gon1950  
Ther-as ye woot that every wight mot nede.  
And whan she of this bille hath taken hede,  
She rente it al to cloutes atte laste,  
And in the privee softly it caste.(710)  
Who studieth now but faire fresshe May?1955

Adoun by olde Ianuarie she lay,  
That sleep, til that the coughe hath him awaked;  
Anon he preyde hir strepen hir al naked;  
He wolde of hir, he seyde, han som plesaunce,  
And seyde, hir clothes dide him encombraunce,1960  
And she obeyeth, be hir lief or looth.  
But lest that precious folk be with me wrooth,  
How that he wroghte, I dar nat to yow telle;  
Or whether hir thoughte it paradys or helle;(720)  
But here I lete hem werken in hir wyse1965  
Til evensong rong, and that they moste aryse.  
Were it by destinee or aventure,  
Were it by influence or by nature,  
Or constellacion, that in swich estat  
The hevene stood, that tyme fortunat1970  
Was for to putte a bille of Venus werkes  
(For alle thing hath tyme, as seyn thise clerkes)  
To any womman, for to gete hir love,  
I can nat seye; but grete god above,(730)  
That knowet

Here is ended the Marchantes Tale of Ianuarie.



[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## EPILOGUE TO THE MERCHANTES TALE.

‘EY! goddes mercy!’ seyde our Hoste tho,  
‘Now swich a wyf I pray god kepe me fro!2420  
Lo, whiche sleightes and subtilitees  
In wommen been! for ay as bisy as bees  
Ben they, us sely men for to deceyve,  
And from a sothe ever wol they weyve;  
By this Marchauntes Tale it preveth weel.2425  
But doutelees, as trewe as any steel  
I have a wyf, though that she povre be;  
But of hir tonge a labbing shrewe is she,(10)  
And yet she hath an heap of vyces mo;  
Ther-of no fors, lat alle swiche thinges go.2430  
But, wite ye what? in conseil be it seyde,  
Me reweth sore I am un-to hir teyd.  
For, and I sholde rekenen every vyce  
Which that she hath, y-wis, I were to nyce,  
And cause why; it sholde reported be2435  
And told to hir of somme of this meynee;  
Of whom, it nedeth nat for to declare,  
Sin wommen connen outen swich chaffare;(20)  
And eek my wit suffyseth nat ther-to  
To tellen al; wherfor my tale is do.’2440

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## GROUP F.

### THE SQUIERES TALE.

(T. 10315-10334).

#### [The Squire'S Prologue.]

‘SQUIER, com neer, if it your wille be,  
And sey somewhat of love; for, certes, ye  
Connen ther-on as mucche as any man.’  
‘Nay, sir,’ quod he, ‘but I wol seye as I can  
With hertly wille; for I wol nat rebelle<sup>5</sup>  
Agayn your lust; a tale wol I telle.  
Have me excused if I speke amis,  
My wil is good; and lo, my tale is this.

Here biginneth the Squieres Tale.

At Sarray, in the land of Tartarye,(1)  
Ther dwelte a king, that werreyed Russye,10  
Thurgh which ther deyde many a doughty man.  
This noble king was cleped Cambinskan,  
Which in his tyme was of so greet renoun  
That ther nas no-wher in no regioun  
So excellent a lord in alle thing;15  
Him lakked nought that longeth to a king.  
As of the secte of which that he was born  
He kepte his lay, to which that he was sworn;(10)  
And ther-to he was hardy, wys, and riche,  
Pitous and Iust, and ever-more y-liche<sup>20</sup>  
Sooth of his word, benigne and honourable,  
Of his corage as any centre stable;  
Yong, fresh, and strong , in armes desirous  
As any bachelor of al his hous.  
A fair persone he was and fortunat,<sup>25</sup>  
And kepte alwey so wel royal estat,  
That ther was nowher swich another man.  
This noble king, this Tartre Cambinskan(<sup>20</sup>)  
Hadde two sones on Elpheta his wyf,  
Of whiche the eldeste highte Algarsyf,<sup>30</sup>  
That other sone was cleped Cambalo.  
A doghter hadde this worthy king also,  
That yongest was, and highte Canacee.  
But for to telle yow al hir beautee,  
It lyth nat in my tonge, nin my conning;<sup>35</sup>

I dar nat undertake so heigh a thing.  
Myn English eek is insufficient;  
It moste been a rethor excellent,(30)  
That coude his colours longing for that art,  
If he sholde hir discryven every part.40  
I am non swich, I moot speke as I can.  
And so bifel that, whan this Cambinskan  
Hath twenty winter born his diademe,  
As he was wont fro yeer to yeer, I deme,  
He leet the feste of his nativitee45  
Don cryen thurghout Sarray his citee,  
The last Idus of March, after the yeer.  
Phebus the sonne ful Ioly was and cleer;(40)  
For he was neigh his exaltacioun  
In Martes face, and in his mansioun50  
In Aries, the colerik hote signe.  
Ful lusty was the weder and benigne,  
For which the foules , agayn the sonne shene,  
What for the seson and the yonge grene,  
Ful loude songen hir affeccions;55  
Him semed han geten hem protecciouns  
Agayn the swerd of winter kene and cold.  
This Cambinskan, of which I have yow told,(50)  
In royal vestiment sit on his deys,  
With diademe, ful heighe in his paleys,60  
And halt his feste, so solempne and so riche  
That in this world ne was ther noon it liche.  
Of which if I shal tellen al tharray,  
Than wolde it occupye a someres day;  
And eek it nedeth nat for to devyse65  
At every cours the ordre of hir servyse.  
I wol nat tellen of hir strange sewes,  
Ne of hir swannes, ne of hir heronsewes.(60)  
Eek in that lond, as tellen knightes olde,  
Ther is som mete that is ful deyntee holde,70  
That in this lond men recche of it but smal;  
Ther nis no man that may reporten al.  
I wol nat tarien yow, for it is pryme,  
And for it is no fruit but los of tyme;  
Un-to my firste I wol have my recours.75  
And so bifel that, after the thridde cours,  
Whyl that this king sit thus in his nobleye,  
Herkninge his minstralles hir thinges pleye(70)  
Biforn him at the bord deliciously,  
In at the halle-dore al sodeynly80  
Ther cam a knight up-on a stede of bras,  
And in his hand a brood mirour of glas.  
Upon his thombe he hadde of gold a ring,

And by his syde a naked swerd hanging;  
And up he rydeth to the heighe bord.85  
In al the halle ne was ther spoke a word  
For merveille of this knight; him to biholde  
Ful bisily ther wayten yonge and olde.(80)  
This strange knight, that cam thus sodeynly,  
Al armed save his heed ful richely,90  
Saluëth king and queen, and lordes alle,  
By ordre, as they seten in the halle,  
With so heigh reverence and obeisaunce  
As wel in speche as in contenaunce,  
That Gawain, with his olde curteisye,95  
Though he were come ageyn out of Fairye,  
Ne coude him nat amende with a word.  
And after this, biforn the heighe bord,(90)  
He with a manly voys seith his message,  
After the forme used in his langage,100  
With-uten vyce of sillable or of lettre;  
And, for his tale sholde seme the bettre,  
Accordant to his wordes was his chere,  
As techeth art of speche hem that it lere;  
Al-be-it that I can nat sounne his style,105  
Ne can nat climben over so heigh a style,  
Yet seye I this, as to commune entente,  
Thus mucche amounteth al that ever he mente,(100)  
If it so be that I have it in minde.  
He seyde, 'the king of Arabie and of Inde,110  
My lige lord, on this solempne day  
Saluëth yow as he best can and may,  
And sendeth yow, in honour of your feste,  
By me, that am al redy at your heste,  
This stede of bras, that esily and wel115  
Can, in the space of o day naturel,  
This is to seyn, in foure and twenty houres,  
Wher-so yow list, in droghte or elles shoures,(110)  
Beren your body in-to every place  
To which your herte wilneth for to pace120  
With-uten wem of yow, thurgh foul or fair;  
Or, if yow list to fleen as hye in the air  
As doth an egle, whan him list to sore,  
This same stede shal bere yow ever-more  
With-uten harm, til ye be ther yow leste,125  
Though that ye slepen on his bak or reste;  
And turne ayeyn, with wrything of a pin.  
He that it wroghte coude ful many a gin;(120)  
He wayted many a constellacioun  
Er he had doon this operacioun;130  
And knew ful many a seel and many a bond.

This mirour eek, that I have in myn hond,  
Hath swich a might, that men may in it see  
Whan ther shal fallen any adversitee  
Un-to your regne or to your-self also; 135  
And openly who is your freend or foo.  
And over al this, if any lady bright  
Hath set hir herte on any maner wight, (130)  
If he be fals, she shal his treson see,  
His newe love and al his subtiltee 140  
So openly, that ther shal no-thing hyde.  
Wherfor, ageyn this lusty someres tyde,  
This mirour and this ring, that ye may see,  
He hath sent to my lady Canacee,  
Your excellente doghter that is here. 145  
The vertu of the ring, if ye wol here,  
Is this; that, if hir lust it for to were  
Up-on hir thombe, or in hir purs it bere, (140)  
Ther is no foul that fleeth under the hevene  
That she ne shal wel understonde his stevene, 150  
And knowe his mening openly and pleyn,  
And answeere him in his langage ageyn.  
And every gras that groweth up-on rote  
She shal eek knowe, and whom it wol do bote,  
Al be his woundes never so depe and wyde. 155  
This naked swerd, that hangeth by my syde,  
Swich vertu hath, that what man so ye smyte,  
Thurgh-out his armure it wol kerve and byte, (150)  
Were it as thikke as is a branched ook;  
And what man that is wounded with the strook 160  
Shal never be hool til that yow list, of grace,  
To stroke him with the platte in thilke place  
Ther he is hurt: this is as mucche to seyn,  
Ye mote with the platte swerd ageyn  
Stroke him in the wounde, and it wol close; 165  
This is a verray sooth, with-outen glose,  
It failleth nat whyl it is in your hold.  
And whan this knight hath thus his tale told, (160)  
He rydeth out of halle, and doun he lighte.  
His stede, which that shoon as sonne brighte, 170  
Stant in the court, as stille as any stoon.  
This knight is to his chambre lad anon,  
And is unarmed and to mete y-set.  
The presentes ben ful royally y-fet,  
This is to seyn, the swerd and the mirour, 175  
And born anon in-to the heighe tour  
With certeine officers ordeyned therfore;  
And un-to Canacee this ring was bore (170)  
Solempnely, ther she sit at the table.

But sikerly, with-outen any fable,180  
The hors of bras, that may nat be remewed,  
It stant as it were to the ground y-glewed.  
Ther may no man out of the place it dryve  
For noon engyn of windas or polyve;  
And cause why, for they can nat the craft.185  
And therefore in the place they han it laft  
Til that the knight hath taught hem the manere  
To voyden him, as ye shal after here.(180)  
Greet was the prees, that swarmeth to and fro,  
To gauren on this hors that stondest so;190  
For it so heigh was, and so brood and long,  
So wel proporcioned for to ben strong,  
Right as it were a stede of Lumbardye;  
Ther-with so horsly, and so quik of ye  
As it a gentil Poileys courser were.195  
For certes, fro his tayl un-to his ere,  
Nature ne art ne coude him nat amende  
In no degree, as al the peple wende.(190)  
But evermore hir moste wonder was,  
How that it coude goon , and was of bras;200  
It was of Fairye, as the peple semed.  
Diverse folk diversely they demed;  
As many hedes, as many wittes ther been.  
They murmureden as dooth a swarm of been,  
And maden skiles after hir fantasyes,205  
Rehersinge of this olde poetryes,  
And seyden, it was lyk the Pegasee,  
The hors that hadde winges for to flee;(200)  
Or elles it was the Grekes hors Synon,  
That broghte Troye to destruccion,210  
As men may in thise olde gestes rede.  
'Myn herte,' quod oon, 'is evermore in drede;  
I trowe som men of armes been ther-inne,  
That shapen hem this citee for to winne.  
It were right good that al swich thing were  
knowe.'215  
Another rownd to his felawe lowe,  
And seyde, 'he lyeth, it is rather lyk  
An apparence y-maad by som magyk,(210)  
As Iogelours pleyen at thise festes grete.'  
Of sondry doutes thus they Iangle and trete,220  
As lewed peple demeth comunly  
Of thinges that ben maad more subtilly  
Than they can in her lewednes comprehende;  
They demen gladly to the badder ende.  
And somme of hem wondred on the mirour,225  
That born was up in-to the maister-tour,

How men mighte in it swiche thinges see.  
Another answerde, and seyde it mighte wel be(220)  
Naturelly, by composiciouns  
Of angles and of slye reflexiouns,230  
And seyden, that in Rome was swich oon.  
They speken of Alocen and Vitulon,  
And Aristotle, that writen in hir lyves  
Of queynte mirours and of prospectyves,  
As knowen they that han hir bokes herd.235  
And othere folk han wondred on the swerd  
That wolde percen thurgh-out every-thing;  
And fille in speche of Thelophus the king,(230)  
And of Achilles with his queynte spere,  
For he coude with it bothe hele and dere,240  
Right in swich wyse as men may with the swerd  
Of which right now ye han your-selven herd.  
They speken of sondry harding of metal,  
And speke of medicynes ther-with-al,  
And how, and whanne, it sholde y-harded be;245  
Which is unknowe algates unto me.  
Tho speke they of Canaceës ring,  
And seyden alle, that swich a wonder thing(240)  
Of craft of ringes herde they never non,  
Save that he, Moyses, and king Salomon250  
Hadde a name of konning in swich art.  
Thus seyn the peple, and drawen hem apart.  
But nathelees, somme seyden that it was  
Wonder to maken of fern-asshen glas,  
And yet nis glas nat lyk asshen of fern;255  
But for they han y-knowen it so fern,  
Therefore cesseth her Iangling and her wonder.  
As sore wondren somme on cause of thonder,(250)  
On ebbe, on flood, on gossomer, and on mist,  
And alle thing, til that the cause is wist.260  
Thus Iangle they and demen and devyse,  
Til that the king gan fro the bord aryse.  
Phebus hath laft the angle meridional,  
And yet ascending was the beest royal,  
The gentil Leon, with his Aldiran,265  
Whan that this Tartre king, this Cambynskan,  
Roos fro his bord, ther that he sat ful hye.  
Toform him gooth the loude minstralcye,(260)  
Til he cam to his chambre of parements,  
Ther as they sownen diverse instruments,270  
That it is lyk an heven for to here.  
Now dauncen lusty Venus children dere,  
For in the Fish hir lady sat ful hye,  
And loketh on hem with a frendly ye.

This noble king is set up in his trone.275  
This strange knight is fet to him ful sone,  
And on the daunce he gooth with Canacee.  
Heer is the revel and the Iolitee(270)  
That is nat able a dul man to devyse.  
He moste han knowen love and his servyse,280  
And been a festlich man as fresh as May,  
That sholde yow devysen swich array.  
Who coude telle yow the forme of daunces,  
So uncouth and so fresshe contenaunces,  
Swich subtil loking and dissimulinges285  
For drede of Ialouse mennes aperceyvinges?  
No man but Launcelot, and he is deed.  
Therefor I passe of al this lustiheed;(280)  
I seye na-more, but in this Iolynesse  
I lete hem, til men to the soper dresse.290  
The styward bit the spyces for to hye,  
And eek the wyn, in al this melodye.  
The usshers and the squyers ben y-gooun;  
The spyces and the wyn is come anoon.  
They ete and drinke; and whan this hadde an  
ende,295  
Un-to the temple, as reson was, they wende.  
The service doon, they soupen al by day.  
What nedeth yow rehercen hir array?(290)  
Ech man wot wel, that at a kinges feeste  
Hath plentee, to the moste and to the leeste,300  
And deyntees mo than been in my knowing.  
At-after soper gooth this noble king  
To seen this hors of bras, with al the route  
Of lordes and of ladyes him aboute.  
Swich wondring was ther on this hors of bras305  
That, sin the grete sege of Troye was,  
Ther-as men wondreden on an hors also,  
Ne was ther swich a wondring as was tho.(300)  
But fynally the king axeth this knight  
The vertu of this courser and the might,310  
And preyede him to telle his governaunce.  
This hors anoon bigan to trippe and daunce,  
Whan that this knight leyde hand up-on his reyne,  
And seyde, ‘sir, ther is na-more to seyne,  
But, whan yow list to ryden any-where,315  
Ye moten trille a pin, stant in his ere,  
Which I shall telle yow bitwix vs two.  
Ye mote nempne him to what place also(310)  
Or to what contree that yow list to ryde.  
And whan ye come ther as yow list abyde,320  
Bidde him descende, and trille another pin,



For ther-in lyth the effect of al the gin,  
And he wol doun descende and doon your wille;  
And in that place he wol abyde stille,  
Though al the world the contrarie hadde y-  
swore;325  
He shal nat thennes ben y-drawe ne y-bore.  
Or, if yow liste bidde him thennes goon,  
Trille this pin, and he wol vanishe anoon(320)  
Out of the sighte of every maner wight,  
And come agayn, be it by day or night,330  
When that yow list to clepen him ageyn  
In swich a gyse as I shal to yow seyn  
Bitwixe yow and me, and that ful sone.  
Ryde whan yow list, ther is na-more to done.’  
Enformed whan the king was of that knight,335  
And hath conceyved in his wit aright  
The maner and the forme of al this thing,  
Thus glad and blythe, this noble doughty king(330)  
Repeireth to his revel as biforn.  
The brydel is un-to the tour y-born,340  
And kept among his Iewels leve and dere.  
The hors vanissed, I noot in what manere,  
Out of hir sighte; ye gete na-more of me.  
But thus I lete in lust and Iolitee  
This Cambynskan his lordes festeyinge,345  
Til wel ny the day bigan to springe.

Explicit prima pars. Sequitur pars secunda.

The norice of digestioun, the slepe,  
Gan on hem winke, and bad hem taken kepe,(340)  
That muchel drink and labour wolde han reste;  
And with a galping mouth hem alle he keste,350  
And seyde, ‘it was tyme to lye adoun,  
For blood was in his dominacioun;  
Cherissheth blood, natures freend,’ quod he.  
They thanken him galpinge, by two, by three,  
And every wight gan drawe him to his reste,355  
As slepe hem bad; they toke it for the beste.  
Hir dremes shul nat been y-told for me;  
Ful were hir hedes of fumositee,(350)  
That causeth dreem, of which ther nis no charge.  
They slepen til that it was pryme large,360  
The moste part, but it were Canacee;  
She was ful mesurable, as wommen be.  
For of hir fader hadde she take leve  
To gon to reste, sone after it was eve;  
Hir liste nat appalled for to be,365

Nor on the morwe unfestlich for to see;  
And slepte hir firste sleep, and thanne awook.  
For swich a Ioye she in hir herte took(360)  
Both of hir queynte ring and hir mirour,  
That twenty tyme she changed hir colour;370  
And in hir slepe, right for impressioun  
Of hir mirour, she hadde a visioun.  
Wherfore, er that the sonne gan up glyde,  
She cleped on hir maistresse hir bisyde,  
And seyde, that hir liste for to ryse.375  
Thise olde wommen that been gladly wyse,  
As is hir maistresse, answerde hir anoon,  
And seyde, ‘madame, whider wil ye goon(370)  
Thus erly? for the folk ben alle on reste.’  
‘I wol,’ quod she, ‘aryse, for me leste380  
No lenger for to slepe, and walke aboute.’  
Hir maistresse clepeth wommen a gret route,  
And up they rysen, wel a ten or twelve;  
Up ryseth fresshe Canacee hir-selve,  
As rody and bright as dooth the yonge sonne,385  
That in the Ram is four degrees up-ronne;  
Noon hyer was he, whan she redy was;  
And forth she walketh esily a pas,(380)  
Arrayed after the lusty seson sote  
Lightly, for to pleye and walke on fote;390  
Nat but with fyve or six of hir meynee;  
And in a trench, forth in the park, goth she.  
The vapour, which that fro the erthe glood,  
Made the sonne to seme rody and brood;  
But natheles, it was so fair a sighte395  
That it made alle hir hertes for to lighte,  
What for the seson and the morweninge,  
And for the foules that she herde singe;(390)  
For right anon she wiste what they mente  
Right by hir song, and knew al hir entente.400  
The knotte, why that every tale is told,  
If it be taried til that lust be cold  
Of hem that han it after herkned yore,  
The savour passeth ever lenger the more,  
For fulsomnesse of his prolixitee.405  
And by the same reson thinketh me,  
I sholde to the knotte condescende,  
And maken of hir walking sone an ende.(400)  
Amidde a tree fordrye, as whyt as chalk,  
As Canacee was pleying in hir walk,410  
Ther sat a faucon over hir heed ful hye,  
That with a pitous voys so gan to crye  
That all the wode resounded of hir cry.

Y-beten hath she hir-self so pitously  
With bothe hir winges, til the rede blood<sup>415</sup>  
Ran endelong the tree ther-as she stood.  
And ever in oon she cryde alwey and shrighthe,  
And with hir beek hir-selven so she prighthe,<sup>(410)</sup>  
That ther nis tygre, ne noon so cruel beste,  
That dwelleth either in wode or in foreste<sup>420</sup>  
That nolde han wept, if that he wepe coude,  
For sorwe of hir, she shrighthe alwey so loude.  
For ther nas never yet no man on lyve—  
If that I coude a faucon wel discryve—  
That herde of swich another of fairnesse,<sup>425</sup>  
As wel of plumage as of gentillesse  
Of shap, and al that mighte y-rekened be.  
A faucon peregryn than semed she<sup>(420)</sup>  
Of fremde land; and evermore, as she stood,  
She swowneth now and now for lakke of blood,<sup>430</sup>  
Til wel neigh is she fallen fro the tree.  
This faire kinges doghter, Canacee,  
That on hir finger bar the queynte ring,  
Thurgh which she understood wel every thing  
That any foul may in his ledene seyn,<sup>435</sup>  
And coude answer him in his ledene ageyn,  
Hath understonde what this faucon seyde,  
And wel neigh for the rewthe almost she  
deyde.<sup>(430)</sup>  
And to the tree she gooth ful hastily,  
And on this faucon loketh pitously,<sup>440</sup>  
And heeld hir lappe abrood, for wel she wiste  
The faucon moste fallen fro the twiste,  
When that it swowned next, for lakke of blood.  
A longe while to wayten hir she stood  
Till atte laste she spak in this manere<sup>445</sup>  
Un-to the hauk, as ye shul after here.  
'What is the cause, if it be for to telle,  
That ye be in this furial pyne of helle?'<sup>(440)</sup>  
Quod Canacee un-to this hauk above.  
'Is this for sorwe of deeth or los of love?'<sup>450</sup>  
For, as I trowe, thise ben causes two  
That causen moost a gentil herte wo;  
Of other harm it nedeth nat to speke.  
For ye your-self upon your-self yow wreke,  
Which proveth wel, that either love or drede<sup>455</sup>  
Mot been encheson of your cruel dede,  
Sin that I see non other wight yow chace.  
For love of god, as dooth your-selven grace<sup>(450)</sup>  
Or what may ben your help; for west nor eest  
Ne sey I never er now no brid ne beest<sup>460</sup>

That ferde with him-self so pitously.  
Ye sle me with your sorwe, verraily;  
I have of yow so gret compassioun.  
For goddes love, com fro the tree adoun;  
And, as I am a kinges doghter trewe,465  
If that I verraily the cause knewe  
Of your disese, if it lay in my might,  
I wolde amende it, er that it were night,(460)  
As wisly helpe me gret god of kinde!  
And herbes shal I right y-nowe y-finde470  
To hele with your hurtes hastily.’  
Tho shrighthe this faucon more pitously  
Than ever she dide, and fil to grounde anoon,  
And lyth aswowne, deed, and lyk a stoon,  
Til Canacee hath in hir lappe hir take475  
Un-to the tyme she gan of swough awake.  
And, after that she of hir swough gan breyde,  
Right in hir haukes ledene thus she seyde:—(470)  
‘That pitee renneth sone in gentil herte,  
Feling his similitude in peynes smerte,480  
Is preved al-day, as men may it see,  
As wel by werk as by auctoritee;  
For gentil herte kytheth gentillesse.  
I see wel, that ye han of my distresse  
Compassioun, my faire Canacee,485  
Of verray wommanly benignitee  
That nature in your principles hath set.  
But for non hope for to fare the bet,(480)  
But for to obeye un-to your herte free,  
And for to maken other be war by me,490  
As by the whelp chasted is the leoun,  
Right for that cause and that conclusioun,  
Whyl that I have a leyser and a space,  
Myn harm I wol confessen, er I pace.’  
And ever, whyl that oon hir sorwe tolde,495  
That other weep, as she to water wolde,  
Til that the faucon bad hir to be stille;  
And, with a syk, right thus she seyde hir wille.(490)  
‘Ther I was bred (allas! that harde day!)  
And fostred in a roche of marbul gray500  
So tendrely, that nothing eyed me,  
I niste nat what was adversitee,  
Til I coude flee ful hie under the sky.  
Tho dwelte a tercelet me faste by,  
That semed welle of alle gentillesse;505  
Al were he ful of treson and falsnesse,  
It was so wrapped under humble chere,  
And under hewe of trouthe in swich manere,(500)

Under plesance, and under bisy peyne,  
That no wight coude han wend he coude feyne,510  
So depe in greyn he dyed his coloures.  
Right as a serpent hit him under floures  
Til he may seen his tyme for to byte,  
Right so this god of love, this ypocryte,  
Doth so his cerimonies and obeisaunces,515  
And kepeth in semblant alle his observances  
That sowneth in-to gentillesse of love.  
As in a tounge is al the faire above,(510)  
And under is the corps, swich as ye woot,  
Swich was this ypocryte, bothe cold and hoot,520  
And in this wyse he served his entente,  
That (save the feend) non wiste what he mente.  
Til he so longe had wopen and compleyned,  
And many a yeer his service to me feyned,  
Til that myn herte, to pitous and to nyce,525  
Al innocent of his crowned malice,  
For-fered of his deeth, as thoughte me,  
Upon his othes and his seuretee,(520)  
Graunted him love, on this condicioun,  
That evermore myn honour and renoun530  
Were saved, bothe privee and apert;  
This is to seyn, that, after his desert,  
I yaf him al myn herte and al my thought—  
God woot and he, that otherwyse noght—  
And took his herte in change for myn for ay.535  
But sooth is seyde, gon sithen many a day,  
“A trew wight and a theef thenken nat oon.”  
And, whan he saugh the thing so fer y-goon,(530)  
That I had graunted him fully my love,  
In swich a gyse as I have seyde above,540  
And yeven him my trewe herte, as free  
As he swoor he his herte yaf to me;  
Anon this tygre, ful of doublenesse,  
Fil on his knees with so devout humblesse,  
With so heigh reverence, and, as by his chere,545  
So lyk a gentil love of manere,  
So ravished, as it semed, for the Ioye,  
That never Iason, ne Parys of Troye,(540)  
Iason? certes, ne non other man,  
Sin Lameth was, that alderfirst bigan550  
To loven two, as writen folk biforn,  
Ne never, sin the firste man was born,  
Ne coude man, by twenty thousand part,  
Countrefete the sophimes of his art;  
Ne were worthy unbokete his galoche,555  
Ther doublenesse or feyning sholde approche,

Ne so coude thanke a wight as he did me!  
His maner was an heven for to see(550)  
Til any womman, were she never so wys;  
So peynted he and kembde at point-devys560  
As wel his wordes as his contenance.  
And I so lovede him for his obeisaunce,  
And for the trouthe I demed in his herte,  
That, if so were that any thing him smerte,  
Al were it never so lyte, and I it wiste,565  
Me thoughte, I felte deeth myn herte twiste.  
And shortly, so ferforth this thing is went,  
That my wil was his willes instrument;(560)  
This is to seyn, my wil obeyed his wil  
In alle thing, as fer as reson fil,570  
Keping the boundes of my worship ever.  
Ne never hadde I thing so leef, ne lever,  
As him, god woot! ne never shal na-mo.  
This lasteth lenger than a yeer or two,  
That I supposed of him noht but good.575  
But fynally, thus atte laste it stood,  
That fortune wolde that he moste twinne  
Out of that place which that I was inne(570)  
Wher me was wo, that is no questioun;  
I can nat make of it discripcioun;580  
For o thing dar I tellen boldely,  
I knowe what is the peyne of deth ther-by;  
Swich harm I felte for he ne mighte bileve.  
So on a day of me he took his leve,  
So sorwefully eek, that I wende verrailly585  
That he had felt as mucche harm as I,  
Whan that I herde him speke, and saugh his hewe.  
But nathelees, I thoughte he was so trewe,(580)  
And eek that he repaire sholde ageyn  
With-inne a litel whyle, sooth to seyn;590  
And reson wolde eek that he moste go  
For his honour, as ofte it happeth so,  
That I made vertu of necessitee,  
And took it wel, sin that it moste be.  
As I best mighte, I hidde fro him my sorwe,595  
And took him by the hond, seint Iohn to borwe,  
And seyde him thus: “lo, I am youres al;  
Beth swich as I to yow have been, and shal.”(590)  
What he answerde, it nedeth noht reherce,  
Who can sey bet than he, who can do werse?600  
Whan he hath al wel seyde, thanne hath he doon.  
“Therfor bihoveth him a ful long spoon  
That shal ete with a feend,” thus herde I seye.  
So atte laste he moste forth his weye,

And forth he fleeth, til he cam ther him leste.605  
Whan it cam him to purpos for to reste,  
I trowe he hadde thilke text in minde,  
That “alle thing, repeiring to his kinde,(600)  
Gladeth him-self”; thus seyn men, as I gesse;  
Men loven of propre kinde newfangelnesse,610  
As briddes doon that men in cages fede.  
For though thou night and day take of hem hede,  
And strawe hir cage faire and softe as silk,  
And yeve hem sugre, hony, breed and milk,  
Yet right anon, as that his dore is uppe,615  
He with his feet wol spurne adoun his cuppe,  
And to the wode he wol and wormes ete;  
So newefangel been they of hir mete,(610)  
And loven novelryes of propre kinde;  
No gentillesse of blood [ne] may hem binde.620  
So ferde this tercelet, allas the day!  
Though he were gentil born, and fresh and gay,  
And goodly for to seen, and humble and free,  
He saugh up-on a tyme a kyte flee,  
And sodeynly he loved this kyte so,625  
That al his love is clene fro me ago,  
And hath his trouthe falsed in this wyse;  
Thus hath the kyte my love in hir servyse,(620)  
And I am lorn with-ouen remedye!’  
And with that word this faucon gan to crye,630  
And swowned eft in Canaceès barme.  
Greet was the sorwe, for the haukes harme,  
That Canacee and alle hir wommen made;  
They niste how they mighte the faucon glade.  
But Canacee hom bereth hir in hir lappe,635  
And softely in plastres gan hir wrappe,  
Ther as she with hir beek had hurt hir-selve.  
Now can nat Canacee but herbes delve(630)  
Out of the grounde, and make salves newe  
Of herbes precious, and fyne of hewe,640  
To helen with this hauk; fro day to night  
She dooth hir bisnesse and al hir might.  
And by hir beddes heed she made a mewe,  
And covered it with veluëttes blewe,  
In signe of trouthe that is in wommen sene.645  
And al with-oute, the mewe is peynted grene,  
In which were peynted alle these false foules,  
As beth these tidifs, tercelets, and oules,(640)  
Right for despyt were peynted hem bisyde,  
And pyes, on hem for to crye and chyde.650  
Thus lete I Canacee hir hauk keping;  
I wol na-more as now speke of hir ring,

Til it come eft to purpos for to seyn  
How that this faucon gat hir love ageyn  
Repentant, as the storie telleth us,655  
By mediacioun of Cambalus,  
The kinges sone, of whiche I yow tolde.  
But hennes-forth I wol my proces holde(650)  
To speke of adventures and of batailles,  
That never yet was herd so grete mervailles.660  
First wol I telle yow of Cambynskan,  
That in his tyme many a citee wan;  
And after wol I speke of Algarsyf,  
How that he wan Theodora to his wyf,  
For whom ful ofte in greet peril he was,665  
Ne hadde he ben holpen by the stede of bras;  
And after wol I speke of Cambalo,  
That faught in listes with the bretheren two(660)  
For Canacee, er that he mighte hir winne.  
And ther I lefte I wol ageyn biginne.670

Explicit secunda pars. Incipit pars tercia.

Appollo whirleth up his char so hye,  
Til that the god Mercurius hous  
the slye—

[T. om.]

. . . . .

[T. om.]

Here folwen the wordes of the Frankelin to the Squier, and  
the wordes of the Host to the Frankelin.

‘In feith, Squier, thou hast thee wel y-quit,  
And gentilly I preise wel thy wit,’  
Quod the Frankeleyn, ‘considering thy youthe,675  
So feelingly thou spekest, sir, I allow the!  
As to my doom, there is non that is here  
Of eloquence that shal be thy pere,  
If that thou live; god yeve thee good chaunce,  
And in vertu sende thee continuaunce!680  
For of thy speche I have greet deyntee.  
I have a sone, and, by the Trinitee,(10)  
I hadde lever than twenty pound worth lond,  
Though it right now were fallen in myn hond,  
He were a man of swich discrecioun685  
As that ye been! fy on possessioun  
But-if a man be vertuous with-al.  
I have my sone snibbed, and yet shal,  
For he to vertu listeth nat entende;  
But for to pleye at dees, and to despende,690  
And lese al that he hath, is his usage.



And he hath lever talken with a page(20)  
Than to comune with any gentil wight  
Ther he mighte lerne gentillesse aright.  
'Straw for your gentillesse,' quod our host;695  
'What, frankeleyn? pardee, sir, wel thou wost  
That eche of yow mot tellen arte leste  
A tale or two, or breken his biheste.'  
'That knowe I wel, sir,' quod the frankeleyn;  
'I prey yow, haveth me nat in desdeyn700  
Though to this man I speke a word or two.'  
'Telle on thy tale with-outen wordes mo.'(30)  
'Gladly, sir host,' quod he, 'I wol obeye  
Un-to your wil; now herkneth what I seye.  
I wol yow nat contrarien in no wyse705  
As fer as that my wittes wol suffyse;  
I prey to god that it may plesen yow,  
Than woot I wel that it is good y-now.'

[*The Frankleyn's Prologue follows immediately; see p. 482*]

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

THE FRANKLIN'S PROLOGUE.  
(T. 11021-11040).

The Prologe of the Frankeleyns Tale.

[*This Prologue follows immediately after the Words on p. 481.*]

THISE olde gentil Britons in hir dayes  
Of diverse adventures maden layes,710  
Rymeyed in hir firste Briton tonge;  
Which layes with hir instruments they songe,(40)  
Or elles redden hem for hir plesaunce;  
And oon of hem have I in remembraunce,  
Which I shal seyn with good wil as I can.715  
But, sires, by-cause I am a burel man,  
At my biginning first I yow biseche  
Have me excused of my rude speche;  
I lerned never rethoryk certeyn;  
Thing that I speke, it moot be bare and pleyn.720  
I sleep never on the mount of Pernaso,  
Ne lerned Marcus Tullius Cithero.(50)  
Colours ne knowe I none, with-outen drede,  
But swiche colours as growen in the mede,  
Or elles swiche as men dye or peynte.725  
Colours of rethoryk ben me to queynte;  
My spirit feleth noght of swich matere.  
But if yow list, my tale shul ye here.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## THE FRANKELEYNS TALE.

Here biginneth the Frankeleyns Tale.

IN Armorik, that called is Britayne,  
Ther was a knight that loved and dide his payne<sup>730</sup>  
To serve a lady in his beste wyse;  
And many a labour, many a greet emprise  
He for his lady wroghte, er she were wonne.  
For she was oon, the faireste under sonne,  
And eek therto come of so heigh kinrede,<sup>735</sup>  
That wel unnethes dorste this knight, for drede,  
Telle hir his wo, his peyne, and his distresse.  
But atte laste, she, for his worthinesse,<sup>(10)</sup>  
And namely for his meke obeysaunce,  
Hath swich a pitee caught of his penaunce,<sup>740</sup>  
That prively she fil of his accord  
To take him for hir housbonde and hir lord,  
Of swich lordshipe as men han over hir wyves;  
And for to lede the more in blisse hir lyves,  
Of his free wil he swoor hir as a knight,<sup>745</sup>  
That never in al his lyf he, day ne night,  
Ne sholde up-on him take no maistrye  
Agayn hir wil, ne kythe hir Ialousye,<sup>(20)</sup>  
But hir obeye, and folwe hir wil in al  
As any love to his lady shal;<sup>750</sup>  
Save that the name of soveraynetee,  
That wolde he have for shame of his degree.  
She thanked him, and with ful greet humblesse  
She seyde, 'sire, sith of your gentillesse  
Ye profre me to have so large a reyne,<sup>755</sup>  
Ne wolde never god bitwixe us tweyne,  
As in my gilt, were outhere werre or stryf.  
Sir, I wol be your humble trewe wyf,<sup>(30)</sup>  
Have heer my trouthe, til that myn herte breste.'  
Thus been they bothe in quiete and in reste.<sup>760</sup>  
For o thing, sires, saufly dar I seye,  
That frendes everich other moot obeye,  
If they wol longe holden companye.  
Love wol nat ben constreyned by maistrye;  
Whan maistrie comth, the god of love anon<sup>765</sup>  
Beteth hise winges, and farewell! he is gon!  
Love is a thing as any spirit free;  
Wommen of kinde desiren libertee,<sup>(40)</sup>  
And nat to ben constreyned as a thral;  
And so don men, if I soth seyen shal.<sup>770</sup>

Loke who that is most pacient in love,  
He is at his avantage al above.  
Pacience is an heigh vertu certeyn;  
For it venquisseth, as this clerkes seyn,  
Things that rigour sholde never atteyne.775  
For every word men may nat chyde or pleyne.  
Lerneth to suffre, or elles, so moot I goon,  
Ye shul it lerne, wher-so ye wole or noon.(50)  
For in this world, certein, ther no wight is,  
That he ne dooth or seith som-tyme amis.780  
Ire, siknesse, or constellacioun,  
Wyn, wo, or chaunginge of complexioun  
Causeth ful ofte to doon amis or speken.  
On every wrong a man may nat be wroken;  
After the tyme, moste be temperaunce785  
To every wight that can on governaunce.  
And therefore hath this wyse worthy knight,  
To live in ese, suffrance hir bihight,(60)  
And she to him ful wisly gan to swere  
That never sholde ther be defaute in here.790  
Heer may men seen an humble wys accord;  
Thus hath she take hir servant and hir lord,  
Servant in love, and lord in mariage;  
Than was he bothe in lordship and servage;  
Servage? nay, but in lordshipe above,795  
Sith he hath bothe his lady and his love;  
His lady, certes, and his wyf also,  
The which that lawe of love acordeth to.(70)  
And whan he was in this prosperitee,  
Hoom with his wyf he gooth to his contree,800  
Nat fer fro Penmark, ther his dwelling was,  
Wher-as he liveth in blisse and in solas.  
Who coude telle, but he had wedded be,  
The loye, the ese, and the prosperitee  
That is bitwixe an housbonde and his wyf?805  
A yeer and more lasted this blisful lyf,  
Til that the knight of which I speke of thus,  
That of Kayrrud was cleped Arveragus,(80)  
Shoop him to goon, and dwelle a yeer or tweyne  
In Engelond, that cleped was eek Briteyne,810  
To seke in armes worship and honour;  
For al his lust he sette in swich labour;  
And dwelled ther two yeer, the book seith thus.  
Now wol I stinte of this Arveragus,  
And speken I wole of Dorigene his wyf,815  
That loveth hir housbonde as hir hertes lyf.  
For his absence wepeth she and syketh,  
As doon these noble wyves whan hem lyketh.(90)

She moorneth, waketh, wayleth, fasteth, pleyneth;  
Desyr of his presence hir so distreyneth,820  
That al this wyde world she sette at noght.  
Hir frendes, whiche that knewe hir hevyn thoght,  
Conforten hir in al that ever they may;  
They prechen hir, they telle hir night and day,  
That causelees she sleeth hir-self, allas!825  
And every confort possible in this cas  
They doon to hir with al hir businesse,  
Al for to make hir leve hir hevynesse.(100)  
By proces, as ye knowen everichoon,  
Men may so longe graven in a stoon,830  
Til som figure ther-inne emprented be.  
So longe han they confortd hir, til she  
Receyved hath, by hope and by resoun,  
The emprenting of hir consolacioun,  
Thurgh which hir grete sorwe gan aswage;835  
She may nat alwey duren in swich rage.  
And eek Arveragus, in al this care,  
Hath sent hir lettres hoom of his welfare,(110)  
And that he wol come hastily agayn;  
Or elles hadde this sorwe hir herte slayn.840  
Hir frendes sawe hir sorwe gan to slake,  
And preyede hir on knees, for goddes sake,  
To come and romen hir in companye,  
Awey to dryve hir derke fantasye.  
And finally, she graunted that requeste;845  
For wel she saugh that it was for the beste.  
Now stood hir castel faste by the see,  
And often with hir frendes walketh she(120)  
Hir to disporte up-on the bank an heigh,  
Wher-as she many a ship and barge seigh850  
Seilinge hir cours, wher-as hem liste go;  
But than was that a parcel of hir wo.  
For to hir-self ful ofte 'allas!' seith she,  
'Is ther no ship, of so manye as I see,  
Wol bringen hom my lord? than were myn herte855  
Al warissed of his bittre peynes smerte.'  
Another tyme ther wolde she sitte and thinke,  
And caste hir eyen downward fro the brinke.(130)  
But whan she saugh the grisly rokkes blake,  
For verray fere so wolde hir herte quake,860  
That on hir feet she mighte hir noght sustene.  
Than wolde she sitte adoun upon the grene,  
And pitously in-to the see biholde,  
And seyn right thus, with sorweful sykes colde:  
'Eterne god, that thurgh thy purveyaunce865  
Ledest the world by certein governaunce,

In ydel, as men seyn, ye no-thing make;  
But, lord, thise grisly feendly rokkes blake,(140)  
That semen rather a foul confusioun  
Of werk than any fair creacioun<sup>870</sup>  
Of swich a parfit wys god and a stable,  
Why han ye wroght this werk unresonable?  
For by this werk, south, north, ne west, ne eest,  
Ther nis y-fostred man, ne brid, ne beest;  
It dooth no good, to my wit, but anoyeth.<sup>875</sup>  
See ye nat, lord, how mankinde it destroyeth?  
An hundred thousand bodies of mankinde  
Han rokkes slayn, al be they nat in minde,(150)  
Which mankinde is so fair part of thy werk  
That thou it madest lyk to thyn owene merk.<sup>880</sup>  
Than semed it ye hadde a greet chiertee  
Toward mankinde; but how than may it be  
That ye swiche menes make it to destroyen,  
Whiche menes do no good, but ever anoyen?  
I woot wel clerkes wol seyn, as hem leste,<sup>885</sup>  
By arguments, that al is for the beste,  
Though I ne can the causes nat y-knowe.  
But thilke god, that made wind to blowe,(160)  
As kepe my lord! this my conclusioun;  
To clerkes lete I al disputisoun.<sup>890</sup>  
But wolde god that alle thise rokkes blake  
Were sonken in-to helle for his sake!  
Thise rokkes sleen myn herte for the fere.’  
Thus wolde she seyn, with many a pitous tere.  
Hir freendes sawe that it was no disport<sup>895</sup>  
To romen by the see, but disconfort;  
And shopen for to pleyen somwher elles.  
They leden hir by riveres and by welles,(170)  
And eek in othere places delitables;  
They dauncen, and they pleyen at ches and  
tables.<sup>900</sup>  
So on a day, right in the morwe-tyde,  
Un-to a gardin that was ther bisyde,  
In which that they had maad hir ordinaunce  
Of vitaille and of other purveyaunce,  
They goon and pleye hem al the longe day.<sup>905</sup>  
And this was on the sixte morwe of May,  
Which May had peynted with his softe shoures  
This gardin ful of leves and of floures;(180)  
And craft of mannes hand so curiously  
Arrayed hadde this gardin, trewely,<sup>910</sup>  
That never was ther gardin of swich prys,  
But-if it were the verray paradys.  
The odour of floures and the fresshe sighte

Wolde han maad any herte for to lighte  
That ever was born, but-if to gret siknesse,915  
Or to gret sorwe helde it in distresse;  
So ful it was of beautee with plesaunce.  
At-after diner gonne they to daunce,(190)  
And singe also, save Dorigen allone,  
Which made alwey hir compleint and hir mone;920  
For she ne saugh him on the daunce go,  
That was hir housbonde and hir love also.  
But natheles she moste a tyme abyde,  
And with good hope lete hir sorwe slyde.  
Up-on this daunce, amonges othere men,925  
Daunced a squyer biforen Dorigen,  
That fressher was and Iolyer of array,  
As to my doom, than is the monthe of May.(200)  
He singeth, daunceth, passinge any man  
That is, or was, sith that the world bigan.930  
Ther-with he was, if men sholde him discryve,  
Oon of the beste faringe man on-lyve;  
Yong, strong, right vertuous, and riche and wys,  
And wel biloved, and holden in gret prys.  
And shortly, if the sothe I tellen shal,935  
Unwiting of this Dorigen at al,  
This lusty squyer, servant to Venus,  
Which that y-cleped was Aurelius,(210)  
Had loved hir best of any creature  
Two yeer and more, as was his aventure,940  
But never dorste he telle hir his grevaunce;  
With-outen coppe he drank al his penaunce.  
He was despeyred, no-thing dorste he seye,  
Save in his songes somewhat wolde he wreye  
His wo, as in a general compleyning;945  
He seyde he lovede, and was biloved no-thing.  
Of swich matere made he many layes,  
Songes, compleintes, roundels, virelayes,(220)  
How that he dorste nat his sorwe telle,  
But languissheth, as a furie dooth in helle;950  
And dye he moste, he seyde, as dide Ekko  
For Narcisus, that dorste nat telle hir wo.  
In other manere than ye here me seye,  
Ne dorste he nat to hir his wo biwreye;  
Save that, paraventure, som-tyme at daunces,955  
Ther yonge folk kepen hir observaunces,  
It may wel be he loked on hir face  
In swich a wyse, as man that asketh grace;(230)  
But no-thing wiste she of his entente.  
Natheles, it happed, er they thennes wente,960  
By-cause that he was hir neighebour,

And was a man of worship and honour,  
And hadde y-knowen him of tyme yore,  
They fille in speche; and forth more and more  
Un-to his purpos drough Aurelius,965  
And whan he saugh his tyme, he seyde thus:  
'Madame,' quod he, 'by god that this world made,  
So that I wiste it mighte your herte glade,(240)  
I wolde, that day that your Arveragus  
Wente over the see, that I, Aurelius,970  
Had went ther never I sholde have come agayn;  
For wel I woot my service is in vayn.  
My guerdon is but bresting of myn herte;  
Madame, reweth upon my peynes smerte;  
For with a word ye may me sleen or save,975  
Heer at your feet god wolde that I were grave!  
I ne have as now no leysen more to seye;  
Have mercy, swete, or ye wol do me deye!'(250)  
She gan to loke up-on Aurelius:  
'Is this your wil,' quod she, 'and sey ye thus?980  
Never erst,' quod she, 'ne wiste I what ye mente.  
But now, Aurelie, I knowe your entente,  
By thilke god that yaf me soule and lyf,  
Ne shal I never been untrewen wyf  
In word ne werk, as fer as I have wit:985  
I wol ben his to whom that I am knit;  
Tak this for fynal answer as of me.'  
But after that in pley thus seyde she:(260)  
'Aurelie,' quod she, 'by heighe god above,  
Yet wolde I graunte yow to been your love,990  
Sin I yow see so pitously complayne;  
Loke what day that, endelong Britayne,  
Ye remoeve alle the rokkes, stoon by stoon,  
That they ne lette ship ne boot to goon—  
I seye, whan ye han maad the coost so clene995  
Of rokkes, that ther nis no stoon y-sene,  
Than wol I love yow best of any man;  
Have heer my trouthe in al that ever I can.'(270)  
'Is ther non other grace in yow,' quod he.  
'No, by that lord,' quod she, 'that maketh me!1000  
For wel I woot that it shal never bityde.  
Lat swiche folies out of your herte slyde.  
What deyntee sholde a man han in his lyf  
For to go love another mannes wyf,  
That hath hir body whan so that him lyketh?'1005  
Aurelius ful ofte sore syketh;  
Wo was Aurelie, whan that he this herde,  
And with a sorweful herte he thus answerde:(280)  
'Madame,' quod he, 'this were an impossible!



Than moot I dye of sodein deth horrible. 1010  
And with that word he turned him anoon.  
Tho come hir othere freendes many oon,  
And in the aleyes romeden up and doun,  
And no-thing wiste of this conclusioun,  
But sodeinly bigonne revel newe 1015  
Til that the brighte sonne loste his hewe;  
For thorisonte hath reft the sonne his light;  
This is as muche to seye as it was night. (290)  
And hoom they goon in Ioye and in solas,  
Save only wrecche Aurelius, allas! 1020  
He to his hous is goon with sorweful herte;  
He seeth he may nat fro his deeth asterte.  
Him semed that he felte his herte colde;  
Up to the hevene his handes he gan holde,  
And on his knowes bare he sette him doun, 1025  
And in his raving seyde his orisoun.  
For verray wo out of his wit he breyde.  
He niste what he spak, but thus he seyde; (300)  
With pitous herte his pleynt hath he bigonne  
Un-to the goddes, and first un-to the sonne: 1030  
He seyde, 'Appollo, god and governour  
Of every plaunte, herbe, tree and flour,  
That yevest, after thy declinacioun,  
To ech of hem his tyme and his sesoun,  
As thyn herberwe chaungeth lowe or hye, 1035  
Lord Phebus, cast thy merciablenesse  
On wrecche Aurelie, which that am but lorn.  
Lo, lord! my lady hath my deeth y-sworn (310)  
With-oute gilt, but thy benignitee  
Upon my dedly herte have som pitee! 1040  
For wel I woot, lord Phebus, if yow lest,  
Ye may me helpen, save my lady, best.  
Now voucheth sauf that I may yow devyse  
How that I may been holpe and in what wyse.  
Your blisful suster, Lucina the shene, 1045  
That of the see is chief goddess and quene,  
Though Neptunus have deitee in the see,  
Yet emperesse aboven him is she: (320)  
Ye knowen wel, lord, that right as hir desyr  
Is to be quiked and lightned of your fyr, 1050  
For which she folweth yow ful bisily,  
Right so the see desyreth naturelly  
To folwen hir, as she that is goddess  
Bothe in the see and riveres more and lesse.  
Wherfore, lord Phebus, this is my requeste— 1055  
Do this miracle, or do myn herte breste—  
That now, next at this opposicioun,

Which in the signe shal be of the Leoun,(330)  
As preyeth hir so greet a flood to bringe,  
That fyve fadme at the leeste it overspringe1060  
The hyste rokke in Armorik Briteyne;  
And lat this flood endure yeres tweyne;  
Than certes to my lady may I seye:  
“Holdeth your heste, the rokkes been aweye.”  
Lord Phebus, dooth this miracle for me;1065  
Preye hir she go no faster cours than ye;  
I seye, preyeth your suster that she go  
No faster cours than ye thise yeres two.(340)  
Than shal she been evene atte fulle alway,  
And spring-flood laste bothe night and day.1070  
And, but she vouche-sauf in swiche manere  
To graunte me my sovereyn lady dere,  
Prey hir to sinken every rok adoun  
In-to hir owene derke regioun  
Under the ground, ther Pluto dwelleth inne,1075  
Or never-mo shal I my lady winne.  
Thy temple in Delphos wol I barefoot seke;  
Lord Phebus, see the teres on my cheke,(350)  
And of my peyne have som compassioun.’  
And with that word in swowne he fil adoun,1080  
And longe tyme he lay forth in a traunce.  
His brother, which that knew of his penaunce,  
Up caughte him and to bedde he hath him broght.  
Dispeyred in this torment and this thought  
Lete I this woful creature lye;1085  
Chese he, for me, whether he wol live or dye.  
Arveragus, with hele and greet honour,  
As he that was of chivalrye the flour,(360)  
Is comen hoom, and othere worthy men.  
O blisful artow now, thou Dorigen,1090  
That hast thy lusty housbonde in thyne armes,  
The fresshe knight, the worthy man of armes,  
That loveth thee, as his owene hertes lyf.  
No-thing list him to been imaginatyf  
If any wight had spoke, whyl he was oute,1095  
To hire of love; he hadde of it no doute.  
He noght entendeth to no swich matere,  
But daunceth, lusteth, maketh hir good chere;(370)  
And thus in Ioye and blisse I lete hem dwelle,  
And of the syke Aurelius wol I telle.1100  
In langour and in torment furious  
Two yeer and more lay wrecche Aurelius,  
Er any foot he mighte on erthe goon;  
Ne confort in this tyme hadde he noon,  
Save of his brother, which that was a clerk;1105

He knew of al this wo and al this werk.  
For to non other creature certeyn  
Of this matere he dorste no word seyn.(380)  
Under his brest he bar it more secree  
Than ever dide Pamphilus for Galathee.1110  
His brest was hool, with-oute for to sene,  
But in his herte ay was the arwe kene.  
And wel ye knowe that of a sursanure  
In surgerye is perilous the cure,  
But men mighte touche the arwe, or come  
therby.1115  
His brother weep and wayled prively,  
Til atte laste him fil in remembraunce,  
That whyl he was at Orliens in Fraunce,(390)  
As yonge clerkes, that been likerous  
To reden artes that been curious,1120  
Seken in every halke and every herne  
Particuler sciences for to lerne,  
He him remembred that, upon a day,  
At Orliens in studie a book he say  
Of magik naturel , which his felawe,1125  
That was that tyme a bacheler of lawe,  
Al were he ther to lerne another craft,  
Had prively upon his desk y-laft;(400)  
Which book spak muchel of the operaciouns,  
Touchinge the eighte and twenty mansiouns1130  
That longen to the mone, and swich folye,  
As in our dayes is nat worth a flye;  
For holy chirches feith in our bileve  
Ne suffreth noon illusion us to greve.  
And whan this book was in his remembraunce,1135  
Anon for loye his herte gan to daunce,  
And to him-self he seyde prively:  
'My brother shal be warissed hastily;(410)  
For I am siker that ther be sciences,  
By whiche men make diverse apparences1140  
Swiche as this subtile tregetoures pleye.  
For ofte at festes have I wel herd seye,  
That tregetours, with-inne an halle large,  
Have maad come in a water and a barge,  
And in the halle rowen up and down.1145  
Somtyme hath semed come a grim leoun;  
And somtyme floures springe as in a mede;  
Somtyme a vyne, and grapes whyte and rede;(420)  
Somtyme a castel, al of lym and stoon;  
And whan hem lyked, voyded it anoon.1150  
Thus semed it to every mannes sighte.  
Now than conclude I thus, that if I mighte

At Orliens som old felawe y-finde,  
That hadde this mones mansions in minde,  
Or other magik naturel above,1155  
He sholde wel make my brother han his love.  
For with an apparence a clerk may make  
To mannes sighte, that alle the rokkes blake(430)  
Of Britaigne weren y-voyded everichon,  
And shippes by the brinke comen and gon,1160  
And in swich forme endure a day or two;  
Than were my brother warissshed of his wo.  
Than moste she nedes holden hir biheste,  
Or elles he shal shame hir atte leste.’  
What sholde I make a lenger tale of this?1165  
Un-to his brotheres bed he comen is,  
And swich confort he yaf him for to gon  
To Orliens, that he up stirte anon,(440)  
And on his wey forthward thanne is he fare,  
In hope for to ben lissed of his care.1170  
Whan they were come almost to that citee,  
But-if it were a two furlong or three,  
A yong clerk rominge by him-self they mette,  
Which that in Latin thriftily hem grette,  
And after that he seyde a wonder thing:1175  
‘I knowe,’ quod he, ‘the cause of your coming’;  
And er they ferther any fote wente,  
He tolde hem al that was in hir entente.(450)  
This Briton clerk him asked of felawes  
The whiche that he had knowe in olde dawes;1180  
And he answerde him that they dede were,  
For which he weep ful ofte many a tere.  
Doun of his hors Aurelius lighte anon,  
And forth with this magicien is he gon  
Hoom to his hous, and made hem wel at ese.1185  
Hem lakked no vitaille that mighte hem plese;  
So wel arrayed hous as ther was oon  
Aurelius in his lyf saugh never noon.(460)  
He shewed him, er he wente to sopeer,  
Forestes, parkes ful of wilde deer;1190  
Ther saugh he hertes with hir hornes hye,  
The gretteste that ever were seyn with ye.  
He saugh of hem an hondred slayn with houndes,  
And somme with arwes blede of bittre woundes.  
He saugh, whan voided were thise wilde deer,1195  
Thise fauconers upon a fair river,  
That with hir haukes han the heron slayn.  
Tho saugh he knightes lusting in a playn;(470)  
And after this, he dide him swich plesaunce,  
That he him shewed his lady on a daunce1200

On which him-self he daunced, as him thoughte.  
And whan this maister, that this magik wroughte,  
Saught it was tyme, he clapte his handes two,  
And farewell! al our revel was ago.  
And yet remoeved they never out of the hous,1205  
Why! they saugh al this sighte merveillous,  
But in his studie, ther-as his bookes be,  
They seten stille, and no wight but they three.(480)  
To him this maister called his squyer,  
And seyde him thus: 'is redy our soper?1210  
Almost an houre it is, I undertake,  
Sith I yow bad our soper for to make,  
Whan that thise worthy men wenten with me  
In-to my studie, ther-as my bookes be.'  
'Sire,' quod this squyer, 'whan it lyketh yow,1215  
It is al redy, though ye wol right now.'  
'Go we than soupe,' quod he, 'as for the beste;  
This amorous folk som-tyme mote han reste.'(490)  
At-after soper fille they in tretee,  
What somme sholde this maistres guerdon be,1220  
To remoeven alle the rokkes of Britayne,  
And eek from Gerounde to the mouth of Sayne.  
He made it straunge, and swoor, so god him save,  
Lasse than a thousand pound he wolde nat have,  
Ne gladly for that somme he wolde nat goon.1225  
Aurelius, with blisful herte anoon,  
Answerde thus, 'fy on a thousand pound!  
This wyde world, which that men seye is  
round,(500)  
I wolde it yeve, if I were lord of it.  
This bargayn is ful drive, for we ben knit.1230  
Ye shal be payed trewely, by my trouthe!  
But loketh now, for no necligence or slouthe,  
Ye tarie us heer no lenger than to-morwe.'  
'Nay,' quod this clerk, 'have heer my feith to  
borwe.'  
To bedde is goon Aurelius whan him leste,1235  
And wel ny al that night he hadde his reste;  
What for his labour and his hope of blisse,  
His woful herte of penaunce hadde a lisse.(510)  
Upon the morwe, whan that it was day,  
To Britaigne toke they the righte way,1240  
Aurelius, and this magicien bisyde,  
And been descended ther they wolde abyde;  
And this was, as the bokes me remembre,  
The colde frosty seson of Decembre.  
Phebus wex old, and hewed lyk latoun,1245  
That in his hote declinacioun

Shoon as the burned gold with stremes brighte;  
But now in Capricorn adoun he lighte,(520)  
Wher-as he shoon ful pale, I dar wel seyn.  
The bittre frostes, with the sleet and reyn,1250  
Destroyed hath the grene in every yerd.  
Ianus sit by the fyr, with double berd,  
And drinketh of his bugle-horn the wyn.  
Biforn him stant braun of the tusked swyn,  
And “Nowel” cryeth every lusty man.1255  
Aurelius, in al that ever he can,  
Doth to his maister chere and reverence,  
And preyeth him to doon his diligence(530)  
To bringen him out of his peynes smerte,  
Or with a swerd that he wolde slitte his herte.1260  
This subtil clerk swich routhe had of this man,  
That night and day he spedde him that he can,  
To wayte a tyme of his conclusioun;  
This is to seye, to make illusioun,  
By swich an apparence or Iogelrye,1265  
I ne can no termes of astrologye,  
That she and every wight sholde wene and seye,  
That of Britaigne the rokkes were aweye,(540)  
Or elles they were sonken under grounde.  
So atte laste he hath his tyme y-founde1270  
To maken his Iapes and his wrecchednesse  
Of swich a supersticious cursednesse.  
His tables Toletanes forth he broght,  
Ful wel corrected, ne ther lakked noght,  
Neither his collect ne his expans yeres,1275  
Ne his rotes ne his othere geres,  
As been his centres and his arguments,  
And his proporcionels convenients(550)  
For his equacions in every thing.  
And, by his eighte spere in his wirking,1280  
He knew ful wel how fer Alnath was shove  
Fro the heed of thilke fixe Aries above  
That in the ninthe speere considered is;  
Ful subtilly he calculated al this.  
Whan he had founde his firste mansioun,1285  
He knew the remenant by proporcioun;  
And knew the arysing of his mone weel,  
And in whos face, and terme, and every-deel;(560)  
And knew ful weel the mones mansioun  
Acordaunt to his operacioun,1290  
And knew also his othere observaunces  
For swiche illusiouns and swiche meschaunces  
As hethen folk used in thilke dayes;  
For which no lenger maked he delayes,

But thurgh his magik, for a wyke or tweye,1295  
It semed that alle the rokkes were aweye.  
Aurelius, which that yet despeired is  
Wher he shal han his love or fare amis,(570)  
Awaiteth night and day on this miracle;  
And whan he knew that ther was noon obstacle,1300  
That voided were these rokkes everichon,  
Doun to his maistres feet he fil anon,  
And seyde, 'I woful wrecche, Aurelius,  
Thanke yow, lord, and lady myn Venus,  
That me han holpen fro my cares colde:' 1305  
And to the temple his wey forth hath he holde,  
Wher-as he knew he sholde his lady see.  
And whan he saugh his tyme, anon-right he,(580)  
With dredful herte and with ful humble chere,  
Salewed hath his sovereyn lady dere:1310  
'My righte lady,' quod this woful man,  
'Whom I most drede and love as I best can,  
And lothest were of al this world displese,  
Nere it that I for yow have swich disese,  
That I moste dyen heer at your foot anon,1315  
Noght wolde I telle how me is wo bigon;  
But certes outhere moste I dye or pleyne;  
Ye slee me giltelees for verray peyne.(590)  
But of my deeth, thogh that ye have no routhe,  
Avyseth yow, er that ye breke your trouthe.1320  
Repenteth yow, for thilke god above,  
Er ye me sleen by-cause that I yow love.  
For, madame, wel ye woot what ye han hight;  
Nat that I chalange any thing of right  
Of yow my sovereyn lady, but your grace;1325  
But in a gardin yond, at swich a place,  
Ye woot right wel what ye bihighten me;  
And in myn hand your trouthe plighen ye(600)  
To love me best, god woot, ye seyde so,  
Al be that I unworthy be therto.1330  
Madame, I speke it for the honour of yow,  
More than to save myn hertes lyf right now;  
I have do so as ye comanded me;  
And if ye vouche-sauf, ye may go see.  
Doth as yow list, have your biheste in minde,1335  
For quik or deed, right ther ye shul me finde;  
In yow lyth al, to do me live or deye;—  
But wel I woot the rokkes been aweye!'(610)  
He taketh his leve, and she astonied stood,  
In al hir face nas a drope of blood;1340  
She wende never han come in swich a trappe:  
'Allas!' quod she, 'that ever this sholde happe!

For wende I never, by possibilitee,  
That swich a monstre or merveille mighte be!  
It is agayns the proces of nature':1345  
And hoom she gooth a sorweful creature.  
For verray fere unnethe may she go,  
She wepeth, wailleth, al a day or two,(620)  
And swowneth, that it routhe was to see;  
But why it was, to no wight tolde she;1350  
For out of toune was goon Arveragus.  
But to hir-self she spak, and seyde thus,  
With face pale and with ful sorweful chere,  
In hir compleynt, as ye shul after here:  
'Allas,' quod she, 'on thee, Fortune, I pleyne,1355  
That unwar wrapped hast me in thy cheyne;  
For which, tescape, woot I no socour  
Save only deeth or elles dishonour;(630)  
Oon of thise two bihoveth me to chese.  
But nathelees, yet have I lever to lese1360  
My lyf than of my body have a shame,  
Or knowe my-selven fals, or lese my name,  
And with my deth I may be quit, y-wis.  
Hath ther nat many a noble wyf, er this,  
And many a mayde y-slayn hir-self, allas!1365  
Rather than with hir body doon trespas?  
Yis, certes, lo, thise stories beren witnesse;  
Whan thretty tyraunts, ful of cursednesse,(640)  
Had slayn Phidoun in Athenes, atte feste,  
They comanded his doghtres for tareste,1370  
And bringen hem biforn hem in despyt  
Al naked, to fulfille hir foul delyt,  
And in hir fadres blood they made hem daunce  
Upon the pavement, god yeve hem mischaunce!  
For which thise woful maydens, ful of drede,1375  
Rather than they wolde lese hir maydenhede,  
They prively ben stirt in-to a welle,  
And dreynte hem-selven, as the bokes telle.(650)  
They of Messene lete enquire and seke  
Of Lacedomie fifty maydens eke,1380  
On whiche they wolden doon hir lecherye;  
But was ther noon of al that companye  
That she nas slayn, and with a good entente  
Chees rather for to dye than assente  
To been oppressed of hir maydenhede.1385  
Why sholde I thanne to dye been in drede?  
Lo, eek, the tiraunt Aristoclidis  
That loved a mayden, heet Stimphalides,(660)  
Whan that hir fader slayn was on a night,  
Un-to Dianes temple goth she right,1390



And hente the image in hir handes two,  
Fro which image wolde she never go.  
No wight ne mighte hir handes of it arace,  
Til she was slayn right in the selve place.  
Now sith that maydens hadden swich despyt<sup>1395</sup>  
To been defouled with mannes foul delyt,  
Wel oghte a wyf rather hir-selven slee  
Than be defouled, as it thinketh me.(670)  
What shal I seyn of Hasdrubales wyf,  
That at Cartage birafte hir-self hir lyf?<sup>1400</sup>  
For whan she saugh that Romayns wan the toun,  
She took hir children alle, and skipte adoun  
In-to the fyr, and chees rather to dye  
Than any Romain dide hir vileinye.  
Hath nat Lucesse y-slayn hir-self, allas!<sup>1405</sup>  
At Rome, whanne she oppressed was  
Of Tarquin, for hir thoughte it was a shame  
To liven whan she hadde lost hir name?(680)  
The sevene maydens of Milesie also  
Han slayn hem-self, for verray drede and wo,<sup>1410</sup>  
Rather than folk of Gaule hem sholde oppresse.  
Mo than a thousand stories, as I gesse,  
Coude I now telle as touchinge this matere.  
Whan Habradate was slayn, his wyf so dere  
Hirselven slow, and leet hir blood to glyde<sup>1415</sup>  
In Habradates woundes depe and wyde,  
And seyde, “my body, at the leeste way,  
Ther shal no wight defoulen, if I may.”(690)  
What sholde I mo ensamples heer-of sayn,  
Sith that so manye han hem-selven slayn<sup>1420</sup>  
Wel rather than they wolde defouled be?  
I wol conclude, that it is bet for me  
To sleen my-self, than been defouled thus.  
I wol be trewe un-to Arveragus,  
Or rather sleen my-self in som manere,<sup>1425</sup>  
As dide Demociones doghter dere,  
By-cause that she wolde nat defouled be.  
O Cedasus! it is ful greet pitee,(700)  
To reden how thy doghtren deyde, allas!  
That slowe hem-selven for swich maner cas.<sup>1430</sup>  
As greet a pitee was it, or wel more,  
The Theban mayden, that for Nichanore  
Hir-selven slow, right for swich maner wo.  
Another Theban mayden dide right so;  
For oon of Macedoine hadde hir oppressed,<sup>1435</sup>  
She with hir deeth hir maydenhede redressed.  
What shal I seye of Nicerates wyf,  
That for swich cas birafte hir-self hir lyf?(710)

How trewe eek was to Alcebiades  
His love, that rather for to dyen chees<sup>1440</sup>  
Than for to suffre his body unburied be!  
Lo which a wyf was Alceste, quod she.  
'What seith Omer of gode Penelopee?  
Al Grece knoweth of hir chastitee.  
Pardee, of Laodomya is writen thus,<sup>1445</sup>  
That whan at Troye was slayn Protheselaus,  
No lenger wolde she live after his day.  
The same of noble Porcia telle I may;<sup>(720)</sup>  
With-oute Brutus coude she nat live,  
To whom she hadde al hool hir herte yive.[Here is  
ended the Frankeleyns Tale.](#)

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## GROUP G.

### THE SECONDE NONNES TALE.

*\*?\**In Tyrwhitt's text, ll. 15469-15489; see p. 508

The Prologe of the Seconde Nonnes Tale.

THE ministre and the norice un-to  
vyces,  
Which that men clepe in English  
ydelnesse,  
That porter of the gate is of delyces,  
To eschue, and by hir contrarie hir  
opresse,  
That is to seyn, by leueful  
businessse,<sup>5</sup>  
Wel oghten we to doon al our  
entente,  
Lest that the feend thurgh ydelnesse  
us hente.  
For he, that with his thousand  
cordes slye  
Continuelly us waiteth to biclappe,  
Whan he may man in ydelnesse  
espye,<sup>10</sup>  
He can so lightly cacche him in his  
trappe,  
Til that a man be hent right by the  
lappes,  
He nis nat war the feend hath him in  
honde;  
Wel oughte us werche, and ydelnes  
withstonde.  
And though men dradden never for  
to dye,<sup>15</sup>  
Yet seen men wel by reson  
doutelees,  
That ydelnesse is roten slogardye,  
Of which ther never comth no good  
encrees;  
And seen, that slouthe hir holdeth in  
a lees  
Only to slepe, and for to ete and  
drinke,<sup>20</sup>

And to devouren al that othere  
swinke.

And for to putte us fro swich ydelnesse,  
That cause is of so greet confusioun,  
I have heer doon my feithful bisnesse,  
After the legende, in translacioun<sup>25</sup>  
Right of thy glorious lyf and passioun,  
Thou with thy gerland wroght of rose and  
lilie;  
Thee mene I, mayde and martir, seint  
Cecilie!

### *Inuocacio Ad Mariam.*

AND thou that flour of virgines art  
alle,  
Of whom that Bernard list so wel to  
wryte,<sup>30</sup>  
To thee at my biginning first I calle;  
Thou comfort of us wrecches, do  
me endyte  
Thy maydens deeth, that wan  
thurgh hir meryte  
The eternal lyf, and of the feend  
victorie,  
As man may after reden in hir  
storie.<sup>35</sup>  
Thou mayde and mooder, doghter  
of thy sone,  
Thou welle of mercy, sinful soules  
cure,  
In whom that god, for bountee,  
chees to wone,  
Thou humble, and heigh over every  
creature,  
Thou nobledest so ferforth our  
nature,<sup>40</sup>  
That no desdeyn the maker hadde of  
kinde,  
His sone in blode and flesh to clothe  
and winde.  
Withinne the cloistre blisful of thy  
sydes  
Took mannes shap the eternal love  
and pees,  
That of the tryne compas lord and  
gyde is,<sup>45</sup>

Whom erthe and see and heven, out  
of relees,  
Ay herien; and thou, virgin  
wemmelees,  
Bar of thy body, and dweltest  
mayden pure,  
The creatour of every creature.  
Assembled is in thee  
magnificence<sup>50</sup>  
With mercy, goodnesse, and with  
swich pitee  
That thou, that art the sonne of  
excellence,  
Nat only helpest hem that preyen  
thee,  
But ofte tyme, of thy benignitee,  
Ful frely, er that men thyn help  
biseche,<sup>55</sup>  
Thou goost biforn, and art hir lyves  
leche.  
Now help, thou meke and blisful  
fayre mayde,  
Me, flemed wrecche, in this desert  
of galle;  
Think on the womman Cananee,  
that sayde  
That whelpes eten somme of the  
crommes alle<sup>60</sup>  
That from hir lordes table been y-  
falle;  
And though that I, unworthy sone of  
Eve,  
Be sinful, yet accepte my bileve.  
And, for that feith is deed with-  
outen werkes,  
So for to werken yif me wit and  
space,<sup>65</sup>  
That I be quit fro thennes that most  
derk is!  
O thou, that art so fayr and ful of  
grace,  
Be myn advocat in that heighe place  
Ther-as withouten ende is songe  
'Osanne,'  
Thou Cristes mooder, doghter dere  
of Anne!<sup>70</sup>  
And of thy light my soule in prison  
lighte,

That troubled is by the contagioun  
Of my body, and also by the wighte  
Of erthly luste and fals affeccioun;  
O haven of refut, o salvacioun<sup>75</sup>  
Of hem that been in sorwe and in  
distresse,  
Now help, for to my werk I wol me  
dresse.  
Yet preye I yow that reden that I  
wryte,  
Foryeve me, that I do no diligence  
This ilke storie subtilly to endyte;<sup>80</sup>  
For both have I the wordes and  
sentence  
Of him that at the seintes reverence  
The storie wroot, and folwe hir  
legende,  
And prey yow, that ye wol my werk  
amende.

***Interpretacio Nominis Cecilie,  
Quam Ponit Frater Iacobus  
Ianuensis In Legenda Aurea.***

FIRST wolde I yow the name of  
seint Cecilie<sup>85</sup>  
Expoune, as men may in hir storie  
see,  
It is to seye in English ‘hevenes  
lilie,’  
For pure chastnesse of virginitee;  
Or, for she whytnesse hadde of  
honestee,  
And grene of conscience, and of  
good fame<sup>90</sup>  
The sote savour, ‘lilie’ was hir  
name.  
Or Cecile is to seye ‘the wey to  
blinde,’  
For she ensample was by good  
teching;  
Or elles Cecile, as I writen finde,  
Is ioyned, by a maner  
coniouinge<sup>95</sup>  
Of ‘hevene’ and ‘Lia’; and heer, in  
figuringe,

The 'heven' is set for thought of  
holinesse,  
And 'Lia' for hir lasting businesse.  
Cecile may eek be seyed in this  
manere,  
'Wanting of blindnesse,' for hir  
grete light<sup>100</sup>  
Of sapience, and for hir thewes  
clere;  
Or elles, lo! this maydens name  
bright  
Of 'hevene' and 'leos' comth, for  
which by right  
Men mighte hir wel 'the heven of  
peple' calle,  
Ensample of gode and wyse werkes  
alle.<sup>105</sup>  
For 'leos' 'peple' in English is to  
seye,  
And right as men may in the hevene  
see  
The sonne and mone and sterres  
every weye,  
Right so men gostly, in this mayden  
free,  
Seyen of feith the  
magnanimitee,<sup>110</sup>  
And eek the cleernesse hool of  
sapience,  
And sondry werkes, brighte of  
excellence.

And right so as thise philosophres wryte  
That heven is swift and round and eek  
brenninge,  
Right so was fayre Cecilie the whyte<sup>115</sup>  
Ful swift and bisy ever in good werkinge,  
And round and hool in good perseveringe,  
And brenning ever in charitee ful brighte;  
Now have I yow declared what she highte.

*Explicit.*

Here biginneth the Seconde Nonnes Tale, of the lyf  
of Sainte Cecile.

THIS mayden brighte Cecilie, as hir  
lyf seith,<sup>120</sup>

Was comen of Romayns, and of  
noble kinde,  
And from hir cradel up fostred in  
the feith  
Of Crist, and bar his gospel in hir  
minde;  
She never cessed, as I writen finde,  
Of hir preyere, and god to love and  
drede,125  
Biseking him to kepe hir  
maydenhede.  
And when this mayden sholde unto  
a man  
Y-wedded be, that was ful yong of  
age,  
Which that y-cleped was Valerian,  
And day was comen of hir  
mariage,130  
She, ful devout and humble in hir  
corage,  
Under hir robe of gold, that sat ful  
fayre,  
Had next hir flesh y-clad hir in an  
heyre.  
And whyl the organs maden  
melodye,  
To god alone in herte thus sang  
she;135  
'O lord, my soule and eek my body  
gye  
Unwemmed, lest that I confounded  
be:'  
And, for his love that deyde upon a  
tree,  
Every seconde or thridde day she  
faste,  
Ay biddinge in hir orisons ful  
faste.140  
The night cam, and to bedde moste  
she gon  
With hir housbonde, as ofte is the  
manere,  
And prively to him she seyde anon,  
'O swete and wel biloved spouse  
dere,  
Ther is a conseil, and ye wolde it  
here,145



Which that right fain I wolde unto  
yow seye,  
So that ye swere ye shul me nat  
biwreye.’  
Valerian gan faste unto hir swere,  
That for no cas, ne thing that mighte  
be,  
He sholde never-mo biwreyen  
here;150  
And thanne at erst to him thus seyde  
she,  
‘I have an angel which that loveth  
me,  
That with greet love, wher-so I  
wake or slepe,  
Is redy ay my body for to kepe.  
And if that he may felen, out of  
drede,155  
That ye me touche or love in  
vileinye,  
He right anon wol slee yow with the  
dede,  
And in your yowthe thus ye shulden  
dye;  
And if that ye in clene love me gye,  
He wol yow loven as me, for your  
clennesse,160  
And shewen yow his Ioye and his  
bryghtnesse.’  
Valerian, corrected as god wolde,  
Answerde agayn, ‘if I shal trusten  
thee,  
Lat me that angel se, and him  
biholde;  
And if that it a verray angel be,165  
Than wol I doon as thou hast preyed  
me;  
And if thou love another man, for  
sothe  
Right with this swerd than wol I  
slee yow bothe.’  
Cecile answerde anon right in this  
wyse,  
‘If that yow list, the angel shul ye  
see,170  
So that ye trowe on Crist and yow  
baptyse.  
Goth forth to Via Apia,’ quod she,

‘That fro this toun ne stant but  
myles three,  
And, to the povre folkes that ther  
dwelle,  
Sey hem right thus, as that I shal  
yow telle.175  
Telle hem that I, Cecile, yow to  
hem sente.  
To shewen yow the gode Urban the  
olde,  
For secree nedes and for good  
entente.  
And whan that ye seint Urban han  
biholde,  
Telle him the wordes whiche I to  
yow tolde;180  
And whan that he hath purged yow  
fro sinne,  
Thanne shul ye see that angel, er ye  
twinne.’  
Valerian is to the place y-gon,  
And right as him was taught by his  
lerninge,  
He fond this holy olde Urban  
anon185  
Among the seintes buriels lotinge.  
And he anon, with-uten taryinge,  
Dide his message; and whan that he  
it tolde,  
Urban for Ioye his hondes gan up  
holde.  
The teres from his yen leet he  
falle—190  
‘Almighty lord, o Iesu Crist,’ quod  
he,  
‘Sower of chast conseil, herde of us  
alle,  
The fruit of thilke seed of chastitee  
That thou hast sowe in Cecile, tak  
to thee!  
Lo, lyk a bisy bee, with-uten  
gyle,195  
Thee serveth ay thyn owene thral  
Cecile!  
For thilke spouse, that she took but  
now  
Ful lyk a fiers leoun, she sendeth  
here,

As meke as ever was any lamb, to  
yow!’  
And with that worde, anon ther gan  
appere<sup>200</sup>  
An old man, clad in whyte clothes  
clere,  
That hadde a book with lettre of  
golde in honde,  
And gan biforn Valerian to stonde.  
Valerian as deed fil down for drede  
Whan he him saugh, and he up  
hente him tho,<sup>205</sup>  
And on his book right thus he gan  
to rede—  
‘Oo Lord, oo feith, oo god with-  
outen mo,  
Oo Cristendom, and fader of alle  
also,  
Aboven alle and over al  
everywhere’—  
Thise wordes al with gold y-writen  
were.<sup>210</sup>  
Whan this was rad, than seyde this  
olde man,  
‘Levestow this thing or no? sey ye  
or nay.’  
‘I leve al this thing,’ quod Valerian,  
‘For sother thing than this, I dar wel  
say,  
Under the hevene no wight thinke  
may.’<sup>215</sup>  
Tho vanished the olde man, he  
niste where,  
And pope Urban him cristened right  
there.  
Valerian goth hoom, and fint  
Cecilie  
With-inne his chambre with an  
angel stonde;  
This angel hadde of roses and of  
lilie<sup>220</sup>  
Corones two, the which he bar in  
honde;  
And first to Cecile, as I  
understonde,  
He yaf that oon, and after gan he  
take  
That other to Valerian, hir make.

‘With body clene and with  
unwemmed thought<sup>225</sup>  
Kepeth ay wel these coronas,’ quod  
he;  
‘Fro Paradys to yow have I hem  
brought,  
Ne never-mo ne shal they roten be,  
Ne lese her sote savour, trusteth me;  
Ne never wight shal seen hem with  
his yē,<sup>230</sup>  
But he be chaast and hate vileinyē.  
And thou, Valerian, for thou so  
sone  
Assentedest to good conseil also,  
Sey what thee list, and thou shalt  
han thy bone.’  
‘I have a brother,’ quod Valerian  
tho,<sup>235</sup>  
‘That in this world I love no man  
so.  
I pray yow that my brother may han  
grace  
To knowe the trouthe, as I do in this  
place.’  
The angel seyde, ‘god lyketh thy  
requeste,  
And bothe, with the palm of  
martirdom,<sup>240</sup>  
Ye shullen come unto his blisful  
feste.’  
And with that word Tiburce his  
brother com.  
And whan that he the savour  
undernom  
Which that the roses and the lilies  
caste,  
With-inne his herte he gan to  
wondre faste,<sup>245</sup>  
And seyde, ‘I wondre, this tyme of  
the yeer,  
Whennes that sote savour cometh so  
Of rose and lilies that I smelle heer.  
For though I hadde hem in myn  
hondes two,  
The savour mighte in me no depper  
go.<sup>250</sup>  
The sote smel that in myn herte I  
finde

Hath chaunged me al in another  
kinde.’  
Valerian seyde, ‘two corones han  
we,  
Snow-whyte and rose-reed, that  
shynen clere,  
Whiche that thyn yen han no might  
to see;255  
And as thou smellest hem thurgh  
my preyere,  
So shaltow seen hem, leve brother  
dere,  
If it so be thou wolt, withouten  
slouthe,  
Bileve aright and knowen verray  
trouthe.’  
Tiburce answerde, ‘seistow this to  
me260  
In soothnesse, or in dreem I herkne  
this?’  
‘In dremes,’ quod Valerian, ‘han we  
be  
Unto this tyme, brother myn, y-wis.  
But now at erst in trouthe our  
dwelling is.’  
‘How woostow this,’ quod Tiburce,  
‘in what wyse?’265  
Quod Valerian, ‘that shal I thee  
devyse.  
The angel of god hath me the  
trouthe y-taught  
Which thou shalt seen, if that thou  
wolt reneye  
The ydoles and be clene, and elles  
naught.’—  
And of the miracle of these corones  
tweye270  
Seint Ambrose in his preface list to  
seye;  
Solempnely this noble doctour dere  
Commendeth it, and seith in this  
manere:  
The palm of martirdom for to  
receyve,  
Seinte Cecile, fulfild of goddes  
yifte,275  
The world and eek hir chambre gan  
she weyve;

Witnes Tyburces and Valerians  
shrifte,  
To whiche god of his bountee  
wolde shifte  
Corones two of floures wel  
smellinge,  
And made his angel hem the  
corones bringe:280  
The mayde hath broght thise men to  
blisse above;  
The world hath wist what it is  
worth, certeyn,  
Devocioun of chastitee to love.—  
Tho shewede him Cecile al open  
and pleyn  
That alle ydoles nis but a thing in  
veyn;285  
For they been dombe, and therto  
they been deve,  
And charged him his ydoles for to  
leve.  
'Who so that troweth nat this, a  
beste he is,'  
Quod tho Tiburce, 'if that I shal nat  
lye.'  
And she gan kisse his brest, that  
herde this,290  
And was ful glad he coude trouthe  
espye.  
'This day I take thee for myn allye,'  
Seyde this blisful fayre mayde dere;  
And after that she seyde as ye may  
here:  
'Lo, right so as the love of Crist,'  
quod she,295  
'Made me thy brotheres wyf, right  
in that wyse  
Anon for myn allye heer take I thee,  
Sin that thou wolt thyn ydoles  
despyse.  
Go with thy brother now, and thee  
baptyse,  
And make thee clene; so that thou  
mowe biholde300  
The angels face of which thy  
brother tolde.'  
Tiburce answerde and seyde,  
'brother dere,

First tel me whider I shal, and to  
what man?’  
‘To whom?’ quod he, ‘com forth  
with right good chere,  
I wol thee lede unto the pope  
Urban.’305  
‘Til Urban? brother myn Valerian,’  
Quod tho Tiburce, ‘woltow me  
thider lede?  
Me thinketh that it were a wonder  
dede.  
Ne menestow nat Urban,’ quod he  
tho,  
‘That is so ofte dampned to be  
deed,310  
And woneth in halkes alwey to and  
fro,  
And dar nat ones putte forth his  
heed?  
Men sholde him brennen in a fyr so  
reed  
If he were founde, or that men  
mighte him spye;  
And we also, to bere him  
companye—315  
And whyl we seken thilke divinitee  
That is y-hid in hevene prively,  
Algate y-brend in this world shul  
we be!’  
To whom Cecile answerde boldely,  
‘Men mighten dreden wel and  
skilfully320  
This lyf to lese, myn owene dere  
brother,  
If this were livinge only and non  
other.  
But ther is better lyf in other place,  
That never shal be lost, ne drede  
thee noght,  
Which goddes sone us tolde thurgh  
his grace;325  
That fadres sone hath alle thinges  
wroght;  
And al that wroght is with a skilful  
thoght,  
The goost, that fro the fader gan  
procede,

Hath sowled hem, withouten any  
drede.  
By word and by miracle goddes  
sone,330  
Whan he was in this world, declared  
here  
That ther was other lyf ther men  
may wone.’  
To whom answerde Tiburce, ‘o  
suster dere,  
Ne seydestow right now in this  
manere,  
Ther nis but o god, lord in  
soothfastnesse;335  
And now of three how maystow  
bere witness?’  
‘That shal I telle,’ quod she, ‘er I  
go.  
Right as a man hath sapiences three,  
Memorie, engyn, and intellect also,  
So, in o being of divinitee,340  
Three persones may ther right wel  
be.’  
Tho gan she him ful bisily to preche  
Of Cristes come and of his peynes  
teche,  
And many pointes of his passioun;  
How goddes sone in this world was  
withholde,345  
To doon mankinde pleyn  
remissioun,  
That was y-bounde in sinne and  
cares colde:  
Al this thing she unto Tiburce tolde.  
And after this Tiburce, in good  
entente,  
With Valerian to pope Urban he  
wente,350  
That thanked god; and with glad  
herte and light  
He cristned him, and made him in  
that place  
Parfit in his lerninge, goddes knight.  
And after this Tiburce gat swich  
grace,  
That every day he saugh, in tyme  
and space,355



The angel of god; and every maner  
bone  
That he god axed, it was sped ful  
sone.  
It were ful hard by ordre for to seyn  
How many wondres Iesus for hem  
wroghte;  
But atte laste, to tellen short and  
pleyn,<sup>360</sup>  
The sergeants of the toun of Rome  
hem soghte,  
And hem biforn Almache the  
prefect broghte,  
Which hem apposed, and knew al  
hir entente,  
And to the image of Iupiter hem  
sente,  
And seyde, 'who so wol nat  
sacrifyse,<sup>365</sup>  
Swap of his heed, this is my  
sentence here.'  
Anon thise martirs that I yow  
devyse,  
Oon Maximus, that was an officere  
Of the prefectes and his corniculere,  
Hem hente; and whan he forth the  
seintes ladde,<sup>370</sup>  
Him-self he weep, for pitee that he  
hadde.  
Whan Maximus had herd the seintes  
lore,  
He gat him of the tormentoures  
leve,  
And ladde hem to his hous withoute  
more;  
And with hir preching, er that it  
were eve,<sup>375</sup>  
They gonnen fro the tormentours to  
reve,  
And fro Maxime, and fro his folk  
echone  
The false feith, to trowe in god  
allone.  
Cecilie cam, whan it was woxen  
night,  
With preestes that hem cristned alle  
y-ferre;<sup>380</sup>

And afterward, whan day was  
woxen light,  
Cecile hem seyde with a ful sobre  
chere,  
'Now, Cristes owene knightes leve  
and dere,  
Caste alle away the werkes of  
derknesse,  
And armeth yow in armure of  
bryghtnesse.385  
Ye han for sothe y-doon a greet  
bataille,  
Your cours is doon, your feith han  
ye conserved,  
Goth to the corone of lyf that may  
nat faille;  
The rightful Iuge, which that ye han  
served,  
Shall yeve it yow, as ye han it  
deserved.'390  
And whan this thing was seyde as I  
devyse,  
Men ladde hem forth to doon the  
sacrifyse.  
But whan they weren to the place  
brought,  
To tellen shortly the conclusioun,  
They nolde encense ne sacrifice  
right noght,395  
But on hir knees they setten hem  
adoun  
With humble herte and sad  
devocioun,  
And losten bothe hir hedes in the  
place.  
Hir soules wenten to the king of  
grace.  
This Maximus, that saugh this thing  
bityde,400  
With pitous teres tolde it anon-right,  
That he hir soules saugh to heven  
glyde  
With angels ful of cleernesse and of  
light,  
And with his word converted many  
a wight;  
For which Almachius dide him so  
to-bete405

With whippe of leed, til he his lyf  
gan lete.  
Cecile him took and buried him  
anoon  
By Tiburce and Valerian softly,  
Withinne hir burying-place, under  
the stoon.  
And after this Almachius hastily<sup>410</sup>  
Bad his ministres fecchen openly  
Cecile, so that she mighte in his  
presence  
Doon sacrifice, and Iupiter encense.  
But they, converted at hir wyse lore,  
Wepten ful sore, and yaven ful  
credence<sup>415</sup>  
Unto hir word, and cryden more and  
more,  
'Crist, goddes sone withouten  
difference,  
Is verray god, this is al our  
sentence,  
That hath so good a servant him to  
serve;  
This with o voys we trowen, thogh  
we sterve!'<sup>420</sup>  
Almachius, that herde of this  
doinge,  
Bad fecchen Cecile, that he might  
hir see,  
And alderfirst, lo! this was his  
axinge,  
'What maner womman artow?' tho  
quod he.  
'I am a gentil womman born,' quod  
she.<sup>425</sup>  
'I axe thee,' quod he, 'thogh it thee  
greve,  
Of thy religioun and of thy bileve.'  
'Ye han bigonne your question  
folily,'  
Quod she, 'that wolden two  
answeres conclude  
In oo demande; ye axed  
lewedly.'<sup>430</sup>  
Almache answerde unto that  
similitude,  
'Of whennes comth thyn answering  
so rude?'

‘Of whennes?’ quod she, whan that  
she was freyned,  
‘Of conscience and of good feith  
unfeyned.’  
Almachius seyde, ‘ne takestow non  
hede435  
Of my power?’ and she answerde  
him this—  
‘Your might,’ quod she, ‘ful litel is  
to drede;  
For every mortal mannes power nis  
But lyk a bladdre, ful of wind, y-  
wis.  
For with a nedles poynt, whan it is  
blowe,440  
May al the boost of it be leyd ful  
lowe.’  
‘Ful wrongfully bigonne thou,’  
quod he,  
‘And yet in wrong is thy  
perseveraunce;  
Wostow nat how our mighty princes  
free  
Han thus comanded and maad  
ordinaunce,445  
That every cristen wight shal han  
penaunce  
But-if that he his cristendom  
withseye,  
And goon al quit, if he wol it  
reneye?’  
‘Your princes erren, as your nobley  
dooth,’  
Quod tho Cecile, ‘and with a wood  
sentence450  
Ye make us gilty, and it is nat  
sooth;  
For ye, that knowen wel our  
innocence,  
For as muche as we doon a  
reverence  
To Crist, and for we bere a cristen  
name,  
Ye putte on us a cryme, and eek a  
blame.455  
But we that knowen thilke name so  
For vertuous, we may it nat  
withseye.’

Almache answerde, 'chees oon of  
these two,  
Do sacrifice, or cristendom reneye,  
That thou mowe now escapen by  
that weye.'460  
At which the holy blisful fayre  
mayde  
Gan for to laughe, and to the Iuge  
seyde,  
'O Iuge, confus in thy nycetee,  
Woltow that I reneye innocence,  
To make me a wikked wight?' quod  
she;465  
'Lo! he dissimuleth here in  
audience,  
He stareth and woodeth in his  
advertence!'  
To whom Almachius, 'unsely  
wrecche,  
Ne woostow nat how far my might  
may strecche?  
Han nought our mighty princes to me  
yeven,470  
Ye, bothe power and auctoritee  
To maken folk to dyen or to liven?  
Why spekestow so proudly than to  
me?'  
'I speke nought but stedfastly,' quod  
she,  
'Nat proudly, for I seye, as for my  
syde,475  
We haten deedly thilke vyce of  
pryde.  
And if thou drede nat a sooth to  
here,  
Than wol I shewe al openly, by  
right,  
That thou hast maad a ful gret  
lesing here.  
Thou seyst, thy princes han thee  
yeven might480  
Bothe for to sleen and for to quiken  
a wight;  
Thou, that ne mayst but only lyf  
bireve,  
Thou hast non other power ne no  
leve!

But thou mayst seyn, thy princes  
han thee maked  
Ministre of deeth; for if thou speke  
of mo,485  
Thou lvest, for thy power is ful  
naked.’  
‘Do wey thy boldnes,’ seyde  
Almachius tho,  
‘And sacrifyce to our goddes, er  
thou go;  
I recche nat what wrong that thou  
me profre,  
For I can suffre it as a  
philosophre;490  
But thilke wronges may I nat  
endure  
That thou spekest of our goddes  
here,’ quod he.  
Cecile answerede, ‘o nyce creature,  
Thou seydest no word sin thou spak  
to me  
That I ne knew therwith thy  
nycetee;495  
And that thou were, in every maner  
wyse,  
A lewed officer and a veyn Iustyse.  
Ther lakketh no-thing to thyn utter  
yen  
That thou nart blind, for thing that  
we seen alle  
That it is stoon, that men may wel  
espyen,500  
That ilke stoon a god thou wolt it  
calle.  
I rede thee, lat thyn hand upon it  
falle,  
And taste it wel, and stoon thou  
shalt it finde,  
Sin that thou seest nat with thyn yen  
blinde.  
It is a shame that the peple shal505  
So scorne thee, and laughe at thy  
folye;  
For comunly men woot it wel  
overal,  
That mighty god is in his hevenes  
hye,

And these images, wel thou mayst  
espye,  
To thee ne to hem-self mowe  
nought profyte,510  
For in effect they been nat worth a  
myte.’  
These wordes and swiche othere  
seyde she,  
And he weex wroth, and bad men  
sholde hir lede  
Hom til hir hous, ‘and in hir hous,’  
quod he,  
‘Brenne hir right in a bath of  
flambes rede.’515  
And as he bad, right so was doon in  
dede;  
For in a bath they gonne hir faste  
shetten,  
And night and day greet fyr they  
under betten.  
The longe night and eek a day also,  
For al the fyr and eek the bathes  
hete,520  
She sat al cold, and felede no wo,  
It made hir nat a drope for to swete.  
But in that bath hir lyf she moste  
lete;  
For he, Almachius, with ful wikke  
entente  
To sleen hir in the bath his sonde  
sente.525  
Three strokes in the nekke he smoot  
hir tho,  
The tormentour, but for no maner  
chance  
He mighte noght smyte al hir nekke  
a-two;  
And for ther was that tyme an  
ordinaunce,  
That no man sholde doon man  
swich penaunce530  
The ferthe strook to smyten, softe or  
sore,  
This tormentour ne dorste do na-  
more.  
But half-deed, with hir nekke y-  
corven there,

He lefte hir lye, and on his wey is  
went.  
The cristen folk, which that aboute  
hir were,<sup>535</sup>  
With shetes han the blood ful faire  
y-hent.  
Thre dayes lived she in this torment,  
And never cessed hem the feith to  
teche;  
That she hadde fostred, hem she gan  
to preche;  
And hem she yaf hir moebles and  
hir thing,<sup>540</sup>  
And to the pope Urban bitook hem  
tho,  
And seyde, 'I axed this at hevene  
king,  
To han respyt three dayes and na-  
mo,  
To recomende to yow, er that I go,  
These soules, lo! and that I mighte  
do werche<sup>545</sup>  
Here of myn hous perpetuelly a  
cherche.'  
Seint Urban, with his deknes,  
prively  
The body fette, and buried it by  
nighte  
Among his othere seintes honestly.  
Hir hous the chirche of seint Cecilie  
highte;<sup>550</sup>  
Seint Urban halwed it, as he wel  
mighte;  
In which, into this day, in noble  
wyse,  
Men doon to Crist and to his seint  
servyse.

Here is ended the Seconde Nonnes Tale.



[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

THE CANON'S YEOMAN'S  
PROLOGUE.  
(T. 16022-16043.)

The prologe of the Chanons Yemannes Tale.

WHAN ended was the lyf of seint Cecyle,  
Er we had riden fully fyve myle,555  
At Boghton under Blee us gan atake  
A man, that clothed was in clothes blake,  
And undernethe he hadde a whyt surplys.  
His hakeney, that was al pomely grys,  
So swatte, that it wonder was to see;560  
It semed he had priked myles three.  
The hors eek that his yeman rood upon  
So swatte, that unnethe mighte it gon.(10)  
Aboute the peytrel stood the foom ful hye,  
He was of fome al flekked as a pye.565  
A male tweyfold on his croper lay,  
It semed that he caried lyte array.  
Al light for somer rood this worthy man,  
And in myn herte wondren I bigan  
What that he was, til that I understood570  
How that his cloke was sowed to his hood;  
For which, when I had longe avysed me,  
I demed him som chanon for to be.(20)  
His hat heng at his bak down by a laas,  
For he had riden more than trot or paas;575  
He had ay priked lyk as he were wood.  
A clote-leef he hadde under his hood  
For swoot, and for to kepe his heed from  
hete.  
But it was Ioye for to seen him swete!  
His forheed dropped as a stillatorie,580  
Were ful of plantain and of paritorie.  
And whan that he was come, he gan to crye,  
'God save,' quod he, 'this Ioly  
companye!(30)  
Faste have I priked,' quod he, 'for your  
sake,  
By-cause that I wolde yow atake,585  
To ryden in this mery companye.'  
His yeman eek was ful of curteisye,  
And seyde, 'sires, now in the morwe-tyde  
Out of your hostelrye I saugh you ryde,

And warned heer my lord and my  
soverayn,590  
Which that to ryden with yow is ful fayn,  
For his desport; he loveth daliaunce.’  
‘Freend, for thy warning god yeve thee good  
chaunce,’  
Than seyde our host, ‘for certes, it wolde  
seme(41)  
Thy lord were wys, and so I may wel  
deme;595  
He is ful Iocund also, dar I leye.  
Can he oght telle a mery tale or tweye,  
With which he glade may this companye?’  
‘Who, sire? my lord? ye, ye, withouten lye,  
He can of murthe, and eek of Iolitee600  
Nat but ynough; also sir, trusteth me,  
And ye him knewe as wel as do I,  
Ye wolde wondre how wel and craftily(50)  
He coude werke, and that in sondry wyse.  
He hath take on him many a greet  
empryse,605  
Which were ful hard for any that is here  
To bringe aboute, but they of him it lere.  
As homely as he rit amonges yow,  
If ye him knewe, it wolde be for your prow;  
Ye wolde nat forgoon his aqueyntaunce610  
For mochel good, I dar leye in balaunce  
Al that I have in my possessioun.  
He is a man of heigh discrecioun,(60)  
I warne you wel, he is a passing man.’  
‘Wel,’ quod our host, ‘I pray thee, tel me  
than,615  
Is he a clerk, or noon? tel what he is.’  
‘Nay, he is gretter than a clerk, y-wis,’  
Seyde this yeman, ‘and in wordes fewe,  
Host, of his craft som-what I wol yow  
shewe.  
I seye, my lord can swich subtilitee—620  
(But al his craft ye may nat wite at me;  
And som-what helpe I yet to his werking)—  
That al this ground on which we been  
ryding,(70)  
Til that we come to Caunterbury toun,  
He coude al clene turne it up-so-doun,625  
And pave it al of silver and of gold.’  
And whan this yeman hadde thus y-told  
Unto our host, he seyde, ‘*benedicite!*  
This thing is wonder merveillous to me,

Sin that thy lord is of so heigh prudence,630  
By-cause of which men sholde him  
reverence,  
That of his worship rekketh he so lyte;  
His oversloppe nis nat worth a myte,(80)  
As in effect, to him, so mote I go!  
It is al baudy and to-tore also.635  
Why is thy lord so sluttish, I thee preye,  
And is of power better cloth to beye,  
If that his dede accorde with thy speche?  
Telle me that, and that I thee biseche.’  
‘Why?’ quod this yeman, ‘wherto axe ye  
me?640  
God help me so, for he shal never thee!  
(But I wol nat avowe that I seye,  
And therfor kepe it secree, I yow preye).(90)  
He is to wys, in feith, as I bileve;  
That that is overdoon, it wol nat preve645  
Aright, as clerkes seyn, it is a vyce.  
Wherfor in that I holde him lewed and nyce.  
For whan a man hath over-greet a wit,  
Ful oft him happeth to misusen it;  
So dooth my lord, and that me greveth  
sore.650  
God it amende, I can sey yow na-more.’  
‘Ther-of no fors, good yeman,’ quod our  
host;  
‘Sin of the conning of thy lord thou  
wost,(100)  
Tel how he dooth, I pray thee hertely,  
Sin that he is so crafty and so sly.655  
Wher dwellen ye, if it to telle be?’  
‘In the suburbes of a toun,’ quod he,  
‘Lurkinge in hernes and in lanes blinde,  
Wher-as these robbours and these theves by  
kinde  
Holden hir privee fereful residence,660  
As they that dar nat shewen hir presence;  
So faren we, if I shal seye the sothe.’  
‘Now,’ quod our host, ‘yit lat me talke to  
the;(110)  
Why artow so discoloured of thy face?’  
‘Peter!’ quod he, ‘god yeve it harde  
grace,665  
I am so used in the fyr to blowe,  
That it hath chaunged my colour, I trowe.  
I am nat wont in no mirour to pryde,  
But swinke sore and lerne multiplye.

We blondren ever and pouren in the fyr,670  
And for al that we fayle of our desyr,  
For ever we lakken our conclusioun.  
To mochel folk we doon illusioun,(120)  
And borwe gold, be it a pound or two,  
Or ten, or twelve, or many sommes mo,675  
And make hem wenen, at the leeste weye,  
That of a pound we coude make tweye!  
Yet is it fals, but ay we han good hope  
It for to doon, and after it we grope.  
But that science is so fer us biforn,680  
We mowen nat, al-though we hadde it  
sworn,  
It overtake, it slit away so faste;  
It wol us maken beggers atte laste.’(130)  
Whyl this yeman was thus in his talking,  
This chanoun drough him neer, and herde al  
thing685  
Which this yeman spak, for suspecioun  
Of mennes speche ever hadde this chanoun.  
For Catoun seith, that he that gilty is  
Demeth al thing be spoke of him, y-wis.  
That was the cause he gan so ny him  
drawe690  
To his yeman, to herknen al his sawe.  
And thus he seyde un-to his yeman tho,  
‘Hold thou thy pees, and spek no wordes  
mo,(140)  
For if thou do, thou shalt it dere abyge;  
Thou sclaudrest me heer in this  
companye,695  
And eek discoverest that thou sholdest  
hyde.’  
‘Ye,’ quod our host, ‘telle on, what so  
bityde;  
Of al his threting rekke nat a myte!’  
‘In feith,’ quod he, ‘namore I do but lyte.’  
And whan this chanon saugh it wolde nat  
be,700  
But his yeman wolde telle his privetee,  
He fledde away for verray sorwe and shame.  
‘A!’ quod the yeman, ‘heer shal aryse  
game,(150)  
Al that I can anon now wol I telle.  
Sin he is goon, the foule feend him  
quelle!705  
For never her-after wol I with him mete  
For peny ne for pound, I yow bihete!

He that me broghte first unto that game,  
Er that he dye, sorwe have he and shame!  
For it is earnest to me, by my feith;710  
That fele I wel, what so any man seith.  
And yet, for al my smert and al my grief,  
For al my sorwe, labour, and meschief,(160)  
I coude never leve it in no wyse.  
Now wolde god my wit mighte suffyse715  
To tellen al that longeth to that art!  
But natheles yow wol I tellen part;  
Sin that my lord is gon, I wol nat spare;  
Swich thing as that I knowe, I wol  
declare.—719

Here endeth the Prologe of the Chanouns Yemannes  
Tale.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## THE CHANOONS YEMANNES TALE.

Here biginneth the Chanouns Yeman his Tale.

[*Prima pars.*]

WITH this chanoun I dwelt have  
seven yeer,<sup>720</sup>  
And of his science am I never the  
neer.  
Al that I hadde, I have y-lost ther-  
by;  
And god wot, so hath many mo than  
I.<sup>(170)</sup>  
Ther I was wont to be right fresh  
and gay  
Of clothing and of other good  
array,<sup>725</sup>  
Now may I were an hose upon myn  
heed;  
And wher my colour was bothe  
fresh and reed,  
Now is it wan and of a leden hewe;  
Who-so it useth, sore shal he rewe.  
And of my swink yet blered is myn  
ye,<sup>730</sup>  
Lo! which avantage is to multiplie!  
That slyding science hath me maad  
so bare,  
That I have no good, wher that ever  
I fare;<sup>(180)</sup>  
And yet I am endetted so ther-by  
Of gold that I have borwed,  
trewely,<sup>735</sup>  
That whyl I live, I shal it quyte  
never.  
Lat every man be war by me for  
ever!  
What maner man that casteth him  
ther-to,  
If he continue, I holde his thrift y-  
do.  
So helpe me god, ther-by shal he  
nat winne,<sup>740</sup>

But empte his purs, and make his  
wittes thinne.  
And whan he, thurgh his madnes  
and folye,  
Hath lost his owene good thurgh  
Iupartye,(190)  
Thanne he excyteth other folk ther-  
to,  
To lese hir good as he him-self hath  
do.745  
For unto shrewes Ioye it is and ese  
To have hir felawes in peyne and  
disese;  
Thus was I ones lerned of a clerk.  
Of that no charge, I wol speke of  
our werk.  
Whan we been ther as we shul  
exercyse750  
Our elvish craft, we semen wonder  
wyse,  
Our termes been so clerghial and so  
queynte.  
I blowe the fyr til that myn herte  
feynte.(200)  
What sholde I tellen ech  
proporcioun  
Of thinges whiche that we werche  
upon,755  
As on fyve or sixe ounces, may wel  
be,  
Of silver or som other quantite,  
And bisie me to telle yow the names  
Of orpiment, brent bones, yren  
squames,  
That into poudre grounden been ful  
smal?760  
And in an erthen potte how put is al,  
And salt y-put in, and also papeer,  
Biforn these poudres that I speke of  
heer,(210)  
And wel y-covered with a lampe of  
glas,  
And mochel other thing which that  
ther was?765  
And of the pot and glasses enluting,  
That of the eyre mighte passe out  
no-thing?  
And of the esy fyr and smart also,

Which that was maad, and of the  
care and wo  
That we hadde in our matires  
sublyming,770  
And in amalgaming and calcening  
Of quik-silver, y-clept Mercurie  
crude?  
For alle our sleighes we can nat  
conclude.(220)  
Our orpiment and sublymed  
Mercurie,  
Our grounden litarge eek on the  
porphurie,775  
Of ech of thise of ounces a certeyn  
Nought helpeth us, our labour is in  
veyn.  
Ne eek our spirites ascencioun,  
Ne our materes that lyen al fixe  
adoun,  
Mowe in our werking no-thing us  
avayle.780  
For lost is al our labour and  
travayle,  
And al the cost, a twenty devel  
weye,  
Is lost also, which we upon it  
leye.(230)  
Ther is also ful many another thing  
That is unto our craft  
apertening;785  
Though I by ordre hem nat reherce  
can,  
By-cause that I am a lewed man,  
Yet wol I telle hem as they come to  
minde,  
Though I ne can nat sette hem in hir  
kinde;  
As bole armoniak, verdegrees,  
boras,790  
And sondry vessels maad of erthe  
and glas,  
Our urinales and our descensories,  
Violes, croslets, and  
sublymatories,(240)  
Cucurbites, and alembykes eek,  
And othere swiche, dere y-nough a  
leek.795



Nat nedeth it for to reherce hem  
alle,  
Watres rubifying and boles galle,  
Arsenik, sal armoniak, and  
brimston;  
And herbes coude I telle eek many  
oon,  
As egremoine, valerian, and  
lunarie,800  
And othere swiche, if that me liste  
tarie.  
Our lampes brenning bothe night  
and day,  
To bringe aboute our craft, if that  
we may.(250)  
Our fourneys eek of calcinacioun,  
And of watres albificacioun,805  
Unslekked lym, chalk, and gleyre of  
an ey,  
Poudres diverse, asshes, dong,  
pisse, and cley,  
Cered pokets, sal peter, vitriole;  
And divers fyres maad of wode and  
cole;  
Sal tartre, alkaly, and sal  
preparat,810  
And combust materes and coagulat,  
Cley maad with hors or mannes  
heer, and oile  
Of tartre, alum, glas, berm, wort,  
and argoile,(260)  
Resalgar, and our materes enbibing;  
And eek of our materes  
encorporing,815  
And of our silver citrinacioun,  
Our cementing and fermentacioun,  
Our ingottes, testes, and many mo.  
I wol yow telle, as was me taught  
also,  
The foure spirites and the bodies  
sevene,820  
By ordre, as ofte I herde my lord  
hem nevene.  
The firste spirit quik-silver called is,  
The second orpiment, the thridde, y-  
wis,(270)  
Sal armoniak, and the ferthe  
brimston.

The bodies sevene eek, lo! hem heer  
anoon:825  
Sol gold is, and Luna silver we  
threpe,  
Mars yren, Mercurie quik-silver we  
clepe,  
Saturnus leed, and Iupiter is tin,  
And Venus coper, by my fader kin!  
This cursed craft who-so wol  
exercyse,830  
He shal no good han that him may  
suffyse;  
For al the good he spendeth ther-  
aboute,  
He lese shal, ther-of have I no  
doute.(280)  
Who-so that listeth outen his folye,  
Lat him come forth, and lerne  
multiplie;835  
And every man that oght hath in his  
cofre,  
Lat him appere, and wexe a  
philosofre.  
Ascaunce that craft is so light to  
lere?  
Nay, nay, god woot, al be he monk  
or frere,  
Prest or chanoun, or any other  
wight,840  
Though he sitte at his book bothe  
day and night,  
In lernyng of this elvish nyce lore,  
Al is in veyn, and parde, mochel  
more!(290)  
To lerne a lewed man this subtiltee,  
Fy! spek nat ther-of, for it wol nat  
be;845  
Al conne he letterure, or conne he  
noon,  
As in effect, he shal finde it al oon.  
For bothe two, by my savacioun,  
Concluden, in multiplicacioun,  
Y-lyke wel, whan they han al y-  
do;850  
This is to seyn, they faylen bothe  
two.  
Yet forgat I to maken rehersaille

Of watres corosif and of  
limaille,(300)  
And of bodyes mollificacioun,  
And also of hir induracioun,855  
Oiles, ablucions, and metal fusible,  
To tellen al wolde passen any bible  
That o-wher is; wherfor, as for the  
beste,  
Of alle thise names now wol I me  
reste.  
For, as I trowe, I have yow told y-  
nowe860  
To reyse a feend, al loke he never  
so rowe.  
A! nay! lat be; the philosophres  
stoon,  
Elixir clept, we sechen faste  
echoon;(310)  
For hadde we him, than were we  
siker y-now.  
But, unto god of heven I make  
avow,865  
For al our craft, whan we han al y-  
do,  
And al our sleighte, he wol nat  
come us to.  
He hath y-maad us spenden mochel  
good,  
For sorwe of which almost we  
wexen wood,  
But that good hope crepeth in our  
herte,870  
Supposinge ever, though we sore  
smerte,  
To be releved by him afterward;  
Swich supposing and hope is sharp  
and hard;(320)  
I warne yow wel, it is to seken ever;  
That futur temps hath maad men to  
dissever,875  
In trust ther-of, from al that ever  
they hadde.  
Yet of that art they can nat wexen  
sadde,  
For unto hem it is a bitter swete;  
So semeth it; for nadde they but a  
shete

Which that they mighte wrappe hem  
inne a-night,880  
And a bak to walken inne by day-  
light,  
They wolde hem selle and spenden  
on this craft;  
They can nat stinte til no-thing be  
laft.(330)  
And evermore, wher that ever they  
goon,  
Men may hem knowe by smel of  
brimston;885  
For al the world, they stinken as a  
goot;  
Her savour is so rammish and so  
hoot,  
That, though a man from hem a  
myle be,  
The savour wol infecte him, trusteth  
me;  
Lo, thus by smelling and threedbare  
array,890  
If that men liste, this folk they  
knowe may.  
And if a man wol aske hem prively,  
Why they been clothed so  
unthriftily,(340)  
They right anon wol rownen in his  
ere,  
And seyn, that if that they espyed  
were,895  
Men wolde hem slee, by-cause of  
hir science;  
Lo, thus this folk bitrayen  
innocence!  
Passe over this; I go my tale un-to.  
Er than the pot be on the fyr y-do,  
Of metals with a certein  
quantite,900  
My lord hem tempreth, and no man  
but he—  
Now he is goon, I dar seyn  
boldely—  
For, as men seyn, he can don  
craftily;(350)  
Algate I woot wel he hath swich a  
name,

And yet ful ofte he renneth in a  
blame;905  
And wite ye how? ful ofte it  
happeth so,  
The pot to-breketh, and farewel! al  
is go!  
Thise metals been of so greet  
violence,  
Our walles mowe nat make hem  
resistence,  
But if they weren wroght of lym  
and stoon;910  
They percen so, and thurgh the wal  
they goon,  
And somme of hem sinken in-to the  
ground—  
Thus han we lost by tymes many a  
pound—(360)  
And somme are scatered al the floor  
aboute,  
Somme lepe in-to the roof; with-  
outen doute,915  
Though that the feend noght in our  
sighte him shewe,  
I trowe he with us be, that ilke  
shrewe!  
In helle wher that he is lord and  
sire,  
Nis ther more wo, ne more rancour  
ne ire.  
Whan that our pot is broke, as I  
have sayd,920  
Every man chit, and halt him yvel  
apayd.  
Som seyde, it was long on the fyr-  
making,  
Som seyde, nay! it was on the  
blowing;(370)  
(Than was I fered, for that was myn  
office);  
'Straw!' quod the thridde, 'ye been  
lewed and nyce,925  
It was nat tempred as it oghte be.'  
'Nay!' quod the ferthe, 'stint, and  
herkne me;  
By-cause our fyr ne was nat maad  
of beech,

That is the cause, and other noon, so  
theech!’  
I can nat telle wher-on it was  
long,930  
But wel I wot greet stryf is us  
among.  
‘What!’ quod my lord, ‘ther is na-  
more to done,  
Of thise perils I wol be war eft-  
sone;(380)  
I am right siker that the pot was  
crased.  
Be as be may, be ye no-thing  
amased;935  
As usage is, lat swepe the floor as  
swythe,  
Plukke up your hertes, and beth  
gladde and blythe.’  
The mullok on an hepe y-sweped  
was,  
And on the floor y-cast a canevas,  
And al this mullok in a sive y-  
throwe,940  
And sifted, and y-piked many a  
throwe.  
‘Pardee,’ quod oon, ‘somwhat of  
our metal  
Yet is ther heer, though that we han  
nat al.(390)  
Al-though this thing mishapped  
have as now,  
Another tyme it may be wel y-  
now,945  
Us moste putte our good in  
aventure;  
A marchant, parde! may nat ay  
endure,  
Trusteth me wel, in his prosperitee;  
Somtyme his good is drenched in  
the see,  
And somtym comth it sauf un-to the  
londe.’950  
‘Pees!’ quod my lord, ‘the next  
tyme I wol fonde  
To bringe our craft al in another  
plyte;  
And but I do, sirs, lat me han the  
wyte;(400)

Ther was defaute in som-what, wel  
I woot.’  
Another seyde, the fyr was over  
hoot:—955  
But, be it hoot or cold, I dar seye  
this,  
That we concluden evermore amis.  
We fayle of that which that we  
wolden have,  
And in our madnesse evermore we  
rave.  
And whan we been togidres  
everichoon,960  
Every man semeth a Salomon.  
But al thing which that shyneth as  
the gold  
Nis nat gold, as that I have herd it  
told;(410)  
Ne every appel that is fair at ye  
Ne is nat good, what-so men clappe  
or crye.965  
Right so, lo! fareth it amonges us;  
He that semeth the wysest, by Iesus!  
Is most fool, whan it cometh to the  
preef;  
And he that semeth trewest is a  
theef;  
That shul ye knowe, er that I fro  
yow wende,970  
By that I of my tale have maad an  
ende.

*Explicit prima pars. Et sequitur pars secunda.*

Ther is a chanoun of religioun  
Amonges us, wolde infecte al a  
toun,(420)  
Though it as greet were as was  
Ninivee,  
Rome, Alisaundre, Troye, and  
othere three.975  
His sleighes and his infinit  
falsnesse  
Ther coude no man wryten, as I  
gesse,  
Thogh that he mighte liven a  
thousand yeer.

In al this world of falshede nis his  
peer;  
For in his termes so he wolde him  
winde,980  
And speke his wordes in so sly a  
kinde,  
Whan he commune shal with any  
wight,  
That he wol make him doten anon  
right,(430)  
But it a feend be, as him-selven is.  
Ful many a man hath he bigyled er  
this,985  
And wol, if that he live may a  
whyle;  
And yet men ryde and goon ful  
many a myle  
Him for to seke and have his  
aqueyntaunce,  
Noght knowinge of his false  
governaunce.  
And if yow list to yeve me  
audience,990  
I wol it tellen heer in your presence.  
But worshipful chanouns religious,  
Ne demeth nat that I sclaundre your  
hous,(440)  
Al-though my tale of a chanoun be.  
Of every ordre som shrewe is,  
parde,995  
And god forbede that al a companye  
Sholde rewe a singuler mannes  
folye.  
To sclaundre yow is no-thing myn  
entente,  
But to correcten that is mis I mente.  
This tale was nat only told for  
yow,1000  
But eek for othere mo; ye woot wel  
how  
That, among Cristes apostelles  
twelve,  
Ther nas no traytour but Iudas him-  
selve.(450)  
Than why sholde al the remenant  
have blame  
That giltles were? by yow I seye  
the same.1005



Save only this, if ye wol herkne me,  
If any Iudas in your covent be,  
Remeveth him bitymes, I yow rede,  
If shame or los may causen any  
drede.

And beth no-thing displesed, I yow  
preye,1010

But in this cas herkneth what I shal  
seye.

In London was a preest, an  
annueleer,

That therin dwelled hadde many a  
year,(460)

Which was so plesaunt and so  
servisable

Unto the wyf, wher-as he was at  
table,1015

That she wolde suffre him no-thing  
for to paye

For bord ne clothing, wente he  
never so gaye;

And spending-silver hadde he right  
y-now.

Therof no fors; I wol procede as  
now,

And telle forth my tale of the  
chanoun,1020

That broghte this preest to  
confusioun.

This false chanoun cam up-on a day  
Unto this preestes chambre, wher he  
lay,(470)

Biseching him to lene him a certeyn  
Of gold, and he wolde quyte it him  
ageyn.1025

‘Lene me a mark,’ quod he, ‘but  
dayes three,

And at my day I wol it quyten thee.  
And if so be that thou me finde fals,  
Another day do hange me by the  
hals!’

This preest him took a mark, and  
that as swythe,1030

And this chanoun him thanked ofte  
sythe,

And took his leve, and wente forth  
his weye,

And at the thridde day broghte his  
moneye,(480)  
And to the preest he took his gold  
agayn,  
Wherof this preest was wonder glad  
and fayn.1035  
'Certes,' quod he, 'no-thing anoyeth  
me  
To lene a man a noble, or two or  
three,  
Or what thing were in my  
possessioun,  
Whan he so trewe is of condicioun,  
That in no wyse he breke wol his  
day;1040  
To swich a man I can never seye  
nay.'  
'What!' quod this chanoun, 'sholde  
I be untrewe?  
Nay, that were thing y-fallen al of-  
newe.(490)  
Trouthe is a thing that I wol ever  
kepe  
Un-to that day in which that I shal  
crepe1045  
In-to my grave, and elles god  
forbede;  
Bileveth this as siker as is your  
crede.  
God thanke I, and in good tyme be  
it sayd,  
That ther was never man yet yvel  
apayd  
For gold ne silver that he to me  
lente,1050  
Ne never falshede in myn herte I  
mente.  
And sir,' quod he, 'now of my  
privetee,  
Sin ye so goodlich han been un-to  
me,(500)  
And kythed to me so greet  
gentillesse,  
Somwhat to quyte with your  
kindenesse,1055  
I wol yow shewe, and, if yow list to  
lere,  
I wol yow teche pleyedly the manere,

How I can werken in philosophye.  
Taketh good heed, ye shul wel seen  
at yë,  
That I wol doon a maistrie er I  
go.' 1060  
'Ye,' quod the preest, 'ye, sir, and  
wol ye so?  
Marie! ther-of I pray yow hertely!'  
'At your comandement, sir,  
trewely,' (510)  
Quod the chanoun, 'and elles god  
forbede!'  
Lo, how this thief coude his servyse  
bede! 1065  
Ful sooth it is, that swich profred  
servyse  
Stinketh, as witnessen thise olde  
wyse;  
And that ful sone I wol it verifye  
In this chanoun, rote of al trecherye,  
That ever-more delyt hath and  
gladnesse—1070  
Swich feendly thoughtes in his herte  
impresse—  
How Cristes peple he may to  
meschief bringe;  
God kepe us from his fals  
dissimulinge! (520)  
Noght wiste this preest with whom  
that he delte,  
Ne of his harm cominge he no-thing  
felte. 1075  
O sely preest! o sely innocent!  
With coveityse anon thou shalt be  
blent!  
O gracelees, ful blind is thy conceit,  
No-thing ne artow war of the deceit  
Which that this fox y-shapen hath to  
thee! 1080  
His wyly wrenches thou ne mayst  
nat flee.  
Wherfor, to go to the conclusioun  
That refereth to thy  
confusioun, (530)  
Unhappy man! anon I wol me hye  
To tellen thyn unwit and thy  
folye, 1085

And eek the falsnesse of that other  
wrecche,  
As ferforth as that my conning may  
strecche.  
This chanoun was my lord, ye  
wolden wene?  
Sir host, in feith, and by the hevenes  
quene,  
It was another chanoun, and nat  
he,1090  
That can an hundred fold more  
subtiltee!  
He hath bitrayed folkes many tyme;  
Of his falshede it dulleth me to  
ryme.(540)  
Ever whan that I speke of his  
falshede,  
For shame of him my chekes wexen  
rede;1095  
Algates, they biginnen for to glowe,  
For reednesse have I noon, right wel  
I knowe,  
In my visage; for fumes dyverse  
Of metals, which ye han herd me  
reherce,  
Consumed and wasted han my  
reednesse.1100  
Now tak heed of this chanouns  
cursednesse!  
'Sir,' quod he to the preest, 'lat your  
man gon  
For quik-silver, that we it hadde  
anon;(550)  
And lat him bringen ounces two or  
three;  
And whan he comth, as faste shul  
ye see1105  
A wonder thing, which ye saugh  
never er this.'  
'Sir,' quod the preest, 'it shall be  
doon, y-wis.'  
He bad his servant fecchen him this  
thing,  
And he al redy was at his bidding,  
And wente him forth, and cam anon  
agayn1110  
With this quik-silver, soothly for to  
sayn,

And took these ounces three to the  
chanoun;  
And he hem leyde fayre and wel  
adoun,(560)  
And bad the servant coles for to  
bringe,  
That he anon mighte go to his  
werkinge.1115  
The coles right anon weren y-fet,  
And this chanoun took out a  
crosselet  
Of his bosom, and shewed it the  
preest.  
'This instrument,' quod he, 'which  
that thou seest,  
Tak in thyn hand, and put thy-self  
ther-inne1120  
Of this quik-silver an ounce, and  
heer biginne,  
In the name of Crist, to wexe a  
philosofre.  
Ther been ful fewe, whiche that I  
wolde profre(570)  
To shewen hem thus muche of my  
science.  
For ye shul seen heer, by  
experience,1125  
That this quik-silver wol I mortifye  
Right in your sighte anon,  
withouten lye,  
And make it as good silver and as  
fyn  
As ther is any in your purs or myn,  
Or elleswher, and make it  
malliable;1130  
And elles, holdeth me fals and  
unable  
Amonges folk for ever to appere!  
I have a poudre heer, that coste me  
dere,(580)  
Shal make al good, for it is cause of  
al  
My conning, which that I yow  
shewen shal.1135  
Voydeth your man, and lat him be  
ther-oute,  
And shet the dore, whyls we been  
aboute

Our privetee, that no man us espye  
Whyls that we werke in this  
philosophye.’  
Al as he bad, fulfilled was in  
dede, 1140  
This ilke servant anon-right out  
yede,  
And his maister shette the dore  
anon,  
And to hir labour speedily they  
gon. (590)  
This preest, at this cursed chanouns  
bidding,  
Up-on the fyr anon sette this  
thing, 1145  
And blew the fyr, and bisied him ful  
faste;  
And this chanoun in-to the croslet  
caste  
A poudre, noot I wher-of that it was  
Y-maad, other of chalk, other of  
glas,  
Or som-what elles, was nat worth a  
flye, 1150  
To blynde with the preest; and bad  
him hye  
The coles for to couchen al above  
The croslet, ‘for, in tokening I thee  
love,’ (600)  
Quod this chanoun, ‘thyn owene  
hondes two  
Shul werche al thing which that shal  
heer be do.’ 1155  
‘Graunt mercy,’ quod the preest,  
and was ful glad,  
And couched coles as the chanoun  
bad.  
And whyle he bisy was, this feendly  
wrecche,  
This fals chanoun, the foule feend  
him fecche!  
Out of his bosom took a bechen  
cole, 1160  
In which ful subtilly was maad an  
hole,  
And ther-in put was of silver  
lymaille

An ounce, and stopped was, with-  
outen fayle,(610)  
The hole with wex, to kepe the  
lymail in.  
And understondeth, that this false  
gin1165  
Was nat maad ther, but it was maad  
bifore;  
And othere thinges I shal telle more  
Herafterward, which that he with  
him broghte;  
Er he cam ther, him to bigyle he  
thoghte,  
And so he dide, er that they wente  
a-twinne;1170  
Til he had terved him, coude he not  
blinne.  
It dulleth me whan that I of him  
speke,  
On his falshede fayn wolde I me  
wreke,(620)  
If I wiste how; but he is heer and  
ther:  
He is so variaunt, he abit no-  
wher.1175  
But taketh heed now, sirs, for  
goddess love!  
He took his cole of which I spak  
above,  
And in his hond he baar it prively.  
And whyls the preest couchede  
busily  
The coles, as I tolde yow er  
this,1180  
This chanoun seyde, 'freend, ye  
doon amis;  
This is nat couched as it oghte be;  
But sone I shal amenden it,' quod  
he.(630)  
'Now lat me medle therwith but a  
whyle,  
For of yow have I pitee, by seint  
Gyle!1185  
Ye been right hoot, I see wel how  
ye swete,  
Have heer a cloth, and wype away  
the wete.'

And whyles that the preest wyped  
his face,  
This chanoun took his cole with  
harde grace,  
And leyde it above, up-on the  
middeward 1190  
Of the croslet, and blew wel  
afterward,  
Til that the coles gonne faste  
brenne.  
'Now yeve us drinke,' quod the  
chanoun thenne,(640)  
'As swythe al shal be wel, I  
undertake;  
Sitte we down, and lat us mery  
make.' 1195  
And whan that this chanounes  
bechen cole  
Was brent, al the lymaille, out of  
the hole,  
Into the croslet fil anon adoun;  
And so it moste nedes, by resoun,  
Sin it so even aboven couched  
was; 1200  
But ther-of wiste the preest no-  
thing, alas!  
He demed alle the coles y-liche  
good,  
For of the sleighte he no-thing  
understood.(650)  
And whan this alkamistre saugh his  
tyme,  
'Rys up,' quod he, 'sir preest, and  
stondeth by me; 1205  
And for I woot wel ingot have ye  
noon,  
Goth, walketh forth, and bring us a  
chalk-stoon;  
For I wol make oon of the same  
shap  
That is an ingot, if I may han hap.  
And bringeth eek with yow a bolle  
or a panne, 1210  
Ful of water, and ye shul see wel  
thanne  
How that our businesse shal thryve  
and preve.



And yet, for ye shul han no  
misbileve(660)  
Ne wrong conceit of me in your  
absence,  
I ne wol nat been out of your  
presence,1215  
But go with yow, and come with  
yow ageyn.’  
The chambre-dore, shortly for to  
seyn,  
They opened and shette, and wente  
hir weye.  
And forth with hem they carieden  
the keye,  
And come agayn with-uten any  
delay.1220  
What sholde I tarien al the longe  
day?  
He took the chalk, and shoop it in  
the wyse  
Of an ingot, as I shal yow  
devyse.(670)  
I seye, he took out of his owene  
sleve,  
A teyne of silver (yvele mote he  
cheve!)1225  
Which that ne was nat but an ounce  
of weighte;  
And taketh heed now of his cursed  
sleighte!  
He shoop his ingot, in lengthe and  
eek in brede,  
Of this teyne, with-uten any drede,  
So slyly, that the preest it nat  
espyde;1230  
And in his sleve agayn he gan it  
hyde;  
And fro the fyr he took up his  
matere,  
And in thingot putte it with mery  
chere,(680)  
And in the water-vessel he it caste  
Whan that him luste, and bad the  
preest as faste,1235  
‘Look what ther is, put in thyn hand  
and grope,  
Thow finde shalt ther silver, as I  
hope;

What, deuel of helle! sholde it elles  
be?  
Shaving of silver silver is, pardee!  
He putte his hond in, and took up a  
teyne<sup>1240</sup>  
Of silver fyn, and glad in every  
veyne  
Was this preest, whan he saugh that  
it was so.  
'Goddess blessing, and his modres  
also,<sup>(690)</sup>  
And alle halwes have ye, sir  
chanoun,'  
Seyde this preest, 'and I hir  
malisoun,<sup>1245</sup>  
But, and ye vouche-sauf to techen  
me  
This noble craft and this subtiltee,  
I wol be youre, in al that ever I  
may!'  
Quod the chanoun, 'yet wol I make  
assay  
The second tyme, that ye may taken  
hede<sup>1250</sup>  
And been expert of this, and in your  
nede  
Another day assaye in myn absence  
This disciplyne and this crafty  
science.<sup>(700)</sup>  
Lat take another ounce,' quod he  
tho,  
'Of quik-silver, with-outen wordes  
mo,<sup>1255</sup>  
And do ther-with as ye han doon er  
this  
With that other, which that now  
silver is.'  
This preest him bisieth in al that he  
can  
To doon as this chanoun, this cursed  
man,  
Comanded him, and faste he blew  
the fyr,<sup>1260</sup>  
For to come to theeffect of his desyr.  
And this chanoun, right in the mene  
whyle,  
Al redy was, the preest eft to  
bigyle,<sup>(710)</sup>

And, for a countenance, in his  
hande he bar  
An holwe stikke (tak keep and be  
war!)1265  
In the ende of which an ounce, and  
na-more,  
Of silver lymail put was, as bifore  
Was in his cole, and stopped with  
wex weel  
For to kepe in his lymail every deel.  
And whyl this preest was in his  
businessse,1270  
This chanoun with his stikke gan  
him dresse  
To him anon, and his pouder caste  
in  
As he did er; (the devel out of his  
skin(720)  
Him terve, I pray to god, for his  
falshede;  
For he was ever fals in thoght and  
dede);1275  
And with this stikke, above the  
croslet,  
That was ordeyned with that false  
get,  
He stired the coles, til relente gan  
The wex agayn the fyr, as every  
man,  
But it a fool be, woot wel it mot  
nede,1280  
And al that in the stikke was out  
yede,  
And in the croslet hastily it fel.  
Now gode sirs, what wol ye bet  
than wel?(730)  
Whan that this preest thus was  
bigyled ageyn,  
Supposing noght but trouthe, soth to  
seyn,1285  
He was so glad, that I can nat  
expresse  
In no manere his mirthe and his  
gladnesse;  
And to the chanoun he profred  
eftsone  
Body and good; 'ye,' quod the  
chanoun sone,

‘Though povre I be, crafty thou  
shalt me finde;1290  
I warne thee, yet is ther more  
bihinde.  
Is ther any coper her-inne?’ seyde  
he.  
‘Ye,’ quod the preest, ‘sir, I trowe  
wel ther be.’(740)  
‘Elles go by us som, and that as  
swythe,  
Now, gode sir, go forth thy wey and  
hy the.’1295  
He wente his wey, and with the  
coper cam,  
And this chanoun it in his handes  
nam,  
And of that coper weyed out but an  
ounce.  
Al to simple is my tonge to  
pronounce,  
As ministre of my wit, the  
doubleness1300  
Of this chanoun, rote of al  
cursednesse.  
He semed freendly to hem that  
knewe him noght,  
But he was feendly bothe in herte  
and thoght.(750)  
It werieth me to telle of his  
falsnesse,  
And nathelees yet wol I it  
expresse,1305  
To thentente that men may be war  
therby,  
And for noon other cause, trewely.  
He putte his ounce of coper in the  
croset,  
And on the fyr as swythe he hath it  
set,  
And caste in poudre, and made the  
preest to blowe,1310  
And in his werking for to stoupe  
lowe,  
As he dide er, and al nas but a Iape;  
Right as him liste, the preest he  
made his ape;(760)  
And afterward in the ingot he it  
caste,

And in the panne putte it at the  
laste1315  
Of water, and in he putte his owene  
hond.  
And in his sleve (as ye biforn-hond  
Herde me telle) he hadde a silver  
teyne.  
He slyly took it out, this cursed  
heyne—  
Unwiting this preest of his false  
craft—1320  
And in the pannes botme he hath it  
laft;  
And in the water rombled to and  
fro,  
And wonder prively took up  
also(770)  
The coper teyne, noght knowing  
this preest,  
And hidde it, and him hente by the  
breest,1325  
And to him spak, and thus seyde in  
his game,  
'Stoupeth adoun, by god, ye be to  
blame,  
Helpeth me now, as I dide yow  
whyl-er,  
Putte in your hand, and loketh what  
is ther.'  
This preest took up this silver teyne  
anon,1330  
And thanne seyde the chanoun, 'lat  
us gon  
With thise three teynes, which that  
we han wrought,  
To som goldsmith, and wite if they  
been oght.(780)  
For, by my feith, I nolde, for myn  
hood,  
But-if that they were silver, fyn and  
good,1335  
And that as swythe preved shal it  
be.'  
Un-to the goldsmith with thise  
teynes three  
They wente, and putte thise teynes  
in assay

To fyr and hamer; mighte no man  
sey nay,  
But that they weren as hem oghte  
be.1340  
This sotted preest, who was gladder  
than he?  
Was never brid gladder agayn the  
day,  
Ne nightingale, in the sesoun of  
May,(790)  
Nas never noon that luste bet to  
singe;  
Ne lady lustier in carolinge1345  
Or for to speke of love and  
wommanhede,  
Ne knight in armes to doon an  
hardy dede  
To stonde in grace of his lady dere,  
Than had this preest this sory craft  
to lere;  
And to the chanoun thus he spak  
and seyde,1350  
'For love of god, that for us alle  
deyde,  
And as I may deserve it un-to yow,  
What shal this receit coste? telleth  
now!'(800)  
'By our lady,' quod this chanoun,  
'it is dere.  
I warne yow wel; for, save I and a  
frere,1355  
In Engelond ther can no man it  
make.'  
'No fors,' quod he, 'now, sir, for  
goddess sake,  
What shal I paye? telleth me, I  
preye.'  
'Y-wis,' quod he, 'it is ful dere, I  
seye;  
Sir, at o word, if that thee list it  
have,1360  
Ye shul paye fourty pound, so god  
me save!  
And, nere the freendship that ye  
dide er this  
To me, ye sholde paye more, y-  
wis.'(810)

This preest the somme of fourty  
pound anon  
Of nobles fette, and took hem  
everichon1365  
To this chanoun, for this ilke receit;  
Al his werking nas but fraude and  
deceit.  
'Sir preest,' he seyde, 'I kepe han  
no loos  
Of my craft, for I wolde it kept were  
cloos;  
And as ye love me, kepeth it  
secree;1370  
For, and men knewe al my  
subtilitee,  
By god, they wolden han so greet  
envye  
To me, by-cause of my  
philosophye,(820)  
I sholde be deed, ther were non  
other weye.'  
'God it forbede!' quod the preest,  
'what sey ye?'1375  
Yet hadde I lever spenden al the  
good  
Which that I have (and elles wexe I  
wood!)  
Than that ye sholden falle in swich  
mescheef.'  
'For your good wil, sir, have ye  
right good preef,'  
Quod the chanoun, 'and far-wel,  
grant mercy!'1380  
He wente his wey and never the  
preest him sy  
After that day; and whan that this  
preest sholde  
Maken assay, at swich tyme as he  
wolde,(830)  
Of this receit, far-wel! it wolde nat  
be!  
Lo, thus byiaped and bigyled was  
he!1385  
Thus maketh he his introduccioun  
To bringe folk to hir  
destruccioun.—  
Considereth, sirs, how that, in ech  
estaat,

Bitwixe men and gold ther is debaat  
So ferforth, that unnethes is ther  
noon.1390  
This multiplying blent so many oon,  
That in good feith I trowe



[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## GROUP H.

### THE MANCIPLE'S PROLOGUE. (T. 16950-16968).

Here folweth the Prologe of the  
Maunciples Tale.

WITE ye nat wher ther  
stant a litel toun  
Which that y-cleped is  
Bob-up-and-down,  
Under the Blee, in  
Caunterbury weye?  
Ther gan our hoste for to  
lape and pleye,  
And seyde, 'sirs, what! Dun  
is in the myre!<sup>5</sup>  
Is ther no man, for preyere  
ne for hyre,  
That wol awake our felawe  
heer bihinde?  
A theef mighte him ful  
lightly robbe and binde.  
See how he nappeth! see,  
for cokkes bones,  
As he wol falle from his  
hors at ones.<sup>10</sup>  
Is that a cook of Londoun,  
with meschaunce?  
Do him come forth, he  
knoweth his penaunce,  
For he shal telle a tale, by  
my fey!  
Al-though it be nat worth a  
botel hey.  
Awake, thou cook,' quod  
he, 'god yeve thee sorwe,<sup>15</sup>  
What eyleth thee to slepe  
by the morwe?  
Hastow had fleen al night,  
or artow dronke,  
Or hastow with som quene  
al night y-swonke,

So that thou mayst nat  
holden up thyn heed?<sup>?</sup>  
This cook, that was ful pale  
and no-thing reed,<sup>20</sup>  
Seyde to our host, ‘so god  
my soule blesse,  
As ther is falle on me swich  
hevinesse,  
Noot I nat why, that me  
were lever slepe  
Than the beste galoun wyn  
in Chepe.’  
‘Wel,’ quod the maunciple,  
‘if it may doon ese<sup>25</sup>  
To thee, sir cook, and to no  
wight displese  
Which that heer rydeth in  
this companye,  
And that our host wol, of  
his curteisye,  
I wol as now excuse thee of  
thy tale;  
For, in good feith, thy  
visage is ful pale,<sup>30</sup>  
Thyn yen daswen eek, as  
that me thinketh,  
And wel I woot, thy breeth  
ful soure stinketh,  
That sheweth wel thou art  
not wel disposed;  
Of me, certein, thou shalt  
nat been y-glosed.  
Se how he ganeth, lo, this  
dronken wight,<sup>35</sup>  
As though he wolde us  
swolwe anon-right.  
Hold cloos thy mouth, man,  
by thy fader kin!  
The devel of helle sette his  
foot ther-in!  
Thy cursed breeth infecte  
wol us alle;  
Fy, stinking swyn, fy! foule  
moot thee falle!<sup>40</sup>  
A! taketh heed, sirs, of this  
lusty man.  
Now, swete sir, wol ye  
Iusten atte fan?

Ther-to me thinketh ye  
been wel y-shape!  
I trowe that ye dronken han  
wyn ape,  
And that is whan men  
pleyen with a straw.'<sup>45</sup>  
And with this speche the  
cook wex wrooth and  
wraw,  
And on the maunciple he  
gan nodde faste  
For lakke of speche, and  
doun the hors him caste,  
Wher as he lay, til that men  
up him took;  
This was a fayr chivachee  
of a cook!<sup>50</sup>  
Allas! he nadde holde him  
by his ladel!  
And, er that he agayn were  
in his sadel,  
Ther was greet showving  
bothe to and fro,  
To lifte him up, and muchel  
care and wo,  
So unwelody was this sory  
palled gost.<sup>55</sup>  
And to the maunciple  
thanne spak our host,  
'By-cause drink hath  
dominacioun  
Upon this man, by my  
savacioun  
I trowe he lewedly wolde  
telle his tale.  
For, were it wyn, or old or  
moysty ale,<sup>60</sup>  
That he hath dronke, he  
speketh in his nose,  
And fneseth faste, and eek  
he hath the pose.  
He hath also to do more  
than y-nough  
To kepe him and his capel  
out of slough;  
And, if he falle from his  
capel eft-sone,<sup>65</sup>

Than shul we alle have y-  
nough to done,  
In lifting up his hevy  
dronken cors.  
Telle on thy tale, of him  
make I no fors.  
But yet, maunciple, in feith  
thou art to nyce,  
Thus openly repreve him of  
his vyce.<sup>70</sup>  
Another day he wol,  
peraventure,  
Reclayme thee, and bringe  
thee to lure;  
I mene, he speke wol of  
smale thinges,  
As for to pinchen at thy  
rekeninges,  
That wer not honeste, if it  
cam to preef.<sup>75</sup>  
'No,' quod the maunciple,  
'that were a greet  
mescheef!  
So mighte he lightly bringe  
me in the snare.  
Yet hadde I lever payen for  
the mare  
Which he rit on, than he  
sholde with me stryve;  
I wol nat wratthe him, al-so  
mote I thryve!<sup>80</sup>  
That that I spak, I seyde it  
in my bourde;  
And wite ye what? I have  
heer, in a gourde,  
A draught of wyn, ye, of a  
rype grape,  
And right anon ye shul seen  
a good lape.  
This cook shal drinke ther-  
of, if I may;<sup>85</sup>  
Up peyne of deeth, he wol  
nat seye me nay!  
And certainly, to tellen as it  
was,  
Of this vessel the cook  
drank faste, allas!

What neded him? he drank  
y-nough biforn.  
And whan he hadde pouped  
in this horn,<sup>90</sup>  
To the maunciple he took  
the gourde agayn;  
And of that drinke the cook  
was wonder fayn,  
And thanked him in swich  
wyse as he coude.  
Than gan our host to  
laughen wonder loude,  
And seyde, 'I see wel, it is  
necessarie,<sup>95</sup>  
Wher that we goon, good  
drink we with us carie;  
For that wol turne rancour  
and disese  
Tacord and love, and many  
a wrong apese.  
O thou Bachus, y-blessed  
be thy name,  
That so canst turnen earnest  
in-to game!<sup>100</sup>  
Worship and thank be to  
thy deitee!  
Of that matere ye gete na  
more of me.  
Tel on thy tale, maunciple,  
I thee preye.'  
'Wel, sir,' quod he, 'now  
herkneþ what I seye.'

Thus endeth the Prologe of the  
Manciple.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## THE MAUNCIPLES TALE.

Here biginneth the Maunciples Tale  
of the Crowe.

WHAN Phebus dwelled  
here in this erthe adoun, 105  
As olde bokes maken  
mencioun,  
He was the moste lusty  
bachiler  
In al this world, and eek the  
beste archer;  
He slow Phitoun, the  
serpent, as he lay  
Slepinge agayn the sonne  
upon a day; 110  
And many another noble  
worthy dede  
He with his bowe wroghte,  
as men may rede.  
Pleyen he coude on every  
minstralcye,  
And singen, that it was a  
melodye, (10)  
To heren of his clere vois  
the soun. 115  
Certes the king of Thebes,  
Amphioun,  
That with his singing  
walled that citee,  
Coude never singen half so  
wel as he.  
Therto he was the  
semelieste man  
That is or was, sith that the  
world bigan. 120  
What nedeth it his fetures  
to discryve?  
For in this world was noon  
so fair on lyve.  
He was ther-with fulfild of  
gentillesse,

Of honour, and of parfit  
worthinesse.(20)  
This Phebus, that was flour  
of bachelrye,125  
As wel in fredom as in  
chivalrye,  
For his desport, in signe  
eek of victorie  
Of Phitoun, so as telleth us  
the storie,  
Was wont to beren in his  
hand a bowe.  
Now had this Phebus in his  
hous a crowe,130  
Which in a cage he fostred  
many a day,  
And taughte it speken, as  
men teche a lay.  
Whyt was this crowe, as is  
a snow-whyte swan,  
And countrefete the speche  
of every man(30)  
He coude, whan he sholde  
telle a tale.135  
Ther-with in al this world  
no nightingale  
Ne coude, by an hondred  
thousand deel,  
Singen so wonder merily  
and weel.  
Now had this Phebus in his  
hous a wyf,  
Which that he lovede more  
than his lyf,140  
And night and day dide  
ever his diligence  
Hir for to plese, and doon  
hir reverence,  
Save only, if the sothe that I  
shal sayn,  
Ialous he was, and wolde  
have kept hir fayn;(40)  
For him were looth by-  
iaped for to be.145  
And so is every wight in  
swich degree;  
But al in ydel, for it  
availleth noght.

A good wyf, that is clene of  
werk and thocht,  
Sholde nat been kept in  
noon await, certayn;  
And trewely, the labour is  
in vayn<sup>150</sup>

To kepe a shrewe, for it wol  
nat be.

This holde I for a verray  
nycetee,

To spille labour, for to kepe  
wyves;

Thus writen olde clerkes in  
hir lyves.<sup>(50)</sup>

But now to purpos, as I first  
bigan:<sup>155</sup>

This worthy Phebus dooth  
all that he can

To plesen hir, weninge by  
swich plesaunce,

And for his manhede and  
his governaunce,

That no man sholde han put  
him from hir grace.

But god it woot, ther may  
no man embrace<sup>160</sup>

As to destreyne a thing,  
which that nature

Hath naturelly set in a  
creature.

Tak any brid, and put it in a  
cage,

And do al thyn entente and  
thy corage<sup>(60)</sup>

To fostre it tendrely with  
mete and drinke,<sup>165</sup>

Of alle deyntees that thou  
canst bithinke,

And keep it al-so clenly as  
thou may;

Al-though his cage of gold  
be never so gay,

Yet hath this brid, by  
twenty thousand fold,

Lever in a forest, that is  
rude and cold,<sup>170</sup>

Gon ete wormes and swich  
wrecchednesse.



For ever this brid wol doon  
his businesse  
To escape out of his cage, if  
he may;  
His libertee this brid  
desireth ay.(70)  
Lat take a cat, and fostre  
him wel with milk,175  
And tendre flesh, and make  
his couche of silk,  
And lat him seen a mous go  
by the wal;  
Anon he weyveth milk, and  
flesh, and al,  
And every deyntee that is in  
that hous,  
Swich appetyt hath he to  
ete a mous.180  
Lo, here hath lust his  
dominacioun,  
And appetyt flemeth  
discrecioun.  
A she-wolf hath also a  
vileins kinde;  
The lewedeste wolf that she  
may finde,(80)  
Or leest of reputacion wol  
she take,185  
In tyme whan hir lust to  
han a make.  
Alle these ensamples speke  
I by these men  
That been untrewes, and no-  
thing by wommen.  
For men han ever a likerous  
appetyt  
On lower thing to parfoune  
hir delyt190  
Than on hir wyves, be they  
never so faire,  
Ne never so trewe, ne so  
debonaire.  
Flesh is so newefangel,  
with meschaunce,  
That we ne conne in no-  
thing han plesaunce(90)  
That souneth in-to vertu  
any whyle.195

This Phebus, which that  
thoghte upon no gyle,  
Deceyved was, for al his  
Iolitee;  
For under him another  
hadde she,  
A man of litel reputacioun,  
Noght worth to Phebus in  
comparisoun.<sup>200</sup>  
The more harm is; it  
happeth ofte so,  
Of which ther cometh  
muchel harm and wo.  
And so bifel, whan Phebus  
was absent,  
His wyf anon hath for hir  
lemman sent,<sup>(100)</sup>  
Hir lemman? certes, this is  
a knavish speche!<sup>205</sup>  
Foryeveth it me, and that I  
yow biseche.  
The wyse Plato seith, as ye  
may rede,  
The word mot nede accorde  
with the dede.  
If men shal telle proprely a  
thing,  
The word mot cosin be to  
the werking.<sup>210</sup>  
I am a boistous man, right  
thus seye I,  
Ther nis no difference,  
trewely,  
Bitwixe a wyf that is of  
heigh degree,  
If of hir body dishonest she  
be,<sup>(110)</sup>  
And a povre wenche, other  
than this—<sup>215</sup>  
If it so be, they werke bothe  
amis—  
But that the gentile, in  
estaat above,  
She shal be cleped his lady,  
as in love;  
And for that other is a  
povre womman,

She shal be cleped his  
wenche, or his lemman.220  
And, god it woot, myn  
owene dere brother,  
Men leyn that oon as lowe  
as lyth that other.  
Right so, bitwixe a titlelees  
tiraunt  
And an outlawe, or a theef  
erraunt,(120)  
The same I seye, ther is no  
difference.225  
To Alisaundre told was this  
sentence;  
That, for the tyrant is of  
gretter might,  
By force of meynee for to  
sleen doun-right,  
And brennen hous and  
hoom, and make al plain,  
Lo! therfor is he cleped a  
capitain;230  
And, for the outlawe hath  
but smal meynee,  
And may nat doon so greet  
an harm as he,  
Ne bringe a contree to so  
greet mescheef,  
Men clepen him an outlawe  
or a theef.(130)  
But, for I am a man noght  
textuel,235  
I wol noght telle of textes  
never a del;  
I wol go to my tale, as I  
bigan.  
Whan Phebus wyf had sent  
for hir lemman,  
Anon they wroghten al hir  
lust volage.  
The whyte crowe, that heng  
ay in the cage,240  
Biheld hir werk, and seyde  
never a word.  
And whan that hoom was  
come Phebus, the lord,  
This crowe sang ‘cokkow!  
cokkow! cokkow!’

‘What, brid?’ quod Phebus,  
‘what song  
singestow?(140)  
Ne were thow wont so  
merily to singe<sup>245</sup>  
That to myn herte it was a  
reioisinge  
To here thy vois? allas!  
what song is this?’  
‘By god,’ quod he, ‘I singe  
nat amis;  
Phebus,’ quod he, ‘for al  
thy worthinesse,  
For al thy beautee and thy  
gentillesse,<sup>250</sup>  
For al thy song and al thy  
minstralcy,  
For al thy waiting, blered is  
thyn yë  
With oon of litel  
reputacioun,  
Noght worth to thee, as in  
comparisoun,(150)  
The mountance of a gnat;  
so mote I thryve!<sup>255</sup>  
For on thy bed thy wyf I  
saugh him swyve.’  
What wol ye more? the  
crowe anon him tolde,  
By sadde tokenes and by  
wordes bolde,  
How that his wyf had doon  
hir lecherye,  
Him to gret shame and to  
gret vileinye;<sup>260</sup>  
And tolde him ofte, he  
saugh it with his yën.  
This Phebus gan awayward  
for to wryen,  
Him thoughte his sorweful  
herte brast a-two;  
His bowe he bente, and  
sette ther-inne a flo,(160)  
And in his ire his wyf  
thanne hath he slayn.<sup>265</sup>  
This is theeffect, ther is na-  
more to sayn;

For sorwe of which he brak  
his minstralcy,  
Bothe harpe, and lute, and  
giterne, and sautrye;  
And eek he brak his arwes  
and his bowe.  
And after that, thus spak he  
to the crowe:270  
'Traitor,' quod he, 'with  
tonge of scorioun,  
Thou hast me broght to my  
confusioun!  
Allas! that I was wrought!  
why nere I deed?  
O dere wyf, o gemme of  
lustiheed,(170)  
That were to me so sad and  
eek so trewe,275  
Now lystow deed, with face  
pale of hewe,  
Ful giltelees, that dorste I  
swere, y-wis!  
O rakel hand, to doon so  
foule amis!  
O trouble wit, or ire  
recchelees,  
That unavysed smytest  
giltelees!280  
O wantrust, ful of fals  
suspecioun,  
Where was thy wit and thy  
discrecioun?  
O every man, be-war of  
rakelnesse,  
Ne trowe no-thing with-  
outen strong witsse;(180)  
Smyt nat to sone, er that ye  
witen why,285  
And beeth avysed wel and  
sobrelly  
Er ye doon any execucioun,  
Up-on your ire, for  
suspecioun.  
Allas! a thousand folk hath  
rakel ire  
Fully fordoon, and broght  
hem in the mire.290

Allas! for sorwe I wol my-  
selven slee!’  
And to the crowe, ‘o false  
theef!’ seyde he,  
‘I wol thee quyte anon thy  
false tale!  
Thou songe whylom lyk a  
nightingale;(190)  
Now shaltow, false theef,  
thy song forgon,295  
And eek thy whyte fetheres  
everichon,  
Ne never in al thy lyf ne  
shaltou speke.  
Thus shal men on a traitour  
been awreke;  
Thou and thyn of-spring  
ever shul be blake,  
Ne never swete noise shul  
ye make,300  
But ever crye agayn  
tempest and rayn,  
In tokeninge that thurgh  
thee my wyf is slayn.’  
And to the crowe he stirte,  
and that anon,  
And pulled his whyte  
fetheres everichon,(200)  
And made him blak, and  
refte him al his song,305  
And eek his speche, and out  
at dore him slong  
Un-to the devel, which I  
him bitake;  
And for this caas ben alle  
crows blake.—  
Lordings, by this ensample  
I yow preye,  
Beth war, and taketh kepe  
what I seye:310  
Ne telleth never no man in  
your lyf  
How that another man hath  
dight his wyf;  
He wol yow haten mortally,  
certeyn.  
Daun Salomon, as wyse  
clerkes seyn,(210)

Techeth a man to kepe his  
tonge wel;315  
But as I seyde, I am noght  
textuel.  
But nathelees, thus taughte  
me my dame:  
'My sone, thenk on the  
crowe, a goddes name;  
My sone, keep wel thy  
tonge and keep thy freend.  
A wikked tonge is worse  
than a feend.320  
My sone, from a feend men  
may hem blesse;  
My sone, god of his  
endelees goodnesse  
Walled a tonge with teeth  
and lippes eke,  
For man sholde him avyse  
what he speke.(220)  
My sone, ful ofte, for to  
muche speche,325  
Hath many a man ben spilt,  
as clerkes teche;  
But for a litel speche  
avysely  
Is no men shent, to speke  
generally.  
My sone, thy tonge  
sholdestow restreyne  
At alle tyme , but whan  
thou doost thy peyne330  
To speke of god, in honour  
and preyere.  
The firste vertu, sone, if  
thou wolt lere,  
Is to restreyne and kepe wel  
thy tonge.—  
Thus lerne children whan  
that they ben  
yonge.—(230)  
My sone, of muchel  
speking yvel-avysed,335  
Ther lasse speking hadde y-  
nough suffysed,  
Comth muchel harm, thus  
was me told and taught.

In muchel speche sinne  
wanteth naught.  
Wostow wher-of a rakel  
tonge serveth?  
Right as a swerd forcutteth  
and forkerveth<sup>340</sup>  
An arm a-two, my dere  
sone, right so  
A tonge cutteth frendship al  
a-two.  
A Iangler is to god  
abhominable;  
Reed Salomon, so wys and  
honorable;<sup>(240)</sup>  
Reed David in his psalmes,  
reed Senekke.<sup>345</sup>  
My sone, spek nat, but with  
thyn heed thou bekke.  
Dissimule as thou were  
deef, if that thou here  
A Iangler speke of perilous  
matere.  
The Fleming seith, and  
lerne it, if thee leste,  
That litel Iangling causeth  
muchel reste.<sup>350</sup>  
My sone, if thou no wikked  
word hast seyde,  
Thee thar nat drede for to  
be biwreyd;  
But he that hath misseyd, I  
dar wel sayn,  
He may by no wey clepe  
his word agayn.<sup>(250)</sup>  
Thing that is seyde, is seyde;  
and forth it gooth,<sup>355</sup>  
Though him repente, or be  
him leef or looth.  
He is his thral to whom that  
he hath sayde  
A tale, of which he is now  
yvel apayde.  
My sone, be war, and be  
non auctour newe  
Of tydinges, whether they  
ben false or trewe.<sup>360</sup>  
Wher-so thou come,  
amonges hye or lowe,



Kepe wel thy tonge, and  
thenk up-on the crowe.

Here is ended the Maunciples Tale  
of the Crowe.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## GROUP I.

### THE PARSON'S PROLOGUE. (T. 17312-17330).

Here folweth the Prologe of the  
Persones Tale.

BY that the maunciple  
hadde his tale al ended,  
The sonne fro the south  
lyne was descended  
So lowe, that he nas nat, to  
my sighte,  
Degreës nyne and twenty as  
in highte.  
Foure of the clokke it was  
tho, as I gesse;<sup>5</sup>  
For eleven foot, or litel  
more or lesse,  
My shadwe was at thilke  
tyme, as there,  
Of swich feet as my lengthe  
parted were  
In six feet equal of  
proporcioun.  
Ther-with the mones  
exaltacioun,<sup>10</sup>  
I mene Libra, alwey gan  
ascende,  
As we were entringe at a  
thropes ende;  
For which our host, as he  
was wont to gye,  
As in this caas, our Ioly  
companye,  
Seyde in this wyse,  
'lordings everichoon,<sup>15</sup>  
Now lakketh us no tales mo  
than oon.  
Fulfil is my sentence and  
my decree;  
I trowe that we han herd of  
ech degree.

Almost fulfilled is all myn  
ordinaunce;  
I prey to god, so yeve him  
right good chaunce,<sup>20</sup>  
That telleth this tale to us  
lustily.  
Sir preest,' quod he, 'artow  
a vicary?  
Or art a person? sey sooth,  
by thy fey!  
Be what thou be, ne breke  
thou nat our pley;  
For every man, save thou,  
hath told his tale,<sup>25</sup>  
Unboked, and shewe us  
what is in thy male;  
For trewely, me thinketh,  
by thy chere,  
Thou sholdest knitte up wel  
a greet matere.  
Tel us a tale anon, for  
cokkes bones!  
This Persone him  
answerde, al at ones,<sup>30</sup>  
'Thou getest fable noon y-  
told for me;  
For Paul, that wryteth unto  
Timothee,  
Repreveth hem that weyven  
soothfastnesse,  
And tellen fables and swich  
wrecchednesse.  
Why sholde I sowen draf  
out of my fest,<sup>35</sup>  
Whan I may sowen whete,  
if that me lest?  
For which I seye, if that  
yow list to here  
Moralitee and vertuouse  
matere,  
And thanne that ye wol  
yeve me audience,  
I wol ful fayn, at Cristes  
reverence,<sup>40</sup>  
Do yow plesaunce leefful,  
as I can.  
But trusteth wel, I am a  
Southren man,

I can nat geste—rum , ram,  
ruf—by lettre,  
Ne, god wot, rym holde I  
but litel better;  
And therfor, if yow list, I  
wol nat glose.<sup>45</sup>  
I wol yow telle a mery tale  
in prose  
To knitte up al this feeste,  
and make an ende.  
And Iesu, for his grace, wit  
me sende  
To shewe yow the wey, in  
this viage,  
Of thilke parfit glorious  
pilgrimage<sup>50</sup>  
That highte Ierusalem  
celestial.  
And, if ye vouche-sauf,  
anon I shal  
Biginne upon my tale, for  
whiche I preye  
Telle your avys, I can no  
better seye.  
But nathelees, this  
meditacioun<sup>55</sup>  
I putte it ay under  
correccioun  
Of clerkes, for I am nat  
textuel;  
I take but the sentens,  
trusteth wel.  
Therfor I make  
protestacioun  
That I wol stonde to  
correccioun.<sup>60</sup>  
Up-on this word we han  
assented sone,  
For, as us semed, it was for  
to done,  
To enden in som vertuous  
sentence,  
And for to yeve him space  
and audience;  
And bede our host he  
sholde to him seye,<sup>65</sup>  
That alle we to telle his tale  
him preye.

Our host hadde the wordes  
for us alle:—  
'Sir preest,' quod he, 'now  
fayre yow bifalle!  
Sey what yow list, and we  
wol gladly here'—  
And with that word he  
seyde in this manere—70  
'Telleth,' quod he, 'your  
meditacioun.  
But hasteth yow, the sonne  
wol adoun;  
Beth fructuous, and that in  
litel space,  
And to do wel god sende  
yow his grace!'

Explicit prohemium.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## THE PERSONES TALE.

Here biginneth the Persones Tale.

*Ier. 60. State super vias et videte et interrogate de viis antiquis, que sit via bona; et ambulate in ea, et inuenietis refrigerium animabus vestris, &c.*

§ 1. Our swete lord god of hevene,  
that no man wole perisse, but wole  
that we comen alle to the  
knoweleche of him, and to<sup>75</sup> the  
blisful lyf that is perdurable, /  
amonesteth us by the prophete  
Ieremie, that seith in this wyse: /  
'stondeth upon the weyes, and seeth  
and axeth of olde pathes (that is to  
seyn, of olde sentences) which is  
the goode wey;/ and walketh in that  
wey, and ye shul finde refresshinge  
for your soules,' &c. / Manye been  
the weyes espiuets that leden folk  
to oure Lord Iesu Crist, and to the  
regne of glorie. / Of whiche weyes,  
ther is a ful noble wey and a ful  
covenable, which may nat faile to  
man ne to womman, that thurgh  
sinne hath misgoon fro the righte<sup>80</sup>  
wey of Ierusalem celestial; / and  
this wey is cleped Penitence, of  
which man sholde gladly herknen  
and enquire with al his herte;/ to  
witen what is Penitence, and  
whennes it is cleped Penitence, and  
in how manye maneres been the  
accions or werkinges of Penitence, /  
and how manye spyces ther been of  
Penitence, and whiche thinges  
apertenen and bihoven to Penitence,  
and whiche thinges destourben  
Penitence. /

§ 2. Seint Ambrose seith, that  
'Penitence is the pleyninge of man

for the gilt that he hath doon, and na-more to do any thing for which him oghte to pleyne.' / And som doctour seith: 'Penitence is the waymentinge of man, that sorweth for his sinne and pyneth him-self for he hath misdoon.' / Penitence, with<sup>85</sup> certeyne circumstances, is verray repentance of a man that halt him-self in sorwe and other peyne for hise giltes. / And for he shal be verray penitent, he shal first biwailen the sinnes that he hath doon, and stidefastly purposen in his herte to have shrift of mouthe, and to doon satisfaccioun, / and never to doon thing for which him oghte more to biwayle or to compleyne, and to continue in goode werkes: or elles his repentance may nat availle. / For as seith seint Isidre: 'he is a Iaper and a gabber, and no verray repentant, that eftsoone dooth thing, for which him oghte repente.' / Weping, and nat for to stinte to doon sinne, may nat avaylle. / But nathelees, men shal hope that every tyme that<sup>90</sup> man falleth, be it never so ofte, that he may arise thurgh Penitence, if he have grace: but certainly it is greet doute. / For as seith Seint Gregorie: 'unnethe aryseth he out of sinne, that is charged with the charge of yvel usage.' / And therfore repentant folk, that stinte for to sinne, and forlete sinne er that sinne forlete hem, holy chirche holdeth hem siker of hir savacioun. / And he that sinneth, and verraily repenteth him in his laste ende, holy chirche yet hopeth his savacioun, by the grete mercy of oure lord Iesu Crist, for his repentaunce; but tak the siker wey. /

§ 3 And now, sith I have declared yow what thing is Penitence, now

shul ye understonde that ther been  
three accions of Penitence./ The  
firste accion of Penitence is, that a  
man be<sup>95</sup> baptized after that he hath  
sinned./ Seint Augustin seith: ‘but  
he be penitent for his olde sinful lyf,  
he may nat biginne the newe clene  
lif.’ / For certes, if he be baptized  
withouten penitence of his olde gilt,  
he receiveth the mark of baptisme,  
but nat the grace ne the remission of  
his sinnes, til he have repentance  
verray. / Another defaute is this,  
that men doon deedly sinne after  
that they han received baptisme. /  
The thridde defaute is, that men  
fallen in venial sinnes after hir  
baptisme, fro day to day. / Ther-of  
seith Seint Augustin, that ‘penitence  
of<sup>100</sup> goode and humble folk is the  
penitence of every day.’ /

§ 4. The spyces of Penitence been  
three. That oon of hem is solempne,  
another is commune, and the thridde  
is privee./ Thilke penaunce that is  
solempne, is in two maneres; as to  
be put out of holy chirche in lente,  
for slaughtre of children, and swich  
maner thing. / Another is, whan a  
man hath sinned openly, of which  
sinne the fame is openly spoken in  
the contree; and thanne holy chirche  
by Iugement destreineth him for to  
do open penaunce. / Commune  
penaunce is that preestes enioinen  
men comunly in certeyn caas; as for  
to goon, peraventure, naked in<sup>105</sup>  
pilgrimages, or bare-foot. / Privee  
penaunce is thilke that men doon  
alday for privee sinnes, of whiche  
we shryve us prively and receyve  
privee penaunce. /

§ 5. Now shaltow understande what  
is bihovely and necessarie to verray  
parfit Penitence. And this stant on  
three thinges; / Contricioun of herte,



Confessioun of Mouth, and  
Satisfaccioun. / For which seith  
Seint Iohn Crisostom: ‘Penitence  
destreyneth a man to accepte  
benignely every peyne that him is  
enjoynd, with contricion of herte,  
and shrift of mouth, with  
satisfaction; and in werkinge of alle  
maner humilitee.’ / And this is  
fruitful Penitence agayn three  
thinges in whiche we wratthe oure  
lord Iesu Crist: / this is to seyn,  
by delyt in thinkinge, by  
recchelesnesse in spekinge, and by  
wikked sinful werkinge./ And  
agayns these wikkede giltes is  
Penitence, that may be lykned un-to  
a tree./

§ 6. The rote of this tree is  
Contricion, that hydeth him in the  
herte of him that is verrey repentant,  
right as the rote of a tree hydeth him  
in the erthe. / Of the rote of  
Contricion springeth a stalke, that  
bereth braunches and leues of  
Confession, and fruit of  
Satisfaccion./ For which Crist seith  
in his gospel: ‘dooth digne fruit of  
Penitence’; for by this fruit may  
men knowe this tree, and nat by the  
rote that is hid in the herte of man,  
ne by the braunches ne by the  
leues of Confession./ And therefore  
oure Lord Iesu Crist seith thus: ‘by  
the fruit of hem ye shul knowen  
hem.’ / Of this rote eek springeth a  
seed of grace, the which seed is  
moder of sikernesse, and this seed is  
egre and hoot. / The grace of this  
seed springeth of god, thurgh  
remembrance of the day of dome  
and on the peynes of helle./ Of this  
matere seith Salomon, that ‘in the  
drede of god man forleteth his  
sinne.’ / The hete of this seed is the  
love of god, and the desiring of the  
loye perdurable./ This hete

draweth<sup>120</sup> the herte of a man to  
god, and dooth him haten his sinne./  
For soothly, ther is no-thing that  
savoureth so wel to a child as the  
milk of his norice, ne no-thing is to  
him more abhominable than thilke  
milk whan it is medled with other  
mete. / Right so the sinful man that  
loveth his sinne, him semeth that it  
is to him most swete of any-thing;/  
but fro that tyme that he loveth  
sadly our lord Iesu Crist, and  
desireth the lif perdurable, ther nis  
to him no-thing more abhominable./  
For soothly, the lawe of god is the  
love of god; for which David the  
prophete seith: ‘I have loved thy  
lawe and hated wikkednesse and  
hate’; he that loveth god kepeth his  
lawe and his word. / This tree saugh  
the prophete<sup>125</sup> Daniel in spirit, up-  
on the avision of the king  
Nabugodonosor, whan he conseiled  
him to do penitence. / Penance is  
the tree of lyf to hem that it  
receiven, and he that holdeth him in  
verray penitence is blessed; after the  
sentence of Salomon./

§ 7. In this Penitence or Contricion  
man shal understonde foure thinges,  
that is to seyn, what is Contricion:  
and whiche been the causes that  
moeven a man to Contricion: and  
how he sholde be contrit: and what  
Contricion availleth to the soule./  
Thanne is it thus: that Contricion is  
the verrey sorwe that a man  
receiveth in his herte for his sinnes,  
with sad purpos to shryve him, and  
to do penance, and nevermore to  
do sinne./ And this sorwe shal been  
in this manere, as seith seint  
Bernard: ‘it shal been hevvy and  
grevous, and ful sharpe and poinant  
in herte.’ / First, for man hath agilt  
his lord and his creatour;<sup>130</sup> and  
more sharpe and poinant, for he

hath agilt his fader celestial; / and  
yet more sharpe and poinant, for he  
hath wrathed and agilt him that  
boghte him; which with his precious  
blood hath delivered us fro the  
bondes of sinne, and fro the crueltee  
of the devel and fro the peynes of  
helle./

§ 8. The causes that oghte moeve a  
man to Contricion been six. First, a  
man shal remembre him of hise  
sinnes;/ but loke he that thilke  
remembrance ne be to him no delyt  
by no wey, but greet shame and  
sorwe for his gilt. For Iob seith:  
'sinful men doon werkes worthy of  
Confession.' / And therfore seith  
Ezechie: 'I wol remembre me alle  
the yeres of my lyf, in  
bitternesse<sup>135</sup> of myn herte.' / And  
god seith in the Apocalips:  
'remembreth yow fro whennes that  
ye been falle'; for biforn that tyme  
that ye sinned, ye were the children  
of god, and limes of the regne of  
god;/ but for your sinne ye been  
woxen thral and foul, and membres  
of the feend, hate of aungels,  
sclaundre of holy chirche, and fode  
of the false serpent; perpetuel  
materie of the fyr of helle. / And yet  
more foul and abhominable, for ye  
trespassen so ofte tyme, as doth the  
hound that retourneth to eten his  
spewing./ And yet be ye fouler for  
your longe continuing in sinne and  
your sinful usage, for which ye be  
roten in your sinne, as a beest in his  
dong./ Swiche manere of thoghtes  
maken a man to have shame of his  
sinne, and no delyt, as god<sup>140</sup> seith  
by the prophete Ezechiel:/ 'ye shal  
remembre yow of youre weyes, and  
they shuln displese yow.' Sothly,  
sinnes been the weyes that leden  
folk to helle./

§ 9. The seconde cause that oghte make a man to have desdeyn of sinne is this: that, as seith seint Peter, 'who-so that doth sinne is thral of sinne'; and sinne put a man in greet thraldom./ And therefore seith the prophete Ezechiel: 'I wente sorweful in desdayn of myself.' And certes, wel oghte a man have desdayn of sinne, and withdrawe him from that thraldom and vileinye. / And lo, what seith Seneca in this matere. He seith thus: 'though I wiste that neither god ne man ne sholde nevere knowe it, yet wolde I have desdayn for to do sinne.' / And the same Seneca also seith: 'I am born to gretter thinges than to be thral<sup>145</sup> to my body, or than for to maken of my body a thral.' / Ne a fouler thral may no man ne womman maken of his body, than for to yeven his body to sinne./ Al were it the fouleste cherl, or the fouleste womman that liveth, and leest of value, yet is he thanne more foule and more in servitude. / Evere fro the hyer degree that man falleth, the more is he thral, and more to god and to the world vile and abhominable. / O gode god, wel oghte man have desdayn of sinne; sith that, thurgh sinne, ther he was free, now is he maked bonde./ And therefore seyth Seint Augustin: 'if thou hast desdayn of thy servant, if he agilte or sinne, have thou thanne desdayn that thou thy-self sholdest do sinne.' / Take reward of thy value, that thou ne be to foul to<sup>150</sup> thy-self./ Allas! wel oghten they thanne have desdayn to been servauntz and thralles to sinne, and sore been ashamed of hemself, / that god of his endeless goodnesse hath set hem in heigh estaat, or yeven hem wit, strengthe of body, hele, beautee, prosperitee,/ and boghte

hem fro the deeth with his herte  
blood, that they so unkindely,  
agayns his gentillesse, quyten him so  
vileinsly, to slaughtre of hir owene  
soules. / O gode god, ye wommen  
that been of so greet beautee,  
remembreth yow of the proverbe of  
Salomon, that seith: / 'he lyketh a  
fair womman,<sup>155</sup> that is a fool of  
hir body, lyk to a ring of gold that  
were in the groyn of a sowe.' / For  
right as a sowe wroteth in everich  
ordure, so wroteth she hir beautee in  
the stinkinge ordure of sinne. /

§ 10. The thridde cause that oghte  
moeve a man to Contricion, is drede  
of the day of dome, and of the  
horrible peynes of helle./ For as  
seint Ierome seith: 'at every tyme  
that me remembreth of the day of  
dome, I quake;/ for whan I ete or  
drinke, or what-so that I do, evere  
semeth me that the trompe sowneth  
in myn ere:/ riseth up, ye that been  
dede, and cometh to the<sup>160</sup>  
Iugement.' / O gode god, muchel  
oghte a man to drede swich a  
Iugement, 'ther-as we shullen been  
alle,' as seint Poul seith, 'biforn the  
sete of oure lord Iesu Crist';/ wher-  
as he shal make a general  
congregacion, wher-as no man may  
been absent./ For certes, there  
availleth noon essoyne ne  
excusacion./ And nat only that oure  
defautes shullen be iuged, but eek  
that alle oure werkes shullen openly  
be knowe./ And as seith Seint<sup>165</sup>  
Bernard: 'ther ne shal no pleding  
availle, ne no sleighte; we shullen  
yeven rekeninge of everich ydel  
word.' / Ther shul we han a Iuge  
that may nat been deceived ne  
corrupt. And why? For, certes, alle  
our thoghtes been discovered as to  
him; ne for preyere ne for mede he  
shal nat been corrupt./ And therefore

seith Salomon: ‘the wratthe of god ne wol nat spare no wight, for preyere ne for yifte’; and therefore, at the day of doom, ther nis noon hope to escape. / Wherfore, as seith Seint Anselm: ‘ful greet angwissh shul the sinful folk have at that tyme;/ ther shal the sterne and wrothe Iuge sitte above, and under him the horrible put of helle open to destroyen him that moot biknowen hise sinnes, whiche sinnes openly been shewed biforn<sup>170</sup> god and biforn every creature. / And on the left syde, mo develes than herte may bithinke, for to harie and drawe the sinful soules to the pyne of helle. / And with-inne the hertes of folk shal be the bytinge conscience, and with-oute-forth shal be the world al brenninge./ Whider shal thanne the wrecched sinful man flee to hyden him? Certes, he may nat hyden him; he moste come forth and shewen him.’ / For certes, as seith seint Ierome: ‘the erthe shal casten him out of him, and the see also; and the eyr also, that shal be ful of thonder-clappes and lightnings.’ / Now sothly, who-so wel remembreth him of these thinges, I gesse that his sinne shal nat turne him in-to delyt, but<sup>175</sup> to greet sorwe, for drede of the peyne of helle. / And therefore seith Iob to god: ‘suffre, lord, that I may a while biwaille and wepe, er I go with-oute returning to the derke lond, covered with the derknesse of deeth;/ to the lond of misese and of derknesse, where-as is the shadwe of deeth; where-as ther is noon ordre or ordinance, but grisly drede that evere shal laste.’ / Lo, here may ye seen that Iob preyde respyt a while, to biwepe and waille his trespas; for soothly oon day of respyt is bettre than al the tresor of

the world. / And for-as-muche as a man may acquiten him-self biforn god by penitence in this world, and nat by tresor, therefore sholde he preye to god to yeve him respyt a whyle, to biwepe and biwailen his trespas./ For certes, al the sorwe that a man mighte make fro the beginning of the world, nis but a litel thing<sup>180</sup> at regard of the sorwe of helle./ The cause why that Iob clepeth helle ‘the lond of derknesse’;/ under-stondeth that he clepeth it ‘londe’ or erthe, for it is stable, and nevere shal faille; ‘derk,’ for he that is in helle hath defaute of light material. / For certes, the derke light, that shal come out of the fyr that evere shal brenne, shal turne him al to peyne that is in helle; for it sheweth him to the horrible develes that him tormenten./ ‘Covered with the derknesse of death’: that is to seyn, that he that is in helle shal have defaute of the sighte of god; for certes, the sighte of god is the lyf perdurable./ ‘The derknesse of death’ been the sinnes that the wrecched man hath doon, whiche that destourben him to see the face of god; right as doth a derk cloude bitwixe us and the sonne./ ‘Lond of misese’: by-cause that ther been<sup>185</sup> three maneres of defautes, agayn three thinges that folk of this world han in this present lyf, that is to seyn, honours, delyces, and richesces./ Agayns honour, have they in helle shame and confusion./ For wel ye woot that men clepen ‘honour’ the reverence that man doth to man; but in helle is noon honour ne reverence. For certes, na-more reverence shal be doon there to a king than to a knave. / For which god seith by the prophete Ieremye: ‘thilke folk that me despysen shul been in despyt.’ /

‘Honour’ is eek cleped greet  
lordshipe; ther shal no man serven  
other but of harm and torment.  
‘Honour’ is eek cleped greet  
dignitee and heighnesse; but in helle  
shul they been al fortroden of  
develes. / And god seith: ‘the  
horrible develes shulle goon<sup>190</sup> and  
comen up-on the hevedes of the  
dampned folk.’ And this is for-as-  
muche as, the hyer that they were in  
this present lyf, the more shulle they  
been abated and defouled in helle./  
Agayns the riches of this world,  
shul they han misese of poverté;  
and this poverté shal been in foure  
thinges:/ in defaute of tresor, of  
which that David seith; ‘the riche  
folk, that embraceden and oneden al  
hir herte to tresor of this world, shul  
slepe in the slepinge of deeth; and  
no-thing ne shul they finden in hir  
handes of al hir tresor.’/ And more-  
over, the miseise of helle shal been  
in defaute of mete and drinke./ For  
god seith thus by Moyses; ‘they  
shul been wasted with hunger, and  
the briddes of helle shul devouren  
hem with bitter deeth, and the galle  
of the dragon shal been hir drinke,  
and the venim of the dragon hir  
morsels.’ /<sup>195</sup> And forther-over, hir  
miseise shal been in defaute of  
clothing: for they shulle be naked in  
body as of clothing, save the fyr in  
which they brenne and othere  
filthes;/ and naked shul they been of  
soule, of alle manere vertues, which  
that is the clothing of the soule.  
Where been thanne the gaye robes  
and the softe shetes and the smale  
shertes? / Lo, what seith god of hem  
by the prophete Isaye: ‘that under  
hem shul been strawed motthes, and  
hir covertures shulle been of  
wormes of helle.’/ And forther-over,  
hir miseise shal been in defaute of  
freendes; for he nis nat povre that



hath goode freendes, but there is no  
freend;/ for neither god ne no  
creature shal been freend to hem,  
and<sup>200</sup> everich of hem shal haten  
other with deedly hate./ ‘The sones  
and the doghtren shullen rebellen  
agayns fader and mooder, and  
kinrede agayns kinrede, and chyden  
and despysen everich of hem other,’  
bothe day and night, as god seith by  
the prophete Michias./ And the  
lovinge children, that whylom  
loveden so fleshly everich other,  
wolden everich of hem eten other if  
they mighte./ For how sholden they  
love hem togidre in the peyne of  
helle, whan they hated ech of hem  
other in the prosperitee of this lyf? /  
For truste wel, hir fleshly love was  
deedly hate; as seith the prophete  
David: ‘who-so that loveth  
wikkednesse he hateth his soule.’/  
And who-so hateth his owene soule,  
certes,<sup>205</sup> he may love noon other  
wight in no manere./ And therefore,  
in helle is no solas ne no frendshipe,  
but evere the more fleshly kinredes  
that been in helle, the more  
cursinges, the more chydinges, and  
the more deedly hate ther is among  
hem. / And forther-over, they shul  
have defaute of alle manere delyces;  
for certes, delyces been after the  
appetytes of the fyve wittes, as  
sighte, heringe, smellinge,  
savoringe, and touchinge. / But in  
helle hir sighte shal be ful of  
derknesse and of smoke, and  
therfore ful of teres; and hir heringe,  
ful of waymentinge and of grintage  
of teeth, as seith Iesu Crist; / hir  
nosethirles shullen be ful of  
stinkinge stink. And as seith Isaye  
the prophete: ‘hir savoring shal be  
ful of bitter galle.’/ And touchinge  
of al hir body, y-covered with ‘fyr  
that nevere shal quenche, and with  
wormes that nevere shul dyen,’ as

god seith by the mouth of<sup>210</sup>  
Isaye./ And for-as-muche as they  
shul nat wene that they may dyen  
for peyne, and by hir deeth flee fro  
peyne, that may they understonden  
by the word of Iob, that seith: ‘ther-  
as is the shadwe of deeth.’/ Certes, a  
shadwe hath the lyknesse of the  
thing of which it is shadwe, but  
shadwe is nat the same thing of  
which it is shadwe./ Right so fareth  
the peyne of helle; it is lyk deeth for  
the horrible anguiss, and why? For  
it peyneth hem evere, as though  
they sholde dye anon; but certes  
they shal nat dye./ For as seith Seint  
Gregorie: ‘to wrecche caytives shal  
be deeth with-oute deeth, and ende  
with-uten ende, and defaute with-  
oute failinge. / For hir deeth shal  
alwey liven, and hir ende shal  
everemo biginne, and hir defaute  
shal nat faille.’/215 And therfore  
seith Seint Iohn the Evangelist:  
‘they shullen folwe deeth, and they  
shul nat finde him; and they shul  
desyren to dye, and deeth shal flee  
fro hem.’/ And eek Iob seith: that  
‘in helle is noon ordre of rule.’/ And  
al-be-it so that god hath creat alle  
thinges in right ordre, and no-thing  
with-uten ordre, but alle thinges  
been ordeyned and nombred; yet  
natheles they that been dampned  
been no-thing in ordre, ne holden  
noon ordre. / For the erthe ne shal  
bere hem no fruit./ For, as the  
prophete David seith: ‘god shal  
destroie the fruit of the erthe as fro  
hem;’ ne water ne shal yeve hem no  
moisture; ne the eyr no refreshing,  
ne fyr no light./ For as seith seint  
Basilie:<sup>220</sup> ‘the brenninge of the fyr  
of this world shal god yeven in helle  
to hem that been dampned; / but the  
light and the cleernesse shal be  
yeven in hevne to hise children’;  
right as the gode man yeveth flesh

to hise children, and bones to his houndes./ And for they shullen have noon hope to escape, seith seint Iob atte laste: that ‘ther shal horroure and grisly drede dwellen with-outhe ende.’/ Horroure is alwey drede of harm that is to come, and this drede shal evere dwelle in the hertes of hem that been dampned. And therefore han they lorn al hir hope, for sevene causes./ First, for god that is hir Iuge shal be with-outhe mercy to hem; ne they may nat please him, ne noon of hise halwes; ne they ne may yeve no-thing for hir raunson; / ne they have no<sup>225</sup> vois to speke to him; ne they may nat flee fro peyne; ne they have no goodnesse in hem, that they mowe shewe to deliver hem fro peyne./ And therefore seith Salomon: ‘the wikked man dyeth; and whan he is deed, he shal have noon hope to escape fro peyne.’/ Who-so thanne wolde wel understande these peynes, and bithinke him weel that he hath deserved thilke peynes for his sinnes, certes, he sholde have more talent to syken and to wepe than for to singen and to pleye. / For as that seith Salomon: ‘who-so that hadde the science to knowe the peynes that been establissed and ordeyned for sinne, he wolde make sorwe.’/ ‘Thilke science,’ as seith seint Augustin, ‘maketh a man to<sup>230</sup> waymenten in his herte.’/

§ 11. The fourthe point, that oghte maken a man to have contricion, is the sorweful remembrance of the good that he hath left to doon here in erthe; and eek the good that he hath lorn./ Soothly, the gode werkes that he hath left, outhere they been the gode werkes that he wroghte er he fel in-to deedly sinne, or elles the gode werkes that he wroghte while

he lay in sinne. / Soothly, the gode werkes, that he dide biforn that he fil in sinne, been al mortified and astoned and dilled by the ofte sinning. / The othere gode werkes, that he wroghte whyl he lay in deedly sinne, they been outrelly dede as to the lyf perdurable in hevene./ Thanne thilke gode werkes that been mortified by ofte sinning, whiche gode werkes he dide whyl he was in charitee, ne mowe<sup>235</sup> nevere quiken agayn with-ouen verray penitence. / And ther-of seith god, by the mouth of Ezechiel: that, ‘if the rightful man returne agayn from his rightwisnesse and werke wikkednesse, shal he live?’/ Nay; for alle the gode werkes that he hath wroght ne shul nevere been in remembrance; for he shal dyen in his sinne./ And up-on thilke chapitre seith seint Gregorie thus: ‘that we shulle understonde this principally;/ that whan we doon deedly sinne, it is for noght thanne to rehercen or drawn in-to memorie the gode werkes that we han wroght biforn.’/ For certes, in the werkinge of the deedly sinne, ther is no trust to no good werk that we han doon biforn; that is to seyn, as for to<sup>240</sup> have therby the lyf perdurable in hevene. / But natheles, the gode werkes quiken agayn, and comen agayn, and helpen, and availen to have the lyf perdurable in hevene, whan we han contricion./ But soothly, the gode werkes that men doon whyl they been in deedly sinne, for-as-muche as they were doon in deedly sinne, they may nevere quiken agayn. / For certes, thing that nevere hadde lyf may nevere quikene; and natheles, al-be-it that they ne availle noght to han the lyf perdurable, yet availen they to

abregge of the peyne of helle, or  
elles to geten temporal richesse, / or  
elles that god wole the rather  
enlumine and lightne the herte of  
the sinful man to have repentance; /  
and eek they availlen for to usen a  
man to doon gode werkes, that the  
feend have the lasse power of his  
soule. / And thus the curteis lord<sup>245</sup>  
Iesu Crist wole that no good werk  
be lost; for in somewhat it shal  
availle. / But for-as-muche as the  
gode werkes that men doon whyl  
they been in good lyf, been al  
mortified by sinne folwinge; and  
eek, sith that alle the gode werkes  
that men doon whyl they been in  
deedly synne, been outrely dede as  
for to have the lyf perdurable; / wel  
may that man, that no good werke  
ne dooth, singe thilke newe Frenshe  
song: "*Iay tout perdu mon temps et  
mon labour.*" / For certes, sinne  
bireveth a man bothe goodnesse of  
nature and eek the goodnesse of  
grace. / For soothly, the grace of the  
holy goost fareth lyk fyr, that may  
nat been ydel; for fyr failleth anon  
as it forleteth his wirkinge, and right  
so grace fayleth anon as it forleteth  
his werkinge. / Than leseth the sinful  
man<sup>250</sup> the goodnesse of glorie,  
that only is bihight to gode men that  
labouren and werken. / Wel may he  
be sory thanne, that oweth al his lif  
to god as longe as he hath lived, and  
eek as longe as he shal live, that no  
goodnesse ne hath to paye with his  
dette to god, to whom he oweth al  
his lyf. / For trust wel, 'he shal  
yeven acountes,' as seith seint  
Bernard, 'of alle the godes that han  
be yeven him in this present lyf, and  
how he hath hem despended; / in so  
muche that ther shal nat perisse an  
heer of his heed, ne a moment of an  
houre ne shal nat perisse of his

tyme, that he ne shal yeve of it a rekening.' /

§ 12. The fifthe thing that oghte moeve a man to contricion, is remembrance of the passion that oure lord Iesu Crist suffred for our sinnes. / For, as seith seint Bernard: 'whyl that I live, I255 shal have remembrance of the travailles that oure lord Crist suffred in preching; / his werinesse in travailling, hise temptacions whan he fasted, hise longe wakinges whan he preyde, hise teres whan that he weep for pitee of good peple; / the wo and the shame and the filthe that men seyden to him; of the foule spitting that men spitte in his face, of the buffettes that men yaven him, of the foule mowes, and of the repreves that men to him seyden;/ of the nayles with whiche he was nailed to the croys, and of al the remenant of his passion that he suffred for my sinnes, and no-thing for his gilt.' / And ye shul understonde, that in mannes sinne is every manere of ordre or ordinance turned up-so-doun./260 For it is sooth, that god, and reson, and sensualitee, and the body of man been so ordeyned, that everich of these foure thinges sholde have lordshipe over that other; / as thus: god sholde have lordshipe over reson, and reson over sensualitee, and sensualitee over the body of man./ But sothly, whan man sinneth, al this ordre or ordinance is turned up-so-doun./ And therefore thanne, for-as-muche as the reson of man ne wol nat be subget ne obeisant to god, that is his lord by right, therefore leseth it the lordshipe that it sholde have over sensualitee, and eek over the body of man./ And why? For sensualitee rebelleth thanne agayns reson; and

by that wey leseth reson the  
lordshipe over sensualitee<sup>265</sup> and  
over the body./ For right as reson is  
rebel to god, right so is bothe  
sensualitee rebel to reson and the  
body also./ And certes, this  
disordinance and this rebellion oure  
lord Iesu Crist aboghte up-on his  
precious body ful dere, and  
herkneth in which wyse./ For-as-  
muche thanne as reson is rebel to  
god, therefore is man worthy to have  
sorwe and to be deed./ This suffred  
oure lord Iesu Crist for man, after  
that he hadde be bitrayed of his  
disciple, and distreyned and  
bunde, ‘so that his blood brast out  
at every nail of hise handes,’ as  
seith seint Augustin. / And forther-  
over, for-as-muchel as reson of man  
ne wol nat daunte sensualitee when  
it may, therefore is man worthy to  
have shame; and this suffred oure  
lord Iesu Crist for man, when they  
spetten in his<sup>270</sup> visage. / And  
forther-over, for-as-muchel thanne  
as the caitif body of man is rebel  
bothe to reson and to sensualitee,  
therefore is it worthy the deeth./ And  
this suffred oure lord Iesu Crist for  
man up-on the croys, where-as ther  
was no part of his body free,  
withouten greet peyne and bitter  
passion./ And al this suffred Iesu  
Crist, that nevere forfeled. And  
therefore resonably may be seyde of  
Iesu in this manere: ‘to muchel am I  
peyned for the thinges that I nevere  
deserved, and to muche defouled for  
shendshipe that man is worthy to  
have.’ / And therefore may the sinful  
man wel seye, as seith seint  
Bernard: ‘acursed be the bitternesse  
of my sinne, for which ther moste  
be suffred so muchel bitternesse.’/  
For certes, after the diverse  
discordances of oure wikkednesses,  
was the passion of Iesu Crist

ordeyned in diverse thinges, / as  
thus. Certes, sinful mannes soule is  
bitraysted of the devel by  
coveitise of temporel prosperitee,  
and scorned by deceite whan he  
cheseth fleshly delyces; and yet is it  
tormented by inpacience of  
adversitee, and bispet by servage  
and subieccion of sinne; and atte  
laste it is slayn fynally. / For this  
disordinaunce of sinful man was  
Iesu Crist first bitraysted, and after  
that was he bounde, that cam for to  
unbynden us of sinne and peyne. /  
Thanne was he bicorned, that only  
sholde han been honoured in alle  
thinges and of alle thinges./ Thanne  
was his visage, that oghte be desired  
to be seyn of al man-kinde, in  
which visage aungels desyren to  
looke, vileynsly bispet./ Thanne  
was he scourged that no-thing  
hadde agilt; and fynally, thanne was  
he crucified and slayn./ Thanne was  
acomplised the word of Isaye:280  
'he was wounded foroure  
misdedes, and defouled foroure  
felonies.' / Now sith that Iesu Crist  
took up-on him-self the peyne of  
alleoure wikkednesses, muchel  
oghte sinful man wepen and  
biwayle, that for hise sinnes goddes  
sone of hevene sholde al this peyne  
endure./

§ 13. The sixte thing that oghte  
moeve a man to contricion, is the  
hope of three thynges; that is to  
seyn, foryifnesse of sinne, and the  
yifte of grace wel for to do, and the  
glorie of hevene, with which god  
shal guerdone a man for hise gode  
dedes. / And for-as-muche as Iesu  
Crist yeveth us these yiftes of his  
largesse and of his sovereyn  
bountee, therefore is he cleped *Iesus  
Nazarenius rex Iudeorum*. / Iesus is  
to seyn 'saveour' or 'salvacion,' on



whom men shul hope to have  
foryifnesse of sinnes, which that is  
propely salvacion of sinnes. / And  
therefore seyde the aungel to<sup>285</sup>  
Ioseph: 'thou shalt clepen his name  
Jesus, that shal saven his peple of  
hir sinnes.' / And heer-of seith seint  
Peter: 'ther is noon other name  
under hevene that is yeve to any  
man, by which a man may be saved,  
but only Iesus.' / *Nazarenius* is as  
muche for to seye as 'florisslinge,'  
in which a man shal hope, that he  
that yeveth him remission of sinnes  
shal yeve him eek grace wel for to  
do. For in the flour is hope of fruit  
in tyme cominge; and in foryifnesse  
of sinnes hope of grace wel for to  
do. / 'I was atte dore of thyn herte,'  
seith Iesus, 'and cleped for to entre;  
he that openeth to me shal have  
foryifnesse of sinne. / I wol entre in-  
to him by my grace, and soupe with  
him,' by the goode werkes that he  
shal doon; whiche werkes been the  
foode of god; 'and he shal soupe  
with me,' by the grete Ioye that I  
shal yeven<sup>290</sup> him. / Thus shal man  
hope, for hise werkes of penaunce,  
that god shall yeven him his regne;  
as he bihoteth him in the gospel. /

§ 14. Now shal a man understonde,  
in which manere shal been his  
contricion. I seye, that it shal been  
universal and total; this is to seyn, a  
man shal be verray repentant for  
alle hise sinnes that he hath doon in  
delyt of his thoght; for delyt is ful  
perilous. / For ther been two manere  
of consentinges; that oon of hem is  
cleped consentinge of affeccion,  
when a man is moeved to do sinne,  
and delyteth him longe for to thinke  
on that sinne; / and his reson  
aperceyveth it wel, that it is sinne  
agayns the lawe of god, and yet his  
reson refreyneth nat his foul delyt or

talent, though he se wel apertly that it is agayns the reverence of god; although his reson ne consente nocht to doon that sinne in dede,/ yet seyn somme doctours that swich delyt that dwelleth<sup>295</sup> longe, it is ful perilous, al be it nevere so lite./ And also a man sholde sorwe, namely, for al that evere he hath desired agayn the lawe of god with perfit consentinge of his reson; for ther-of is no doute, that it is deedly sinne in consentinge./ For certes, ther is no deedly sinne, that it nas first in mannes thought, and after that in his delyt; and so forth in-to consentinge and in-to dede./ Wherfore I seye, that many men ne repenten hem nevere of swiche thoghtes and delytes, ne nevere shryven hem of it, but only of the dede of grete sinnes outward./ Wherfore I seye, that swiche wikked delytes and wikked thoghtes been subtile bigyleres of hem that shullen be dampned./ More-over, man oghte to sorwe for hise wikkede wordes as wel as for hise wikkede dedes; for certes, the repentance of a singuler sinne, and nat repente of alle hise othere sinnes, or elles repenten him of alle<sup>300</sup> hise othere sinnes, and nat of a singuler sinne, may nat availle./ For certes, god almighty is al good; and ther-fore he foryeveth al, or elles right nocht./ And heer-of seith seint Augustin: 'I woot certainly/ that god is enemy to everich sinnere'; and how thanne? He that observeth o sinne, shal he have foryifnesse of the remenaunt of hise othere sinnes? Nay. / And forther-over, contricion sholde be wonder sorweful and anguissous, and therfore yeveth him god pleynty his mercy; and therfore, whan my soule was anguissous with-inne me, I hadde remembrance of god that

my preyere mighte come to him./  
Forther-over, contricion moste be  
continuel, and that man have  
stedefast purpos to shryven him,  
and for to amenden him of his lyf. /  
For soothly, whyl<sup>305</sup> contricion  
lasteth, man may evere have hope  
of foryifnesse; and of this comth  
hate of sinne, that destroyeth sinne  
bothe in himself, and eek in other  
folk, at his power./ For which seith  
David: 'ye that loven god hateth  
wikkednesse.' For trusteth wel, to  
love god is for to love that he  
loveth, and hate that he hateth./

§ 15. The laste thing that man shal  
understonde in contricion is this;  
wher-of avayleth contricion. I seye,  
that som tyme contricion delivereth  
a man fro sinne; / of which that  
David seith: 'I seye,' quod David,  
that is to seyn, 'I purposed fermely  
to shryve me; and thou, Lord,  
relesedest my sinne.' / And right so  
as contricion availleth noght, with-  
outen sad purpos of shrifte, if man  
have oportunittee, right so litel  
worth is shrifte or satisfaccion with-  
outen contricion./ And more-over,  
contricion destroyeth<sup>310</sup> the prison  
of helle, and maketh wayk and feble  
alle the strengthes of the develes,  
and restoreth the yiftes of the holy  
goost and of alle gode vertues; / and  
it clenseth the soule of sinne, and  
delivereth the soule fro the peyne of  
helle, and fro the companye of the  
devel, and fro the servage of sinne,  
and restoreth it to alle godes  
esprituels, and to the companye and  
communion of holy chirche./ And  
forther-over, it maketh him that  
whylom was sone of ire to be sone  
of grace; and alle these thinges been  
preved by holy writ. / And therefore,  
he that wolde sette his entente to  
these thinges, he were ful wys; for

soothly, he ne sholde nat thanne in  
al his lyf have corage to sinne, but  
yeven his body and al his herte to  
the service of Iesu Crist, and ther-of  
doon him homage. / For soothly,  
oure swete lord Iesu Crist hath  
spared us so debonairly in our  
folies, that if he ne hadde pitee of  
mannes<sup>315</sup> soule, a sory song we  
mighten alle singe./

Explicit prima pars Penitentie; et  
sequitur secunda pars eiusdem.

§ 16. The seconde partie of  
Penitence is Confession, that is  
signe of contricion./ Now shul ye  
understonde what is Confession,  
and whether it oghte nedes be doon  
or noon, and whiche thinges been  
covenable to verray Confession. /

§ 17. First shaltow understonde that  
Confession is verray shewing of  
sinnes to the preest;/ this is to seyn  
'verray,' for he moste confessen  
him of alle the condiciouns that  
bilongen to his sinne, as ferforth as  
he can./ Al moot be seyde, and no  
thing excused ne hid ne forwrapped,  
and noight avaunte him of<sup>320</sup> his  
gode werkes. / And forther over, it  
is necessarie to understonde  
whennes that sinnes springen, and  
how they encresen, and whiche they  
been. /

§ 18. Of the springinge of sinnes  
seith seint Paul in this wise: that  
'right as by a man sinne entred first  
in-to this world, and thurgh that  
sinne deeth, right so thilke deeth  
entred in-to alle men that  
sinneden.'/ And this man was  
Adam, by whom sinne entred in-to  
this world whan he brak the  
comaundement of god. / And  
therefore, he that first was so mighty

that he sholde not have dyed, bicam swich oon that he moste nedes dye, whether he wolde or noon; and all his progenie in this world that in thilke man sinneden. / Loke that in thestaat of innocence, when Adam and Eve naked weren in paradys, and no-thing ne hadden shame<sup>325</sup> of hir nakednesse, / how that the serpent, that was most wyly of alle othere bestes that god hadde maked, seyde to the womman: ‘why comaunded god to yow, ye sholde nat eten of every tree in paradys?’ / The womman answerde: ‘of the fruit,’ quod she, ‘of the trees in paradys we feden us; but soothly, of the fruit of the tree that is in the middel of paradys, god forbad us for to ete, ne nat touchen it, lest peraventure we should dyen.’ / The serpent seyde to the womman: ‘nay, nay, ye shul nat dyen of deeth; for sothe, god woot, that what day that ye eten ther-of, youre eyen shul opene, and ye shul been as goddes, knowinge good and harm.’ / The womman thanne saugh that the tree was good to feding, and fair to the eyen, and delytable to the sighte; she tok of the fruit of the tree, and eet it, and yaf to hir housbonde, and he eet; and anoon the eyen of hem bothe openeden. / And whan that they knewe that they were naked, they sowed of fige-leves a manere of breches to hiden hir membres. / There<sup>330</sup> may ye seen that deedly sinne hath first suggestion of the feend, as sheweth here by the naddre; and afterward, the delyt of the flesh, as sheweth here by Eve; and after that, the consentinge of resoun, as sheweth here by Adam. / For trust wel, though so were that the feend tempted Eve, that is to seyn the flesh, and the flesh hadde delyt in the beautee of the fruit defended,

yet certes, til that resoun, that is to seyn, Adam, consented to the etinge of the fruit, yet stood he in thestaat of innocence./ Of thilke Adam toke we thilke sinne original; for of him fleshly descended be we alle, and engendred of vile and corrupt matere./ And whan the soule is put in our body, right anon is contract original sinne; and that, that was erst but only peyne of concupiscence, is afterward bothe peyne and sinne./ And therefore be we alle born sonnes of wratthe and of dampnacion perdurable, if it nere baptesme that we receyven, which binimeth us the culpe; but for sothe, the peyne dwelleth with us, as to temptacion, which peyne highte concupiscence. / Whan it is wrongfully<sup>335</sup> disposed or ordeyned in man, it maketh him coveite, by coveitise of flesh, fleshly sinne, by sighte of hise eyen as to erthely thinges, and coveitise of hynesse by pryde of herte./

§ 19. Now as for to speken of the firste coveitise, that is, concupiscence after the lawe of oure membres, that weren lawefulliche y-maked and by rightful Iugement of god;/ I seye, for-as-muche as man is nat obeisaunt to god, that is his lord, therefore is the flesh to him disobeisaunt thurgh concupiscence, which yet is cleped norissinge of sinne and occasion of sinne. / Therefore, al the whyle that a man hath in him the peyne of concupiscence, it is impossible but he be tempted somtyme, and moeved in his flesh to sinne./ And this thing may nat faille as longe as he liveth; it may wel wexe feble and faille, by vertu of baptesme and by the grace of god thurgh penitence; /

but fully<sup>340</sup> ne shal it nevere  
quenche, that he ne shal som tyme  
be moeved in him-self, but-if he  
were al refreyded by siknesse, or by  
malefice of sorcerie or colde  
drinkes./ For lo, what seith seint  
Paul: ‘the flesh coveiteth agayn the  
spirit, and the spirit agayn the flesh;  
they been so contrarie and so  
stryven, that a man may nat alwey  
doon as he wolde.’/ The same seint  
Paul, after his grete penaunce in  
water and in lond (in water by night  
and by day, in greet peril and in  
greet peyne, in lond, in famine, in  
thurst, in cold and clothlees, and  
ones stoned almost to the deeth)/  
yet seyde he: ‘allas! I, caytif man,  
who shal delivere me fro the  
prisoun of my caytif body?’/ And  
seint Ierome, when he longe tyme  
hadde woned in desert, where-as he  
hadde no companye but of wilde  
bestes, where-as he ne hadde no  
mete but herbes and water to his  
drinke, ne no bed but the naked  
erthe, for which his flesh was blak  
as an Ethiopen for hete and ny<sup>345</sup>  
destroyed for cold, / yet seyde he:  
that ‘the brenninge of lecherie  
boiled in al his body.’/ Wherfore I  
woot wel sikerly, that they been  
deceyved that seyn, that they ne be  
nat tempted in hir body./ Witnessse  
on Seint Iame the Apostel, that  
seith: that ‘every wight is tempted  
in his owen concupiscence’; that is  
to seyn, that everich of us hath  
materie and occasion to be tempted  
of the norissinge of sinne that is in  
his body./ And therefore seith Seint  
Iohn the Evaungelist: ‘if that we  
seyn that we beth with-oute sinne,  
we deceyve us-selve, and trouthe is  
nat in us.’/

§ 20. Now shal ye understonde in  
what manere that sinne wexeth or

encreseth in man. The firste thing is  
thilke norissinge<sup>350</sup> of sinne, of  
which I spak biforn, thilke fleshly  
concupiscence. / And after that  
comth the subieccion of the devel,  
this is to seyn, the develes bely,  
with which he bloweth in man the  
fyr of fleshly concupiscence./ And  
after that, a man bithinketh him  
whether he wol doon, or no, thilke  
thing to which he is tempted. / And  
thanne, if that a man withstonde and  
weyve the firste entysinge of his  
flesh and of the feend, thanne is it  
no sinne; and if it so be that he do  
nat so, thanne feleth he anon a  
flambe of delyt./ And thanne is it  
good to be war, and kepen him wel,  
or elles he wol falle anon in-to  
consentinge of sinne; and thanne  
wol he do it, if he may have tyme  
and place./ And of this matere seith  
Moyses by the devel in this manere:  
'the feend seith, I wole chace and  
pursue the man by wikked  
suggestion, and I wole hente him by  
moevynge or stiringe of sinne. I wol  
departe my pryse or my praye by  
deliberacion, and my lust shal been  
accompliced in delyt; I wol drawe  
my swerd in consentinge:'<sup>355</sup> for  
certes, right as a swerd departeth a  
thing in two peces, right so  
consentinge departeth god fro man:  
'and thanne wol I sleen him with  
myn hand in dede of sinne'; thus  
seith the feend./ For certes, thanne  
is a man al deed in soule. And thus  
is sinne accompliced by temptacion,  
by delyt, and by consentinge; and  
thanne is the sin cleped actual. /

§ 21. For sothe, sinne is in two  
maneres; outhur it is venial, or  
deedly sinne. Soothly, whan man  
loveth any creature more than Iesu  
Crist oure creatour, thanne is it  
deedly sinne. And venial synne is it,



if man love Iesu Crist lasse than  
him oghte. / For sothe, the dede of  
this venial sinne is ful perilous; for  
it amenueth the love that men  
sholde han to god more and more./  
And therefore, if a man charge him-  
self with manye swiche venial  
sinnes, certes, but-if so be that he  
som tyme discharge him of hem by  
shrifte, they mowe ful lightly  
amenueth in him al the love that he  
hath to Iesu Crist;/ and in this wise  
skippeth venial in-to<sup>360</sup> deedly  
sinne. For certes, the more that a  
man chargeth his soule with venial  
sinnes, the more is he enclined to  
fallen in-to deedly sinne. / And  
therefore, lat us nat be negligent to  
deschargin us of venial sinnes. For  
the proverbe seith: that manye  
smale maken a greet./ And herkne  
this ensample. A greet wawe of the  
see comth som-tyme with so greet a  
violence that it drencheth the ship.  
And the same harm doth som-tyme  
the smale dropes of water, that  
entren thurgh a litel crevace in-to  
the thurrok, and in-to the botme of  
the ship, if men be so negligent that  
they ne discharge hem nat by tyme.  
/ And therefore, al-though ther be a  
difference bitwixe these two causes  
of drenchinge, algates the ship is  
dreynt./ Right so fareth it somtyme  
of deedly sinne, and of anoyouse  
veniale sinnes, whan they multiplie  
in a man so greetly, that thilke  
worldly thinges that he loveth,  
thurgh whiche he sinneth venially,  
is as greet in his herte as the love of  
god, or more./ And therefore, the  
love of every thing, that is nat biset  
in<sup>365</sup> god ne doon principally for  
goddes sake, al-though that a man  
love it lasse than god, yet is it venial  
sinne;/ and deedly sinne, whan the  
love of any thing weyeth in the  
herte of man as muchel as the love

of god, or more. / ‘Deedly sinne,’ as  
seith seint Augustin, ‘is, whan a  
man turneth his herte fro god, which  
that is verray sovereyn bountee, that  
may nat chaunge, and yeveth his  
herte to thing that may chaunge and  
flitte’;/ and certes, that is every  
thing, save god of hevene. For sooth  
is, that if a man yeve his love, the  
which that he oweth al to god with  
al his herte, un-to a creature, certes,  
as mucche of his love as he yeveth to  
thilke creature, so mucche he  
bireveth fro god; / and therefore doth  
he sinne. For he, that is dettour to  
god, ne yeldeth nat to god al his  
dette,<sup>370</sup> that is to seyn, al the love  
of his herte./

§ 22. Now sith man understondeth  
generally, which is venial sinne,  
thanne is it covenable to tellen  
specially of sinnes whiche that  
many a man per-aventure ne demeth  
hem nat sinnes, and ne shryveth him  
nat of the same thinges; and yet  
nathelees they been sinnes. /  
Soothly, as thise clerkes wryten,  
this is to seyn, that at every tyme  
that a man eteth or drinketh more  
than suffyseth to the sustenance of  
his body, in certein he dooth sinne./  
And eek whan he speketh more than  
nedeth, it is sinne. Eke whan he  
herkneth nat benignely the  
compleint of the povre./ Eke whan  
he is in hele of body and wol nat  
faste, whan othere folk faste,  
withouten cause resonable. Eke  
whan he slepeth more than nedeth,  
or whan he comth by thilke  
enchesoun to late to chirche, or to  
othere werkes of charite. / Eke  
whan he useth his wyf, withouten  
sovereyn desyr of engendrure, to the  
honour of god, or for<sup>375</sup> the entente  
to yelde to his wyf the dette of his  
body./ Eke whan he wol nat visite

the sike and the prisoner, if he may.  
Eke if he love wyf or child, or other  
worldly thing, more than resoun  
requyreth. Eke if he flatere or  
blandishe more than him oghte for  
any necessitee. / Eke if he amenuse  
or withdrawe the almesse of the  
povre. Eke if he apparailleth his  
mete more deliciously than nede is,  
or ete it to hastily by likerousnesse.  
/ Eke if he tale vanitees at chirche or  
at goddes service, or that he be a  
talker of ydel wordes of folye or of  
vileinye; for he shal yelden  
acountes of it at the day of dome. /  
Eke whan he biheteth or assureth to  
do thinges that he may nat  
perfourne. Eke whan that he, by  
lightnesse or folie, misseyeth or  
scorneth his neighebore. / Eke whan  
he hath any wikked suspencion of  
thing, ther he ne woot of it no  
soothfastnesse. / These thinges and  
mo with-oute nombre been  
sinnes, 380 as seith seint Augustin. /

Now shal men understonde, that al-  
be-it so that noon erthely man may  
eschue alle venial sinnes, yet may  
he refreyne him by the brenninge  
love that he hath to oure lord Iesu  
Crist, and by preyeres and  
confession and othere gode werkes,  
so that it shal but litel greve. / For,  
as seith seint Augustin: 'if a man  
love god in swiche manere, that al  
that evere he doth is in the love of  
god, and for the love of god  
verraily, for he brenneth in the love  
of god: / loke, how mucche that a  
drope of water that falleth in a  
fournes ful of fyr anoyeth or  
greveth, so mucche anoyeth a venial  
sinne un-to a man that is parfit in  
the love of Iesu Crist.' / Men may  
also refreyne venial sinne by  
receyvinge worthily of the precious  
body of Iesu Crist; / by receyving

eeke of holy water; by  
almesdede; 385 by general  
confession of *Confiteor* at masse  
and at complin; and by blessinge of  
bisshopes and of preestes, and by  
othere gode werkes. /

Explicit secunda pars Penitentie.

Sequitur de Septem Peccatis  
Mortalibus et eorum dependenciis  
circumstanciis et speciebus.

§ 23. Now is it bihovely thing to  
telle whiche been the deedly sinnes,  
this is to seyn, chieftaines of sinnes;  
alle they renne in o lees, but in  
diverse maneres. Now been they  
cleped chieftaines for-as-muche as  
they been chief, and springers of  
alle othere sinnes. / Of the roote of  
thise sevene sinnes thanne is Pryde,  
the general rote of alle harmes; for  
of this rote springen certein  
braunches, as Ire, Envye, Accidie or  
Slewthe, Avarice or Coveitise (to  
commune understandinge),  
Glotonye, and Lecherye. / And  
everich of thise chief sinnes hath  
hise braunches and hise twigges, as  
shal be declared in hir chapitres  
folwinge. /

De Superbia.

§ 24. And thogh so be that no man  
can outrely telle the nombre of the  
twigges and of the harmes that  
cometh of Pryde, yet 390 wol I  
shewe a partie of hem, as ye shul  
understonde. / Ther is Inobedience,  
Avauntinge, Ipocrisie, Despyt,  
Arrogance, Impudence, Swellinge  
of herte, Insolence, Elacion,  
Impacience, Strif, Contumacie,  
Presumpcion, Irreverence,  
Pertinacie, Veyne Glorie; and many  
another twig that I can nat declare. /

Inobedient, is he that disobeyeth for despyt to the comandements of god and to hise sovereyns, and to his goostly fader./ Avauntour, is he that bosteth of the harm or of the bountee that he hath doon./ Ipocrite, is he that hydeth to shewe him swiche as he is, and sheweth him swiche as he noght is./ Despitous, is he that hath desdeyn of his neighebores, that is to seyn, of his evene-cristene, or<sup>395</sup> hath despyt to doon that him oghte to do. / Arrogant, is he that thinketh that he hath thilke bountees in him that he hath noght, or weneth that he sholde have hem by hise desertes; or elles he demeth that he be that he nis nat./ Impudent, is he that for his pride hath no shame of hise sinnes./ Swellinge of herte, is whan a man reioyseth him of harm that he hath doon./ Insolent, is he that despyseth in his Iugement alle othere folk as to regard of his value, and of his conning, and of his speking, and of his bering./ Elacion, is whan he ne may neither suffire to have maister ne<sup>400</sup> felawe./ Impacient, is he that wol nat been y-taught ne undernome of his vyce, and by stryf werreieth trouthe witingly, and deffendeth his folye. / *Contumax*, is he that thurgh his indignacion is agayns everich auctoritee or power of hem that been hise sovereyns./ Presumpcion, is whan a man undertaketh an empryse that him oghte nat do, or elles that he may nat do; and that is called Surquidrie. Irreverence, is whan men do nat honour thereas hem oghte to doon, and waiten to be revered. / Pertinacie, is whan man deffendeth his folye, and trusteth to muchel in his owene wit. / Veyne glorie, is for to have pompe and delyt in his temporel<sup>405</sup> hynesse, and glorifie

him in this worldly estaat. /  
Iangling, is whan men speken to  
muche biforn folk, and clappen as a  
mille, and taken no kepe what they  
seye./

§ 25. And yet is ther a privee spece  
of Pryde, that waiteth first to be  
salewed er he wole salewe, al be he  
lasse worth than that other is, per-  
aventure; and eek he waiteth or  
desyreth to sitte, or elles to goon  
above him in the wey, or kisse pax,  
or been encensed, or goon to offring  
biforn his neighebores, and swiche  
semblable thinges; agayns his  
duetee, per-aventure, but that he  
hath his herte and his entente in  
swich a proud desyr to be  
magnifyed and honoured biforn the  
people./

§ 26. Now been ther two maneres of  
Pryde; that oon of hem is with-inne  
the herte of man, and that other is  
with-oute. / Of whiche soothly thise  
forseyde thinges, and mo than I  
have seyde, apertenen to pryde that is  
in the herte of man; and that othere  
speces of pryde been with-oute. /  
But natheles that oon of thise  
speces of pryde is signe of that  
other, right as the gaye leefsel atte  
taverne is signe of the wyn that is in  
the celer. / And this is in manye  
thinges: as in speche and  
contenance, and in outrageous  
array of clothing; / for certes, if ther  
ne hadde be no sinne in clothing,  
Crist wolde nat have noted and  
spoken of the clothing of thilke  
riche man in the gospel. / And, as  
seith Seint Gregorie, that precious  
clothing is coupable for the derthe  
of it, and for his softenesse, and for  
his strangenesse and degysinesse,  
and for the superfluitee, or for the  
inordinat scantnesse of it. / Allas!

may men nat seen, as in oure dayes,  
the sinful costlewe array of  
clothinge, and namely in to muche  
superfluitee, or elles in to desordinat  
scantnesse?/415

§ 27. As to the firste sinne, that is in  
superfluitee of clothinge, which that  
maketh it so dere, to harm of the  
peple; / nat only the cost of  
embroudinge, the degyse  
endentinge or barringe, oundinge,  
palinge, windinge, or bendinge, and  
semblable wast of clooth in vanitee;  
/ but ther is also costlewe furringe  
in hir gounes, so muche  
pounsoninge of chisels to maken  
holes, so muche dagginge of sheres;  
/ forth-with the superfluitee in  
lengthe of the forseide gounes,  
trailinge in the dong and in the  
myre, on horse and eek on fote, as  
wel of man as of womman, that al  
thilke trailing is verrailly as in effect  
wasted, consumed, thredbare, and  
roten with donge, rather than it is  
yeven to the povre; to greet damage  
of the forseide povre folk. / And  
that in sondry wyse: this is to seyn,  
that the more that clooth is wasted,  
the more it<sup>420</sup> costeth to the peple  
for the scantnesse;/ and forther-  
over, if so be that they wolde yeven  
swich pounsoned and dagged  
clothing to the povre folk, it is nat  
convenient to were for hir estaat, ne  
suffisant to bete hir necessitee, to  
kepe hem fro the distemperance of  
the firmament. / Upon that other  
syde, to speken of the horrible  
disordinat scantnesse of clothing, as  
been these cutted sloppes or  
hainselins, that thurgh hir  
shortnesse ne covere nat the  
shameful membres of man, to  
wikked entente. / Allas! somme of  
hem shewen the boce of hir shap,  
and the horrible swollen membres,

that semeth lyk the maladie of  
hirnia, in the wrappinge of hir  
hoses; / and eek the buttokes of hem  
faren as it were the hindre part of a  
she-ape in the fulle of the mone./  
And more-over, the wrecched  
swollen membres that they shewe  
thurgh the degysinge, in departinge  
of hir hoses in whyt and reed,  
semeth that half hir<sup>425</sup> shameful  
privee membres weren flayn. / And  
if so be that they departen hire  
hoses in othere colours, as is whyt  
and blak, or whyt and blew, or blak  
and reed, and so forth; / thanne  
semeth it, as by variance of colour,  
that half the partie of hir privee  
membres were corrupt by the fyr of  
seint Antony, or by cancre, or by  
other swich meschaunce./ Of the  
hindre part of hir buttokes, it is ful  
horrible for to see. For certes, in  
that partie of hir body ther-as they  
purgen hir stinkinge ordure, / that  
foule partie shewe they to the peple  
proudly in despyt of honestetee, the  
which honestetee that Iesu Crist and  
hise freendes observede to shewen  
in hir lyve. / Now as of the  
outrageous array of wommen, god  
woot, that though the visages of  
somme of hem seme ful chaast and  
debonaire,<sup>430</sup> yet notifie they in hir  
array of atyr likerousnesse and  
pryde. / I sey nat that honestetee in  
clothinge of man or womman is  
uncovenable, but certes the  
superfluitee or disordinat scantitee  
of clothinge is reprevable./ Also the  
sinne of aornement or of apparaille  
is in thinges that apertenen to  
rydinge, as in to manye delicat  
horses that been holden for delyt,  
that been so faire, fatte, and  
costlewe; / and also to many a  
vicious knave that is sustened by  
cause of hem; in to curious harneys,  
as in sadeles, in crouperes, peytrels,



and brydles covered with precious clothing and riche, barres and plates of gold and of silver./ For which god seith by Zakarie the prophete, ‘I wol confounde the ryderes of swiche horses.’/ This folk taken litel reward of the rydinge of goddes sone of hevene, and of his harneys whan he rood up-on the asse, and ne hadde noon other harneys but the povre clothes of hise disciples; ne we ne rede nat that evere he rood on other beest./ I speke this for the sinne of superfluitee, and nat for<sup>435</sup> reasonable honestete, whan reson it requyreth./ And forther, certes pryde is greetly notified in holdinge of greet meinee, whan they be of litel profit or of right no profit./ And namely, whan that meinee is felonous and damageous to the peple, by hardinesse of heigh lordshipe or by wey of offices./ For certes, swiche lordes sellen thanne hir lordshipe to the devel of helle, whanne they sustenen the wikkednesse of hir meinee./ Or elles whan this folk of lowe degree, as thilke that holden hostelries, sustenen the thefte of hir hostilers, and that is in many manere of deceites. /<sup>440</sup> Thilke manere of folk been the flyes that folwen the hony, or elles the houndes that folwen the careyne. Swiche forseyde folk stranglen spiritually hir lordshipes;/ for which thus seith David the prophete, ‘wikked deeth mote come up-on thilke lordshipes, and god yeve that they mote descenden in-to helle al doun; for in hir houses been iniquitees and shrewednesses,’ and nat god of hevene. / And certes, but-if they doon amendement, right as god yaf his benison to Laban by the service of Iacob, and to Pharao by the service of Ioseph, right so god wol yeve his malison to swiche

lordshipes as sustenen the  
wikkednesse of hir servaunts, but-if  
they come to amendement. / Pryde  
of the table appereth eek ful ofte;  
for certes, riche men been cleped to  
festes, and povre folk been put  
away and rebuked./ Also in excesse  
of diverse metes and drinkes; and  
namely, swiche manere bake metes  
and dish-metes, brenninge of wilde  
fyr, and peynted and castelled with  
papir, and semblable wast; so that it  
is abusyon for to thinke./445 And  
eek in to greet preciousnesse of  
vessel and curiositee of minstralcie,  
by whiche a man is stired the more  
to delyces of luxurie,/ if so be that  
he sette his herte the lasse up-on  
oure lord Iesu Crist, certein it is a  
sinne; and certainly the delyces  
mighte been so grete in this caas,  
that man mighte lightly falle by  
hem in-to deedly sinne./ The  
especes that sourden of pryde,  
soothly whan they sourden of  
malice ymaged, avysed, and  
forncast, or elles of usage, been  
deedly synnes, it is no doute. / And  
whan they sourden by freletee  
unavysed sodeinly, and sodeinly  
withdrawen ayein, al been they  
grevouse sinnes, I gesse that they ne  
been nat deedly. / Now mighte men  
axe wher-of that Pryde sourdeth and  
springeth, and I seye: somtyme it  
springeth of the goodes of nature,  
and som-tyme of the goodes of  
fortune, and som-tyme of450 the  
goodes of grace./ Certes, the goodes  
of nature stonden outhur in goodes  
of body or in goodes of soule./  
Certes, goodes of body been hele of  
body, as strengthe, delivernesse,  
beautee, gentrye, franchise. /  
Goodes of nature of the soule been  
good wit, sharp understondyng,  
subtil engin, vertu naturel, good  
memorie. / Goodes of fortune been

richesses, highe degrees of  
lordshipes, preisinges of the peple. /  
Goodes of grace been science,  
power to suffre spirituel travaille,  
benignitee, vertuous  
contemplacion,455 withstandinge  
of temptacion, and semblable  
thinges. / Of whiche forseide  
goodes, certes it is a ful greet folye  
a man to pryden him in any of hem  
alle./ Now as for to speken of  
goodes of nature, god woot that  
som-tyme we han hem in nature as  
muche to oure damage as to oure  
profit./ As, for to speken of hele of  
body; certes it passeth ful lightly,  
and eek it is ful ofte encheson of the  
siknesse of oure soule; for god  
woot, the flesh is a ful greet enemy  
to the soule: and therfore, the more  
that the body is hool, the more be  
we in peril to falle./ Eke for to  
pryde him in his strengthe of body,  
it is an heigh folye; for certes, the  
flesh coveiteth agayn the spirit, and  
ay the more strong that the flesh is,  
the sorier may the soule be:/ and,  
over al this, strengthe of body and  
worldly hardinesse causeth ful ofte  
many a man to peril and460  
meschaunce. / Eek for to pryde him  
of his gentrye is ful greet folye; for  
ofte tyme the gentrye of the body  
binimeth the gentrye of the soule;  
and eek we ben alle of o fader and  
of o moder; and alle we been of o  
nature roten and corrupt, both riche  
and povre./ For sothe, o manere  
gentrye is for to preise, that  
apparailleth mannes corage with  
vertues and moralitees, and maketh  
him Cristes child./ For truste wel,  
that over what man sinne hath  
maistrie, he is a verray cherl to  
sinne./

§ 28. Now been ther generale signes  
of gentillesse; as eschewing of vyce

and ribaudye and servage of sinne,  
in word, in werk, and contenance;/  
and usinge vertu, curteisye, and  
clennesse, and to be liberal, that is  
to seyn, large by mesure; for thilke  
that passeth mesure is folye and  
sinne./ Another is, to remembre  
him<sup>465</sup> of bountee that he of other  
folk hath receyved./ Another is, to  
be benigne to hise goode subgetis;  
wherfore, as seith Senek, ‘ther is  
no-thing more covenable to a man  
of heigh estaat than debonairetee  
and pitee. / And therefore these flies  
that men clepeth bees, whan they  
maken hir king, they chesen oon  
that hath no prikke wherwith he  
may stinge.’/ Another is, a man to  
have a noble herte and a diligent, to  
attayne to heighe vertuose thinges.  
/ Now certes, a man to pryde him in  
the goodes of grace is eek an  
outrageous folye; for thilke yiftes of  
grace that sholde have turned him to  
goodnesse and to medicine, turneth  
him to venim and to confusion, as  
seith seint Gregorie. / Certes also,  
who-so<sup>470</sup> prydeth him in the  
goodes of fortune, he is a ful greet  
fool; for som-tyme is a man a greet  
lord by the morwe, that is a caitif  
and a wrecche er it be night:/ and  
somtyme the richesse of a man is  
cause of his deeth; somtyme the  
delyces of a man is cause of the  
grevous maladye thurgh which he  
dyeth./ Certes, the commendacion  
of the peple is somtyme ful fals and  
ful brotel for to triste; this day they  
preyse, tomorwe they blame./ God  
woot, desyr to have commendacion  
of the peple hath caused deeth to  
many a bisy man./

Remedium contra peccatum  
Superbie.

§ 29. Now sith that so is, that ye han understonde what is pryde, and whiche been the speses of it, and whennes pride sourdeth and springeth;/ now shul ye understonde which is the<sup>475</sup> remedie agayns the sinne of pryde, and that is, humilitee or mekenesse./ That is a vertu, thurgh which a man hath verray knoweleche of him-self, and holdeth of him-self no prys ne deyntee as in regard of hise desertes, consideringe evere his freletee./ Now been ther three maneres of humilitee; as humilitee in herte, and another humilitee in his mouth; the thridde in hise werkes./ The humilitee in herte is in foure maneres: that oon is, whan a man holdeth him-self as nocht worth biforn god of hevene. Another is, whan he ne despyseth noon other man./ The thridde is, whan he rekketh nat thogh men holde him nocht worth.<sup>480</sup> The ferthe is, whan he nis nat sory of his humiliacion./ Also, the humilitee of mouth is in foure thinges: in attempree speche, and in humblesse of speche, and whan he biknoweth with his owene mouth that he is swich as him thinketh that he is in his herte. Another is, whan he preiseth the bountee of another man, and nothing ther-of amenusethe./ Humilitee eek in werkes is in foure maneres: the firste is, whan he putteth othere men biforn him. The seconde is, to chese the loweste place over-al. The thridde is, gladly to assente to good conseil. / The ferthe is, to stonde gladly to the award of hise sovereyns, or of him that is in hyer degree; certein, this is a greet werk of humilitee./

Sequitur de Inuidia.

§ 30. After Pryde wol I speken of the foule sinne of Envye, which is, as by the word of the philosophre, sorwe of other mannes prosperitee; and after the word of seint Augustin, it is sorwe of other mannes wele, and Ioye of othere mennes harm./ This foule sinne is platly agayns the holy goost. Al-be-it so that every sinne is agayns the holy goost, yet nathelees, for as muche as bountee aperteneth proprely to the holy goost, and Envye comth proprely of malice, therefore it is proprely agayn the bountee of the holy<sup>485</sup> goost. / Now hath malice two spesces, that is to seyn, hardnesse of herte in wikkednesse, or elles the flesh of man is so blind, that he considereth nat that he is in sinne, or rekketh nat that he is in sinne; which is the hardnesse of the devel. / That other spece of malice is, whan a man werreyeth trouthe, whan he woot that it is trouthe. And eek, whan he werreyeth the grace that god hath yeve to his neighebore; and al this is by Envye. / Certes, thanne is Envye the worste sinne that is. For soothly, alle othere sinnes been som-tyme only agayns o special vertu;/ but certes, Envye is agayns alle vertues and agayns alle goodnesses; for it is sory of alle the bountees of his neighebore; and in this manere it is divers from alle othere sinnes./ For wel unnethe is ther any sinne that it ne hath som delyt in itself, save only Envye, that evere hath in itself anguish and sorwe./ The spesces of Envye<sup>490</sup> been thise: ther is first, sorwe of other mannes goodnesse and of his prosperitee; and prosperitee is kindly matere of Ioye; thanne is Envye a sinne agayns kinde./ The seconde spece of Envye is Ioye of other mannes

harm; and that is proprely lyk to the  
devel, that evere reioyseth him of  
mannes harm./ Of these two spes  
comth bakbyting; and this sinne of  
bakbyting or detraccion hath  
certeine spes, as thus. Som man  
preiseth his neighebore by a wikke  
entente;/ for he maketh alwey a  
wikked knotte atte laste ende.  
Alwey he maketh a ‘but’ atte laste  
ende, that is digne of more blame,  
than worth is al the preisinge./ The  
seconde spece is, that if a man be  
good and dooth or seith a thing to  
good entente, the bakbyter wol  
turne all thilke goodnesse up-so-  
doun to his shrewed entente./ The  
thridde is, to amenuse the bountee  
of<sup>495</sup> his neighebore./ The fourthe  
spece of bakbyting is this; that if  
men speke goodnesse of a man,  
thanne wol the bakbyter seyn,  
‘parfey, swich a man is yet bet than  
he’; in dispreisinge of him that men  
preise. / The fifte spece is this; for  
to consente gladly and herkne  
gladly to the harm that men speke  
of other folk. This sinne is ful greet,  
and ay encreseth after the wikked  
entente of the bakbyter./ After  
bakbyting cometh grucching or  
murmuracion; and somtyme it  
springeth of inpacience agayns god,  
and somtyme agayns man./ Agayns  
god it is, whan a man gruccheth  
agayn the peynes of helle, or agayns  
poverte, or los of catel, or agayn  
reyn or tempest; or elles gruccheth  
that shrewes han prosperitee, or  
elles for that goode men han  
adversitee. / And alle these  
thinges<sup>500</sup> sholde men suffre  
patiently, for they comen by the  
rightful Iugement and ordinance of  
god./ Som-tyme comth grucching of  
avarice; as Iudas grucched agayns  
the Magdaleyne, whan she enoynte  
the heved of oure lord Iesu Crist

with hir precious oynement. / This maner murmure is swich as whan man gruccheth of goodnesse that him-self dooth, or that other folk doon of hir owene catel./ Som-tyme comth murmure of pryde; as whan Simon the Pharisee grucched agayn the Magdaleyne, whan she approached to Iesu Crist, and weep at his feet for his sinnes./ And somtyme grucching sourdeth of Envye; whan men discovereth a mannes harm that was privee, or bereth him on hond<sup>505</sup> thing that is fals./ Murmure eek is ofte amonges servaunts, that grucchen whan hir sovereyns bidden hem doon levelful thinges; / and, for-as-muche as they dar nat openly withseye the comaundements of hir sovereyns, yet wol they seyn harm, and grucche, and murmure prively for verray despyt; / whiche wordes men clepen the develes *Pater-noster*, though so be that the devel ne hadde nevere *Pater-noster*, but that lewed folk yeven it swich a name./ Som tyme grucching comth of ire or prive hate, that norisseth rancour in herte, as afterward I shal declare./ Thanne cometh eek bitternesse of herte; thurgh which bitternesse every good dede<sup>510</sup> of his neighebor semeth to him bitter and unsavory./ Thanne cometh discord, that unbindeth alle manere of frendshipe. Thanne comth scorninge, as whan a man seketh occasioun to anoyen his neighebor, al do he never so weel. / Thanne comth accusinge, as whan man seketh occasion to anoyen his neighebor, which that is lyk to the craft of the devel, that waiteth bothe night and day to accusen us alle./ Thanne comth malignitee, thurgh which a man anoyeth his neighebor prively if he may;/ and if he noght



may, algate his wikked wil ne shal  
nat wante, as for to brennen his  
hous prively, or empoysone or sleen  
hise bestes, and semblable thinges./

Remedium contra peccatum Inuidie.

§ 31. Now wol I speke of the  
remedie agayns this foule sinne of  
Envy. First, is the love of god  
principal, and loving of his  
neighebor as him-self; for soothly,  
that oon ne may nat been  
withoute<sup>515</sup> that other. / And truste  
wel, that in the name of thy  
neighebor thou shalt understonde  
the name of thy brother; for certes  
alle we have o fader fleshly, and o  
moder, that is to seyn, Adam and  
Eve; and eek o fader espirituel, and  
that is god of hevene. / Thy  
neighebor artow holden for to love,  
and wilne him alle goodnesse; and  
therefore seith god, 'love thy  
neighebor as thyselfe,' that is to  
seyn, to salvacion bothe of lyf and  
of soule. / And more-over, thou  
shalt love him in word, and in  
benigne amonestinge, and  
chastysinge; and conforten him in  
hise anoyes, and preye for him with  
al thyn herte./ And in dede thou  
shalt love him in swich wyse, that  
thou shalt doon to him in charitee as  
thou woldest that it were doon to  
thyn owene persone./ And therefore,  
thou ne shalt doon him no damage  
in wikked word, ne harm in his  
body, ne in his catel, ne in his soule,  
by entysing of wikked ensample. /  
Thou shalt nat desyren his wyf, ne  
none of hise<sup>520</sup> thinges.  
Understond eek, that in the name of  
neighebor is comprehended his  
enemy. / Certes man shal loven his  
enemy by the comandement of god;  
and soothly thy frend shaltow love  
in God./ I seye, thyn enemy shaltow

love for goddes sake, by his  
comandement. For if it were reson  
that a man sholde haten his enemy,  
for sothe god nolde nat receiven us  
to his love that been hise enemys./  
Agayns three manere of wronges  
that his enemy dooth to hym, he  
shal doon three thinges, as thus. /  
Agayns hate and rancour of herte,  
he shal love him in herte. Agayns  
chyding and wikkede wordes, he  
shal preye for his enemy. And  
agayn the wikked dede of his  
enemy, he shal doon him bountee. /  
For Crist seith,<sup>525</sup> ‘loveth youre  
enemys, and preyeth for hem that  
speke yow harm; and eek for hem  
that yow chacen and pursewen, and  
doth bountee to hem that yow  
haten.’ Lo, thus comaundeth us oure  
lord Iesu Crist, to do to oure  
enemys./ For soothly, nature  
dryveth us to loven oure freendes,  
and parfey, oure enemys han more  
nede to love than oure freendes; and  
they that more nede have, certes, to  
hem shal men doon goodnesse;/ and  
certes, in thilke dede have we  
remembrance of the love of Iesu  
Crist, that deyde for hise enemys./  
And in-as-muche as thilke love is  
the more grevous to perfourne, in-  
so-muche is the more gretter the  
merite; and therfore the lovinge of  
oure enemy hath confounded the  
venim of the devel. / For right as the  
devel is disconfited by humilitee,  
right so is he wounded to the deeth  
by love of oure enemy./ Certes,<sup>530</sup>  
thanne is love the medicine that  
casteth out the venim of Envye fro  
mannes herte./ The speses of this  
pas shullen be more largely in hir  
chapitres folwinge declared. /

Sequitur de Ira.

§ 32. After Envye wol I discryven the sinne of Ire. For soothly, who-so hath envye upon his neighebor, anon he wole comunly finde him a matere of wratthe, in word or in dede, agayns him to whom he hath envye. / And as wel comth Ire of Pryde, as of Envye; for soothly, he that is proude or envious is lightly wrooth./

§ 33. This sinne of Ire, after the discryving of seint Augustin,<sup>535</sup> is wikked wil to been avenged by word or by dede./ Ire, after the philosophre, is the fervent blood of man y-quiked in his herte, thurgh which he wole harm to him that he hateth./ For certes the herte of man, by eschaufinge and moevinge of his blood, wexeth so trouble, that he is out of alle Iugement of resoun./ But ye shal understonde that Ire is in two maneres; that oon of hem is good, and that other is wikked./ The gode Ire is by Ialousye of goodnesse, thurgh which a man is wrooth with wikkednesse and agayns wikkednesse; and therfore seith a wys man, that ‘Ire is bet than pley.’/ This Ire is with debonairetee, and it is wrooth withouten bitternesse; nat wrooth agayns the man, but wrooth with the misdede of the man; as seith the prophete David,<sup>540</sup>*Irascimini et nolite peccare.*/ Now understondeth, that wikked Ire is in two maneres, that is to seyn, sodeyn Ire or hastif Ire, withouten avisement and consentinge of resoun./ The mening and the sens of this is, that the resoun of man ne consente nat to thilke sodeyn Ire; and thanne it is venial./ Another Ire is ful wikked, that comth of felonye of herte avysed and cast biforn; with wikked wil to do vengeance, and therto his

resoun consenteth; and soothly this is deedly sinne./ This Ire is so displesant to god, that it troubleth his hous and chaceth the holy goost out of mannes soule, and wasteth and destroyeth the lyknesse of god, that is to seyn, the vertu that is in mannes soule;/ and put in him the lyknesse of the devel, and binimeth the man fro god that is his rightful<sup>545</sup> lord./ This Ire is a ful greet plesaunce to the devel; for it is the develes fourneys, that is eschaufed with the fyr of helle./ For certes, right so as fyr is more mighty to destroyen erthely thinges than any other element, right so Ire is mighty to destroyen alle spirituel thinges. / Loke how that fyr of smale gledes, that been almost dede under asshen, wollen quike agayn whan they been touched with brimstoon; right so Ire wol everemo quiken agayn, whan it is touched by the pryde that is covered in mannes herte./ For certes fyr ne may nat comen out of no-thing, but-if it were first in the same thing naturelly; as fyr is drawn out of flintes with steel. / And right so as pryde is ofte tyme matere of Ire, right so is rancour norice and keper of Ire./ Ther is a maner<sup>550</sup> tree, as seith seint Isidre, that whan men maken fyr of thilke tree, and covere the coles of it with asshen, soothly the fyr of it wol lasten al a yeer or more. / And right so fareth it of rancour; whan it is ones conceyved in the hertes of som men, certein, it wol lasten peraventure from oon Estre-day unto another Estre-day, and more./ But certes, thilke man is ful fer fro the mercy of god al thilke while. /

§ 34. In this forseide develes fourneys ther forgen three shrewes:

Pryde, that ay bloweth and  
encreseth the fyr by chydinge and  
wikked wordes. / Thanne stant  
Envye, and holdeth the hote iren  
upon the herte of man with a peire  
of longe tonges of long rancour. /  
And thanne stant the sinne of  
contumelie or<sup>555</sup> stryf and cheeste,  
and batereth and forgeth by vileyns  
reprevinges. / Certes, this cursed  
sinne anoyeth bothe to the man  
him-self and eek to his neighebor.  
For soothly, almost al the harm that  
any man dooth to his neighebores  
comth of wratthe. / For certes,  
outrageous wratthe doth al that  
evere the devel him comaundeth;  
for he ne spareth neither Crist, ne  
his swete mooder. / And in his  
outrageous anger and Ire, allas!  
allas! ful many oon at that tyme  
feleth in his herte ful wikkedly,  
bothe of Crist and of alle hise  
halwes. / Is nat this a cursed vice?  
Yis, certes. Allas! it binimeth from  
man his wit and his resoun, and al  
his debonaire lyf espirituel that  
sholde kepen his soule. / Certes, it  
binimeth<sup>560</sup> eek goddes due  
lordshipe, and that is mannes soule,  
and the love of hise neighebores. It  
stryveth eek alday agayn trouthe. It  
reveth him the quiete of his herte,  
and subverteth his soule. /

§ 35. Of Ire comen these stinkinge  
engendrures: first hate, that is old  
wratthe; discord, thurgh which a  
man forsaketh his olde freend that  
he hath loved ful longe. / And  
thanne cometh werre, and every  
manere of wrong that man dooth to  
his neighebores, in body or in catel. /  
Of this cursed sinne of Ire cometh  
eek manslaughter. And understonde  
wel, that homicide, that is  
manslaughtre, is in diverse wyse.  
Som manere of homicide is

spirituel, and som is bodily. /  
Spirituel manslaughter is in six  
thinges. First, by hate; as seint Iohn  
seith, 'he that hateth his<sup>565</sup> brother  
is homicide.' / Homicide is eek by  
backbiting; of whiche backbiteres  
seith Salomon, that 'they han two  
swerdes with whiche they sleen hir  
neighebores.' For soothly, as wikke  
is to binime his good name as his  
lyf. / Homicide is eek, in yevinge  
of wikked conseil by fraude; as for  
to yeven conseil to areysen  
wrongful custumes and taillages./  
Of whiche seith Salomon, 'Leon  
rorynge and bere hongry been lyke  
to the cruel lordshipes,' in  
withholdinge or abregginge of the  
shepe (or the hyre), or of the wages  
of servaunts, or elles in usure or in  
withdrawinge of the almesse of  
povre folk. / For which the wyse  
man seith, 'fedeth him that almost  
dyeth for hunger'; for soothly, but-  
if thou fede him, thou sleest him;  
and alle these been deedly sinnes./  
Bodily manslaughter is, whan thou  
sleest him with thy tonge in other  
manere; as whan thou comandest to  
sleen a man, or elles yevest<sup>570</sup> him  
conseil to sleen a man. /  
Manslaughter in dede is in foure  
maneres. That oon is by lawe; right  
as a Iustice dampneth him that is  
coupable to the deeth. But lat the  
Iustice be war that he do it  
rightfully, and that he do it nat for  
delyt to spille blood, but for kepinge  
of rightwisenesse./ Another  
homicide is, that is doon for  
necessitee, as whan o man sleeth  
another in his defendaunt, and that  
he ne may noon otherwise escape  
from his owene deeth. / But  
certainly, if he may escape  
withouten manslaughter of his  
adversarie, and sleeth him, he doth  
sinne, and he shal bere penance as

for deedly sinne/ Eek if a man, by  
caas or aventure, shete an arwe or  
caste a stoon with which he sleeth a  
man, he is homicyde./ Eek if a  
womman by necligence overlyeth  
hir child in hir sleping, it is  
homicyde and<sup>575</sup> deedly sinne./  
Eek whan man destourbeth  
concepcion of a child, and maketh a  
womman outhere bareyne by  
drinkinge venemouse herbes, thurgh  
which she may nat conceyve, or  
sleeth a child by drinkes wilfully, or  
elles putteth certeine material  
thinges in hir secree places to slee  
the child; / or elles doth unkindely  
sinne, by which man or womman  
shedeth hir nature in manere or in  
place ther-as a child may nat be  
conceived; or elles, if a womman  
have conceyved and hurt hir-self,  
and sleeth the child, yet is it  
homicyde. / What seye we eek of  
wommen that mordren hir children  
for drede of worldly shame? Certes,  
an horrible homicyde./ Homicyde is  
eek if a man approcheth to a  
womman by desir of lecherye,  
thurgh which the child is perished,  
or elles smyteth a womman  
witingly, thurgh which she leseth  
hir child. Alle these been homicydes  
and horrible deedly sinnes./ Yet  
comen ther of Ire manye mo sinnes,  
as wel in word as in thoght and in  
dede; as he that arretteth upon god,  
or blameth god, of thing of which  
he is him-self guilty; or despyseth  
god and alle hise halwes, as doon  
these cursede hasardours in diverse  
contrees./ This cursed sinne doon  
they, whan<sup>580</sup> they felen in hir  
hertes ful wikkedly of god and of  
hise halwes./ Also, whan they treten  
unreverently the sacrement of the  
auter, thilke sinne is so greet, that  
unnethe may it been relesed, but  
that the mercy of god passeth alle

hise werkes; it is so greet and he so benigne. / Thanne comth of Ire attray angre; whan a man is sharply amonested in his shrifte to forleten his sinne,/ than wole he be angry and answeren hokerly and angrily, and deffenden or excusen his sinne by unstedfastnesse of his flesh; or elles he dide it for to holde companye with hise felawes, or elles, he seith, the fend entyced him;/ or elles he dide it for his youthe, or elles his complexioun is so corageous, that he may nat forbere; or elles it is his destinee, as he seith, unto a certein age; or elles, he seith, it cometh him of gentillesse of hise auncestres; and semblable thinges. / Alle this manere of folk so wrappen hem in hir sinnes,<sup>585</sup> that they ne wol nat delivere hem-self. For soothly, no wight that excuseth him wilfully of his sinne may nat been delivered of his sinne, til that he mekely biknoweth his sinne./ After this, thanne cometh swering, that is expres agayn the comandement of god; and this bifalleth ofte of anger and of Ire./ God seith: 'thou shalt nat take the name of thy lord god in veyn or in ydel.' Also oure lord Iesu Crist seith by the word of seint Mathew: '*Nolite iurare omnino*: / ne wol ye nat swere in alle manere; neither by hevene, for it is goddes trone; ne by erthe, for it is the bench of his feet; ne by Ierusalem, for it is the citee of a greet king; ne by thyn heed, for thou mayst nat make an heer whyt ne blak. / But seyeth by youre word, "ye, ye," and "nay, nay"; and what <sup>590</sup> that is more, it is of yvel,' seith Crist./ For Cristes sake, ne swereth nat so sinfully, in dismembringe of Crist by soule, herte, bones, and body. For certes, it semeth that ye thinke that the



cursede Iewes ne dismembred nat y-  
nough the precieuse persone of  
Crist, but ye dismembre him more./  
And if so be that the lawe compelle  
yow to swere, thanne rule yow after  
the lawe of god in youre swering, as  
seith Ieremye *quarto capitulo*,  
'*Iurabis in veritate, in iudicio et in  
iusticia*: thou shalt kepe three  
condicions; thou shalt swere in  
trouthe, in doom, and in  
rightwisnesse.' / This is to seyn,  
thou shalt swere sooth; for every  
lesinge is agayns Crist. For Crist is  
verray trouthe. And think wel this,  
that every greet swerere, nat  
compelled lawefully to swere, the  
wounde shal nat departe from his  
hous whyl he useth swich unleveful  
swering. / Thou shalt sweren eek in  
doom, whan thou art constreyned  
by thy domesman to witnessen the  
trouthe./ Eek thou shalt nat swere  
for envye ne for favour, ne for  
mede, but for rightwisnesse; for  
declaracioun of it to the worship of  
god and<sup>595</sup> helping of thyne evene-  
cristene. / And therefore, every man  
that taketh goddes name in ydel, or  
falsly swereth with his mouth, or  
elles taketh on him the name of  
Crist, to be called a Cristene man,  
and liveth agayns Cristes livinge  
and his techinge, alle they taken  
goddes name in ydel./ Loke eek  
what seint Peter seith, *Actuum  
quarto capitulo*, '*Non est aliud  
nomen sub celo*,' &c. 'Ther nis  
noon other name,' seith seint Peter,  
'under hevene, yeven to men, in  
which they mowe be saved;' that is  
to seyn, but the name of Iesu Crist. /  
Take kepe eek how that the precious  
name of Crist, as seith seint Paul *ad  
Philipenses secundo*, '*In nomine  
Iesu*, &c.: that in the name of Iesu  
every knee of hevenely creatures, or  
erthely, or of helle sholden bowe';

for it is so heigh and so worshipful,  
that the cursede feend in helle  
sholde tremblen to heren it y-  
nempned./ Thanne semeth it, that  
men that sweren so horribly by his  
blessed name, that they despyse him  
more boldely than dide the cursede  
Iewes, or elles the devel, that  
trembleth whan he hereth his name.  
/

§ 36. Now certes, sith that swering,  
but-if it be lawefully doon, is so  
heighly deffended, mucche worse is  
forswering falsly, and yet  
nedelees./600

§ 37. What seye we eek of hem that  
delyten hem in swering, and holden  
it a gentrie or a manly dede to swere  
grete othes? And what of hem that,  
of verray usage, ne cesse nat to  
swere grete othes, al be the cause  
nat worth a straw? Certes, this is  
horrible sinne. / Sweringe sodeynly  
with-oute avysement is eek a sinne./  
But lat us go now to thilke horrible  
swering of adiuracioun and  
coniuracioun, as doon these false  
enchauntours or nigromanciens in  
bacins ful of water, or in a bright  
sward, in a cercle, or in a fyr, or in a  
shulder-boon of a sheep. / I can nat  
seye but that they doon cursedly  
and damnably, agayns Crist and al  
the feith of holy chirche. /

§ 38. What seye we of hem that  
bileven in divynailes, as by flight or  
by noyse of briddes, or of bestes, or  
by sort, by geomancie, by dremes,  
by chirkinge of dores, or crakkinge  
of houses, by gnawynge of rattes,  
and swich manere wrecchednesse?  
/605 Certes, al this thing is  
deffended by god and by al holy  
chirche. For which they been  
acursed, til they come to

amendement, that on swich filthe  
setten hir bileve./ Charmes for  
woundes or maladye of men, or of  
bestes, if they taken any effect, it  
may be peraventure that god  
suffreth it, for folk sholden yeve the  
more feith and reverence to his  
name. /

§ 39. Now wol I speken of lesinges,  
which generally is fals  
significacioun of word, in entente to  
deceyven his evene-cristene./ Som  
lesinge is of which ther comth noon  
avantage to no wight: and som  
lesinge turneth to the ese or profit of  
o man, and to disese and damage of  
another man. / Another lesinge is  
for to saven his lyf or his catel.  
Another lesinge comth of delyt for  
to lye, in which delyt they wol forge  
a long tale, and peynten it with alle  
circumstaunces, where al the  
ground of the tale is fals. / Som  
lesinge<sup>610</sup> comth, for he wole  
sustene his word; and som lesinge  
comth of recchelesnesse, with-outen  
avysement; and semblable thinges./

§ 40. Lat us now touche the vyce of  
flateringe, which ne comth nat  
gladly but for drede or for  
coveitise./ Flaterye is generally  
wrongful preisinge. Flatereres been  
the develes norices, that norissen  
hise children with milk of  
losengerie./ For sothe, Salomon  
seith, that 'flaterie is wors than  
detraccioun.' For som-tyme  
detraccion maketh an hautein man  
be the more humble, for he dredeth  
detraccion; but certes flaterye, that  
maketh a man to enhauncen his  
herte and his contenance./  
Flatereres been the develes  
enchauntours; for they make a man  
to wene of him-self<sup>615</sup> be lyk that  
he nis nat lyk. / They been lyk to

Iudas that bitraysed [god; and thise flatereres bitraysen] a man to sellen him to his enemy, that is, to the devel. / Flatereres been the develes chapelleyens, that singen evere *Placebo*. / I rekene flaterye in the vyces of Ire; for ofte tyme, if o man be wrooth with another, thanne wol he flatere som wight to sustene him in his querele. /

§ 41. Speke we now of swich cursinge as comth of irous herte. Malisoun generally may be seyde every maner power or harm. Swich cursinge bireveth man fro the regne of god, as seith seint Paul. / And ofte tyme swich cursinge wrongfully retorneth agayn to him that curseth, as a brid that retorneth agayn to his owene<sup>620</sup> nest. / And over alle thing men oghten eschewe to cursen hir children, and yeven to the devel hir engendrure, as ferforth as in hem is; certes, it is greet peril and greet sinne. /

§ 42. Lat us thanne speken of chydinge and reproche, whiche been ful grete woundes in mannes herte; for they unsowen the semes of frendshipe in mannes herte. / For certes, unnethes may a man pleyntly been accorded with him that hath him openly revyled and reprevyd in disclaundre. This is a ful grisly sinne, as Crist seith in the gospel. / And tak kepe now, that he that repreveth his neighebor, outhere he repreveth him by som harm of peyne that he hath on his body, as ‘mesel,’ ‘croked harlot,’ or by som sinne that he dooth. / Now if he repreveth him by harm of peyne, thanne turneth the repreveth to Iesu Crist; for peyne is sent by the rightwys sonde of god, and by his suffrance, be it<sup>625</sup> meselrie, or

maheym, or maladye. / And if he  
repreve him uncharitably of sinne,  
as, 'thou holour,' 'thou dronkelewe  
harlot,' and so forth; thanne  
aperteneth that to the reioysinge of  
the devel, that evere hath Ioye that  
men doon sinne. / And certes,  
chydinge may nat come but out of a  
vileyns herte. For after the  
habundance of the herte speketh the  
mouth ful ofte. / And ye shul  
understonde that loke, by any wey,  
whan any man shal chastyse  
another, that he be war from  
chydinge or reprevinge. For  
trewely, but he be war, he may ful  
lightly quiken the fyr of angre and  
of wratthe, which that he sholde  
quenche, and per-aventure sleeth  
him which that he mighte chastyse  
with benignitee. / For as seith  
Salomon, 'the amiable tonge is the  
tree of lyf,' that is to seyn, of lyf  
espirituel: and sothly, a deslavee  
tonge sleeth the spirites of him that  
repreveth, and eek of him that is  
repreved. / Lo, what seith seint  
Augustin: 'ther is no-thing so lyk  
the develes child as he that ofte  
chydeth.' Seint Paul seith eek: 'I,  
servant of god, bihove nat to  
chyde.' / And how that chydinge be  
a vileyns<sup>630</sup> thing bitwixe alle  
manere folk, yet it is certes most  
uncovenable bitwixe a man and his  
wyf; for there is nevere reste. And  
therefore seith Salomon, 'an hous  
that is uncovered and droppinge,  
and a chydinge wyf, been lyke.' / A  
man that is in a droppinge hous in  
many places, though he eschewe the  
droppinge in o place, it droppeth on  
him in another place; so fareth it by  
a chydinge wyf. But she chyde him  
in o place, she wol chyde him in  
another. / And therefore, 'bette is a  
morsel of breed with Ioye than an  
hous ful of delyces, with chydinge,'

seith Salomon./ Seint Paul seith: ‘O ye wommen, be ye subgetes to youre housbondes as bihoveth in god; and ye men, loveth youre wyves.’ *Ad Colossenses, tertio.* /

§ 43. Afterward speke we of scorninge, which is a wikked sinne; and namely, whan he scorneth a man for hise gode werkes./ For certes, swiche scorneres faren lyk the foule tode,<sup>635</sup> that may nat endure to smelle the sote savour of the vyne whanne it florissbeth./ Thise scorneres been parting felawes with the devel; for they han Ioye whan the devel winneth, and sorwe whan he leseth./ They been adversaries of Iesu Crist; for they haten that he loveth, that is to seyn, salvacion of soule./

§ 44. Speke we now of wikked conseil; for he that wikked conseil yeveth is a traytour. For he deceyveth him that trusteth in him, *ut Achitofel ad Absolonem.* But natheless, yet is his wikked conseil first agayn him-self. / For, as seith the wyse man, every fals livinge hath this propertee in him-self, that he that<sup>640</sup> wole anoye another man, he anoyeth first him-self. / And men shul understonde, that man shal nat taken his conseil of fals folk, ne of angry folk, or grevous folk, ne of folk that loven specially to muchel hir owene profit, ne to muche worldly folk, namely, in conseilinge of soules. /

§ 45. Now comth the sinne of hem that sowen and maken discord amonges folk, which is a sinne that Crist hateth outrely; and no wonder is. For he deyde for to make concord./ And more shame do they to Crist, than dide they that him

crucifyede; for god loveth bettre,  
that frendshipe be amonges folk,  
than he dide his owene body, the  
which that he yaf for unitee.  
Therefore been they lykned to the  
devel, that evere been aboute to  
maken discord. /

§ 46. Now comth the sinne of  
double tonge; swiche as speken  
faire biforn folk, and wikkedly  
bihinde; or elles they maken  
semblant as though they speke of  
good entencioun, or elles in game  
and pley, and yet they speke of  
wikked entente. /

§ 47. Now comth biwreying of  
conseil, thurgh which a man is<sup>645</sup>  
defamed; certes, unnethe may he  
restore the damage./

Now comth manace, that is an open  
folye; for he that ofte manaceth, he  
threteth more than he may  
perfourne ful ofte tyme./

Now cometh ydel wordes, that is  
with-uten profit of him that  
speketh tho wordes, and eek of him  
that herkneth tho wordes. Or elles  
ydel wordes been tho that been  
nedelees, or with-uten entente of  
naturel profit. / And al-be-it that  
ydel wordes been som tyme venial  
sinne, yet sholde men douten hem;  
for we shul yeve rekeninge of hem  
bifore god./

Now comth Ianglinge, that may nat  
been withoute sinne. And, as seith  
Salomon, 'it is a sinne of apert  
folye.' / And therefore a philosophre  
seyde, whan men axed him how that  
men sholde plese the peple; and he  
answerde, 'do many gode  
werkes,<sup>650</sup> and spek fewe Iangles.' /

After this comth the sinne of  
Iaperes, that been the develes apes;  
for they maken folk to laughe at hir  
Iaperie, as folk doon at the gaudes  
of an ape. Swiche Iaperes  
deffendeth seint Paul. / Loke how  
that vertuouse wordes and holy  
conforten hem that travaillen in the  
service of Crist; right so conforten  
the vileyns wordes and knakkes of  
Iaperis hem that travaillen in the  
service of the devel. / Thise been  
the sinnes that comen of the tonge,  
that comen of Ire and of othere  
sinnes mo./

Sequitur remedium contra peccatum  
Ire.

§ 48. The remedye agayns Ire is a  
vertu that men clepen Mansuetude,  
that is Debonairetee; and eek  
another vertu, that men callen  
Pacience or Suffrance. /

§ 49. Debonairetee withdraweth and  
refreyneth the stiringes and the  
moevynges of mannes corage in his  
herte, in swich manere that they ne  
skippe nat out by angre ne by Ire./  
Suffrance suffreth<sup>655</sup> swetely alle  
the anoyaunces and the wronges  
that men doon to man outward./  
Seint Ierome seith thus of  
debonairetee, that ‘it doth noon  
harm to no wight, ne seith; ne for  
noon harm that men doon or seyn,  
he ne eschaufeth nat agayns his  
resoun.’/ This vertu som-tyme  
comth of nature; for, as seith the  
philosophre, ‘a man is a quik thing,  
by nature debonaire and trefable to  
goodnesse; but whan debonairetee  
is enformed of grace, thanne is it the  
more worth.’/

§ 50. Pacience, that is another  
remedye agayns Ire, is a vertu that



suffreth swetely every mannes  
goodnesse, and is nat wrooth for  
noon harm that is doon to him. /  
The philosophre seith, that  
‘pacience is thilke vertu that  
suffreth debonairely alle the  
outrages of adversitee and every  
wikked word.’ / This vertu maketh a  
man<sup>660</sup> lyk to god, and maketh him  
goddess owene dere child, as seith  
Crist. This vertu disconfiteth thyn  
enemy. And therefore seith the wyse  
man, ‘if thou wolt venquisse thyn  
enemy, lerne to suffre.’ / And thou  
shalt understonde, that man suffreth  
foure manere of grevances in  
outward thinges, agayns the whiche  
foure he moot have foure manere of  
paciences./

§ 51. The firste grevance is of  
wikkede wordes; thilke suffrede  
Iesu Crist with-uten grucching, ful  
patiently, whan the Iewes despysed  
and reprevd him ful ofte./ Suffre  
thou therefore patiently; for the wyse  
man seith: ‘if thou stryve with a  
fool, though the fool be wrooth or  
though he laughe, algate thou shalt  
have no reste.’ / That other grevance  
outward is to have damage of thy  
catel. Ther-agayns suffred Crist ful  
patiently, whan he was despoyled  
of al that he hadde in this<sup>665</sup> lyf,  
and that nas but hise clothes./ The  
thridde grevance is a man to have  
harm in his body. That suffred Crist  
ful patiently in al his passioun./ The  
fourthe grevance is in outrageous  
labour in werkes. Wherefore I seye,  
that folk that maken hir servants to  
travaillen to grevously, or out of  
tyme, as on halydayes, soothly they  
do greet sinne./ Heer-agayns suffred  
Crist ful patiently, and taughte us  
pacience, whan he bar up-on his  
blissed shulder the croys, up-on  
which he sholde suffren despitous

death. / Heer may men lerne to be  
pacienc; for certes, noght only  
Cristen men been pacienc for love of  
Iesu Crist, and for guerdoun of the  
blisful lyf that is perdurable; but  
certes, the olde payens, that nevere  
were Cristene, commendede and  
usede the vertu of paciencie. /

§ 52. A philosophre up-on a tyme,  
that wolde have beten his disciple  
for his grete trespas, for which he  
was greetly amoeved,<sup>670</sup> and  
broghte a yerde to scourge the child;  
/ and whan this child saugh the  
yerde, he seyde to his maister, ‘what  
thenke ye to do?’ ‘I wol bete thee,’  
quod the maister, ‘for thy  
correccion.’ / ‘For sothe,’ quod the  
child, ‘ye oghten first correcte  
yours-self, that han lost al youre  
paciencie for the gilt of a child.’/  
‘For sothe,’ quod the maister al  
wepinge, ‘thou seyst sooth; have  
thou the yerde, my dere sone, and  
correcte me for myn inpaciencie.’/  
Of Paciencie comth Obedience,  
thurgh which a man is obedient to  
Crist and to alle hem to whiche he  
oghte to been obedient in Crist./  
And understond wel that obedience  
is perfit, whan that a man doth  
gladly and hastily, with good herte  
entierly, al that he<sup>675</sup> sholde do./  
Obedience generally, is to perfourne  
the doctrine of god and of his  
sovereyns, to whiche him oghte to  
ben obeisaunt in alle  
rightwysnesse./

Sequitur de Accidia.

§ 53. After the sinnes of Envie and  
of Ire, now wol I speken of the  
sinne of Accidie. For Envye  
blindeth the herte of a man, and Ire  
troubleth a man; and Accidie  
maketh him hevvy, thoughtful, and

wrawe. / Envye and Ire maken  
bitternesse in herte; which  
bitternesse is moder of Accidie, and  
binimeth him the love of alle  
goodnesse. Thanne is Accidie the  
anguissh of a trouble herte; and  
seint Augustin seith: 'it is any of  
goodnesse and Ioye of harm.' /  
Certes, this is a dampnable sinne;  
for it doth wrong to Iesu Crist, in-  
as-muche as it binimeth the service  
that men oghte doon to Crist with  
alle diligence, as seith Salomon./  
But Accidie dooth no swich  
diligence; he dooth alle thing with  
anoy, and with wrawnesse,  
slaknesse, and excusacioun, and  
with ydelnesse and unlust; for  
which the book seith: 'acursed be he  
that doth the service of god  
necligently.' / Thanne is Accidie  
enemy to everich<sup>680</sup> estaat of man;  
for certes, the estaat of man is in  
three maneres./ Outher it is thestaat  
of innocence, as was thestaat of  
Adam biforn that he fil into sinne;  
in which estaat he was holden to  
wirche, as in herynge and  
adouringe of god./ Another estaat is  
the estaat of sinful men, in which  
estaat men been holden to laboure  
in preyinge to god for amendement  
of hir sinnes, and that he wole  
graunte hem to arysen out of hir  
sinnes. / Another estaat is thestaat  
of grace, in which estaat he is  
holden to werkes of penitence; and  
certes, to alle these thinges is  
Accidie enemy and contrarie. For he  
loveth no businesse at al./ Now  
certes, this foule sinne Accidie is  
eek a ful greet enemy to the lyflode  
of the body; for it ne hath no  
purveaunce agayn temporel  
necessitee; for it forsloweth and  
forsluggeth, and destroyeth alle  
goodes temporeles by  
recchelesnesse. /<sup>685</sup>

§ 54. The fourthe thinge is, that Accidie is lyk to hem that been in the peyne of helle, by-cause of hir slouthe and of hir hevinesse; for they that been dampned been so bounde, that they ne may neither wel do ne wel thinke./ Of Accidie comth first, that a man is anoyed and encombred for to doon any goodnesse, and maketh that god hath abhominacion of swich Accidie, as seith seint Iohan. /

§ 55. Now comth Slouthe, that wol nat suffre noon hardnesse ne no penaunce. For soothly, Slouthe is so tendre, and so delicat, as seith Salomon, that he wol nat suffre noon hardnesse ne penaunce, and therfore he shendeth al that he dooth. / Agayns this roten-herted sinne of Accidie and Slouthe sholde men exercise hem-self to doon gode werkes, and manly and vertuously cacchen corage wel to doon; thinkinge that oure lord Iesu Crist quyeth every good dede, be it never so lyte./ Usage of labour is a greet thing; for it maketh, as seith seint Bernard, the laborer to have stronge armes and harde sinwes; and Slouthe maketh hem<sup>690</sup> feble and tendre./ Thanne comth drede to biginne to werke any gode werkes; for certes, he that is enclyned to sinne, him thinketh it is so greet an empyrse for to undertake to doon werkes of goodnesse, / and casteth in his herte that the circumstaunces of goodnesse been so grevouse and so chargeaunt for to suffre, that he dar nat undertake to do werkes of goodnesse, as seith seint Gregorie./

§ 56. Now comth wanhope, that is despeir of the mercy of god, that comth somtyme of to muche outrageous sorwe, and somtyme of

to muche drede; imagininge that he hath doon so muche sinne, that it wol nat availen him, though he wolde repenten him and forsake sinne: / thurgh which despeir or drede he abaundoneth al his herte to every maner sinne, as seith seint Augustin./ Which dampnable sinne, if that it continue un-to his ende, it<sup>695</sup> is cleped sinning in the holy gost./ This horrible sinne is so perilous, that he that is despeired, ther nis no felonye ne no sinne that he douteth for to do; as shewed wel by Iudas. / Certes, aboven alle sinnes thanne is this sinne most displesant to Crist, and most adversarie./ Soothly, he that despeireth him is lyk the coward champioun recreant, that seith creant withoute nede. Allas! allas! nedeles is he recreant and nedeles despeired. / Certes, the mercy of god is evere redy to every penitent, and is aboven alle hise werkes./ Allas! can nat a man bithinke him on the gospel of seint Luk, 15., where-as Crist seith that ‘as wel shal ther be Ioye in hevене upon a sinful man that doth penitence,<sup>700</sup> as up-on nynety and nyne rightful men that neden no penitence?’ / Loke forther, in the same gospel, the Ioye and the feste of the gode man that hadde lost his sone, whan his sone with repentaunce was retourned to his fader./ Can they nat remembren hem eek, that, as seith seint Luk *xxiii<sup>o</sup> capitulo*, how that the theef that was hanged bisyde Iesu Crist, seyde: ‘Lord, remembre of me, whan thou comest in-to thy regne?’ / ‘For sothe,’ seyde Crist, ‘I seye to thee, to-day shaltow been with me in Paradys.’/ Certes, ther is noon so horrible sinne of man, that it ne may, in his lyf, be destroyed by penitence, thurgh vertu of the

passion and of the deeth of Crist./  
Allas! what nedeth man thanne to  
been despeired, sith that his mercy  
so redy is and large? Axe and have./  
Thanne<sup>705</sup> cometh Sompnolence,  
that is, sluggy slombringe, which  
maketh a man be hevy and dul, in  
body and in soule; and this sinne  
comth of Slouthe. / And certes, the  
tyme that, by wey of resoun, men  
sholde nat slepe, that is by the  
morwe; but-if ther were cause  
reasonable. / For soothly, the morwe-  
tyde is most covenable, a man to  
seye his preyeres, and for to thinken  
on god, and for to honoure god, and  
to yeven almesse to the povre, that  
first cometh in the name of Crist./  
Lo! what seith Salomon: 'who-so  
wolde by the morwe awaken and  
seke me, he shal finde.' / Thanne  
cometh Necligence, or  
recchelesnesse, that rekketh of no-  
thing. And how that ignoraunce be  
moder of alle harm, certes,  
Necligence is the norice./  
Necligence ne doth no fors, whan  
he shal doon<sup>710</sup> a thing, whether he  
do it weel or baddely. /

§ 57. Of the remedie of these two  
sinnes, as seith the wyse man, that  
'he that dredeth god, he spareth nat  
to doon that him oghte doon.' / And  
he that loveth god, he wol doon  
diligence to plesse god by his  
werkes, and abaundone him-self,  
with al his might, wel for to doon./  
Thanne comth ydelnesse, that is the  
yate of alle harmes. An ydel man is  
lyk to a place that hath no walles;  
the develes may entre on every syde  
and sheten at him at discoverte, by  
temptacion on every syde./ This  
ydelnesse is the thurrok of alle  
wikked and vileyns thoghtes, and of  
alle Iangles, truffles, and of alle  
ordure. / Certes, the hevene is yeven

to hem<sup>715</sup> that wol labouren, and  
nat to ydel folk. Eek David seith:  
that 'they ne been nat in the labour  
of men, ne they shul nat been  
whipped with men,' that is to seyn,  
in purgatorie./ Certes, thanne  
semeth it, they shul be tormented  
with the devel in helle, but-if they  
doon penitence./

§ 58. Thanne comth the sinne that  
men clepen *Tarditas*, as whan a  
man is to latrede or taryinge, er he  
wole turne to god; and certes, that is  
a greet folye. He is lyk to him that  
falleth in the dich, and wol nat  
aryse. / And this vyce comth of a  
fals hope, that he thinketh that he  
shal live longe; but that hope failleth  
ful ofte./

§ 59. Thanne comth Lachesse; that  
is he, that whan he biginneth any  
good werk, anon he shal forleten it  
and stinten; as doon they that han  
any wight to governe, and ne taken  
of him<sup>720</sup> na-more kepe, anon as  
they finden any contrarie or any  
anoy./ Thise been the newe  
sheperdes, that leten hir sheep  
witingly go renne to the wolf that is  
in the breres, or do no fors of hir  
owene governaunce./ Of this comth  
poverte and destruccioun, bothe of  
spirituel and temporel thinges.  
Thanne comth a manere coldnesse,  
that freseth al the herte of man. /  
Thanne comth undevoicioun, thurgh  
which a man is so blent, as seith  
Seint Bernard, and hath swiche  
langour in soule, that he may  
neither rede ne singe in holy  
chirche, ne here ne thinke of no  
devocioun, ne travaille with hise  
handes in no good werk, that it nis  
him unsavory and al apalled. /  
Thanne wexeth he slow and  
slombry, and sone wol be wrooth,

and sone is enclyned to hate and to envye. / Thanne comth the sinne of worldly sorwe, swich as is cleped *tristicia*, that sleeth man, as seint Paul seith. / For certes, swich sorwe werketh to the deeth of the soule and of the body also; for therof comth, that a man is anoyed of his owene lyf. / Wherfore swich sorwe shorteth ful ofte the lyf of a man, er that his tyme be come by wey of kinde. /

Remedium contra peccatum  
Accidie.

§ 60. Agayns this horrible sinne of Accidie, and the branches of the same, ther is a vertu that is called *Fortitudo* or Strengthe; that is, an affeccion thurgh which a man despyseth anoyous thinges. / This vertu is so mighty and so vigorous, that it dar withstonde mightily and wysely kepen him-self fro perils that been wikked, and wrastle agayn the assautes of the devel. / For it enhaunceth and enforceth the soule, right as Accidie abateth it and maketh it feble. For this *Fortitudo* may endure by long suffraunce the travailles that been covenable. /

§ 61. This vertu hath manye spes; and the firste is cleped Magnanimitee, that is to seyn, greet corage. For certes, ther bihoveth greet corage agains Accidie, lest that it ne swolwe the soule by the sinne of sorwe, or destroye it by wanhope. / This vertu maketh folk to undertake harde thinges and grevouse thinges, by hir owene wil, wysely and resonably. / And for as muchel as the devel fighteth agayns a man more by queyntise and by sleighte than by strengthe, therefore men shal withstonden him by wit



and by resoun and by discrecioun./  
Thanne arn ther the vertues of feith,  
and hope in god and in hise seintes,  
to acheve and acomplise the gode  
werkes in the whiche he purposeth  
firmely to continue./ Thanne comth  
seuretee or sikernesse; and that is,  
whan a man ne douteth no travaille  
in tyme cominge of the gode werkes  
that a man hath bigonne./ Thanne  
comth Magnificence, that is to<sup>735</sup>  
seyn, whan a man dooth and  
perfourmeth grete werkes of  
goodnesse that he hath bigonne; and  
that is the ende why that men sholde  
do gode werkes; for in the  
acomplissinge of grete goode  
werkes lyth the grete guerdoun. /  
Thanne is ther Constaunce, that is,  
stablenessse of corage; and this  
sholde been in herte by stedefast  
feith, and in mouth, and in beringe,  
and in chere and in dede. / Eke ther  
been mo speciale remedies agains  
Accidie, in diverse werkes, and in  
consideracioun of the peynes of  
helle, and of the Ioyes of hevene,  
and in trust of the grace of the holy  
goost, that wole yeve him might to  
perfourne his gode entente./

Sequitur de Auaricia.

§ 62. After Accidie wol I speke of  
Avarice and of Coveitise, of which  
sinne seith saint Paule, that ‘the rote  
of alle harmes is Coveitise’: *Ad  
Timotheum, sexto capitulo.* / For  
soothly, whan the herte of a man is  
confounded in it-self and troubled,  
and that the soule hath lost the  
confort of god, thanne seketh he an  
ydel solas of worldly thinges./<sup>740</sup>

§ 63. Avarice, after the descripcion  
of saint Augustin, is likerousnesse  
in herte to have erthely thinges./  
Som other folk seyn, that Avarice

is, for to purchacen manye erthely  
thinges, and nothing yeve to hem  
that han nede./ And understond, that  
Avarice ne stant nat only in lond ne  
catel, but somtyme in science and in  
glorie, and in every manere of  
outrageous thing is Avarice and  
Coveitise. / And the difference  
bitwixe Avarice and Coveitise is  
this. Coveitise is for to coveite  
swiche thinges as thou hast nat; and  
Avarice is for to withholde and kepe  
swiche thinges as thou hast, with-  
oute rightful nede./ Soothly, this  
Avarice is a sinne that is ful  
dampnable; for al holy writ curseth  
it, and speketh<sup>745</sup> agayns that vyce;  
for it dooth wrong to Iesu Crist./  
For it bireveth him the love that  
men to him owen, and turneth it  
bakward agayns alle resoun;/ and  
maketh that the avaricious man hath  
more hope in his catel than in Iesu  
Crist, and dooth more observance in  
kepinge of his tresor than he dooth  
to service of Iesu Crist./ And  
therefore seith seint Paul *ad*  
*Ephesios, quinto*, that ‘an avaricious  
man is in the thraldom of ydolatrie.’  
/

§ 64. What difference is bitwixe an  
ydolastre and an avaricious man,  
but that an ydolastre, per aventure,  
ne hath but o mawmet or two, and  
the avaricious man hath manye? For  
certes, every florin in his cofre is his  
mawmet./ And certes, the sinne of  
Mawmetrye is the firste thing that  
God deffended in the ten<sup>750</sup>  
comaundments, as bereth witnessse  
*Exodi, capitulo xx<sup>o</sup>*:/ ‘Thou shalt  
have no false goddes bifore me, ne  
thou shalt make to thee no grave  
thing.’ Thus is an avaricious man,  
that loveth his tresor biforn god, an  
ydolastre,/ thurgh this cursed sinne  
of Avarice. Of Coveitise comen

these harde lordshipes, thurgh  
whiche men been distreyned by  
tailages, custumes, and cariages,  
more than hir duetee or resoun is.  
And eek they taken of hir bonde-  
men amerciments, whiche mighten  
more resonably ben cleped  
extorcions than amerciments. / Of  
whiche amerciments and  
raunsoninge of bondemen, somme  
lordes stywardes seyn, that it is  
rightful; for-as-muche as a cherl  
hath no temporel thing that it ne is  
his lordes, as they seyn. / But certes,  
these lordshipes doon wrong, that  
bireven hir bonde-folk thinges that  
they nevere yave hem: *Augustinus  
de Civitate, libro nono.* / Sooth is,  
that the condicioun of thraldom and  
the firste cause of thraldom is  
for<sup>755</sup> sinne; *Genesis, quinto.* /

§ 65. Thus may ye seen that the gilt  
disserveth thraldom, but nat nature. /  
Wherfore these lordes ne sholde nat  
muche glorifyen hem in hir  
lordshipes, sith that by naturel  
condicion they been nat lordes of  
thralles; but for that thraldom comth  
first by the desert of sinne. / And  
forther-over, ther-as the lawe seith,  
that temporel godes of bonde-folk  
been the godes of hir lordshipes, ye,  
that is for to understonde, the godes  
of the emperour, to deffenden hem  
in hir right, but nat for to robben  
hem ne reven hem. / And therefore  
seith Seneca: 'thy prudence sholde  
live benignely with thy thralles.' /  
Thilke that thou clepest thy thralles  
been goddes peple; for humble folk  
been Cristes freendes; they been  
contubernial with the lord. /<sup>760</sup>

§ 66. Think eek, that of swich seed  
as cherles springeth, of swich seed  
springen lordes. As wel may the  
cherl be saved as the lord. / The

same deeth that taketh the cherl,  
swich deeth taketh the lord.  
Wherfore I rede, do right so with  
thy cherl, as thou woldest that thy  
lord dide with thee, if thou were in  
his plyt./ Every sinful man is a cherl  
to sinne. I rede thee, certes, that  
thou, lord, werke in swiche wyse  
with thy cherles, that they rather  
love thee than drede./ I woot wel  
ther is degree above degree, as  
reson is; and skile it is, that men do  
hir devoir ther-as it is due; but  
certes, extorcions and despit of  
youre underlinges is dampnable./

§ 67. And forther-over understond  
wel, that thise conquerours or  
tiraunts maken ful ofte thralles of  
hem, that been born of as royal  
blood as been they that hem  
conqueren. / This name<sup>765</sup> of  
thraldom was nevere erst couth, til  
that Noe seyde, that his sone  
Canaan sholde be thral to hise  
bretheren for his sinne./ What seye  
we thanne of hem that pilen and  
doon extorcions to holy chirche?  
Certes, the swerd, that men yeven  
first to a knight whan he is newe  
dubbed, signifyeth that he sholde  
deffenden holy chirche, and nat  
robben it ne pilen it; and who so  
dooth, is traitour to Crist. / And, as  
seith seint Augustin, ‘they been the  
develes wolves, that stranglen the  
sheep of Iesu Crist’; and doon  
worse than wolves./ For soothly,  
whan the wolf hath ful his wombe,  
he stinteth to strangle sheep. But  
soothly, the pilours and destroyours  
of goddes holy chirche ne do nat so;  
for they ne stinte nevere to pile./  
Now, as I have seyde, sith so is that  
sinne was first cause of thraldom,  
thanne is it thus; that thilke tyme  
that al this world was in sinne,  
thanne was al this world in

thraldom and subieccioun./ But certes, sith the tyme<sup>770</sup> of grace cam, god ordeyned that som folk sholde be more heigh in estaat and in degree, and som folk more lowe, and that everich sholde be served in his estaat and in his degree. / And therefore, in somme contrees ther they byen thralles, whan they han turned hem to the feith, they maken hir thralles free out of thraldom. And therefore, certes, the lord oweth to his man that the man oweth to his lord./ The Pope calleth him-self servant of the servaunts of god; but for-as-muche as the estaat of holy chirche ne mighte nat han be, ne the commune profit mighte nat han be kept, ne pees and reste in erthe, but-if god hadde ordeyned that som men hadde hyer degree and som men lower:/ therefore was sovereyntee ordeyned to kepe and mayntene and deffenden hir underlinges or hir subgets in resoun, as ferforth as it lyth in hir power; and nat to destroyen hem ne confounde. / Wherfore I seye, that thilke lordes that been lyk wolves, that devouren the possessiouns or the catel of povre folk wrongfully, with-outen<sup>775</sup> mercy or mesure,/ they shul receyven, by the same mesure that they han mesured to povre folk, the mercy of Iesu Crist, but-if it be amended./ Now comth deceite bitwixe marchant and marchant. And thow shalt understonde, that marchandyse is in two maneres; that oon is bodily, and that other is goostly. That oon is honeste and leveful, and that other is deshoneste and unleveful. / Of thilke bodily marchandyse, that is leveful and honeste, is this; that, there-as god hath ordeyned that a regne or a contree is suffisaunt to him-self, thanne is it honeste and

levelful, that of habundaunce of this contree, that men helpe another contree that is more nedy./ And therefore, ther mote been marchants to bringen fro that o contree to that other hire marchandyses./ That other marchandise, that men haunten with fraude and trecherie and deceite, with lesinges and false othes, is cursed and dampnable./780

Espirituel marchandyse is proprely Symonye, that is, ententif desyr to byen thing espirituel, that is, thing that aperteneth to the seintuarie of god and to cure of the soule. / This desyr, if so be that a man do his diligence to parfournen it, al-be-it that his desyr ne take noon effect, yet is it to him a deedly sinne; and if he be ordred, he is irreguler. / Certes, Symonye is cleped of Symon Magus, that wolde han boght, for temporel catel, the yifte that god hadde yeven, by the holy goost, to seint Peter and to the apostles. / And therefore understand, that bothe he that selleth and he that byeth thinges espirituels, been cleped Symonials; be it by catel, be it by procuringe, or by fleshly preyere of hise freendes, fleshly freendes, or espirituel freendes. /

Fleshly, in two maneres; as by kinrede or othere freendes. Soothly, if they praye for him that is nat worthy and able, it is Symonye if he take the benefice; and if he be worthy and able, ther nis noon./785

That other manere is, whan a man or womman preyen for folk to avauncen hem, only for wikked fleshly affeccoun that they have un-to the persone; and that is foul Symonye./ But certes, in service, for which men yeven thinges espirituels un-to hir servants, it moot been understonde that the service moot been honeste, and elles

nat; and eek that it be with-outen bargayninge, and that the persone be able./ For, as seith Seint Damasie, ‘alle the sinnes of the world, at regard of this sinne, arn as thing of noght’; for it is the gretteste sinne that may be, after the sinne of Lucifer and Antecrist./ For, by this sinne, god forleseth the chirche, and the soule that he boghte with his precious blood, by hem that yeven chirches to hem that been nat digne./ For they putten in theves, that stelen the soules of Iesu Christ and destroyen his patrimoine./ By swiche undigne preestes and curates han lewed men<sup>790</sup> the lasse reverence of the sacraments of holy chirche; and swiche yeveres of chirches putten out the children of Crist, and putten in-to the chirche the develes owene sone. / They sellen the soules that lambes sholde kepen to the wolf that strangleth hem. And therfore shul they nevere han part of the pasture of lambes, that is, the blisse of hevene./ Now comth hasardrye with hise apurtenaunces, as tables and raffles; of which comth deceite, false othes, chydinges, and alle ravines, blaspheminge and reneyinge of god, and hate of hise neighebores, wast of godes, misspendinge of tyme, and somtyme manslaughtre. / Certes, hasardours ne mowe nat been with-outen greet sinne whyles they haunte that craft. / Of avarice comen eek lesinges, thefte, fals witnessse, and false othes. And ye shul understonde that these been grete sinnes, and expres agayn the comaundements of god, as I have seyde./<sup>795</sup> Fals witnessse is in word and eek in dede. In word, as for to bireve thy neighebores goode name by thy fals witnessing, or bireven him his catel or his heritage by thy

fals witnessing; whan thou, for ire  
or for mede, or for envye, berest  
fals witesse, or accusest him or  
excusest him by thy fals witesse,  
or elles excusest thy-self falsly./  
Ware yow, questmongeres and  
notaries! Certes, for fals witnessing  
was Susanna in ful gret sorwe and  
peyne, and many another mo./ The  
sinne of thefte is eek expres agayns  
goddes heste, and that in two  
maneres, corporel and espirituel. /  
Corporel, as for to take thy  
neighebores catel agayn his wil, be  
it be force or by sleighte, be it by  
met or by mesure. / By steling eek  
of false enditements upon him, and  
in borwinge of thy neighebores  
catel, in entente nevere to payen it  
agayn, and semblable800 thinges./  
Espirituel thefte is Sacrilege, that is  
to seyn, hurtinge of holy thinges, or  
of thinges sacred to Crist, in two  
maneres; by reson of the holy place,  
as chirches or chirche-hawes, / for  
which every vileyns sinne that men  
doon in swiche places may be  
cleped sacrilege, or every violence  
in the semblable places. Also, they  
that withdrawen falsly the rightes  
that longen to holy chirche./ And  
pleynly and generally, sacrilege is  
to reven holy thing fro holy place,  
or unholy thing out of holy place, or  
holy thing out of unholy place./

Relevacio contra peccatum  
Avaricie.

§ 68. Now shul ye understonde, that  
the relevinge of Avarice is  
misericorde, and pitee largely taken.  
And men mighten axe, why that  
misericorde and pitee is relevinge of  
Avarice?/ Certes, the avaricious  
man sheweth no pitee ne  
misericorde to the nedeful man; for  
he delyteth him in the kepinge of



his tresor, and nat in the rescowinge  
ne relevinge of his evene-cristene.  
And therfore<sup>805</sup> speke I first of  
misericorde./ Thanne is  
misericorde, as seith the  
philosophre, a vertu, by which the  
corage of man is stired by the  
misesse of him that is mised. / Up-  
on which misericorde folweth pitee,  
in parfourninge of charitable werkes  
of misericorde./ And certes, these  
thinges moeven a man to  
misericorde of Iesu Crist, that he  
yaf him-self for oure gilt, and  
suffred deeth for misericorde, and  
forgaf us oure originale sinnes;/ and  
therby relessed us fro the peynes of  
helle, and amenused the peynes of  
purgatorie by penitence, and yeveth  
grace wel to do, and atte laste the  
blisse of hevене./ The speses of  
misericorde been, as for to lene and  
for to yeve and to foryeven and  
relesse, and for to han pitee in herte,  
and compassioun of the meschief of  
his evene-cristene, and eek to  
chastyse there as nede is./ Another  
manere of<sup>810</sup> remedie agayns  
Avarice is resonable largesse; but  
soothly, here bihoveth the  
consideracioun of the grace of Iesu  
Crist, and of hise temporel goodes,  
and eek of the godes perdurables  
that Crist yaf to us; / and to han  
remembrance of the deeth that he  
shal receyve, he noot whanne,  
where, ne how; and eek that he shal  
forgon al that he hath, save only that  
he hath despended in gode werkes./

§ 69. But for-as-muche as som folk  
been unmesurable, men oghten  
eschue fool-largesse, that men  
clepen wast. / Certes, he that is fool-  
large ne yeveth nat his catel, but he  
leseth his catel. Soothly, what thing  
that he yeveth for veyne glorie, as to  
minstrals and to folk, for to beren

his renoun in the world, he hath  
sinne ther-of and noon almesse./  
Certes, he leseth foule his good, that  
ne seketh with the yifte of his good  
no-thing but sinne./ He is<sup>815</sup> lyk to  
an hors that seketh rather to drinken  
drovy or trouble water than for to  
drinken water of the clere welle. /  
And for-as-muchel as they yeven  
ther as they sholde nat yeven, to  
hem aperteneth thilke malisoun that  
Crist shal yeven at the day of dome  
to hem that shullen been dampned./

Sequitur de Gula.

§ 70. After Avarice comth  
Glotonye, which is expres eek  
agayn the comandement of god.  
Glotonye is unmesurable appetyt to  
ete or to drinke, or elles to doon y-  
nogh to the unmesurable appetyt  
and desordeyne coveityse to eten  
or to drinke./ This sinne corrupped  
al this world as is wel shewed in the  
sinne of Adam and of Eve. Loke  
eek, what seith seint Paul of  
Glotonye./ ‘Manye,’ seith seint  
Paul, ‘goon, of whiche I have ofte  
seyd to yow, and now I seye it  
wepinge, that they been the enemys  
of the croys of Crist; of whiche the  
ende is deeth, and of whiche hir  
wombe is hir god, and hir glorie in  
confusioun of hem that so savenen  
erthely thinges.’ / He that is usaunt  
to this sinne of Glotonye, he ne<sup>820</sup>  
may no sinne withstonde. He moot  
been in servage of alle vyces, for it  
is the develes hord ther he hydeth  
him and resteth. / This sinne hath  
manye spes. The firste is  
dronkenesse, that is the horrible  
sepulture of mannes resoun; and  
therefore, whan a man is dronken, he  
hath lost his resoun; and this is  
deedly sinne./ But soothly, whan  
that a man is nat wont to strong

drinke, and peraventure ne knoweth  
nat the strengthe of the drinke, or  
hath feblesse in his heed, or hath  
travailed, thurgh which he drinketh  
the more, al be he sodeynly caught  
with drinke, it is no deedly sinne,  
but venial. / The seconde spece of  
Glotonye is, that the spirit of a man  
wexeth al trouble; for dronkenesse  
bireveth him the discrecioun of his  
wit. / The thridde spece of Glotonye  
is, whan a man devoureth his mete,  
and hath no rightful manere of  
etinge. / The fourthe is whan, thurgh  
the grete habundaunce of his mete,  
the humours in his body been  
destempred. / The fifthe is,  
foryetelnesse by to muchel  
drinkinge; for which somtyme a  
man foryeteth er the morwe what he  
dide at even or on the night biforn. /

§ 71. In other manere been distinct  
the speses of Glotonye, after seint  
Gregorie. The firste is, for to ete  
biforn tyme to ete. The seconde is,  
whan a man get him to delicat mete  
or drinke. / The thridde is, whan  
men taken to muche over mesure.  
The fourthe is curiositee, with greet  
entente to maken and apparaillen  
his mete. The fifthe is, for to eten to  
gredily. / These been the fyve fingres  
of the develes hand, by whiche he  
draweth folk to sinne. /

Remedium contra peccatum Gule.

§ 72. Agayns Glotonye is the  
remedie Abstinence, as seith  
Galien; but that holde I nat  
meritorie, if he do it only for the  
hele of his body. Seint Augustin  
wole, that Abstinence be doon for  
vertu and with pacience. /  
Abstinence, he seith, is litel worth,  
but-if a man have good wil ther-to,  
and but it be enforced by pacience

and by charitee, and that men doon  
it for godes sake, and in hope to  
have the blisse of hevene./

§ 73. The felawes of Abstinence  
been Attemperaunce, that holdeth  
the mene in alle thinges: eek  
Shame, that eschueth alle  
deshonestee: Suffisance, that seketh  
no riche metes ne drinkes, ne dooth  
no fors of to outrageous  
apparailinge of mete./ Measure also,  
that restreyneth by resoun the  
deslavee appetyt of etinge:  
Sobrenesse also, that restreyneth the  
outrage of drinke: / Sparinge also,  
that restreyneth the delicat ese to  
sitte longe at his mete and softly;  
wherfore som folk stonden of hir  
owene wil, to eten at the lasse  
leyser. /835

Sequitur de Luxuria.

§ 74. After Glotonye, thanne comth  
Lecherie; for these two sinnes been  
so ny cosins, that ofte tyme they  
wol nat departe./ God woot, this  
sinne is ful displeaunt thing to god;  
for he seyde himself, ‘do no  
lecherie.’ And therefore he putte  
grete peynes agayns this sinne in  
the olde lawe./ If womman thral  
were taken in this sinne, she sholde  
be beten with staves to the deeth.  
And if she were a gentil womman,  
she sholde be slayn with stones.  
And if she were a bisshoppes  
doghter, she sholde been brent, by  
goddes comandement. / Forther  
over, by the sinne of Lecherie, god  
dreynte al the world at the diluge.  
And after that, he brente fyve citees  
with thonder-leyt, and sank hem in-  
to helle. /

§ 75. Now lat us speke thanne of  
thilke stinkinge sinne of Lecherie

that men clepe Avoutrie of wedded folk, that is to seyn, if that oon of hem be wedded, or elles bothe./ Seint Iohn seith,<sup>840</sup> that avoutiers shullen been in helle in a stank brenninge of fyr and of brimston; in fyr, for the lecherie; in brimston, for the stink of hir ordure. / Certes, the brekinge of this sacrament is an horrible thing; it was maked of god him-self in paradys, and confermed by Iesu Crist, as witnesseth seint Mathew in the gospel: 'A man shal lete fader and moder, and taken him to his wyf, and they shullen be two in o flesh.'/ This sacrament bitokneth the knittinge togidre of Crist and of holy chirche./ And nat only that god forbad avoutrie in dede, but eek he comanded that thou sholdest nat coveite thy neighebores wyf./ In this heeste, seith seint Augustin, is forboden alle manere coveitise to doon lecherie. Lo what seith seint Mathew in the gospel: that 'who-so seeth a womman to coveitise of his lust, he hath doon lecherie with hir in his herte.'/ Here may ye seen<sup>845</sup> that nat only the dede of this sinne is forboden, but eek the desyr to doon that sinne./ This cursed sinne anoyeth grevousliche hem that it haunten. And first, to hir soule; for he oblygeth it to sinne and to peyne of deeth that is perdurable./ Un-to the body anoyeth it grevously also, for it dreyeth him, and wasteth, and shent him, and of his blood he maketh sacrifice to the feend of helle; it wasteth his catel and his substaunce. / And certes, if it be a foul thing, a man to waste his catel on wommen, yet is it a fouler thing whan that, for swich ordure, wommen dispenden up-on men hir catel and substaunce./ This sinne, as seith the prophete, bireveth man and

womman hir gode fame, and al hir honour; and it is ful pleasaunt to the devel; for ther-by winneth<sup>850</sup> he the moste partie of this world./ And right as a marchant delyteth him most in chaffare that he hath most avantage of, right so delyteth the feend in this ordure./

§ 76. This is that other hand of the devel, with fyve fingres, to cacche the peple to his vileinye./ The firste finger is the fool lookinge of the fool womman and of the fool man, that sleeth, right as the basilicok sleeth folk by the venim of his sighte; for the coveitise of eyen folweth the coveitise of the herte. / The seconde finger is the vileyns touchinge in wikkede manere; and ther-fore seith Salomon, that who-so toucheth and handleth a womman, he fareth lyk him that handleth the scorpioun that stingeth and sodeynly sleeth thurgh his enveniminge; as who-so toucheth warm pich, it shent hise fingres./ The thridde, is foule<sup>855</sup> wordes, that fareth lyk fyr, that right anon brenneth the herte./ The fourthe finger is the kissinge; and trewely he were a greet fool that wolde kisse the mouth of a brenninge ovne or of a fourneys./ And more fooles been they that kissen in vileinye; for that mouth is the mouth of helle: and namely, thise olde dotardes holours, yet wol they kisse, though they may nat do, and smatre hem. / Certes, they been lyk to houndes; for an hound, whan he comth by the roser or by othere [busshes], though he may nat pisse, yet wole he heve up his leg and make a contenance to pisse. / And for that many man weneth that he may nat sinne, for no likerousnesse that he doth with his wyf; certes,

that opinion is fals. God woot, a man may sleen him-self with his owene knyf, and make him-selven dronken of his owene tonne./ Certes, be it wyf, be it child, or any worldly thing that he loveth biforn god, it is his maumet, and he is an ydolastre./ Man860 sholde loven his wyf by discrecioun, paciently and atemprely; and thanne is she as though it were his suster./ The fifthe finger of the develes hand is the stinkinge dede of Lecherie./ Certes, the fyve fingres of Glotonie the feend put in the wombe of a man, and with hise fyve fyngres of Lecherie he gripeth him by the reynes, for to throwen him in-to the fourneys of helle;/ ther-as they shul han the fyr and the wormes that evere shul lasten, and wepinge and wailinge, sharp hunger and thirst, and grimnesse of develes that shullen al to-trede hem, with-outen respit and withouten ende./ Of Lecherie, as I seyde, sourden diverse speces; as fornicacioun, that is bitwixe man and womman that been nat maried; and this is deedly sinne and agayns nature./ Al that is865 enemy and destruccioun to nature is agayns nature./ Parfay, the resoun of a man telleth eek him wel that it is deedly sinne, for-as-muche as god forbad Lecherie. And seint Paul yeveth hem the regne, that nis dewe to no wight but to hem that doon deedly sinne./ Another sinne of Lecherie is to bireve a mayden of hir maydenhede; for he that so dooth, certes, he casteth a mayden out of the hyeste degree that is in this present lyf, / and bireveth hir thilke precious fruit that the book clepeth ‘the hundred fruit.’ I ne can seye it noon other weyes in English, but in Latin it highte *Centesimus fructus*. / Certes, he that so dooth is

cause of manye damages and vileinyes, mo than any man can rekene; right as he som-tyme is cause of alle damages that bestes don in the feeld, that breketh the hegge or the closure; thurgh which he destroyeth that may nat been restored./ For certes, na-more may<sup>870</sup> maydenhede be restored than an arm that is smiten fro the body may retourne agayn to wexe./ She may have mercy, this woot I wel, if she do penitence; but nevere shal it be that she nas corrupt./ And al-be-it so that I have spoken somewhat of Avoutrie, it is good to shewen mo perils that longen to Avoutrie, for to eschue that foule sinne./ Avoutrie in Latin is for to seyn, approching of other mannes bed, thurgh which tho that whylom weren o flessch abaundone hir bodyes to othere persones./ Of this sinne, as seith the wyse man, folwen manye harmes. First, brekinge of feith; and certes, in feith is the keye of Cristendom./<sup>875</sup> And whan that feith is broken and lorn, soothly Cristendom stant veyn and with-uten fruit./ This sinne is eek a thefte; for thefte generally is for to reve a wight his thing agayns his wille./ Certes, this is the fouleste thefte that may be, whan a womman steleth hir body from hir housbonde and yeveth it to hire holour to defoulen hir; and steleth hir soule fro Crist, and yeveth it to the devel./ This is a fouler thefte, than for to breke a chirche and stele the chalice; for these Avoutiers breken the temple of god spiritually, and stelen the vessel of grace, that is, the body and the soule, for which Crist shal destroyen hem, as seith Seint Paul./ Soothly of this thefte douted gretly Ioseph, whan that his lordes wyf preyed him of vileinye,



whan he seyde, 'lo, my lady, how  
my lord hath take to me under my  
warde al that he hath in this world;  
ne no-thing of hise thinges is out of  
my power, but only ye that been<sup>880</sup>  
his wyf./ And how sholde I thanne  
do this wikkednesse, and sinne so  
horribly agayns god, and agayns my  
lord? God it forbede.' Allas! al to  
litel is swich trouthe now y-founde!  
/ The thridde harm is the filthe  
thurgh which they breken the  
comandement of god, and defoulen  
the auctour of matrimoine, that is  
Crist. / For certes, in-so-muche as  
the sacrement of mariage is so noble  
and so digne, so muche is it gretter  
sinne for to breken it; for god made  
mariage in paradys, in the estaat of  
Innocence, to multiplie man-kinde  
to the service of god./ And therefore  
is the brekinge ther-of more  
grevous. Of which brekinge comen  
false heires ofte tyme, that  
wrongfully occupyen folkes  
heritages. And therefore wol Crist  
putte hem out of the regne of  
hevene, that is heritage to gode folk.  
/ Of this brekinge comth eek ofte  
tyme, that folk unwar wedden or  
sinnen with hir owene kinrede; and  
namely thilke harlottes that haunten  
bordels of these fool wommen, that  
mowe be lykned to a commune  
gonge, where-as men purgen<sup>885</sup> hir  
ordure./ What seye we eek of  
putours that liven by the horrible  
sinne of putrie, and constreyne  
wommen to yelden to hem a certeyn  
rente of hir bodily puterie, ye,  
somytyme of his owene wyf or his  
child; as doon this baudes? Certes,  
these been cursede sinnes./  
Understonde eek, that avoutrie is set  
gladly in the ten comandements  
bitwixe thefte and manslaughtre; for  
it is the gretteste thefte that may be;  
for it is thefte of body and of soule.

/ And it is lyk to homicyde; for it kerveth a-two and breketh a-two hem that first were maked o flesh, and therefore, by the olde lawe of god, they sholde be slayn./ But nathelees, by the lawe of Iesu Crist, that is lawe of pitee, whan he seyde to the womman that was founden in avoutrie, and sholde han been slayn with stones, after the wil of the Iewes, as was hir lawe: ‘Go,’ quod Iesu Crist, ‘and have na-more wil to sinne’; or, ‘wille na-more to do sinne.’/ Soothly, the vengeaunce of avoutrie is awarded to the peynes of helle, but-if so be that it be destourbed by penitence./ Yet been ther mo speses of this cursed sinne; as<sup>890</sup> whan that oon of hem is religious, or elles bothe; or of folk that been entred in-to ordre, as subdekne or dekne, or preest, or hospitaliers. And evere the hyer that he is in ordre, the gretter is the sinne. / The thinges that gretly agreggen hir sinne is the brekinge of hir avow of chastitee, whan they receyved the ordre./ And fortherover, sooth is, that holy ordre is chief of al the tresorie of god, and his especial signe and mark of chastitee; to shewe that they been ioyned to chastitee, which that is most precious lyf that is./ And thise ordred folk been specially tytled to god, and of the special meynee of god; for which, whan they doon deedly sinne, they been the special traytours of god and of his peple; for they liven of the peple, to preye for the peple, and whyle they been suche traitours, hir preyers availen nat to the peple. / Preestes been aungeles, as by the dignitee of hir misterye; but for sothe, seint Paul seith, that ‘Sathanas transformeth him in an aungel of light.’<sup>895</sup> Soothly, the preest that haunteth

deedly sinne, he may be lykned to  
the aungel of derknesse transformed  
in the aungel of light; he semeth  
aungel of light, but for sothe he is  
aungel of derknesse./ Swiche  
preestes been the sones of Helie, as  
sheweth in the book of Kinges, that  
they weren the sones of Belial, that  
is, the devel. / Belial is to seyn  
'with-outen Iuge'; and so faren  
they; hem thinketh they been free,  
and han no Iuge, na-more than hath  
a free bole that taketh which cow  
that him lyketh in the toun./ So  
faren they by wommen. For right as  
a free bole is y-nough for al a toun,  
right so is a wikked preest  
corrupcioun y-nough for al a  
parisshe, or for al a contree./ Thise  
preestes, as seith the book, ne conne  
nat the misterie of preesthode to the  
peple, ne god ne knowe they nat;  
they ne helde hem nat apayd, as  
seith the book, of soden flesh that  
was to hem offred, but they toke by  
force the900 flesh that is rawe. /  
Certes, so thise shrewes ne holden  
hem nat apayed of rosted flesh and  
sode flesh, with which the peple  
fedden hem in greet reverence, but  
they wole have raw flesh of folkes  
wyves and hir doghtres./ And  
certes, thise wommen that  
consenten to hir harlotrie doon greet  
wrong to Crist and to holy chirche  
and alle halwes, and to alle soules;  
for they bireven alle thise him that  
sholde worshipe Crist and holy  
chirche, and preye for cristene  
soules./ And therefore han swiche  
preestes, and hir lemmanes eek that  
consenten to hir lecherie, the  
malisoun of al the court cristen, till  
they come to amendement. / The  
thridde spece of avoutrie is som-  
tyme bitwixe a man and his wyf;  
and that is whan they take no  
reward in hir assemblinge, but only

to hire fleshly delyt, as seith seint  
Ierome;/ and ne rekken of nothing  
but that they been assembled; by-  
cause that they been<sup>905</sup> married, al  
is good y-nough, as thinketh to  
hem./ But in swich folk hath the  
devel power, as seyde the aungel  
Raphael to Thobie; for in hir  
assemblinge they putten Iesu Crist  
out of hir herte, and yeven hem-self  
to alle ordure./ The fourthe spece is,  
the assemblee of hem that been of  
hire kinrede, or of hem that been of  
oon affinitee, or elles with hem with  
whiche hir fadres or hir kinrede han  
deled in the sinne of lecherie; this  
sinne maketh hem lyk to houndes,  
that taken no kepe to kinrede./ And  
certes, parentele is in two maneres,  
outher goostly or fleshly; goostly,  
as for to delen with hise godsibbes.  
/ For right so as he that engendreth  
a child is his fleshly fader, right so  
is his godfader his fader espirituel.  
For which a womman may in no  
lasse sinne assemblen with hir  
godsib than with hir owene fleshly  
brother. / The fifthe spece is thilke  
abhominable sinne, of which that no  
man unnethe oghte speke ne wryte,  
natheles it is openly reherced<sup>910</sup>  
in holy writ./ This cursednesse doon  
men and wommen in diverse  
entente and in diverse manere; but  
though that holy writ speke of  
horrible sinne, certes, holy writ may  
nat been defouled, na-more than the  
sonne that shyneth on the mixen. /  
Another sinne aperteneth to  
lecherie, that comth in slepinge; and  
this sinne cometh ofte to hem that  
been maydenes, and eek to hem that  
been corrupt; and this sinne men  
clepen pollucioun, that comth in  
foure maneres. / Somtyme, of  
languissinge of body; for the  
humours been to ranke and  
habundaunt in the body of man.

Somtyme of infermetee; for the feblesse of the vertu retentif, as phisik maketh mencion. Somtyme, for surfeet of mete and drinke. / And somtyme of vileyns thoghtes, that been enclosed in mannes minde whan he goth to slepe; which may nat been withoute sinne. For which men moste kepen hem wysely, or elles may men sinnen ful greuously. /

Remedium contra peccatum  
Luxurie.

§ 77. Now comth the remedie agayns Lecherie, and that is, generally, Chastitee and Contynence, that restreyneth alle the desordeynee moevinges that comen of fleshly talentes. / And<sup>915</sup> evere the gretter merite shal he han, that most restreyneth the wikkede eschaufinges of the ordure of this sinne. And this is in two maneres, that is to seyn, chastitee in mariage, and chastitee of widwehode. / Now shaltow understonde, that matrimoine is leefful assemblinge of man and of womman, that receyven by vertu of the sacrement the bond, thurgh which they may nat be departed in al hir lyf, that is to seyn, whyl that they liven bothe. / This, as seith the book, is a ful greet sacrement. God maketh it, as I have seyde, in paradys, and wolde himself be born in mariage. / And for to halwen mariage, he was at a weddunge, where-as he turned water in-to wyn; which was the firste miracle that he wroghte in erthe bifore hise disciples. / Trewe effect of mariage clenseth fornicacioun and replenisseth holy chirche of good linage; for that is the ende of mariage; and it chaungeth deedly sinne in-to venial sinne bitwixe hem

that been y-wedded, and maketh the hertes al oon of hem that been y-wedded, as wel as the bodies./ This is verray mariage, that was establissed by god er<sup>920</sup> that sinne bigan, whan naturel lawe was in his right point in paradys; and it was ordeyned that o man sholde have but o womman, and o womman but o man, as seith Seint Augustin, by manye resouns. /

§ 78. First, for mariage is figured bitwixe Crist and holy chirche. And that other is, for a man is heved of a womman; algate, by ordinaunce it sholde be so./ For if a womman had mo men than oon, thanne sholde she have mo hevedes than oon, and that were an horrible thing biforn god; and eek a womman ne mighte nat plese to many folk at ones. And also ther ne sholde nevere be pees ne reste amonges hem; for everich wolde axen his owene thing. / And forther-over, no man ne sholde knowe his owene engendrure, ne who sholde have his heritage; and the womman sholde been the lasse biloved, fro the time that she were conioynt to many men./

§ 79. Now comth, how that a man sholde bere him with his wyf; and namely, in two thinges, that is to seyn in suffraunce and<sup>925</sup> reverence, as shewed Crist whan he made first womman./ For he ne made hir nat of the heved of Adam, for she sholde nat clayme to greet lordshipe./ For ther-as the womman hath the maistrie, she maketh to muche desray; ther neden none ensamples of this. The experience of day by day oghte suffyse. / Also certes, god ne made nat womman of the foot of Adam, for she ne sholde nat been holden to lowe; for she can

nat paciently suffre: but god made  
womman of the rib of Adam, for  
womman sholde be felawe un-to  
man./ Man sholde bere him to his  
wyf in feith, in trouthe, and in love,  
as seith seint Paul: that ‘a man  
sholde loven his wyf as Crist loved  
holy chirche, that loved it so wel  
that he deyde for it.’ So sholde a  
man for his wyf, if it were nede./

§ 80. Now how that a womman  
sholde be subget to hir  
housbonde,<sup>930</sup> that telleth seint  
Peter. First, in obedience./ And eek,  
as seith the decree, a womman that  
is a wyf, as long as she is a wyf,  
she hath noon auctoritee to swere ne  
bere witnessse with-oute leve of hir  
housbonde, that is hir lord; algate,  
he sholde be so by resoun. / She  
sholde eek serven him in alle  
honestee, and been attempree of hir  
array. I wot wel that they sholde  
setten hir entente to plesen hir  
housbondes, but nat by hir  
queyntise of array./ Seint Ierome  
seith, that wyves that been  
apparailled in silk and in precious  
purpre ne mowe nat clothen hem in  
Iesu Crist. What seith seint Iohn eek  
in this matere?/ Seint Gregorie eek  
seith, that no wight seketh precious  
array but only for veyne glorie, to  
been honoured the more biforn the  
peple./ It is a greet folye, <sup>a935</sup>  
womman to have a fair array  
outward and in hir-self be foul  
inward. / A wyf sholde eek be  
mesurable in lokinge and in beringe  
and in laughinge, and discreet in  
alle hir wordes and hir dedes./ And  
aboven alle worldly thing she  
sholde loven hir housbonde with al  
hir herte, and to him be trewe of hir  
body;/ so sholde an housbonde eek  
be to his wyf. For sith that al the  
body is the housbondes, so sholde

hir herte been, or elles ther is  
bitwixe hem two, as in that, no  
parfit mariage./ Thanne shal men  
understonde that for three thinges a  
man and his wyf fleshly mowen  
assemble. The firste is in entente of  
engendrure of children to the  
service of god, for certes that is the  
cause fynal of matrimoine./ Another  
cause is, to yelden everich of hem to  
other the dette of hir bodies, for  
neither of hem hath power over his  
owene body. The thridde is, for to  
eschewe lecherye and vileinye. The  
ferthe is for sothe deedly sinne./ As  
to the firste, it is meritorie; the  
seconde also; for, as<sup>940</sup> seith the  
decree, that she hath merite of  
chastitee that yeldeth to hir  
housbonde the dette of hir body, ye,  
though it be agayn hir lykinge and  
the lust of hir herte. / The thridde  
manere is venial sinne, and trewely  
scarsly may ther any of thise be  
with-oute venial sinne, for the  
corrupcion and for the delyt. / The  
fourthe manere is for to  
understonde, if they assemble only  
for amorous love and for noon of  
the forseide causes, but for to  
accomplice thilke brenninge delyt,  
they rekke nevere how ofte, sothly  
it is deedly sinne; and yet, with  
sorwe, somme folk wol peynen hem  
more to doon than to hir appetyt  
suffyseth./

§ 81. The seconde manere of  
chastitee is for to been a clene  
widewe, and eschue the  
embracinges of man, and desyren  
the embracinge of Iesu Crist./ These  
been tho that han been wyves and  
han forgoon hir housbondes, and  
eek wommen that han doon lecherie  
and been releved by Penitence./  
And certes, if that a<sup>945</sup> wyf coude  
kepen hir al chaast by licence of hir



housbonde, so that she yeve nevere noon occasion that he agilte, it were to hire a greet merite./ These manere wommen that observen chastitee moste be clene in herte as well as in body and in thought, and mesurable in clothinge and in contenance; and been abstinent in etinge and drinkinge, in spekinge, and in dede. They been the vessel or the boyste of the blissed Magdelene, that fulfilleth holy chirche of good odour. / The thridde manere of chastitee is virginitee, and it bihoveth that she be holy in herte and clene of body; thanne is she spouse to Iesu Crist, and she is the lyf of angeles./ She is the preisinge of this world, and she is as these martirs in egalitee; she hath in hir that tonge may nat telle ne herte thinke./ Virginitee baar oure lord Iesu Crist, and virgine<sup>950</sup> was himselfe./

§ 82. Another remedie agayns Lecherie is, specially to withdrawen swiche thinges as yeve occasion to thilke vileinye; as ese, etinge and drinkinge; for certes, whan the pot boyleth strongly, the beste remedie is to withdrawe the fyr./ Slepinge longe in greet quiete is eek a greet norice to Lecherie./

§ 83. Another remedie agayns Lecherie is, that a man or a womman eschue the companye of hem by whiche he douteth to be tempted; for al-be-it so that the dede is withstonden, yet is ther greet temptacioun./ Soothly a whyt wal, al-though it ne brenne noght fully by stikinge of a candele, yet is the wal blak of the leyt. / Ful ofte tyme I rede, that no man truste in his owene perfeccioun, but he be stronger than Sampson, and holier

than Daniel, and<sup>955</sup> wyser than  
Salomon./

§ 84. Now after that I have declared  
yow, as I can, the sevene deedly  
sinnes, and somme of hir braunches  
and hir remedies, soothly, if I  
coude, I wolde telle yow the ten  
comandements./ But so heigh a  
doctrine I lete to divines. Nathelees,  
I hope to god they been touched in  
this tretice, everich of hem alle./

De Confessione.

§ 85. Now for-as-muche as the  
second partie of Penitence stant in  
Confessioun of mouth, as I bigan in  
the firste chapitre, I seye, seint  
Augustin seith: / sinne is every  
word and every dede, and al that  
men coveiten agayn the lawe of Iesu  
Crist; and this is for to sinne in  
herte, in mouth, and in dede, by thy  
fyve wittes, that been sighte,  
heringe, smellinge, tastinge or  
savouringe, and felinge./ Now is it  
good to understonde that that  
agreggeth<sup>960</sup> muchel every sinne. /  
Thou shalt considere what thou art  
that doost the sinne, whether thou  
be male or femele, yong or old,  
gentil or thral, free or servant, hool  
or syk, wedded or sengle, ordred or  
unordred, wys or fool, clerk or  
seculer; / if she be of thy kinrede,  
bodily or goostly, or noon; if any of  
thy kinrede have sinned with hir or  
noon, and manye mo thinges./

§ 86. Another circumstaunce is this;  
whether it be doon in fornicacioun,  
or in avoutrie, or noon; incest, or  
noon; mayden, or noon; in manere  
of homicide, or noon; horrible grete  
sinnes, or smale; and how longe  
thou hast continued in sinne./ The  
thridde circumstaunce is the place

ther thou hast do sinne; whether in  
other mennes hous or in thyn  
owene; in feeld or in chirche, or in  
chirche-hawe; in chirche dedicat, or  
noon. / For if the chirche be halwed,  
and man or womman spille his  
kinde in-with that place by wey of  
sinne, or by wikked temptacion, the  
chirche is entredited til it be  
reconciled by the bishop; / and  
the965 preest that dide swich a  
vileinye, to terme of al his lyf, he  
sholde na-more singe masse; and if  
he dide, he sholde doon deedly  
sinne at every tyme that he so songe  
masse./ The fourthe circumstaunce  
is, by whiche mediatours or by  
whiche messagers, as for  
entycement, or for consentement to  
bere companye with felaweshipe;  
for many a wrecche, for to bere  
companye, wil go to the devel of  
helle. / Wher-fore they that eggen or  
consenten to the sinne been  
parteners of the sinne, and of the  
dampnacioun of the sinner. / The  
fifthe circumstaunce is, how manye  
tymes that he hath sinned, if it be in  
his minde, and how ofte that he hath  
falle./ For he that ofte falleth in  
sinne, he despiseth the mercy of  
god, and encreesseth his sinne, and  
is unkinde to Crist; and he wexeth  
the more feble to withstonde sinne,  
and sinneth the more lightly, / and  
the latter aryseth, and is the more  
eschew for to970 shryven him,  
namely, to him that is his  
confessour./ For which that folk,  
whan they falle agayn in hir olde  
folies, outhur they forleten hir olde  
confessours al outrely, or elles they  
departen hir shrift in diverse places;  
but soothly, swich departed shrift  
deserveth no mercy of god of hise  
sinnes./ The sixte circumstaunce is,  
why that a man sinneth, as by  
whiche temptacioun; and if him-self

procure thilke temptacioun, or by the excytinge of other folk; or if he sinne with a womman by force, or by hir owene assent; / or if the womman, maugree hir heed, hath been afforced, or noon; this shal she telle; for coveitise, or for poverte, and if it was hir procuringe, or noon; and swiche manere harneys./ The seventhe circumstaunce is, in what manere he hath doon his sinne, or how<sup>975</sup> that she hath suffred that folk han doon to hir./ And the same shal the man telle pleyedly, with alle circumstaunces; and whether he hath sinned with comune bordelwommen, or noon; / or doon his sinne in holy tymes, or noon; in fasting-tymes, or noon; or biforn his shrifte, or after his latter shrifte;/ and hath, per-aventure, broken therefore his penance enioyned; by whos help and whos conseil; by sorcerie or craft; al moste be told./ Alle these thinges, after that they been grete or smale, engreggen the conscience of man. And eek the preest that is thy Iuge, may the better been avysed of his Iugement in yevinge of thy penaunce, and that is after thy contricioun./ For understond wel, that after tyme that a man hath defouled his baptesme by sinne, if he wole come to salvacioun, ther is noon other wey but by penitence and<sup>980</sup> shrifte and satisfaccioun;/ and namely by the two, if ther be a confessour to which he may shryven him; and the thridde, if he have lyf to parfournen it./

§ 87. Thanne shal man looke and considere, that if he wole maken a trewe and a profitable confessioun, ther moste be foure condiciouns./ First, it moot been in sorweful bitternesse of herte, as seyde the king Ezekias to god: ‘I wol

remembre me alle the yeres of my  
lyf in bitternesse of myn herte.’ /  
This condicioun of bitternesse hath  
fyve signes. The firste is, that  
confessioun moste be shamefast, nat  
for to covere ne hyden his sinne, for  
he hath agilt his god and defouled  
his soule./ And her-of seith seint  
Augustin: ‘the herte travailleth for  
shame of his sinne’; and for he hath  
greet shamefastnesse, he is digne to  
have greet<sup>985</sup> mercy of god. /  
Swich was the confession of the  
publican, that wolde nat heven up  
hise eyen to hevене, for he hadde  
offended god of hevене; for which  
shamefastnesse he hadde anon the  
mercy of god. / And ther-of seith  
seint Augustin, that swich  
shamefast folk been next  
foryevenesse and remissioun./  
Another signe is humilitee in  
confessioun; of which seith seint  
Peter, ‘Humbleth yow under the  
might of god.’ The hond of god is  
mighty in confession, for ther-by  
god foryeveth thee thy sinnes; for  
he allone hath the power./ And this  
humilitee shal been in herte, and in  
signe outward; for right as he hath  
humilitee to god in his herte, right  
so sholde he humble his body  
outward to the preest that sit in  
goddess place./ For which in no  
manere, sith that Crist is sovereyn  
and the preest mene and mediatour  
bitwixe Crist and the sinnere, and  
the sinnere is the laste by wey of  
resoun,<sup>990</sup> thanne sholde nat the  
sinnere sitte as heighe as his  
confessour, but knele biforn him or  
at his feet, but-if maladie destourbe  
it. For he shal nat taken kepe who  
sit there, but in whos place that he  
sitteth./ A man that hath trespassed  
to a lord, and comth for to axe  
mercy and maken his accord, and  
set him doun anon by the lord, men

wolde holden him outrageous, and nat worthy so sone for to have remissioun ne mercy./ The thridde signe is, how that thy shrift sholde be ful of teres, if man may; and if man may nat wepe with hise bodily eyen, lat him wepe in herte. / Swich was the confession of seint Peter; for after that he hadde forsake Iesu Crist, he wente out and weep ful bitterly./ The fourthe signe is, that he ne lette nat for shame to shewen his confessioun./ Swich was the confessioun of the Magdelene, that ne995 spared, for no shame of hem that weren atte feste, for to go to oure lord Iesu Crist and biknowe to him hir sinnes./ The fifthe signe is, that a man or a womman be obeisant to receyven the penaunce that him is enioyned for hise sinnes; for certes Iesu Crist, for the giltes of a man, was obedient to the deeth./

§ 88. The seconde condicion of verray confession is, that it be hastily doon; for certes, if a man hadde a deedly wounde, evere the lenger that he taried to warisshe him-self, the more wolde it corrupte and haste him to his deeth; and eek the wounde wolde be the wors for to hele./ And right so fareth sinne, that longe tyme is in a man unshewed./ Certes, a man oghte hastily shewen hise sinnes for manye causes; as for drede of deeth, that cometh ofte sodenly, and is in no certeyn what tyme it shal be, ne in what place; and eek the drecching of o synne draweth in another; / and eek the lenger that he tarieth, the ferther he is fro1000 Crist. And if he abyde to his laste day, scarsly may he shryven him or remembre him of hise sinnes, or repenten him, for the grevous maladie of his deeth./ And for-as-

much as he ne hath nat in his lyf  
herkned Iesu Crist, whanne he hath  
spoken, he shal crye to Iesu Crist at  
his laste day, and scarsly wol he  
herkne him./ And understond that  
this condicioun moste han four  
thinges. Thy shrift moste be  
purveyed bifore and avysed; for  
wikked haste doth no profit; and  
that a man conne shryve him of hise  
sinnes, be it of pryde, or of envye,  
and so forth of the speses and  
circumstances; / and that he have  
comprehended in his minde the  
nombre and the greetnesse of hise  
sinnes, and how longe that he hath  
leyn in sinne; / and eek that he be  
contrit of hise sinnes, and in  
stedefast purpos, by the grace of  
god, nevere eft to falle in sinne; and  
eek that he drede and countrewaite  
him-self, that he flee the  
occasiouns of sinne to whiche he is  
enclyned. / Also thou shalt shryve  
thee of alle thy sinnes to o man, and  
nat a parcel to o man and a parcel to  
another; that is to understonde, in  
entente to departe thy confessioun  
as for shame or drede; for it nis but  
strangling of thy soule./ For certes,  
Iesu Crist is entierly al good; in him  
nis noon inperfeccioun; and therefore  
outher he foryeveth al parfitly or  
never a deel./ I seye nat that if thou  
be assigned to the penitauncer for  
certein sinne, that thou art bounde  
to shewen him al the remenaunt of  
thy sinnes, of whiche thou hast be  
shriven to thy curat, but-if it lyke to  
thee of thyn humilitee; this is no  
departinge of shrifte. / Ne I seye  
nat, ther-as I speke of divisioun of  
confessioun, that if thou have  
lycense for to shryve thee to a  
discreet and an honeste preest,  
where thee lyketh, and by lycense  
of thy curat, that thou ne mayst wel  
shryve thee to him of alle thy

sinnes. / But lat no blotte be  
bihinde; lat no sinne<sup>1010</sup> been  
untold, as fer as thou hast  
remembraunce./ And whan thou  
shalt be shriven to thy curat, telle  
him eek alle the sinnes that thou  
hast doon sin thou were last y-  
shriven; this is no wikked entente of  
divisioun of shrifte. /

§ 89. Also the verray shrifte axeth  
certeine condiciouns. First, that  
thou shryve thee by thy free wil,  
nought constreyned, ne for shame of  
folk, ne for maladie, ne swiche  
thinges; for it is resoun that he that  
trespasseth by his free wil, that by  
his free wil he confesse his trespas;/  
and that noon other man telle his  
sinne but he him-self, ne he shal nat  
nayte ne denye his sinne, ne wratthe  
him agayn the preest for his  
amonestinge to leve sinne./ The  
seconde condicioun is, that thy  
shrift be lawful; that is to seyn,  
that thou that shryvest thee, and eek  
the preest that hereth thy  
confessioun, been verrailly in the  
feith of holy chirche;/ and that a  
man ne be nat despeired of the  
mercy of Iesu Crist, as Caym or  
Iudas./ And eek a man moot  
accusen him-self of his<sup>1015</sup> owene  
trespas, and nat another; but he shal  
blame and wyten him-self and his  
owene malice of his sinne, and noon  
other;/ but nathelees, if that another  
man be occasioun or entycer of his  
sinne, or the estaat of a persone be  
swich thurgh which his sinne is  
agregged, or elles that he may nat  
pleynly shryven him but he telle the  
persone with which he hath sinned;  
thanne may he telle;/ so that his  
entente ne be nat to bakbyte the  
persone, but only to declaren his  
confessioun./



§ 90. Thou ne shalt nat eek make no lesinges in thy confessioun; for humilitee, per-aventure, to seyn that thou hast doon sinnes of whiche that thou were nevere gilty./ For Seint Augustin seith: if thou, by cause of thyn humilitee, makest lesinges on thy-self, though thou ne were nat in sinne biforn, yet artow thanne in sinne thurgh thy lesinges./ Thou most eek shewe thy sinne by thyn<sup>1020</sup> owene propre mouth, but thou be wexe doumb, and nat by no lettre; for thou that hast doon the sinne, thou shalt have the shame therfore. / Thou shalt nat eek peynte thy confessioun by faire subtile wordes, to covere the more thy sinne; for thanne bigylestow thyself and nat the preest; thou most tellen it pleynly, be it nevere so foul ne so horrible./ Thou shalt eek shryve thee to a preest that is discreet to conseille thee, and eek thou shalt nat shryve thee for veyne glorie, ne for ypocrisye, ne for no cause, but only for the doute of Iesu Crist and the hele of thy soule. / Thou shalt nat eek renne to the preest sodeynly, to tellen him lightly thy sinne, as who-so telleth a Iape or a tale, but avysely and with greet devocioun./ And generally, shryve thee ofte. If thou ofte falle, ofte thou aryse by confessioun./ And thogh thou shryve<sup>1025</sup> thee offer than ones of sinne, of which thou hast be shriven, it is the more merite. And, as seith seint Augustin, thou shalt have the more lightly relesing and grace of god, bothe of sinne and of peyne./ And certes, ones a yere atte leeste wey it is lawful for to been housled; for certes ones a yere alle thinges renovellen./

Explicit secunda pars Penitencie; et sequitur tercia pars eiusdem, de Satisfaccione.

§ 91. Now have I told you of verray Confessioun, that is the seconde partie of Penitence. /

The thridde partie of Penitence is Satisfaccioun; and that stant most generally in almesse and in bodily peyne./ Now been ther three manere of almesses; contricion of herte, where a man offreth himself to god; another is, to han pitee of defaute of hise neighebores; and the thridde is, in yevinge of good conseil goostly and bodily, where men han nede, and namely in sustenance of fode./ And tak keep, that a man hath need of these thinges generally; he hath need of fode, he hath nede of clothing, and herberwe, he hath nede of charitable conseil, and visitinge in prisone and in maladie, and sepulture of his dede body. / And if thou mayst nat visite the nedeful with thy persone, visite him by thy message and by thy yiftes./ These been generally almesses or werkes of charitee of hem that han temporel riches or discrecioun in conseilinge. Of these werkes shaltow heren at the day of dome. /

§ 92. These almesses shaltow doon of thyne owene propre thinges, and hastily, and prively if thou mayst;/ but natheless, if thou mayst nat doon it prively, thou shalt nat forbere to doon almesse though men seen it; so that it be nat doon for thank of the world, but only for thank of Iesu Crist./ For as witnesseth Seint Mathew, *capitolo quinto*, 'A citee may nat been hid that is set on a montayne; ne men

lighte nat a lanterne and put it under  
a busshel; but men sette it on a  
candle-stikke, to yeve light to the  
men in the hous./ Right so shal  
yours light lighten bifore men, that  
they may seen youre gode werkes,  
and glorifie youre fader that is in  
hevene.?’/

§ 93. Now as to speken of bodily  
peyne, it stant in preyeres, in  
wakinges, in fastinges, in vertuose  
techinges of orisouns./ And ye shul  
understonde, that orisouns or  
preyeres is for to seyn a pitous wil  
of herte, that redresseth it in god  
and expresseth it by word outward,  
to remoeven harmes and to han  
thinges espirituel and durable, and  
somytyme temporel thinges; of  
whiche orisouns, certes, in the  
orisoun of the *Pater-noster*, hath  
Iesu Crist enclosed most thinges. /  
Certes, it is privileged of three  
thinges in his dignitee, for which it  
is more digne than any other  
preyere; for<sup>1040</sup> that Iesu Crist  
him-self maked it;/ and it is short,  
for it sholde be coud the more  
lightly, and for to withholden it the  
more esily in herte, and helpen him-  
self the ofter with the orisoun;/ and  
for a man sholde be the lasse wery  
to seyn it, and for a man may nat  
excusen him to lerne it, it is so short  
and so esy; and for it  
comprehendeth in it-self alle gode  
preyeres./ The expositioun of this  
holy preyere, that is so excellent  
and digne, I bitake to thise maistres  
of theologie; save thus muchel wol I  
seyn: that, whan thou prayest that  
god sholde foryeve thee thy giltes  
as thou foryevest hem that agilten to  
thee, be ful wel war that thou be nat  
out of charitee./ This holy orisoun  
amenuseth eek venial sinne; and

therefore it aperteneth specially to penitence./

§ 94. This preyere moste be trewely seyde and in veray feith, and that men preyere to god ordinatly and discretly and devoutly; and alwey a man shal putten his wil to be subget to the wille of god./ This orisoun moste eek been seyde with greet humblesse<sup>1045</sup> and ful pure; honestly, and nat to the anoyauce of any man or womman. It moste eek been continued with the werkes of charitee./ It avayleth eek agayn the vyces of the soule; for, as seith seint Ierome, 'By fastinge been saved the vyces of the flesh, and by preyere the vyces of the soule.' /

§ 95. After this, thou shalt understonde, that bodily peyne stant in wakinge; for Iesu Crist seith, 'waketh, and preyeth that ye ne entre in wikked temptacioun.'/ Ye shul understanden also, that fastinge stant in three thinges; in forberinge of bodily mete and drinke, and in forberinge of worldly Iolitee, and in forberinge of deedly sinne; this is to seyn, that a man shal kepen him fro deedly sinne with al his might./

§ 96. And thou shalt understanden eek, that god ordeyned fastinge; and to fastinge appertenen foure thinges./ Largenesse<sup>1050</sup> to povre folk, gladnesse of herte espirituel, nat to been angry ne anoyed, ne grucche for he fasteth; and also resonable houre for to ete by mesure; that is for to seyn, a man shal nat ete in untyme, ne sitte the lenger at his table to ete for he fasteth. /

§ 97. Thanne shaltow understonde, that bodily peyne stant in disciplyne

or techinge, by word or by  
wrytinge, or in ensample. Also in  
weringe of heyres or of stamin, or  
of haubergeons on hir naked flesh,  
for Cristes sake, and swiche manere  
penances. / But war thee wel that  
swiche manere penances on thy  
flesh ne make nat thyn herte bitter  
or angry or anoyed of thy-self; for  
bette is to caste away thyn heyre,  
than for to caste away the sikernesse  
of Iesu Crist. / And therefore seith  
seint Paul: ‘Clothe yow, as they that  
been chosen of god, in herte of  
misericorde, debonairetee,  
suffraunce, and swich manere of  
clothinge’; of whiche Iesu Crist is  
more apayed than of heyres, or  
haubergeons, or hauberkes./

§ 98. Thanne is disciplyne eek in  
knokkinge of thy brest, in<sup>1055</sup>  
scourginge with yerdes, in  
knelinges, in tribulacions;/ in  
suffringe paciently wronges that  
been doon to thee, and eek in  
pacient suffraunce of maladies, or  
lesinge of worldly catel, or of wyf,  
or of child, or othere freendes./

§ 99. Thanne shaltow understonde,  
whiche thinges destourben  
penaunce; and this is in foure  
maneres, that is, drede, shame,  
hope, and wanhope, that is,  
desperacion./ And for to speke first  
of drede; for which he weneth that  
he may suffre no penaunce; / ther-  
agayns is remedie for to thinke, that  
bodily penaunce is but short and  
litel at regard of the peyne of helle,  
that is so cruel and so long, that it  
lasteth with-outen ende. /

§ 100. Now again the shame that a  
man hath to shryven him, and  
namely, these ypocrites that wolden  
been holden so parfite<sup>1060</sup> that they

han no nede to shryven hem;/  
agayns that shame, sholde a man  
thinke that, by wey of resoun, that  
he that hath nat been ashamed to  
doon foule thinges, certes him oghte  
nat been ashamed to do faire  
thinges, and that is confessiouns. /  
A man sholde eek thinke, that god  
seeth and woot alle hise thoghtes  
and alle hise werkes; to him may no  
thing been hid ne covered./ Men  
sholden eek remembren hem of the  
shame that is to come at the day of  
dome, to hem that been nat penitent  
and shriven in this present lyf./ For  
alle the creatures in erthe and in  
helle shullen seen apertly al that  
they hyden in this world./

§ 101. Now for to speken of the  
hope of hem that been  
negligent<sup>1065</sup> and slowe to shryven  
hem, that stant in two maneres. /  
That oon is, that he hopeth for to  
live longe and for to purchacen  
muche richesse for his delyt, and  
thanne he wol shryven him; and, as  
he seith, him semeth thanne tymely  
y-nough to come to shrifte./  
Another is, surquidrie that he hath  
in Cristes mercy./ Agayns the firste  
vyce, he shal thinke, that oure lyf is  
in no sikernesse; and eek that alle  
the riches in this world ben in  
aventure, and passen as a shadwe on  
the wal./ And, as seith seint  
Gregorie, that it aperteneth to the  
grete rightwisnesse of god, that  
nevere shal the peyne stinte of hem  
that nevere wolde withdrawen hem  
fro sinne, hir thankes, but ay  
continue in sinne; for thilke  
perpetuel wil to do sinne shul they  
han perpetuel peyne. /

§ 102. Wanhope is in two maneres:  
the firste wanhope is in the mercy  
of Crist; that other is that they

thinken, that they ne mighte nat  
longe persevere in goodnesse./ The  
firste wanhope<sup>1070</sup> comth of that  
he demeth that he hath sinned so  
greetly and so ofte, and so longe  
leyn in sinne, that he shal nat be  
saved./ Certes, agayns that cursed  
wanhope sholde he thinke, that the  
passion of Iesu Crist is more strong  
for to unbinde than sinne is strong  
for to binde./ Agayns the seconde  
wanhope, he shal thinke, that as ofte  
as he falleth he may aryse agayn by  
penitence. And thogh he never so  
longe have leyn in sinne, the mercy  
of Crist is alwey redy to receiven  
him to mercy./ Agayns the  
wanhope, that he demeth that he  
sholde nat longe persevere in  
goodnesse, he shal thinke, that the  
feblesse of the devel may no-thing  
doon but-if men wol suffren him;/  
and eek he shal han strengthe of the  
help of god, and of al holy chirche,  
and of the proteccioun of aungels, if  
him list./<sup>1075</sup>

§ 103. Thanne shal men  
understonde what is the fruit of  
penaunce; and, after the word of  
Iesu Crist, it is the endeles blisse  
of hevene,/ ther Ioye hath no  
contrariouste of wo ne grevaunce,  
ther alle harmes been passed of this  
present lyf; ther-as is the sikernesse  
fro the peyne of helle; ther-as is the  
blisful companye that reioysen hem  
everemo, everich of otheres Ioye;/  
ther-as the body of man, that  
whylom was foul and derk, is more  
cleer than the sonne; ther-as the  
body, that whylom was syk, freele,  
and feble, and mortal, is immortal,  
and so strong and so hool that ther  
may no-thing apeyren it; / ther-as ne  
is neither hunger, thurst, ne cold,  
but every soule replenished with the  
sighte of the parfit knowinge of

god./ This blisful regne may men  
purchase by poverte espirituel, and  
the glorie by lowenesse; the plentee  
of Ioye by hunger and thurst, and  
the reste by travaille; and the lyf by  
deeth and mortificacion of sinne.

/1080

Here taketh the makere of this book  
his leve.

§ 104. Now preye I to hem alle that  
herkne this litel tretis or rede, that if  
ther be any thing in it that lyketh  
hem, that ther-of they thanken oure  
lord Iesu Crist, of whom procedeth  
al wit and al goodnesse./ And if ther  
be any thing that displese hem, I  
preye hem also that they arrette it to  
the defaute of myn unconninge, and  
nat to my wil, that wolde ful fayn  
have seyde better if I hadde had  
conninge./ For oure boke seith, ‘al  
that is writen is writen for oure  
doctrine’; and that is myn entente./  
Wherfore I biseke yow mekely for  
the mercy of god, that ye preye for  
me, that Crist have mercy on me  
and foryeve me my giltes:—and  
namely, of my translacions and  
endytinges of worldly<sup>1085</sup> vanitees,  
the whiche I revoke in my  
retracciouns:/ as is the book of  
Troilus; The book also of Fame;  
The book of the nyetene Ladies;  
The book of the Duchesse; The  
book of seint Valentynes day of the  
Parlement of Briddes; The tales of  
Caunterbury, thilke that sounen in-  
to sinne; / The book of the Leoun;  
and many another book, if they  
were in my remembrance; and  
many a song and many a lecherous  
lay; that Crist for his grete mercy  
foryeve me the sinne./ But of the  
translacion of Boece de  
Consolacione, and othere bokes of  
Legendes of seintes, and omelies,



and moralitee, and devocioun,/ that  
thanke I oure lord Iesu Crist and his  
blisful moder, and alle the seintes of  
hevene;/ bisekinge hem that they  
from hennes-forth, un-to my lyves  
ende, sende me grace to biwayle my  
giltes, and to studie to the  
salvaciou of my soule:—and  
graunte me grace of verray  
penitence, confessioun and  
satisfaccioun to1090 doon in this  
present lyf;/ thurgh the benigne  
grace of him that is king of kinges  
and preest over alle preestes, that  
boghte us with the precious blood  
of his herte;/ so that I may been oon  
of hem1092 at the day of dome that  
shulle be saved: *Qui cum patre, &c.*

Here is ended the book of the Tales  
of Caunterbury, compiled by  
Geffrey Chaucer, of whos soule  
Iesu Crist have mercy. Amen.

[\[Back to Table of Contents\]](#)

## APPENDIX TO GROUP A.

### THE TALE OF GAMELYN.

LITHEETH, and lesteneth ·  
and herkeneth aright,  
And ye schulle heere a  
talking · of a doughty  
knight;  
Sire Iohan of Boundys ·  
was his righte name,  
He cowde of norture y-  
nough · and mochil of  
game.  
Thre sones the knight  
hadde · that with his body  
he wan;5  
The eldest was a moche  
schrewe · and sone he  
bigan.  
His bretheren loved wel  
here fader · and of him  
were agast,  
The eldest deserved his  
fadres curs · and had it at  
the last.  
The goode knight his fader  
· livede so yore,  
That deth was comen him  
to · and handled him ful  
sore.10  
The goode knight cared  
sore · syk ther he lay,  
How his children scholde ·  
liven after his day.  
He hadde ben wyde-wher ·  
but non housbond he was,  
Al the lond that he hadde ·  
it was verrey purchas.  
Fayn he wolde it were ·  
dressed among hem alle,15  
That ech of hem hadde his  
part · as it mighte falle.

Tho sente he in-to cuntre ·  
after wyse knightes,  
To helpe delen his londes ·  
and dresen hem to-rightes.  
He sente hem word by  
lettres · they schulden hye  
blyve,  
If they wolde speke with  
him · whyl he was on  
lyve.<sup>20</sup>  
Tho the knightes herden ·  
syk that he lay,  
Hadde they no reste ·  
nother night ne day,  
Til they comen to him · ther  
he lay stille  
On his deth-bedde · to  
abyde goddes wille.  
Than seyde the goode  
knight · syk ther he lay,<sup>25</sup>  
'Lordes, I you warne · for  
soth, withoute nay,  
I may no lenger liven · heer  
in this stounde;  
For thurgh goddes wille ·  
deth draweth me to  
grounde.'  
Ther nas non of hem alle ·  
that herde him aright,  
That they ne hadden reuthe  
· of that ilke knight,<sup>30</sup>  
And seyde, 'sir, for goddes  
love · ne dismay you  
nought;  
God may do bote of bale ·  
that is now y-wrought.'  
Than spak the goode knight  
· syk ther he lay,  
'Boote of bale god may  
sende · I wot it is no nay;  
But I byseke you, knightes ·  
for the love of me,<sup>35</sup>  
Goth and dreseth my lond  
· among my sones three.  
And sires, for the love of  
god · deleth hem nat amis,  
And forgetith nat Gamelyn  
· my yonge sone that is.

Taketh heed to that on · as  
wel as to that other;  
Selde ye see ony eyr ·  
helpen his brother.'40  
Tho leete they the knight  
lyen · that was nought in  
hele,  
And wenten in-to counsel ·  
his londes for to dele;  
For to delen hem alle · to  
oon, that was her thought,  
And for Gamelyn was  
yongest · he schulde have  
nought.  
Al the lond that ther was ·  
they dalten it in two,45  
And leeten Gamelyn the  
yonge · withoute londe go,  
And ech of hem seyde · to  
other ful lowde,  
His bretheren mighte yeve  
him lond · whan he good  
cowde.  
Whan they hadde deled ·  
the lond at here wille,  
They comen ayein to the  
knight · ther he lay ful  
stille,50  
And tolden him anon-right ·  
how they hadden wrought;  
And the knight ther he lay ·  
lyked it right nought.  
Than seyde the knight · 'by  
seynt Martyn,  
For al that ye have y-doon ·  
yit is the lond myn;  
For goddes love,  
neyhebours · stondest alle  
stille,55  
And I wil dele my lond ·  
right after my wille.  
Iohan, myn eldeste sone ·  
schal have plowes fyve,  
That was my fadres  
heritage · whyl he was on  
lyve;  
And my middeleste sone ·  
fyve plowes of lond,

That I halp for to gete ·  
with my righte hond;60  
And al myn other purchas ·  
of londes and leedes,  
That I biquethe Gamelyn ·  
and alle my goode steedes.  
And I biseke yow, goode  
men · that lawe conne of  
londe,  
For Gamelynes love · that  
my queste stonde.’  
Thus dalte the knight · his  
lond by his day,65  
Right on his deth-bedde ·  
syk ther he lay;  
And sone aftirward · he lay  
stonn-stille,  
And deyde whan tyme com  
· as it was Cristes wille.  
And anon as he was deed ·  
and under gras y-grave,  
Sone the elder brother ·  
gyled the yonge knave;70  
He took into his hond · his  
lond and his leede,  
And Gamelyn himselfe · to  
clothen and to feede.  
He clothed him and fedde  
him · yvel and eek wrothe,  
And leet his londes for-fare  
· and his houses bothe,  
His parkes and his woodes ·  
and dede nothing wel;75  
And seththen he it aboughte  
· on his faire fel.  
So longe was Gamelyn · in  
his brotheres halle,  
For the strengest, of good  
wil · they doutiden him  
alle;  
Ther was non ther-inne ·  
nowther yong ne old,  
That wolde wraththe  
Gamelyn · were he never so  
bold.80  
Gamelyn stood on a day · in  
his brotheres yerde,

And bigan with his hond ·  
to handlen his berde;  
He thoughte on his londes ·  
that layen unsawe,  
And his faire okes · that  
down were y-drawe;  
His parkes were y-broken ·  
and his deer bireved;<sup>85</sup>  
Of alle his goode steedes ·  
noon was him bileved;  
His howses were unhiled ·  
and ful yvel dight;  
Tho thoughte Gamelyn · it  
wente nought aright.  
Afterward cam his brother ·  
walkinge thare,  
And seyde to Gamelyn · ‘is  
our mete yare?’<sup>90</sup>  
Tho wraththed him  
Gamelyn · and swor by  
goddes book,  
‘Thou schalt go bake thy-  
self · I wil nought be thy  
cook!’  
‘How? brother Gamelyn ·  
how answerest thou now?  
Thou spake never such a  
word · as thou dost now.’  
‘By my faith,’ seyde  
Gamelyn · ‘now me  
thinketh neede,<sup>95</sup>  
Of alle the harmes that I  
have · I tok never ar heede.  
My parkes ben to-broken ·  
and my deer bireved,  
Of myn armure and my  
steedes · nought is me  
bileved;  
Al that my fader me  
biquath · al goth to schame,  
And therfor have thou  
goddes curs · brother by thy  
name!’<sup>100</sup>  
Than bispak his brother ·  
that rape was of rees,  
‘Stond stille, gadeling · and  
hold right thy pees;

Thou schalt be fayn for to  
have · thy mete and thy  
wede;

What spekest thou,  
Gamelyn · of lond other of  
leede?’

Thanne seyde Gamelyn ·  
the child that was ying,105  
‘Cristes curs mot he have ·  
that clepeth me gadeling!  
I am no worse gadeling · ne  
no worse wight,  
But born of a lady · and  
geten of a knight.’

Ne durste he nat to  
Gamelyn · ner a-foote go,  
But clepide to him his men  
· and seyde to hem tho,110  
‘Goth and beteth this boy ·  
and reveth him his wit,  
And lat him lerne another  
tyme · to answe me bet.’

Thanne seyde the child ·  
yonge Gamelyn,  
‘Cristes curs mot thou have  
· brother art thou myn!  
And if I schal algate · be  
beten anon,115

Cristes curs mot thou have ·  
but thou be that oon!’  
And anon his brother · in  
that grete hete

Made his men to fette  
staves · Gamelyn to bete.  
Whan that everich of hem ·  
a staf hadde y-nome,  
Gamelyn was war anon ·  
tho he seigh hem come;120  
Tho Gamelyn seigh hem  
come · he loked over-al,  
And was war of a pestel ·  
stood under a wal;  
Gamelyn was light of foot ·  
and thider gan he lepe,  
And drof alle his brotheres  
men · right on an hepe.

He loked as a wilde lyoun ·  
and leyde on good  
woon;125  
Tho his brother say that · he  
bigan to goon;  
He fley up in-til a loft · and  
schette the dore fast;  
Thus Gamelyn with the  
pestel · made hem alle  
agast.  
Some for Gamelynes love ·  
and some for his eye,  
Alle they drowe by halves ·  
tho he gan to pleye.130  
‘What! how now?’ seyde  
Gamelyn · ‘evel mot ye  
thee!  
Wil ye biginne kontek · and  
so sone flee?’  
Gamelyn soughte his  
brother · whider he was  
flowe,  
And saugh wher he loked ·  
out at a windowe.  
‘Brother,’ sayde Gamelyn ·  
‘com a litel ner,135  
And I wil teche thee a play ·  
atte bokeler.’  
His brother him answerde ·  
and swor by seynt Richer,  
‘Whyl the pestel is in thin  
hond · I wil come no neer:  
Brother, I wil make thy  
pees · I swere by Cristes  
ore;  
Cast away the pestel · and  
wrathe thee no-more.’140  
‘I mot neede,’ sayde  
Gamelyn · ‘wrathe me at  
oones,  
For thou wolde make thy  
men · to breke myne  
boones,  
Ne hadde I had mayn · and  
might in myn armes,  
To have y-put hem fro me ·  
they wolde have do me  
harmes.’



‘Gamelyn,’ sayde his  
brother · ‘be thou nought  
wroth, 145  
For to seen thee have harm  
· it were me right loth;  
I ne dide it nought, brother ·  
but for a fonding,  
For to loken if thou were  
strong · and art so ying.’  
‘Com a-down than to me ·  
and graunte me my bone  
Of thing I wil thee aske ·  
and we schul saughte  
sone.’ 150  
Doun than cam his brother ·  
that fikil was and fel,  
And was swithe sore · agast  
of the pestel.  
He seyde, ‘brother  
Gamelyn · aske me thy  
boone,  
And loke thou me blame ·  
but I graunte sone.’  
Thanne seyde Gamelyn ·  
‘brother, y-wis, 155  
And we schulle ben at oon ·  
thou most me graunte this:  
Al that my fader me  
biquath · whyl he was on  
lyve,  
Thou most do me it have ·  
yif we schul nat stryve.’  
‘That schalt thou have,  
Gamelyn · I swere by  
Cristes ore!  
Al that thy fader thee  
biquath · though thou  
woldest have more; 160  
Thy lond, that lyth laye · ful  
wel it schal be sowe,  
And thyn howses reysed up  
· that ben leyd so lowe.’  
Thus seyde the knight · to  
Gamelyn with mowthe,  
And thoughte eek of falsnes  
· as he wel couthe.

The knight thoughte on  
tresoun · and Gamelyn on  
noon, 165  
And wente and kiste his  
brother · and, whan they  
were at oon,  
Allas! yonge Gamelyn ·  
nothing he ne wiste  
With which a false tresoun ·  
his brother him kiste!  
Litheth, and lesteneth · and  
holdeth your tonge,  
And ye schul heere talking ·  
of Gamelyn the yonge. 170  
Ther was ther bisyden ·  
cryed a wrastling,  
And therfor ther was set up  
· a ram and a ring;  
And Gamelyn was in good  
wil · to wende therto,  
For to preven his might ·  
what he cowthe do.  
'Brother,' seyde Gamelyn ·  
'by seynt Richer, 175  
Thou most lene me to-night  
· a litel courser  
That is freisch to the spore ·  
on for to ryde;  
I most on an erande · a litel  
her bisyde.'  
'By god!' seyde his brother  
· 'of steedes in my stalle  
Go and chese thee the best ·  
and spare non of alle 180  
Of steedes or of coursers ·  
that stonden hem bisyde;  
And tel me, goode brother ·  
whider thou wolt ryde.'  
'Her bisyde, brother · is  
cryed a wrastling,  
And therfor schal be set up  
· a ram and a ring;  
Moche worschip it were ·  
brother, to us alle, 185  
Might I the ram and the  
ring · bring home to this  
halle.'

A steede ther was sadeled ·  
smertely and skeet;  
Gamelyn did a paire spores  
· fast on his feet.  
He sette his foot in the  
styrop · the steede he  
bistrood,  
And toward the wrasteling ·  
the yonge child rood.190  
Tho Gamelyn the yonge ·  
was ride out at the gat,  
The false knight his brother  
· lokked it after that,  
And bisoughte Iesu Crist ·  
that is heven king,  
He mighte breke his nekke ·  
in that wrasteling.  
As sone as Gamelyn com ·  
ther the place was,195  
He lighte doun of his steede  
· and stood on the gras,  
And ther he herd a  
frankeleyn · wayloway  
singe,  
And bigan bitterly · his  
hondes for to wringe.  
'Goode man,' seyde  
Gamelyn · 'why makestow  
this fare?  
Is ther no man that may ·  
you helpe out of this  
care?'200  
'Allas!' seyde this  
frankeleyn · 'that ever was I  
bore!  
For tweye stalworthe sones  
· I wene that I have lore;  
A champioun is in the place  
· that hath y-wrought me  
sorwe,  
For he hath slayn my two  
sones · but-if god hem  
borwe.  
I wold yeve ten pound · by  
Iesu Crist! and more,205  
With the nones I fand a  
man · to handelen him  
sore.'

‘Goode man,’ sayde  
Gamelyn · ‘wilt thou wel  
doon,  
Hold myn hors, whyl my  
man · draweth of my  
schoon,  
And help my man to kepe ·  
my clothes and my steede,  
And I wil into place go · to  
loke if I may speede.’<sup>210</sup>  
‘By god!’ sayde the  
frankeleyn · ‘anon it schal  
be doon;  
I wil my-self be thy man ·  
and drawen of thy schoon,  
And wende thou into the  
place · Iesu Crist thee  
speede,  
And drede not of thy  
clothes · nor of thy goode  
steede.’  
Barfoot and unger ·  
Gamelyn in cam,<sup>215</sup>  
Alle that weren in the place  
· heede of him they nam,  
How he durste aunte him ·  
of him to doon his might  
That was so doughty  
champioun · in wrastling  
and in fight.  
Up sterte the champioun ·  
rapely and anoon,  
Toward yonge Gamelyn ·  
he bigan to goon,<sup>220</sup>  
And sayde, ‘who is thy  
fader · and who is thy sire?  
For sothe thou art a gret  
fool · that thou come hire!’  
Gamelyn answerde · the  
champioun tho,  
‘Thou knewe wel my fader  
· whyl he couthe go,  
Whyles he was on lyve · by  
seint Martyn!<sup>225</sup>  
Sir Iohan of Boundys was  
his name · and I Gamelyn.’

‘Felaw,’ seyde the  
champioun · ‘al-so mot I  
thryve,  
I knew wel thy fader · whyl  
he was on lyve;  
And thyself, Gamelyn · I  
wil that thou it heere,  
Whyl thou were a yong boy  
· a moche schrewe thou  
were.’<sup>230</sup>

Than seyde Gamelyn · and  
swor by Cristes ore,  
‘Now I am older woxe ·  
thou schalt me finde a  
more!’

‘By god!’ sayde the  
champioun · ‘welcome  
mote thou be!  
Come thou ones in myn  
hond · schalt thou never  
thee.’

It was wel withinne the  
night · and the moone  
schon,<sup>235</sup>

Whan Gamelyn and the  
champioun · togider gonne  
goon.

The champioun caste tornes  
· to Gamelyn that was prest,  
And Gamelyn stood stille ·  
and bad him doon his best.  
Thanne seyde Gamelyn · to  
the champioun,

‘Thou art faste aboute · to  
bringe me adoun;’<sup>240</sup>

Now I have y-proved ·  
many tornes of thyne,  
Thow most,’ he seyde,  
‘proven · on or two of  
myne.’

Gamelyn to the champioun  
· yede smertely anon,  
Of all the tornes that he  
cowthe · he schewed him  
but oon,

And caste him on the left  
syde · that three ribbes to-  
brak,<sup>245</sup>

And ther-to his oon arm ·  
that yaf a gret crak.  
Thanne seyde Gamelyn ·  
smertely anoon,  
‘Schal it be holde for a cast  
· or elles for noon?’  
‘By god!’ seyde the  
champioun · ‘whether that  
it be,  
He that cometh ones in thin  
hand · schal he never  
thee!’<sup>250</sup>  
Than seyde the frankeleyn ·  
that had his sones there,  
‘Blessed be thou, Gamelyn  
· that ever thou bore were!’  
The frankeleyn seyde to the  
champioun · of him stood  
him noon eye,  
‘This is yonge Gamelyn ·  
that taughte thee this  
pleye.’  
Agein answered the  
champioun · that lyked  
nothing wel,<sup>255</sup>  
‘He is a lither mayster · and  
his pley is right fel;  
Sith I wrastled first · it is y-  
go ful yore,  
But I was nevere in my lyf ·  
handeled so sore.’  
Gamelyn stood in the place  
· allone withoute serk,  
And seyde, ‘if ther be eny  
mo · lat hem come to  
werk;<sup>260</sup>  
The champioun that peyned  
him · to werke so sore,  
It semeth by his  
continaunce · that he wil  
no-more.’  
Gamelyn in the place ·  
stood as stille as stoon,  
For to abyde wrasteling ·  
but ther com noon;  
Ther was noon with  
Gamelyn · wolde wrastle  
more,<sup>265</sup>

For he handled the  
champioun · so wonderly  
sore.  
Two gentil-men ther were ·  
that yemed the place,  
Comen to Gamelyn · (god  
yeve him goode grace!)  
And sayde to him, ‘do on ·  
thyn hosen and thy schoon,  
For sothe at this tyme · this  
feire is y-doon.’<sup>270</sup>  
And than seyde Gamelyn ·  
‘so mot I wel fare,  
I have nought yet halven-  
del · sold up my ware.’  
Tho seyde the champioun ·  
‘so brouke I my sweere,  
He is a fool that ther-of  
byeth · thou sellest it so  
deere.’  
Tho sayde the frankeleyn ·  
that was in moche care,<sup>275</sup>  
‘Felaw,’ he seyde · ‘why  
lakkest thou his ware?  
By seynt Iame in Galys ·  
that many man hath sought,  
Yet it is to good cheep ·  
that thou hast y-bought.’  
Tho that wardeynes were ·  
of that wrasteling  
Come and broughte  
Gamelyn · the ram and the  
ring,<sup>280</sup>  
And seyden, ‘have,  
Gamelyn · the ring and the  
ram,  
For the beste wrasteler ·  
that ever here cam.’  
Thus wan Gamelyn · the  
ram and the ring,  
And wente with moche  
Ioye · home in the morning.  
His brother seihe wher he  
cam · with the grete  
rowte,<sup>285</sup>  
And bad schitte the gate ·  
and holde him withoute.

The porter of his lord · was  
ful sore agast,  
And sterte anon to the gate ·  
and lokked it fast.  
Now litheth, and lesteneth ·  
bothe yonge and olde,  
And ye schul heere gamen ·  
of Gamelyn the bolde.290  
Gamelyn come ther-to · for  
to have comen in,  
And thanne was it y-schet ·  
faste with a pin;  
Than seyde Gamelyn ·  
'porter, undo the yat,  
For many good mannes  
sone · stondest ther-at.'  
Than answerd the porter ·  
and swor by goddes  
berde,295  
'Thow ne schalt, Gamelyn ·  
come into this yerde.'  
'Thow lixt,' sayde  
Gamelyn · 'so browke I my  
chin!'  
He smot the wicket with his  
foot · and brak away the  
pin.  
The porter seyh tho · it  
might no better be,  
He sette foot on erthe · and  
bigan to flee.300  
'By my faith,' seyde  
Gamelyn · 'that travail is y-  
lore,  
For I am of foot as light as  
thou · though thou haddest  
swore.'  
Gamelyn overtook the  
porter · and his teene wrak,  
And gerte him in the nekke  
· that the bon to-brak,  
And took him by that oon  
arm · and threw him in a  
welle,305  
Seven fadmen it was deep ·  
as I have herd telle.  
Whan Gamelyn the yonge ·  
thus hadde pleyd his play,



Alle that in the yerde were ·  
drewen hem away;  
They dredden him ful sore ·  
for werkes that he  
wroughte,  
And for the faire company ·  
that he thider broughte.310  
Gamelyn yede to the gate ·  
and leet it up wyde;  
He leet in alle maner men ·  
that gon in wolde or ryde,  
And seyde, ‘ye be welcome  
· withouten eny greeve,  
For we wiln be maistres  
heer · and aske no man  
leve.  
Yestirday I lefte’ · seyde  
yonge Gamelyn,315  
‘In my brother seller · fyve  
tonne of wyn;  
I wil not that this  
compaignye · parten a-  
twinne,  
And ye wil doon after me ·  
whyl eny sope is thrinne,  
And if my brother grucche ·  
or make foul cheere,  
Other for spense of mete or  
drink · that we spenden  
heere,320  
I am oure catour · and bere  
oure aller purs,  
He schal have for his  
grucching · seint Maries  
curs.  
My brother is a niggoun · I  
swer by Cristes ore,  
And we wil spende largely ·  
that he hath spared yore;  
And who that maketh  
grucching · that we here  
dwelle,325  
He schal to the porter · into  
the draw-welle.’  
Seven dayes and seven  
night · Gamelyn held his  
feste,

With moche mirth and  
solas · that was ther, and no  
cheste;  
In a little toret · his brother  
lay y-steke,  
And sey hem wasten his  
good · but durste he not  
speke.330  
Erly on a morning · on the  
eighthe day,  
The gestes come to  
Gamelyn · and wolde gon  
here way.  
'Lordes,' seyde Gamelyn ·  
'wil ye so hye?  
Al the wyn is not yet  
dronke · so brouke I myn  
ye.'  
Gamelyn in his herte · was  
he ful wo.335  
Whan his gestes took her  
leve · from him for to go;  
He wolde they had lenger  
abide · and they seyde  
'nay,'  
But bitaughte Gamelyn ·  
god, and good day.  
Thus made Gamelyn his  
feest · and broughte it wel  
to ende,  
And after his gestes · toke  
leve to wende.340  
Litheth, and lesteneth · and  
holdeth youre tonge,  
And ye schul heere gamen ·  
of Gamelyn the yonge;  
Herkeneth, lordinges · and  
lesteneth aright,  
Whan alle gestes were goon  
· how Gamelyn was dight.  
Al the whyl that Gamelyn ·  
heeld his mangerye,345  
His brother thoughte on  
him be wreke · with his  
treccherye.  
Tho Gamelyns gestes ·  
were riden and y-goon,

Gamelyn stood allone ·  
frendes had he noon;  
Tho after ful soone ·  
withinne a litel stounde,  
Gamelyn was y-taken · and  
ful harde y-bounde.350  
Forth com the false knight ·  
out of the soleer,  
To Gamelyn his brother ·  
he yede ful neer,  
And sayde to Gamelyn ·  
‘who made thee so bold  
For to stroye my stoor · of  
myn houshold?’  
‘Brother,’ seyde Gamelyn ·  
‘wraththe thee right  
nought,355  
For it is many day y-gon ·  
siththen it was bought;  
For, brother, thou hast y-  
had · by seynt Richer,  
Of fiftene plowes of lond ·  
this sixtene yer,  
And of alle the beestes ·  
thou hast forth bred,  
That my fader me biquath ·  
on his deth-bed;360  
Of al this sixtene yeer · I  
yeve thee the prow,  
For the mete and the drink ·  
that we have spende now.’  
Thanne seyde the false  
knight · (evel mot he thee!)  
‘Herkne, brother Gamelyn ·  
what I wol yeve thee;  
For of my body, brother ·  
heir geten have I noon,365  
I wil make thee myn heir · I  
swere by seint Iohan.’  
‘*Par ma foy!*’ sayde  
Gamelyn · ‘and if it so be,  
And thou thenke as thou  
seyst · god yelde it thee!’  
Nothing wiste Gamelyn · of  
his brotheres gyle;  
Therefore he him bigyled ·  
in a litel whyle.370

‘Gamelyn,’ seyde he · ‘o  
thing I thee telle;  
Tho thou threwe my porter  
· in the draw-welle,  
I swor in that wraththe · and  
in that grete moot,  
That thou schuldest be  
bounde · bothe hand and  
foot;  
Therfore I thee biseche ·  
brother Gamelyn,<sup>375</sup>  
Lat me nought be  
forsworen · brother art thou  
myn;  
Lat me binde thee now ·  
bothe hand and feet,  
For to holde myn avow · as  
I thee biheet.’  
‘Brother,’ sayde Gamelyn ·  
‘al-so mot I thee!  
Thou schalt not be  
forsworen · for the love of  
me.’<sup>380</sup>  
Tho made they Gamelyn to  
sitte · mighte he nat stonde,  
Til they hadde him bounde  
· bothe foot and honde.  
The false knight his brother  
· of Gamelyn was agast,  
And sente aftir feteres · to  
feteren him fast.  
His brother made lesinges ·  
on him ther he stood,<sup>385</sup>  
And tolde hem that comen  
in · that Gamelyn was  
wood.  
Gamelyn stood to a post ·  
bounden in the halle,  
Tho that comen in ther ·  
loked on him alle.  
Ever stood Gamelyn · even  
upright;  
But mete ne drink had he  
non · neither day ne  
night.<sup>390</sup>  
Than seyde Gamelyn ·  
‘brother, by myn hals,

Now I have aspyed · thou  
art a party fals;  
Had I wist that tresoun ·  
that thou haddest y-founde,  
I wolde have yeve thee  
strokes · or I had be  
bounde!’  
Gamelyn stood bounden ·  
stille as eny stoon;<sup>395</sup>  
Two dayes and two nightes  
· mete had he noon.  
Thanne seyde Gamelyn ·  
that stood y-bounde  
stronge,  
‘Adam spenser · me thinkth  
I faste to longe;  
Adam spenser · now I  
byseche thee,  
For the mochel love · my  
fader loved thee,<sup>400</sup>  
If thou may come to the  
keyes · lese me out of bond,  
And I wil parte with thee ·  
of my free lond.’  
Thanne seyde Adam · that  
was the spencer,  
‘I have served thy brother ·  
this sixtene yeer,  
If I leete thee goon · out of  
his bour,<sup>405</sup>  
He wolde say afterward · I  
were a traytour.’  
‘Adam,’ sayde Gamelyn ·  
‘so brouke I myn hals!  
Thou schalt finde my  
brother · atte laste fals;  
Therfor, brother Adam ·  
louse me out of bond,  
And I wil parte with thee ·  
of my free lond.’<sup>410</sup>  
‘Up swich a forward’ ·  
seyde Adam, ‘y-wis,  
I wil do therto · al that in  
me is.’  
‘Adam,’ seyde Gamelyn ·  
‘al-so mot I thee,  
I wol holde thee covenant ·  
and thou wil me.’

Anon as Adames lord · to  
bedde was y-goon,415  
Adam took the keyes, and  
leet · Gamelyn out anoon;  
He unlokke Gamelyn ·  
bothe handes and feet,  
In hope of avauncement ·  
that he him biheet.  
Than seyde Gamelyn ·  
‘thanked be goddes sonde!  
Now I am loosed · bothe  
foot and honde;420  
Had I now eten · and  
dronken aright,  
Ther is noon in this hous ·  
schulde binde me this  
night.’  
Adam took Gamelyn · as  
stille as ony stoon,  
And ladde him in-to spence  
· rapely and anon,  
And sette him to soper ·  
right in a privee stede,425  
He bad him do gladly · and  
Gamelyn so dede.  
Anon as Gamelyn hadde ·  
eten wel and fyn,  
And therto y-dronke wel ·  
of the rede wyn,  
‘Adam,’ seyde Gamelyn ·  
‘what is now thy reed?  
Wher I go to my brother ·  
and girde of his heed?’430  
‘Gamelyn,’ seyde Adam ·  
‘it schal not be so.  
I can teche thee a reed · that  
is worth the two.  
I wot wel for sothe · that  
this is no nay,  
We schul have a mangery ·  
right on Soneday;  
Abbotes and priours · many  
heer schal be,435  
And other men of holy  
chirche · as I telle thee;  
Thow schalt stonde up by  
the post · as thou were  
hond-fast,

And I schal leve hem  
unloke · away thou may  
hem cast.  
Whan that they have eten ·  
and wasschen here hondes,  
Thou schalt biseke hem alle  
· to bring thee out of  
bondes;440  
And if they wille borwe  
thee · that were good game,  
Then were thou out of  
prisoun · and I out of  
blame;  
And if everich of hem · say  
unto us ‘nay,’  
I schal do an other · I swere  
by this day!  
Thou schalt have a good  
staf · and I wil have  
another;445  
And Cristes curs have that  
oon · that faileth that  
other!’  
‘Ye, for gode!’ sayde  
Gamelyn · ‘I say it for me,  
If I fayle on my syde · yvel  
mot I thee!  
If we schul algate · assoile  
hem of here sinne,  
Warne me, brother Adam ·  
whan I schal biginne.’450  
‘Gamelyn,’ seyde Adam ·  
‘by seynte Charite,  
I wil warne thee biforn ·  
whan that it schal be;  
Whan I twinke on thee ·  
loke for to goon,  
And cast away the feteres ·  
and com to me anoon.’  
‘Adam,’ seide Gamelyn ·  
‘blessed be thy bones!455  
That is a good counseil ·  
yeven for the nones;  
If they werne me thanne · to  
bringe me out of bendes,  
I wol sette goode strokes ·  
right on here lendes.’

Tho the Sunday was y-  
come · and folk to the feste,  
Faire they were welcomed ·  
both leste and meste;460  
And ever atte halle-dore · as  
they comen in,  
They caste their eye · on  
yonge Gamelyn.  
The false knight his brother  
· ful of trechery,  
Alle the gestes that ther  
were · atte mangery,  
Of Gamelyn his brother · he  
tolde hem with mouthe465  
Al the harm and the schame  
· that he telle couthe.  
Tho they were served · of  
messes two or three,  
Than seyde Gamelyn ·  
'how serve ye me?  
It is nought wel served · by  
god that al made!  
That I sitte fasting · and  
other men make glade.'470  
The false knight his brother  
· ther that he stood,  
Tolde alle his gestes · that  
Gamelyn was wood;  
And Gamelyn stood stille ·  
and answerde nought,  
But Adames wordes · he  
held in his thought.  
Tho Gamelyn gan speke ·  
dolfully with-alle475  
To the grete lordes · that  
saten in the halle:  
'Lordes,' he seyde · 'for  
Cristes passioun,  
Helpeth bringe Gamelyn ·  
out of prisoun.'  
Than seyde an abbot ·  
sorwe on his cheeke!  
'He schal have Cristes curs  
· and seynte Maries  
eeke,480  
That thee out of prisoun ·  
beggeth other borwe,



But ever worthe hem wel ·  
that doth thee moche  
sorwe.’

After that abbot · than spak  
another,

‘I wold thin heed were of ·  
though thou were my  
brother!

Alle that thee borwe · foule  
mot hem falle!’485

Thus they seyden alle · that  
weren in the halle.

Than seyde a priour · yvel  
mot he thryve!

‘It is moche scathe, boy ·  
that thou art on lyve.’

‘Ow!’ seyde Gamelyn · ‘so  
brouke I my bon!

Now I have aspyed · that  
freendes have I non.490

Cursed mot he worthe ·  
bothe fleisch and blood,  
That ever do priour · or  
abbot ony good!’

Adam the spencer · took up  
the cloth,

And loked on Gamelyn ·  
and say that he was wroth;  
Adam on the pantrye · litel  
he thoughte,495

But two goode staves · to  
halle-dore he broughte,  
Adam loked on Gamelyn ·  
and he was war anoon,  
And caste away the feteres ·  
and he bigan to goon:

Tho he com to Adam · he  
took that oo staf,

And bigan to worche · and  
goode strokes yaf.500

Gamelyn cam in-to the  
halle · and the spencer  
bothe,

And loked hem aboute · as  
they had be wrothe;

Gamelyn sprengeth holy-  
water · with an oken spire,

That some that stode  
upright · fellen in the fire.  
There was no lewed man ·  
that in the halle stood,505  
That wolde do Gamelyn ·  
eny thing but good,  
But stood bisyden · and leet  
hem bothe werche,  
For they hadde no rewthe ·  
of men of holy cherche;  
Abbot or priour · monk or  
chanoun,  
That Gamelyn overtok ·  
anon they yeeden doun.510  
Ther was non of hem alle ·  
that with his staf mette,  
That he ne made him  
overthrowe · and quitte him  
his dette.  
'Gamelyn,' seyde Adam ·  
'for seynte Charite,  
Pay large liverey · for the  
love of me,  
And I wil kepe the dore · so  
ever here I masse!515  
Er they ben assoyled · there  
shal noon passe.'  
'Dowt thee nought,' seyde  
Gamelyn · 'whyl we ben in-  
feere,  
Kep thou wel the dore · and  
I wol werche heere;  
Stere thee, good Adam ·  
and lat ther noon flee,  
And we schul telle largely ·  
how many that ther be.'520  
'Gamelyn,' seyde Adam ·  
'do hem but good;  
They ben men of holy  
chirche · draw of hem no  
blood,  
Save wel the croune · and  
do hem non harmes,  
But brek bothe her legges ·  
and siththen here armes.'  
Thus Gamelyn and Adam ·  
wroughte right fast,525

And pleyden with the  
monkes · and made hem  
agast.  
Thider they come ryding ·  
Iolily with swaynes,  
And hom ayen they were y-  
lad · in cartes and in  
waynes.  
Tho they hadden al y-don ·  
than seyde a gray frere,  
'Allas! sire abbot · what  
dide we now heere?530  
Tho that we comen hider ·  
it was a cold reed,  
Us hadde ben better at  
home · with water and with  
breed.'  
Whyl Gamelyn made  
ordres · of monkes and  
frere,  
Ever stood his brother · and  
made foul chere;  
Gamelyn up with his staf ·  
that he wel knew,535  
And gerte him in the nekke  
· that he overthrew;  
A litel above the girdel · the  
rigge-bon to-barst;  
And sette him in the feteres  
· ther he sat arst.  
'Sitte ther, brother' · sayde  
Gamelyn,  
'For to colen thy blood · as  
I dide myn.'540  
As swithe as they hadde · y-  
wroken hem on here foon,  
They askeden watir · and  
wisschen anoon,  
What some for here love ·  
and some for here awe,  
Alle the servants served  
hem · of the beste lawe.  
The scherreve was thennes ·  
but a fyve myle,545  
And al was y-told him · in a  
litel whyle,  
How Gamelyn and Adam ·  
had doon a sory rees,

Bounden and y-wounded  
men · ayein the kinges  
pees;  
Tho bigan sone · stryf for to  
wake,  
And the scherref was  
aboute · Gamelyn for to  
take.550  
Now lytheth and lesteneth ·  
so god yif you good fyn!  
And ye schul heere good  
game · of yonge Gamelyn.  
Four and twenty yonge men  
· that heelden hem ful  
bolde,  
Come to the schirref · and  
seyde that they wolde  
Gamelyn and Adam ·  
fetten, by her fay;555  
The scherref yaf hem leve ·  
soth as I you say;  
They hyeden faste · wold  
they nought bilinne,  
Til they come to the gate ·  
ther Gamelyn was inne.  
They knocked on the gate ·  
the porter was ny,  
And loked out at an hol · as  
man that was sly.560  
The porter hadde biholde ·  
hem a litel whyle,  
He loved wel Gamelyn ·  
and was adrad of gyle,  
And leet the wicket stonden  
· y-steke ful stille,  
And asked hem withoute ·  
what was here wille.  
For al the grete company ·  
thanne spak but oon,565  
'Undo the gate, porter · and  
lat us in goon.'  
Than seyde the porter · 'so  
brouke I my chin,  
Ye schul sey your erand · er  
ye comen in.'  
'Sey to Gamelyn and Adam  
· if here wille be,

We wil speke with hem ·  
wordes two or thre.’570  
‘Felaw,’ seyde the porter ·  
‘stond there stille,  
And I wil wende to  
Gamelyn · to witen his  
wille.’  
In wente the porter · to  
Gamelyn anoon,  
And seyde, ‘Sir, I warne  
you · her ben come your  
foon;  
The scherreves meyne · ben  
atte gate,575  
For to take you bothe ·  
schu[Editor: illegible  
letter]le ye nat scape.’[end  
of vol. iv.](#)

PRINTED IN GREAT  
BRITAIN AT THE  
UNIVERSITY PRESS,  
OXFORD BY VIVIAN  
RIDLER PRINTER TO  
THE UNIVERSITY

[1]Not the same MS. as  
that called ‘Harl.’ in the  
foot-notes to Gamelyn.

[1]It only contains the  
Clerk’s Tale; see *Reliquiae  
Antiquae*, ii. 68. The  
Longleat MS. no. 25,  
belonging to the Marquis of  
Bath, contains both the  
Knight’s Tale and the  
Clerk’s Tale.

[1]i. e. the gen. case of  
*physice*; ‘Magister Artium  
et Physices’ occurs in  
Longfellow’s Golden  
Legend, § vi.

[1]The dash (—) shews  
where the Groups end or  
are interrupted

[2.] The order of the divisions of this tale is different. The 'modern instances,' viz. Peter of Spain, Peter of Cyrus, Barnabo of Lombardy, and Ugolino of Pisa are placed at the end instead of coming in the middle

[.] From MS. Addit. 34360, fol. 21, back (with ascription by Shirley); hitherto unprinted. Rejected readings of the MS. are here given.

[1.] hert.

[2.] Yowre (*throughout*); hoole; stidefast.

[3.] al; hie.

[4.] yow; sette.

[5.] likith; *for womanly perhaps read wyfly.*

[6.] comlynesse.

[7.] whiles; myn hert; maystresse.

[8.] triev.

[10.] *I insert you.*

[11.] (*Accent on Al*); live.

[12.] besynesse.

[13.] *Dr. Furnivall supplies this lost line; cf. Complaint to Pity, l. 84.*

[15.] hert suffrith grete.

[16.] *I supply loke; humbly.*

[17. ]ordynaunce.

[18. ]for to (*I omit* for).

[19. ]eke.

[20. ]service suche loo.

[21. ](*Perhaps omit* that).

[22. ]grete woo; do.

[23. ]wise.

[24. ]rebatyng; myn  
hevynesse.

[25. ]And thynkith be  
raison that (*too long*).

[26. ]desire; for til do the (*I  
omit* the).

[27. ]fyndith non vn-.

[29. ]Soueraigne; floure.

[31. ]receyvith;  
goodelyhede.

[32. ]Thynkyng.

[33. ]hole; stidefast.

[ ]From MS. Hail. 7578, fol.  
15. At the bottom of fol. 14,  
back, is the last line of  
Chancer's Complaint to  
Pity, beneath which is  
written 'Balade.' But the  
present poem is really a  
Complaint, like the  
preceding one. Rejected  
readings of the MS. are  
here given. There is no title  
in the MS. except 'Balade.'

[1. ]holly; others parte.

[2. ]I wisse.

[3. ]By (*surely an error for My*); arte.

[4. ]lernynge; desire; euer (*and u for v often*).

[5. ]while; leue.

[6. ]trought (*sic*); youre; abide.

[7. ]be (*for by*).

[9. ]valentine; Renouele.

[10. ]compleynynge.

[12. ]grete; whanne; remembringe.

[13. ]Bytwene howe kende.

[14. ]Vppon youre; doith eche foule.

[15. ]lyste; suche comforte.

[21. ]cry helpe; vnto (*for to*); gentelnesse.

[22. ]safe.

[24. ]peine; fynde I may (*for I finde*); remydie.

[25. ]konnyngge; princes.

[26. ]foo.

[27. ]leudenesse.

[29. ]prey; swerne.

[30. ]trouth.

[31. ]herte wol kerue (*I omit wol*).



[32. ]haue; routh.

[ ]From MS. Harl. 7578, fol. 15, back. No title but 'Balade'; but it is really a Complaint. Rejected readings of the MS. are here given.

[2. ]y (*for* I); hath me sette in swiche.

[3. ]encrese.

[5. ]whenne; haue.

[6. ]sheo; werry (*for* verray).

[7. ]Wolle; wise; (*sounde means* heal).

[9. ]Ys; swide (*miswritten for* swiche).

[10. ]*I supply* in; alle manere.

[11. ]Whethre.

[12. ]mys; loode-.

[13. ]Whiche.

[14. ]alle; remydie.

[15. ]souueraine; foo.

[16. ]alle; lustynesse.

[17. ]Liste; wise; say hoo.

[18. ]lete; heuinesse.

[19. ]wooful; grette.

[20. ]sheo; *I supply* at; euery.

[21. ]oute; guyde.

[22. ]liste; wise.

[23. ]Haue pitee.

[24. ]kanne; manere  
seruice.

[25. ]be (*for* me); oute;  
heynesse.

[26. ]sheo nowe.

[27. ]herre (*for* her); trough  
(*sic*); eke.

[28. ]lette; lake.

[29. ]woote; why that I thus  
smerte so sore (*two*  
*syllables too much*).

[30. ]couth; sayne (*for*  
feyne).

[31. ]Thanne nedes; lyue.

[32. ]whenne; vnteye.

[33. ]into (*for* in); a-nothre.

[35. ]punisskede both of  
high (*I omit* both).

[36. ]Swiche; defie.

[37. ]yette; sterue.

[38. ]Thanne; hoorde.

[39. ]falshode; til deth the  
kerue (*but see note on p.*  
*xxxii*).

[40. ]neuere swerue.

[41. ]youre (*for* my).

[42. ]atte youre; abide.

[43. ]prey; sainte valentine.

[45. ]pitee.

[46. ]here.

[47. ]whiles; haue lyues.

[48. ]yitte; neuere none;  
lyfe.

[49. ]hiue.

[]Heading.*From E.*

[1. ]E. hise; *rest* his.

[8. ]Hl. halfe; *rest* half.

[9. ]Hl. fowles; Pt. Ln.  
foules; E. Hn. foweles.

[10. ]Hl. yhe; Hn. Iye; E.  
eye.

[12. ]Pt. Ln. Than; E.  
Thanne. E. pilgrimage (*by  
mistake*).

[13. ]Pt. Hl. palmers; E.  
Palmeres.

[16. ]Hn. Caunter-; E.  
Cauntur-.

[18. ]E. seeke.

[19. ]Hn. Bifel; E. Bifil.

[23. ]E. were; *rest* was.

[24. ]E. Hn. compaignye.

[26. ]E. felaweshipe. Hl.  
pilgryms; E. pilgrimes.

[32.] E. felaweshipe. Hl. pilgryms; E. pilgrimes.

[34.] E. oure.

[35.] E. Hn. nathelees.

[40.] Hl. weren; *rest* were, weere.

[49.] Hn. Hl. as; *rest* as in.

[53.] E. nacions.

[56.] E. seege.

[60.] Hl. ariue; Cm. aryue; E. Hn. armee; Cp. Ln. arme.

[62.] E. oure.

[64.] Pt. had; *rest* hadde.

[67.] E. -moore.

[68.] E. Hn. Cm. were; *rest* was.

[74.] E. Pt. weren; Hl. Ln. was; *rest* were. Hl. Hn. he ne was.

[83.] Ln. euen; *rest* euene.

[84.] Hl. Ln. delyuer; *rest* delyuere. E. Hn. of greet; Cm. of gret; *rest* gret of.

[85.] Ln. had.

[87.] E. weel.

[89.] E. meede, reede.

[90.] E. meede, reede.

[92.] E. fressh. E. in; *rest* is. E. Hn. Monthe; Cp. month;

Hl. Pt. Ln. moneth; Cm.  
monyth.

[96.]E. weel.

[98.]Hl. Cp. sleep; *rest*  
slepte. E. -moore.

[99.]Hl. Cp. Ln. lowly; E.  
Hn. Pt lowely.

[101.]E. seruantz.

[102.]E. soo.

[104.]Hl. Cp. Pt. Ln.  
pocok. Cm. bryghte; *rest*  
bright.

[107.]E. Hise.

[108.]E. baar.

[111.]E. baar.

[113.]E. oother.

[115.]Hn. Cristofre; E.  
Cristophere. E. sheene.

[122.]E. soong.

[123.]E. semeely.

[131.]Cm. brest; E. Hn.  
brist.

[132.]Cp. moche; Cm  
meche; E. Hn muchel. Hl.  
lest; E. Hn. Cm. list.

[134.]Hl. was; *rest* ther  
was.

[137.]E. Hn. desport; *rest*  
disport.

[140.]E. to been; Hl. Hn.  
*omit* to.

[144.]Hl. Hn. Cp. Ln.  
sawe; E. saugh; Cm. seye.

[146.]Pt. Ln. had; *rest*  
hadde.

[148.]Ln. wepped; *rest*  
wepte; *read* weep; *cf.* l.  
2878. E. any; *rest* oon, on,  
one.

[151.]E. semyly. E.  
wypul; Hn. wympel.

[160.]E. Hn. brooch; *rest*  
broche.

[170.]Hl. Cp. whistlyng; E.  
whistlynge. E. Cm. als; Ln.  
al-so; Hl.so; *rest* as.

[176.]E. Hn. heeld; Cm.  
held.

[178.]Hn. Hl. been; E.  
beth.

[179.]Hl. cloysterles; E.  
Hn. recchelees; Cp. Pt. Ln.  
recheles; Cm. rekeles (Ten  
Brink *proposes* recetlees).

[182.]E. Hn. heeld; Cm.  
held.

[188.]E. his owene; *rest*  
*om.* owene.

[190.]Hl. swifte; *rest* swift.

[193.]Hl. Hn. purfiled;  
Cm. purfilid; E. ypurfiled.

[196.]Hl. a; *rest* a ful.

Ln. had; *rest* hadde.

[199.]E. it; *rest* he.

[203.] E. estaat, prelaat.

[204.] E. estaat, prelaat.

[208.] E. wantowne.

[211.] Hn. muche; E.  
muchel.

[213.] Hl. owne; E. owene.

[215.] E. And; *rest* Ful.

[217.] Hl. Hn. eek; *rest*  
*omit.*

[218.] Ln. had; *rest* hadde.

[224.] Hl. Cm. han; E.  
haue.

[229.] E. harde.

[231.] E. wepyng.

[232.] E. Hn. moote; *see*  
*note.*

[234.] E. yonge; *rest* faire.

[235.] Hl. mery; E. murye.

[237.] E. baar. Pt. vtirly;  
Hl. vturly; E. Hn. outrely.

[240.] E. al the; *rest* euery.

[245.] E. Hn Cm. sike; Pt.  
Ln. seke; see l. 18.

[246.] Cm. honest; E.  
honeste.

[248.] E. selleres.

[250.] E. lowely. *After* l.  
252, Hn. *alone inserts* ll.  
252 *b* and 252 *c*.

[259.] Hl. Cm. cloysterer;  
E. Hn. Cloystrer.

[260.] *So all the MSS. (but with -bare); cf. l. 290.*

[262.] *All worstede (badly).*

[266.] Pt. Ln. had; *rest*  
hadde.

[271.] Ln. motteley; Hl.  
motteleye; E. Hn. motlee.

[272.] E. beuere.

[273.] Cp. Pt. clapsed; Hl.  
clapsud.

[274.] E. Hise.

[281.] Cp. statly.

[287.] E. And; Hl. Al so;  
*rest* As.

[289.] E. Hn. sobrely; *rest*  
soburly.

[290.] *All -bare.* Hl.  
ouerest; E. Hn. Cm.  
ouereste.

[291.] Cp. Ln. had; *rest*  
hadde.

[293.] Cp. Ln. Hl. leuer;  
*rest* leuere.

[300.] E. Hl. his; *rest* on.

[324.] E. yfalle; *rest* falle.

[326.] E. Hn. pynchen; *rest*  
pynche, pinche.

[332.] E. heed; *rest* berd,  
berde. E. a; *rest* the.



[335.]ever] Hl. al.

[336.]E. Hn. Cm. owene;  
*rest* owne.

[338.]Hl. verraily; *rest*  
verray, verrey, nery.

[340.]E. was he; *rest* he  
was.

[341.]Cm. Ln. alwey; Hl.  
alway; E. Hn. Cp. always.

[342.]Hl. Pt. nowher; Cm.  
nower; *rest* nenere; *cf.* l.  
360.

[349.]E. Hn. muwe, stuwe.

[350.]E. Hn. muwe, stuwe.

[357.]E. Hn. anlaas; Hl.  
Cm. anlas.

[358.]E. Hn. heeng.

[359.]E. Hn. Cm. *om.* a.

[363.]*So* Hl.; *rest* And they  
were clothed alle.

[364.]*All but* Hl. and a.

[366.]Hl. I-chapud; Cm.  
chapid; *rest* chaped.

[370.]E. yeldehalle.

[376.]E. Hn. ycleped; Hl.  
clept; *rest* cleped, clepid.

[380.]Hl. *om.* 1st the.

[383.]E. Hl. boille; Cm.  
boyle; *rest* broille, broile.

[388.]E. wonynge; Hn.  
wonyng.

[396.] Cm. I-drawe; *rest*  
drawe.

[407.] Hl. *ins.* wel; *rest om.*

[415.] Hl. wondurly wel;  
*rest* a ful greet deel (del).

[416.] E. Hn. natureel.

[418.] E. Hn. hise; Cm.  
hese.

[421.] E. Cm. Hl. where  
they; Hn. where it.

[424.] Cm. Ln. seke; *rest*  
sike.

[425.] E. hise.

[426.] E. Hn. Cm. drogges;  
Cp. Pt. Ln. drugges; Hl.  
dragges.

[430.] Pt. Rufus; Cm.  
Rufijs; Hn. Cp. Ln. Hl.  
Rusus; E. Risus.

[431.] Hl. Pt. Old; *rest*  
Olde.

[452.] Hl. was thanne out.

[453.] E. weren.

[455.] E. weren.

[457.] Cp. Hl. schoos; E.  
Pt. Ln. shoes.

[458.] E. Hn. Boold.

[463.] Ln. had.

[467.] Ln. muche; Hl. Pt.  
Cp. moche; E. Hn. muchel.

[474.] E. Hn. felaweschip.

[476.] Hl. For of that art  
sche knew.

[485.] Hl. I-proued; E. Cp.  
Pt. preued.

[486.] E. hise.

[490.] Hl. Cm. Pt. han; E.  
Hn. Cp. Ln. haue.

[493.] E. siknesse.

[497.] E. firste. E. *ins.* that  
(*by mistake*) *before* he.

[503.] Hl. *alone ins.* that  
*after* if.

[505.] Hl. ?iue; E. yeue.

[509.] Hl. Cp. seynte.

[510.] Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl.  
chaunterie; E. Hn.  
chauntrie.

[512.] E. dwelleth; *rest*  
dwelte. E. keepeth; Ln.  
keped; *rest* kepte.

[514.] Hl. no; *rest* not a.

[516.] Hl. to senful man  
nought; *rest* nat to sinful  
man.

[520.] *All but* Hl. this was.

[522.] Hn. lowe; E. lough.

[523.] E. nonys.

[525.] E. waiteth; *rest*  
waited.

[527.] E. hise.

[528.] Hl. and; *rest* but.

[534.] E. Pt. Ln. he; *rest*  
him.

[537.] [for] Hn. Hl. with.

[539.] Cp. Pt. payed; Cm.  
Hl. payede; E. Hn. payde.

[540.] [propre] Hl. owne.

[550.] Cp. Hl. nolde; Hn.  
noolde; E. ne wolde.

[555.] E. toft; Ln. tofte; *rest*  
tuft. E. herys.

[556.] Hn. bristles; E.  
brustles; Pt. brysteles; Hl.  
Cp. berstles. E. erys.

[558.] *All but* Cp. and a.

[559.] Hl. wyde; *rest* greet,  
gret.

[565.] Hl. *om.* wel.

[570.] E. Hn. wheither.

[571.] E. Achaat.

[572.] E. staat.

[577.] E. weren.

[578.] E. whiche. Cm.  
doseyn; E. duszeyne.

[581.] E. maken.

[582.] Cm. but; Cp. Pt. but  
if that; *rest* but if.

[585.] E. Hn. caas.

[589.] *All but* Hl. Ln. *ins.*  
ful *after* eres.

[590.] E. doked.

[594.] E. of; *rest on.*

[603.] ne (2)] E. Hn. Cp. Pt.  
nor.

[604.] Hl. they (*for he*). E.  
Cm. *om. ne.*

[606.] Hl. fair; E. faire.

[607.] E. Hn. shadwed; Hl.  
I-schadewed; Cm. I-  
schadewid; Cp. Pt.  
shadewed; Ln. shadowed.

[611.] Hl. owne; E. owene.

[612.] E. *om.* and. E.  
gowne; *rest cote.*

[613.] So Hn. Hl.; E. *and*  
*rest hadde lerned.* Cp. Hl.  
mester.

[618.] E. baar.

[623.] Cm. Pt. Somnour;  
Hl. sompnour; E. Hn.  
Somonour.

[627.] E. Hn. Cm. scaled.

[629.] Cp. Pt. Hl. bremston.

[632.] E. the; *rest his.*

[652.] E. Ln. Hl. And; *rest*  
Ful.

[655.] Cm. Cp. erche-; E.  
erce-; Hl. arche-.

[660.] Cp. Ln. him; Hl. Pt.  
to; *rest om.*

[661.] Hl. Pt. saueth; E.  
sauith.

[663.] Hl. owne; E. owene.

[668.] E bokeleer.

[669.] E. was; *rest* rood,  
rode.

[670.] E. Cm. Pt.  
Rounciuale.

[672.] E. soong.

[676.] E. heeng.

[677.] E. hise.

[678.] E. hise.

[680.] But] Cm. Hl. And.  
Hl. ne; *rest omit.*

[683.] E. Discheuelee.

[685.] Hl. Cp. on; *rest* vp  
on.

[686.] Hl. lay; *which the*  
*rest omit.*

[687.] Hl. Cm. come; *rest*  
comen.

[688.] Hl. eny (*for* hath a).

[690.] Hn. yshaue; E.  
shaue.

[695.] *All* oure.

[713.] Hl. right (*for* ful).

[714.] Cp. Pt. Ln. so  
meriely; E. Hn. Cm. the  
murierly.

[715.] E. Hl. shortly; *rest*  
soothly.

[716.] Hl. Thestat; Hn.  
Thestaat; E. The staat; Cm.  
Cp. The estat.

[718.] E. as; *rest at.*

[724.] E. oure (*but our in l. 723*).

[725.] E. youre; Hl. ?our.

[726.] E. Hn. Cm. narette;  
Cp. Pt. Hl. ne rette.

[734.] E. or; Hl. ne; *rest and.*

[741.] *All but Hl. om. that.*

[747.] E. chiere. E. hoost  
(*see l. 751*).

[752.] Hl. han; *rest om.*

[754.] E. Hn. was.

[755.] E. Hn. Boold.

[756.] Cm. Cp. lakkede; E.  
lakked.

[761.] *[now]* Hl. lo.

[764.] Hl. ne saugh; *rest saugh nat (seigh not, &c.)*.  
Hl. Cm. mery; E. myrie.

[774.] *[a]* E. the; Hn. *om.*

[778.] *All but Hl. om. Now.*

[782.] E. But if; *rest But. E. myrie. Hl. merye smyteth of.*

[785.] Hl. nas.

[787.] Cp. verdit; Pt.  
veredit; Hl. Ln. verdite;  
Cm. verdoit; E. Hn. voidit.

[789.] E. taak; Ln. tak; Cp.  
Pt. take; Hl. Hn. taketh.

[791.] Cp. Hl. your; *rest*  
our; *cf.* 1 803.

[795.] Hl. ther (*for*  
whylom).

[797.] E. caas, solaas.

[798.] E. caas, solaas.

[802.] E. Hn. Cp. mury.

[803.] Hl. my seluen  
gladly; E. my self goodly.

[805.] E. wole (*but wol in l.*  
809).

[812.] E. would.

[816.] Hl. wolde; Pt. wold;  
*rest* wol, wolen, wiln, wil.

[817.] Hl. lowe; E. lough.

[822.] E. Hn. that; Hl. that  
the; *rest* the. E. gan for; Hn.  
Cp. Hl. bigan.

[823.] E. Hn. aller; Hl.  
althur; Cp. alther; Pt. Ln.  
alder.

[825.] E. paas.

[829.] E. foreward (*badly*).  
E. Hn. *om.* I.

[831.] Hl. ferst a tale.

[835.] Cp. Pt. Ln. ferther;  
Ill. forther.

[836.] E. Hn. shorteste.

[840.] E. shamefastnesse.

[848.] E. foreward (*badly*).



[850.] *All insert that after saugh (needlessly).*

[852.] E. foreward (*badly*).

[854.] Hl. thou (*for the*).

[857.] Cm. mery; E. myrie.

[858.] *So E. Hl.; rest as ye may here.*

Colophon: *from MS. Sloane 1685, which has Heere endith, heere, knyghte (sic).*

[Quotation; *so in E. Hn. Cp. Pt. Ln.*

[865.] E. Hl. That; *rest What.*

[868.] Cp. Hl. weddede; Slo. weddide; *rest wedded.*

[871.] E. faire; Pt. yenge; *rest yonge.*

[876.] Hl. han told ?ow; E. yow haue toold; *rest haue toold (told).*

[880.] Tyrwhitt *inserts the after and; but see 968, 973, 1023, &c.*

[889.] Hl. lette eek non of al; *rest letten, and omit al.*

[892.] Hl. agayn; E. Hn. Cp. Pt. ayeyn.

[897.] E. *om. hye; rest hye, heighe, hihe, highe, high.*

[912.] Cm. eldest; E. eldeste.

[914.] E. routhe; Ln.  
rewthe; Slo. reuthe. Hl. or;  
*rest* and.

[915.] Hn. yiuen; E. yeuen.

[916.] Hn. conquerour; E.  
conqueror.

[917.] Hn. Hl. Noght; E. Pt.  
Ln. Nat. Hl. *om.* 2nd your.

[922.] Hl. nys; *rest* is.

[923.] E. Hn. Pt. Ln. ne  
hath.

[924.] Cp. Hl. caytifs; E.  
Hn. Pt. caytyues.

[931.] E. crie; Hn. Hl.  
waille; Cp. Pt. weile.

[938.] *Only* Hl. *om.* now.

[943.] Hl. i-slawe.

[944.] E. He hath; *rest*  
Hath.

[955.] E. maat.

[956.] E. estaat.

[974.] Hn. Cp. nys; *rest* is.

[984.] Hn. thoghte; E.  
thoughte.

[992.] E. weren.

[996.] Hl. Which that.

[1005.] E. Hn. Cm. taas;  
Hl. cas; Cp. Pt. Ln. caas;  
*read* tas.

Hn. Cm. Hl. of; *rest* of the.

[1009.] E. Hn. Cm. taas;  
Hl. cas; Cp. Pt. Ln. caas;  
*read* tas.

[1013.] Hl. hight; E. highte.

[1014.] Hl. hight; E. highte.

[1020.] E. Hn. Cm. taas;  
Hl. cas; Cp. Pt. Ln. caas;  
*read* tas.

[1022.] E. Hl. ful soone he.

[1023.] Hl. Tathenes for to.

[1029.] E. Cm. *om.* his. E.  
lyue; *rest* lyf, lif.

[1031.] E. Cm. Hl. This  
Palamon and his felawe  
Arcite.

[1036.] Hl. on hire.

[1039.] E. Hl. fyner; Cm.  
fynere; Hn. Cp. Pt. fairer.

[1042.] E. slogardrie; *rest*  
slogardye (sloggardye,  
sluggardie).

[1049.] E. Hn. Cm. Cp.  
broyded; Pt. breided; Ln.  
Hl. browded.

[1054.] Ln. sotil; Cp. sotyl;  
E. Hn. Cm. subtil; Pt.  
subtile; Hl. certeyn.

[1055.] Hl. Pt. heuenly;  
Cm. heueneliche; E. Hn.  
Cp. Ln. heuenysshly.

[1063.] E. And this  
Palamon.

[1065.] Hl. Cp. Pt. on; *rest*  
an.

[1091.] *Only E. om. it.*

[1096.] Cm. Pt. ye; Hn. Iye;  
Cp. Hl. yhe; E. eye.

[1101.] Cm. wheþer; Hl.  
wheþur.

[1103.] Hl. Cp. a doun.

[1115.] E. *wrongly om.*  
was.

[1116.] Hn. muche; E.  
moche.

[1122.] E. is; *rest nys.*

[1125.] E. Wheither.

[1132.] til] Cm. Pt. Ln. Hl.  
to.

[1134.] E. Ln. Hl. *om. the.*

[1135.] E. hyndre; Cm.  
hynderyr.

[1138.] E. as; *rest and.*

[1141.] E. Hn. artow; *rest*  
art thou.

[1145.] E. Nay; *rest Now.*

[1147.] E. Cm. and to my.

[1151.] E. Hn. artow; *rest*  
art thou.

[1154.] E. Hn. And; *rest*  
But. Hl. Cm. uttirly; Cp. Pt.  
Ln. witterly; E. Hn. outrely.

[1156.] Cp. Pt. wilt thou;  
Hl. wolt thou.

[1157.] E. Wheither.

[1163.] Cm. Wist thou; Hl.  
Ln. Wost thou; Pt. Woost  
thow.

[1166.] E. of; *rest* to.

[1167.] Hl. *om.* And.

[1168.] E. Cm. broken.

[1170.] Hn. Cp. Pt. fleen;  
E. Hl. flee.

[1177.] Hn. Cm. Hl. stryue;  
*rest* stryuen.

[1179.] E. *om.* that. *All but*  
Cm Hl. *ins.* so *after* were.

[1192.] E. to; Hl. to the;  
*rest* un-to.

[1195.] E. won; Cm. wone;  
*rest* wont.

[1197.] E. Cp. als; Hn. Cm.  
Hl. as.

[1198.] E. louede.

[1200.] Hn. soghte; E.  
soughte.

[1205.] Hl. Cp. Pt. with-  
oute; *rest* with-outen.

[1217.] Hl. (*alone*) took.

[1223.] that (1)] Hn. Hl.  
the. E. he; *rest* I.

[1226.] Hn. Noght; E. Nat;  
Cm. Not; *rest* Nought. E.  
*ins.* my *after* in.

[1228.] Hl. dweld.

[1237.] Cp. Pt. Ln. *om.* in.

[1242.] E. (*alone*) *om.* by.

[1248.] E. heele; *rest* helpe.

[1256.] Cp. Ln. mordre; E. Hn. moerdre; Cm. Pt. mordere; Hl. morthre.

[1260.] E. (*alone*) *om.* thing.

[1262.] E. Cm. wel that he.

[1268.] Hl. seyen; E. Hn. Cm. Cp. seyn.

[1272.] Ther] E. That.

[1278.] E. Resouned; *rest* Resouneth. Cp. Hl. yollyng; Pt. Ln. yellinge.

[1290.] *All* moste, most, muste; *but read* mot: *see* l. 1295.

[1296.] Hl. ?yue; E. yeue.

[1297.] E. yeueth.

[1299.] Hl. Ielousye; E. Ialousie.

[1303.] Hl. Tho; E. Thanne. E. crueel gooddes (!).

[1305.] Hl. Cm. athamaunte; E. Athamaunt

[1309.] Cm. Hl. beste; E. beest.

[1310.] Cm. areste; Hl. arreste; E. arreest.

[1312.] Cm. Cp. Hl. gilteles; E. gitlees.

[1314.] Cm. Cp. Hl.  
gilteles; E. giltlees.

[1315.] Cm. Cp. Pt. Ln.  
encreseth; E. encresseth.

[1320.] So Hn. Cm. Hl.;  
*rest* after his deeth man.

[1323.] So Hl.; *rest* lete I.

[1331.] E. hise.

[1333.] E. Ialousie.

[1337.] E. (*alone*) some.

[1338.] E. Encressen.

[1344.] Cm. Cp. Pt. vp  
(*perhaps rightly*).

[1347.] E. Now (*wrongly*);  
*rest* Yow.

[1350.] Hn. Cp. Pt. moot  
he.

[1353.] Ln. liste; Cm. lyste;  
Hl. luste; *rest* list.

[1359.] Hl. Pt. Ln. had; *rest*  
hadde.

[1362.] E. Pt. wexeth.

[1364.] Hl. Cm. Cp. falwe;  
E. Hn. falow.

[1369.] E. spiritz.

[1376.] E. Biforn his  
owene; Cm. Be-forn hese  
owene; Hn. Cp. Pt. Ln.  
Biforn his; Hl. Before in  
his.

[1382.] E. crueel.

[1388.] E. vp (*perhaps  
rightly*); rest vp-on.

[1389.] E. I; rest he.

[1424.] E. Cm. long; rest  
strong.

[1431.] E. Hl. *ins.* his *after*  
of.

[1441.] E. Hn. Cp. gaf.

[1454.] E. Hn. Pt. soor; Cp.  
Ln. sore; Cm. Hl. sorwe. E.  
*om.* and.

[1470.] Hl. ?iue; E. yeue.

[1472.] E. Of; rest With.

[1477.] E. moot; rest moste,  
most, muste.

[1479.] E. Hn. Cm. thanne;  
rest than.

[1488.] E. Hn Ln. to; rest  
vn-to.

[1491.] [day] Hl. May.

[1495.] E. hise.

[1497.] Hl. Arcite; rest  
Arcita.

[1502.] E. Hn. Cm. a; rest  
his. Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl.  
stertyng; E. Hn. startlynge;  
Cm. stertelynge.

[1511.] Hl. wel faire; rest  
*om.* wel.

[1512.] E. Hn. Cm. Hl. In;  
rest I.

[1514.] E. a; rest the.



[1518.] Hn. Hl. afered; Cm.  
ofered; *rest* aferd. E.  
(*alone*) *ins.* thanne *bef.* was.

[1521.] Hl. Pt. goon; Cm.  
Ln. gon; E. Hn. Cp. go.

[1526.] E. Hn. al; *rest* of.

[1530.] E. fil al; *rest om.* al.

[1532.] E. Hn. Cm. crop;  
Cp. Hl. Pt. crophe.

[1536.] E. Hn. Cm. kan;  
*rest* gan.

[1538.] E. gereful; Cp.  
geerful; Hl. grisful; *rest*  
gerful.

[1539.] Hl. wyke; Hn. Cp.  
wike; Pt. Ln. weke; Cm.  
wonke; E. wowke.

[1551.] Cm. Pt. Hl. lyne.

[1556.] Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl.  
owne; E. owene.

[1557.] [highte] Hl. hote.

[1560.] E. kynrede; *rest*  
lynage (lignage).

[1563.] Hl. vtterly; E.  
outrely.

[1573.] *So* E.; *rest*  
afterward (*for* after). Hl.  
*om.* he.

[1579.] Hl. bussches; Cm.  
boschis; Ln. boskes.

[1581.] E. Hn. artow; *rest*  
art thou.

[1584.] [told] E. Cm. seyde.

[1589.] E. Hn. namo; Hl.  
Cm. no mo.

[1595.] E. Hn. wolt. Hl. for;  
*rest or.*

[1598.] E. Hn. his; *rest a.*

[1599.] E. sit; Cm. set; *rest*  
*sitteth.*

[1604.] Hl. seurte; Cp.  
sewrte; E. seurete; Hn.  
seuretee.

[1609.] Cp. derreyne; Hl.  
dereyne.

[1614.] Hn. chees; Cm. Hl.  
ches; *rest chese.*

[1626.] E. hir; *rest his.*

[1634.] E. the; Hn. Cm. Hl.  
this.

[1637.] Hl. Tho; *rest To.*

[1638.] Hl. honterus; *rest*  
hunters, hunterys; *ed.* 1542,  
hunter.

[1640.] E. and; *rest or.*

[1651.] Cm. halp; Cp. hilp;  
E. Hn. heelp; Hl. Pt.  
helpeth; Ln. helpe. Hl. Ln.  
*om.* for.

[1652.] E. owene.

[1656.] Tyrwhitt *ins.* as *bef.*  
a.

[1659.] E. Hn. whit.

[1660.] E. ancee.

[1662.] E. wole.

[1672.] *this* Hl. it.

[1693.] E. Hl. in; *rest on.*

[1695.] Hn. Cp. Pt. that;  
*rest om.*

[1699.] E. Cm. Hl. bores;  
*rest boles.*

[1702.] E. fille.

[1706.] E. cride; Hn. Cp.  
Pt. cryed.

[1707.] E. Hn. Ln. vp-on;  
*rest vp.*

[1710.] Hn. Cm. Cp. Pt.  
myster; E. mystiers; Ln.  
mester; Hl. mestir.

[1716.] E. Hn. disserued.

[1718.] E. Hn. Cm. owene.

[1723.] Hl. Hn. knowe; *rest*  
knowest.

[1741.] Ln. Hl. we haue.

[1744.] E. Hn. Cm. owene;  
Hl. Cp. Pt. owne.

[1747.] Hn. Pt. shul; Cm.  
Hl. schul; E. shal.

[1753.] E. estaat.

[1754.] E. debaat.

[1767.] Hn. Cm. Cp. As;  
*rest And.*

[1770.] Hl. Pt. Ln. had; *rest*  
hadde.

[1771.] Hn. wepten; *rest*  
wepen.

[1788.]E. hise.

[1789.]E. Hn. Cm. owene;  
Cp. Pt. owne.

[1790.]E. diuyse.

[1797.]Hl. I-brought; *rest*  
Brought, Brought.

[1799.]*See note.* Hl. if that;  
*rest* but if.

[1810.]E. Hn. Cp. of; *rest*  
or.

[1811.]and] Cm. Hl. or.

[1817.]E. Hn. Cp. Pt. laas;  
Cm. las; Hl. Ln. lace.

[1818.]E. Pt. trespaas.

[1822.]E. Hn Cp. Ln. shal.  
contree] Cp. Ln. Hl.  
coroune.

[1825.]E. deel, weel; Hn.  
Cm. Cp. del, wel. Hl. Pt.  
swore; *rest* sworn, sworne,  
sworyn.

[1826.]E. deel, weel; Hn.  
Cm. Cp. del, wel. Hl. Pt.  
swore; *rest* sworn, sworne,  
sworyn.

[1828.]Hl. Cm. graunted.

[1832.]E. *wrongly repeats*  
doutelees.

[1834.]E. Hn. Cp.  
Ialousye.

[1837.]E. Hn. Pt. lief.

[1838.]E. *om.* go.

[1840.] E. Hn. Cp. Ialouse.

[1856.] E. wheither.

[1857.] E. wheither.

[1860.] Hl. Him; Cp. Ln.  
That; E. Hn. Thanne; Cm.  
Pt. Than. E. Cp. Ln.  
Emelya; Hl. Hn. Emelye.

[1872.] E. Cm. Hl. *om.* it.

[1876.] Hl. thanked; Cm.  
thankede; Cp. Pt. Ln.  
thonked; E. Hn. thonken.

[1877.] E. often; Ln. oft; Pt.  
mony; *rest* ofte.

[1886.] Hl. that; *rest om.*

[1889.] E. compaas.

[1892.] E. lette; Cm.  
lettyth; *rest* letted.

[1893.] E. Hn. Hl. marbul.

[1899.] Hl. Hn. Cp.  
purtreyour; E. portreitour.

[1900.] Cp. Pt. Cm. him;  
Hl. hem; *rest om.*

[1906.] *So* Hl.; E. Hn. Cm.  
(*wrongly*) And on the  
westward in memorie.

[1922.] E. Hl. and; *rest* of.

[1928.] E. Hn. Cp.  
Ialousye.

[1929.] Hl. guldes.

[1930.] Cp. Ln. Cm. his.

[1933.] Cm. I reken and  
rekne schal; Hn. Hl. I  
rekned and rekne shal; E. I  
rekned haue and rekne shal  
(*too long*).

[1942.] E. Cm. And; *rest*  
Ne.

[1943.] E. Cm. And eek;  
Hn. Cp. Pt. Ln. Ne yet; Hl.  
Ne eek. E. Hn. Cm.  
Ercules.

[1948.] E. Hn. Pt. *om. ne.*

[1965.] E. it was; *rest* it is.

[1975.] Hl. foreste; E.  
forest.

[1976.] Hl. beste; E. best.

[1977.] E. Hn. Cm. Cp.  
bareyne.

[1979.] E. rumbel; Cm.  
rumbil; Hn. rombul; Cp.  
Ln. rombel; Hl. swymbul.  
E. Pt. and; *rest* in.

[1980.] Ln. berste; Hl.  
berst.

[1981.] Hn. Hl. on (*for*  
from).

[1983.] E. Hn. the entree

[1985.] Cp. vese; Cm.  
wese; E. Hn. Ln. veze; Hl.  
prise.

[1986.] E. Hn. Cm. gate.  
Hl. rise.

[1990.] E. Hn. Pt. dore was.

[1995.] E. Hn. dirke.

[1996.] E. Cm. *om. al.*

[1998.] E. Cm. *om. eek.*

[2012.] Cm. *outes.*

[2013.] E. Cp. Ln. *busk;*  
Cm. *bosch;* Hn. Pt. *bussh.*

[2014.] E. *ins. oon after*  
*nat.*

[2021.] Hl. *om. by.*

[2025.] E. Cm. *laborer; rest*  
*barbour.*

[2029.] Pt. Ln. *swerde; rest*  
*swerd.*

[2030.] E. *soutil;* Hn. Cp.  
Ln. *subtil.*

[2037.] Hl. *sterres;* E. Pt.  
*certres; rest sertres.*

[2049.] Cm. *soty;* E. *soutil.*  
*All depeynted (badly); see*  
C. 950.

[2058.] E. Pt. Ln. Hl. *to;*  
*rest til; see l. 2062.*

[2060.] *All peynted; see l.*  
2049. Hl. *om. yow.*

[2062.] Hl. Cp. Pt. Ln.  
*turned.*

[2067.] E. Hn. *hise;* Cm.  
*hese.*

[2069.] E. *om. was.*

[2071.] E. Hn. *Meleagree.*

[2075.] E. Cp. Pt. *ins. wel*  
*after ful.*

[2089. ][thise](#)] E. the.

[2098. ]E. couenantz. Hl.  
*om.* for.

[2108. ]E. preyd; Hn.  
prayd; Hl. Cm. preyed.

[2110. ]E. Cp. Pt. Hl. caas.

[2120. ]Hl. In a; E. And in;  
Hn. Cm. Cp. Ln. And in a;  
Pt. And a.

[2132. ]E. Hn. bitwyxen.

[2134. ]E. hise.

[2135. ]E. hise.

[2136. ]E. hise.

[2141. ]Hn. Cm. yelwe; E.  
yelewe; Hl. yolwe.

[2148. ]E. chaar.

[2152. ]Pt. Ln. Colers; Cp.  
Coleres; Hl. Colerd; E. Hn.  
Colered; Cm. Colerid. E.  
*tourettes*; Cp. Pt. *torettes*;  
Hl. *toretz* (*better* *torets*);  
Ln, *turettes*.

[2154. ]E. Hn. stierne.

[2155. ]E. Pt. Arcite; *rest*  
Arcita.

[2163. ]E. Cm. Pt. mantel.

[2164. ]E. Brat-ful.

[2180. ]Hl. *om.* al.

[2186. ]Hl. Cp. Ln. lepart;  
E. leopard.



[2192. ]E. in; Pt. after; *rest*  
at.

[2195. ]E. maner.

[2198. ]E. Hn. meeste; Cm.  
Cp. meste; *rest* most.

[2205. ]E. Cm. Hl. in; *rest*  
on.

[2207. ]al] Hl. of.

[2208. ]Hn. Hl. comth; *rest*  
cometh.

[2212. ]also] Hn. Cp. Pt.  
Ln. right tho.

[2217. ]E. pass.

[2219. ]E. with ful; *rest* and  
with.

[2220. ]E. and seyde in this  
manere.

[2222. ]to] Hn. Hl. of. of]  
*all but* E. Cm. to.

[2226. ]E. Cm. preyere; Hn.  
prayere. at] Hl. to.

[2227. ]to] Hl. for to.

[2231. ]Cm. Hl. wel, fel;  
*rest* wele, fele.

[2232. ]Cm. Hl. wel, fel;  
*rest* wele, fele.

[2239. ]Hl. aske. Hl. Ln. to  
morn.

[2261. ]Hl. thorisoun; *rest*  
the orison (orisoun).

[2263. ]E. Cm.  
circumstaunce.

[2264. ]E. Cm.  
obseruaunce.

[2274. ]Pt. Hl. *ins.* she *after*  
gan.

[2276. ]E. ladde; *rest*  
hadde.

[2279. ]Cp. Pt. Ln. methē;  
Hl. meth; E. meeth; Hn.  
mede.

[2287. ]were] Hn. Cp. Ln.  
nere.

[2289. ]E. kempd.

[2303. ]Hl. Atheon. cruelly]  
Hl. trewely.

[2311. ]E. Hl. *ins.* the *after*  
knowe.

[2317. ]Hn. As; *rest* And;  
*see* l. 2325.

[2322. ]not do me] E. Hl.  
Pt. do me no.

[2323. ]E. And; *rest* Or.

[2328. ]E. Cm. Cp. kepere.

[2337. ]E. Hn. Cp.  
whistlynge.

[2338. ]Hl. (*only*) As doth a  
wete brond in his.

[2344. ]Pt Hl. *om.* hath.

[2350. ]Hl. write; Pt. writt;  
*rest* writen.

[2356. ]E. Cp. Hl. declare.

[2358. ]E. caas.

[2369.] E. Hn. fierse; Cm.  
ferse; Hl. fyry.

[2385.] Hl. the gret; *rest*  
*om.* gret.

[2402.] E. Hn. Thanne.

[2420.] *Allins.* the (Hl. thy)  
*after* me; (*read* victorie).

[2425.] Hn. Cm. brende; E.  
Cp. Hl. brenden.

[2433.] E. Hn. Hl. and; *rest*  
that.

[2436.] E. Hn. Cm. in.

[2441.] E. stierne.

[2445.] [an] E. Pt. and.

[2449.] Hl. Pt. but; *rest* and.

[2462.] E. *om.* 1st the.

[2466.] Hl. in; *rest om.*

[2468.] Hl. tresoun.

[2489.] Hl. Erly a-morwe  
for to see that fight.

[2493.] E. *ins.* the *after* in.

[2500.] Hl. Gold-beten.

[2503.] [Nailinge] Hl.  
Rayhyng.

[2504.] Hl. Girdyng.

[2511.] E. nakerers  
(*wrongly*).

[2513.] Hl. pepul; Pt. puple;  
Ln. peple.

[2533.] E. Hn. Pt. oo.

[2534.] E. *om.* 2nd the.

[2535.] E. Cm. the noyse of  
peple.

[2544.] E. Cm. *om.* 1st ne.

[2545.] [or] E. Cm. Ln. ne.

[2547.] E. Hl. *om.* it.

[2555.] [falle] E. be. Cm.  
cheuynteyn; Cp.  
cheuntein; Hl. cheuenten.

[2556.] Hl. sle; *rest* sleen  
(sclayn).

[2559.] Hl. fight; Ln.  
fihten; *rest* fighteth.

[2561.] Cm. Cp. touchede;  
Hl. touchith; *rest* touched.

[2562.] Cm. cryedyn; E.  
cride. E. murie.

[2570.] E. Hn. Hl. Thebans;  
*see* l. 2623.

[2593.] E. *om.* they.

[2598.] Hl. Dooth.

[2608.] E. gooth; *rest* goon.

[2613.] [stomblen] E. Cm.  
semblen.

[2622.] E. fresshen

[2643.] E. rescus; Pt.  
rescowe; *rest* rescous.

[2671.] Hn. Cp. Pt. Ln.  
tompours.

[2676.] Cm. ferse; E. Hn.  
firse.

[2679.] E. Pt. *om.* this.

[2681.] E. Hn. Cm. *omit* ll.  
2681, 2682.

[2683.] Hn. she; *rest om.*

[2684.] E. furie; Hn. Cm.  
furye; *rest* fyr, fir, fire, fyre;  
*see note.*

[2698.] Hl. Pt. on lyue.

[2714.] limes] Cp. Pt. Ln.  
Hl. lyues.

[2726.] E. Hn. Cm. arm.

[2737.] E. conuoyed.

[2740.] E. fare; Cm. Hl. far.

[2746.] Hl. Pt. Corrupith.

[2760.] E. fare; Cm. Hl. far.

[2770.] Tyrwhitt *has ne*  
*may; ne is not in the MSS.*

[2781.] E. taak.

[2785.] E. Hn. Cp.  
Ialousye.

[2789.] Cp. Pt. Hl. and; *rest*  
*om.*

[2799.] For] E. And. feet]  
E. Hl. Cm. herte.

[2801.] *All but* Hl. *ins.* for  
*before in.*

[2819.] E. Hn. baar.

[2822.] ]Hl. can haue; *rest om.* can.

[2823.] ]E. nousbond is.

[2828.] ]E. eek; *for 2nd* folk.

[2834.] ]E. Hn. Cm. Pt. rentynge.

[2840.] ]Hn. chaungen; Hl. torne; *rest om.*

[2843.] ]Hn. deyed; E. dyed.

[2849.] ]E. worldes.

[2854.] ]Hn. Caste; E. Hl. Cast. now] Hl. busyly.

[2861.] ]E. amoureuse.

[2863.] ]E. the office; Hl. thoffice.

[2869.] ]E. ryden.

[2875.] ]Cp. Pt. Hl. croune; *rest coroune.*

[2883.] ]E. rugged.

[2892.] ]Hl. that weren; *rest om.*

[2893.] ]E. Ln. sitten.

[2894.] ]E. *om.* up.

[2901.] ]Ln. slake (*for* slakke); *rest* slak.

[2904.] ]Hl. al; *rest om.*

[2912.] ]*So* Hl. Cp.; *rest* the office.

[2916.] ]Hl. tharme.

[2920.] ]how] E. that.

[2921.] ]Hn. Hl. popler; *rest*  
popelere.

[2924.] ]E. fild.

[2926.] ]Hl. Disheryt.

[2928.] ]E. Cm. Nymphus.

[2934.] ]Pt. Ln. than; *rest*  
thanne.

E. Cp. stokkes; *rest* stikkes.

[2935.] ]Pt. Ln. than; *rest*  
thanne.

[2936.] ]Pt. Ln. than; *rest*  
thanne.

[2943.] ]E. *om.* the.

[2945.] ]Hl. tho; *rest om.*

[2952.] ]*So all but* Hl.,  
*which has* Thre tymes; *see*  
l.

[2954.] ]E. place (*for* fyr).

[2956.] ]E. Hn. And (*for*  
Ne).

[2958.] ]E. Hn. lych; *rest*  
liche.

[2994.] ]Hn. Ln. that; *rest*  
(*except* Hl) that same. Hl.  
and moeuere eek.

[2995.] ]Hl. Ln. stabled.

[2997.] ]Hl. alle that er; Cp.  
alle that beth

[3000.] ]E. Cp. *ins.* noght  
*bef.* noon. Hl. tallegge; Hn.

to allegge; Cm. Cp. Pt. to  
legge.

[3006.] E. dirryueth.

[3007.] Hl. Ln. take; *rest*  
taken; E. Cm. *om.* nat.

[3008.] Hl. ne; E. Hn. Pt. or  
of; Cm. or of a.

[3015.] So Hl.; *rest* eterne  
with-outen any lye.

[3016.] [at] E. it.

[3025.] E. toures.

[3034.] E. Cm. *om.* that.

[3036.] So Hl.; *rest* That is.

[3056.] Hl. whan a man.

[3059.] Hl. Cp. Pt. Ln. *ins.*  
the *bef.* flour.

[3071.] Hl. that; *rest om.*

[3077.] [your] E. thyn.

[3082.] Hn. Leen; *rest*  
Lene.

[3095.] E. Hn. Cp. Ln.  
matrimoigne; Pt.  
matrimoyne; Hl.  
matrimoyn.

[3100.] E. *om.* hath.

[3104.] Hl. also; *rest so.*

[3106.] E. Hn. Cp.  
Ialousye. Hl. ne of non  
othir teene.

Colophon; so E. Hn.; Pt. Hl.  
endeth.



[Heading.] *From* E. E.  
Heere; hoost.

[3118.] E. on; *rest* ye.

[3128.] Ln. oste; E. hoost;  
Hl. *has*—Oure hoost saugh  
wel how.

[3134.] Pt. hooste; Ln. oste;  
E. hoost.

[3140.] E. Hn. Cm. *om*.  
yow.

[3147.] E. Ln. Hl. defame;  
*rest* diffame.

[3150.] E. dronke; Cm.  
dronkyn; *rest* dronken.

[3155.] *These two lines are*  
*in* E. Cm. Hl. only.

[3156.] *These two lines are*  
*in* E. Cm. Hl. only.

[3160.] Cm. Takyn; *rest*  
Take, Tak.

[3166.] enquere] Cp. Pt.  
Ln. to enquere.

[3170.] E. Mathynketh; Hn.  
Cp. Ln. Hl. Me athynketh;  
Cm. Me thynkyth.

[3172.] demeth] Hl. as  
deme.

[3173.] E. yuel; Cm. euyt.

[3177.] Cp. chees; Cm.  
ches; *rest* chese.

[3185.] E. Cm. *om*. and. E.  
Cp. putteth; *rest* putte, put.

[3186.] E. Hn. Cm. maken;  
*rest* make.

Colophon. *From* Cm.; Pt.  
Thus endeth the prologe;  
Ln. Explicit prologus; Hl.  
Here endeth the prologe of  
the Miller.

[3187.] Cm. Pt. in (*for* at).

[3190.] Cm. Pt. Hl. pore; E.  
Hn. poure (= povre); Cp.  
Ln. pouer (= pover).

[3195.] E. asked; *rest* axed.

[3197.] E. asked; *rest* axed.

[3218.] Cm. Pt. Ln. Hl.  
mery; E. myrie.

[3223.] Hl. eyghteteene;  
*rest* xviiij.

[3225.] E. yong and wylde.

[3230.] Cm. Hl. ben; *rest* is.

[3235.] E. y-barred; *rest*  
barred.

[3236.] Hl. eek; *rest om.*

[3238.] Cp. brouded; Hl.  
browdid; Cm. I-brouded; E.  
Hn. broyden.

[3251.] E. Hn. Tasseled;  
Ln. Tassilde; Hl. Cp.  
Tassid. E. grene; *rest* silk.

[3253.] E. nas; Hn. Pt. Hl.  
nys; Cm. Cp. Ln. is.

[3261.] Cm. Pt. Cp. Ln.  
braket.

[3265.] Cm. lowe; *rest*  
loue.

[3266.] Cp. bocler; Hl.  
bocleer; *rest* bokeler.

[3283.] Cm. wrythed.

[3285.] Pt. she; Cm. Hl.  
sche; Ln. iche; *rest* ich.

[3289.] E. hir; *rest* him.

[3319.] Cm. hosyn; Pt.  
hosen; *rest* hoses.

[3321.] Hl. fyn (*for* light).  
Hl. Ln. wachet; Cm.  
vachet; *rest* waget.

[3325.] E. myrie; Hn.  
murye.

[3327.] E. Hn. maken.

[3329.] E. Hn. Oxenford;  
Cm. Oxenforthe; *rest*  
Oxenforde.

[3333.] E. his; *rest* a.

[3344.] E. myrie; Hn.  
murye.

[3347.] E. Hl. wold; *rest*  
wolde.

[3350.] Hn. Hl. ne; *rest om.*

[3362.] Cm. preye; Hl.  
praye; Ln. preie; E. Hn. Cp.  
Pt. pray. E. wole; Cm.  
wele; Hn. Hl. wol; *rest* wil.  
E. thynke; *rest* rewe.

[3364.] E. *om.* him.

[3371.] E. *repeats* to day.

[3374.] Cm. kempte; Hn.  
Ln. kembed; Cp. kembede;  
E. Pt. kembeth.

[3379.] Cm. Pt. Ln. hote; E.  
Hn. Cp. hoot.

[3380.] E. profreth.

[3384.] Hl. Herodz; Ln.  
Heraude; *rest* Herodes,  
Heraudes. Hl. on; *rest* vp  
on.

[3390.] Hl. Pt. to; *rest* til.

[3415.] Cm. Pt. ye; Hl. Iye;  
*rest* eye.

[3418.] Hn. Cm. Cp. Ln. no  
thyng; Pt. Hl. nought; E.  
thyng. Pt. Hl. may bifalle.  
(*Read mighte as might'*).

[3440.] E. Hn. foond; Pt.  
foonde.

[3444.] E. Hn. Cp. capyng.

[3445.] Cp. Ln. keked; Hl.  
loked.

[3447.] E. Pt. that; *rest* this.

[3451.] E. Hn. Astromye;  
Ln. Arstromye; *rest*  
astronomye; *but* Astromye  
*is meant*; see l. 3457.

[3457.] So E. Hn.; *rest*  
astronomye.

[3460.] E. -put.

[3466.] E. of; *rest* vp, vpe.

[3470.] Cm. Hl. haf; E. Hn.  
haaf; Cp. heef. Hn. Pt. Ln.  
Hl. vp; *rest* of.

[3473.] E. Hn. caped; Hl. capyd; Cp. capede; *rest* gaped, gapede.

[3477.] Hl. man (*for 3rd* what); *rest om.*

[3485.] *All but* E. Hl. For the nyghtes. E. Hn. uerye; Cm. verie; Cp. Pt. verye; Ln. very; Hl. verray.

[3486.] Cm. wonyst þou; Hl. wonestow; *after which* Cm. Hl. *ins.* now.

[3487.] Hl. *om.* this.

[3489.] E. this; *rest* the.

[3491.] Hn. Pt. Hl. thenk; *rest* thynk; *see* 3478. Cm. as men don when they swinke.

[3501.] Cp. Pt. hooste; Ln. ostee; Hl. host ful; E. Hn. hoost; Cm. ost.

[3505.] E. *om.* it.

[3510.] E. Hl. am; *rest* nam, ne am.

[3516.] [a] Hl. on.

[3519.] Cm. Hl. *om.* 2nd in.

[3525.] Pt. Ln. *om.* ther.

[3527.] E. aftir.

[3534.] E. hou.

[3535.] Hl. had; E. Hn. Cm. hadde.

[3539.] E. felaweshipe.

[3540.] E. brynge; *rest* gete.

[3541.] E. hadde; leuere.

[3544.] E. woostou; doone.

[3548.] E. ellis. E.  
kymelyn; Hl. kemelyn.

[3565.] E. Thanne.

[3571.] E. Pt. Ln. broke;  
*rest* breke.

[3575.] E. Thanne. E. shal  
I; *rest* shaltow, shalt thou.

[3577.] E. Thanne.

[3588.] E. heeste.

[3591.] E. Hn. Na.

[3592.] E. Pt. Hl. so; *rest*  
go.

[3593.] E. folk; Cm. we;  
*rest* men.

[3598.] E. sende.

[3599.] E. to preche; Cp. to  
teche; *rest* teche.

[3608.] Cm. er (*for* or). E.  
lost; *rest* dede, deede, ded.

[3609.] Cm. Hl. verray  
trewe.

[3611.] E. Auctor (*in*  
*margin*).

[3612.] Hl. A man. E. Hn.  
dyen. Pt. Hl. for; Cm.  
thour; *rest* of.

[3624.] E. *om.* he; Hl. *has*  
þan.

[3626.]E. In-to; Cm. Onto;  
*rest* Vnto.

[3627.]E. vitailleth.

[3630.]E. hadde.

[3635.]E. dresseth; *rest*  
dressed. E. Hn. Cm. alle.  
Hn. Cp. scholde; E. shal.

[3643.]Cm. Hl. verray; *rest*  
wery.

[3660.]E. With a  
compaignye.

[3661.]E. Cloistrer; Pt. Ln.  
Cloystrere.

[3672.]E. Hl. wake; Cm. to  
wakyn; *rest* to wake.

[3676.]Hn. Cp. Pt. Ln.  
knokken; E. Cm. knokke;  
Hl. go knokke.

[3690.]E. of; *rest* and.

[3696.]E. brist.

[3697.]Hn. cogheth; Cp.  
coughed; Hl. cowhith; Pt.  
kougheþ; Cm. coude; E.  
knokketh.

[3701.]Cp. Pt. thenken;  
*rest* thynken, thynke.

[3709.]E. Hn. com pa me;  
Cp. com pame; Cm.  
cumpame; Pt. compame;  
Hl. Ln. compaine; *several*  
MSS. come bame,  
combame; *see note*.

[3716.]Cp. Pt. Ln. kisse;  
Hl. kisseth; *rest* kys.

[3718.] E. *om.* ther-with.

[3721.] *These 2 lines in E. only.*

[3722.] *These 2 lines in E. only.*

[3724.] E. *om.* a.

[3728.] Cm. don; Hl. doon;  
Pt. doo; *rest* do. Hn. thee;  
*rest* the.

[3731.] E. Dirk.

[3732.] E. pitte.

[3736.] E. Cm. stirte.

[3743.] E. weel, deel; Ln.  
wele, dele; *rest* wel, del.

[3744.] E. weel, deel; Ln.  
wele, dele; *rest* wel, del.

[3753.] Hl. nadde bleynt.

[3759.] Cm. wepte; Hl.  
wept.

[3763.] E. Hn. kultour; Cp.  
Pt. Ln. culter.

[3766.] E. I am heere; *rest*  
it am I.

[3770.] E. Hn. Cp. viritoot;  
Pt. Vyrítote; Ln. verítote;  
Cm. merytot; Hl. verytrot.

[3771.] Pt. Ln. seynt; *rest*  
seinte. Pt. Hl. Noet.

[3776.] E. kultour.

[3781.] Hl. Ye schul him  
haue.



[3782.] ]Hl. fo; *rest* foo; ed. 1561, fote.

[3785.] ]E. kultour.

[3793.] ]E. Hn. my; Cm. myn; Hl. O my; Cp. thi; Pt. thine; Ln. þin. E. deerelyng; Hn. Cm. Cp. derelyng.

[3800.] ]E. *om.* ers.

[3810.] ]E. *om.* the.

[3812.] ]E. kultour.

[3813.] ]And] Hn. That.

[3818.] ]E. Hn. Nowelis;  
Cp. Noweles  
(*intentionally*); Cm.  
Newelis; Pt. Ln. Hl. noes.

[3821.] ]Hl. he goth (*for*  
goth al). E. Hn. foond.

[3828.] ]E. Hn. he; *rest om.*

[3831.] ]Pt. Ln. Hl. born.

[3834.] ]E. Hn. Nowelis;  
Cp. Ln. the Nowels; Pt. þe  
Noes; Hl. Noes.

[3837.] ]E. roue; *see* l. 3839.

[3838.] ]E. Hn. Ln. preyde.

[3841.] ]E. Hn. Cp. cape.

[3846.] ]E. holde.

[3848.] ]E. Hn. Hl. was; *rest*  
is.

[3849.] ]E. of this; Hn. at  
this; *rest* at his.

[3850.] ]E. this; *rest* the.

[3852.]Pt. Hl. ye; Hn. Iye;  
E. Ln. eye.

[3853.]E. Hn. the; *rest* his.

Colophon.*So* E. (*with*  
Heere); Hl. Pn. Here endeth  
the Millers tale; Hn. Here is  
ended the Millerys tale; Cp.  
Ln. Explicit fabula  
Molendinarii.

[3862.]E. Pt. *om.* is.

[3865.]E. Ln. eye.

[3867.]E. Hn. no (*for* not).

[3869.]Hl. My (*for* This).

[3870.]E. mowled also.

[3872.]E. leng; Ln. longe:  
*rest* lenger.

[3876.]E. ay whil that; Hn.  
alwey whil þat; *rest* alwey  
while.

[3885.]E. eelde.

[3886.]E. vnweelde.

[3893.]Hn. sith; E. sithe.

[3904.]E. Cm. And; *rest*  
Or. *All but* Hn. *om.* 2nd a.

[3907.]Cp. Pt. Ln that (*for*  
ther).

[3908.]Pt. hie (*for* al).

[3912.]*In margin* of  
E.—vim vi repellere.

[3918.]Hl. tobreke; Pt.  
alto-breke.

[3919.]Pt. ye; Cp. ?e; *rest*  
eye.

[3923.]E. Hn. Cm. which;  
*rest* whiche.

[3928.]Hl. wrastle wel  
(*om.* and).

[3934.]Hl. camois; Pt.  
camoyse.

[3939.]E. was of corn and  
eek of Mele.

[3941.]E. Cp. Hl. hote;  
Cm. hotyn; *rest* hoten. Pt.  
deyne?ouse.

[3944.]panne] Cm. peny.

[3948.]E. But if; *rest* But.

[3949.]Hn. Cm. Pt.  
yemanrye.

[3950.]E. Hn. Pt. peert.

[3951.]Cm. Hl. on; *rest* vp-  
on.

[3953.]Cm. boundyn; Pt.  
bounden; Hn. Cp. Ln.  
wounden; Hl. ybounde.

[3956.]Hl. ma dame.

[3958.]Hl. elles (*for* ones).

[3959.]Hl. Symekyn.

[3965.]Hn. Cm. And; *rest*  
As. Hl. bissemare; Cp.  
bisemare; E. Hn. Pt. Ln.  
bismare.

[3974.]Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl.  
camoys. MSS. eyen, ey?en.

[3975.] E. Cm. *om.* With.

[3977.] E. Cm. This; *rest*  
The.

[3987.] E. Cm. sokene.

[4002.] Pt. Ln. Than; *rest*  
Thanne.

[4004.] Pt. Teestif.

[4005.] Ln. revelrie; *rest*  
renerye; ed. 1561, reuelry.

[4013.] E. highte (1*st*); heet  
(2*nd*). Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl. hight.

[4019.] E. Cm. Pt *om.* with.

[4020.] Cp. needede (*see* l.  
4161); E. Hn. Pt. neded;  
Cm. Hl. nedyth; Ln. nedep̄.

[4022.] Hn. Symkyn; *rest*  
Symond, Symon; *see* l.  
4026.

[4027.] E. boes (= North. E.  
*bus*); Hn. Cp. bihoues; Pt.  
Ln. byhouep̄; Cm. muste;  
Hl. falles.

[4033.] E. Hn. Cp. heythen;  
Ln. hethen (*the right form*);  
Cm. hene; Pt. hepen (*for*  
hepen).

[4036.] E. hopur.

[4040.] Cp. Hl. and; *rest*  
*om.*

[4044.] E. Cm. yfayth..

[4045.] Cm. Pt. is (*for are*);  
Ln. es.

[4049.] E. Ln. eye.

[4051.] E. Hn. Cp. Ln.  
crekes; Hl. knakkes.

[4053.] E. stide.

[4054.] E. Cm. Hl. *om.* the.

[4056.] Cm. I counte; Hl.  
ne counte I; *rest* counte I.

[4061.] Cm. Cp. Ln. Hl.  
lenesel; E. lefsel; Hn.  
leefsel.

[4064.] E. Hn. Cp. Ln. laus;  
Hl. loos; Cm. los; Pt. louse;  
*see* l. 4138.

[4069.] E. weel.

[4074.] E. out; Hn. Cm. Cp.  
Pt. Ln. of; Hl. on.

[4078.] E. geen; Hn. Ln.  
gane; Hl. gan; Cm. Cp. Pt.  
gon.

[4082.] E. Hn. boond.

[4084.] E. Cm. *om.* Iohn.

[4087.] E. Hn. god; *rest*  
goddes, goddis.

[4088.] E. Hn. Cm. pit; *rest*  
put (putte).

[4094.] E. *om.* a.

[4101.] Cm. ware þe rere;  
Hl. ware derere; *rest*  
warderere; ed. 1561,  
wartherere.

[4104.] E. do; Cm. don;  
*rest* dide (did).

[4107.] Cm. beste; E. Hn.  
beest.

[4110.] E. Hl. dryue; *rest*  
dryuen (dreven).

[4111.] E. stoln me.

[4123.] E. Hn. Argumentz;  
Cm. argumentis; Cp. Hl.  
argumentes.

[4126.] E. in (*for* is).

[4128.] Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl.  
mery; E. Hn. myrie.

[4129.] E. taa; Cm. tan; Pt.  
taken; Hn. tak; Cp. take.

[4131.] E. Hn. hoost; Hl.  
host ful; Pt. hooste; Cp. Ln.  
ooste.

[4134.] Hl. na; Cp. naan; E.  
Hn. Cm. none; Pt. not.

[4138.] E. Hn. Cp. boond.  
E. nat; Cm. not; Hn.  
namoore; Cp. namore; Pt.  
Ln. Hl. no more.

[4147.] E. drynke; Hn. Cp.  
Pt. drynken; Hl. Cm.  
dronken.

[4151.] Hl. yoxeth.

[4160.] E. wente; *rest* gooth  
(goth).

[4161.] Cp. needede (*see* l.  
4020); *rest* neded.

[4162.] Hl. wysly; Cm.  
wysely; E. wisely; *rest*  
wisly.

[4166.] Hl. Cp. a (*for* two).

[4170.] Cp. Herdestow; Cm  
Ln. Herdist thou; Hl.

Herdistow; E. Herdtow;  
Hn. Herd thow.

[4171.] Ln. compline; Hn.  
conplyng; Pt. conplinge;  
Hl. couplyng (*wrongly*); E.  
cowplyng; Cm. copil.

E. whilk; Hn. Cp. Ln.  
swilke; Cm. swich; Pt.  
slike; Hl. slik.

[4181.] Hl. (*margin*) Qui in  
vno grauatur in alio debet  
releuari.

[4183.] E. Cm. shortly; *rest*  
sothly. E. is; *rest* it is. Hn.  
Hl. na; E. ne; *rest* no (non).

[4185.] E. neen; Hn. naan;  
Hl. nan; *rest* non (noon); *so*  
*in* 4187.

[4206.] E. Cm. sek; *rest*  
sak.

[4213.] E. the; *rest* his.

[4217.] E. Hn. Pt. foond.

[4223.] E. Hn. foond.

[4226.] [to] Cm. bi.

[4230.] E. myrie; *om.* ne.

[4231.] E. soore; Cm. sore;  
*rest* depe (deepe).

[4234.] Cm. Ln. Pt. wex;  
*rest* wax.

[4236.] Cm. Cp. Hl. far;  
*rest* fare; *see note*.

[4246.] Cm. halp; E. Hn.  
heelp.

[4277. ]in] Hn. on.

[4278. ]Hl. walweden as  
pigges.

[4280. ]Hn. on; Cm. a?en;  
*rest at.*

[4283. ]E. lite; Cm. lyte;  
*rest litel.*

[4286. ]Cm. Pt. Ln.  
Bromholm; *rest*  
Bromholm.

[4290. ]Cp. Ln. vp (*twice*).  
E. Hn. Cm. Pt. Hl. vp on  
(*for 1st up*). E. Cm. Pt. Hl.  
on (Hn. vp); *for 2nd vp.*

[4292. ]E. Cm. stirte. E.  
soone (*for faste*).

[4296. ]E. Hn. foond; Hl.  
took.

[4301. ]Hl. ye; Hn. Iye; *rest*  
eye.

[4307. ]E. Cm Hl. And; *rest*  
That.

[4309. ]Hl. greyth; Cm.  
hastede.

[4320. ]E. Hn. yuele; Cm.  
euele.

Colophon. Hn. Hl. Here  
endeth the Reves tale.

[4322. ]E. Trinitee; *rest*  
magestee (mageste).

[4325. ]E. whil that the

[4332. ]Hl. herburgage.



[4336.] Hn. sith; E. sitthe;  
Hl. sibpe; Cp. Pt. Ln.  
sithen.

[4339.] Hn. Hl. stynten; E.  
stynte.

*Last two words glossed hic  
and audire in E. Hn.*

[4340.] *Last two words  
glossed hic and audire in E.  
Hn.*

[4347.] E. Hn. Cm. Ln.  
Douere. E. Hn. soold.

[4348.] E. Hn. coold.

[4350.] Hl. persly; Hn.  
persle; E. percely.

[4355.] Hl. *omits.*

[4357.] E. Cm. quaad; Cp.  
Hl. quad; *rest* quade.

[4359.] E. na (*for* nat).

Colophon. *In* Pt.; Ln.  
Explicit prologus.

[4366.] E. vitailleurs.

[4369.] E. ykempd; Hn.  
ykembd; *rest* ykempt.

[4380.] E. ayeyn.

[4383.] Pt. Ln. steuen; *rest*  
steuene.

[4385.] Pt. Ln. toune; *rest*  
toun.

[4396.] E. Ln. ribible; *rest*  
rubible.

[4397.] E. lowe.

[4402.] E. Newegate.

[4404.] E. Hn. Hl. papir.

[4406.] E. Hn. Cp. Hl.  
Appul.

[4410.] E. seruantz.

[4415.] Hl. *omits.*

[4416.] Pt. souke; *rest*  
sowke.

Hl. *omits.*

[4417.] Hl. *omits.*

[4418.] Hl. *omits.*

[4419.] E. compier; Hn.  
compeer; Cp. Pt. Ln.  
conpere.

Hl. *omits.*

Colophon. *In* Hn. *only.*  
*Blank space in E.*

[4420.] Hl. *omits.*

[4421.] Hl. *omits.*

[4422.] Hl. *omits.*

[1.] Hl. Hoste; Ln. oste;  
*rest* hoost (oost). *On sey,*  
*see note.*

[2.] E. Hn. Hl. hath; *rest*  
had.

[4.] Cm. *wanting;* Cp Pt.  
Ln. expert; E. Hn. ystert;  
Hl. *om.*

[5.] Hn. xvijthe; Cp. xvijje;  
Pt. Ln. xvij; E. eighte and  
twentithe; Hl. threttenthe.

[14.] Cm. Pt. Hl. of the; E.  
Hn. at the; Cp. atte; Ln. att.

[37.] Hl. and holdeth; *rest*  
now of (*badly*).

[38.] E. do.

[43.] Cm. man; *rest* a man.

[45.] E. wole; Hn. wol.

[47.] MS. Camb. Dd. 4. 24  
*has* But; *rest* That; *see note*.

[55.] Hl. Cm. Epistelles; E.  
Hn. Cp. Epistles.

[56.] E. Hn. telle; *rest*  
tellen.

[64.] Hl. sorwe; *rest* sword.

[66.] E. Cm. Hl. Diane; Hn.  
Cp. Pt Ln. Dianire, *or*  
Dyanyre.

[69.] E. Hn. Ln. Leandre.

[70.] E. *omits* eek.

[71.] E. *omits* of.

[72.] Cp. Hl. queen; *rest*  
quene.

[74.] E. Cm. in; *rest* of.

[75.] E. Hn. Cm.  
Penolopee.

[76.] E. wifhede.

[95.] Hn. Cp. Pt. Hl. hawe  
bake; E. hawebake; Cm. aw  
bake; Ln. halve bake.

[102.] *So* Hn.; Cp. Pt. art  
þou so; Ln. þou art so; Hl.

so art thou; *but* E. so soore  
artow ywoundid.

[109.] E. Hn. lite; *rest* litel.

[118.] E. *om.* the.

[119.] E. Hn. Hl. to; Cp. Pt.  
Ln. in.

[124.] E. fild.

[150.] E. And; *rest* But.

[153.] E. swich a wyse; *the*  
*rest omit a.*

[212.] Hl. Cp. argumentes.

[220.] Cm. *om.* that.

[255.] E. ynough; Hn. Cp.  
Hl. ynowe; Cm. Ln. Inowe.

[282.] E. goon; *rest* anon.

[283.] E. sauacioun; *rest*  
redempcioun.

[289.] Cm. at; *rest om.* (Or  
*means ere, and brende is*  
*intransitive.*)

[290.] E. Hn. Cm. Nat (*for*  
Ne at); Hl. Ne at.

[306.] E. Hn. Cp. fieble.

[316.] E. come; *rest*  
brought.

[330.] E. she seyde; *rest*  
quod she.

[333.] Cp. Pt. Ln.  
messenger; Hl. messenger;  
*see note.*

[385.] E. hoome; Hn. Cm.  
hom.

[402.] E. or; *rest* ne. E.  
curius.

[411.] E. Cm. Cp. matiere;  
Hn. Pt. matere.

[413.] E. The; *rest* That.

[418.] E. bihold.

[423.] *So* Cm.; *rest* The  
ende.

[428.] E. soothly; *rest*  
shortly.

[432.] Pt. Hl. this cursed;  
*rest omit* this.

[435.] E. *omits* ther.

[440.] Hn. Cm. bidde; Cp.  
Pt. bidden; Ln. beden; E.  
biddeth; Hl. bad.

[442.] E. with hire; *rest*  
thider.

[451.] E. woful; *rest* welful,  
wilful, weleful.

[453.] E. wesshe; Cm.  
wesch; Pt. wessh.

[462.] Cm. Ln. kep; Hn. Pt.  
Hl. kepe; Cp. keepe; E.  
helpe.

[463.] E. fleteth; *but* Hn.  
Cp Pt. fleet.

[469.] *Read* placë; Hl.  
*alone inserts* as *after* ther.

[473.] Hl. horrible.

[489.]Pt. Ln. *om.* hir.

[497.]*I insert* that; Hl.  
awok.

[531.]MSS. plese.

[532.]E. Cm. in; *rest* on.

[536.]soiourned] Hl.  
herberwed.

[553.]E. whan; *rest* after.

[561.]E. olde; Hl. old; *rest*  
blynde, blynd.

[574.]Hl. Cm. Conuerted;  
*rest* Conuerteth. E. maketh;  
Ln. maad; *rest* made.

[598.]E. Hn. Sathans; Hl.  
Satanas; *but* Sathanas *in*  
Cp. Pt. Ln.

[606.]E. Hn. weep; Cm.  
Cp. Pt. wepte; Hl. wept. E.  
wroong.

[620.]*So in* E.; *rest* Bereth.

[621.]*All* moorning  
(mornyng); Tyrwhitt *has*  
murmuring; *see note.*

[626.]E. baar.

[638.]E. sit; Hn. Cm. Pt.  
sette; Hl. set.

[644.]E. or; *rest* for.

[647.]gat] Cp. get; Pt. gete;  
Hl. geyneth.

[654.]E. Ln. *om.* ye.

[701.]Cm. nor; E. or; *rest*  
ne.

[704.] E. Hn. mariages; Ln.  
þe mariage; *rest* mariage;  
Hl. Of mariage.

[705.] a] E. the; Hn. Pt.  
*omit.*

[728.] Hn. tath; Cm. taath;  
*rest* taketh.

[733.] Cp. Hl. thanke; E.  
Hn. thanketh; Cm.  
thankede; Pt. Ln. thonketh.

[735.] E. Cm. to; *rest* of.

[740.] Hl. *om.* at.

[750.] MSS. queene, queen.

[755.] E. Hn. Cm. Y-  
comen.

[756.] E. Hn. *om.* wight;  
Hl. man.

[791.] Hl. vn-to; Pt. to; *rest*  
til; *but* vn-til (*as in*  
Tyrwhitt) *seems better.*

[795.] *So* E. Hn.; Cm. and  
heigh; Cp. on a heih; Pt. on  
an high; Hl. of an heigh;  
Ln. or an hihe.

[797.] regne] E. Reawme.

[819.] shames] Hl.  
schamful.

[823.] E. Ln. the; *rest* hir.

[837.] Ln. Hl. kerchef; Pt.  
keerchef; E. Hn.  
couerchief; Cm. couerchif;  
Cp. couerchef. E. Hn. Cm.  
ouer (*wrongly*); *rest* of.

[849.] E. Ln. *om.* litel; *rest*  
*have it.*

[861.] E. Yet; *rest* So.

[862.] E. Ln. Hl. looked;  
*rest* looketh, loketh.

[868.] Hn. Pt. Hl. blesseth;  
Cm. Cp. Ln. blisseth; E.  
blissed.

[882.] *The word eek seems*  
*wanted; but is not in the*  
*MSS.*

[903.] So Hn. Cp. Pt. Hl.;  
E. Ln. vn-to the; Cm. to  
the.

[907.] E. saued; *rest* saueth.

[916.] E. Cm. in-to the; *rest*  
*omit* the.

[920.] E. Hn. heelp; Hl.  
hilp; Cm. Cp. halp; Pt.  
halpe; Ln. helped.

[938.] E. Hl. nas; Ln. is; *the*  
*rest* was.

[940.] E. Oloferne; Hl.  
Olefernes; *the rest*  
Olofernus, Olefernus, *or*  
Olesphernus; *see note.*

[947.] E. alway; *rest* ay.  
*(The latter is better, but*  
*recurs in l. 950.)*

[948.] *All but* Hl. *ins.* and  
*after* West.

[971.] E. Cm. *om.* ne *before*  
knew; *the rest* have it.



[973.] Hl. although; Pt. though that; *rest* thogh, though, thow.

[985.] E. *puts* wepeth *after* That.

[995.] E. thurgh out the toun; *rest* thurgh Rome toun.

[996.] E. Hn. Cp. Pt. comen.

[999.] E. Hn. agayns.

[1026.] Hl. Cm. Ln. mayden; *rest* mayde. Cm. nor; Hl. Ln. or; *rest* ne.

[1041.] E. haue; *rest* hath. E. ysent; Cm. I-sent; *rest* sent.

[1047.] E. Pt. hastily; *rest* hastily, hastely.

[1060.] Hl. alle; *which the rest omit*.

[1074.] Hl. they ben.

[1084.] E. wolde; *rest* sholde.

[1107.] *So in all the MSS.; to be read as Cústancē (three syllables).*

[1126.] E. Hn. Cm. In the; *rest om.* the

[1137.] E. som kynnes; Cm. *sumkenys*; Hl. som maner; Hn. Cp. Pt. som kyn; Ln. *sumkin*.

[1146. ]E. praye to; Hl.  
pray that; *rest* preyen,  
prayen, preien, *or* preyne.

[1150. ]Hl. And fynt hir  
freendes ther bothe hool  
and sound. *The rest omit*  
ther.

[\*?\* ]*For* l. 5583 in  
Tyrwhitt's Text, *see* Group  
D, l. 1.

Colophon. *The latter part is*  
*from* MS. Arch. Selden B.  
14. *Many MSS have* The  
prolog of the squyers tale,  
*or* the prolog of the Squier.  
*The Petworth MS. and*  
*some others have here an*  
*ill-written and spurious*  
Prologue to the Shipman's  
Tale, *which is here*  
*subjoined:*

'Now freendes,'  
seide our Hoost so  
dere,  
'How lyketh you  
by Iohn the  
Pardonere?  
For he hath  
unbokeled wel the  
male;  
He hath us told  
right a thrifty tale  
As touching of  
misgovernaunce—  
I preye to God,  
yeve him good  
chaunce!—  
As ye han herd of  
these riotoures  
three.  
Now, gentil  
Mariner, hertely I  
preye thee,

Telle us a good  
tale, and that right  
anon.’  
‘It shall be doon,  
by god and by seint  
Iohn,’  
Seyde this Mariner,  
‘as wel as ever I  
can,’  
And right anon his  
tale he bigan.

[1163.] *From Cp., collated  
with Hl. Pt. Ln. Seld.  
Royal, and Sloane; E. Hn.  
Cm. omit.*

[1164.] *Cp. herkeneth; Hl.  
herkneth.*

*From Cp., collated with Hl.  
Pt. Ln. Seld. Royal, and  
Sloane; E. Hn. Cm. omit.*

[1165.] *From Cp., collated  
with Hl. Pt. Ln. Seld.  
Royal, and Sloane; E. Hn.  
Cm. omit.*

[1166.] *From Cp., collated  
with Hl. Pt. Ln. Seld.  
Royal, and Sloane; E. Hn.  
Cm. omit.*

[1167.] *From Cp., collated  
with Hl. Pt. Ln. Seld.  
Royal, and Sloane; E. Hn.  
Cm. omit.*

[1168.] *From Cp., collated  
with Hl. Pt. Ln. Seld.  
Royal, and Sloane; E. Hn.  
Cm. omit.*

[1169.] *From Cp., collated  
with Hl. Pt. Ln. Seld.  
Royal, and Sloane; E. Hn.  
Cm. omit.*

[1170.] *From Cp., collated with Hl. Pt. Ln. Seld. Royal, and Sloane; E. Hn. Cm. omit.*

[1171.] *From Cp., collated with Hl. Pt. Ln. Seld. Royal, and Sloane; E. Hn. Cm. omit.*

[1172.] *From Cp., collated with Hl. Pt. Ln. Seld. Royal, and Sloane; E. Hn. Cm. omit.*

[1173.] *From Cp., collated with Hl. Pt. Ln. Seld. Royal, and Sloane; E. Hn. Cm. omit.*

[1174.] Cp. herkeneth; Hl. herkneth.

Hl. Now; *rest* How (Howe).

*From Cp., collated with Hl. Pt. Ln. Seld. Royal, and Sloane; E. Hn. Cm. omit.*

[1175.] Hl. *omits.*

*From Cp., collated with Hl. Pt. Ln. Seld. Royal, and Sloane; E. Hn. Cm. omit.*

[1176.] *From Cp., collated with Hl. Pt. Ln. Seld. Royal, and Sloane; E. Hn. Cm. omit.*

[1177.] *From Cp., collated with Hl. Pt. Ln. Seld. Royal, and Sloane; E. Hn. Cm. omit.*

[1178.] *From Cp., collated with Hl. Pt. Ln. Seld.*

Royal, *and* Sloane; E. Hn.  
Cm. *omit.*

[1179.] Seld. *has* Shipman;  
Roy. Slo. Cp. Pt. Ln.  
squier; Hl. sompnour.

*From Cp., collated with Hl.*  
Pt. Ln. Seld. Royal, *and*  
Sloane; E. Hn. Cm. *omit.*

[1180.] *From Cp., collated*  
*with Hl.* Pt. Ln. Seld.  
Royal, *and* Sloane; E. Hn.  
Cm. *omit.*

[1181.] Seld. Hl. We leuen;  
Roy. Cp. Pt. Ln. He leueth.

*From Cp., collated with Hl.*  
Pt. Ln. Seld. Royal, *and*  
Sloane; E. Hn. Cm. *omit.*

[1182.] Seld. Hl. quod,  
*which* Cp. Pt. Ln. Roy. Slo.  
*omit.*

*From Cp., collated with Hl.*  
Pt. Ln. Seld. Royal, *and*  
Sloane; E. Hn. Cm. *omit.*

[1183.] *From Cp., collated*  
*with Hl.* Pt. Ln. Seld.  
Royal, *and* Sloane; E. Hn.  
Cm. *omit.*

[1184.] *From Cp., collated*  
*with Hl.* Pt. Ln. Seld.  
Royal, *and* Sloane; E. Hn.  
Cm. *omit.*

[1185.] *From Cp., collated*  
*with Hl.* Pt. Ln. Seld.  
Royal, *and* Sloane; E. Hn.  
Cm. *omit.*

[1186.] *From Cp., collated*  
*with Hl.* Pt. Ln. Seld.

Royal, *and* Sloane; E. Hn.  
Cm. *omit.*

Hl. *omits.*

[1187.] *From Cp., collated  
with Hl. Pt. Ln. Seld.  
Royal, and Sloane; E. Hn.  
Cm. omit.*

Hl. *omits.*

[1188.] *From Cp., collated  
with Hl. Pt. Ln. Seld.  
Royal, and Sloane; E. Hn.  
Cm. omit.*

Hl. *omits.*

[1189.] *Tyrwhitt has of  
physike; the MSS. have the  
unmeaning word phislyas  
(Sloane phillyas; Ln.  
fisleas); read physices; see  
note.*

Colophon. *From Seld.*

*From Cp., collated with Hl.  
Pt. Ln. Seld. Royal, and  
Sloane; E. Hn. Cm. omit.*

Hl. *omits.*

[1190.] *From Cp., collated  
with Hl. Pt. Ln. Seld.  
Royal, and Sloane; E. Hn.  
Cm. omit.*

Hl. *omits.*

[1191.] *Hl. hild.*

[1196.] *E. chiere.*

[1201.] *E. housbonde. Hn.  
moot; Pt. mot; rest moste.*

[1205.]Pt. Hl. may not.

[1206.]E. ellis.

[1208.]E. Thanne.

[1214.]E. Hn. hise; Hl.  
these; *rest* his.

[1216.]E. of; Hn. Cp. Ln.  
a; *rest om.*

[1217.]E. comynge; *rest*  
drawyng.

[1220.]Pt. *omits.*

[1221.]Pt. *omits.*

[1222.]E. *om.* is; Hl.  
possibil is; *rest* is possible.

Pt. *omits.*

[1231.]E. Hn. Pt. ech; Hl.  
ilk; *rest* like. Cp. for to  
assure; Hl. Ln. to assure  
(*om.* for).

[1237.]E. the; *rest* that.

[1261.]Cp. Ln. good (*for*  
fyn); Hl. wyn.

[1262.]Hl. volantyn (!).

[1263.]E. *om.* ete and.

[1266.]E. hise.

[1268.]Pt. Hl. as; *rest om.*

[1272.]E. hise.

[1277.]E. hise.

[1294.]E. fourme; *rest*  
forme.

[1300.]E. murily.

[1301.]E. Cp. wax.

[1304.]E. *repeats* nay.

[1306.]Cp. Pt. rewme; Hl.  
Ln. reme; E. Hn. Reawme;  
*see* B. 4326.

[1317.]Hn. Cm. Cp. Pt. Ln.  
Hl. telleth; E. tel. E. me of;  
Cp. Ln. forth; *rest* me.

[1318.]E. I yow may; *rest*  
*om.* yow.

[1321.]Cm. here; *rest om.*

[1326.]E. pieces; *rest*  
peces, peeces.

[1335.]E. Thanne.

[1337.]your cosyn] E. of  
youre kyn.

[1338.]and] E. Cp. Pt. Ln.  
and by.

[1340.]E. lief.

[1351.]E. housbonde.

[1355.]Hl. *om.*

[1367.]to] E. Hn. Cm.  
unto.

[1371.]E. Ln. Hl. I am; *rest*  
am I.

E. ellis.

[1374.]E. housbonde.

[1376.]E. ellis.

Hl. *omits.*



[1377.] Hl. *omits.*

[1378.] Hl. *omits.*

[1379.] Hl. *omits.*

[1384.] E. hadde.

[1389.] E. housbonde.

[1404.] E. Hn. Who ther  
(*with Qi la in margin*); Hl.  
Qy la; Cp. Pt. Quy la; Ln.  
Que la.

[1408.] Hl. Cm. of; *rest on.*

[1412.] E. Cm. alenge; *rest*  
*elenge.*

[1413.] E. *om.* What.

[1417.] E. clepid.

[1418.] E. xij.

[1420.] E. chiere.

[1426.] E. Hn. Cm. tauyse;  
*rest to auyse.*

[1441.] E. Hn. But; *rest*  
And.

[1445.] E. Hn. Cm. At; *rest*  
And.

[1455.] E. Hn. And if that  
any thyng by day or night.

[1465.] E. at; *rest of.*

[1479.] Cm. encrece (*for*  
*creaunce*).

[1483.] E. fette hym forth;  
*rest om. hym.*

[1491.] E. Hn. murily.

[1494. ]E. Cm. *om.* the.

[1496. ]E. Hn. let; Cm. lat;  
Hl. Pt. lad; Cp. leet; Ln.  
leteþ (let = ledeth).

[1502. ]E. Hn. Cm. *om.*  
For.

[1503. ]E. right to the point.

[1506. ]E. hise.

[1517. ]E. feeste.

[1519. ]E. cheuyssaunce.

[1520. ]Hl. bounde; *rest*  
bounden.

[1526. ]Pt. cheertee; Ln.  
chere; *rest* chiertee.

[1532. ]E. feeste.

E. murye.

[1537. ]E. cheuyssaunce.

[1540. ]ar] Cp. Pt. Ln. be.

[1549. ]E. Hn. Cm. yow;  
*rest* hir.

[1558. ]E. hadde; Hl. took;  
*rest* gat. *Over bond is the*  
*gloss—obligacionem.*

[1559. ]E. murie. E.  
papeiay; *rest* papyniay,  
popiniay.

[1562. ]E. Hn. Cm. Cp.  
abouen; *rest* aboute.

[1571. ]E. wantownely.

[1572. ]Cp. Pt. þat; Hl. þus;  
*rest om.*

[1574.]E. were; *rest* be.

[1584.]E. axen; *rest* axe. E.  
Hl. *om.* of.

[1585.]E. as; Hl. *om.*; *rest*  
ne.

[1586.]Hn. Hl. Tel; Ln.  
Til; *rest* Telle.

[1592.]Cm. defye; *rest*  
deffie.

[1595.]E. Hn. Cp. thedam.

[1597.]E. hadde.

[1599.]E. beele; Cm. beel;  
*rest* bele.

[1601.]E. Hn. Hl. this; *rest*  
suche, such.

[1611.]E. Hn. For; *rest* To.

[1622.]E. that; *rest* this.

[1623.]E. Hn. *om.* now.

[1624.]Cm. Talynge; Hl.  
Talyng; E. Hn. Pt.  
Taillynge; Cp. Ln.  
Toylyng(!).

Colophon.*So* E. Hn. Cp. Pt.

[]Heading.*So* E. (*with*  
Bihoold, murie, Hoost);  
Hn. Herke the myrie  
Wordes of the Worthy  
Hoost; Pt. And here  
bygynneth the prologe of  
the priores; Ln. Incipit  
prologus Priorisse.

[1625.]E. Hn. Hoost.

[1626.] E. Hn. moote; Ln.  
Hl. mot; *rest* mote. E.  
saille; cost.

[1628.] E. this; *rest* the. Hn.  
quaad; *rest* quade.

[1642.] Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl.  
sayde in this manere.

[ ] Heading. *From* E. Hn.  
(Hn. proheme, *for* prologe).  
Cp. *has*—Here begynneth  
the tale of Alma  
redemptoris, the prioresses  
Tale. Prolog. *Domine*  
*Dominus noster*.

[1651.] E. *om*. whyte.

[1660.] Hl. Cp. the alight.

[1669.] Hn. Slo. Ln. Hl.  
the] E. thurgh; Cp. Pt. to. E.  
Hn. of; *but the rest* thurgh.

[1675.] Cp. Pt. Hl.  
vnnethes; E. Hn. vnnethe.  
Heading. *From* E. Hn.  
*has*—Here biggyneth the  
Prioress tale of Alma  
redemptoris mater.

[1695.] Cp. Pt. Ln. the  
ymage.

[1696.] E. he hadde.

[1701.] E. Pt. forgate.

[1702.] Hn. Hl. alwey.

[1719.] E. Hl. often.

[1725.] E. Hn. na.

[1733.] Cp. Pt. Hl. *omit* for.

[1741.] E. Iuerie.

[1743.] Slo. Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl.  
than; E. Hn. *omit*.

[1745.] Slo. Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl.  
hath; E. Hn. *omit*.

[1754.] Hl. your; Pt. Ln.  
?oure; E. Hn. Cm. Cp. oure.

[1767.] [thonour] Cp. Pt. Ln.  
honour.

[1794.] [inwith] Cm. Cp. Hl.  
withinne.

[1805.] Cp. Pt. wondren on;  
Ln. wonderne of; E. Hn.  
wondre vpon; Hl. wonder  
vpon; Cm. wonderyn vp-  
on.

[1815.] E. Hn. his; *rest* the;  
*see* l. 1817.

[1817.] Cm. Hl. the; *rest*  
his.

[1819.] E. the; *rest* thise,  
these.

[1822.] E. Cm. shal he; Pt.  
he shal; *rest omit* he.

[1825.] Hn. Hl. his; *the rest*  
this.

[1826.] E. Hn. Cm. Hl. the  
masse; Cp. Pt. Ln. *omit* the.

[1827.] Hl. thabbot.

[1850.] Cm. Cp. Pt.  
anteme; Ln. antime; Hl.  
antym; Hn. antheme; E.  
Anthephen.

[1864.] E. Hn. Cm. trikled;  
Cp. Pt. stryked; Ln.  
strikled; Hl. striken.

[1866.] Cp. Hl. ben; Pt. Ln. bene; E. Hn. Cm. leyn.

[1869.] Hl. thay went; *rest* been, ben, bene went.

[1870.] E. tooken; Hl. took; *rest* toke.

[1871.] E. temple; *rest* tombe, toumbe.

[1873.] E. alle for; *rest omit* alle.

[1876.] Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl. nys; E. Hn. Cm. is.

Colophon.*From E.*

[]Heading.*From E. E.* Bihoold; Hoost.

[1883.] *Only* Hl. *inserts to before* Iapen. Cm. Cp. tho; E. to; Hn. he; Pt. Ln. Hl. *omit.*

[1888.] E. murily; Hl. merily.

[1897.] Cp. Ln. Oste; E. Hn. Cm. Hoost.

[1900.] E. ye; *rest* we.

[]Heading.*From E. (E. Heere).*

[1922.] E. shoos; Hn. Pt. shoon; *rest* schoon, schon, schone.

[1927.] E. Hn. Cm. Hl. for; Cp. by þe; Pt. Ln. for þe.

[1931.] E. Hn. Cm. Hl. shal; Cp. schulde; Pt. schulde; Ln. scholde.

[1938.] Hn. Hl. it fel; Cm.  
it fil.

[1949.] Cm. Hl. Bytid; *rest*  
Bitidde, Betydde (!).

[1959.] E. hir; *rest* his.

[1960.] E. a; *rest* the.

[1980.] Hn. Cm. Hl. haue;  
*rest* loue.

[1989.] So E. Hn. Cm.; Cp.  
Pt. Ln. to aspie; Hl. to spye.

[1995.] *Not in the best*  
MSS.; *supplied from MS.*  
Reg. 17 D. 15 (Tyrwhitt).

[2000.] Hl. swar; *rest*  
seyde.

[2004.] Cp. Hl. fayerye; E.  
Hn. Cm. Fairye.

[2005.] Hl. lute; *rest* pype  
*or* pipe.

[2008.] E. Hl. meete with;  
*rest omit* with.

[2012.] E. Hn. sowre; Cm.  
soure; *rest* sore.

[2014.] E. Cm. Thyn  
hauberk shal I percen, if I  
may; *but the rest rightly*  
*omit* Thyn hauberk.

[2020.] E. Cm. sire; *rest*  
child.

[2025.] Cp. Pt. Ln. *insert*  
For now, *which the rest*  
*omit*.

[2027.] [hil] Hl. hul; Cp. Pt.  
Ln. downe.

[2028.] E. Cm. comen.

[2032.] E. Hn. heuedes; Hl. heedes; Cm. hedis; Cp. Pt. Ln. hedes.

[2038.] Hn. Pt. Hl. reales.

[2041.] E. sette; *rest* fette or fet. E. Hn. Cm. *omit* the.

[2044.] E. And; Hn. Cm. Hl. Of. Cp. Pt. Ln. *omit* ll. 2042-4.

[2046.] E. *alone retains* so.

[2058.] Cm. wolde; Hl. wold; *rest* wol, wole, wil.

[2061.] Hn. Cm. Pt. Hl. by his syde; Cp. him besyde.

[2063.] Cm. Cp. Ln. schulde

[2068.] Pt. Hl. rowel; Cp. Ln. ruel.

[2071.] E. it was; *rest omit* it.

[2084.] E. batailles; Hn. bataille; *rest* bataile, batail, batell.

[2089.] E. Pt. and of; *rest omit* of.

[2094.] E. rood; *rest* glood, glod, glode.

[2095.] Hl. Pt. spark; Cp. Ln. sparcles.

[2107.] Hl. worthy; E. Hn. worly; Pt. worthely; Cm. Cp. Ln. *omit* ll. 2105-8.



Colophon.*From* E. (E.  
Heere; Hoost).

[2118.] E. tale; *rest* rym,  
ryme.

[2131.] E. take; *rest* told,  
tolde, toold.

[2139.] E. Hn. Ln. somme  
seyn; *but* Cp. Pt. Hl. *omit*  
2nd seyn.

[2141.] Ed. 1561, Marke;  
E. Cp. Pt. Hl. Marke (?);  
Hn. Ln. Mark.

[2144.] E. Hl. yow; *rest* ye.  
Cp. Ln. *om.* as.

[2146.] Cp. prouerbis.

[2152.] Cm. Cp. Ln. Ye  
schal not fynden moche; E.  
Hn. Pt. Hl. Shul ye nowher  
fynden.

[2154.] E. murye; Hn.  
myry; Hl. lital; *rest* mery.

[ ]Heading.*From* E.

[2159.] inwith] Ln. Cp.  
within.

[2160.] Thre] Cp. Ln.  
Foure. E. hise. E. foes; Hn.  
Cp. Ln. Hl. foos. by the] E.  
Hn. *om.* the.

[2162.] E. erys.

[2163.] E. Hn. Ln.  
rentynge; *rest* rendyng.

[2172.] Cp. Ln. be  
warissched; Hl. warischt be.

[2173. ]*Only* E. Cp. Ln.  
*insert to before* destroye.

[2176. ]E. Pt. stente.

[2178. ]E. deffended.

[2180. ]E. deffended.

[2182. ]E. teeris.

[2185. ]E. florissyng.

[2187. ]E. Hl. Motthes; Pt.  
Cm. mothes; Hn. moththes;  
Cp. moughtes.

[2188. ]E. othere (*for* our  
*before* goodes); *rest* oure,  
our.

[2189. ]E. temporeel.

[2190. ]Cp. hap ?one [*read*  
yeuen] it me; Ln. yaue it  
me; Hl. it sent vnto me; *rest*  
*omit*; *only* Cp. Ln. Hl.  
*repeat* our lord.

[2191. ]E. therwith; *rest*  
ther-to.

[2196. ]E. coomen.

[2197. ]E. coomen.

[2199. ]E. *only* ins. wel  
*after* semed. E. baar a  
cruel; foes.

[2200. ]E. Cm. matiere; Hl.  
matier.

[2201. ]E. Hl. to (*for* un-to).

[2209. ]E. matiere.

[2210. ]E. foes.

[2211.] E. *matiere*.

[2215.] E. *matiere*.

[2216.] E. *om. 1st. ne. E. persone (for body)*.

[2217.] E. *sufficeant; Cp. suffisaunt; Hn. Pt. suffisant*.

[2218.] ]or] *so E. Pt; rest ne.*

[2221.] E. *matiere*.

[2222.] E. *sufficeant; Cp. Pt. suffisaunt; Hn. Ln. suffisant*.

[2223.] ]Cm. Pt. Hl. of (*for with*).

[2225.] E. *om. han.*

[2229.] ]Hn. *entree; Cm. Pt. Hl. entre; E. Cp. Ln. entryng*.

[2235.] ]Hn. Cm. Hl. a *noyous; E. anoyous; Cp. annoyous; Pt. noyous. Cm. doth; rest it is (badly)*.

[2236.] E. *om. whan. E. and al (for al)*.

[2238.] E. *om. nede.*

[2241.] E. *foes; to him (rest om. to)*.

[2242.] ]Pt. *guerdons; Cp. Ln. Hl. guerdouns; E. Hn. gerdons*.

[2247.] E. Hn. *foond; Cm. fond*.

[2248.] E. *weere*.

[2250. ]see] E. be; Pt. sese.

[2251. ]E. *om.* also.

[2252. ]*Not in the MSS.,  
but necessary; see ll.*

[2253. ]*Not in the MSS.,  
but necessary; see ll.*

[2258. ]E. Cp. Ln. *om.*  
same.

[2260. ]E. (*only*) *om* and he  
that *to* book.

[2261. ]E. Ln. despise; *rest*  
dispreise.

[2266. ]E. Hn. foond; Cm.  
fond.

[2267. ]E. Hn. foond; Cm.  
fond.

[2271. ]E *om.* that.

[2274. ]*and see* Note.

E. wiste noght.

[2277. ]E. Cp. Pt. *om.* of.

[2280. ]*and see* Note.

[2291. ]E. (*only*) *puts* by . .  
*conseil after* greetly.

[2297. ]E. wisdom.

[2298. ]E. wisdom.

[2310. ]in] E. of. E. *om.*  
self.

[2328. ]in] E. of; Ln. vnto.  
semeth] E. list.

[2332.] E. to (*after loking*);  
*rest and.*

[2333.] E. sikerly; *rest*  
*secreely.*

[2336.] E. hem; *rest him.*

[2337.] E. sikerly; *rest*  
*secreely.*

[2339.] E. wheither.

[2340.] E. comenli.

[2343.] E. seeld.

[2345.] E. wiche. been] E.  
Hn. that been.

[2355.] E. Hn. fieble; Cp.  
Pt. Hl. feble; Cm. feblid;  
Ln. fiebled. E. encreescen.

[2362.] Hn. Cm. Hl. that;  
Pt. what; *rest om.*

[2365.] E. *om.* alle.

[2368.] E. chacche (*for*  
*cacche*). Pt. to cacchen  
innocentes withe; *rest*  
(*except E.*) *om.* with.

[2370.] E. Cp. Ln. the  
wordes; *rest om.* the.

[2374.] E. Hn. enemytee.

[2377.] E. chiere.

[2378.] E. nat winne; *rest*  
nat haue.

[2380.] E. doon; *rest seyn.*

[2382.] E. for drede; *rest*  
*om.* for.

[2383.] E. *om.* ne.

[2388.] E. sherewes.

[2396.] or no] E. or noon;  
Pt. anoon.

[2397.] of that] E. after hir.

[2398.] E. Thanne of; *rest*  
And in.

[2399.] E. matiere.  
conceyve] E. Hl. conserue.

[2407.] E. wheither.

[2411.] E. wheither.

[2411.] Hn. Cm. no; *rest*  
noon (non).

[2413.] Hl. conseil; *rest*  
conseillors.

[2416.] E. eeris.

[2417.] finde] E. mayst  
finde.

[2420.] E. Cp. if; *rest* if it.

[2423.] in-to] Cp. Ln. vnto  
E. couenablely.

[2428.] E. benyngnytee.

[2438.] E. *om.* thinges. Hl.  
*om.* hem.

[2442.] Hn. Cm. Pt. Hl.  
yow; E. it.

[2445.] E. nat maked; *rest*  
*om.* nat.

[2447.] E. partie; *rest* part.

[2455.] E. answereth; *rest*  
answerde (answered).

[2456.] E. resonablely.

[2457.] E. matiere.

[2459.] E. seyde; Hn. Cm.  
Hl. seyden.

[2460.] E. in; *rest* after.

[2462.] E. Hn. gerdoned;  
*rest* guerdoned.

[2465.] E. Hn. Pt. gerdone.

[2466.] E. encreesceden;  
Hn. Ln. encreesceden; Cp.  
Cm. encrecseden; Pt.  
encresden; Hl. han  
schewed; ed. 1561,  
entreteden.

[2468.] [thilke] E. this.

[2488.] E. Ln. Hl. yow; *rest*  
ye.

[2491.] E. grete; *rest om.*

[2492.] E. sufficeantly; Hn.  
suffisantly.

[2495.] [y-knowe] E knowe.

[2499.] E. taak;  
campaigne. E. straunge  
men; Cp. stranngge man;  
*rest* a straunge man.

[2500.] [he] E he be.

[2502.] E. his lift; *rest* the  
lift.

[2510.] E. he dredeth; *rest*  
that dredeth. Hn. Cm. Pt.

Hl. escheweth harmes; *rest om.*

[2513.] ]fro] E. Hl. for.

[2514.] ]E. *omits* Senek . . . enemy; *the rest have it.*

[2517.] ]E. *om so.*

[2523.] ]Cm. artelleryes; E. Hn. artelries; Hl. artilries; Cp. Ln. archers.

[2525.] ]E. Hn. Cm. Pt. Hl. *omit* apperteneth . . edifices; Cp. Ln. *have it; see note.*

[2526.] ]E. Hn. Cm. Pt. Hl. *omit* apperteneth . . edifices; Cp. Ln. *have it; see note.*

[2537.] ]E. Ln. The longe; *rest that long.*

[2251.] ]E. *om.* and whiche been they; *see* 2252. Hl. consentid; *rest* consenten (*for* consenteden); *see* 2252.

[2594.] ]E. seelden.

[2601.] ]E. sweete temporeel.

[2608.] ]E. eeris.

[2623.] ]*Not in the MSS. Supplied by translating the French text.*

[2624.] ]*Not in the MSS. Supplied by translating the French text.*

[2626.] ]E. Hn. disserued.



[2629.] E. *om.* And.

[2631.] E. Ln. *om.* for.

[2642.] E. and (*before* siker); *rest or*; Hl. *om.* or siker.

[2680.] E. (*only*) puts may *after* tyme.

[2686.] E. Hn. Cp. disserued.

[2698.] E. Cm. goone.

[2724.] E. deffenden, deffense.

[2725.] E. deffenden, deffense.

[2726.] E. deffenden, deffense.

[2727.] E. deffenden, deffense.

[2728.] E. sheweth; Hl. semeth; *rest* seweth.

[2744.] E. temporeel.

[2745.] ]by] E. for.

[2746.] ]All Pamphilles. Hn. Hl. which she . . housbonde; *rest om.*

[2750.] E. Hn. al alloone; *rest omit* al.

[2766.] E. Hn. sekyngly; *rest* sokyngly.

[2785.] E. goodes; *rest* goode dedes.

[2790.] E. chyngerie; Hn. Cm. Pt. Hl. chyncherye.

[2837.] E. crueel.

[2852.] E. Hn. a bataile;  
*rest om. a. E. comth.*

[2853.] E. come; *rest*  
*cometh.*

[2854.] E. he be; *rest* it be.  
*I supply from namore to*  
god; *see* Note.

[2866.] [seint Iame] F. text,  
Seneques.

[2872.] E. bryge; Hn. Cm.  
Hl. brige; Cp. Pt. brigge (F.  
text, *brigue*).

[2893.] [to preyse] E. *om.* to.

[2898.] E. peyseth (*for*  
preyseth).

[2913.] E. seurely; Hn. Cp.  
Hl. seurly.

[2921.] [Cm. oughte; Cp.  
Hl. aughte; *rest* oughten.

[2924.] [Hl. surprised; Cm.  
suppreysed; *rest* supprised.

[2967.] E. Cm. *omit from*  
And he *to* remissioun; Hn.  
Cp. Hl. *om. only* is worthy  
remissioun, *which occurs in*  
Pt., *where* Ln. *has* is worthi  
haue mercy. E. corforme  
(*sic*); *rest* conferme.

[2976.] E. *om.* hem.

[3003.] E. disserued.

[3005.] E. wheither.

[3009. ]E. disserued.

[3010. ]of] E. in.

[3013. ]E. lough; *rest* lowe.

[3016. ]E. Hn.  
dampnablely.

[3026. ]E. crueel.

[3032. ]E. *om.* good  
(*twice*).

[3036. ]or] E. and.

[3051. ]E. *om.* him.

[3057. ]E. in youre mynde  
and; *rest om.*

[3064. ]E. Hn. appieren.

[3078. ]E. his; Hn. Pt. Hl.  
the; Cp. Ln. thilke. *After*  
ende, Cp. Ln *have this*  
*spurious couplet:*

To whiche blisse  
he us bringe  
That blood on  
crosse for us gan  
springe.

followed by—*Qui cum*  
*patre, &c.*

Colophon.*From* E.; Hn.  
*has*—Here is endid  
Chaucers tale of Melibe;  
Hl. *has*—Here endith  
Chaucer his tale of Melibe.

[ ]Heading.*From* E.; Hn.  
Here bigynneth The  
Prologe of the Monkes tale  
E. murye.

[3082. ]the] E. Hn. that.

[3085. ]E. Hn. *omit* For.

[3094. ]Pt. hoom; Hl. hom;  
Cp. Ln. home; E. Hn. *omit*.

[3099. ]E. Hn. euere that I.

[3110. ]E. Cp. Ln. hire nat;  
Hn. Cm. Pt. Hl. nat hire.

[3114. ]E. Hn. myrie.

[3119. ]E. daun.

[3120. ]E. daun.

[3129. ]E. Hn. Pt. Ln.  
cloistrer.

[3138. ]E. Hn. ful many.

[3147. ]E. *om. these lines;*  
*from* Hn.; Hn. Cm.  
sklendre; Cp. Pt sklendre  
(sclendir*e*).

[3148. ]E. *om. these lines;*  
*from* Hn.; Hn. Cm.  
sklendre; Cp. Pt sklendre  
(sclendir*e*).

[3151. ]E. paiementz.

[3152. ]E. Hn. lussheburgh;  
Cp. lussheburghes; Hl.  
lusscheburghes.

[3160. ]E. *omits* yow.

[3163. ]Cp. Pt. Ln. for to;  
*rest omit* for.

[3168. ]E. comunely; Cm.  
comounly; Hn. Hl.  
comunly.

[ ]Heading.*From* E. (E.  
Heere).

[3188.] E. Pt. of; *rest* by.

[3191.] E. though; Hn. thogh.

[3197.] Cm. Hl. Damassene; E. Hn. Damyssene.

[3206.] Hl. Cp. thangel; Hn. Pt. Ln. the aungel; E. Cm. angel.

[3235.] E. anon; *rest* ynogh, ynough, ynouhe, &c.

[3245.] E. Hn. ciser (*for* sicer); Hl. siser; Cm. Pt. Ln. sythir; Cp. cyder.

[3257.] E. Hl. heres; *rest* heer, here.

[3258.] E. Hn. this craft; *rest* his craft.

[3261.] E. were; *rest* was; *see l.* 3328.

[3271.] E. Cm. a; *rest* hire, here.

[3274.] E. the; *rest* two.

[3294.] E. flessh.

[3296.] E. Cm. hornes two; *rest* two hornes.

[3308.] E. stide; pileer.

[3310.] E. fressh.

[3312.] E. fressh.

[3316.] E. flessh.

[3336.] Hl. vnnethes.

[3351.] E. The; *rest* To. E.  
Hn. Cm. he bothe; *rest omit*  
he.

[3352.] E. Hn. Cm. *omit* he.

[3365.] Wexe is the right  
*reading, whence* Cm.  
wexsyn, and Hl. Cp. were  
(for wexe); E. Hn. wax; Pt.  
Ln. was (for wax).

[3377.] E. he was; *rest* was  
he.

[3384.] I supply tho. For  
vessels, see 3391, 3416,  
3418.

[3400.] Hn. lente; *rest* sente  
(but see l. 3403).

[3422.] E. Hn. Cp. Hl.  
truste; Pt. trest; Ln. trust;  
Cm. trust to. See B. 4214.

[3425.] E. *om.* yeven.

[3435.] E. as I; *the rest omit*  
as.

[3437.] So E. Hn. Cm.; and  
Cp. has the heading—De  
Cenobia Palymerie regina.

[3441.] Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl. ne  
in; E. nor in; Hn. ne; Cm.  
nor; (ne in = n'in).

[3455.] E. Hn. Cm. the; *rest*  
a. E. bussh.

[3462.] E. Hn. Cm.  
Onedake; Cp. Ln. Hl.  
Odenake; Pt. Odonak.

[3468.] E. oother lief.

[3481.] E. Hn. Cm.  
Onedake; *rest* Odenake.

[3485.] E. Hn. Cm.  
Onedake; *rest* Odenake.

E. *om.* this.

[3492.] E. though; Hn.  
thogh. E. wolde; *rest* sholde  
(schulde).

[3501.] E. proces; *rest*  
storie.

[3508.] Hl. Odenakes; *rest*  
Onedakes, Odenake.

[3511.] E. *omits* that.

[3512.] Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl. had;  
*which* E. Hn. Cm. *omit.*

[3517.] So Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl.;  
E. Hn. Cm. Onedake.

[3518.] E. honde; Pt.  
honde; Ln. hande; *rest*  
hond.

[3523.] MSS. made; *read*  
maden?

[3530.] Cp. feeld; Hl. feld;  
Ln. felde; Pt. feelde; E. Hn.  
Cm. feeldes.

[3553.] MSS. Biforn, Bifore  
(Hl. Bifore this).

[3555.] E. *omits* as.

[3560.] E. shoures.

[3562.] Hl. wyntermyte.

[3564.] Hn. Cm. Ln. cost;  
Pt. coste; E. Cp. costes; Hl.  
self.

[3570.] E. Hn. Cm.  
bitraysed.

[3577.] E. Hn. Cm. took ay;  
*rest* ay took.

[3597.] E. Pyze; Hn. Pize;  
Cp. Pyse; Pt. Ln. Hl. Pise.

[3599.] E. Hn. Cm. Pize;  
Cp. Pyse; Pt. Ln. Hl. Pise.

[3606.] E. Hn. Pize; Cm.  
Pyze; Cp. Pyse; Pt. Ln. Hl.  
Pise.

[3611.] E. Pt. *omit* wel.

[3616.] E. Hn. spak right;  
Cp. Hl. saugh it; Pt. seegh  
it; Ln. sawe it.

[3622.] E. Hn. *repeat* fader.

[3628.] Ln. Hl. saue; Cp.  
Pt. sauf; E. Hn. but.

[3632.] E. Hl. dyde; Hn.  
Cp. deyde; *see* l. 3644.

[3640.] E. flessh.

[3641.] E. flessh. E. Hn.  
*omit* vs *after* yaf.

[3646.] *See note to* l. 3597.

[3653.] E. Hn. Cm. *omit* as.

[3654.] E. in helle; *rest* full  
lowe.

[3657.] E. Hn. Cm. North  
(*but read* South); Cp. Pt.  
Ln. Hl *omit*!

[3673.] E. mooder.

[3676.] E. mooder.



[3682.] E. noon oother.

[3694.] Cm. Bycause that.

[3695.] Hn. Cm. ay; *rest omit.*

[[3699.] *Misnumbered 520 in the Aldine Edition; but corrected further on.*]

[3703.] E. (*only*) omits a.

[3707.] E. any oother.

[3711.] E. Hn. was; *the rest were.*

[3723.] E. Hn. *wrongly repeat l. 3731 here.*

[3733.] E. Hn. foond.

[3734.] E. Hn. Cm. *omit ful.*

[3751.] E. Hn. Cm. Hl. *omit he.*

[3753.] E. Hn. Cm. adoured; Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl. honoured.

[3754.] E. Hn. dorste; *rest dar.*

[3777.] Cm. flodys; *rest floodes.*

[3778.] E. Hn. moost.

[3784.] E. greithen; Hn. greithe; Cm. ordeyne. E. Hn. chaar; Cm. char.

[3797.] E. hoost, boost.

[3799.] E. hoost, boost.

[3801. ]E. lemes; Hn. Cp.  
Hl. lymes; Cm. lymys; Ln.  
limes.

[3807. ]E. *om.* so; E.  
horribly.

[3809. ]E. Hn. Cm. so; Pt.  
Hl. that; Cp. Ln. so that.

[3810. ]E. Hn. for; *rest* the.

[3827. ]beste] Hl. bost.

[3830. ]E. Hn. bitwixen.

[3832. ]E. Hn. Cm. *omit*  
was.

[3834. ]E. man: *rest* thing.

[3837. ]Cm. preys; E. Hn.  
pris: Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl. pite.

[3843. ]Hl. *omits*.

[3851. ]E. Hn. Cm. aas; Cp.  
Pt. Hl. an aas; Ln. an as.

[3852. ]E. Hn. Cm. *omit*  
yit; Hl. *has* right.

[3861. ]E. Cp. Pt. Ln. *omit*  
greet.

[3862. ]E. Hn. Cm. Hl.  
humble bed; Pt. Cp. Ln.  
humblehede.

[3870. ]MSS. Pompeus,  
Pompus.

[[3881. ]*Misnumbered 700*  
*in the Aldine edition.*]

[3887. ]*So in the MSS.;*  
*observe hath in l. 3889.*

[3904.] Cm. castyth; *rest*  
caste, cast.

[3906.] Cm. on deyinge; Pt.  
on dyinge; Ln. in deynge;  
E. Hn. of dyyng.

[3910.] Hl. Valirien; *rest*  
Valerius; ed. 1561, Valerie.

[3911.] *The MSS. have*  
word (*for ord*); *see the note.*

[3913.] E. sitthe; Hl.  
siththen; Hn. Cm. siththe a.

[3936.] Cm. Pt. Ln. wex;  
*rest wax.*

[3944.] E. bemes; *rest*  
stremes.

[3947.] Pt. Ln. Hl. she; *rest*  
*omit.*

[3951.] Cm. Tragedy is; *so*  
Cp. Pt.; Ln. Tregedrye in;  
E. Hn. Tragedies; Hl.  
Tegredis(!).

[3953.] Cm. Hl. for; *rest*  
*omit.*

[[3956.] *Reckoned as 775*  
*in the Aldine edition; but*  
*really 776.] After l. 3956,*  
E. Hn. Cm. *have ll.*  
3565-3652.

Colophon. *From E. Hn.*  
Here is ended the Monkes  
tale.

[3982.] Pt. or; Hn. o; *rest*  
*omit.*

[4002.] *though*] Hl. al-  
though.

[4004.]Pt. Hl. rek.

[4005.]E. Hn. murie; *rest*  
mery.

[4006.]Cp. Ln. Yis, ost,  
quod he, so mote I ryde or  
go.

[4011.]E. Hn. stape; Ln.  
stoupe; *rest* stope.

[4013.]E. greue.

[4021.]E. keen; Hn. Hl.  
Cp. kyn.

[4031.]E. Hn. Napoplexie;  
*rest* Ne poplexie.

[4039.]E. Hn. heet; Cp.  
that highte; *rest* that hight.

[4041.]E. Hn. Cm. murier.  
E. Cm. murie.

[4045.]Hl. knew he; E. Pt.  
he crew; *rest* he knew.

[4046.]E. Ln. *ins.* the *after*  
Of.

[4051.]Hl. geet; Pt. Ln.  
gete.

[4054.]Hl. Cp. Pt. Ln.  
burnischt.

[4062.]Hl. ful (*for* so).

[4068.]E. Cm. Ln. bigan.

[4072.]a] E. Pt. the.

[4079.]E. o; *rest om.*

[4084.]mette] E. thoughte.

[4086. ]E. Hn. *recche*; Cm. *reche*; *rest rede*, *reed*.

[4091. ]E. Hn. Cm. *om.*  
*wolde*.

[4117. ]E. *om.* *the*, *and has*  
*greet*.

[4119. ]E. Hn. Cm. *dreden*;  
*rest dremen*; *see* 4159.

[4121. ]E. *grete*; *rest rede*.

[4125. ]So E. Hn. Cm.; Cp.  
of *beres* and of *boles*; Ln.  
Pt. of *beres* and *boles*; Hl.  
of *beres* or of *boles*.

[4132. ]E. *ye*; *rest we*.

[4136. ]Hl. *om.*

[4137. ]Hl. *om.*

[4155. ]Cp. Ln. *gaytres*; E.  
*gaitrys*, Hn. *gaytrys*; Hl.  
*gaytre*; Cm. *gattris*; Pt.  
*gatys*.

[4156. ]Ln. *that*; Hn. *they*;  
*rest ther*.

[4166. ]Hn. Cm. Cp. *mote*;  
E. *moot*.

[4167. ]*his*] E. Pt. *this*.

[4170. ]E. Cm. Cp. Ln. Hl.  
*ins.* of *after as*.

[4174. ]Cm. *autourys*; Hl.  
*auctorite*; *rest auctour* (*sic*).

[4177. ]E. Hn. *coomen in*;  
Cm. *comyn in*.

[4181. ]E. *logged*.

[4194. ]Hl. Cp. Ln. oxe.

[4196. ]er] Ln. ar; E. Hn.  
Hl. or.

[4200. ]E. it; *rest* this.

[4210. ]E. arresten.

[4217. ]Hl. Cp. Ln. oxe.

[4219. ]Cp. Hl. answered;  
E. Hn. answerde.

[4222. ]Hl. *ins.* a *after* in;  
Cp. Pt. Ln. *ins.* gret (grete).

[4226. ]Hn. Cm. Hl. wente  
as it were; Cp. Pt. Ln. as he  
wente.

[4232. ]E. Hn. Cm. *ins.*  
heere *after* carte.

[4247. ]E. Hn. Cm. this  
(this is *being pronounced*  
this); *rest* this is.

[4248. ]Hl. *ins.* the *after*  
anoon.

[4256. ]Cp. Ln. and (*for*  
or).

[4266. ]*All ins.* herkneth  
(herken) *after* But.

[4274. ]E. Hn. Hl. *om.* for;  
*cf.* l. 4265.

[4275. ]E. Hn. byde.

[4282. ]E. Hn. 01; *rest* and.

[4283. ]Hl. eke; *rest om.*

[4293. ]it] Cp. Pt. him; Ln.  
hem; Hl. ther.

[4296.] E. *ins.* yet *after*  
olde.

[4309.] E. is; *rest* was.

[4313.] Cm. thauysioun.

[4319.] E Hn. Cp. heeld.

[4324.] Cm. Ln. boteler; Pt.  
botelere; E. Hn. butiller.

[4331.] E. Cp. Pt. Ln.  
Adromacha.

[4338.] Hn. And (*for* But).

[4345.] E. Hn. Cm.  
venymes. it] Cp. Pt. Ln.  
right.

[4346.] E. Cp. diffye.

[4361.] E. Cp. diffye.

[4362.] Hn. Cm. fley; E.  
fly; Hl. Cp. fleigh.

[4365.] E. Hn. Cm. hadde.

[4366.] Cm. Ln. Royal; *rest*  
Real; *but see* l. 4374.

[4367.] [He] E. And.

[4368.] Hl. that; *rest om.*  
Cp. Pt. Ln. were. Hl. er that  
it was prime.

[4370.] Hl. toon.

[4371.] Cm. deynyth.

[4374.] [his] E. Cm. an.

[4379.] *All* passed.

[4380.] Hl. tway monthes  
and dayes tuo.

[4386. ]And] Cp. Pt. Ln.  
He.

[4398. ]Hl. Cp. cronique;  
*rest* cronicle.

[4404. ]torne] E. come.

[4412. ]E. Hn. Pt. vndren.

[4421. ]E. Hn. flaugh; Cm.  
flaw; Cp. fley?e; Hl.  
flough.

[4433. ]E. Wheither.

[4434. ]E. nedefully to  
doon.

[4442. ]may] Hl. Cp. Pt.  
schal (schuln).

[4445. ]yow] E. of.

[4448. ]E. out of (*for* fro).

[4452. ]seyde] E. seye.

[4460. ]E murier.

[4462. ]E. myrily.

[4482. ]E. *om.* hath.

[4484. ]Hl. Pt. had.

[4489. ]E. *ins.* yow *after*  
wol.

[4491. ]E. herde I; yet (*for*  
so).

[4508. ]E. Cm. Cp.  
Bitwixe.

[4524. ]E. Hn. Cm. stirte.

[4525. ]E. Hn. gargat; Cm.  
Hl. garget; Ln. gorge.



[4531.] ]E. Hn. Cm. fil; *rest*  
fel.

[4552.] ]E. sodeynly (*for*  
sovereynly).

[4554.] ]Hn. Cm. y-lost.

[4564.] ]E. Now turne I  
wole.

[4567.] ]E. Hn. Cm. stirten.

[4570.] ]Pt. They.

[4575.] ]E. Hl. *om.* eek.

[4576.] ]Hl. were they; *rest*  
*om.*

[4579.] ]E. yolleden.

[4585.] ]E. Ln. shille.

[4590.] ]E. Hn. skriked.

[4594.] ]E. *om.* eek.

[4598.] ]E. wolde (*for*  
sholde).

[4601.] ]E. the (*for* this).

[4608.] ]Hl. i-goon; *rest*  
gon, goon.

[4612.] ]E. Hn. into this (*for*  
out of the).

[4613.] ]E. of (*for* in).

[4618.] ]E. Hn. Hl. *ins.* any  
*before* offer.

[4630.] ]Pt. good; *rest*  
goode.

[4635.] ]Hl. Pt. Ln. good;  
*rest* goode.

Colophon. Cp. Nonne; E.  
Hn. Nonnes. Hl. Here  
endeth the tale of  
Chaunteclere and pertelote.

*[These genuine lines only  
occur in Dd., in MS. Reg.  
17 D. xv, and in MS. Addit.  
5140 (B. M.). The text is  
founded on Dd.]*

*Note. Three varieties of a  
Doctour's Prologue are  
given, respectively, by  
Tyrwhitt, Wright, and  
Morris; but are all  
spurious. Perhaps the best  
is the very short one in  
Tyrwhitt, as follows:—*

'Ye, let that  
passen,' quod our  
Hoste, 'as now.  
Sire Doctour of  
Phisyk, I preye  
yow,  
Telle us a tale of  
som honest  
matere.'  
'It shal be doon, if  
that ye wol it here,'  
Seyde this Doctour,  
and his tale bigan  
anon.  
'Now, good men,'  
quod he, 'herkneth  
everichon.'

[4637.] Dd. oure hoost.

[4639.] Dd. murie; Reg.  
Add. mery.

[4641.] Dd. ben. Dd.  
tredfoul; Reg. Add. trede  
foule.

[4645.]Dd. which; Reg.  
whiche; Add. suche.

[4646.]Dd. gret

[4647.]Dd. sperhauke;  
eyen.

[4648.]Dd. dyghen; Reg.  
Add dyen.

[4650.]*I suspect these  
three lines to be spurious.*

Reg. youre mery tale.

[4651.]*I suspect these  
three lines to be spurious.*

[4652.]*I suspect these  
three lines to be spurious.*

to] *all un-to. another*] Add.  
the Nonne.

[2.]Hn called was; E. was  
called; *rest* cleped was.

[16.]E. Hn. Apelles; Hl.  
Appollus; *rest* Apollus. E.  
Hn. Zanzis; *rest*  
zephyrus(!).

[25.]E. Hn. ful of oon; *rest*  
fully at.

[49.]Cp. Pt. Ln. as; *rest*  
*om.*

[50.]E. a (*for* and).

[55.]E. Shamefast. E. *om.*  
in.

[59.]E. Hn. dooth; *rest*  
doon. E. Hn. encesse.

[60.] E. man; *rest* men. E.  
wasten; *rest* casten. E. oille;  
greesse.

[67.] E. Hn. thyng; *rest*  
things.

[70.] E. Hn. they; *rest* she.

[80.] E. Hn. han; *rest*  
conne.

[82.] So E. Hn.; *rest* Kepeth  
wel tho that ye undertake.

[84.] E. Hn. olde; *rest*  
theves.

[86.] *Read* kep'th; E. Hn.  
*om.* hem; Hl. hir (!). E.  
wolde; *rest* wole (wil).

[92.] E. Hn. bitrayseth; *rest*  
betrayeth.

[95.] E. Hn. surveiaunce;  
*rest* sufferaunce  
(suffraunce).

[97.] E. Hn. if; *rest* that.

[99.] E. Hn. *om.* ne.

[103.] E. *om.* both lines; *I*  
*follow* Hn. *and the rest.*

[104.] E. *om.* both lines; *I*  
*follow* Hn. *and the rest.*

[105.] E. Hn. I wol this;  
*rest* I telle my.

[119.] E. Hn. a; *rest* the.

[125.] E. Hn. ther as; *rest*  
*om.* as.

[138.] E. maken; *rest* make.

[140.]E. Hn. cherl; *rest*  
clerk.

[142.]E. Hn. cherl; *rest*  
clerk.

[147.]E. Hn. this; *rest* the.

[149.]E. Hn. hir; *rest* this.

[153.]E. Hn. cherl; *rest*  
clerk.

[155.]E. Hn. this; *rest* it.

[164.]E. Hn. cherl; *rest*  
clerk.

[172.]E. diffynyue; *rest*  
diffinitif.

[173.]E. heere, *glossed*  
audire; *and* heere, *glossed*  
hic.

[174.]E. heere, *glossed*  
audire; *and* heere, *glossed*  
hic.

[191.]E. Hn. Cm. cherl;  
*rest* clerk.

[199.]E. Hn. Cm. cherl;  
*rest* clerk.

[202.]E. Hn. Cm. cherl;  
*rest* clerk.

202. E. Hn. Cm. this; *rest*  
thus.

[205.]Hl. Cp. yiuen; *rest*  
yeuen.

[223.]E. o; *rest* of.

[234.]E. Hn. teeris. E.  
bruste; Cm. broste; Pt.

brosten; Hn. borste; Cp. Ln.  
barsten; Hl. brast.

[243.]E. Hn. for; *rest* first.

[248.]E. Ln. Blissed; *rest*  
Blessed.

[252.]*All but* E. Hn. *ins.* hir  
*before* softe.

[259.]E. Hn. anhange; *rest*  
honge.

[260.]E. Hn. a thousand;  
*rest* al the.

[263.]E. of; *rest* in.

[264.]E. Hn. the cherles;  
*rest* this clerkes.

[269.]E. Hn. Ther; *rest*  
Wher.

[271.]E. And; *rest* Was.

[275.]E. Hn. Hl. anhanged;  
*rest* honged.

[278.]E. Hn. whom; *rest*  
how.

[280.]E. Hn. may agryse;  
*rest* wol (wil) arise.

[283.]E. ellis. Cp. Ln  
Whether he be lewed man  
or lered; *so* Pt. (*with* Where  
*for* Whether); *so* Hl. (*with*  
Wher that *for* Whether).

Colophon.*So* E. Hn.;  
Sloane *has* Here endethe  
the tale of the Mayster of  
phisyk; Hl. Here endeth the  
Doctor of phisique his tale.

[]Heading.*So* E. E. Hoost.

[287. ]Ln. oste; *rest* hoost,  
ost.

[290. ]E. shameful.

[291. ]So E. Hn. Pt.; *but*  
Cp. *has*—So falle vpon his  
body and his bones The  
deuy I bekenne him al at  
ones; *so also* Ln. Hl.

E. (*alone*) *ins. false before*  
Iuges. E. Hn. Aduocatz; Pt.  
aduocas.

[292. ]So E. Hn. Pt.; *but*  
Cp. *has*—So falle vpon his  
body and his bones The  
deuy I bekenne him al at  
ones; *so also* Ln. Hl.

[295. ]E. Hn. and; *rest* or.

[296. ]E. Hn. to; *rest* of.

[297. ]So Cp. Ln. Hl; *rest*  
*omit these lines.*

[298. ]So Cp. Ln. Hl; *rest*  
*omit these lines.*

[300. ]E. Hn. for harm; *rest*  
*om. for.*

[303. ]Hl. this is; *the rest*  
*omit this.*

[305. ]Ln. Iordanes; Cp  
Iurdanes; E. Hn. Iurdones.

[306. ]Cp. Galianes; E. Hn.  
Galiones.

[307. ]Hl. boist; E. Hn.  
boyste; Cp. Pt. Ln. box.

[313. ]E. Hn. cardynacle(!).

[322. ]eten of] Hl. byt on.

[323.] E. Hn. And; *the rest*  
But.

[324.] E. Hn. Cp. Hl.  
ribaudye; Ln. rebaudie; Pt.  
rybaudrye.

[326.] Hl. *has*—Gladly,  
quod he, and sayde as ye  
schal heere: But in the  
cuppe wil I me bethinke.

[327.] *For ll.*

Hl. *has*—Gladly, quod he,  
and sayde as ye schal heere:  
But in the cuppe wil I me  
bethinke.

[346.] E. Hn. Hl. hem; *rest*  
men.

[350.] E. *omits* I by  
*accident.*

[352.] E. Hl. Pt. Ln. Good;  
E. Hn. Cp. Goode. Hn. I  
seye; *rest* say I, saie I.

[366.] E. Hn. sire; *rest*  
sires, sirs.

[377.] E. Hn. Goode; *rest*  
And.

[382.] Cp. Ln. Hl. ymaad;  
Pt. made; E. Hn. ymaked.

[385.] E. fame; *rest* blame.

[386.] Hn. He; *rest* They. E.  
on; Hn. a; *rest* in.

[387.] E. Hl. hem; *rest* him  
*or* hym.

[395.] [the] Cm. myn; Cp.  
Ln. Hl. my.



[405.] E. Hl. *omit that*.

[425.] E. Hn. *theme; rest teme (teem)*.

[439.] E. Pt. *the whiles*;  
Cm. *that whilis that*; Cp.  
Ln. *whiles that*; Hl. *whiles*;  
Hn. *that whiles*.

[449.] Hl. *prestes (for povrest)*.

[ ] *Heading; from E. Hn.*

[465.] E. Hl. *stywes*.

[475.] *So Cp. Ln. Hl.; E. Hn. Cm. that Iewes; Pt. þe Iwes*.

[478.] Hl. *omits*.

[479.] Hl. *omits*.

[488.] E. Hn. Cm. P. Hl. *agree here*; Cp. Ln. *have two additional (spurious) lines; see note*.

[492.] Hl. *Seneca (for Senek)*. Cp. Ln. *eek; rest omit*.

[495.] *which that*] Hl. *the which*; Cp. Pt. Ln. *om. which*.

[496.] E. Hl. *fallen*; Hn. Cm. *y-fallen*.

[519.] E. Hl. *man; rest men*.

[532.] *That they is Tyrwhitt's reading*; Hl. *Thay; but the rest have Ther, probably repeated by mistake from l. 530*.

[534.] Hl. o stynking is thi  
cod.

[573.] E. lordes; *rest*  
lordinges, lordynges,  
lordyngs.

[589.] E. Hl. *omit* that.

[593.] E. Blasphemyng;  
*rest* BlaspHEME.

[606.] Cm. Cp. Hl.  
happede; *rest* happed.

[612.] Hn. Ny; Cm. Nay  
(*both put for Ne I*) *which*  
*shews the scansion.* Hl. I  
nyl not.

[614.] *So all.*

[621.] E. Ln. Hl. *omit* to.

[632.] Cp. Ln. Hl. *om.* yet.

[644.] Hn. Cm. Hl. many a;  
E. any; Cp. Pt. Ln. eny  
other.

[656.] Hl. bicchid; Ln.  
becched; Hn. Cm. bicche;  
Pt. thilk.

[659.] E. Hn. Lete; *rest*  
Leuth.

[661.] E. Hn. Pt. Hl.  
riotours.

[663.] Cp. Pt. Hl. for; *rest*  
*om.*

[704.] E. yborn; Hn. ybore;  
Cm. bore; Pt. born; Cp. Ln.  
Hl. sworne.

[705.] E. Hn. stirte. Hn. Cp.  
Ln. Hl. al; E. Cm. Pt. and.

[710.]they] Cp. Pt. Ln. we.

[746.]E. Hn. than that; *rest omit* that.

[760.]E. Cm. ye; Hn. Hl. yow.

[779.]E. Hn. Pt. Ln. yenen.

[780.]E. Ioliftee.

[796.]Hl. Ln. the; *rest omit*.

[803.]E. hym; *rest* hem. E. Hn. Cp. wol; Hl. wil; Cm. Pt. Ln. wolde.

[807.]E. *omits* of hem.

[808.]E. Hn. Pt. sworn; Cm. swore: Cp. Ln. Hl. sworne.

[820.]Hl. the (= thee); *rest omit*. E. Hn. Cm. in a; *rest omit* a.

[823.]E. shal; *rest* wol (wil, wyl).

[826.]E. Hn. Cm. that right; Cp. and thanne; Pt. Ln. Hl. and that. *I take and from* Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl., *and right from* E. Hn. Cm.

[847.]E. Hn. foond.

[848.]E. Cm. hem; *rest* hym *or* him.

[853.]Hn. preyed; Cm. preyede; *rest* preyde.

[861.]E. Hn. Cm. is; *rest* nys *or* nis.

[871.] *All omit of.*

[873.] E. his owene; *rest omit owene.*

[880.] E. so as; *rest omit so.*

[891.] E. Hn. Cm. signes;  
Cp. Ln. Hl. sorwes; Pt.  
sorowes.

[895.] E. Hn. Cm of alle;  
Cp. Ln. Hl. ful of; Pt. ful of  
al.

[910.] E. Com; *rest Cometh, Comyth.*

[911.] E. Hl. names; *rest name*

[925.] E. Hn. Com; *rest Cometh, Comyth.*

[928.] E. Hn. Cm myles;  
*rest tounes.*

[930.] E. Hn. or; *rest and.*

[935.] E. fallen.

[941.] E. Cm. heere; *rest om.*

[944.] E. my; Cm. myne;  
*rest the.*

[947.] Hn. thee ich; *rest theech.*

[954.] Cp. Ln. the helpe; Pt.  
Hl. helpe; E. with thee; Cm.  
from the; Hn. thee.

Colophon. *From* E. Hn.; Hl.  
Here endeth the pardoneres  
tale.

[ ]Heading. *So E.*; Hn. Here bigynneth the prologe of the tale of the Wyf of Bathe; Hl. Here bygynneth the prologe of the wyf of Bathe.

[5.] Hn. Pt. Ln. Thonked; E. Ythonked.

[7.] *So E.*; *rest* If (Hl. For) I so ofte myghte hane wedded be.

[12.] E. *om.* That. E. thoughte; *rest* taughte he.

[14.] E. Herkne; Hl. Herken; *rest* Herke (Herk). E. Hl. *om.* lo.

[18.] E. And that; *rest* And that ilke (*read* thilke).

[29.] E. *om.* wel.

[31.] E. take; Hl. folwe; *rest* take to.

[37.] *So all but E.*, which has it were leueful vn-to me.

[42.] E. myrie; Hn. murye.

[44.] E. Hl. Yblessed; *rest* Blessed (Blissed).

[46.] E. chaast.

[49.] E. *om.* that.

[50.] Hl. wher so it be; *rest* wher it liketh me (*correctly*; for a goddes half = a god's half).

[51.] E. *om.* that.

[52.] E. Hn. Hl. Bet; *rest*  
Better

[54.] E. Hl. of; *rest* his.

[58.] E. *om.* holy.

[59.] Hl. Whan; E.  
Whanne; *rest* Where  
(Wher). E. *om.* any.

[64.] E. Whan thapostel  
speketh.

[67.] E. nat; *rest* no (non).

[71.] E. certein.

[73.] E. Hl. *ins.* ne *after*  
Poul.

[75.] E. of; Cp. fro; Hl. on;  
*rest* for.

[77.] E. Hl. taken.

[78.] E. Cm. lust; Hn. Hl.  
list.

[79.] E. *om.* that.

[85.] E. Cm. *om.* that.

[89.] Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl. to  
assemble.

[91.] E. Cm. that; Hn. Cp.  
Pt. Ln. he heeld; Hl. he  
holdith.

[92.] E. Cm. profiteth; *rest*  
parfit.

[94.] Hn. Hl. leden; *rest*  
lede.

[104.] *So all but* Hl. Ln.,  
*which have* to schifte.  
*Perhaps read* right as him.

[108.]E. Cm. Hl. *om.* he.

[109.]E. poore, foore; *and*  
foore *is glossed by* steppes.

[110.]E. poore, foore; *and*  
foore *is glossed by* steppes.

[113.]E. Hl. *om.* al.

[116.]E. ymaad.

[120.]Cm. makyd; *rest*  
maad; *see* l. 126.

[121.]*So* Hn. Cp. Pt. Ln; E.  
vryne bothe and thynges.

[122.]E. Cm. And; Hn. Hl.  
Was; *rest* Were.

[126.]*this*] E. yis. E. Cm.  
beth maked.

[130.]E. Cm a man.

[133.]E Thanne.

[134.]E. Cm. *om.* eek.

[136.]Hn. Hl. to yow; E.  
Cm. of.

[138.]E. Cm. They shul  
nat; *rest* Than sholde men.

[140.]E. Cm. *om.* that  
(*perhaps read* se-int).

[142.]E. Cm. nil nat.

[144.]E. hoten; Hn. Cm.  
hote; Cp. Pt. Ln. ete (!); Hl.  
eten (!).

[146.]E. Cm. Hl. *om.* Iesu.

[148.]E. Hn. precius.

[163.]E. Hn. stirte.

[172.]Hn. Ill. thee; *rest om.*

[173.]E. Cm. that is in (*for*  
in).

[176.]E. wheither.

[177.]E. Cm. that; *rest*  
thilke.

[180.]Hn. nyle; Hl. nyl;  
*rest wol nat.*

[182.]Ln. tholome; Pt.  
ptholome; Hl. protholome;  
E. Hn. Cm. Cp. Protholome  
(!).

[183.]E. Cm. Rede it in.

[184.]E. Cm. *om.* yow.

[188.]E. sires; Cm. sire;  
*rest quod she.*

[191.]E. Cm. *om.* of.

[192.]Hn. nis; E. Cm. is;  
*rest is not.*

[193.]E. Hn. Cm. sire.

[195.]E. of tho; Hl. Cm. of;  
Hn. Cp. Pt. tho; Ln. the.

[197.]Cp. Pt. Ln. men; *rest*  
*om.*

[210.]Hn. Cp. Pt. Ln. ye  
ther; *but read lov-e.*

[215.]E. Hn. a-werk; *rest*  
a-werke.

[220.]E. was ful blisful;  
Cm. was blysful and ful.



[224.]E. baar.

[226.]E. beren: *om.* wrong.

[228.]MSS. lye; *read* lyen.  
Hn. Ln. a womman kan; Pt.  
womman can; *rest* kan a  
womman.

[231.]E. Hn. Cm. A wys;  
Hl. I-wis a; *rest* wise. *Read*  
wys-e?

[232.]Hl. beren; *rest* bere.  
Cm. cou; Pt. Ln. cowe.

[242.]E. Pt. Hl. lecchour.

[250.]E. Cm. *om.* that. E.  
Cm. Hl. and of; *rest* of.

[251.]E. Cm. Hl. *om.* that.

[252.]E. soffren.

[257.]E. Cm. that som. E.  
Hn. Cm. desiren.

[258.]E. Cm. *om.* and.

[259.]E. Cm. Hl. *om.*  
outher. E. Cm. Hl. and (*for*  
or).

[260.]and] E. Cm. and som  
for; Hl. or.

[269.]Hn. Cp. Pt. Ln. ther;  
*rest om.*

[270.]Cp. Pt. Ln. that; *rest*  
*om.*

[271.]Hn. Hl. wolde,  
holde.

[272.]Hn. Hl. wolde,  
holde.

[277.] E. Hn. Pt. Ln.  
welked; Cm. wekede; Cp.  
Hl. wicked.

[280.] E. Hn. Cp. houses.

[282.] E. Cm. that we.

[286.] E. assayd; Pt. Ln.  
assaide; *rest* assayed.

[292.] Hn. Hl. *supply* And.

[295.] Hl. pore; *rest* poure.

[300.] Cm. chaumberere;  
Hl. chamberer; E. Hn.  
chambre.

[303.] E. Iankyn; *rest*  
Iankyn.

[308.] E. Cm. Hl. *om.* this.

[309.] [thy] E. Cm. my.

[311.] E. Cm. to make; *rest*  
*om.* to.

[313.] Hn. Ln. that; *rest om.*

[315.] Hl. yen; E. eyen.

[316.] E. nedeth thee; *rest*  
helpeth it. Hn. Cp. Ln. *om.*  
to. Hl. tenqueren; *read*  
t'enquere.

[319.] *All but* Cp. Ln. *om.*  
not (nat).

[320.] E. Pt. Alys; Ln. Ales.

[323.] Hn. Hl. yblessed;  
*rest* blessed.

[324.] MSS. Daun. E.  
Protholome; Hn. Cm. Hl.  
*Protholome.*

[326.] E. Cm. *ins.* the  
*before* hyeste; (*read* th' hy-  
ést-e).

[328.] Cp. Pt. Ln. shal wel.

[330.] E. myrily.

[333.] E. Cm. wolde.

[348.] Hl. thus; Cp. Pt. Ln.  
als; *rest* this.

[350.] *All* his.

[358.] Hl. yen; E. eyen.

[359.] Hn. Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl. -  
corps.

[360.] E. *om.* 2nd me.

[364.] *All but* Pt. Ln. *om.*  
ne.

[366.] E. and (*for* an).

[368.] Cp. Pt. Ln. maner;  
Cm. of these; Hl. of thy; E.  
*om.*

[371.] Cp. Ln. Hl. likenest;  
Cm. likkenyst; E. Hn. Pt.  
liknest. E. wommenes.

[375.] E. Hn. consumen.

[376.] Cp. Pt. that; *rest om.*  
Hn. Cp Pt. shende: E. Pt.  
shendeth.

[383.] Hl. vpon.

[385.] E. Hn gitlees.

[389.] *So* Hn. Cp. Pt. Ln.;  
E. Who so comth first to  
mille; Hl. Who-so first  
cometh to the mylle.

[391.] E. Cm. *om.* 2nd ful.

[393.] E. hym; *rest* hem;  
*but see* 394.

[395.] E. it; *rest* I.

[400.] E. thyng was; *rest*  
wit is.

[401.] E. yeue.

[402.] *All but* Hn. Hl. *ins.*  
that *before* they.

[406.] E. continueel.

[428.] E. rest.

[431.] Cp. Pt. Hl. *ins.* now  
*before* goode.

[445.] E. Hn. Pt. Wy.

[456.] Cm. Cp. Ln.  
Styborne; Pt. Hl. Stiborn;  
E. Hn. Stibourne.

[464.] Cm. muste; Ln.  
must.

[467.] E. Hl. wommen.

[479.] E. myrie; Hn. murye.

[486.] E. *certein.*

[497.] E. Hn. curyus.

[508.] E. ful; *rest* so.

[511.] Cp. Hl. boon; *rest*  
bon.

[513.] Cm. Hl. beste; E.  
Hn. best; Cp. Pt. the bet;  
Ln. bette.

[520.]E. Hn. Presse; Cm Presse.

[521.]E. Hn. Cm oute; Cp. Ln. Hl. outen; Pt. outer.

[528.]E. hadde; hom.

[532.]E Hn as; *rest* so.

[534.]E. Hn. Cm. Cp. hadde.

[545.]Hn. Cm. louede; E. Hl. loued.

[550.]E. the; *rest* that.

[558.]E. Hn. and to; Cm. Cp. Pt. Ln. and of; Hl. *om.* to (*or* of).

[561.]E. Hn. Cm. Cp. peril (*correctly*); Pt. perile; Ln. Hl. perel.

[571.]E. Hn. nof; Cm. and more; *rest* ne of.

[572.]*herte*] Cp. Pt. Ln. witte.

[575.]*All but* E. Cm. *omit these lines*; (Dd. *has them*).

[576.]*All but* E. Cm. *omit these lines*; (Dd. *has them*).

[577.]*All but* E. Cm. *omit these lines*; (Dd. *has them*).

[578.]*All but* E. Cm. *omit these lines*; (Dd. *has them*).

[579.]*All but* E. Cm. *omit these lines*; (Dd. *has them*).

[580.]*All but* E. Cm. *omit these lines*; (Dd. *has them*).

[581.] *All but E. Cm. omit these lines; (Dd. has them).*

[582.] *All but E. Cm. omit these lines; (Dd. has them).*

[583.] *All but E. Cm. omit these lines; (Dd. has them).*

E. Cm. *om. as; but it occurs in MSS. Camb. Dd. 4. 24, li. 1. 36, &c*

[584.] *All but E. Cm. omit these lines; (Dd. has them).*

[592.] E. *wepte; but see 588.*

[595.] *Or Ianekin, see 383; MSS. Iankyn.*

[603.] Ln. *Gate-toþede.*

[605.] Hl. *omits.*

[606.] Hl. *omits.*

[607.] Hl. *omits.*

[608.] Hl. *omits.*

E. *hadde. E. Hn. quonyam; Cm. Pt. Ln. quoniam; Cp. queynte.*

[609.] Hl. *omits.*

Hn. Cp. Pt. Ln. *omit.*

[610.] Hl. *omits.*

Hn. Cp. Pt. Ln. *omit.*

[611.] Hl. *omits.*

Hn. Cp. Pt. Ln. *omit.*

[\[612.\]](#) Hl. *omits.*

Hn. Cp. Pt. Ln. *omit.*

[\[619.\]](#) Hn. Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl.  
*omit.*

[\[620.\]](#) Hn. Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl.  
*omit.*

[\[621.\]](#) Hn. Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl.  
*omit.*

[\[622.\]](#) Hn. Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl.  
*omit.*

[\[623.\]](#) Hn. Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl.  
*omit.*

Cm. folwede; E. folwed.

[\[624.\]](#) Hn. Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl.  
*omit.*

[\[625.\]](#) Hn. Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl.  
*omit.*

[\[626.\]](#) Hn. Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl.  
*omit.*

Cm. pore; E. poore.

[\[634.\]](#) E. Hn. on the lyst;  
(Ln. luste; Cp. Pt. lest); Hl.  
Cm. with his fist.

[\[636.\]](#) E. Hl. wax.

[\[637.\]](#) E. Hn. Stibourne.

[\[645.\]](#) E. Hn. -heueded; Hl.  
heedid.

[\[649.\]](#) E. Hn. Cm. With-  
outen.

[\[650.\]](#) E. thanne.

[\[654.\]](#) E. Thanne.

[660.] E. Hn. nof; *rest* ne  
of. E. awe; Hn. Cm. Hl.  
sawe; Cp. Pt. Ln. lawe.

[676.] Cm. Ln. whiche; *rest*  
which. Cp. Pt. Hl. Terculan.

[680.] Hl. bourdes; *rest*  
bookes (bokes).

[683.] E. hadde.

[691.] E. Ne; Hn. Nof; *rest*  
Ne of.

[692.] Cm. peyntede; *rest*  
peynted.

[697.] Cm. Hl. and of; *rest*  
*om.* of.

[698.] E. Hn. Ln. Hl.  
contrarius.

[699.] E. wysdam.

[705.] *Over* is reysed E. *has*  
i. in Virgine.

[709.] E. Thanne.

[717.] Hn. Cm. Cp. Pt. Ln.  
Hl. *omit.*

E. *om.* that Iesu; *which*  
*occurs in* MS. Bibl. Reg.  
17. D. xv. *and in* Dd.

[718.] Hn. Cm. Cp. Pt. Ln.  
Hl. *omit.*

[719.] Hn. Cm. Cp. Pt. Ln.  
Hl. *omit.*

[720.] Hn. Cm. Cp. Pt. Ln.  
Hl. *omit.*

[721.] E. hise.



[722.] Cm. hem; *rest* it  
(*badly*).

[723.] E. hise.

Pt. Ln. whiche; *rest* which  
(*badly*). E. eyen

[727.] Cp. Pt. Ln.  
penaunce; E. Hn. sorwe;  
Cm. Hl. care.

[728.] E. hadde.

[733.] E. Hn. Phasifpha;  
Cm. Phasippa; *rest*  
Phasipha.

[735.] E. speke; Hn. Cm.  
Cp. Hl. spek.

[737.] E. Hn. Cp. Pt. Ln.  
Clitermystra; Cm.  
Clitemysta; Hl.  
Clydemystra.

[750.] E. vpon; *rest* on.

[757.] E. Thanne. E. Hn.  
how that oon. Cm.  
Latymyus; *rest* Latumyus.

[758.] E. Hn. Hl. vnto; *rest*  
to.

[764.] E. Ln. it shal; Pt.  
shal he; *rest* shal it.

[767.] E. lecchour.

[768.] Cm. Whils; Hl.  
Whil; *rest* Whan; *see* 770.

[786.] E. loeue; *rest* wene;  
*but read* wenen.

[792.] E. Cp. fest; *rest* fist.

[795.] E. Hn. Cp. fest; *rest*  
fist.

[812.] E. Hn. Cp. Pt. vs;  
Cm. Ln. Hl. oure.

[815.] E. Hn. Pt. *om.* 2nd  
of.

[820.] E. to; Cm. for; Hl.  
in; *rest* the (*before* terme).

[822.] Hl. neuer had.

[832.] E. Somonour; Hn.  
Cm. Cp. Pt. somnour.

[836.] Cp. Pt. Ln. eek; *rest*  
*om.*

[850.] Cp. Hl. hoste; Ln.  
oste; E. Hn. hoost.

[852.] E. Cm. were; *rest*  
ben.

[853.] E. telle (*but* tel in  
856).

Colophon. Hn. Here endeth  
the prologe of the Wyf of  
Bathe. E. *adds* and  
bigynneth hir tale.

[]Heading. *From* Hn.

[857.] E. Cm. *om* the.

[859.] Cp. fayerie; *rest*  
fairye.

[872.] Cp. fayeries; E. Hn.  
fairyes.

[880.] Hl. incumbent (!).

[881.] Cm. non; *rest* but.  
Hl. ne wol but doon hem.

[882.] E. Hn. Cm. *om.* it.

[883.] E. *om.* his.

[885.] E. Hn. he (!).

[887.] Cm. Ln. *whiche*; *rest* which.

[888.] E. Cm. Hl. *birafte*; *rest* he *rafte* (*refte*).

[895.] Hl. Cm. *preyeden*; E. Hn. *preyden*.

[898.] E. *wheither*.

[907.] E. Hl. *tellen* it; Hn. *tellen* me; Cm. *telle* me; *rest* *telle* it me.

[908.] E. *shal* (*for wol*).

[914.] Cm. ?*it* (*for what*); E. *om.*

[935.] E. Hn. Cm. Hl. *om.* *how*.

[941.] *ni]* E. *nel*; Cm. *no*lde.

[958.] Hn. Cp. Hl. *trusted*; Cm. *trostid*; E. *triste*.

[959.] Cm. *preyede*; Hl. *prayed*; Hn. *preyed*; E. *preyde*.

[972.] Cm. *bumbith*; Cp. Pt. *bumlith*; Hl. *bumblith*.

[985.] E. *loue*.

[990.] E. Hn. *this*; *rest* *his*.

[993.] Hn. *whiche*; E. *which*; *rest* *vary*.

[1016.] E. queene.

[1028.] E. Hn. Cp. Ln. *om.*  
a.

[1038.] E. *om.* to.

[1042.] E. *om.* heer; Cm. al.

[1052.] E. Hn. Cm. Hl. *om.*  
of.

[1054.] E. thanne.

[1061.] E. Hn. Taak.

[1062.] E. thanne.

[1063.] *All but* Cp. Pt. *om.*  
1st and. E. oold; poore.

[1064.] Hl. the oure; E. Hn.  
oore; Cm. Pt. ore; Cp. oure;  
Ln. oer.

[1070.] E. Hn. thende.

[1091.] Cp. Pt. Ln. eek; *rest*  
*om*

[1093.] E. Hn. yet ne dide.

[1096.] Cm. Hl. me; *rest*  
*om.* (*Read* goddes as  
god's).

[1101.] E. lough.

[1102.] Pt. no (*for* litel).  
*Read* wonder's.

[1112.] Cp. Pt. nys (*for* is).

[1116.] Cp. Pt. Ln. And  
take; *rest om.* And.

[1126.] Hl. of (*for* in). Cm.  
declare (*for* speken in).

[1129.]E. goodnesse; *rest*  
prowesse.

[1134.]E. natureelly.

[1136.]E. Cm. nor; Hl. ne;  
*rest* and. E. thanne.

[1139.]E. Taak.

[1140.]E. Kaukasous.

[1144.]E. natureel.

[1153.]Cp. Hl. boren; Cm.  
bore; *rest* born.

[1155.]E. nel; *rest* nyl.

[1156.]E. Hn. folwen.

[1162.]*Read comth; see*  
1163.

[1163.]E. Thanne.

[1166.]E. Hn. Hostillius.

[1167.]Cm. Cp. Ln. Hl.  
pouert; *rest* pouerte.

[1168.]E. Reed; *rest*  
Redeth.

[1169.]Cp. Pt. Ln. it; *rest*  
*om.*

[1172.]E. Hn. weren (*2nd*).

[1176.]Cm. leuyn; Pt.  
leuen; *rest* weyue  
(weyuen).

[1177.]E Hn. pouerte; *rest*  
pouert.

[1179.]E. Hn. Pt. pouerte;  
*rest* pouert; *so in* 1183,  
1191.

[1182.] E. chesen; E. *om.* a.

[1183.] E. Hn. honeste;  
Cm. oneste.

[1191.] E. Cm. it syngeth;  
*rest* is sinne (!).

[1192.] E. Hn. Cp. myrily.

[1195.] Cp. Pt. Ln. hatel.

[1199.] Hn. Hl. elenge; Ln.  
alinge; *rest* alenge.

[1205.] E. hise.

[1227.] E. wheither.

[1234.] E. wheither.

[1236.] [of—maistrye] Cm.  
the maysterye.

[1254.] E. Hn. Ln. a rewe;  
Hl. on rowe; *rest* a rowe.

[1259.] E. *om.* and. Ln.  
fresshe; E. fressh.

[1260.] E. Hn. touerbyde;  
Cm. Hl. to ouerbyde; Cp.  
Pt. Ln. to ouerlede (!).

[1261.] Cm. preye; Hn.  
praye; E. pray.

[1262.] E. Hn. nat wol; *rest*  
*transpose.*

Colophon.*So* E. Hn.

[ ]Heading.*So* E. Hn.

[1266.] E. chiere.

[1267.] E. Somonour; Hn.  
Somnour.

[1273.] E. Hn. *muchē*; Ln. *muchel*; *rest* *mochel*.

[1274.] E. *ryde*; *rest* *ryden*.

[1277.] Hl. *scoles*. E. Hn. Hl. *om. eek*.

[1278.] E. *And*; *rest* *But*.

[1284.] E. Hn. *mandementz*.

[1286.] Hl. *oste* (*om. tho*).

[1294.] *After* l. 1294 *all but* Hl. *wrongly insert* ll. 1307 *and* 1308; *which see*. Tyrwhitt *also inserts them*.

[1298.] E. Hn. *leeue*; Hl. *my*; Cp. Ln. *my leue*; Pt. *my owen*.

Colophon. *From* Hn.; *so* Pt. (*with Thus for Here*).

[ ] *Heading. So* E. Pt.

[1306.] E. Hn. *and eek*; *rest* *and*.

[1307.] *Wrongly inserted after* l. 1294 *in all but* Hl.

E. Hn. Ln. *om. eek*.

[1308.] *Wrongly inserted after* l. 1294 *in all but* Hl.

E. Hn. *for*; *rest* *at*.

[1310.] Ln. *lychoures*; *rest* *lecchours*.

[1315.] Hn. Hl. *for*; Cp. *eek for*; Pt. Ln. *eek*; E. *om*.

[1317.] E. Hl. *him*.

[1318.] Cp. Pt. Hl. weren;  
*rest* were.

[1319.] Hl. And; *rest* And  
thanne; *read* Thanne.

[1321.] E. Somonour; Hl.  
Sompnour; *rest* Somnour.

[1322.] E. Pt. Ln boye.

[1324.] *Read* taughten (?),  
*or* taught-e. Cp. Pt. that;  
*rest om.*

[1325.] E. lecchours.

[1327.] E. was; *rest* were.

[1331.] E. Hn. *om.* alle.

[1332.] E. Cm. *om.* 1st the.

[1343.] Ln. approwers; Cm.  
apprououris; Pt. aprouers;  
*rest* approuours.

[1348.] Cp. gladde; E. Hn.  
glade.

[1349.] Cm. at the nale;  
(atte nale = atten ale).

[1352.] Hl. not (*for* but).  
Cp. dewete.

[1356.] E. wheither.

[1364.] E. Hn. hir; *rest* þe.

[1367.] E. bribryes.

[1370.] Hl. y-knowe; *rest*  
knowe (*perhaps read* hole  
knowe).

[1371.] Cm. lechour; E. Hn.  
lecchour.



[1372.] Hn. Cp. Pt. auouter;  
E. Hl. auowtier.

[1377.] Hl. Rod; Cp. Pt. Ln.  
Rode; Cm. Wente; E. Hn.  
*om.* Cm. a wedewe an old;  
Hl. a widew and (!) old; E.  
Hn. an old wydwe a.

[1379.] E. Hn. *om.* And.

[1386.] E. Cm. Pt. Ln.  
grene wode shawe (*too*  
*long*).

[1391.] Cp. dewete.

[1395.] Cm. leue; Hl. lieue;  
*rest* dere (deere).

[1399.] Cm. brotherhode;  
Hl. brotherheed; *rest*  
brether-.

[1405.] Hl. sworne; E. Hn.  
sworn; *rest* swore.

[1407.] E. Cm. *om.* which.

[1421.] Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl. how  
that I.

[1426.] Hl. and eek (*but*  
*read* streit-e).

[1428.] Cp. laborious; *rest*  
laborous.

[1430.] E. yeue.

[1440.] E. Nor; Hn. Cm.  
Hl. Ne.

[1444.] E. thanne.

[1445.] Cm. and; *rest om.*

[1450.] E. me yeuen; *rest*  
yeue (yiue) me.

[1454.] ]E. I wolde right; Hl.  
I wolde; *rest* wolde I.

[1459.] ]E. thanne.

[1471.] ]E Hn. swiche; Cm.  
Cp. swich.

[1479.] ]E. hir; *rest* oure.  
Cm. wordis; Hl. thinges;  
*rest* wittes.

[1486.] ]E. Hn. Cm. diuerse  
(*2nd time*).

[1496.] ]body] E. soule (!).

[1498.] ]E. *om.* a; Cm. the.

[1502.] ]E. bisshop (!).

[1515.] ]E Hn. -wardes; *rest*  
-ward.

[1528.] ]E. oother.

[1531.] ]E. Taak; yeue.

[1533.] ]E. oother.

[1556.] ]E. Hn. trust thou;  
*rest om.* thou.

[1559.] ]Cm. thakkyth; Hl.  
thakketh; Ln. thakkes; Cp.  
Pt. thakked; E. Hn. taketh.  
Hn. Cm. Hl. upon; *rest* on.

[1562.] ]Cp. hondywerk;  
Hn. handes werk.

[1564.] ]E. to god; *rest om.*  
to.

[1565.] ]Cp. slough; Pt.  
scholough; Ln. slouhe; Hl.  
sloo.

[1568.] E. Hl. oon; Cm. on;  
*rest* o (oo). E. *om.* thing.

[1571.] E. coomen.

[1582.] Hn. Cp. Hl.  
virtrate; E. virytrate; Cm.  
verye crate; Pt. viritate; Ln.  
veritate.

[1584.] Cm. widew; Hl.  
widow; *rest* wyf (*but read*  
ben'cite).

[1586.] Cp. Pt. Ln. here;  
*rest om.*

[1587.] E. Vp-on; *rest* Vp.

[1589.] E. Hn. Tanswere;  
*rest* To answe (answer).

[1596.] Hl. ther; Ln. the;  
*rest* there. Hl. procuratour;  
Cm. Ln. procatour; *rest*  
procutour.

[1605.] E. Hn. me god; *rest*  
*om.* god.

[1610.] E. thanne.

[1626.] Cm. Mabelyn.

[1642.] Hl. maked; *rest*  
made.

[1644.] E. Hn. this  
Somonours goode men  
bicom.

[1647.] *I supply* and.

[1649.] E. Ln. Hl. herte (*see*  
l. 1659).

[1650.] E. Hn. may it; *rest*  
*om.* it.

[1652.] E. Hn. Pt. peynes;  
*rest* peyne.

[1661.] E. Hn. Hl. tempte;  
*rest* tempten.

[1663.] So E. Hn.; Cp. Pt.  
Ln. this somnour him; Hl.  
oure sompnour him.

[1664.] So E. Hn.; *rest* his  
mysdede . . him. Cm. *om.*  
that (*perhaps rightly*).

Colophon. So E. Hn. Cm.;  
Cp. Hl. Her endeth the  
Frere his tale.

[]Heading. So E. Hn.; E.  
Somonours.

[1665.] E. Somonour; Hl.  
sompnour; *rest* Somnour.

[1676.] E. vanysshed (!);  
*rest* rauysshed.

[1692.] Pt. Hl. than; *rest*  
that.

[1693.] E. Hn. swarmeden;  
Hl. swarmed al.

[1700.] Cp. Hn. loked  
hadde; Pt. Ln. Hl. loked  
had; E. hadde looke al (*sic*).

Colophon. *From* Hn.

[]Heading. So E.; Hn.  
Somnours (*for* Somonour  
his).

[1710.] Cp. Pt. Ln.  
mersshy; Hl. mersschly; E.  
Hn. merssh.

[1718.] Cp. Hl. mighten; E.  
Hn. myghte.

[1721.] Cp. Hl. yiue; *rest*  
yeue.

[1735.] E. lest.

[1736.] E. Pt. Ln. Hl. went.

[1738.] E. Hn. Ln. poure;  
*rest* pore.

[1743.] E. wroote.

[1745.] Hn. Ascaunces; E.  
Asaunces; Hl. Pt. Ln.  
Ascaunce; Cp. Ascance. E.  
prey.

[1746.] Ln. Yeue; Cp.  
Yiue; *rest* Yif (*see* 1750).  
E. him; *rest* vs.

[1747.] Ln. kechel; Hl.  
kichil. Cp. Pt. trippe; Ln.  
trep.

[1750.] E. Hn. Hl. yif; *rest*  
yeue (yiue).

[1751.] Cm. Cp. Hl.  
dagoun.

[1768.] Hl. that; *rest om.*

[1769.] Pt. Hl. Bedred.

[1772.] Hl. yeld it.

[1774.] E. myrie; Hn. Cm.  
murye; *rest* mery.

[1783.] E. Hn. fourtnyght;  
*rest* fourteenight.

[1784.] E. Hn. I haue; *rest*  
haue I.

[1792.] Hl. ay (*for* al).

[1793.] Hl. a ful glorious.

[1794.] E. thise; Hn. Cm.  
Pt. Hl. we.

[1804.] E. Hn. chirteth.

[1830.] Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl. of  
him right non.

[1832.] Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl. *Ieo.*

[1838.] Cp. Pt. Hl. *Ieo.*

[1856.] Ln. than; *rest* that.

[1870.] E. Hn. wel moore;  
*rest om.* wel.

[1872.] Hl. borel.

Hl. borel.

[1873.] Cm. Hl. pouert; *rest*  
pouerte.

[1874.] Hl. borel.

[1878.] E. Hn. gerdon; Cm.  
gerdoun; Pt. guardon.

[1887.] Hn. mountayne; Ln.  
Dd. mounte; *rest* mount.

[1895.] E. Hn. Cp. Ln. that;  
Cm. Hl. Pt. the.

[1901.] E. taak heede.

[1906.] E. mendynantz.

[1912.] E. mendynantz.

[1918.] Cm. Pt. Hl. now;  
*rest om.*

[1923.] E. pouere; Hn.  
poure; Ln. Hl. pouer; Cm.  
poore; Cp. pore.

[1925.] E. Hn. likker; Cm. lykere.

[1927.] E. Hn. *om. 2nd on.*

[1934.] ]buf] E. but; Hl. boef.

[1935.] E. Hn. foore; Cm. Hl. fore; *rest* lore.

[1937.] E. Cm. Werkeris.

[1938.] ]up at] Hl. vpon.

[1939.] Hl. thaer; Cm. Cp. Pt. Ln. the eyre (ayre).

[1947.] E. weelden.

[1949.] Hn. Hl. I in; E. Cm. in a; Pt. I haue in.

[1950.] Hn. Hl. Haue spended; E. I han spent.

[1952.] E. I haue.

[1959.] E. thanne.

[1968.] E. it-; *rest* him-.

[1977.] E. Hn. Hl. buylden; Cm. bildyn; Cp. bulden; Pt. beelden; Ln. bilden.

[1981.] E. *om.* and.

[1983.] E. Hn. Hl. the; *rest* this.

[1988.] E. this; *rest* swich (such).

[1989.] *All* With-inne.

[1991.] E. Hn. Cm. aqueyntances; Hl. acqueyntis; *rest*

aqueintance. Cm. not to; Pt. for to; Hl. fro thee; *rest* nat for to.

[1993.]Pt. yre (*for* hir).

[1994.]Hn. War fro; Hl. War for; Pt. Ware the for; Cm. By-war from; E. Be war fro; Cp. Ln. Be war of.

[1999.]Hl. and meke; Cp. Ln. and so meke; *rest* meke.

[2002.]E. What (*for* Whan). E. Hn. man tret; Cm. man trat; *rest* men trede. After 2004 Hl. *ins.* 2 *spurious lines*: Schortly may no man by rym and vers Tellen her thoughtes, thay ben so diuers. After 2012 Hl. *ins.* 2 *spurious lines*: Ire is the grate of synne as saith the wise To fle ther-fro ech man schuld him deuyse.

[2015.]Hn. Cp. Ln. certes; Hl. also; *rest* eke (eek).

[2037.]*Here* Hl. *adds two spurious lines*: Than thoughte thay it were the beste rede To lede him forth into a fair mede.

[2046.]Hn. Cm. louede (= lov' de); E. loued.

[2047.]E. bitwene.

[2048.]*Here* Hl. *adds two spurious lines*: An irous man is lik a frentik best In which ther is of wisdom noon arrest.



E. Pt. vicius.

[2050.] Hl. of (*for in*).

[2055.] Hn. Cp. Ln. Hl.  
eek; *rest om.*

[2062.] E. *om.* doon.

[2064.] Hl. sone anoon; *rest*  
sone.

[2069.] E. wheither.

[2071.] E. bireft; *rest*  
byreued.

[2091.] Hl. *transposes these*  
*lines.*

[2092.] Hl. *transposes these*  
*lines.*

[2095.] Hl. of (*for at*).

[2096.] E. Hn. Hl. hoolly  
al; *rest al holly (holy).*

[2097.] E. Hl. speken.

[2101.] Hl. *transposes these*  
*lines.*

[2102.] Hl. *transposes these*  
*lines.*

[2105.] E. Cm. tyl; *rest*  
tyle.

[2110.] E. Thanne.

[2116.] Hl. siththen; Cp.  
Ln. sethyns; Cm. sith that;  
E. syn; Hn. Ln. sith. E.  
Ennok; *rest Elie (Elye).*

[2121.] E. wax; Hn. weex;  
*rest wex.*

[2125.] Hl. yeue yow; *rest om.* yow.

[2126.] E. Cp. Ln. *om.* how.

[2128.] Hn. Cm. Cp. Ln. with; E. and; Pt. of; Hl. vnder.

[2129.] Cp. Hl. yiue; *rest yeue.*

[2133.] E. leeue; *rest dere (deere).*

[2137.] E. Pt. by; *rest vpon.*

[2140.] E. Now thanne put in; Hn. Hl. Now thanne put; Pt. Now than put; Cp. Ln. Than putte (put).

[2145.] Hl. launched; Cp. Pt. Ln. launceth.

[2148.] Cm. tewel; Hl. tuel; Ln. touele.

[2153.] E. Pt. Ln. fals.

[2161.] Hn. Cm. Pt. grynt; Cp. grynded; Ln. grenteth.

[2162.] E. Hn. Cp. Hl paas. E. lordes court; *rest om.* lordes.

[2163.] E. *om.* ther.

[2170.] E. bigan to; Cm. gan to; *rest gan.*

[2172.] *So* Hn. Cm.; E. I trowe som maner thing.

[2174.] Cp. greef; Cm. Hl. gref; E. Hn. grief.

[2175.] E. Cp. Ln. Hl. if  
that; *rest om.* that.

[2181.] E. Cp. Ln. *om.* ne.

[2185.] E. Cp. Pt. Ln. *om.*  
sire.

[2186.] E. swich; Hl. such;  
*rest* that.

[2190.] E. he (*for* this  
frere).

[2192.] E. Pt. in; *rest* to.

[2200.] E. al; *rest* ay.

[2201.] MS. Add. 5140 all;  
*rest om.*

[2204.] Hn. thynketh yow;  
Cp. thenke you; Hl. Ln.  
thynke yow; E. thynke ye.  
Hn. Cp. Ln. Hl. ther-by.

[2205.] thinketh = think'th.

[2211.] E. *ins.* hym *after* on  
(*wrongly*). E. *om.* may.

[2212.] Hn. Cp. diffame;  
Cm. Hl. defame; E.  
disclaundre.

[2218.] E. the (*for* this). E.  
Cm. *insert* this *after* cherl.

[2222.] Ln. metrike; *rest*  
metrik.

[2224.] *So the rest*; E.  
Certes it was a shrewed  
conclusioun.

[2227.] E. vile; *rest* nyce.

[2229.] E. herd; *rest* herde.  
E. Cm. Cp. herd euere.

[2232.] ]him] E. thee.

[2235.] ]E. Cp. Pt. Hl. litel  
and litel.

[2245.] ]So Hn. Cp. Ln.; E.  
which that I haue.

[2246.] ]E. Cp. beth; Ln. be;  
*rest* be ye.

[2249.] ]E. euene delt shal;  
Hl. euen departed schuld;  
*rest as above.*

[2255.] ]E. Hl. *om.* here. Hl.  
a large wheel.

[2257.] ]Hn. Hl. Twelf; E.  
Cm. Twelue.

[2258.] ]E. thanne. xij.

[2259.] ]E. Ln. twelue (*for*  
thrittene).

[2262.] ]E. Thanne.

[2267.] ]E. Thanne.

[2268.] ]E. Cm. been hyder.

[2272.] ]Hl. By verray proef.

[2274.] ]E. eke; Hn. eek.

[2278.] ]So Hn. Cp. Ln.; Pt.  
it (*for* yet); Hl. *om.* yet; E.  
As yet the noble vsage of  
freres is.

[2280.] ]E. Hn. Cp.  
disserued.

[2281.] ]Hn. muchel; Hl.  
Cp. mochil; E. Ln. muche.

[2285.] ]E. the (*for* his).

[2287.] E. alle men.

[2289.] E. Euclude. *I supply*  
2nd as (Hl. *supplies* elles);  
Ln. *has* ptholome; E. Hn.  
Protholomee; Cp. Hl.  
*protholome*.

[2291.] Hl. speken; *rest*  
*speke*.

Colophon. *So* E. Hn. Cp.  
Hl.; E. Somonours.

[1.] Hl. hoste; Cp. Ln. oste;  
E. Hn. hoost.

[17.] E. Hl. that ye; *rest*  
*omit* that.

[19.] E. Hn. we; *rest* I.

[22.] Ln. Oste; E. Hn. Pt.  
Hoost; Hl. Sir host.

[32.] Hl. rethorique; Cp.  
retorique; Pt. retorike; E.  
Hn. Ln. rethorik.

[36.] E. *omits* suffre us.

[51.] E. Hn. Emele; Hl.  
Emyl; Cp. Pt. Ln. Emel.

[55.] E. Hn. conuoyen; *rest*  
*conueyen* (-eye).

[56.] E. Hn. this his tale  
(*where this is a contraction*  
*for this is; cf. mod. E. 'tis*);  
Hl. Pt. this is the tale; Ln.  
this is tale.

[76.] E. Saue that; *rest omit*  
that.

[79.] *So* Hn. Ln.; E. hym  
myghte; Pt. my?t; Hl.  
mighte.

[84. ]Pt. Ln. ou?t; E. Hn.  
nought; Hl. no thing.

[93. ]Hn. Pt. and yeueth;  
Hl. and yiueth; E. to yeue;  
Ln. and whisse.

[103. ]E. Hn. better; *rest*  
better.

[108. ]Pt. Ln. oure; E. Hn.  
Cp. vs.

[110. ]E. Ln. *omit* it.

[128. ]Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl. your;  
E. Hn. Cm. thyn.

E. heeste, leeste, meeste;  
Cm. heste, leste, meste.

[130. ]E. heeste, leeste,  
meeste; Cm. heste, leste,  
meste.

[131. ]E. heeste, leeste,  
meeste; Cm. heste, leste,  
meste.

[137. ]Cp. Pt. lynage; Ln.  
Hl. lignage; E. lyne; Hn.  
ligne; Cm. lyf.

[144. ]E. thoughte; Hn.  
thoghte.

[152. ]to-] E. this.

[154. ]E. (*only*) *omits* yow.

[165. ]*So* Hn. Cp. Ln.; E.  
Cm. *omit* That; Pt. *om.*  
what.

[174. ]E. this; *rest* swich,  
such.

[199. ]Hl. throp; E. Hn. Cp.  
throop.

[208.]Pt. throp; E. Hn. Cp. throop; Cm. thorp; Ln. thorpe.

[211.]E. bountee; *rest* beautee, beute.

[233.]E. caste; *rest* sette (set).

[235.]E. that it; *rest omit* that.

[238.]E. gan; *rest* wolde.

E. chiere.

[241.]E. chiere.

[242.]E. hadde; Hn. Cm. hath; Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl. haue.

[249.]E. Cm. that they; *rest omit* that.

[257.]Hl. y-lik to hir of stature.

[269.]Cp. Ln. Hl. vnto; Cm. Pt. to; E. Hn. that to. E. weren.

[297.]E. Hn. Cm. *insert o after* fader.

[302.]E. thanne; Hn. than.

[317.]E. Cp. Hl. wax; Hn. weex; *rest* wex.

[320.]E. ayeins; Ln. a-yeines; *see* l. 2325 *below* (Group E).

[337.]E. Pt. *omit* that.

[357.]E. yow; *rest* oure.

[385. ]translated] Cp.  
transmewed; Pt.  
transformed.

[404. ]E. That she; *rest omit*  
she.

[405. ]Cp. Ln. nas; E. Hn.  
Cm. Hl. were; Pt. ne were.

[415. ]E. Publiced; Pt.  
Publissed; Hn. Publissed.  
E. beautee; *rest* bountee.

[418. ]E. heighe. E. name;  
*rest* fame.

[425. ]E. saugh; *see* B. 810.  
E. heigh; *the rest* lowe,  
low.

[426. ]E *omits* ofte.

[429. ]*So* Cp. Ln.; Hl.  
humblesse; *rest*  
humbleness.

[439. ]E. Iuggementz.

[444. ]E. man; *rest* knaue.

[447. ]E man; *the rest*  
knaue.

[448. ]Cm. liklyhed; E. Hn.  
liklihede.

[457. ]E. foond; Hn. Cm.  
fond.

[465. ]Cm. sterne; E.  
stierne.

[466. ]Hl. Grisild; E. Hn.  
Cm. Grisilde.

[470. ]Hl. Grisild; E. Hn.  
Cm. Grisilde.



[477.]E. Hn. Cm. cam; Cp.  
Pt. come; Ln. com; Hl.  
comen.

[482.]E. subgetz and to;  
*rest omit to.*

[499.]E. chiere.

[503.]E. Cp. Pt. Ln. and;  
*rest or.*

[507.]E. Hn. Ne I ne; *rest  
omit ne.*

[508.]E. Hn. thee *vel* yee;  
Pt. Hl. ?e; Cm. Cp. Ln.  
thee.

[524.]*his*] E. the; Cm. this

[530.]E. Cm. and; *rest or.*

[547.]E. to speken; *rest  
omit to.*

[552.]E. kisse, blisse; *rest  
blisse, kisse; see 678.*

[553.]E. kisse, blisse; *rest  
blisse, kisse; see 678.*

[557.]E. Hn. Cm. he; *rest  
thou.*

[564.]E. Cm. Pt. sad and;  
*rest omit and.* E. stide-; Pt.  
Ln. sted-; *rest stede-.*

[569.]E. Pt. And; *rest But.*

[583.]Cp. Pt. Ln. ful; *rest  
omit.*

[588.]Hn. Cm. Cp. Pt. Hl.  
he cam (com); E. Ln. *omit.*

[590.] Hl. panik; Cp.  
Panyke; *rest* Pavik, Pauyk,  
Pavie.

[594.] E. him; *rest* hire, hir.

[612.] E. man; *rest* knaue.

[626.] Hl. y-boren; E. Hn.  
Cm. yborn.

[640.] Cm. Cp. Hl. seruede;  
*rest* serued.

[643.] E. outreye.

[667.] MSS. say.

[680.] Cm. preyede; Hl.  
prayed; E. Hn. preyde.

[687.] E. wondred; *rest*  
wondreth.

[692.] E. crueel.

[699.] E. or; *rest* and. E.  
stede-.

[704.] E. Hn. Cm. that; *the*  
*rest* a.

[731.] Cp. Hl. hatede; *rest*  
hated.

[734.] E. crueel.

[740.] E. crueel.

[749.] E. publiced; Cp.  
publissed; Hn. publissed.

[751.] Cm. been; Hn. ben;  
*rest* be.

[764.] Hl. panyk; Cp.  
Panyke; *rest* Pavyk,  
Pauyke, Pavie.

[770.]E. Hn. Cp. Ln. that  
they; *the rest omit* that.

[773.]Cp. Cm. preyed; E.  
preyd; Hn. Hl. prayd.

[787.]Cm. vttyreste; E.  
outtreste.

[789.]E. Cp. stide-; Pt. Ln.  
sted-; *rest stede-*.

[812.]E. This; *the rest* The.

[829.]E. *omits* for to.

[867.]my] Cp. Pt. Ln. your.

[868.]my] Cp. Pt. Ln. your.

[869.]Hn. Hl. Ln. Iewels;  
E. Iueles.

[883.]E. Hn. gerdon; *rest*  
guerdon, guerdoun.

[916.]E. Hn. Cm. and she  
moore; *rest omit* she.

[933.]E. Hn. conne; *rest*  
can.

[937.]Hn. kan; Cp Ln. Hl.  
can; *rest omit* (2nd time).

[939.]Hl. panik; Cp.  
Panyke; Pt. Pavie; *rest*  
Pavyk, Pauyk.

[944.]Hl. ye; *rest* eye.

[953.]Cp. Pt. wille; *rest*  
wil.

[977.]Cp. Ill. Cm.  
chambereres; E. Hn. Pt. Ln.  
chambres.

[981.] Hl. Pt. Ln. vndern;  
E. Hn. Cp. vndren; Cm.  
vndryn.

[997.] E. Cm. rumbul; Hn.  
rumbel; Hl. rombel.

[1000.] Hl. yuel; Cm. euel;  
E. Hn. yuele.

[1013.] E. Hn. Hl. is she;  
*rest omit* she. E. Hn. Ln  
chiere; Hl. chier.

[1017.] E. Hn. Cm. Hl. And  
so; Cp. Pt. Ln. *omit* so.

[1033.] E. saugh; *see* l.  
1114.

[1040.] E. Hn. norissyng.

[1044.] E. saugh; *see* l.  
1114.

[1045.] E. Ln. chiere.

[1056.] E. goode; *rest* dere.

[1063.] Cm. Cp. Ln. Hl. ne;  
Pt. and; E. Hn. *omit* ne.

[1067.] Cp. Ln. Hl  
purposed; E. Hn. Cm.  
supposed (*wrongly*); Pt.  
disposed.

[1070.] E. Taak.

[1095.] E. cruuel.

[1117.] Cm. cloth; E. Hn.  
cloth.

[1140.] *in*] E. of.

[1147.] Cm. this Petrak;  
*rest omit* this. Hl. Petrark;  
E. Hn. Cm. Petrak.

[1160.]E. *omits* al; *the rest have it.*

[\*] *It seems to have been Chaucer's intention, in the first instance, to end this Tale here. Hence, we find, in MSS. E. Hn. Cm. Dd., the following genuine, but rejected stanza, suitable for insertion at this point:—*Bihold the merye wordes of the Hoste.

This worthy Clerk,  
whan ended was  
his tale,  
Our hoste seyde,  
and swoor by  
goddes bones,  
'Me were lever  
than a barel ale  
My wyf at hoom  
had herd this  
legende ones;  
This is a gentil tale  
for the nones,  
As to my purpos,  
wiste ye my wille;  
But thing that wol  
nat be, lat it be  
stille.'

Here endeth the Tale of the  
Clerk of Oxenford.

[]Heading. E. Bihoold;  
murye; Hoost.

[1201.]Cm. Ln. Hl. do; *rest doth.*

[1211.]E. chiere; Hn.  
cheere.

Colophon.*From Cp.*

[]Heading.*So E. Hn. Pt*

[1246.]Pt. at; Ln. in (*for*  
of).

[1271.]E. Thanne.

[1274.]E. bacheleris.

[1278.]E. bacheleris.

[1281.]E. Pt. beest, arreest;  
Cm. Ln. beste, areste.

[1282.]E. Pt. beest, arreest;  
Cm. Ln. beste, areste.

[1285.]E. Hn. this; *rest* the.

[1293.]E. Cp. nis; *rest* is.

[1301.]E. Hn. Cm. *om.*  
that.

[1305.]*Not in Cp. Ln.; in a  
spurious form in Hn. Pt. Hl.*

[1306.]*Not in Cp. Ln.; in a  
spurious form in Hn. Pt. Hl.*

[1310.]Cp. Hl. herkne; Pt.  
Ln. herkeneth.

[1316.]Cm. dredles; Hn.  
Hl. dreed nat; Cp. Ln. drede  
nought; Pt. drede it nou?t.

[1323.]Cp. herkne; Pt. Ln.  
Hl. herken.

[1340.]Hl. ioye (*for blisse*).

[1348.]E. Hn. murye.

[1350.]Hl holt; Ln.  
holdeth.

[1351.]E. oughte; Hn. Cm.  
oghte.

[1357. ]E. reede; Hn. Cm.  
Cp. reed. *The scribe of E.*  
*misses 1358-61. by*  
*confusing this reed with*  
rede (1361).

[1358. ]*From Hn.; so Cm.;*  
*so the rest (nearly).*

Hn. kepen; *rest* beren, bere.

[1359. ]*From Hn.; so Cm.;*  
*so the rest (nearly).*

[1360. ]*From Hn.; so Cm.;*  
*so the rest (nearly).*

[1361. ]*From Hn.; so Cm.;*  
*so the rest (nearly).*

[1384. ]E. Hn. loued; Cm.  
louede; Cp. Pt. Ln. loueth;  
Hl. doth.

[1402. ]E. Cm. the; *rest* my.

[1410. ]Cp. Ln. aspye.

[1418. ]E. Hn. Pt. *om.* ful.

[1420. ]Cm. bef; Cp. Pt.  
beef. Hl. Ln. *om.* the.

[1427. ]E. sotle.

[1432. ]E. Cm. Cp. Ln. *om.*  
right.

[1433. ]E. were that I.

[1436. ]Hl. Hn. go; Cp. Pt.  
Ln. so; E. Cm. *om.* E vnto  
(*for to*).

[1438. ]E. Pt. leuere that  
houndes.

[1446.] E. Siththe; Cm. Sith  
(*for If*). Hn. Cm. Hl. ne;  
*rest om.*

[1451.] E. Hl. Cp. Pt.  
leccherye.

[1456.] Cm. siris.

[1462.] E. Cp. that; Ln. Hl.  
that the; Cm. than; Hn. Pt.  
the.

[1463.] E. Hn. And; Pt.  
That; *rest A.*

[1479.] E. hadde.

[1490.] MSS. holde.

[1491.] E. taak.

[1503.] E. Hn. Cm. elles;  
*rest ones.*

[1506.] Hn. Cm. shewed; E.  
seyd; Hl. y-spoken; *rest*  
spoken.

[1511.] E. Nyn; *rest Ne in.*  
Cm. al; *rest om.*

[1512.] E. Hn. *ins. ful* (Cm.  
wol) *before wel*; *rest Crist*  
holdeth him of this ful wel  
apayd.

[1514.] Cp. Hl. stopen; Ln.  
stoupin; E. Hn. stapen; Cm.  
schapyn.

[1517.] E. matiere.

[1520.] *All but Cm. insert*  
he *before Right, or to, or*  
answerde.

[1531.] E. Hn. Ln.  
withouten.



[1539.] E. Cm. which. Hl.  
man can; Cp. Pt. men  
conne; E. Hn. Cm. men  
koude.

[1543.] Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl. to  
enquere.

[1545.] Hn. Cm. Cp. Pt. Ln.  
sin that I hadde.

[1551.] Ln. stedfast.

[1559.] E. yongeste.

[1560.] E. ynough; Cm. I-  
nogh.

[1562.] Cm. Hl. plese; *rest*  
plesen.

[1566.] E. Hn. ysayd; Cm.  
Hl. sayd; Cp. Pt. Ln. al  
said.

[1573.] E. Hn. Hl.  
matrimoigne; Pt.  
matrimoyne; *rest*  
matrimonye.

[1582.] E. And; *rest* As. E.  
polished.

[1584.] E. Thanne. E. Hn.  
se ful many.

[1587.] E. Cm. Pt. dwellen.

[1591.] E. Cm.  
benyngnytee.

[1602.] E. sklendre.

[1609.] E. repplye.

[1611.] E. Cm. Hise.

[1615.] Ln. hem.

[1617.] E. Cm. Hise.

[1630.] Cm. of; Cp. Ln.  
with; *rest om.*

[1631.] Hn. labouren; *rest*  
laboure.

[1645.] E. myrie; Hn.  
murye.

[1660.] Hn. Pt. hye; E.  
hygh.

[1661.] E. his hygh mercy;  
*rest om.* hygh.

[1665.] Cp. Pt. Ln. but if.

[1672.] E. Thanne.

[1682.] *Incomplete.*

[1686.] Hn. we; *rest* ye.

[1691.] Hn. Cp. sawe; E.  
Hl. saugh. E. Hn. Cm. Hl.  
*ins.* that *bef.* it. E. *om.*  
nedes.

[1692.] [sly] Hl. sleighte.

[1693.] MSS. Mayus.

[1698.] Hl. feoffed.

[1704.] E. lyk to; *rest om.*  
to.

[1706.] [his] E. hir.

[1707.] E. Hn. Cm.  
croucheth.

[1715.] So Cm. Hl.; E. *puts*  
swich *before* soun; Hn.  
*repeats* swich *before* soun.

[1718.] E. Hn. thanne; Hl.  
ther.

[1731.] E. myrie; Hn.  
murye.

[1740.] E. thanne.

[1741.] E. matiere.

[1742.] E. benyngne;  
chiere.

[1743.] Cp. Pt. Hl. fayerye:  
*rest* fairye.

[1744.] Pt. Hl. ye; Cp. yhe;  
*rest* eye.

[1751.] Hl. lokith.

[1772.] E. Hn. Cm. highte;  
*rest* that highte (hight)

[1780.] Hl. as; *rest om.* E.  
*om.* I.

[1784.] Cp. Hl. famuler; Pt.  
famulere; Ln. famylere.

[1786.] Hn. Cp. neddre;  
Cm. neddere; Hl. nedder;  
Pt. adder.

[1789.] Pt. Hl. Of; Cp. Ln.  
O (!); *rest* In.

[1790.] Cm. bore; Cp. Ln.  
Hl. borne; *rest* born.

[1792.] Cp. Ln. to espye;  
Hn. Hl. espye.

[1802.] E. Hl. hous; *rest*  
houses.

[1808.] Cp. Pt. Hl. to  
encresen.

[1809.] E. hath.

[1810.] E. *om.* cursed.

[1812.] Cm. Ln. was; *rest*  
nas.

[1824.] Cp. Hl. thikke; *rest*  
thilke (*with* lk = kk). E.  
Cm. brustles.

[1838.] E. Hn. Cm. *om.* our.

[1843.] E. thanne; fyne.

[1844.] E. thanne.

[1846.] E. wantowne.

[1847.] E. coltish.

[1848.] Cp. Pt. Girgoun;  
Ln. Girgun.

[1851.] Hn. thoghte.

[1855.] E. Thanne.

[1860.] Pt. Ln. Hl. Holdeth;  
Cp. Holt; E. Hn. Heeld;  
Cm. Held.

[1867.] Cp. langureth; Pt.  
languowreth; Ln. longurith.

[1870.] E. Andswere.

[1888.] Hl. Hn. Cp. abiden.

[1892.] E. thanne.

[1896.] E. fressh.

[1902.] E. Hise.

[1920.] E. taak.

[1921.] E. noon; *rest* mete.

[1957.] Hn. Cm. coghe; Ln. couhe.

[1962.] E. ye; Cm. the; *rest* that.

[1964.] E. wheither that; Hn. Cm. Hl. *om.* that.

[1966.] Cp. Ln. euesong.

[1967.] *All but* Ln. Hl. *ins.* by *after* or.

[1969.] E. estaat, fortunaat.

[1970.] E. estaat, fortunaat.

[1971.] Hn. Hl. As; E. Cp. Pt. Ln. Was.

[1991.] E. Cm lat. E. storuen.

[1993.] E. crueel.

[1996.] Hn. Hl. maked; Cm. makede.

[1998.] Cm. Hl. but only; *rest* only but.

[2002.] *All* visite; *perhaps* *read* visiten.

[2007.] [she] E. he.

[2008.] [hir] E. him.

[2011.] E. preyneth; Hn. prayneth; Hl. pruneth.

[2018.] Hn. Cm. ladyes; *rest* lady.

[2024.] E. Hn. Cm. Cp. honeste.

[2028.] E. Hn. Cm. Cp.  
honeste.

[2032.] Cm. Hl. romauns;  
Ln. romans.

[2039.] Cp. Hl. fayerie; *rest*  
fairye.

[2046.] E. baar. Hl. smal;  
*rest om.*

[2053.] E. Hn. murye.

[2059.] E. synge; *rest*  
stinge.

[2061.] [venim] Cp. Pt. Ln.  
poyson.

[2063.] E. stidefastnesse.

[2067.] Hl. yen; Cm. Iyen;  
*rest eyen.*

[2074.] E. swich; *rest som*  
(sum).

[2080.] Cp. Ln. Soule; Pt.  
Sool; *rest Soul.*

[2089.] E. Nyn; *rest Ne in.*

[2091.] E. hond (*but hand*  
*in l. 2103*).

[2093.] E. benyngnely.

[2108.] E. Ln. Thogh thou;  
Hl. If thou; *rest Thou.*

[2109.] Cm. Ln. also; *rest*  
as.

[2110.] *All* As to be.

[2111.] Ln. yene; *rest eyen.*

[2117.]Pt. Ln. warme; *rest*  
warm. *Perhaps read*  
emprented hath.

[2118.]Pt. smal; *rest* smale.

[2133.]Cm. befel, wyl; *rest*  
bifille, wille; *see note.*

[2134.]Cm. befel, wyl; *rest*  
bifille, wille; *see note.*

[2139.]E. turtle.

[2140.]Cp. Pt. Ln. alle (al);  
*rest om.*

[2146.]Cp. Pt. Ln. in (*for*  
of).

[2147.]E. som; *rest* our  
(oure).

[2151.]Ln beforne; *rest*  
biforn; *read* biforen.

[2163.]E. Hn. Cm. Hl. to  
dyen; Cp. Pt. Ln. *om.* to.

[2170.]E. Hn. shal; Pt. Cm.  
Hl. shul.

[2177.]E. though.

[2179.]E. Pt. *om.* that.

[2181.]E. though.

[2186.]E. Benyngnely.

[2194.]Cp. Pt. Ln. With  
(*for* By).

[2205.]Cm. Cp. Pt. Ln. can  
(*for* han).

[2208.]E. Hl. coughen; Hn.  
coghen; Cm. coghe.

[2215.] E. hadde toold.

[2217.] Pt. pirry; Hn. purye;  
*rest* pyrie (pirie, pyry).

[2218.] Hn murye; Cp.  
myry; Hl. mirye; Cm. Pt.  
Ln. merie (mery).

[2220.] E. Hn. Cm. Hl. *put*  
hath *before* of gold; Cp. Pt.  
Ln. doun hath his stremes  
sent. E. Hn. Hl. ysent; *rest*  
sent.

[2227.] Cp. Pt. Ln. the; *rest*  
*om.* Cp. Hl. fayerye; *rest*  
fairye.

[2230.] Cm. ony; E. Hl. a  
(*for any*). Cp. Pt. Ln. *have*  
Which that he rauysshed  
out of Proserpyna (!).

[2232.] Hl. story; *rest*  
stories.

[2233.] E. And; *rest* How.  
E. grisely. E. Hn. Cm. sette;  
*rest* fette.

[2234.] Cp. Pt. Ln. *om.*  
thanne.

[2237.] E. seye.

[2239.] E. tresons.

[2240.] *I supply* stories. Pt.  
Ln. telle; *rest* tellen.

[2242.] E. Hn. Cm. Hl. wys  
and; Cp. Pt. Ln. *om. both*  
wys *and* and.

[2247.] E. foond.

[2248.] E. foond.



[2262.] E. Thanne.

[2264.] Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl. and  
wol (*for* wol).

[2272.] Pt. Hl. yen; *rest*  
eyen (ey?en).

[2273.] Cp. Pt. Ln. so (*for*  
wommen).

[2274.] E. visage it (*for*  
chyde, *by mistake*).

[2278.] E. Foond; fooles.

[2279.] E. foond.

[2284.] E. Hn. Cm. Hl. eek  
maken; *rest om.* eek.

[2287.] E. foond.

[2290.] Hn. Cp. Pt. Ln. but  
neither he ne she (*for* that . .  
. Trinitee).

[2291.] *So all.*

[2298.] E. lecchour.

[2300.] E. Hn. Cm. Hl. *om.*  
that.

[2301.] E. Cm. *om.* him.

[2303.] E. Hn. Cm. Hl.  
sette right noght.

[2316.] Cp. Hl. fayerye;  
*rest* fairye (fayre).

[2322.] E. Hn. Cm. murier.

[2325.] Hl. agaynes; *rest*  
agayns.

[2327.] Pt. Ln. Hl. On (*for*  
An).

[2355.]Pt. Ln. Hl. his sight  
ageyn (*and miss ll. 2356,*  
*2357, by confusion with*  
*agayn in 2357).*

[2367.]E. Hn. Cm. stoore;  
Pt. stoor; Cp. Ln. Hl.  
stoure.

[2372.]Ln. Hl. yen; *rest*  
eyen (ey?en).

[2378.]Ln. Hl. yen; *rest*  
eyen (ey?en).

[2380.]E. Pt. Ln. Hl. *om.*  
al.

[2394.]E. hadde.

[2395.]E. hadde.

[2397.]Cm. Pt. *om.* his.

[2405.]Cp. Pt. Hl. I-  
stabled; Ln. stablid.

[2416.]E. *om.* to.

[2418.]Hn. Hl. *add* Amen.

Colophon.*So* E. Hn.; Hl.  
Here endith the  
marchautes tale.

[ ]Heading. E. The Prologe  
of the Squieres Tale; Hn.  
Here folwen the Wordes of  
the Worthy Hoost to the  
Frankeleyn; Pt. The prologe  
of the Fraunkeleyn.

[2419.]E. oure Hoost; Hl.  
our hoste.

[2421.]Hl. subtiltees; E.  
Hn. subtiltees.

[2424.] E. Hn. sooth; Pt.  
Hl. soth (*not sothe*); *see* G.  
167, 662.

[ ] Heading (*after* l. 8). *So* E.  
Hn. Pt. Hl.

[20.] Hn. Pietous and Iust  
and euere moore yliche; E.  
Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl. And pitous  
and Iust alwey yliche (*with  
first syllable deficient*).

[23.] and strong] E. strong  
and.

[35.] nin] Cp. Pt. Ln. ne in;  
Hl. ne.

[38.] E. I moste,  
*miswritten*; Hl. He moste;  
*rest* It moste.

[46.] Hn. thurghout; *rest*  
thurgh.

[53.] E. Hn. foweles.

[62.] E. Hl. *om.* ne.

[68.] E. nor; *rest* ne.

[78.] E. Hn. mystrals.

[86.] E. spoken; Cm.  
spokyn; *rest* spoke.

[91.] E. Saleweth; Hn. Cm.  
Salueth; *rest* salued.

[96.] E. Cm. comen.

[105.] Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl. it; E.  
Hn. Cm. *omit.*

[110.] E. Hn. Arabe.

[113.] E. feeste, heeste.

[114.]E. feeste, heeste.

[115.]E. Hn. weel.

[116.]E. natureel.

[123.]E. whan þat; *rest omit* þat.

[138.]E. Pt. in; *rest on*.

[144.]E. vn-to; Cm. on-to; *rest to*.

[158.]E. wol hym; *rest omit* hym.

[160.]E. a; Cm. that; *rest the*.

[162.]Hn. platte; *rest plat* (*see* 164). E. Cm. that; *rest tilke*.

[164.]E. Cm. Pt. plat; *rest platte*.

[165.]E. Cm. Strike; *rest Stroke*.

[171.]Hl. as stille; *rest om* as.

[173.]E. vn-to; *the rest to*.

[178.]E. Cm. this; *rest the*.

[184.]E. ne; *rest or*.

[189.]Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl. swarmed.

[195.]E. Poilleys.

[200.]E. go.

[201.]E. Hn. a; Cm. as; *rest of*. E. Cm. al the; *rest omit* al.

[202. ]they] Hn. Cp. Pt.  
han; Ln. haue.

[203. ]E. heddes; Hn.  
heuedes; Cp. heedes; *rest*  
hedes (hedis). Hl. *om.* ther.

[206. ]thise] Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl.  
the.

[207. ]E. that it; *rest omit*  
that.

[211. ]Hl. may; *rest omit.*

[217. ]E. Cm. it; *rest* for it.

[223. ]E. lewednesse; Hl.  
lewednes.

[226. ]E. hye; Cm. hyghe;  
*rest* maister.

[239. ]E. Cm. with; *rest* for.

[251. ]*All* Hadde (Had).

[256. ]Hl. i-knowen; *rest*  
knowen.

[260. ]E. Hl. on alle; *rest*  
*om.* on.

[262. ]E. Hn. the bord; *rest*  
his bord.

[265. ]Hn. Aldiran; Hl.  
adryan; *rest* Aldrian.

[266. ]Hl. *repeats* this; *rest*  
*omit 2nd* this.

[269. ]E. parentz,  
Instrumentz.

[270. ]E. parentz,  
Instrumentz.

[271.] Hl. Ln. heuen; *rest*  
heuene.

[275.] E. Cm. vp in; *rest* vp  
on.

[288.] E. Hn. of; *rest* ouer.

[291.] Hl. the; *rest omit.*

[298.] E. me; *the rest* yow.

[299.] Hn. Cp. Pt Ln. that  
at; E. Cm. Hl. *om.* at.

[300.] Hath (*so; for* Is; *cf.*  
*French il y a.*)

[303.] E. Cm. the; Hl. his;  
*rest a.*

[311.] Cm. preyede; Hn.  
preyed; E. preyde.

[317.] E. Hn. Cm. yow  
telle; *rest* telle yow.

[322.] E. ther; Cm. theree;  
*rest* ther-inne, ther-in.

[324.] Cp. Hl. abyde; Hn.  
abiden; Pt Ln. abide; E.  
Cm. stonde; *see l.* 320.

[326.] E. Hn. nor; *the rest*  
ne.

[327.] Cp. liste; Ln. luste;  
Hl. lust to; Cm. wit; E. Hn.  
Pt. list.

[330.] Hl. by; *rest omit.*

[338.] E. Cm. Thus; *rest*  
Ful. E. Cm. *omit* doughty.

[341.] E. Iueles.

[358.]E. heddes; Cm.  
heedys.

[366.]Hn. Cm. Nor; E. Hl  
Ne; Cp. Pt. Ln. For [*for*  
Nor].

[372.]E. Avisioun; *rest a*  
visioun.

[377.]E. *omits* is.

[379.]E. Hn. on; Cm. at;  
*rest* in.

[382.]E. Hn. an; Cm. Hl. a.

[386.]E. Cm. foure  
(*rightly*); Hn. 4; *rest* ten.

[409.]E. fordryed; Cm.  
fordreyed; *but* Hn. Cp. Pt.  
Ln. for-drye; Hl. for-druye.

[414.]E. Cm. hath; *rest*  
hadde (had).

[416.]E. Cm. *omit* as.

[419.]E. Hn. Ft. beest,  
forest; *rest* beste, foreste.

[420.]E. Hn. outhur; *rest*  
eyther.

[420.]E. Hn. outhur; *rest*  
eyther.

[421.]E. Pt. she; *the rest*  
he.

[423.]*So* Cp. Hl.; E. Hn.  
Cm. neuere man yet; Pt.  
Ln. neuere yit man.

[433.]E. Hn. baar.

[435.]E. fowel.

[438. ]Hl. rewthe; Ln.  
reuthe; *rest* routhe.

[448. ]E. Hn. pyne; *rest*  
peyne.

[449. ]E. the; *rest* this.

[452. ]E. causeth; *rest*  
causen.

[455. ]E. Hn. outhur; *rest*  
either.

[459. ]E. Hn. Est, beest;  
Cp. est, best; Cm. est,  
beste; *rest* este, beste.

[460. ]E. Hn. Est, beest;  
Cp. est, best; Cm. est,  
beste; *rest* este, beste.

[463. ]E. passioun; *rest*  
compassioun.

[469. ]E. the grete; *rest*  
*omit* the.

[472. ]Hn. Cp. Pt. yet  
moore; E. Cm. moore yet;  
Hl. Ln. more.

[477. ]Cm. swow a-breyde.

[481. ]E. Hl. *omit* it.

[484. ]E. Cm. *omit* that.

[487. ]E. yset; Cm. I-set;  
*the rest* set, sette.

[489. ]E. *omits* to.

[491. ]E. Hn. chasted; *rest*  
chastysed; *I should propose*  
*to read* is chasted; *but*  
*authority is lacking*.



[492. ]*So* Hl.; *rest* and for that.

[498. ]E. Hn. wille; *rest* tille (!)

[499. ]E. Cm. That; *rest* Ther.

[508. ]MSS. trouthe, trowthe.

[510. ]E. I ne; Cm. I not; *rest* no wight.

[511. ]E. Hn. Cp. Hl. colours.

[512. ]hit] Hl. hut; Ln. hideth.

[516. ]*Pronounced* kep'th.

[520. ]E. the; *the rest* this.

[526. ]Hl. crowned; Hn. Cp. Pt. crowned; E. corounded.

[529. ]MSS. vp-on (*for* on).

[533. ]Cm. Ln. Hl. and al; *rest omit* al.

[535. ]E. for myn; *rest* of myn.

[537. ]Hl. Pt. trew; *rest* trewe.

[542. ]*All* yaf his herte.

[545. ]*Only* Cm. *om.* and.

[548. ]E. Cm. Troilus; *rest* Iason.

[551. ]Cm. wrytyn; *rest* writen.

[555.]E. vnbokelen.

[557.]E. Cp. dide; Cm. dede; *rest* did.

[562.]E. Cm. *omit* so.

[572.]E. Hn. lief; Ln. lefe; *rest* leef.

[585.]Cp. *om.* that.

[601.]Hn. Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl. wel seyde; Cm. I-seyd; E. seyde.

[602.]E. Hn. Cm. hire; *rest* him.

[616.]Hl *has here lost* 8 leaves, to l. 1223.

[619.]E. nouelrie; *the rest have the plural, except* Ln. none leueres, *a corruption of* nouelries.

[620.]*I supply* ne.

[622.]Hn. and fressh; *rest omit* and.

[623.]E. Hn. goodlich; *rest* goodly. E. Pt. *om.* and *before* humble.

[632.]E. Hn. Cp. barm, harm; *rest* barme, harme.

[633.]E. Hn. Cp. barm, harm; *rest* barme, harme.

[639.]E. Hn. saues; *the rest* salues.

[642.]E. hire fulle; *the rest* al hir.

[644.]Slo. velowetys.

[647. ]E. ther were  
ypeynted; *rest* were  
peynted.

[648. ]E. Hn. tidyues; Ln.  
tideues; *rest* tidifs.

[649. ]*Transposed by*  
Tyrwhitt.

[650. ]*Transposed by*  
Tyrwhitt.

[650. ]And] Cp. Pt. Ln. *om.*

[657. ]Slo. Ln. whiche; *rest*  
which. Hn. of which I to  
yow tolde.

[664. ]E. Theodera.

[672. ]*Here the MSS. fail.*  
Ln. *has 8 spurious lines in*  
*place of ll. 671,*  
672.Heading.*So E.; Hn.*  
The prologe of the  
Marchauntes tale.

[676. ]E. allowethe; Hn.  
allowthe.

[689. ]E. listneth; *rest*  
listeth, lusteth.

[695. ]Laud 600 *has* host,  
wost; E. Hn. Pt. hoost,  
woost.

[696. ]Laud 600 *has* host,  
wost; E. Hn. Pt. hoost,  
woost.

[]Heading.*So E.; Ln. Incipit*  
prologus de le Frankeleyne;  
Hn. Pt. Here bigynneth the  
Frankeleyns tale. Hl. *omits*  
ll. 709-1223.

[712. ]E. whiche.

[722.]E. Hn. Scithero.

[726.]Cp. Ln. ben me to;  
Pt. bene to me; Hn. they  
ben to; E. been to.

[772.]E. auantate (*sic*).

[791.]E. Heere.

[794.]E. Thanne.

[801.]Ln. penmarke; *rest*  
Pedmark.

[803.]Pt. Ln. had; *rest*  
hadde.

[810.]Cm. er (*for eek*); Pt.  
*om.*

[814.]E. stynten.

[842.]Cm. preyede; Cp.  
preyed; E. Hn. preyde; Pt.  
preiden.

[851.]E. Hn. Seillynge.

[852.]E. thanne.

[855.]E. thanne.

[862.]E. Thanne.

[873.]MSS. eest, est.

[874.]MSS. beest, best.

[881.]E. Thanne. Pt.  
cheerte.

[882.]E. thanne.

[887.]E. *om.* ne.

[889.]Cm. Cp. Pt. this is  
(this = this is).

[890.] E. al this; *rest om.*  
this.

[903.] E. hadde.

[906.] E. in; *rest on.*

[907.] E. hadde.

[914.] *So Cm. (see Group F, l. 396); E. Hn. maked, and om. for to; Cp. Pt. Wold han made ony pensif herte light.*

[926.] *Cp. biforen; Hn. Cm. bifore; E. biforn.*

[939.] E. hadde.

[941.] E. Hn. tellen.

[950.] E. Cm. a fuyre; Hn. Pt. a fuyre; Cp. fuyre; Ln. fire.

[956.] E. Hn. yong.

[965.] E. Hn. this; *rest his.*

[971.] E. Hn. Cm. Ln. Hadde.

[973.] E. Hn. gerdon.

[987.] E. Hn. Taak.

[993.] *Cm. remoue; Cp. Ln. remewe; Pt. remeue.*

[997.] E. Thanne.

[1010.] E. Thanne.

[1011.] *MSS. anon, anone.*

[1012.] E. Hn. coome.

[1017.] Ln. the orizonte.

[1025.] Cm. kneis; Cp. Pt. knees.

[1035.] E. Hn. or; *rest* and. Pt. hie; E. Hn. Cp. heighe; Cm. hyghe; Ln. hihe.

[1036.] Pt. ye; Cm. Iye; E. Hn. Cp. eighe; Ln. eyhe.

[1037.] E. *om.* that.

[1044.] E. holpen.

[1045.] E. Lucina, *glossed* i. luna.

[1048.] E. Emperisse.

[1050.] Hn. lighted; Cm. lyghtenyd.

[1063.] E. Hn. Cm. Cp. Thanne.

[1069.] E. Hn. Cm. Cp. Thanne.

[1074.] E. Hn. dirke.

[1078.] E. teeris.

[1086.] E. wheither.

[1096.] Cp. Pt. Ln. ther-of (*for* of it).

[1100.] E. Cm. I wol (wele) yow; *rest* wol (wil) I.

[1101.] E. Hn. Cm. furyus.

[1109.] E. Hn. baar.

[1118.] Cm. whil; *rest* whiles. Ln. Cp. Pt. Orliaunce.

[1125.] E. natureel.

[1129.]Pt. *om.* the (*which seems better*).

[1140.]E. whce (!); *for* whiche.

[1141.]Cm. tregettourys;  
Cp. tregetoures; *rest* tregetours.

[1147.]Cp. Pt. Ln. *omit these two lines.*

[1148.]Cp. Pt. Ln. *omit these two lines.*

[1150.]E. Cm. Ln. hym;  
*rest* hem.

[1152.]E. thanne.

[1155.]E. natureel.

[1161.]E. Hn. Pt. enduren.  
Hn. Cm. day; E. wowke;  
Cp. Pt. Ln. year.

[1162.]E. Thanne.

[1163.]E. Thanne.

[1184.]E. Hn. Cm. *put* forth *before* is.

[1185.]E. Hn. maden.

[1191.]Cp. Pt. Ln. *omit six lines.*

[1192.]Cp. Pt. Ln. *omit six lines.*

[1192.]Cm. Iye; E. Hn. eye.

[1193.]Cp. Pt. Ln. *omit six lines.*

[1194.] Cp. Pt. Ln. *omit six lines.*

[1195.] Cp. Pt. Ln. *omit six lines.*

[1196.] Cp. Pt. Ln. *omit six lines.*

[1216.] E. though; Hn. thogh.

[1217.] E. Hn. Cm. thanne.

[1218.] E. Hn. hir reste; *rest om.* hir.

[1220.] E. Hn. Cm. gerdoun.

[1221.] Cm. remeuy $n$ ; Cp. remewe; Ln. remoue.

[1224.] *Here Hl. begins again.*

[1241.] *So all; see 1184.*

[1243.] E. Hn. thise; Hl. these; *rest the.*

[1245.] Cm. Pt. wex; E. Hn. Hl. Cp. wax.

[1254.] Hl. Cm. Cp. braun; Pt. brawne; E. Hn. brawen.

[1257.] E. chiere; Cm. Ln. Hl. chier.

[1263.] E. Hn. Cm. wayten.

[1264.] E. Cm. maken.

[1265.] E. a (*for an*).

[1269.] E. ellis.



[1273.] E. Hn. tolletanes;  
Hl. tollitanes; *rest*  
colletanes (!). E. brought;  
Hn. broght.

[1274.] E. nought; Hn.  
noght.

[1275.] E. yeeris.

[1276.] *So all:* (E. hise,  
rootes, geris).

[1277.] Ln. centres; *rest*  
centris.

[1278.] Hn. Hl.  
proporcionels; E. -cioneles;  
Cm. -ciunnys; Cp. Pt. -  
cions.

[1280.] E. speere.

[1283.] Cm. nynte; Hl.  
fourthe (!); *rest* 9.

[1284.] E. he hadde  
kalkuled; *rest om.* hadde.

[1285.] E. hadde.

[1293.] Cp. Pt. Hl. vsed; E.  
Hn. vseden.

[1295.] E. Hn. Cm. wyke;  
Hl. Cp. wike; Pt. Ln. weke.

[1296.] Hl. *om.* alle.

[1302.] E. Cm. hise.

[1318.] Pt. Cp. giltelees;  
Hl. gulteles; *rest* giltless (-  
les).

[1333.] E. Hn. Hl. do; *rest*  
don.

[1336.] E. Hn. shal; Ln.  
schal.

[1340.] Hl. oon; Pt. on (*for*  
a).

[1354.] E. Hn. Cm. shal.

[1357.] Hl. Fro; *rest* For.

[1358.] E. Hn. Pt. Ln. *om.*  
elles.

[1360.] Pt. Hl. *om.* to.

[1367.] Cm. bere.

[1368.] Cm. thretty; Hl.  
thritty; *rest* xxx.

[1369.] E. Hadde. E. Hn.  
Cm. Atthenes. E. at; *rest*  
atte, at the.

[1374.] Cp. Ln. pament.

[1379.] Cm. Messene; E.  
Hn Hl. Mecene.

[1388.] E. Hl. heet; Hn.  
Cm. highte; Cp. Ln. that  
hight (hiht); Pt. which hi?t.

[1406.] Hl. whanne; E. Hn.  
Cm. whan; Cp. Pt. there;  
Ln. thare.

[1408.] Hn. Cm. Hl. hadde;  
*rest* had.

[1409.] Hn. Cp. Ln.  
Milesie; E. Cm. Melesie.

[1410.] Hn. Cm. Hl. verray;  
*rest om.*

[1414.] Hn. Hl. habradace;  
Cp. Pt. habradas; Ln.  
Abradas.

[1430.] *All hem-self; see l.*  
1420.

[1435.] Cm. Massedoyne;  
Ln. Macedoyne; Cp.  
Macedoigne; Pt.  
Masidoigne; Hl. Macidone;  
E. Hn. Macidonye.

[1437.] Hn. Hl. Niceratis;  
Cm. Nycherates.

[1440.] Cm. al (*for that*); E.  
*om.*

[1442.] Cp. Ln. Alcestem;  
Pt. Alcesteyn; *rest* Alceste.

[1443.] E. Penalopee; *rest*  
Penolopee (-pe).

[1445.] Hn. Hl. Laodomya;  
E. Cm. Lacedomya; *rest*  
Leodamya.

[1450.] Cp. Cm. Hl. yiue;  
E. Hn. Pt. yeue.

[1452.] E. Honured

[1453.] Cm. Cp. Hl. queen;  
*rest* queene (quene).

[1455.] *These two lines are*  
*in E. and edd. only.* E.  
Bilyea (*edd. Bilia; see*  
*note*).

[1456.] *These two lines are*  
*in E. and edd. only.* E.  
Bilyea (*edd. Bilia; see*  
*note*).

[1457.] E. pleyne; *rest*  
pleyned.

[1463.] E. I was; *rest* was I.

[1467.] E. Hl. chiere.

[1475.] Hl. on; E. Hn. Cm.  
vp on.

[1481.] E. *om.* of.

[1483.] Hn. tel; *rest* telle;  
*see* l: 1591.

[1493.] *Found in E. only.*

[1494.] *Found in E. only.*

[1495.] *Found in E. only.*

[1496.] *Found in E. only.*

[1497.] *Found in E. only.*

[1498.] *Found in E. only.*

[1500.] E. Hn. Cm. amorus.

[1503.] E. bown; *rest* boun.

[1515.] E. Hn. Cm. hadde

[1527.] E. Hn. seyeth.

[1534.] Hn. serement; Hl.  
seurement.

[1556.] E. *om.* two.

[1580.] E. Hn. Cp. a-  
begged; Ln. abigged; Hl. a  
begge; Cm. Pt. a beggere.

[1581.] Cm. Cp. Hl. seurte;  
Pt. swerte; E. Hn. seuretee.

[1583.] E. Thanne.

[1596.] E. Hn. Hadde.

[1602.] E. Hn. Hl. hadde  
herd; *rest* herde (herd).

[1606.] E. Hn. This; *rest*  
This is.

[1613.] E. releesse.

[1614.] Cp. Hl. crope; Ln. crepe. Cm. *om.* the.

[1616.] E. Cm. Cp. taken.

[1621.] E. Hn. Cp. Ln. *ins.* thanne *before* wolde.

Colophon. *From* E.; Hn. Here endeth, &c.; Pt. Thus endeth the Frankleyn his tale.

[\*?\*] *For* ll. 11929-34 in Tyrwhitt's text, *see* Note at the foot of p. 289; *for* ll. 11935-12902, *see* pp. 290-319; *for* ll. 12903-15468, *see* pp. 165-289.

[7.] Hn. Hl. hente; E. shente, Pt. shent, Ln. schent, *wrongly*.

[17.] E. Hn. Pt. Ln. Hl. roten; Cm. rote.

[18.] E. Hn. no good nencrees; Pt. Ln. non encrese; Hl. good encres; Cm. encrees.

[19.] Cm. hire; Pt. hure; Hn. Ln. hir; E. it; Hl. her.

[27.] Hn. Pt. of; E. Cm. Ln. Hl. with.

[28.] Hn. Cm. Pt. Ln. martir seinte (seint); Hl. martir; E. mooder.

[32.] Hn. mendite (*showing the scansion*).

[34.] E. eterneel; Hn. Cm.  
eternal.

[43.] E. Hn. Cm. Pt. sydis.

[44.] E. eterneel; Hn. Cm.  
eternal.

[54.] E. often; Hn. Cm.  
ofte.

[80.] Hn. Cm. tendite  
(*shewing the scansion*).

[82.] E. Hn. Cm. Hl. him;  
*but* Cp. Pt. Ln. hem.

[83.] Cm. folwe; E. Hn. Hl.  
folwen; Cp. Pt. Ln.  
folowen.

[84.] E. I pray; Cp. And  
pray I; *rest* And pray (*or*  
prei, *or* preye).

[ ] Heading. *In margin of* E.  
Hn. (E. om. *Aurea*).

[85.] E. *omits* yow.

[91.] E. favour; *rest* savour;  
*see* l. 229.

[95.] E. manéré.

[110.] E. Syen; Cp. Ln.  
Seyen; Hn. Sayen.

[134.] Hl. Hn. organs; Ln.  
orgens; E. Orgues; Cp.  
Orgles; Pt. Orgels.

[137.] E. it; *rest* I.

[138.] Hn. Cm. Cp. Hl.  
deyde; E. dyde.

[139.] E. Hn. and; *rest* or.

[147.]E. me; *rest* it; *see* l.  
150.

[152.]E. aungel; *but* angel  
*in* 165, 170.

[164.]E. aungel; *but* angel  
*in* 165, 170.

[171.]on] E. in.

[178.]E. thynges; *rest*  
nedes, nedis, needes

[180.]E. Cp. Ln. Hl.  
whiche þat I; *but* Hn. Cm.  
Pt. *omit* that.

[190.]Ln. yen; *rest* eyen,  
eyhen.

[192.]E. Hn. hierde.

[197.]E. Hl. right; *rest* but.

[203.]E. biforn; Hl. to-forn;  
*rest* biforn, biforne,  
beforne.

[208.]E. Hn. Cm. O; Hl.  
On; Cp. Pt. Ln. Of.

[209.]E. *omits* and.

[210.]Hl. *omits*.

[211.]Hl. *omits*.

[212.]Hl. *omits*.

[213.]Hl. *omits*.

[214.]Hl. *omits*.

[214.]E. oother; *rest*  
sother.

[215.]Hl. *omits*.

[216.]Hl. *omits*.

[216.]E. Hn. Cm. this; Pt. that; Cp. Ln. the.

[217.]Hl. Pt. cristened; Cm. cristenede; E. Hn. Cp. cristned.

[226.]E. three; Hl. thre; *rest* quod he.

[251.]*The MSS. have swete here; but in l. 247 we find only sote, soote, swote, suote, except swete in Pt.; in l. 229, E. Hl. soote; Hn. swote; Cm. sote; Cp. Pt. Ln. swete.*

[267.]E. Ln. Hl *omit* the.

[273.]E. hym; *rest* it.

[277.]*The MSS. have Cecilies, wrongly (for Valerians); Lat. text—Ualeriani; cf. l. 281.*

[281.]E. Hn. *omit* thise; *the rest retain it, except Cm., which has brought hem to blysse.*

[284.]Cp. Pt. Ln. *omit* al.

[288.]E. Hn. Pt. beest; Hl. best; Cm. Cp. Ln. beste.

[303.]E. Hn. Cm. that I; *rest omit* that.

[304.]Hl. *om.* right.

[323.]Ln. Hl. Pt. better; E. Hn. bettre.

[326.]E. thyng ywroght; Hn. Cm. thynges wroght.



[326.] Cp. Pt. Ln. *omit.*

[327.] Cp. Pt. Ln. *omit.*

[328.] Cp. Pt. Ln. *omit.*

[329.] Cp. Pt. Ln. *omit.*

[330.] Cp. Pt. Ln. *omit.*

[331.] Cp. Pt. Ln. *omit.*

[332.] Cp. Pt. Ln. *omit.*

[333.] Cp. Pt. Ln. *omit.*

[334.] Cp. Pt. Ln. *omit.*

[335.] Cp. Pt. Ln. *omit.*

[336.] Cp. Pt. Ln. *omit.*

[337.] Cp. Pt. Ln. *omit.*

[340.] E. *omits o.*

[355.] E. saugh; Hl. say.

[363.] Hl. apposed; *the rest*  
opposed, *wrongly.*

[366.] E. Cm. Hl. *omit is.*

[373.] E. Hn. Pt. Ln.  
tormentours.

[382.] E. Hn. Hl. ful  
stedefast; Cm. ful sobere;  
Cp. Pt. Ln. sobre.

[384.] Cp. Pt. Casteth; *rest*  
Cast.

[392.] E. Hn. Cm. ledde.

[398.] E. Hn. Cm. heuedes;  
*rest hedes.*

[400.]E. saugh; Hn. Cp.  
Hl. say.

[404.]E. this; *rest* his.

[405.]E. Hn. Cm. Hl. so  
bete; Cp Pt. Ln. so to-bete.

[406.]E. the; *rest* his.

[418.]E. *omits* al.

[424.]Cp. Pt. Ln. tho; *rest*  
*omit*.

[436.]Hn. Hl. this; Cm. Cp.  
Pt. Ln. thus; E. *omits*.

[451.]E. Hn. Cm. *omit* it.

[467.]E. and he; *rest omit*  
he.

[475.]E. speke; *rest* seye.

[487.]Hl. lewednes; *rest*  
boldnesse.

[510.]E. Ln. *insert* ne  
*before* mowe; E. mowen;  
Hn. mowe.

[518.]E. fyre; Hn. Cm. fyr.

[521.]Cm. felede; E. Hn.  
feled; Cp. Pt. Ln. felt of it.

[524.]E. Hn. a ful; Cm. a;  
*rest* ful.

[528.]Cp. Pt. smyten; *rest*  
smyte.

[530.]man (2)] E. men.

[534.]Cm. is went; *rest* he  
wente (*or* he went) *against*  
*the rime*.

[542.] E. at; *rest* of; *see* G 621.

[548.] E. This; *rest* The.

[550.] E. Hn. Ln. seinte.

[553.] E. Hn. Pt. seinte; Cp. seintz; Pt. seintes.

Colophon. *From* E. Hn.; Hl. Here endeth the secounde Nonne hir tale of the lif of seint Cecilie.

[554.] E. toold was al; Cm. told was; *rest* ended was. E. Pt. seinte.

[558.] *So* E.; *rest* And vnder that he hadde a whit surplys.

[559.] E. which þat; *rest* omit which.

[561.] E. as he; Cm. that he; *rest* he.

[562.] E. hakeney; *rest* hors.

[564.] E. *omits* ll. 564, 565.

[566.] E. Hn. vpon; *rest* on.

[569.] E. to wondren; *rest* omit to.

[574.] E. Hn. heeng; Hl. heng; Cm. Cp. hyng.

[586.] E. som; *rest* this.

[589.] E. Hn. saugh; Pt. segh.

[591.] E. *omits* that.

[593.]E. *omits* good.

[594.]E. *certein*; *rest* *certes*.

[603.]E. Cm. *craftily*; *rest* *thriftily*.

[621.]E. *for*; Hl. *of*; *rest* *at*.

[627.]E. *this tale*; Cm. *this*; *rest* *thus*.

[663.]Cm. Hl. *yit*; *rest* *omit*. E. *telle*; Cm. *speke*; *rest* *talke*.

[672.]E. Cm. *lakke*; *rest* *lakken*. E. *of oure*; *rest* *omit* *of*.

[681.]E. *omits* *it*.

[686.]E. Cm. *Which this*; *rest* *Which that this*; cf Hl. 684, 691, 701 (*yemán*).

[698.]E. *his*; *rest* *this*. E. Cm. *rekke*; Cp. *recche I*; Hl Pt. Ln. *recche the*.

[706.]*So* Hl. Cp. Pt. Ln.; E. *omits* *after*, *having heer only*.

[711.]E. *that*; *rest* *so*.

[717.]E. *And*; *rest* *But*.

[728.]E. *omits* *a*.

[740.]E. Pt. Ln. Hl. *For so*; *but* Cp. *omits* *For*.

[761.]E. *omits* *how*.

[762.]E. Cm. *papeer*; Ln. *papere*; Lich. *papire*; Cp.

Pt. Hl. paupere. (Tyrwhitt  
*reads pepere.*)

[764.] *The MSS. have*  
lampe, laumpe, lamp.

[767.] Lich. Pt. eyre; Ln.  
eyere; E. eyr; Cm. ayr; Cp.  
Hl. aier.

[775.] E. in; Cm. &; *rest*  
on.

[776.] E. And; *rest* Of.

[782.] E. Cm. a; Ln. in; *rest*  
on.

[782.] Cm. Pt. Ln. weye,  
leye; *rest* way, lay.

[783.] Cm. Pt. Ln. weye,  
leye; *rest* way, lay.

[790.] E. vertgrees; Li. Cm.  
Cp. Hl. verdegres; Pt.  
verdegrees.

[792.] E. Li. Hl. vrinals;  
Cm. vrynallis; Cp. Pt.  
vrinales.

[803.] E. purpos if; *rest*  
craft if that.

[806.] *The MSS. all retain*  
an.

[808.] *Miswritten pottes in*  
E.; Hl. poketts.

[812.] E. and; *rest* or.

[813.] *Accent alum on the*  
u.

[817.] E. And of oure; *rest*  
*omit* And of.

[820.]E. seuene; *rest* foure.

[834.]E. *omits* so.

[836.]E. oght hath; *rest*  
hath oght (ought).

[838.]E. Cm. Hl. Askauns;  
Ln. Ascance; *rest* Ascaunce

[846.]E. Cm. And; *rest* Al.

[860.]E. Pt. Hl. ynowe,  
rowe; Li. ynogh, rogh; Cm.  
I-nogh, rogh; Cp. ynough,  
rough.

[861.]E. Pt. Hl. ynowe,  
rowe; Li. ynogh, rogh; Cm.  
I-nogh, rogh; Cp. ynough,  
rough.

[864.]we (2)] E. it.

[867.]E. With; *rest* And.

[868.]Cm. I-mad vs; Hl. I-  
made vs; E. maad vs; *rest*  
vs made.

[871.]E. *omits* euer.

[875.]Cm. to; *rest* omit.

[880.]E. Inne at; *rest* in a.

[881.]E. brat; *rest* bak.

[882.]E. Li. the; *rest* this.

[888.]E. a Mile from hem;  
*rest* from hem a myle.

[889.]E. truste; *rest*  
trusteth.

[890.]E. And; *rest* Lo. E.  
smel; *rest* smellyng.

[899.] E. Ln. Lich. that; *rest* than.

[902.] [dar] E. Ln. dare.

[905.] E. oft.

[912.] E. Cm. synke; *rest* sinken.

[915.] E. lepte; *rest* lepe, lepen.

[918.] E. lord is; *rest* is lord.

[919.] *So* E. Cm.; *rest* Nis ther no more wo ne anger ne ire.

[922.] E. Cm. along; *rest* long

[927.] E. fourthe; *see* l. 824.

[930.] Cm. Hl. long; *rest* along; *see* l. 922.

[931.] E. vs is; *rest* is vs.

[938.] Cm. I-swepid; Ln. ysweped; E. sweped; Cp. Pt. Hl. yswoped.

[951.] E. shal; *rest* wol, wil, wele.

[952.] E. bryngen; *rest* bringe.

[953.] E. *omits* sirs.

[956.] E. And; *rest* But.

[962.] E. euery; *rest* al, alle. Cm. schynyth; Ln. schyneth; Hl. schineth; E. seineth; Cp. semeth.

[963.] Cp. Pt. Ln. it; E. Cm. Hl. *omit* it.

[964.] E. to; *rest* at.

[965.] E. Nis; *rest* Ne is.

[966.] E. *omits* lo.

[967.] E. Cm. wiseste; *rest* wisest.

[972.] E. was; *rest* is. Cf. l. 987.

[976.] E. sleighte; Hl. sleight; *rest* sleightes.

[978.] E. lyne myghte; *rest* myghte lyuen.

[979.] E. nas; Ln. ne is; *rest* nis, nys.

[991.] Cp. Pt Ln. tellen; *rest* telle.

[993.] E. desclaundre; *rest* sclaundre; *see* l. 998.

[994.] E. Al-though that; *rest omit* that.

[997.] E. o; *rest* a.

[1002.] Cm. apostellis; Li. aposteles; E. apostles.

[1004.] E. Hl. a blame; *rest omit* a.

[1008.] Cm. Remeuyth; E. Remoeueth.

[1011.] F. herketh.

[1012.] E. *omits* an.



[1013.] E. had dwelled; *rest*  
dwelled hadde (*or had*).

[1043.] E. Cm. a thyng; *rest*  
*omit a*.

[1045.] E. Ln. In-to; *rest*  
Vn-to.

[1046.] E. or; *rest and*.

[1047.] E. the; Hl. your;  
*rest is your*.

[1056.] E. if that; *rest and if*  
(*or yif*.)

[1059.] Cp. Hl. heed; E. Li.  
heede.

[1061.] *After sir*, E.  
*wrongly inserts quod he*.

[1073.] E. Cm. false; *rest*  
fals.

[1078.] Hn. Hl. conceyt,  
deceyt; E. conceite, deceite.

[1079.] Hn. Hl. conceyt,  
deceyt; E. conceite, deceite.

[1080.] E. for; *rest to*.

[1085.] E. his; Cm. heigh;  
*rest thy*.

[1087.] Cm. that, *which*  
*seems required; rest omit*.

[1101.] E. heede; Hl. heed;  
Cm. hed.

[1103.] E. Cm. hadde it;  
*rest it hadde*.

[1106.] Cm. Cp. say; E.  
saugh.

[1111.] E. Cm. soothly; *rest* schortly.

[1112.] Hl. took; E. toke.

[1113.] E. Cm. hem; *rest* it.

[1118.] E. to the; *rest omit* to.

[1120.] Hl. Cp. Tak; E. Taake.

[1123.] E. to whiche; Cm. to whiche that; *rest* whiche that.

[1127.] E. I wol nat; Hl. with-ouen; Cm. *with-*outyn; *the rest* withoute (*or* without.)

[1128.] E. *omits* it.

[1135.] E. to yow; *rest omit* to.

[1137.] Hl. Cp. Pt. schitte.

[1147.] Cm. Hl. croslet; E. Li. crosselet. *So in* 1153.

[1149.] [other (2)] E. Li. or; Pt. or ellis.

[1155.] Cm. Hl. that; E. *om.*; *rest* as. E. Cm. heer; *rest om.*

[1157.] E. Cm. cole; *rest* coles. E. that; Cm. that the; *rest* the.

[1159.] Li. Pt. Ln. fals; *rest* false.

[1160.] E. he took; *rest omit* he.

[1162.] E. lemaille; *but* Cm. lymayle, lymayl; *see* l. 853.

[1163.] E. lemaille; *but* Cm. lymayle, lymayl; *see* l. 853.

[1164.] E. lemaille; *but* Cm. lymayle, lymayl; *see* l. 853.

[1171.] E. terned; Cm. ternede; *rest* torned, turned. E. he coude.

[1175.] E. Cp. that he; *rest omit* that.

[1177.] E. this; *rest* his; *see* l. 1189.

[1179.] Cm. couchede; Cp. couchide; *rest* couched.

[1188.] Cm. Pt. whilis; Hl. Lichf. whiles; E. whils.

[1189.] So E.; Cm. with sory grace (*see* l. 665). *Most MSS. have* I shrewe his face, *and make* l. 1188 *end with* him wyped has.

[1190.] E. *has* aboue vp on; Cm. *the same, but omitting* it; Hl. abouen on; *the rest* vpon abouen.

[1191.] Cm. Hl. croslet; E. Cp. crosselet.

[1195.] E. myrie; Cm. Cp. merye; *rest* mery.

[1200.] E. abouen it; *rest* aboue.

[1203.] [the] E. that.

[1205.] Lichf. Cp. Pt.  
stondeth; Ln. Hl. stonde;  
Cm. stand; E. sit.

[1206.] ye] E. I.

[1214.] E. conceite.

[1226.] Cm. ne; *rest omit.*

[1227.] E. taak; *rest taketh.*

[1228.] E. eek; *rest omit.*

[1229.] Tyrwhitt *reads* Of  
thilke; *I propose*—As of  
this teyne.

[1236.] E. What that heer  
is; *rest* Look what ther is.

[1239.] E. *omits* ll. 1238,  
1239. *From* Lichf.

[1242.] E. Hl. *omit* that;  
*found in* Cm. Cp. Pt. Ln.

[1247.] Hl. subtilite; Cm.  
sotylete; E. subtiltee; *rest*  
sotilte, sotiltie; *see* l. 620.

[1249.] E. preest; *rest*  
chanoun.

[1260.] E. he; *rest om.*

[1265.] Hl. keep; E. kepe;  
Cm. keepe; *rest* hede.

[1268.] E. *omits* Was.

[1272.] Lichf. Ln. powder;  
Cm. poudere; E. Cp.  
poudre.

[1274.] E. terve; Cm. Pt.  
turne; *rest* torne.

[1277.] E. Cm. Iet (= jet);  
Hl. get; Ln. gett; Cp. Pt.  
gette.

[1283.] Cm. goode: E.  
good; *see* l. 1295. Cp. Pt.  
Ln. The preest supposede  
nothing but wel.

[1284.] Cp. Pt. Ln. But  
busyed him faste, and was  
wonder fayn.

[1286.] E. ne kan; *rest omit*  
ne.

[1292.] *So all.*

[1295.] Cm. Hl. goode; E.  
good; *rest omit.*

[1301.] E. Cm. alle; *rest*  
*omit; read al.*

[1308.] Cm. his; E. the; *rest*  
this.

[1316.] E. the water; *rest*  
water and.

[1318.] E. *omits* he.

[1319.] Cp. Hl. took; Cm.  
tok; E. tooke.

[1328.] E. a; *rest I.*

[1336.] E. it shal; Ln. schal  
he; *rest shal it.*

[1339.] E. seye; Cm. sey.

[1344.] E. man; *rest noon*  
(non).

[1353.] E. receite; Lichf.  
Cp. Hl. receyt.

[1371.] ]E. Cp. *knewen*;  
Cm. *knewyn*; *rest* *knewe*.  
Ln. *subtilite*; Cm. *subtilete*;  
E. *soutiltee*; *see* ll. 620,  
1247.

[1377.] ]E. *or*; *rest* *and*.

[1387.] ]E. Cm. *omit* *hir*.

[1390.] ]E. Hl. *vnnethe*; *rest*  
*vnnethes*.

[1397.] ]E. *as that doon*;  
Cm. *as don*; *rest* *as doon*  
*thise*.

[1404.] ]E. Cp. *heuye*; *rest*  
*hevy*.

[1407.] ]E. *omits* *O*.

[1414.] ]E. *blondreth*.

[1421.] ]E. Cm. *no thyng*  
*wynne*; Hl. *nought wynne*  
(*upon*); *rest* *nat wynne a*  
*myte*.

[1427.] ]Cm. *What that ?e*;  
*rest* *What that the (badly)*.

[1434.] ]E. *fader first was*;  
*rest* *omit* *first*.

[1441.] ]Cm. Cp. Hl. *heed*;  
*rest* *heede, hede*.

[1447.] ]E. Cm. *of the*  
*secretes*; Cp. Pt. *of secrees*;  
Hl. *of secretz*; Ln. *of*  
*secretees*.

[1455.] ]Lichf. Ln.  
*magnesia*; *rest* *magnasia*.

[1458.] ]Lichf. Ln.  
*magnesia*; *rest* *magnasia*.

[1461.] E. roote; *rest roche*,  
rooche, roches.

[1462.] Cm. that it; *rest*  
*omit* that.

[1467.] E. lief; Lichf. Cp.  
Pt. Hl. leef; Cm. lef.

[1472.] Hl. syn; Lichf. Cm.  
syn that; E. sith that; Cp. Pt.  
sithens that; *rest* sith that,  
sithens that.

[1475.] E. vs; *the rest* as.

[1477.] E. werken; Cm.  
werkyn; Hl. werke; *rest*  
worche.

[1479.] E. Cm. *omit* his.

Colophon.*So in* E. Cm.; Hl.  
*has*—Here endeth the  
chanouns yeman his tale.

[]Heading:*from* E. Cp.; Cm.  
*has*—Heryth the merye  
wordys of the Host to the  
cok of Lundene.

[1.] E. Hn. Woot; Cp. Hl.  
Wot; Cm. Wote; Pt. Ln.  
Wete; *Wite is better, as in*  
l. 82.

[7.] Cm. here; E. Hn. Hl. al;  
*rest omit*.

[9.] *So* Cp. Hl.; E. see how  
for; Hn. se how for; Cm. so  
how for.

[29.] E. *omits* as.

[31.] E. Hn. Hl. daswen;  
Cm. daswe; Cp. dasewen;  
Pt. dasen; Ln. dasowepe.

[36. ]Cp. Ln. vs swolwe;  
*rest* swolwe vs.

[40. ]E. thou; *rest* thee or  
the.

[46. ]Cm. Pt. Ln. wex; *rest*  
wax.

[49. ]E. Hn. vp hym; *rest*  
him vp.

[55. ]E. vnweedy.

[59. ]E. Cm. Ln. *put*  
lewedly *before* he.

[62. ]So E. Hn. Cp. Ln. Hl.;  
Cm. sneseth; Pt. galpeth.

[64. ]E. of; *rest* of the.

[76. ]*All the 7 MSS. retain*  
a: Hl. *omits* No.

[79. ]E. Which that; *rest*  
*omit* that.

[81. ]E. speke; *rest* spak.

[85. ]E. Pt. if that; *rest omit*  
that.

[89. ]So E.; Cm. nedith  
hym; Hn. Hl. neded it; *rest*  
needeth it.

[90. ]E. Hn. Cm. this; *rest*  
his.

[96. ]E. that; *rest* good.

[98. ]So E. Hn.; Cm. Cp.  
Ln. Hl To acord; Pt. To  
pees.

[99. ]Hl. thou; *rest omit*.  
Cp. Pt. Ln. Bachus; *rest*  
Bacus.



Colophon.*From Pt.*

[105.]E. world; *rest* erthe.

[108.]Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl. Of  
(*for* In).

[125.]Hn. Cp. bachelrye;  
E. Bachilrie.

[130.]E. hadde.

[132.]Hl. speken; *rest*  
speke.

[133.]E. *om.* is.

[138.]E. Hn. myrily.

[139.]E. hadde.

[143.]E. Cm. *om.* if; Hn.  
that. that] Hn. if.

[147.]E. Cm. in ydel; *rest*  
for naught.

[157.]E. Cm. that; Hn. for;  
*rest* by (be).

[162.]E. natureelly.

[163.]E. Taak.

[170.]Cp. Pt. Ln. wilde (*for*  
rude); Hl. wyd.

[173.]Cp. when; Ln. Hl.  
whan; *rest* if.

[174.]E. Hn. Cm. this; *rest*  
the.

[180.]E. he hath; Cp. hath  
sche; *rest* hath he.

[185.] Hl. *ins.* him, *and the rest* that, *before wol* (*badly*).

[195.] Hl. Cm. souneth; *rest* souneth.

[200.] Cp. Hl. Nought; E. Hn. Nat; *rest* Not; *see* l. 254.

[214.] E. Cp. dishoneste; Hn. deshoneste.

[215.] *For* a, Tyrwhitt *reads* any.

[217.] E. Cm. hir *estaat* (*stat*); *rest om.* hir.

[223.] *In* Hn., *titleles is glossed by sine titulo.*

[226.] Hl. told was; *rest* was told.

[235.] E. textueel, deel.

[236.] E. textueel, deel.

[240.] E. they (*for* that). E. heeng; Ln. honge; *rest* heng.

[241.] E. Biheeld.

[245.] E. Hn. myrily.

[251.] E. Cm. Hl. *om.* 2nd al.

[254.] E. Hn. Cm. *om.* as.

[255.] E. Hn. montance.

[261.] Cm. Hl. yen; Ln. ey?en; *rest* eyen.

[263.] E. Hn. Cm. And; *rest*  
Him.

[276.] Cm. Hl. lyst thow;  
Pt. Ln. liest thou; Cp. lyes  
thou.

[277.] Cm. gylteles; Cp. Hl.  
gulteles; E. Hn. giltlees;  
*rest* giltles.

[278.] Cm. troubele; *rest*  
trouble.

[280.] E. smyteth; *rest*  
smytest. Cm. gilteles; Cp.  
Hl. gulteles; E. giltles.

[300.] E. voys (*for* noyse).

[302.] ]is] Cp. Hl. was.

[308.] E. Cp. caas; Hn. Cm.  
Ln. cas; Pt. caus; Hl. cause.

[310.] E. Hn. Cm I; Hl. ye;  
*rest* that ye.

[315.] E. Hn. kepen; *rest*  
kepe. E Cm. weel.

[316.] E. textueel; Hl. tixted  
wel.

[318.] ]a] E. on; Hl. in

[319.] E. Hn. freend, feend.

[320.] E. Hn. freend, feend.

[327.] Hl. a; *rest om.*

[330.] E. Hn. Cm. tymes.

[356.] ]leef or] Cp. Pt. Ln.  
Hl. neuer so.

[360.]E. wheither.

Colophon.*So E. Hn.*

[1.]E. Hn. al; *rest om.*

[2.]E. Cm. was; *rest is.*

[3.]E. ne nas, Cm. ne was;  
Cp. Pt. Ln. was.

[5.]*The MSS. have Ten; but  
see the note.*

[8.]Hn. swich; E. swiche.

[10.]*Perhaps for the mones  
we should read Saturnes;  
see the note.*

[11.]*So all but Hl., which  
has In mena.*

[12.]*thropes*] Hl. townes.

[17.]E Fulfilled; Hn. Cp.  
Fulfil; *see l. 19.*

[23.]Cm. art; E. Hn. arte;  
Hl. artow; *rest art thou.*

[30.]*I supply him from ed.  
1550.*

[32.]E. Hn. Thymothee.

[33.]E. Hl. weyueth.

[40.]E. *omits* ful.

[41.]E. leefful; Hn. leueful;  
Pt. leefull; Cp. Ln. lefful.

[43.]E. geeste. rum] Hn.  
Cp. Ln. rom.

[46.]E. Hn. myrie.

[57.]E. textueel, weel.

[58.]E. textueel, weel.

[58.]E. *omits* the. Hl.  
sentens; *rest* sentence.

[59.]E. make a; *rest omit* a.

[62.]E. vs; *rest* it, *which is inferior*.

Colophon.*So* E. Hn. Ln.;  
Pt.—Thus endeth the  
prolog of the persons tale.

[]Heading.*From* E. (E.  
Heere; Persouns).

[75.]E. *om.* 2nd to.

[76.]E. and seith; *rest* that  
seith.

[78.]E. Hn. Ln. shal; Pt.  
shul.

[79.]Pt. espiritual; Ln.  
spirituele.

[80.]E. *om.* 2nd ful. E. to  
no man; *rest om.* no.

[82.]Ln. penance (*for 2nd  
and 3rd Penitence*).

[83.]E. speses; Hl. spieces;  
*rest* spices.

[84.]E. *om.* the *before* gilt.

[85.]Ln. Hl. peyneth.

[86.]Hl. holt.

[88.]E. *om.* to *bef.* biwayle  
*and* continue.

[90.]Hl. doon; E. *om.*; *rest*  
do.

[94.] HI. Ln. ende; E. Hn.  
Pt. *om.* E. taak (*glossed*  
tene); siker (*glossed*  
certum). Cm. sikerer. *After*  
wey, Cm. *adds*—& the  
more certeyn.

[96.] *All but* E. *om.* accion  
of Penitence.

[97.] HI. but if.

[98.] E. Hn. baptesme.

[99.] E. Hn. baptesme.

[100.] HI. in-to venial  
synne.

[102.] E. Hn. spesces  
(*glossed* species); *rest*  
spices.

[103.] E. Hn. As to; *rest* as  
is to.

[104.] E. Another thyng is;  
*rest om.* thyng. HI.  
streyneth.

[105.] E. Cm. *om.* comunly.

[106.] E. they shryue hem.

[107.] E. is bihouely; Cm.  
is behofly; *rest* bihoueth  
(behoueth). HI. stonidith.

[109.] HI. humblete.

[112.] HI. these thre wickid.

[117.] E. a grace (*for* of  
grace).

[122.] E. *om.* is to him.

[125.] E. loued god; *rest*  
loueth god.

[126.] E. *om.* in spirit. upon] E. in.

[131.] Cp. agult; Hl. agiltid.

[134.] E. looke he; *rest om.* he.

[135.] Hl. Ln. Ezechiel.

[137.] E. *perpetueel.*

[143.] E. And certes; *rest om.* And.

[144.] E. Hn. *wrongly ins.* god *after* that.

[147.] *All* seruitute.

[148.] E. *om.* vile and.

[150.] Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl. Austyn.

[152.] Hl. men (*for* they).

[154.] Cm. vileynly.

[155.] *So* Hl.; E. Hn. he seith likneth; Cp. he seith he likeneth; Cm. he seith & likkenyth; Pt. He likneth. E. soughe; *rest* sowe.

[156.] *So* Hl.; E. Hn. he seith likneth; Cp. he seith he likeneth; Cm. he seith & likkenyth; Pt. He likneth. E. soughe; *rest* sowe.

[157.] E. soughe; *om.* she.

[166.] E. *om.* 2nd no.

[168.] Cp. Pt. Ln. *repeat* (*after* god) wol nought ben corrupte and therefore saith Salamon.

[170.]E. Hn. stierne. moot]  
E. noot.

[171.]on] E. in. E. Ln.  
peyne; Cm. pit; *rest* pyne.

[175.]E. Hn. in; Hl. to; *rest*  
in-to.

[178.]Hl. oon; Cm. on; E.  
a; *rest* oo (o).

[182.]or] E. Cp. Ln. of. E.  
Hn. dirk.

[188.]E. Hn. woot; Cm.  
wote; Hl. witen; Cp. wite;  
Ln. weten.

[189.]Hl. displesen (*for*  
*despysen*).

[190.]E. *om.* *from* ther shal  
*to 2nd* greet.

[195.]E. with the bitter;  
*rest om.* the. Hl. teeth (*for*  
*deeth*).

[197.]E. as of alle; *rest om.*  
as. E. (*only*) smale shetes  
and the softe shertes.

[203.]E. *om.* hem *after*  
love.

[206.]E. *om.* 1st in helle.

[207.]Cp. Pt. Ln. Hl. *om.*  
after.

[208.]Cp. Hl. Ln.  
gruntynge; Cm. grochyng;  
Pt. gnaistyng.

[214.]Hl. shal be yiuue deth.

[218.]E. in the ordre.



[221. ]E. Cm. Basilie; *rest*  
Basile.

[225. ]E. Cm. and they (*1st*  
*time*).

[228. ]E. the (*for* these).

[232. ]E. Pt. Ln. that he  
hath wrought (*1st time*).

[233. ]Ln. mortified; Hl.  
amortised; *rest* mortefied.  
Cp. Pt. astonyed; Hl.  
astoneyed.

[235. ]Ln. Hl. mortified;  
*rest* mortefied.

[240. ]E. is for to seyn.

[242. ]E. quyke.

[247. ]Ln. mortified; Hn.  
Hl. amortised; *rest*  
mortefied.

[254. ]*All* noght (nat) so;  
ed. 1550, in so (*better*).

[255. ]Hl. for vs and for our  
synnes.

[261. ]E. Cm. *om.* so.

[269. ]E. Cm. his blood;  
*rest* the blood.

[270. ]Hl. face (*for* visage).

[273. ]Cm. (*and* ed. 1550)  
And therefore . . . manere;  
*rest om.*

[275. ]E. disconcordances.

[276. ]E. temporeel. bispet]  
E. dispeir (!).

[277.] E. *om.* first.

[281.] E. Ysaye that seith  
that he; *rest om.* that seith  
that.

[283.] E. Hn. gerdone; Cm.  
gerdounnyn.

[285.] E. *om.* is *after* that.

[291.] Hn. Cm. Hl.  
byheteth.

[303.] E. *om.* I woot  
certeinly.

[305.] E. continueel.

[308.] E. Ln. a man fro; *rest  
om.* a.

[311.] E. fieble.

[313.] Hl. Pt. Ln. thinges he  
prouith by.

[314.] Hl. herte (*for  
entente*).

[317.] E. wheither.

[320.] [him of his] E. Cm.  
thee of thy.

[321.] E. encreessen.

[323.] E. Hn.  
comaundementz; *rest  
comaundement.*

[324.] E. wheither.

[325.] Pt. þe astate; Ln. þe  
state; Cm. stat.

[327.] [ne] E. and.

[328.]E. *om. ye before*  
shul.

[330.]E. Cm. a manere;  
*rest* in manere.

[335.]E. bynyneth; Hn. Pt.  
Hl. bynymeth.

[338.]E. norrissyng.

[340.]E. fieble; *rest* feble.

[345.]E. Ethiopeen; *rest* -  
pen.

[350.]E. encresseth.

[352.]E. wheither.

[357.]E. Actueel.

[358.]E [Editor: illegible  
word] oghte.

[361.]sinnes] E. sinne.

[363.]E. Hn. Cm. in the  
botme.

[367.]E. wexeth (*for*  
weyeth).

[369.]E. as he yeueth of his  
loue.

[371.]E. Cp. Pt. Ln. hem  
(*for* him).

[374.]E. hym oghte (*for*  
othere folk).

[376.]E. Hn. blandise.

[377.]Hl. body (*for* mete).  
E. Cm. *om. it.*

[378.]Hl. talke of (*for* tale).

[379.] Hn. Hl. acounte.

[382.] E. restreyne (*for* refreyne); *see* 385.

[386.] E. *om.* by *before* othere. Heading. *So in E.*; *but E. adds De Superbia, which should come at the head of § 24, as in Hn.*

[387.] Hl. springers; Hn. sprynge; E. Pt. Ln. spryngen.

[390.] E. Hn. *om.* 2nd the.

[391.] Pt. Hl. Imprudence; E. Hn. Inpudence. E. Hn. Pt. Inpatience; *rest imperfect here.*

[395.] E. *om.* 2nd his.

[401.] Ln. Hl. Impacient; *rest Inpatient (or imperfect).* Pt. Hl. vices.

[403.] E. and this is. E. Hn. surquidie.

[404.] E. hise folies.

[405.] E. temporeel.

[410.] *So E. Hn. Hl.*; *perhaps read* and that other spece of pryde is; Pt. Ln. and ther-to other spices of pride bene.

[411.] Pt. Ln. Hl. spices. Hn. leuesel; Hl. leuesselle; Pt. leeuesell; Ln. leuesal.

[414.] Pt. disgisenesse; Ln. Hl. disgisinesse. or] E. and.

[416.] E. *om.* that is.

[417.] Hn. Pt.  
enbrawdyng. E. *om.* or  
*bef.* barringe. E. owndyng.

[418.] E. powsonyng; Hn.  
pownsonyng; Ln.  
pounseinge; Hl. pounsyng.  
Pt chisels; E. Hn. chisel;  
*rest* chiseles (cheseles).

[419.] E. men; wommen.

[421.] E. powsoned; Hn.  
pownsonyd; Pt. pounsoned;  
Ln. Hl. pounsed.

[422.] E. haynselyns; Hn.  
hanselyns; Ln. hanslynes;  
Pt. hanselynes; Hl. anslets;  
Harl. 1758, haunseleynys.

[425.] *All but* E. *om.* the  
*bef.* degysinge. E. flayne.

[429.] E. honestitee (*twice*);  
Hn. honestetee; *rest*  
honeste; *so in* 431, 436.

[430.] E. *om.* as.

[432.] Pt. anornement; Hl.  
here ornament.

[440.] E. sustenyng; Hn.  
sustenen; Cm. Hl. susteyne.

[442.] E. vp; Hn. vp on; Hl.  
vpon; Pt. Ln. on. E. al doun  
(*twice*); Hn. adown (*twice*);  
Cm. al doun (*once*).

[443.] *All MSS.* transpose  
Laban and Pharao. E.  
seruauntz.

[448.] Pt. Ln. Hl. espices.

[449.] E. *om.* 1st sodeinly.

[452.] E. gentries; Hl. Pt. gentrie; *rest* genterye; *see* 461.

[453.] E. natureel.

[454.] E. Ln. richesse.

[455.] E. spiritueel.

[460.] *So in all.*

[467.] E. Cm. *om.* as.

[469.] E. man; *rest* a man.

[470.] E. yifte; *rest* yiftes. N.B. Section 470 *follows* 474 *in* Hn. Pt.; *see note.*

[482.] E. *om.* good.

[485.] E. *om.* foule. E. *om.* 1st and 3rd goost.

[486.] Cm. hardynesse (*twice*).

[487.] E. speche (*for* spece); Hn. spece; *rest* spice. E. malice (*and so* Selden MS., *rightly*); *rest* enuye.

[497.] parfey] E. pardee.

[500.] E. *om.* or *after* catel.

[502.] E. Hn. enoynte; Cm. Hl. anoynted; Pt. ennoynted.

[506.] E. seruauntz. Cm. lefful; Pt. Hl. leeful.

[507.] E. comaundementz.

[511.] Cm. scornynge as whanne a man sekyth

occasioun to anoyen his;  
*rest* scornynge of his  
(*merely*).

[515. ]this] E. the love] E.  
louynge.

[516. ]E. espritueel.

[517. ]E. *om.* bothe.

[520. ]E. entissyng.

[521. ]E. Hn. Vnderstood.

[524. ]wronges] E. thinges.

[525. ]E. *om* the.

[529. ]Ln. Hl. parforme; Pt.  
perfourme.

[532. ]E. paas; Hl. *part*;  
*rest* pas.

[533. ]Hn. Pt. Ln. *om.* a *bef.*  
matere.

[547. ]E. spiritueel.

[549. ]E. natureelly.

[551. ]E. fire.

[553. ]E. in (*for* al).

[554. ]E. encresseth.

[555. ]E. toonges.

[558. ]Hl. *om.* swete.

[560. ]E. espritueel.

[562. ]E. *om.* that he hath  
loved.

[564. ]E. spiritueel.

[565.]E. spiritueel.

[565.]Pt. Hl. an homicide.

[566.]E. the (*for 2nd* they).

[568.]E. crueel. Hl. Ln.  
schipe. E. vsures.

[570.]Hl. *om.* him *before*  
conseil.

[572.]Hl. him (*for* in his).

[576.]E. Cm. venenouse;  
Hl. venenous. Hl. place.

[577.]-self] E. child.

is it] E. it is.

[582.]E. releessed.

[585.]E. compleccioun.

[588.]Christchurch MS.  
*Nolite—omnino; and in*  
*margin of E.; rest om.*

[589.]Ln. throne.

[592.]E. (*in margin*)  
*Iurabis—iusticia; Chr. (in*  
*text); rest om.*

[593.]Hl. wonder (*for*  
wounde!).

[595.]E. and for  
declaracioun; Chr. for  
declaracioun; Cm. Pt. Ln.  
Hl. for declarynge.

[597.]Cm. c<sup>o</sup>; Hl. ca<sup>o</sup> (i. e.  
*capitulo); rest om.*

[599.]E. horribly.

[601.]E. it (*for* this).



[603.] E. Nigromanens.

[604.] E. damnably.

[605.] Cm. Pt. dyuynalis.  
Hl. crakking; Ln.  
crakkeynge; E. Cm. Cp. Pt.  
crakyng.

[607.] E. Pt. *om.* may.

[609.] E. and (*for* or); Pt.  
either.

[610.] Selden, Pt. lesinge is;  
*rest om.* is. *All but* Selden,  
Pt. Ln. *om.* 2nd Another  
lesinge.

[615.] E. the (*for* they).

[616.] *All 7 MSS.* *om.* god .  
. . bitraysen. E. hise.

[618.] E. flarie (*for*  
flaterye).

[623.] E. in disclaundre;  
*rest* and desclaundered.

[624.] E. taak.

[625.] Ln. mayme; Cm. Pt.  
maym.

[626.] E. *om.* thou holour.

[628.] or] E. and.

[629.] E. espritueel. Hn.  
deslaue; Cm. Ln. Hl.  
dislaue; Pt. disselaue.

[630.] Cm. Selden, behoue;  
*rest* byhoueth (!).

[632.] E. manye.

[634.] E. *om.* as . . . god. E.  
*Colonienses*; Cm.  
*Coloniens*; Hn. P.:  
*Colonisenses*; Ln.  
*Clonicenses*; Hl.  
*Colocenses*.

[639.] E. *om.* 2nd for.

[640.] *All* lyuyng (levyng,  
leueyng); *after which*  
Selden (*alone*) *adds* man.  
Selden, Ln. Hl. *this*; *rest*  
*his*.

[641.] E. Hn. *om.* ne of folk

[643.] E. *been*; Hl. *ben*  
(*before* *aboute*); *rest* *is*.

[644.] E. *speeke* (*1st time*);  
Hn. Hl. *speke*; Cm. *spoke*;  
Pt. *speken*; Ln. *spake*.

[647.] E. *natureel*.

[651.] Hl. Pt. Ln. *Suche*  
*iapes*.

[652.] E. *adds* *woordes*  
(*after* *holy*)

[654.] Cm. (*only*) *that* *Ihon*  
*de Bonania clepith*  
*debonayretee*.

[659.] E. Ln. *it is a*; *rest* *is*  
*a*.

[668.] E. *baar*. Cm. Ln.  
*cros*.

[669.] Hl. Pt. Ln. *guerdoun*;  
E Cm. *gerdoun*; Hn.  
*gerdon*. E. *perdurale*.

[670.] Hn. *scourge*; E.  
*scoure* *with*; *rest* *scoure*(!).

[671.] Cm. Hl. to do; E. do.  
Pt. Ln. what wil ye do.

[677.] Selden, Pt. Ln.  
sinnes; *rest synne*. E. *om.* a  
*after* herte of. E. wrawful;  
Pt. wrowe; *rest wrawe*.

[678.] E. Hl. *om.* a. E.  
troubled.

[683.] E. *om.* the.

[685.] sinne] E. swyn. E.  
temporeel (*for temporel*).

[687.] E. *om.* as . . . Iohan.

[688.] E. delicaat.

[691.] E. anye.

[696.] E. sheweth.

[698.] E. *om.* that seith . . .  
recreant Hl. recreaunt (*for*  
creant).

[700.] E. a man nat; Pt. a  
man not. Hl. as vp-on; *rest*  
than vp-on. Hl. Selden,  
nynety and nyne; *rest* 90  
and 19 (!).

[702.] *All but* Seld. Ln. *om.*  
capitulo. Seld. Pt. Ln. on  
me.

[706.] E. Seld. sloggy; Ln.  
slogge.

[707.] E. *om.* the morwe.

[711.] E. wheither.

[715.] Hl. tryfles; Seld.  
triflis.

[718. ]Cm. Pt. Ln. Hl. so  
(*for to*). E. Cm. laterede;  
Hl. Seld. latrede; Pt. lattred;  
Ln. latred.

[722. ]E. spiritueel;  
temporeel. E. Pt. of a man.

[723. ]E. *om.* so. blent] Ln.  
blonte; Hl. blunt.

[724. ]E. slough (*for slow*).

[725. ]Cm. swich as; Hl.  
such as; E. which as.

[727. ]E. Cm. of man; Seld.  
of men; *rest* of a man.

[728. ]E. anoyouse; Cm.  
noyouse; *rest* noyous.

[729. ]E. Cm. vigerous.

[730. ]E. fieble. Hl.  
conuenables.

[731. ]E. Magnificence (*by  
error; with Of  
Magnanimitee in the  
margin*).

[732. ]E. wesely (*for  
wysely*).

[736. ]E. *om.* that he hath  
bigonne. E. gerdoun.

[737. ]E. chiere.

[739. ]Pt. *Capitulo; rest  
om.*

[743. ]E. vnderstood.

[748. ]E. Hl. *om.* in *after* is;  
Pt. hath more hope in his  
thraldome; Ln. is thral. *No  
MS. has the precise*

*reading given; but it is  
clear that in has been  
dropped.*

[752.]E. Amercimentz  
(twice); whice (*sic*).

[753.]E. temporeel.

[757.]E. natureel; *om.* for.

[758.]E. temporeel.

[765.]E. vnderstood;  
tirauntz.

[767.]to (1)] E. in.

[771.]E. lough; *om.* and in  
his degree.

[774.]E. subgetz.

[777.]Ed. 1550, two; *MSS.*  
manye.

[781.]E. Espiritueel  
(twice).

[782.]E. irreguleer.

[783.]E. temporeel.

[784.]E. vnderstood;  
beyeth; espritueel.

[791.]E. sacramentz.

[793.]Hl. raueynes; Pt.  
ravanys; Cm. rauynesse;  
Ln. rauynges.

[794.]E. Cm. *om.* whyles .  
. . . craft.

[798.]E. heeste; *om.* that;  
corporeel. Hl. Pt. Ln. and;  
*rest* or. E. espritueel.

[799.]Hl. Corporel; *rest om.*

[801.]E. Espiritueel. Title. Hl. Remedium (*for Releuacio*).

[806.]Cm. Ln. sterid.

[811.]E. temporeel.

[813.]E. oughten.

[816.]Seld. droupy (*for drovy*).

[820.]Pt. Ln. thei; *rest om.* Hl. Pt. Ln. saueren; *rest deuouren.*

[821.]E. hoord.

[823.]Cm. woned.

[827.]Cm. for?etefulnesse.

[828.]E. delicaat.

[835.]E. delicaat.

[838.]Cm. stonys; Ln. stones; Hl. stoones (*for staues*).

[839.]Pt. Ln. diluve; Hl. diluue (*for diluge*). E. thonder-leyt; Hl. -layt; *rest -light.*

[841.]Pt. in fuyre for lechery in bremstone; Hl. In fuyr for the leccherie in brimston; Ln. for licherye in brimstone (*om. in fyr*); E. Cm. *omit.*

[848.]Pt. Ln. drieth.

[853.]Hl. as a basiliskoc.

[857.] Hl. dotard foolles  
holours. Cm. and smatere  
hem thow they may nat  
doon.

[858.] Tyrwhitt *has* bushes;  
E. Seld. Ln. beauteis; Cm.  
beauteis; Hl. beautes; Pt.  
bewtees.

[869.] After *fructus*, Hl.  
*adds secundum Ieronimum  
contra Iouinianum.*

[881.] Hl. Pt. horribly; E.  
Cm. horrible.

[882.] E. Actour (*error for  
Auctour*).

[884.] E. Hl. *om.* ther-of. E.  
ocupien.

[887.] E. Vnderstoond. E.  
Pt. Ln. Hl. Seld. gladly;  
Cm. *om.* E. comandementz.

[891.] Pt. Hl. or deken; Ln.  
& deken; Cm. dekene; E  
*om.*

[894.] E. meignee; Ln. Hl.  
meyne. E. Cm. *om.* to preye  
. . . to the peple; *the clause  
occurs in Pt. Ln. Selden,  
and partly in Hl.*

[897.] Seld. Pt. Ln. Hl.  
Belye (*for Helye*); Cm.  
Belyal.

[900.] Cm. helde; *rest  
holde.*

[903.] E. cristiene; Hl.  
cristian; Cm. cristene; *rest  
cristen.*

[908. ]Pt. Ln. Parentela; Hl. parenteal.

[909. ]E. espritueel.

[911. ]Pt. myxen; Cm. myxene; E. Mixne; Seld. Ln. mexen; Hl. dongehul.

[912. ]E. Polucioun.

E. Cm. iij; *rest* iiii.

[913. ]Pt. feblesse; E. fieblesse; Cm. febillesse; Ln. Hl. febleness.

[914. ]Cm. muste (*for* moste). E. greously (!).

[917. ]E. boond.

[921. ]E. Cm. *om.* This is. E. natureel.

[923. ]E. no (*for* mo) *before* men.

[927. ]Hl. disaray; Pt. Ln. disaraye.

[931. ]E. Cm. that is wyf; Hl. that is a wif.

[935. ]Cm. Pt. be; Hl. to ben; Ln. bue; E. *om.*

[941. ]E. *om.* merite of chastitee.

[942. ]E. *om.* of.

[947. ]E. *om.* moste be . . . . mesurable.

[954. ]E. leyt; Pt. Ln. leyte; Cm. lyght.



[960.]Pt. Hl. the  
circumstances that; Ln. the  
circumstance that (*for* that  
that).

[961.]E. seculer.

[964.]E. dedicaat.

[965.]E. Cm. *om.* til . . .  
bishop

[967.]wil] E. shal.

[968.]dampnacioun] E.  
Cm. temptacioun.

[970.]E. fieble.

[973.]Pt. Ln. Hl. whiche;  
*rest om.*

[983.]*All* Ezekiel; *read*  
Ezekias (Isaiah xxxviii. 15).

[985.]E. ther-of; *rest* her-  
of.

[986.]E. Ln. puplican.

[993.]E. teeris.

[1000.]Pt. Ln. Seld. is in;  
*rest om.*

[1005.]E. stidefast; Cm.  
Hl. stedefast.

[1008.]E. curaat.

[1009.]E. curaat.

[1011.]E. curaat.

[1021.]Cm. Pt. wexe; E.  
Hl. woxe.

[1023.]E. *om.* 2nd thee.

[1028.] E. toolde.

[1031.] Hl. keep; Pt. Ln.  
kepe; E. Cm. *om.*

[1033.] E. temporeel.

[1039.] E. espritueel;  
temporele.

[1047.] vyces (3) E.  
vertues; Cm. vertu.

[1051.] E. espritueel.

[1052.] or by] E. and by.

[1053.] nat . . . bitter] E.  
Cm. thee nat.

sikernesse] Pt. Ln. Hl.  
swetnesse.

[1058.] weneth] E. demeth.

[1059.] E. crueel; peynes.

[1061.] ashamed (1)] E.  
shamed.

[1065.] E. *om.* the.

[1069.] E. perpetueel  
(*twice*).

[1078.] E. fieble.

[1080.] E. espritueel; *om.*  
deeth and.

[1086.] E. Pt. xxv; Ln. xv;  
Ill. 29; *read* nynetene.

[N.B.—Hl. = Harleian MS  
no 7334 (*taken as the  
foundation of the text*);  
Harl. = Harleian MS. no.  
1758; Cp. = MS. Corp. Chr.  
Coll. Oxford; Ln. =

Lansdowne MS. no. 851; Pt = Petworth MS.; Rl. = MS. Royal 18 c. ii; Sl. = MS. Sloane, no. 1685. *Note that Cp. and Ln. are next in value to Hl., and often agree with it as against the rest.*

[1.] Cp. lesteneth; Sl Ln. listeneth; Hl. lestneth. Cp. herkeneth; Rl Sl. herkenyth; Hl. herkneth.

[2.] Cp. schulle; Ln. schullen; Hl. schul. Hl. a talkyng; *rest om.*

[3.] Hl. right; *rest om.*; *read* righte.

[4.] Hl. ynough; *rest om.*

[5.] Cp hadde; Rl. Sl. Pt Ln. had; Hl. *om.*

[14.] Cp. Rl. hadde; Hl. had (*and in l. 16*).

[15.] Cp. Ln. wolde; Hl. wold. Hl. amonges; *rest* among; *see l. 36*.

[16.] Hl. might.

[17.] Cp. Sl. Rl. Pt Ln. sente; Hl. sent. *So in l. 19, where the MSS. wrongly have sent.*

[21.] Hl. ther; *rest that.*

[27.] Hl. Cp. lengere; Ln. longer; *rest* lenger.

[29.] Sl. Cp. Ln. herde; Hl. herd.

[30.] Harl. Pt. ne; *rest om.*

[36.] Hl. thre.

[37.] Hl. And sires; *rest om.*  
sires

[44.] Hl. schuld; Cp.  
scholde.

[46.] Pt. londe; Ln. lande;  
*rest lond.*

[48.] Hl. might; *read*  
mighte.

[50.] Hl. come a?ein; *rest*  
*omit a?ein, and read*  
comen, camen, commen.

[51.] Hl. anon right; *rest*  
anon, anoon.

[56.] Hl. Pt *om.* right.

[59.] Hl. fyf; *rest fyue; see*  
*l. 57.*

[60.] *Read* righte; MSS.  
right.

[61.] Ln. and of ledes.

[64.] Cp. bequeste.

[66.] Hl. bed; Cp bedde; *see*  
*l. 24.*

[69.] Hl. And anon; *rest*  
*om.* And.

[71.] Hl. as his (*for* and  
his).

[73.] Hl. fed; *rest fedde.*

[76.] Cp. aboughte; Ln.  
abouhte; *rest* abought,  
abowght.

[79. ]R1. Sl. old, bold; *rest*  
olde, bolde.

[80. ]R1. Sl. old, bold; *rest*  
olde, bolde.

[83. ]Ln. pouhte; *rest om.*  
*the final e; see l 88.*

[85. ]Hl. byreeued; *rest om.*  
by-.

[103. ]R1. Sl. Pt. Harl. *om.*  
for.

[109. ]Hl durst; Cp. durste;  
Ln. dorste.

[112. ]Cp. lere; Hl. Ln.  
leren, *rest* lerne.

[119. ]Hl a staf had; *rest*  
hadde (had) a staf.

[120. ]Hl. anon; *rest om.*

[121. ]Hl. seyh.

[123. ]Hl of foot; *rest om.*

[124. ]Hl. Ln. on; *rest* sone  
on.

[128. ]Hl. the; *rest* his.

[129. ]Hl. ey?e, pley?e; *rest*  
eye, pleye.

[130. ]Hl. ey?e, pley?e; *rest*  
eye, pleye.

[131. ]Hl. how; *rest om.*

[133. ]MSS. *omit final e in*  
*soughte.*

[137. ]Hl. Rycher.

[138. ]Hl. Whil.

[140 &c.] Hl. the.

[146 &c.] Hl. the.

[150 &c.] Hl. the.

[143.] Cp. hadde. I had, Hl.  
had I hadde.

[144.] Hl. he; *rest* thei.

[148.] Harl Ln. if; Pt. wher;  
*rest* or.

[150.] Hl Cp. Ln. Of; Harl.  
Of oo; Rl. Of a; Sl. Of o;  
Pt. Of oon.

[151.] Ln. fel, pestel; *rest*  
felle, pestelle.

[152.] Ln. fel, pestel; *rest*  
felle, pestelle.

[154.] Hl. I; *rest* I it.

[157.] Hl. whil.

[161.] Hl. Cp. laye; Rl. leie;  
Sl leye; Pt Ln. ley

[164.] Cp. þoughte; *rest*  
*om. final e.* Hl eek, *rest om.*  
Hl. Cp. Ln. of; *rest* on

[165.] *For* knight, Hl.  
*wrongly has* king. MSS  
*omit e in* thoughte.

[166.] Pt Harl. wente, *rest*  
went. Hl. kist; *rest* kissed;  
*see l.* 168

[169.] Rl. lysteneth; Cp.  
lesteneth; Pt listeneth; Hl.  
lestneth

[171.]Hl. wrastlyng; Cp. wrasteling; Rl. wrastelynge; Pt. wrastelinge.

[172.]Hl. sette (*wrongly*); *see l* 184.

[173.]Hl. good wil; Ln. wil; *rest* wille.

[177.]Hl. Pt. spore; *rest* spores.

[178.]Hl. byside; *so in* 183

[179.]Hl. seyde; *rest have final e.*

[180.]Hl. the the.

[181.]*For* coursers, Hl. *wrongly has* course.

[183.]Pt. wrasteling; Ln. warsteling; *rest* wrastlyng, wrastlynge.

[184.]Hl. vp; *rest om.*

[189.]Hl. set; Ln. sete; *rest* sette. Hl. *om.* 1st the.

[191.]Hl. ride; *rest* riden, reden. Hl Ln. at the; Cp Pt. atte; *rest* at. *All gate (wrongly); and thate (for that) in next line.*

[192.]Cp. Ln. false; *rest* fals.

[194.]Pt. wrestelinge; *rest* wrastlyng, wrastlinge, wrestlinge.

[197.]Hl. syng, wryng.

[198.]Hl. syng, wryng.

[206.] Cp. handelen; Hl. handil.

[211.] Hl. anon; *rest om.*

[213.] Hl. Cp. Ln. the place; *rest om.* the. Hl. the.

[217.] Hl. Pt. durst; *rest* durste, dorste.

[218.] *All but* Hl. *ins. a bef.* champioun.

[219.] Hl. raply and; *rest* rapely (*omitting* and).

[222.] Rl. Harl. Sl. here.

[224.] Hl. whil, Whiles.

[225.] Hl. whil, Whiles.

[227.] Hl. al; *rest om.*

[232.] Hl. fynd; *rest* fynde, finde.

[234.] Hl. the.

[236.] Hl. gon to; Cp Ln. gonne; *rest* gon.

[242.] Hl. tuo.

[243.] Hl. Ln. smartly; Rl. Pt. smertely; *see l.* 187.

[245.] *All* kast or kest. *All* left, lift; *read* lefte. Hl. thre

[247.] Hl. smertly; *see l.* 243.

[249.] Hl. seyde; *rest* have *final e.*

[250.] Hl. Ln. comes; *rest* cometh; *read it as* comth.



[260.] Hl. seyde; *rest have final e.*

[253.] Hl. seyde; *rest have final e.*

[254.] Hl. the.

[255.] Hl. welle.

[256.] Hl a lither; Cp. oure alther; *rest alther. For fel, all have felle or felle.*

[258.] Hl. Cp. Ln. my; *rest in my. Rl Pt. Ln. handeled; Hl. Sl. Cp. handled.*

[260.] Hl. eny; *rest om.*

Hl. seyde; *rest have final e.*

[267.] [ther were that] Pt that; *rest om.*

[273.] Hl. brouk; Cp. Ln. brouke; Pt. broke.

[274.] Hl beyeth; *rest byeth, bieth.*

[279.] Pt. wrasteling; Ln. warsteling; Rl. wrastlinge; *rest wrastlyng.*

[282.] Cp. beste; Hl. Ln. best; *rest om. ll. 281, 282.*

[287.] Hl. ful; *rest om.*

[288.] Rl. Harl. sterte; *rest stert.*

[289.] Hl. lestneth; Pt. l.stnep; *rest lesteneth, listenythe, listeneth, lysteneyth. Pt. Ln. ?onge; rest yong, ?ong.*

[293.] *All yate, gate, and in  
the next line ther-ate.*

[295.] HI. berd.

[300.] and] HI. Cp. he.

[304.] HI. Cp. gert; *rest*  
girt.

[306.] HI. Cp. fadmen; Pt.  
fadme; RI. Sl. fadame; Ln.  
fabem; Harl fadome.

[312.] HI. maner men; *rest*  
*om.* HI has 2nd in, *rest om.*  
HI. RI Pt. wold, Cp. Ln.  
wolde.

[317.] HI. that; *rest om*

[318.] HI. while. HI  
thrynne; Cp thrinne, Sl. Pt  
þer-inne; Ln þere-inne.

[323.] HI. nyggoun; RI. Sl.  
nygon; Pt. nigon; Cp. Ln.  
negon.

[328.] HI. myrth and; *rest*  
*om.* HI that was; *rest om.*  
that (*as being understood*).

[330.] HI Cp durst; *rest*  
dorst.

[334.] HI. y-dronke; *rest*  
*omit y-* Pt. Ln brouke; RI  
browke; HI. brouk

[335.] HI. he, *rest om.*

[337.] HI wold HI lenger  
abide; *rest* dwelled lenger.

[339.] Pt feest, HI. fest.  
MSS. brought, broght.

[340.]Hl. gestys; *see l 336.*  
Hl. took, Ln. had take; Cp.  
toke; Sl to (*sic*); *rest* toke

[341.]Hl. lestneth; Pt.  
listen; *rest* lesteneth,  
listenyth.

[343.]Hl. herkneth; *rest*  
Herkeneth, Herkenyth,  
Harkeneth.

[346.]MSS. thought.

[350.]Hl. I-take; *rest* taken.  
Cp Ln. harde; *rest* hard.

[351.]Cp Rl Ln. false; *rest*  
fals. Hl. selleer; Cp. sellere;  
Ln. selere; *rest* solere  
(*rightly*; *cf. toret in l. 329*).

[360.]Pt. dethes; *rest* deth;  
*see l. 24.*

[363.]Rl. Sl. Cp. Ln. false;  
*rest* fals.

[365.]Hl. Cp. Ln. geten  
heir (heer, here); *rest* heir  
(heire, here) geten.

[367.]Hl. sayd; *rest have*  
*final e.*

[376.]Hl. forsworn; *but see*  
*l. 380.*

[381.]Hl. might; *read*  
mighte; *rest vary.*

[382.]Sl. Ln. hadde; Cp.  
hadden; *rest* had, hadd.

[383.]Cp. Ln. false; *rest*  
fals.

[384.]Cp. sente; Sl. sende;  
*rest* sent.

[386.]Hl. Rl. told; Ln.  
tolden; *rest* tolde.

[388.]Hl. ther; *rest om.* Cp.  
lokeden; *rest* loked; *read*  
lokede.

[394.]Hl. the; *rest om.*

[400.]*All* the (*for* thee).

[405.]*All* the (*for* thee).

[407.]Hl brouk; Cp. Pt. Ln.  
brouke.

[414.]Hl. Sl. hold; *rest*  
holde, halde. *After*  
w[Editor: illegible letter]  
Cp. *ins.* lose, *and* Harl.  
helpe.

[417.]Hl. hand; Cp.  
handes; *rest* hondes.

[424.]Hl. Cp. rapely and;  
*rest om* and.

[430.]Hl. Wher; Ln.  
Where; Cp. For; *rest* Or.

[432.]*All* the (*for* thee).

[434.]Ln. sonondaye; Hl.  
*and rest* sonday; *read*  
sonnenday *or* soneday.

[437.]Pt. Ln. Harl. bound  
fast; *rest* hond-fast  
(*rightly*).

[438.]*All but* Hl. *ins* that  
*bef.* away.

[439.]Hl. waisschen; *rest*  
wasschen, wasshen.

[443.]Hl. vnto; *rest* to.

[450.] Hl. I; *rest* we.

[453.] Ln. twynke; Hl. Cp. twynk; *rest* wynke, winke, wynk.

[456.] Hl. ?euyng; Cp. yeuyng; *rest* yeuen, ?euen, or ?iuen.

[457.] Hl. thanne; *rest om.*

[460.] Hl. lest; Cp. leste.

[461.] *This is Zupitza's emendation; MSS. as they atte halle dore comen in.*

[463.] Cp. Ln. false; *rest* fals.

[464.] Hl. wer; *rest* were.

[467.] [or] Hl. other.

[471.] Ln false; *rest* fals.

[478.] *All but* Hl. *ins* to *bef.* bringe.

[486.] Hl. seyde; Pt. Ln Harl seiden. Hl were; Cp. Ln. weren.

[488.] *All but* Hl. *ins.* sorwe and *bef.* scathe.

[489.] Hl brouk; *rest* brouke, browke, broke.

[495.] MSS thought, brought; *against grammar.*

[496.] MSS thought, brought; *against grammar.*

[498.] Ln keste; *rest* cast.

[504.] Ln. fellen; *rest* felle,  
fell.

[505.] Hl. lewede; Pt. Ln.  
lewe; *rest* lewed, lewid.

[507.] Hl. besyde; Rl. by-  
siden; Sl. bisiden; Cp.  
besyden.

[512.] Pt. Ln. ne; *rest om.*  
Hl. him; *rest* hem (*twice*).  
Sl. Cp. quitte; Hl. quyt.

[516.] Hl. schan; *rest* shal,  
schal

[520.] Hl. Cp. Ln. *om.* that.

[531.] Hl. *om.* we.

[532.] Hl. Pt. Ln. *omit*  
*second* with.

[536.] Cp. gerte, *rest* gert,  
girt, gerd.

[540.] Hl. colyn; Cp. coole;  
Ln. coly; *rest* colen.

[543.] Rl. Sl. Pt. Harl.  
*insert* her (here) *before*  
awe; Hl. Cp. Ln. *omit*.

[545.] Hl. a; *rest om.*

[550.] *I supply* was; *the two*  
Cambridge MSS. *have*  
come; *which the rest omit*;  
*see* ll. 240, 785.

[551.] Hl. lestneth; Cp.  
lesteneth. Hl. goode.

[555.] Rl. Sl. Pt. Harl. by  
her (here) fay; Cp. be way;  
Hl. Ln. away.

[563.] Hl. y-steke; *rest om.*

[573. ]Cp. Ln. Harl. wente;  
*rest* went.

[576. ]Cp. schulle; Hl.  
schul. Hl. na (*for* nat); *rest*  
not, nouht.

[588. ]Hl. den; Pt. fenne;  
*rest* fen.

[589. ]Cp. Ln. wente; *rest*  
went.

[594. ]Hl. fle; *rest* to fle  
(flee).

[602. ]Hl. comth; *rest*  
cometh.

[603. ]So Hl; *rest* sayde to

[606. ]Hl vs; *rest om.*

[608. ]Hl. tuo; *rest om.*

[609. ]Hl. coursers; *but see*  
l. 617

[611. ]Hl. adoun; *rest* doun.

[614. ]Hl. sent; Cp. Sl.  
sente.

[615. ]Cp. Ln. false; *rest*  
fals.

[618. ]Cp. likede; Ln.  
loked; *rest* liked.

[621. ]Hl. for; *rest om.*

[625. ]Hl. And; *rest om.*

[627. ]Hl. loked.

Hl. the; *rest om.*

[640.] Cp. Pt Harl. sende;  
*rest* send. Hl. non but; *rest*  
*om.*

[642.] Hl. loked.

[643.] Hl. ?e; *rest om.*

[652.] Hl Cp. They; Rl.  
Thei; Sl Ln. Though.

[654.] Hl alle; *rest om.*

[655.] Hl sayd; *rest add e.*  
Hl vnto; *rest to*

[663.] Hl. heende; Cp.  
kynde; *rest hende.*

[664.] Hl. an (*for 1st and*).

[665.] Hl. seyde, Ln seid;  
*rest add e*

[666.] Hl. aunte; *rest*  
aaventure me Hl. Cp. Ln. to  
the dore; *rest om.*

[673.] Hl for; *rest om.*

[674.] Hl. with; *rest om.*

[679.] Hl. ther; *rest om.* Hl.  
adoun; *rest down.*

[681.] Hl. sete and; *rest om.*

[682.] Hl seyde; *rest add e.*  
Hl. Pt Ln. that oon . . .  
other; *rest on to an other.*

[688.] Hl. tho, *rest om*

[689.] Hl. I-made; Cp. Sl  
maad; *rest made.*

[690.] Hl. tho, *rest om*



[694.] Cp. Maad; *rest* Made  
(*badly*). Cp. Ln here; *rest*  
her

[697.] Cp. Ln. false; *rest*  
fals.

[699.] Rl Sl. glad, *rest*  
glade, gladde

[700.] Sl. Cp maad, *rest*  
made, maade

[703.] Hl. how; *rest om.*

[704.] So Hl Cp. Ln.; *rest*  
and alle his.

[712.] Hl. *om 2nd I.*

[713.] Hl. hem; *rest om.*  
Harl boþe housbonde; *rest*  
myn housbondes.

[715.] Hl. came; *see l 717.*

[718.] Rl Sl. Cp. putte; *rest*  
put.

[719.] Hl. alle; *rest om*

[722.] Hl me; *rest do me.*

[723.] Cp. thoughte the  
false; *rest* thought the fals.

[724.] MSS. most, *the e*  
*being elided.*

[725.] Rl. Sl. Cp. laste,  
faste; *rest* last, fast.

[726.] Rl. Sl. Cp. laste,  
faste; *rest* last, fast.

[728.] Hl. Cp. heende; *rest*  
hende.

[729.] Hl. ther; *rest om.*

[730.]Hl. Cp. told; *rest*  
tolde.

[734.]Hl. anon right; Ln.  
ful sone; *rest* right sone.

[737.]Rl. Cp. beste; *rest*  
best.

[739.]Pt Ln. false; *rest* fals

[741.]Hl anon; *rest om.*

[744.]Hl Cp. maympris. Hl  
Sl Ln. graunt; *rest* graunte.  
Hl. him; Cp. Ln. to; *rest*  
*om.*

[747.]Hl. forthward; *rest*  
forward.

[749.]Hl if; *rest om.*

[754.]Hl. Cp. dwelleden;  
Ln. dwelden; *rest* dwellide,  
dwellid, dwelled.

[755.]Hl. Cp. heende; Rl.  
hynde; *rest* hende.

[761.]MSS. sitte, *except*  
Hl. sitt *in l* 766. *Here* sitte  
*is subj.*; *but in l.* 766  
sit=sitteth.

[765.]Hl. hold; Rl. hold  
me; *rest* holde me.

Hl. witt, sitt.

[766.]MSS. sitte, *except*  
Hl. sitt *in l* 766. *Here* sitte  
*is subj.*; *but in l.* 766  
sit=sitteth.

Hl. witt, sitt.

[769.]Hl lestneth; Cp.  
lesteneth; Rl. Pt. listeneth.

[770.]Rl. Sl Cp hadde; *rest*  
had. Hl Pt. al; *rest om.*

[771.]Hl. a?ein; *rest om.*

[773.]Hl. Cp Ln. ?onge;  
*rest* [Editor: illegible  
letter]ong.

[774.]Hl mery; *rest om.*

[775.]Hl. talked; Rl. Pt.  
talkeden; Sl. talkiden.

[779.]Sl. Cp. Ln. hadde;  
Rl. hade; *rest* had.

[782.]MSS might; *the e*  
*being elided.*

[784.]Cp. false; *rest* fals.

[789.]Hl. thought, *see l.*  
791.

[794.]Hl. sitt.

[800.]Cp. Ln. false; *rest*  
fals.

[804.]Hl. his; *rest om.*

[805.]MSS. sette, spette  
(*wrongly*).

[806.]MSS. sette, spette  
(*wrongly*).

[807.]Cp. wente; *rest* went.

[808.]Hl gret; *rest* grete.

[811.]Hl. felaws; *rest*  
felawes, felowes.

[816.]Ln. brouht it; Hl. *om.*  
it; *rest* it broughte; *but read*  
broughte him.

[818. ]Rl. Sl. Pt. mote; Ln.  
mot; Hl. Cp most.

[819. ]Cp. reed; Hl red; *rest*  
rede.

[822. ]Hl. Pt lat; *rest* late.

[826. ]for to *in* MS. Camb.  
Mm. 2. 5; *rest om.* for.

[828. ]Hl. on; *rest om*

[829. ]Rl. bade; *rest* bad.

[837. ]Hl. beende; Cp. Pt.  
Ln. bende.

[838. ]Hl. Cp heende; *rest*  
hende.

[843. ]Hl. *om.* the. Hl.  
Iugges; *rest* Iugge, Iuge.

[845. ]Cp Thanne; *rest*  
Than.

[850. ]*I supply* a-two.

[851. ]Hl. arm; *rest* armes.

[854. ]Rl. Harl. ferd; Pt  
feerd; Hl. Cp. fered; Ln.  
ferde.

[855. ]MSS. sete.

[857. ]stede] Hl. Rl. Cp.  
sete (*wrongly*).

[859. ]Cp. Ln. false; *rest*  
fals.

[861. ]Cp. hadde; Rl. hade;  
Hl. had (*2nd time*).

Hl. rest, quest; *see ll* 871,  
872.

[862.]Hl. rest, quest; *see ll*  
871, 872.

[864.]Hl. Cp. Ln he; Rl. Pt.  
him; Harl. (1758) hym.

[866.]Cp. feteren; Hl.  
feter.

[872.]Hl. *om.* good.

[877.]Hl. tarie; *rest om.*

[878.]Rl. Pt. Harl. quest;  
*rest* queste.

[879.]Cp. beþ, *rest* bothe,  
both.

[880.]Hl. *om.* the *before*  
ropes. Hl Rl. Cp. wynd;  
*rest* wynde, winde.

[883.]Cp. Ln. false; *rest*  
fals.

[884.]Cp hadde, Ln. hade;  
*rest* had.

[885.]Hl. Pt nek; *rest*  
necke, nekke.

[886.]Rl. Cp. hadde, *rest*  
had.

[888.]Hl. They; *rest om* Hl.  
freendes. Hl. euen to; Rl.  
Harl and passeden to; Pt  
and passed to, Cp and  
passed with; Ln. and pesed  
with.

[892.]Hl. al; *rest om.*

[896.]Cp. Pt quitte; Hl.  
quyt.

[902.]Ln bringe, *rest*  
bryng, bring.

[\*] *It seems to have been Chaucer's intention, in the first instance, to end this Tale here. Hence, we find, in MSS. E. Hn. Cm. Dd., the following genuine, but rejected stanza, suitable for insertion at this point:—*Bihold the merye wordes of the Hoste.

This worthy Clerk,  
whan ended was  
his tale,  
Our hoste seyde,  
and swoor by  
goddes bones,  
'Me were lever  
than a barel ale  
My wyf at hoom  
had herd this  
legende ones;  
This is a gentil tale  
for the nones,  
As to my purpos,  
wiste ye my wille;  
But thing that wol  
nat be, lat it be  
stille.'

Here endeth the Tale of the  
Clerk of Oxenford.

[E. Oure hoost.

[E. leuere. Dd. barel of ale.

[E. Hn. Dd. is; Cm. was.

[E. Hn. wiste; Dd. wyst;  
Cm. woste. N.B. With l. 3,  
compare B. 3083.